

Operation Manual



 **DORICO**
ELEMENTS₅
Personal Music Notation System

Steinberg Documentation Team: Cristina Bachmann, Martina Becker, Heiko Bischoff, Lillie Harris, Christina Kaboth, Dennis Martinez, Insa Mingers, Matthias Obrecht, Sabine Pfeifer

Translation: Ability InterBusiness Solutions (AIBS), Moon Chen, Jérémie Dal Santo, Rosa Freitag, GiEmme Solutions, Josep Llodra Grimalt, Vadim Kupriianov, Roland Münchow, Boris Rogowski, Sergey Tamarovsky

This document provides improved access for people who are blind or have low vision. Please note that due to the complexity and number of images in this document, it is not possible to include text descriptions of images.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. The software described by this document is subject to a License Agreement and may not be copied to other media except as specifically allowed in the License Agreement.

No part of this publication may be copied, reproduced, or otherwise transmitted or recorded, for any purpose, without prior written permission by Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. Registered licensees of the product described herein may print one copy of this document for their personal use.

All product and company names are ™ or ® trademarks of their respective owners. For more information, please visit www.steinberg.net/trademarks.

© Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH, 2024.

All rights reserved.

Dorico Elements_5.1.30_en-US_2024-04-03

Table of Contents

9	New features	174	Layouts
14	Introduction	181	Player, layout, and instrument names
14	Platform-independent documentation	187	Flow names and flow titles
14	Usage of musical terms	189	Videos
15	Documentation structure	195	Write mode
16	Typographical conventions	195	Project window in Write mode
17	Key commands	210	Inputting vs. editing
17	How you can reach us	217	Rhythmic grid
18	Dorico concepts	218	Caret
18	Design philosophy and higher-level concepts	223	Note input
19	Projects in Dorico	258	Note durations
19	Modes in Dorico	264	MIDI recording
20	Flows in Dorico	271	Notations input
21	Players in Dorico	421	Selecting notes/items
21	Instruments in Dorico	430	Editing items
22	Popovers	437	Hiding non-printing elements
23	Notes and rests in Dorico	437	Hiding/Showing attachment lines
24	Rhythmic position	438	Undoing/Redoing actions
24	Layouts in Dorico	439	Navigation
25	Page templates in Dorico	445	Instrument filters
26	Key commands in Dorico	450	Signposts
27	Options dialogs in Dorico Elements	451	Insert mode
29	User interface	455	Arranging tools
29	Project window	468	Transposing tools
43	Workspace setup	477	Musical transformations
52	Color setup	494	Comments
56	Language setup	501	Splitting flows
58	Preferences dialog	502	Engrave mode
60	Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog	502	Project window in Engrave mode
65	Jump bar	507	Note spacing
69	Project and file handling	514	Moving items graphically
69	Hub	518	Tucking index properties
71	Starting new projects	519	Play mode
72	Opening projects/files	519	Project window in Play mode
73	Projects from different versions of Dorico	530	Tracks
73	Missing Fonts dialog	538	Playhead
75	Project Info dialog	540	Playing back music
77	Project templates	545	Enabling independent voice playback
78	File import and export	547	Muting/Soloing tracks
103	Auto-save	549	Repeats in playback
105	Project backups	552	Swing playback
106	Project Statistics dialog	555	Transport window
109	Setup mode	558	Playback templates
109	Project window in Setup mode	567	Endpoints
121	Players, layouts, and flows	574	MIDI trigger regions
123	Players	576	Print mode
128	Ensembles	576	Project window in Print mode
130	Instruments	581	Printing layouts
136	Instrument changes	585	Exporting layouts as graphics files
142	Percussion kits and drum sets	589	Printers
153	Fretted instrument tuning	590	Page arrangements for printing/exporting
157	Capos	592	Duplex printing
167	Player groups	593	Page vs. paper size
171	Flows	595	Graphics file formats
		597	Annotations

598	Page formatting	728	Loading inserts into channels
600	Changing the page size and/or orientation	729	Changing the reverb plug-in
601	Changing page margins	730	Stage templates
601	Applying page template sets to layouts	738	Space templates
602	Changing the default staff size	745	Library
603	Changing the default staff/system spacing	745	Layout Options dialog
604	Changing the vertical justification of staves/ systems	747	Notation Options dialog
605	Hiding/Showing empty staves	749	Playback Options dialog
608	Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows	751	Music fonts
609	Starting layouts on left-hand pages	753	Text formatting
609	Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page	761	Expression maps
610	Changing when the First page template is used	780	Percussion maps
611	Hiding/Showing flow headings	787	Playback techniques
611	Hiding/Showing information above flow headings	790	Notation reference
612	Changing the horizontal justification of final systems	791	Introduction
614	Margins	792	Accidentals
617	Staff size	792	Deleting accidentals
620	Staff spacing	793	Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals
629	Casting off	794	Changing the size of accidentals
633	System breaks	795	Hiding/Showing colors for accidentals
636	Frame breaks	795	Stacking of accidentals
640	Tacets	798	Altered unisons
643	Condensing	800	Microtonal accidentals
643	Part formatting propagation	800	Accidental duration rules
647	Page templates	804	Articulations
651	Flow headings	805	Copying and pasting articulations
654	Frames	805	Deleting articulations
662	Music frame chains	805	Positions of articulations
663	Properties	809	Articulations in playback
663	Properties panel	810	Bars
664	Local vs. global properties	810	Bar length
665	Changing the property scope	810	Deleting bars/beats
666	Changing values in numeric value fields	813	Changing the width of empty bars
667	Key Editor	813	Splits in bars
667	Key Editor panel	815	Barlines
678	Notes in the Key Editor	816	Per-flow notation options for barlines
687	Played vs. notated note durations	816	Types of barlines
690	Playing Techniques editor	820	Hiding/Showing systemic barlines and brackets/braces
691	Velocity editor	821	Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single- staff systems
694	Dynamics editor	821	Moving barlines graphically
700	MIDI Pitch Bend editor	822	Barlines across staff groups
701	MIDI CC editor	826	Bar numbers
706	Tempo editor	826	Hiding/Showing bar numbers
710	Histogram tool	827	Hiding/Showing bar number enclosures
713	Transform tool	828	Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi- bar rests
715	Key Editor configurations	829	Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers
717	Mixer	829	Bar number paragraph styles
717	Mixer panel	831	Positions of bar numbers
718	Mixer window	835	Bar number changes
719	Mixer toolbar	837	Subordinate bar numbers
720	Mixer channels	838	Bar numbers and repeats
724	Hiding/Showing channels	840	Beaming
724	Scrolling through channels	840	Per-flow notation options for beam grouping
724	Changing the height of channels	841	Beam grouping according to meters
725	Changing the volume of channels	841	Beaming notes together manually
726	Panning channels	845	Changing the thickness of beams
727	Adding FX channels	845	Beam placement relative to the staff
728	Renaming channels		

847	Beam slants	927	Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics
848	Centered beams	928	Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators
851	Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos	929	Parentthesizing dynamics
855	Beam corners	929	Changing the appearance of sforzando/ rinforzando dynamics
855	Secondary beams	930	Erasing the background of dynamics
858	Tuplets within beams	931	Voice-specific dynamics
858	Rests within beams	932	Dynamic modifiers
858	Stemlets	937	Gradual dynamics
859	Fanned beams	945	Messa di voce hairpins
860	Note and rest grouping	947	Niente markings
861	Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries	949	Groups of dynamics
861	Creating custom beat groupings for meters	951	Linked dynamics
863	Changing the beat grouping for cut common time signatures	953	Dynamics font styles
		953	Dynamics in playback
864	Brackets and braces	957	Figured bass
865	Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type	958	Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts
867	Hiding/Showing braces on single staves	959	Showing figured bass on rests
868	Secondary brackets	960	Showing single brackets on figured bass
870	Sub-sub-brackets	961	Figured bass hold lines
871	Chord symbols	964	Positions of figured bass
872	Chord components	967	Appearance of figured bass
872	Chord symbol appearance presets	971	Fingering
877	Chord symbol font styles	971	General placement conventions for fingering
878	Positions of chord symbols	972	Changing fingerings to substitution fingerings
882	Chord symbol regions	973	Changing existing fingerings
883	Transposing chord symbols	974	Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings
884	Respelling chord symbols	976	Changing the size of fingerings
886	Hiding/Showing the root and quality of chord symbols	977	Showing enclosures/underlines on fingerings
887	Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols	978	Hiding/Showing fingering
888	Erasing the background of chord symbols	978	Deleting fingerings
889	Parenthesized chord symbols	979	Fingering font styles
893	Chord symbols imported from MusicXML	980	Cautionary fingerings
894	Chord diagrams	981	Fingerings for fretted instruments
895	Chord diagram components	986	Fingering slides
895	Hiding/Showing chord diagrams	989	Fingerings for valved brass instruments
898	Used chord diagrams grids	990	Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators
900	Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams	992	Fingerings imported from MusicXML files
902	Changing the chord diagram shape	993	String indicators
903	Creating new chord diagram shapes	994	Deleting string indicators
906	Chord diagram font styles	995	Positions of string indicators
907	Clefs	997	Front matter
908	Showing clefs after grace notes	997	Adding titles
909	Moving clefs graphically	998	Adding composers
910	Hiding/Showing clefs	999	Adding lyricists
912	Changing the octave of clefs	999	Adding copyright information
913	Clefs with octave indicators	1000	Editing layout transposition text
915	Octave lines	1001	Hiding/Showing borders on layout names
916	Positions of octave lines	1002	Grace notes
917	Hiding/Showing octave lines	1002	General placement conventions for grace notes
918	Octave lines in Engrave mode	1004	Turning existing notes into grace notes
919	Changing the vertical stacking order of octave lines	1004	Turning grace notes into normal notes
920	Cues	1005	Showing grace notes before/after barlines
921	Dynamics	1006	Grace note size
921	Types of dynamics	1006	Grace note slashes
922	Positions of dynamics	1008	Grace note stems
926	Changing dynamic levels	1008	Grace note beams
		1009	Grace notes in playback

1010	Holds and pauses	1096	Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines
1011	Types of fermatas	1096	Hiding/Showing trill extension lines
1012	Types of breath marks	1097	Trill intervals
1012	Types of caesuras	1102	Trill interval appearance
1012	Positions of holds and pauses	1104	Trills in playback
1016	Holds and pauses in playback	1108	Arpeggio signs
1019	Key signatures	1108	Types of arpeggio signs
1020	Key signature arrangements	1111	Length of arpeggio signs
1021	Types of key signatures	1111	General placement conventions for arpeggio signs
1022	Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems	1112	Arpeggios in playback
1022	Positions of key signatures	1115	Glissando lines
1024	Cautionary key signatures	1116	Glissando lines across empty bars
1025	Enharmonic equivalent key signatures	1116	Changing the style of glissando lines
1028	Tonality systems	1117	Changing glissando line text
1028	Equal Division of the Octave (EDO)	1119	Glissando lines in Engrave mode
1029	Lyrics	1119	Glissando lines in playback
1029	Types of lyrics	1122	Guitar bends
1031	Types of syllables in lyrics	1124	Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives
1032	Copying and pasting lyrics	1125	Guitar post-bends
1034	Exporting lyrics	1127	Vibrato bar dives and returns
1034	Filters for lyrics	1128	Bend intervals
1035	Positions of lyrics	1129	Hiding/Showing guitar bend hold lines
1041	Lyrics paragraph styles	1129	Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives
1043	Lyric text editing	1130	Hiding/Showing accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives
1045	Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines	1131	Deleting guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends
1047	Lyric line numbers	1131	Guitar bends in Engrave mode
1049	Verse numbers	1137	Guitar techniques
1050	Elision slurs	1137	Vibrato bar techniques
1052	Notes	1138	Tapping
1052	Notehead sets	1139	Hammer-ons and pull-offs
1059	Assigning notes to strings	1141	Showing notes as dead notes
1060	Hiding/Showing noteheads	1142	Changing vibrato bar dip intervals
1061	Changing the width of ledger lines	1142	Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques
1062	Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots	1143	Deleting guitar techniques
1064	View options for notes and rests	1145	Jazz articulations
1066	Bracketed noteheads	1146	Jazz ornaments
1067	Showing brackets on noteheads	1147	Positions of jazz articulations
1069	Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains	1147	Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations
1070	Splitting brackets on chords	1148	Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations
1071	Changing the shape of round notehead brackets	1149	Deleting jazz articulations
1072	Notehead brackets in Engrave mode	1150	Page numbers
1074	Stems	1150	Page number paragraph styles
1074	Stem direction	1151	Changing the page number numeral style
1078	Stem length	1151	Hiding/Showing page numbers
1079	Hiding/Showing stems	1152	Hiding/Showing guide page numbers
1081	Harmonics	1153	Harp pedaling
1082	Turning notes into harmonics	1154	Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams
1083	Changing the harmonic partial	1155	Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts
1084	Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals	1156	Hiding/Showing borders on harp pedal diagrams
1085	Appearances/Styles of harmonics	1158	Positions of harp pedal diagrams
1090	Ornaments	1159	Partial harp pedaling
1090	Changing ornament intervals		
1091	Positions of ornaments		
1094	Trills		
1094	Hiding/Showing trill marks		
1095	Changing the speed of trills		

1161 Pedal lines	1242 Repeat counts
1162 Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes	1245 Bar repeats
1167 Positions of pedal lines	1246 Changing the length of the repeated phrase in bar repeat regions
1169 Splitting pedal lines	1247 Hiding/Showing region highlights
1170 Merging pedal lines	1247 Bar repeat counts
1171 Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines	1251 Bar repeat grouping
1176 Text pedal line signs	1253 Numbered bar regions
1178 Pedal lines in playback	1254 Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions
1179 Pedal lines imported from MusicXML files	1254 Numbered bar region counts
1180 Playing techniques	1258 Rhythm slashes
1181 Adding text to playing techniques	1258 Slash voices
1182 Erasing the background of playing techniques	1261 Slash regions
1183 Hiding/Showing playing techniques	1265 Slash region counts
1184 Positions of playing techniques	1268 Slashes in multiple-voice contexts
1186 Playing technique continuation lines	1271 Rests
1191 Groups of playing techniques	1271 General placement conventions for rests
1194 Lines	1272 Implicit vs. explicit rests
1196 Line components	1274 Per-flow notation options for rests
1197 Positions of lines	1275 Hiding/Showing rest colors
1203 Length of lines	1275 Moving rests vertically
1206 Changing the body style of lines	1276 Deleting rests
1207 Changing the caps of lines	1277 Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars
1207 Changing the direction of lines	1279 Multi-bar rests
1208 Adding text to lines	1283 Slurs
1215 Lines in Engrave mode	1283 General placement conventions for slurs
1216 Rehearsal marks	1289 Slur styles
1216 Positions of rehearsal marks	1292 Slur curvature direction
1217 Changing the index of rehearsal marks	1294 Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs
1218 Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type	1295 Nested slurs
1219 Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks	1297 Linked slurs
1219 Editing the rehearsal mark paragraph style	1298 Slur segments
1221 Markers	1300 Slurs in Engrave mode
1221 Hiding/Showing markers	1304 Slur height
1222 Changing the vertical position of markers	1306 Slur shoulder offset
1223 Editing marker text	1308 Slurs in playback
1224 Editing the marker/timecode font styles	1309 Staff labels
1224 Changing the timecodes of markers	1310 Hiding/Showing staff labels
1225 Defining markers as important	1312 Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks
1226 Timecodes	1313 Staff label contents
1227 Changing the initial timecode value	1314 Instrument transpositions in staff labels
1227 Changing the vertical position of timecodes	1317 Player group labels
1228 Changing the timecode frequency	1318 Staff label paragraph styles
1230 Repeat endings	1319 Staff labels for percussion kits
1230 Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings	1320 Staff labels on condensed staves
1232 Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings	1322 Staves
1233 Positions of repeat endings	1323 Extra staves
1233 Editing repeat ending text	1323 Ossia staves
1234 Changing the appearance of repeat ending segments	1324 System dividers
1234 Lengthening/Shortening repeat ending hooks	1326 System objects
1235 Repeat endings in MusicXML files	1327 System indents
1236 Repeat markers	1329 Divisi
1237 Repeat marker paragraph styles	1330 Tablature
1237 Changing the index for repeat markers	1331 Rhythms on tablature
1238 Editing repeat marker text	1331 Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature
1240 Hiding/Showing repeat markers	1332 Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature
1241 Positions of repeat markers	1334 Editing the tablature numbers font style

1335	Tempo marks	1426	Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion
1336	Types of tempo marks	1426	Notations on notes in percussion kits
1336	Positions of tempo marks	1428	Percussion kit presentation types
1338	Changing tempo text	1430	Percussion legends
1339	Tempo mark font styles	1435	Voices in percussion kits
1340	Hiding/Showing tempo marks	1436	Universal Indian Drum Notation
1341	Parenthesizing tempo marks	1438	Voices
1341	Metronome marks	1439	Per-flow notation options for voices
1345	Gradual tempo changes	1439	Hiding/Showing voice colors
1349	Tempo equations	1440	Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap
1351	Text items	1440	Note positions in multiple-voice contexts
1352	Types of text	1444	Unused voices
1356	Changing the paragraph style of text items	1444	Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices
1356	Aligning text items with the start of systems	1446	Glossary
1357	Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance	1460	Index
1358	Adding borders to text items		
1361	Erasing the background of text items		
1362	Hiding/Showing text items		
1364	Ties		
1365	Ties vs. slurs		
1366	Tie styles		
1368	Tie curvature direction		
1370	Non-standard ties		
1372	Hiding/Showing laissez vibrer ties		
1373	Deleting ties		
1373	Splitting tie chains		
1374	Ties in Engrave mode		
1377	Tie height		
1379	Tie shoulder offset		
1381	Time signatures		
1382	Types of time signatures		
1384	Cautionary time signatures		
1386	Pick-up bars		
1387	Large time signatures		
1389	Time signature styles		
1394	Positions of time signatures		
1396	Hiding/Showing time signatures		
1397	Ending interchangeable time signatures		
1397	Changing the design of time signatures		
1398	Time signature font styles		
1399	Tremolos		
1400	General placement conventions for tremolos		
1401	Tremolos in tie chains		
1403	Changing the speed of tremolos		
1403	Deleting tremolos		
1404	Rhythmic positions of notes with tremolos		
1404	Moving tremolo strokes		
1405	Tremolos in playback		
1408	Tuplets		
1408	Nested tuplets		
1410	Turning existing notes into tuplets		
1410	Turning tuplets into normal notes		
1411	Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines		
1412	Tuplet beams		
1413	Tuplet brackets		
1416	Tuplet numbers/ratios		
1419	Unpitched percussion		
1419	Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments		
1420	Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments		

New features

New Features in Version 5.1.30

Status bar width

- You can now hide/show tools in the status bar. See [Hiding/Showing status bar tools](#).

Systemic barlines

- You can now hide systemic barlines and brackets/braces at individual system/frame breaks and codas. See [Hiding/Showing systemic barlines and brackets/braces](#).

Coda gaps

- You can now change the gap preceding individual coda sections. See [Changing the gap before codas](#).

New Features in Version 5.1.20

Comments panel improvements

- You can now sort comments by different attributes, and change which pieces of information are shown. See [Reordering comments](#) and [Hiding/Showing comment information](#).

Mixer values

- You can now enter exact panning and volume values in Mixer channels. See [Changing the volume of channels](#) and [Panning channels](#).

Staff label improvements

- When hiding/showing staff labels, you can now apply your changes to the first flow only, or to all flows in the layout. See [Hiding/Showing staff labels](#).
- You can now indent the first systems of flows only when staff labels are hidden. See [Changing the first system indent](#).

Aggregate time signatures

- It is now possible to combine aggregate time signatures with the same denominator into a single time signature, while retaining dashed barlines for meter divisions. See [Combining aggregate time signatures](#).

New Features in Version 5.1.10

Harp pedals editor

- A new **Harp Pedals** section in the Playing Techniques panel allows you to create harp pedal diagrams using a visual editor. See [Playing Techniques panel](#).

Colors for accidentals

- You can now show cautionary and forced accidentals in different colors, independently of each other. See [Hiding/Showing colors for accidentals](#).

New Features in Version 5.1.0

Highlights

Iconica Sketch

- Iconica Sketch sounds, and playback templates for using them, are now included with Dorico Elements. See [Playback templates](#).

Text export

- It is now possible to export all text in the project to a CSV file. See [Exporting text](#).

Project statistics

- Dorico Elements can now generate statistics for the whole project or only an individual flow. Being able to know how many bars there are in a piece of music, and to differentiate between filled and empty bars, can be necessary when calculating engraving fees. See [Project Statistics dialog](#).

History dialog

- You can now view your edits and selections in a dialog, and undo/redo all actions up to the selected one. See [History dialog](#).

Polyphonic voice balancing

- Dorico Elements can now identify melodies and bass notes in polyphonic music, and emphasize them relative to accompanying notes. See [Enabling/Disabling polyphonic voice balancing](#).
- There are further voice balancing options for themes in contrapuntal music specifically. See [Enabling/Disabling dynamic rules for contrapuntal music](#).

Hold and pause playback

- Holds and pauses now affect playback, using a combination of changing note durations and inserting gaps. See [Holds and pauses in playback](#).

More New Features

Project Info dialog

- You can now use italic, bold, and bold italic Markdown formatting for specific characters within fields in the **Project Info** dialog. See [Project Info dialog](#).

Instrument change improvements

- You can now delay instrument changes until before the first note in the new instrument, and change where instrument change labels appear relative to cues. See [Changing the position of instrument changes](#).
- You can now hide instrument change warnings in each layout independently. See [Hiding/Showing instrument change warnings](#).
- Dorico Elements now provides two paragraph styles for instrument change labels, allowing you to customize the appearance of instrument change warnings independently of the labels shown at new instruments' entries. See [Instrument change label paragraph styles](#).

Hidden notations

- You can now input hidden tempo marks and playing techniques by enclosing your popover entry in parentheses. See [Inputting tempo marks with the popover](#) and [Inputting playing techniques with the popover](#).

Mouse editing

- It is now possible to transpose notes by octave division when clicking and dragging with the mouse. See [Changing the pitch of individual notes](#).

Exporting flows

- You can now export flows as separate PDF files. See [Exporting layouts as graphics files](#).

Lock Played Durations

- This new function allows you to retain the played durations of notes, regardless of edits you make to their notated positions/durations in the piano roll editor. See [Key Editor panel toolbar](#).

Used chord diagrams grids

- It is now possible to exclude individual chord diagram shapes from used chord diagrams grids. See [Including/Excluding chord diagrams from used chord diagrams grids](#).

Dynamics improvements

- There are new options for the appearance and position of syllables in hyphenated gradual dynamics. See [Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics](#) and [Abbreviating gradual dynamics](#).

Cautionary key/time signatures

- It is now possible to hide cautionary key signatures and time signatures at the ends of systems. See [Hiding/Showing cautionary key signatures](#) and [Hiding/Showing cautionary time signatures](#).

Glissando playback

- Dorico Elements now supports continuous glissando playback using MIDI pitch bend. See [Changing the glissando playback type](#).

New Features in Version 5.0.20

Mixer panel

- Channel strips are now shown in the Mixer panel when it is sufficiently tall. See [Mixer panel](#).

Tie chains

- Edits to tie chains in Write mode, including changing the stem direction of notes, now affect all notes and ties in the chain.

New Features in Version 5.0.0

Highlights

Groove Agent SE

- Dorico Elements now comes with Groove Agent SE, allowing you to drag and drop patterns onto drum set tracks and trigger patterns using MIDI trigger regions. See [Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#).
- If you have installed Groove Agent SE, you can use new playback templates to load Groove Agent SE automatically when you add drum sets. See [Playback templates](#).

Dorico Elements features

- You can now have unlimited players in a single project. See [Players](#).
- Note spacing and staff spacing tools are now available in Engrave mode in Dorico Elements, allowing you to adjust horizontal and vertical spacing in more detailed ways. See [Engrave mode](#).
- The **Playback Options** dialog is now available in Dorico Elements. See [Playback Options dialog](#).
- The **Edit Font Styles**, **Paragraph Styles**, and **Character Styles** dialogs are now available in Dorico Elements, allowing you to change the formatting of text styles. See [Text formatting](#).

Mouse editing

- It is now possible to transpose, move, and copy notes by clicking and dragging with the mouse. See [Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#).

Multiple item creation

- You can now input notations onto multiple staves simultaneously outside of note input. By default, Dorico Elements inputs notations at the first note on each staff. See [Changing the item input position setting](#).

Scrubbing

- It is now possible to use scrub playback in Dorico Elements. See [Scrubbing](#).

MIDI trigger regions

- This new feature allows you to play back notes without showing them in the music, such as when using patterns in Groove Agent for playback. See [MIDI trigger regions](#).

Space and Stage templates

- These new features work together to make it much easier to produce realistic playback performances of your music. Stage templates allow you to position instruments as if they were on a real stage. Space templates emulate different rooms and concert halls by applying panning and reverb settings to instruments' stage positions. The end result is playback that uses the stereo field more realistically, with deeper and more natural reverberation. See [Space templates](#) and [Stage templates](#).

Pitch contour emphasis

- This new algorithm allows melodies to play back even more expressively. See [Enabling/Disabling pitch contour emphasis](#).

More New Features

User interface improvements

- The status bar has been given additional options, allowing you to switch the current layout between concert/transposed pitch and galley/page view more easily. See [Status bar](#).
- You can now enable/disable playhead following during playback in each project window independently. See [Enabling/Disabling playhead following](#).

Middle C numbering convention

- You can now change the numbering convention used for middle C (MIDI note 60) throughout Dorico Elements. See [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#).

Instrument numbering

- It is now possible to renumber instruments so that their numbering matches their default player order. See [Renumbering instruments](#).

Staff label improvements

- In simple cases, horizontal alignment and leading set for individual instrument names is now used in staff labels, overriding the settings from the corresponding paragraph style. See [Edit Instrument Names dialog](#).
- You can now show player names in staff labels only on the first system in each flow, with instrument names shown in staff labels on all other systems. See [Showing instrument/player names in staff labels](#).

Rhythm dots

- To select dotted note durations, you can now double-press note duration key commands. See [Inputting notes with rhythm dots](#).

Text improvements

- You can now enter Unicode characters into both text items and text frames more easily. See [Inputting text items](#).

- You can now adjust leading in individual text items. See [Text editor options in Write mode](#).
- You can now change the paragraph style applied to multiple selected text items simultaneously. See [Changing the paragraph style of text items](#).

Playback improvements

- Notes and items can now be muted in specific playthroughs, allowing you to hear selected notes only the second time around, for example. See [Muting notes/items individually](#).
- Dorico Elements now supports microtonal playback using MIDI pitch bend. See [Expression Maps dialog](#).

Mixer improvements

- It is now possible to add multiple FX channels to the Mixer. See [Adding FX channels](#).
- You can now rename channels in the Mixer. See [Renaming channels](#).

Music fonts

- A variety of new music font families are now available by default. See [Music fonts](#).

Hiding items

- You can now hide clefs in layouts of any transposition, independently of other layouts. See [Hiding/Showing clefs](#).
- You can now hide octave lines in individual layouts. See [Hiding/Showing octave lines](#).

Introduction

Thank you very much for purchasing Dorico Elements.

We are delighted that you have chosen Steinberg's scoring application and hope that you will enjoy using it for years to come.

Dorico is a next-generation application for producing beautiful sheet music, whether you are a composer, arranger, music engraver, publisher, instrumentalist, teacher, or student. Whether you want to print your music or share it in a digital format, Dorico is the most sophisticated program available.

Like all of Steinberg's products, Dorico has been designed from the ground up by a team of musicians who understand your needs and who are dedicated to producing a tool that is both easy to learn and use, but also capable of results of the highest quality. Dorico also integrates with your existing workflow and can import and export files in a variety of formats.

Dorico thinks about music the same way a human musician does and has a deeper understanding of the elements of music and musical performance than other scoring applications. Its unique design allows an unprecedented degree of flexibility, in music input and editing, in score layout, in rhythmic freedom, and many other areas besides.

Most sincerely yours,

The Steinberg Dorico Team

Platform-independent documentation

This documentation applies to the operating systems Windows and macOS.

Features and settings that are specific to one of these platforms are clearly indicated. In all other cases, the descriptions and procedures in the documentation are valid for Windows and macOS.

Some points to consider:

- The screenshots are taken from macOS and use the dark theme in Dorico Elements.
- Some functions that are available on the **File** menu on Windows can be found in the program name menu on macOS.

Usage of musical terms

This documentation uses American terminology for musical items.

The following table lists all the notes and notations that have different names in American and British English:

American name	British name
Double whole note	Breve
Whole note	Semibreve

American name	British name
Half note	Minim
Quarter note	Crotchet
Eighth note	Quaver
Sixteenth note	Semiquaver
Thirty-second note	Demisemiquaver
Sixty-fourth note	Hemidemisemiquaver
Hundred twenty-eighth note	Semihemidemisemiquaver
Two hundred fifty-sixth note	Demisemihemidemisemiquaver
Half-step	Semitone
Whole step	Whole tone
Staff	Stave
Bar/Measure	Bar

NOTE

This documentation only uses “bar”.

Documentation structure

In our documentation, we divide information into three different types of topics, according to their content.

Descriptions of the user interface

Topics that describe the functionality of user interface items and list the options and settings of dialogs, panels, or other items.

Descriptions of basic concepts

Topics that describe concepts and explain the functionality of a specific software feature.

Descriptions of procedures

Topics that provide step-by-step instructions for how to perform a specific task. These topics often provide an example for why you might want to follow the steps and a brief summary of the result, including consequences to be aware of.

Because of this division of information, our documentation structure functions as a reference you can consult for specific information or instructions as required, rather than a guide you must read from start to finish.

TIP

Descriptive topics do not describe how to perform a task, and procedural topics do not explain what something is. To find general information about items or concepts, we recommend searching for them by name, such as “dynamics”. To find instructions for performing particular actions, we recommend including a relevant verb in your search, such as “moving”.

Links at the bottom of topics guide you to further relevant content. You can also check the sidebar for nearby, related topics in the documentation structure.

Typographical conventions

In our documentation, we use structural and markup elements to present information according to its purpose.

Structural elements

Prerequisite

Describes any actions or conditions you must have fulfilled before starting a procedure.

Procedure

Lists the steps that you must take to achieve a specific result.

Important

Informs you about serious issues; for example, issues that affect the system, the connected hardware, or that risk data loss.

Note

Informs you about issues or other relevant information.

Tip

Adds further information or useful suggestions.

Example

Provides you with an example.

Result

Describes the result of the procedure.

After Completing This Task

Informs you about actions or tasks that you can perform after completing the procedure.

Related Links

Lists related topics that you can find in this documentation.

Markup

Bold text indicates the name of a menu, option, function, dialog, window, and so on.

EXAMPLE

To open the **Project Info** dialog, choose **File > Project Info**.

If bold text is separated by a greater-than symbol, this indicates either a sequence of different menus to open, or directions to follow for navigation inside the dialog named at the start of the sequence.

EXAMPLE

Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Change Voice > [Voice]**.

You can change this option in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.

File names and folder paths are shown in a different font.

EXAMPLE

`example_file.txt`

Key commands

Key commands are sets of keys that perform defined tasks when pressed together. They are also known as “keyboard shortcuts” or “hotkeys”. Many key commands are the same on different operating systems but some are not, and this guide distinguishes them.

When key commands use equivalent modifier keys depending on the operating system, the modifier keys are indicated separated by a slash, with the Windows modifier key first and the macOS modifier key second.

EXAMPLE

Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow means: press **Ctrl - Alt - Down Arrow** on Windows, **Cmd - Opt - Down Arrow** on macOS.

When key commands require entirely different keys depending on the operating system, they are indicated with the Windows key command first, followed by the macOS key command.

EXAMPLE

(Windows) or \ (macOS) means: press **#** on Windows, **** on macOS.

In this documentation, we use key commands that match the language of the documentation. For example, key commands in the English documentation correspond to the English keyboard language.

RELATED LINKS

[Key commands in Dorico](#) on page 26

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Changing the keyboard language](#) on page 64

[Changing the application language](#) on page 57

How you can reach us

You can access additional information from the **Help** menu.

The menu contains links to various Steinberg web pages. Selecting one of these menu items automatically launches your web browser and opens the page. On these pages, you can find support and compatibility information, answers to frequently asked questions, information about updates and other Steinberg products, and so on.

Dorico concepts

Dorico is based on a number of key concepts that come from its design philosophy.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, as this will greatly enhance your ability to work efficiently with Dorico and to navigate more easily through this documentation.

Design philosophy and higher-level concepts

Deep design considerations are required to create a notation software like Dorico, which might be of particular interest to users familiar with scoring applications. Dorico has a forward-thinking design that is led by musical concepts rather than computational convenience, and this provides many benefits.

In most other graphically-orientated scoring applications, the highest-level concept is the staff or the instrument definition that creates a staff or staves. When setting up your full score in such programs, you start by adding the correct number of staves, and you are immediately forced into making decisions about the layout. This means that you must know in advance whether two flutes share a staff or have their own individual staves, or whether there should be two trumpets or three. Many of these decisions have significant effects throughout the process of inputting, editing, and producing individual instrumental parts.

Typically, every system of a score must contain the same number of staves, even if some are hidden on particular systems. This requires the user to manage common conventions for themselves, such as multiple players of the same instrument sharing staves. This can be time-consuming and is naturally error-prone.

By contrast, Dorico is designed to conform more closely to how music is performed in the real world and to make the score a flexible expression of the practical choices that go into a musical performance, rather than to make the musical performance subservient to the way the score was initially prepared.

To that end, the highest-level concept of Dorico is the group of human musicians that performs a score. A score can be written for one or more groups; for example, a double choir, or an orchestra plus off-stage chamber ensemble, and so on. Each group includes one or more players which correspond to the humans who play one or more instruments. Players may either be individuals who play more than one instrument, such as an oboist doubling cor anglais, or groups in which everyone plays only one instrument, such as eight desks of violinists.

One crucial difference between Dorico and other scoring applications is that the musical content exists independently of the score layout in which it is viewed.

The actual music played by the group in your score belongs to one or more flows. A flow is any span of music that stands alone; for example, a whole song, a movement of a sonata or symphony, a number in a musical show, or even a short scale or exercise. Players might or might not have any music to play in a given flow. For example, all the brass players might be omitted from the slow movement of a classical symphony, or certain players might have nothing to play in some cues in a movie score. This is no problem as you can combine players in flows in any combination.

Dorico's design philosophy provides several benefits. Chief among them is its ability to produce multiple layouts that share the same musical content, but each having customized appearances to suit different requirements. For example, in the same project you can create a conductor's

score with as many instruments as possible condensed onto a smaller number of staves, a full score with each player's music on separate staves, a custom score layout containing just the piano and vocal staves for choral rehearsals, and an instrumental part for each player that only contains the music belonging to them.

This means it is not necessary to extract flows or parts as separate files: all this information can co-exist in the same Dorico project file.

RELATED LINKS

[Condensing](#) on page 643

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Projects in Dorico

A project is an individual file that you create within Dorico. It can contain multiple separate pieces of music of any duration, written for any combination of instruments, and use as many layouts as required.

For example, you can create a single project that contains all the preludes and fugues in Bach's "The Well-Tempered Clavier" as separate flows. You could then have one layout that contains only the flows for Book 1 and another layout that contains the flows for Book 2.

In addition to the notated music, projects save other relevant information, such as the playback template applied.

Dorico projects are saved as `.dorico` files.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows in Dorico](#) on page 20

[Layouts in Dorico](#) on page 24

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

[Page templates in Dorico](#) on page 25

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

Modes in Dorico

Modes in Dorico represent a logical sequence of the workflow phases of preparing music, but you can switch between them at any time as required for your own workflow.

Dorico Elements contains the following modes:

Setup

In Setup mode, you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other tabs and layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Write

In Write mode, you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically on the page in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode.

Engrave

In Engrave mode, you can make fine adjustments to the position, size, and appearance of notes and items, and determine how the pages of your project are laid out.

By design, you cannot delete any notes or items, change their rhythmic positions, or change the pitch of notes in Engrave mode; this prevents mistakes when engraving.

Play

In Play mode, you can change how your music sounds in playback. You can do this by changing the playback template and assigning VST instruments, inputting automation, adjusting the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration.

Print

In Print mode, you can print your layouts or export them as graphics files. When printing layouts, you can specify the paper size and other options, such as duplex or booklet printing. When exporting layouts, you can specify different graphics file types, such as PDF or PNG, and the information you want to include in their exported file names.

RELATED LINKS

[Setup mode](#) on page 109

[Write mode](#) on page 195

[Engrave mode](#) on page 502

[Print mode](#) on page 576

[Play mode](#) on page 519

Flows in Dorico

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content; for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Each flow can contain music for any combination of players, independently of other flows. For example, brass players are often tacet in the second movements of Classical-period symphonies, so you can remove brass players from the flow for the second movement but leave them in the flows for other movements. In a set of cues for a movie, for example, specific players might not be required in some cues, so the corresponding flows can contain only those players who have anything to play.

The correct assignment of players to flows allows Dorico, for example, to generate tacet sheets automatically for individual instrumental parts.

RELATED LINKS

[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Tacet](#)s on page 640

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

Players in Dorico

In Dorico, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

- A single player represents one person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinetist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.
- A section player represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.

NOTE

Section players can only hold one instrument.

You can also group players together; for example, to separate off-stage players from on-stage players in a large-scale work. Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the score, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows.

RELATED LINKS

[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121

[Players](#) on page 123

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Divisi](#) on page 1329

[Condensing](#) on page 643

[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

Instruments in Dorico

In Dorico, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold one instrument but single players can hold multiple instruments. This allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff as long as no notes overlap.

Dorico has a database of information about the properties of each instrument. These include the playable range, common and uncommon playing techniques, notational conventions, transposition properties, tunings, clef, number of staves, type of staff, and so on. Having these properties predetermined makes it easier and quicker to set up projects correctly. For example, there is a Horn in F instrument that automatically shows treble clefs in transposed pitch layouts. Similarly, there is a timpani instrument that automatically hides all key signatures.

RELATED LINKS

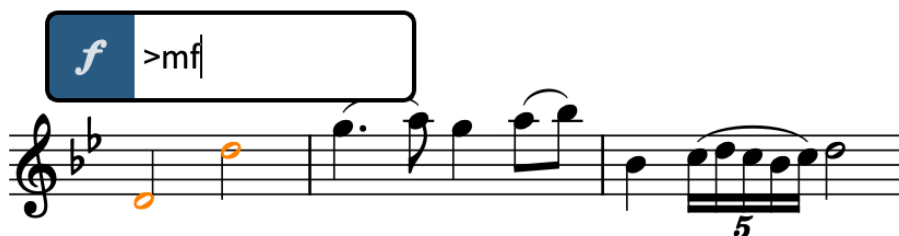
[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Instrument changes](#) on page 136

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

Popovers

Popovers allow you to input different notations and perform tasks, such as transposing a selection of notes, using only your computer keyboard. They are temporary value fields that use text entries for different items and tasks, and there are specific popovers for different purposes.



The dynamics popover with an example entry

One of the key benefits of popovers is that you can use them as you input notes: for example, once you reach the position where you want to input a new time signature, you can open the time signatures popover, input the time signature you want, and then continue inputting notes.

Although specific entries are required for many notations, the correct entries for different notations are consistently and logically structured. For example, tuplets are always expressed as a ratio, such as 3:2 or 5:4. Key signatures are expressed using capital letters for major keys and lowercase letters for minor keys. Time signatures are expressed as a pair of separated numbers; common time signatures use a slash, such as 3/4 or 6/8.

During note input, and depending on the notation you are inputting with the respective popover, notations are input either on the currently selected note, which is usually the last note you input, or at the current rhythmic position, indicated by the caret.

You can always identify popovers by the icon on their left-hand side, which are the same icons used in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window. The Notations toolbox allows you to hide/show the corresponding notation's panel, which is another way you can input notations.

You can only use popovers in Write mode, as that is the only mode where you can input notes and items together and change the pitch of notes. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Note input](#) on page 223

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Right zone \(Write mode\)](#) on page 204

Notes and rests in Dorico

In Dorico, the notation and division of notes and rests is determined semantically by rules based on convention. This means that note and rest durations can change and appear differently later than when you first input them.

Dorico is able to update how notes and rests are notated depending on their context because of the following key concepts:

1. Notes are treated as a single unit, even if they appear as a tie chain that contains multiple notes tied together.
2. Implicit rests automatically fill the gaps between the notes you input.

In combination with time signatures and Dorico's understanding of their corresponding meters, this allows you to input only the notes you want with the duration required. It is not necessary to input rests between notes or input ties for notes that cross the half-bar, for example. If you subsequently change the time signature or move notes rhythmically to start earlier or later, Dorico updates how notes and rests are notated, such as by notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or consolidating two eighth note rests into a single quarter note rest if they are now in the same bar.

If you tie existing notes together, you might find that they turn into a single note, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes, or into a tie chain containing more notes. This is because tie chains are treated as single notes in Dorico, and Dorico automatically notates and beams notes appropriately depending on their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. Similarly, notes can change after you input notes immediately following them as this changes the context, such as a quarter note tied to an eighth note becoming a dotted quarter note when it is followed by an eighth note rather than a rest.

TIP

In Write mode, selecting any part of a tie chain selects the whole tie chain because it is a single note. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics, in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

You can change default settings for note and rest grouping, and also beam grouping, on a per-flow basis. You can force the duration of individual notes and rests; for example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes](#) on page 1052

[Ties](#) on page 1364

[Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Per-flow notation options for beam grouping](#) on page 840

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262

[Inputting ties](#) on page 247

Rhythmic position

In Dorico, notes and items exist at rhythmic positions, which are calculated using their place in musical time in the flow rather than their position in a specific bar that has a particular time signature.

In Dorico, musical time is the number of beats starting from the beginning of each flow. For example, instead of a note existing on beat 3 in bar 4 in a 4/4 time signature, Dorico considers that note to exist at beat 15, regardless of the time signature and its position in a bar.

This approach allows for a lot of flexibility. For example, because notes and items exist independently of bars and time signatures in Dorico, you can change the time signature without changing when notes happen in relation to each other or adding rests at the end of each bar. Instead, the barlines simply move to different positions and note grouping is updated as required, such as notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or crosses the half-bar. You can even start writing notes without inputting a time signature at all.

Similarly, you can easily push notes to later rhythmic positions or pull them in to earlier ones using Insert mode without the risk of them being incorrectly notated. It also means you can think of items existing in the music independently of notes, because items exist at a particular rhythmic position, rather than being attached to notes. To input items at rhythmic positions that do not coincide with the start of notes, such as dynamics in the middle of tie chains, you can either select any other item at that position, or activate the caret and input items at the caret position.

In Dorico, the rhythmic position of notes and items is separate from their graphical position on the page. The benefit of this is that you can input items at the position in the music where they must apply and then move them graphically without causing them to apply to different notes or inadvertently split multi-bar rests. For example, if you want strings to play *pizzicato* from the start of a bar, but because of tight vertical spacing you want to move the *pizz.* indication slightly to the side. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong, but are not printed.

RELATED LINKS

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861

[Beaming](#) on page 840

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Inputting notes in Insert mode](#) on page 237

[Notes](#) on page 1052

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Annotations](#) on page 597

[Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

Layouts in Dorico

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts typically only show the music for one player, whereas full score layouts show the music of all players in the project.

A typical project for an ensemble contains several layouts. By default, Dorico projects contain a single full score layout that contains the music for all players, and a part layout for each player that only contains their music. However, you can also create as many layouts as required.

When you add the first player to a project, Dorico automatically creates a full score layout and a part layout. For all subsequent players you add to the project, Dorico creates a part layout for each player and assigns them all to the existing full score layout.

Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. They share the musical content of these players and flows, such as the notes each instrument plays. For example, when you change the pitch of a note in the full score, that note's pitch is also updated in the corresponding part layout.

You can control practically every aspect of page formatting in each layout independently, including note spacing, staff size, page size, margins, and casting off; that is, the positions of system breaks and page turns. Changing these aspects in one layout does not affect other layouts. For example, inserting systems breaks in a part layout does not change the casting off in the full score.

Similarly, you can change the visual appearance of many items only in one layout, without affecting other layouts, using local properties. For example, you can hide text items in the full score layout but show them in part layouts.

The default formatting of pages in layouts is determined by page templates. By default, full score layouts use a different page template set to part layouts; however, you can apply a different page template set to each layout.

Deleting layouts does not delete any music from the project.

RELATED LINKS

- [Layouts](#) on page 174
- [Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121
- [Page formatting](#) on page 598
- [Casting off](#) on page 629
- [Condensing](#) on page 643
- [Properties](#) on page 663
- [Local vs. global properties](#) on page 664
- [Page templates](#) on page 647
- [Page template sets](#) on page 647
- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Applying page template sets to layouts](#) on page 601
- [Printing layouts](#) on page 581
- [Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

Page templates in Dorico

Page templates in Dorico Elements allow you to achieve consistent page formatting by applying the same arrangements of frames to multiple pages and in different layouts.

Frames are boxes in which you can display text, music, and graphics. The default page templates contain a large music frame that takes up most of the page and text frames at the top and bottom. These text frames display different information according to the page template type.

All pages in your scores and parts inherit their default formatting from page templates.

Dorico Elements provides different types of page templates so that there is appropriate page formatting for first pages independently of subsequent pages, as the first page typically includes additional information, such as the title, composer, and copyright. Dorico Elements uses tokens to display this additional information.

Page templates are contained in page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides separate page template sets for full score and part layouts. Page template sets are automatically applied to every layout that you create.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page templates or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.
- Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides.

RELATED LINKS

- [Page template sets](#) on page 647
- [Page templates](#) on page 647
- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Frames](#) on page 654
- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Tokens](#) on page 655

Key commands in Dorico

Dorico's key commands have been designed to be logical, consistent, and accessible using a standard computer keyboard, without needing a number pad.

EXAMPLE

- The arrow keys on their own navigate the selection around the music area.
 - **Alt/Opt** modifies selected items.
For example, in Write mode, adding **Alt/Opt** to the up/down arrow keys transposes notes by staff position; adding **Alt/Opt** to the right/left arrow keys moves notes/items rhythmically. In Engrave mode, adding **Alt/Opt** to any arrow key moves items a small amount graphically.
 - **Shift - Alt/Opt** changes the duration of notes/items in Write mode.
For example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** lengthens notes/items by the current rhythmic grid resolution.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd** increases the amount by which selected items are modified.
For example, in Write mode, adding **Ctrl/Cmd - Alt/Opt** to the up/down arrow keys transposes notes by an octave; **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** doubles the duration of notes. In Engrave mode, adding **Ctrl/Cmd - Alt/Opt** to any arrow key moves items a large amount graphically.
 - **Shift** plus letter keys opens popovers in Write mode.
For example, **Shift-D** opens the dynamics popover; **Shift-O** opens the ornaments popover.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus specific letter keys opens options dialogs.
For example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** opens **Layout Options**; **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** opens **Notation Options**.
-

The default key commands in Dorico depend on your keyboard language setting, which follows your application language setting by default.

You can view available key commands in the following ways:

- Choose **Help > Key Commands** to open the **Dorico Key Commands** window, which provides an overview of all available key commands.
- Search for key commands of specific functions or menu items in **Preferences > Key Commands**. In this dialog, you can also assign new key commands or change default key commands.
- When you move the mouse over a tool or a function that has a key command, a tooltip with the corresponding key command in brackets is shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Interactive Dorico key commands map](#) on page 61

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Changing the keyboard language](#) on page 64

[Changing the application language](#) on page 57

Options dialogs in Dorico Elements

Options to control the default appearance of music and functionality of Dorico Elements are available in different dialogs according to their type and purpose.

We recommend becoming familiar with the available options in these dialogs, as finding the most appropriate settings for each project reduces the requirement for manual intervention and graphical tweaks.

Any changes you make in options dialogs apply to the current project only, unless you save your settings as default, which updates the default settings with which all future projects start.

Dorico Elements contains the following dialogs for global settings:

Layout Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from layout to layout, such as page size, staff size, and the appearance and position of bar numbers. Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts but apply to all flows in those layouts.

Notation Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from flow to flow, such as beam grouping and accidental duration rules. Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

Playback Options

Contains options that control what you hear in playback and how notation items affect playback, including setting a dynamic curve for how much different dynamics affect the volume, whether repeats are included in playback, and whether you want a gap between flows. Options in **Playback Options** affect the whole project but do not affect any other projects unless you save your settings as default.

TIP

Many options have equivalent properties, which you can change for individual notes and items.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

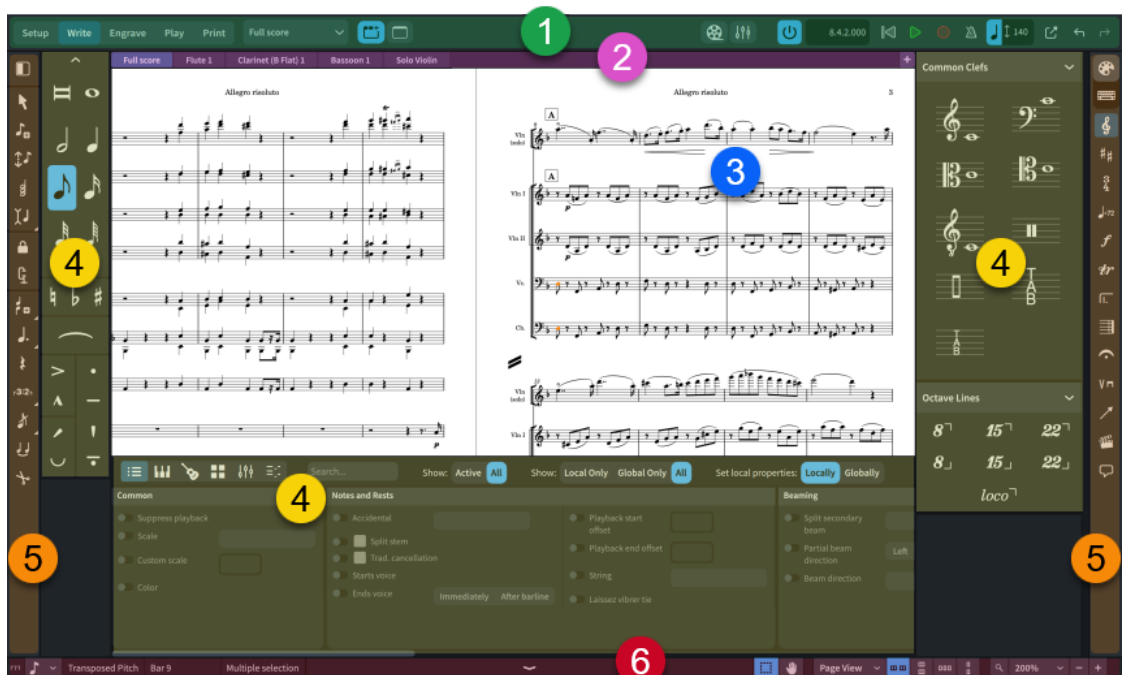
[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
[Properties](#) on page 663

User interface

The user interface of Dorico Elements is designed to keep all of the important tools at your fingertips. This chapter introduces you to key aspects of the user interface.

Project window

Dorico Elements's main project window allows you to access all the options and tools you need to work on a project. You can open multiple project windows for the same project or for different projects.



The project window comprises the following areas:

1 Toolbar

Allows you to access the modes, workspace options, the **Mixer** window, the **Video** window, and the mini transport. Also allows you to undo and redo actions.

2 Tab bar

Displays all open tabs. If you split the music area and open several tabs, tab groups are shown. Available in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

3 Central area

The central part of the project window where you work on your project.

When you start a new empty project, this area shows the project start area that allows you to add your first players.

Once you have added a player or an ensemble, this area becomes the music area that shows the music notation of the currently selected layout.

In Play mode, this area contains a track overview that displays your music in a similar way to that used in a digital audio workstation, or "DAW", such as Cubase.

In Print mode, the print preview area shows a preview of how your project will appear when printed onto paper or exported into a graphics file format.

4 Zones

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to create and edit your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode.

5 Toolboxes

Toolboxes provide access to items and tools that you can use to input and edit your music. Different toolboxes contain different items and tools according to the mode.

6 Status bar

Allows you to choose a different view and page arrangement of the music area. It also contains zoom options and a summary of your current selection in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

[Workspace setup](#) on page 43

[Project window in Setup mode](#) on page 109

[Project window in Write mode](#) on page 195

[Project window in Engrave mode](#) on page 502

[Project window in Play mode](#) on page 519

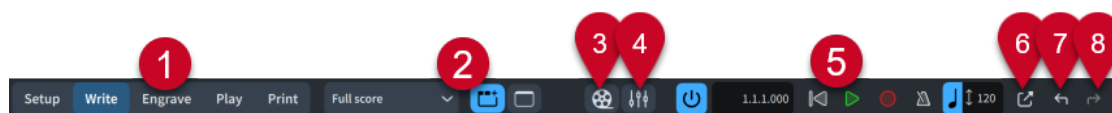
[Project window in Print mode](#) on page 576

Toolbar

The toolbar allows you to access modes and workspace options as well as the **Mixer** and main transport options. It is located at the top of the project window and is available in all modes.

You can hide/show the toolbar in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-6**.
- Choose **Window > Show Toolbar**.



The toolbar contains the following:

1 Modes

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. If the width of the main project window becomes sufficiently small, the mode buttons become a menu.

2 Workspace options

Allow you to select different layouts to open in the music area, hide/show zones, and hide/show the tab bar.

3 Show Video

Hides/Shows the **Video** window.

4 Show Mixer

Hides/Shows the **Mixer** window.

5 Mini transport

Allows you quick access to the main transport functions, including **Play**, **Record**, and **Click**.

6 Show Transport Bar

Hides/Shows the **Transport** window, which contains playback and MIDI recording functions.

7 Undo

Allows you to undo previous actions.

8 Redo

Allows you to restore previous actions that were undone using **Undo**.

RELATED LINKS

[Hub](#) on page 69

[Modes in Dorico](#) on page 19

[Transport window](#) on page 555

[Videos](#) on page 189

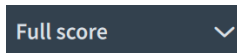
[Mixer window](#) on page 718

[Undoing/Redoing actions](#) on page 438

Workspace options

The workspace options in the middle of the toolbar provide options that allow you to select different layouts and to change the working environment.

Layout selector



Allows you to select other layouts to show in the current tab.

Show Tabs

Shows/Hides the tab bar above the music area.



Show Tabs when the tab bar is hidden



Show Tabs when the tab bar is shown

Hide/Restore Zones

Shows/Hides all open zones.



Hide/Restore Zones when zones are shown



Hide/Restore Zones when all zones were previously shown but are now all hidden

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Zones and panels](#) on page 37

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

Mini transport

The mini transport on the right of the toolbar provides quick access to the main transport functions of Dorico Elements.

Activate Project

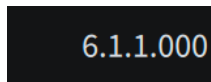


Activates/Deactivates playback in the project. When playback is deactivated, transport and playback functions are disabled.

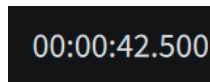
Time display

Shows the position of the playhead in one of the following formats:

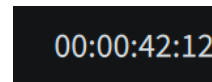
- Bars, beats, and ticks
- Elapsed time in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, milliseconds
- Timecode in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, frames



Time display showing bars and beats



Time display showing elapsed time



Time display showing the timecode

You can change the content shown in the time display by clicking it.

Rewind to Beginning of Flow



Moves the playhead back to the beginning of the flow.

Play

Starts/Stops playback, either from the playhead position or the earliest selected item, depending on your setting on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.



Play when playback is stopped



Play during playback

Record

Starts/Stops MIDI recording.



Record outside of MIDI recording



Record during MIDI recording

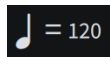
Click



Plays/Mutes the metronome click during playback and recording.

Tempo Mode

Displays the tempo used for both playback and recording. The value changes according to the playhead position, and its appearance changes according to its mode.

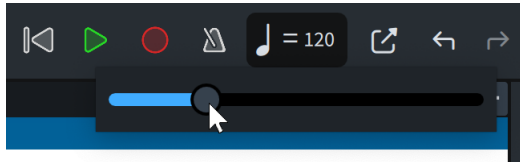


Fixed Tempo Mode



Follow Tempo Mode

- You can change the tempo mode by clicking the beat unit.
- You can change the metronome mark value used in fixed tempo mode by clicking the number to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



Scrub Playback

Activates/Deactivates scrub playback.



Scrub Playback outside of scrubbing



Scrub Playback during scrubbing

TIP

The **Transport** window contains additional transport functions.

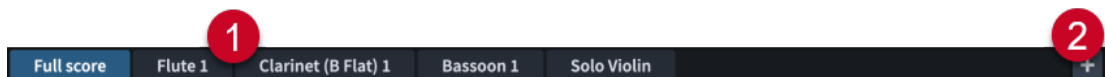
RELATED LINKS

- [Transport window](#) on page 555
- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Moving the playhead](#) on page 538
- [Scrubbing](#) on page 542
- [MIDI recording](#) on page 264
- [Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543
- [Changing the sound used for the click](#) on page 533
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Timecodes](#) on page 1226

Tab bar

The tab bar in Dorico Elements allows you to display different layouts within the same project window. It is located between the toolbar and the music area.

- You can hide/show the tab bar by clicking **Show Tabs**  in the toolbar.

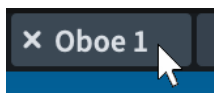


The tab bar contains the following:

1 Tabs

Displays all open tabs, with their position from left to right reflecting the order in which you opened them. Each tab is labeled with the name of the selected layout. The tab currently in view in the music area is highlighted.

When you hover over an individual tab, an **x** appears that allows you to close the tab.



2 New Tab

Allows you to open a new tab. Tabs can contain a different layout, or an additional view of a layout that is already open in another tab or window.

TIP

You can change whether the tab bar is hidden or shown in new projects by default in **Preferences > General > View**.

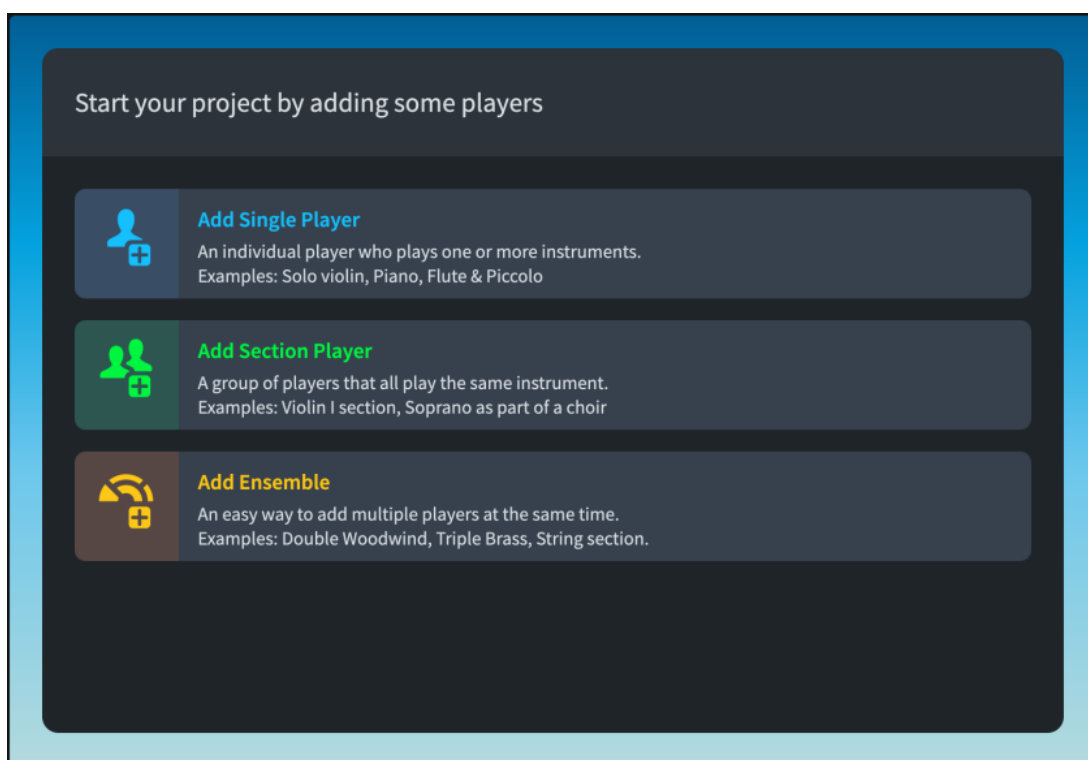
RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Project start area

The project start area is displayed in the middle of the project window in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes when you set up a new empty project. When you add at least one player, the view changes into the music area.

The project start area shows cards that allow you to add players to the project.

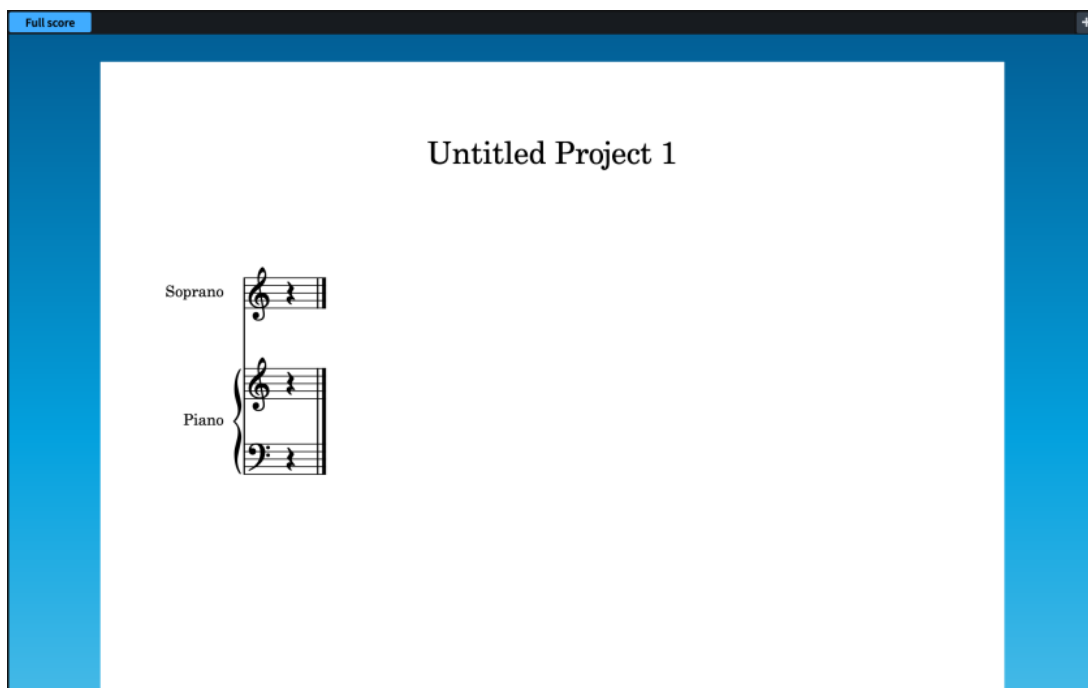


RELATED LINKS

[Adding players](#) on page 124

Music area

In Setup, Write, and Engrave modes, the music area shows the music notation of the currently selected layout. It is the central part of the project window where you work on your project.



The music area displays layouts in either galley view or page view. In Engrave mode, layouts always appear in page view.

The tab bar above the music area allows you to open multiple layouts in the project simultaneously and switch between them. The scroll bars to the right and to the bottom of the music area allow you to scroll within the layout.

You can use the layout selector in the toolbar to show other layouts in the music area.

When zones are open on the right, left, and lower edges of the window, the size of the music area can be reduced. You can hide/show zones when necessary.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

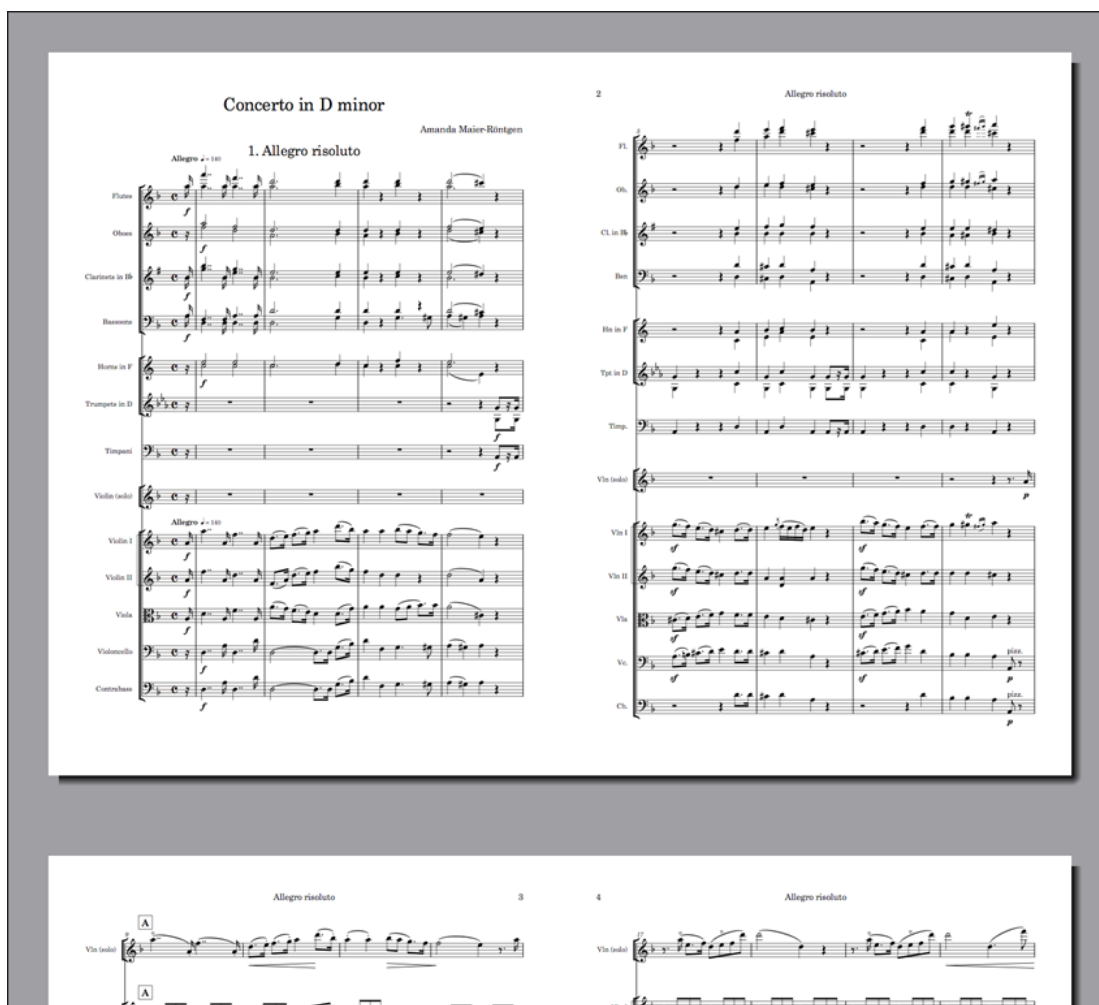
[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Navigation](#) on page 439

[Layouts](#) on page 174

Print preview area

The print preview area is the central part of the project window in Print mode that shows a preview of what will be printed or exported as a graphic.



Print preview area displaying a score set to print 2-up

The print preview area shows a preview of the first layout selected in the **Layouts** panel. You can scroll through the pages that are shown, but you cannot edit layouts. If you want to make changes, you must switch to Setup or Write mode.

TIP

You can go directly to the first page in the layout by pressing **Home**, and to the last page by pressing **End**. You can change these key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

If you select multiple layouts to be printed as part of the same print job, the print preview area only displays the first layout. If you want to show the expected page arrangement for each layout in the print preview, you must check each layout individually before you start printing.

RELATED LINKS

[Project window in Print mode](#) on page 576

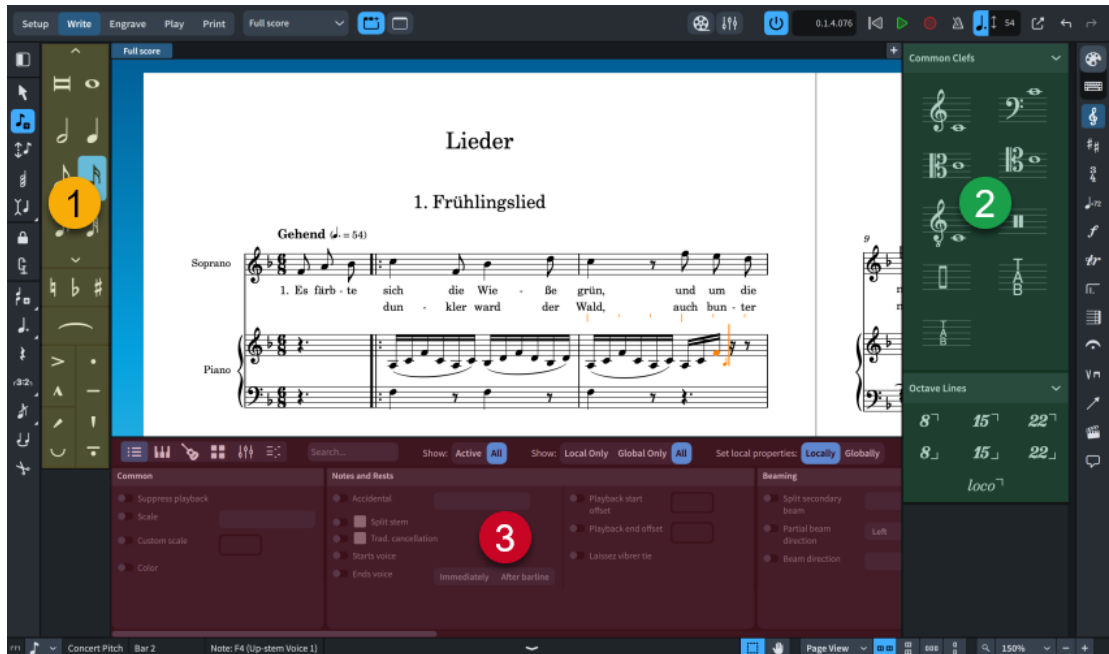
[Layouts panel \(Print mode\)](#) on page 577

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Zones and panels

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to set up, write, edit, and format your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode.

You can hide/show each zone individually or all of them at the same time.



- 1 Left zone. In Write mode, this contains the Notes panel.
- 2 Right zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, according to the current selection in the Notations toolbox.
- 3 Lower zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, including the Properties panel and Mixer.

The zones contain different panels in each mode in Dorico Elements.

Modes and their panels

Mode	Left Zone	Right Zone	Lower Zone
Setup	Players panel	Layouts panel	Flows panel
Write	Notes panel	Notations panels	Properties, Keyboard, Fretboard, Drum Pads, Mixer, and Key Editor panels
Engrave	Formatting panel	n/a	Properties and Mixer panels
Play	Track Inspector and VST and MIDI panel	n/a	Mixer and Key Editor panels
Print	Layouts panel	Print Options panel	n/a

RELATED LINKS

- [Modes in Dorico](#) on page 19
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117
- [Flows panel](#) on page 120
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Right zone \(Write mode\)](#) on page 204
- [Lower zone \(Write mode\)](#) on page 205
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Mixer panel](#) on page 717
- [Layouts panel \(Print mode\)](#) on page 577
- [Print Options panel](#) on page 578

Toolboxes

Toolboxes are located on the right and left edges of the project window in some modes. They contain different tools and options according to the current mode, but in general they allow you to input and modify notes/items and to show different panels in the corresponding zone.

The following toolboxes are available in the different modes:

Write mode

- Notes toolbox on the left of the project window
- Notations toolbox on the right of the project window

Engrave mode

- Engrave toolbox on the left of the project window

RELATED LINKS

- [Project window](#) on page 29
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Status bar

The status bar at the bottom of the project window allows you to choose different views and page arrangements for the music area.

NOTE

Not all options in the status bar are available in all modes.



1 Rhythmic Grid selector

Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution, which affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move.

2 Layout transposition

Allows you to change the transposition of the layout currently open in the music area.

3 Order

Allows you to change the instrument score order. Only available in Setup mode.

4 Selection summary

Displays the following information about the current selection, from left to right:

- The bar/range of bars of the current selection
- Summary of the selection; for example, the pitch and voice of a single selected note, or the implied chord of multiple selected notes

5 Disclosure arrow

Allows you to hide/show the lower zone.

6 Follow playhead

Allows you to enable/disable views in the corresponding window to follow the playhead during playback.

7 Selection tools

Allow you to switch between using the **Marquee Tool** and the **Hand Tool**.

8 View type

Allows you to change the view type of the layout currently open in the music area between page view and galley view.

9 Page arrangement options



Allow you to choose between different horizontal and vertical arrangements of either individual pages or pairs of pages, which are called spreads.

10 Zoom options

Allow you to change the zoom factor of the music area and its musical contents. There are preset zoom levels, but you can also use a custom zoom level.

11 MIDI activity indicator/Audio engine connection warning

Indicates that there might be MIDI or audio problems that require your attention.

- A brief green light  indicates that Dorico Elements is receiving MIDI input from a connected device. If the green light is persistent, a connected MIDI device is sending lots of data, which can cause problems.
- A warning icon  indicates that Dorico Elements is unable to send MIDI events to the audio engine; for example, if no device is chosen or the sample rate is wrong. You can click the warning icon to open the **Device Setup** dialog, where you can fix the problem in most cases.

RELATED LINKS

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[MIDI recording](#) on page 264

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices](#) on page 270

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780

Hiding/Showing status bar tools

You can change which tools appear in the status bar; for example, to reduce the minimum project window width.

PROCEDURE

- Right-click in the status bar, then choose the tool that you want to hide/show.
For example, to hide the summary of the current selection, choose **Selection Summary** so that no tick appears beside it.

RESULT

The corresponding tool is hidden/shown in the status bar in the current project and all future projects on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

[Switching between modes](#) on page 43

Selection tools

The status bar in Dorico Elements contains selection tools that you can use to select items and change the music shown within the music area.

Marquee Tool



Allows you to drag a rectangle to select multiple notes and notations.

Hand Tool



Allows you to move the view within the music area.

TIP

- You can press **Alt/Opt-H** to switch between selection tools.
- To use the other tool briefly without selecting it, **Shift**-drag with the mouse.
- You can change the default selection tool for all future projects on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Selecting multiple items using marquee selections](#) on page 424

[Moving the view in the music area](#) on page 442

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

View types

In Dorico Elements there are different ways to view your layouts.

The following view types are available:

Galley View

Lays out all the staves in the current layout and flow on a single continuous system.

This view type is most useful during the process of inputting the music as it allows you to focus on the musical content of your project. Because it shows all staves, galley

view is particularly useful when inputting notes for single players holding multiple instruments.

By default, bar numbers are shown every bar above every staff. Staff labels are also shown above every staff, and follow the view as you scroll so they are always visible.

NOTE

Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.

Page View

Displays your layout paginated exactly as it appears when you print or export it.

This view type is useful for determining appropriate page turns, for example.

NOTE

- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.
 - You can change the default view type used for all future projects in **Preferences > General > View**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Changing the staff spacing in galley view](#) on page 623

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Players](#) on page 123

[Instruments](#) on page 130

Page arrangements for page view

Page arrangement options in the status bar allow you to change the way pages are arranged in the music area, for layouts shown in page view.

Spreads Horizontally



Displays pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from left to right in a row.

Spreads Vertically



Displays pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from top to bottom in a column.

Single Pages Horizontally



Displays individual pages laid out from left to right.

Single Pages Vertically



Displays individual pages laid out from top to bottom.

Zoom options

Zoom options in the status bar allow you to change the displayed size of pages in the music area.

Custom Zoom



Opens a dialog that allows you to set a custom zoom percentage.

Set Zoom



Allows you to select one of the preset zoom scaling factors.

Zoom Out



Decreases the size of notes and notations in the music area.

Zoom In



Increases the size of notes and notations in the music area.

TIP

You can change the default zoom level that is used when opening layouts in all future projects in **Preferences > General > View**.

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

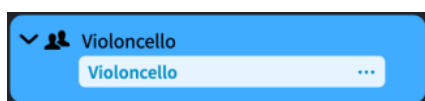
[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Zooming in/out of the music area](#) on page 443

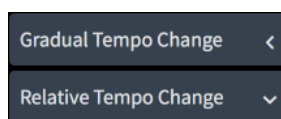
Disclosure arrows

Disclosure arrows indicate that objects, areas, and menus can be expanded/collapsed, either vertically or horizontally.

In Dorico Elements, disclosure arrows are commonly used to expand/collapse sections in panels and cards, such as player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



Disclosure arrow for a player card



Disclosure arrows for sections in the Tempo panel

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

Workspace setup

Dorico Elements enables you to set up your workspace according to your working style. For example, you can open multiple tabs to display multiple layouts in the same window. You can also open the same project in multiple project windows.

RELATED LINKS

- [Navigation](#) on page 439
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Starting new projects](#) on page 71

Switching between modes

You can switch between modes at any time and in different ways. For example, if you want to add more players to your project in Setup mode after starting to input music in Write mode.

PROCEDURE

- Switch between modes in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus one of the numbers **1** to **5** (**Ctrl/Cmd-1** for Setup, **Ctrl/Cmd-2** for Write, **Ctrl/Cmd-3** for Engrave, **Ctrl/Cmd-4** for Play, **Ctrl/Cmd-5** for Print).
 - Click the corresponding button in the toolbar.
 - Choose **Window > [mode]**.
 - To switch to Write mode, double-click in the music area in Setup mode or Engrave mode.

TIP

You can disable this option in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Modes in Dorico](#) on page 19
- [Project window](#) on page 29
- [Toolbar](#) on page 30
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Opening multiple project windows](#) on page 49

Switching between layouts

You can change which layout is displayed in the current tab in the music area in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes, or in the track overview in Play mode. For example, if you want to check individual part layouts.

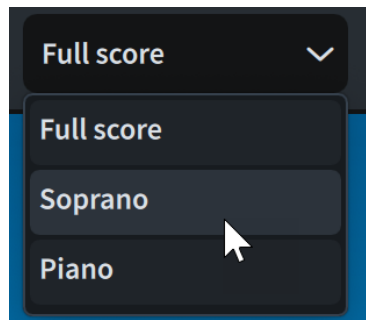
NOTE

You can only switch between layouts to which players are assigned.

PROCEDURE

- Switch to another layout in any of the following ways:
 - To switch to the next layout, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-]** or choose **Window > Next Layout**.
 - To switch to the previous layout, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-[** or choose **Window > Previous Layout**.

- Select an item on a staff or in the piano roll of the player whose layout you want to open, then press **W** or choose **Window > Counterpart Layout**.
- In the toolbar, click the layout selector and select a layout from the menu.



RESULT

The selected layout is opened in the music area. It replaces the layout previously open in the tab.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

[Navigation](#) on page 439

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Switching between flows in the track overview](#) on page 521


Hiding/Showing zones


You can hide/show individual zones or all zones simultaneously; for example, to increase the space available for displaying music in the music area, or to access options in a specific panel.

NOTE

In some modes, not all methods are available.

PROCEDURE

1. Hide/Show the left zone in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
 - In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone** .
 - Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
 - Choose **Window > Show Left Zone**.
2. Hide/Show the right zone in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
 - Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.

- Choose **Window > Show Right Zone**.
3. Hide/Show the lower zone in any of the following ways:
- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
 - Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
 - Choose **Window > Show Lower Zone**.
4. Hide/Show all zones in any of the following ways:
- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-0**.
 - In the toolbar, click **Hide/Restore Zones** .
 - Choose **Window > Hide/Restore Zones**.
-

RESULT

The corresponding zones are hidden/shown.

If you hide all active zones, the **Hide/Restore Zones** button in the toolbar indicates which zones were previously active but are now hidden.

TIP

- You can assign key commands for showing specific panels in the lower zone on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
 - You can choose to hide the right/left zones when the lower zone is shown, and vice versa, automatically in all future projects in **Preferences > General > Window**.
-

EXAMPLE



Hide/Restore Zones button when zones are shown



Hide/Restore Zones button when all zones were previously shown but are now all hidden

RELATED LINKS

[Zones and panels](#) on page 37

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Disclosure arrows](#) on page 42


[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Opening new tabs


You can open multiple tabs in the same project window, which you can use to display multiple layouts or different views of the same layout. For example, you can show your full score layout in page view in one tab and in galley view in another tab.

Each tab can contain a separate layout or a different view of a layout already open in another tab or window. Whenever you open a new tab, you are prompted to select a layout that you want to display in the tab.

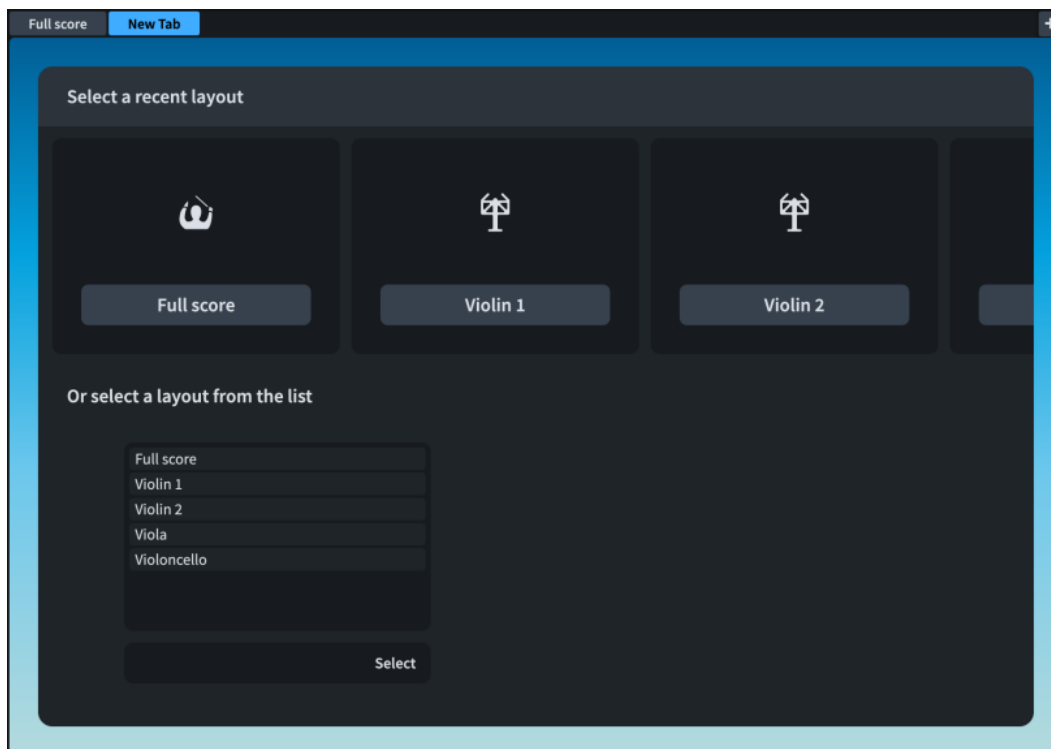
You can find tabs in the tab bar, located at the top of the music area, below the toolbar. If no tabs are shown, click **Show Tabs**  in the toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Open a new tab in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-T**.
- At the right end of the tab bar, click **New Tab** .
- Choose **Window > New Tab**.

A new tab opens that shows recent layouts at the top and a list of other layouts in the project at the bottom. If the tab bar was hidden, it is now shown.



2. Select a layout to open in the new tab in any of the following ways:

- Click one of the icons.
- In the list at the bottom, select a layout.
- In the toolbar, click the layout selector and select a layout.

RESULT

The layout that you choose opens in the active tab.

TIP

You can also switch between different layouts within the same tab.

RELATED LINKS

[Tab bar](#) on page 33

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

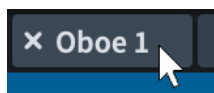
[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

Closing tabs

You can close individual tabs of layouts that you no longer need, and you can close multiple tabs at the same time.

PROCEDURE

- Close tabs in any of the following ways:
 - Select the tab you want to close and press **Ctrl/Cmd-W**.
 - Hover over the tab you want to close and click **x**.



- Right-click the single tab you want to close and choose **Close Tab** from the context menu.
- Right-click the tab you do not want to close and choose **Close Other Tabs** from the context menu.

NOTE

You cannot close the last tab in a window. If only one tab is open and you no longer want to see the tabs, deactivate **Show Tabs** in the main toolbar. The tab is no longer displayed, but the corresponding layout is still shown.

RESULT

If you selected a single tab and closed it, the selected tab and its corresponding layout are closed.

If you selected a single tab and closed other tabs, all open tabs except for the selected tab are closed.

Switching between tabs

You can switch between different open tabs to show different layouts in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Switch tabs in any of the following ways:
 - To cycle forwards through all open tabs, press **Ctrl-Tab**.
 - To cycle backwards through all open tabs, press **Ctrl-Shift-Tab**.
 - Click the tab to which you want to switch.

TIP

- You can choose to keep selected items in view automatically when switching between tabs and windows on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
- You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Changing the order of tabs

You can move tabs to a different position on the tab bar.

PROCEDURE

- Click and drag a tab to the new position.
The other tabs move to show where the dragged tab will be positioned.
-

Showing multiple tabs in the same project window

You can split your project window to display two tabs at the same time. The split can be either vertical or horizontal, allowing you to display different layouts either side by side or above one another.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tab of the layout that you want to move to a new tab group.
 2. Split the view in one of the following ways:
 - To show layouts side by side, choose **Window > Vertical Split**.
 - To show layouts above one another, choose **Window > Horizontal Split**.
-

RESULT

The project window is split to display two tabs at the same time. The selected tab is moved to the new tab group.

Moving tabs to another tab group

You can move tabs to other tab groups. For example, if you want to compare different layouts or two views of the same layout.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened at least two tabs, and they are both shown in the same project window.

PROCEDURE

- Click and drag the tab into the target tab group.
-

Moving tabs to other windows

You can move tabs to another open window of the same project to show the corresponding layouts in a new window. For example, if you want to compare two layouts on two displays.

NOTE

- The layouts must belong to the same project. If you attempt to move a tab to a window of a different project, a new window is created for the project to which the layout belongs.
 - You can only move tabs to other windows if you have opened at least two tabs.
-

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:

- To create a new project window with the tab inserted, either click and drag the tab away from the tab bar and release it, or choose **Window > Move Tab To New Window**. You can also right-click tabs and choose this option from the context menu.
 - To move the tab to an existing project window, click and drag the tab onto the tab bar in the corresponding project window.
-

Opening multiple project windows

You can open multiple project windows for the same project; for example, if you want to work on multiple layouts at the same time. You can also show a different mode of the same project in each window, such as having one window show Write mode and another show Play mode.

By default, all windows that belong to the same project show the playhead and move the view to follow the music during playback.

PROCEDURE

- Open a new project window in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-T**.
 - Choose **Window > New Window**.
-

RESULT

A duplicate of the window opens. It contains the same tabs and the same view options as the original window.

TIP

You can choose to keep selected items in view automatically when switching between tabs and windows on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Switching between modes](#) on page 43
- [Switching between tabs](#) on page 47
- [Playhead](#) on page 538
- [Hiding/Showing the playhead](#) on page 539
- [Enabling/Disabling playhead following](#) on page 539

Switching to full screen view

You can maximize the amount of screen space available for your music by making any project window cover the whole screen.

You can also hide the desktop elements provided by your operating system; for example, the task bar in Windows or the system menu bar and Dock in macOS.

Within Dorico Elements, you can also hide/show the zones on the edges of the window.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Full Screen**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

To return to the default view, choose **View > Full Screen** again.

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Zooming in/out of the music area](#) on page 443
- [Moving the view in the music area](#) on page 442
- [Hiding/Showing status bar tools](#) on page 40





Switching to galley/page view

You can switch between different view types in the music area in Setup mode and Write mode. For example, if a flute player in your project is doubling piccolo, you can switch to galley view to see the piccolo staff in addition to the flute staff.

NOTE

In Engrave mode, layouts always appear in page view.

PROCEDURE

1. Switch to galley or page view in any of the following ways:
 - To switch to galley view, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-2** or choose **Galley View** in the status bar.
 - To switch to page view, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-1** or choose **Page View** in the status bar.
 2. Optional: If you selected **Page View**, choose one of the available page arrangements in the status bar.
 - To show display pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from left to right in a row, choose **Spreads Horizontally** .
 - To display pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from top to bottom in a column, choose **Spreads Vertically** .
 - To display individual pages laid out from left to right, choose **Single Pages Horizontally** .
 - To display individual pages laid out from top to bottom, choose **Single Pages Vertically** .
-

RESULT

The view type in the music area is changed.

- In page view, only staves containing notes or items are shown by default. For players holding multiple empty instruments, only the top instrument is shown in full scores.
- In galley view, all staves in the project are shown. By default, guide bar numbers are shown above each staff and guide instrument labels are shown above each instrument. For players holding multiple instruments, the player name is also shown in guide instrument labels.

NOTE

- Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.
- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.
- You can change the default view type used for all projects in **Preferences > General > View**.

- You can assign a key command for **Toggle View Type** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command switches between galley view and page view.
 - You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

In galley view, you can use instrument filters to show only specific staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Changing the staff spacing in galley view](#) on page 623

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers](#) on page 829

[Renaming players](#) on page 182

[Instrument filters](#) on page 445

Changing your preferred unit of measurement

You can change your default preferred unit of measurement to be used throughout Dorico Elements for options that use absolute measurements, such as the size of page margins in **Layout Options**. It does not affect options that are relative to the size of staves, such as options in **Notation Options**.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **General** section, select one of the following options from the **Preferred unit of measurement** menu:
 - **Points (pt)**
 - **Millimeters (mm)**
 - **Inches (in)**
 - **Centimeters (cm)**
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Changing the middle C numbering convention

You can change the numbering convention used for middle C (MIDI note 60) throughout Dorico Elements, including in the piano roll editor, Keyboard panel, and status bar display. By default, MIDI note 60 is numbered as C4 in Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **General** section, choose one of the following options for **Middle C (note 60)**:
 - **C3**
 - **C4**

- **C5**

4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

Color setup

Dorico Elements allows you to change the colors used in different contexts, including for project windows and pages in each type of layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Annotations](#) on page 597

[View options for notes and rests](#) on page 1064

[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

[Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064

Changing the window color theme

You can change the color theme used throughout Dorico Elements; for example, you might switch to the light theme if you prefer to read dark text on a light background. By default, Dorico Elements uses the dark theme, which shows light text on a dark background.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **Window** section, select one of the following options from the **Theme** menu:
 - **Dark**
 - **Light**
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

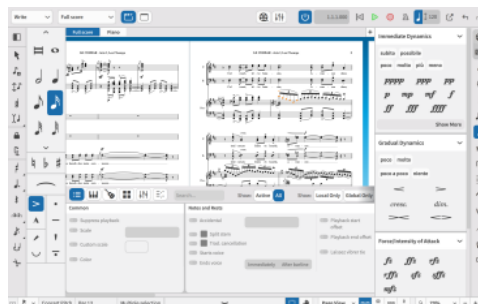
RESULT

The color theme used in Dorico Elements is changed. This affects the current project immediately and all future projects you open, until you next change your setting.

EXAMPLE



Dark theme



Light theme

Changing the page color

You can change the color of pages in each of the different layout types; for example, to help you identify whether you are in a part layout or full score layout, or to make reading the music easier or more comfortable.

By default, full score and custom score layouts have white pages, while part layouts have cream pages.


PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
 3. In the **Page Colors** section, change the page color for **Full score layouts**, **Part layouts**, and/or **Custom score layouts** in any of the following ways:
 - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
 - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The page color in layouts of the corresponding type is changed in the current project and all future projects you open. This does not affect the resulting page color when exporting or printing layouts.

TIP

You can reset page colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset**  for each layout type.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

Changing the background color

You can change the background color of the music area. The background can be a gradient of up to four colors or a single block color. You can also change the background color for Write mode and Engrave mode independently of each other; for example, to help you identify which mode you are in.


PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Background Colors** section, choose one of the following options for **Use for Write mode** and/or **Engrave mode**:
 - **Gradient**
 - **Single Color**
4. Change the background color in one of the following ways:
 - If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a preset selection of colors, select it from the **Preset** menu.
 - If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a custom selection of colors, either click each color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter color codes into the value fields.
 - If you chose **Single Color**, either click the **Stop 1** color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter a color code into the value field.

RESULT

The background color is changed in the current project and all future projects you open.

TIP

- The background color set for Write mode is also used in Setup mode.
- You can reset background colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset** .

Changing music area colors

You can change the colors used for various purposes in the music area, including the first eight voice colors on each staff and the color of selected items. For example, if you find specific color combinations easier to read than others.

PROCEDURE


1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Voice Colors** section, change the color for each voice in any of the following ways:
 - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
 - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
4. In the **Other Colors** section, change the color for each item in any of the following ways:
 - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
 - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The color of the corresponding voices and items is changed in the current project and all future projects you open.

TIP

You can reset colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset**  for each voice or item.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Annotations](#) on page 597
- [View options for notes and rests](#) on page 1064
- [Hiding/Showing colors for accidentals](#) on page 795
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [MIDI recording](#) on page 264
- [Playhead](#) on page 538
- [Tablature](#) on page 1330
- [Linked dynamics](#) on page 951
- [Linked slurs](#) on page 1297

Inverting colors

You can invert the colors used for music and pages in Dorico Elements, which by default shows white music on black pages. You can then customize the inverted page color; for example, to show white music on a blue background.

PROCEDURE


1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
 3. In the **Page Colors** section, activate **Invert colors for music (white on black)**.
 4. Change the inverted page color in any of the following ways:
 - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
 - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The colors for music and pages are inverted in the current project and all future projects you open. Music always appears white, while pages use the inverted page color you set. This does not affect the resulting colors when exporting or printing layouts.

Deactivating **Invert colors for music (white on black)** returns music/page colors to their non-inverted configuration.



TIP

You can reset the inverted page color back to the default factory setting by clicking **Reset** .

Changing the color of items

You can change the color of individual notes and items; for example, to distinguish specific items when creating educational worksheets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose color you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Color** in the **Common** group.
3. Click the color preview to open the **Select Color (Windows)/Colors (macOS)** dialog.
4. Select or create the color you want.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The color of the selected items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default color of many items, such as by editing the paragraph style of text-based notations.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Lyrics paragraph styles](#) on page 1041
- [Staff label paragraph styles](#) on page 1318

Language setup

Dorico Elements allows you to change the language used in different contexts, including for the application itself and for instrument names in staff labels.

RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the keyboard language](#) on page 64
- [Instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1314

Changing the application language

You can change the language used for the user interface in the current project and all future projects you open; for example, if your operating system language is different to the language you want to use in Dorico Elements.

NOTE

Changing the application language does not affect the language used for instrument names or date and time tokens.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **General** section, select the language you want to use from the **Language** menu.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The language used for the user interface in the current project and all future projects is changed. If your keyboard language is set to **Default**, the keyboard language is also changed.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Changing the keyboard language](#) on page 64

Changing the language for instrument names

You can change the language used for instrument names; for example, if you want to recreate a French score. This affects staff labels and instrument change labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Project Language** to open the **Project Language** dialog.
 2. Select the language you want to use from the **Instrument names language** menu.
 3. Activate/Deactivate **Reset instrument names**.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The language for all instrument names and prefixes for instrument change labels is changed project-wide. Future instruments you add to the project use your new language setting.

- If you activated **Reset instrument names**, the names of existing instruments in the project are reset to follow your new language setting.
- If you deactivated **Reset instrument names**, the names of existing instruments in the project are not reset and continue to use their existing language.

TIP

You can change the default language used for instrument names in all future projects on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Adding players](#) on page 124
- [Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133
- [Instrument changes](#) on page 136
- [Staff labels](#) on page 1309
- [Showing instrument/player names in staff labels](#) on page 1313
- [Instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1314
- [Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Changing the language for date and time tokens

You can change the language used for all date and time tokens project-wide; for example, if you want to display the date and time using a different language convention to your operating system.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Project Language** to open the **Project Language** dialog.
 2. Select the language you want to use from the **Date and time language** menu.
 3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

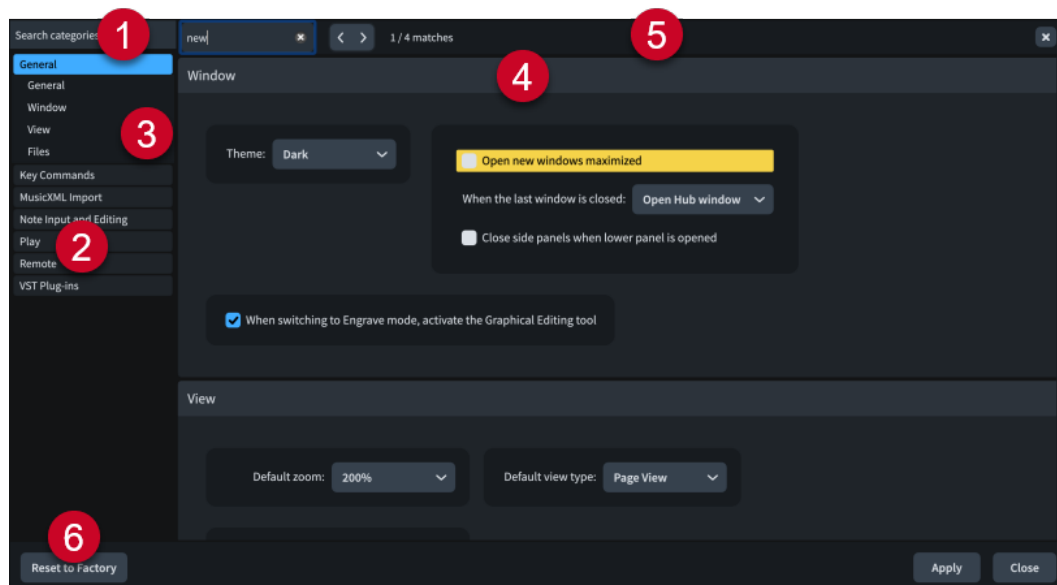
- [Tokens](#) on page 655

Preferences dialog

The **Preferences** dialog allows you to change how Dorico Elements functions by default across all projects.

You can open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,**
- Choose **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Dorico > Preferences** (macOS).



The **Preferences** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 Category list

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list, and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 Section titles

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 Section

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

NOTE




The arrangement of options on the **Key Commands** page is significantly different to other pages in the **Preferences** dialog. This page is described separately in further detail.

5 Search pages bar

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match** : Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match** : Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close** : Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 Reset to Factory

Resets all the options in the dialog back to the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

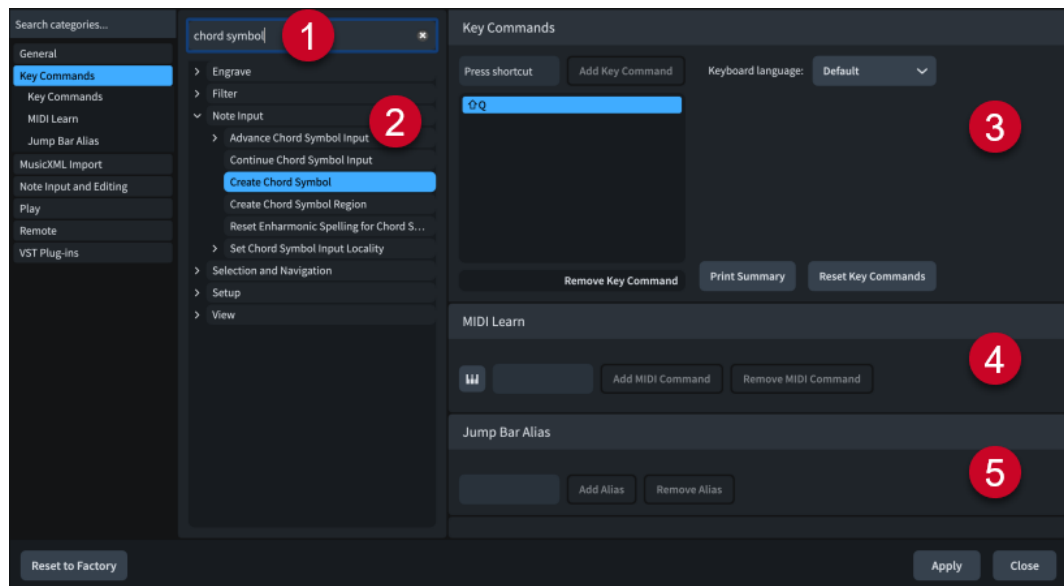
[Changing values in numeric value fields](#) on page 666

Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog

The **Key Commands** page in the **Preferences** dialog allows you to view all the functions to which you can assign key commands, change existing key commands, and assign new key commands to functions that have no key command assigned by default.

Assigning your own key commands can be helpful for items or actions that you find yourself performing regularly, such as setting specific rhythmic grid resolutions or exporting all layouts to PDF.

- You can find the **Key Commands** page by opening the **Preferences** dialog, then clicking **Key Commands** in the category list.



The **Key Commands** page comprises the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to search for functions to view, change, or add key commands. Because there are multiple levels of disclosure arrows before you reach many functions, this is often the quickest way to find what you are looking for.

2 Functions list

Displays the functions that can be assigned key commands. The list can be filtered using the **Search** field. Disclosure arrows beside options indicate that further options are available when the option is expanded.

Hovering over functions shows a tool tip, which is helpful for some functions with particularly long names.

3 Key Commands section

Displays any existing key commands set in the current keyboard language for the function selected in the list of assigned key commands, and allows you to assign new key commands.

- **Keyboard language:** Allows you to change the keyboard language used for key commands.
- **Add Key Command:** Adds the key command you pressed to the selected function.

NOTE


- You can assign multiple key commands to the same function.

- If you enter a key command that is already assigned to another function, a warning is shown.

- **Remove Key Command:** Removes the selected key command from the selected function.
- **Print Summary:** Directs you to an offline page in a web browser that displays your key commands on an interactive keyboard.
- **Reset Key Commands:** Resets all of your key commands to their defaults.

4 MIDI Learn section

Allows you to assign MIDI controllers, notes, and combinations of notes to control functions.

- **MIDI Learn** : Prepares Dorico Elements to receive the MIDI input data that you want to save as a command.
- **Add MIDI Command:** Adds the MIDI controllers or notes you changed or pressed to the selected function.
- **Remove MIDI Command:** Removes the MIDI command from the selected function.

5 Jump Bar Alias section

Allows you to assign aliases that you can enter into the jump bar to perform the corresponding function.

- **Alias field:** Allows you to enter a jump bar alias for the selected function.
- **Add Alias:** Adds the characters you entered as the jump bar alias for the selected function.
- **Remove Alias:** Removes the existing jump bar alias from the selected function.

RELATED LINKS

[Key commands in Dorico](#) on page 26

[Assigning key commands](#) on page 63

[Assigning MIDI commands](#) on page 63

[Assigning key commands for custom zoom levels](#) on page 444

[Jump bar](#) on page 65

Interactive Dorico key commands map

The interactive **Dorico Key Commands** map shows a virtual computer keyboard, with keys that have been assigned key commands highlighted in different colors according to the modifier keys they contain. All key commands for the selected keyboard language layout are listed below, divided into global and mode-specific groups.

You can open the **Dorico Key Commands** map in any of the following ways:

- Choose **Help > Key Commands**.
- In the **Preferences** dialog, click **Key Commands** in the category list, then click **Print Summary** in the **Key Commands** section.



The interactive key commands map as it appears when US English is selected

The **Dorico Key Commands** map opens in a web browser. It allows you to do any of the following:

- To see the available key commands, select a context. The context of a key command is the mode in which it can be used. Key commands that have a global context work in all modes.
- To highlight the keys that you can press in combination with modifier keys to form a key command, press one or more modifier keys on your computer keyboard, such as **Shift** or **Ctrl/Cmd - Alt/Opt**, or click a modifier key on the virtual keyboard. The virtual computer keyboard highlights the pressed/clicked keys and displays the assigned functions on each key.
- To search for a specific key command, enter one or multiple words in the search field.
- To get an overview of all available key commands, browse the key commands that are listed below the virtual keyboard. The key commands are listed according to the context in which they can be used.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the keyboard language](#) on page 64

Searching for the key commands of functions

You can search for key commands that are assigned to functions or menu items in Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Enter the name of a function in the **Search** field.
The entries that are listed below are filtered according to the words that you enter.
4. Expand an entry and select the function for which you want to see the key command.

For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.

RESULT

If the function has a key command, it is shown in the list of assigned key commands.

TIP

You can also search for functions in the interactive key commands map.

Assigning key commands

You can assign key commands to many functions; for example, for functions you use frequently but that do not have a key command assigned by default. You can also change existing key commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
 3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.
 4. Optional: If the function already has an assigned key command, click **Remove Key Command** in the **Key Commands** section.
If you assign a new key command without removing an existing one, you can use either key command.
 5. Click the **Press shortcut** input field.
 6. On your computer keyboard, press the key command that you want to assign.
 7. Click **Add Key Command**.
If the key command you pressed is already used by another function, a warning is displayed.
 8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The key command you pressed is added to the list of assigned key commands for the selected menu item or function. You can use it immediately.

RELATED LINKS


[Assigning key commands for custom zoom levels](#) on page 444

Assigning MIDI commands

You can assign specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to perform functions and access menu items. For example, if you want to navigate using MIDI keys during chord symbol input.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Select the menu item or function to which you want to assign MIDI commands.
For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.

4. In the **MIDI Learn** section, click **MIDI Learn** .
 5. Press the key or button on your MIDI keyboard that you want to assign to the selected parameter.
 6. Click **Add MIDI Command**.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Changing the keyboard language

You can change the keyboard language used for key commands in Dorico Elements; for example, if the application language is set to German, but you are using an English keyboard and want to use English key commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Select the keyboard language you want to use for key commands from the **Keyboard language** menu.

NOTE

Default follows the application language.

4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The keyboard language used for key commands in the current project and all future projects is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the application language](#) on page 57

Removing key commands

You can remove individual key commands from a function.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
 3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
 4. In the **Key Commands** section, click **Remove Key Command**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The key command is removed from the selected function.

RELATED LINKS

[Removing jump bar aliases](#) on page 68

Resetting key commands

You can reset all the key commands in your project to their defaults.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. In the **Key Commands** section, click **Reset Key Commands**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All custom key commands are deleted and the default key commands are reinstated.

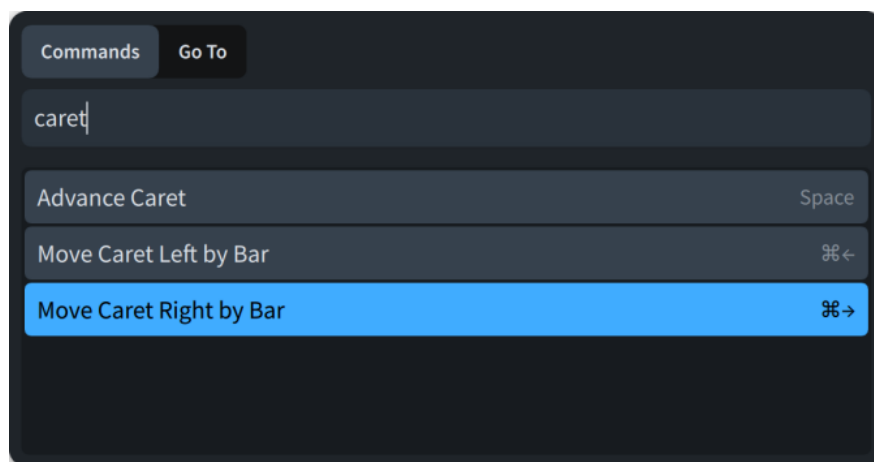
Jump bar

The jump bar is a temporary value field that allows you to perform commands and go to locations in the current layout using only your computer keyboard.

- You can show the jump bar in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes by pressing **J**.

TIP

You can assign key commands for showing the jump bar in Commands mode and Go To mode on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.



Jump bar in Commands mode with an example entry

Commands

In Commands mode, you can use the jump bar to perform commands, such as opening the **Layout Options** dialog with the specified page already selected.

- You can switch the jump bar to Commands mode by pressing **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)**.

When you start entering text into the jump bar in Commands mode, a menu appears that shows valid commands containing the letters/words you enter.

If you show the jump bar in Commands mode after performing a command, your previous entry is shown with its text selected.

You can press **Down Arrow** to show a list of up to five commands that you perform most frequently.

NOTE

- You can only perform commands using the jump bar in the same contexts as you can perform the corresponding action. For example, you can only perform Setup mode-specific actions in Setup mode.
 - You can assign jump bar aliases to specific commands; for example, so you can use shorter entries for your favorite commands.
 - If commands have a corresponding key command or jump bar alias, they are shown in the menu of valid commands.
-

Go To

In Go To mode, you can use the jump bar to go to bars, rehearsal marks, pages, and flows.

- You can switch the jump bar to Go To mode by pressing **Alt-G (Windows) or Ctrl-2 (macOS)**.
-

Example move	Jump bar entry
Go to bar number [n]; for example, bar number 32	b[n] ; for example, b32 or b+32
Go to rehearsal mark [n]; for example, rehearsal mark K	r[n] ; for example, rK or rk
Go to page number [n]; for example, page 6	p[n] ; for example, p6 or p+6
Go to flow number [n]; for example, flow 3	f[n] ; for example, f3 or f+3
Go to the next flow	fn
Go to the previous flow	fp

EXAMPLE

To go to bar 20 in flow 3, enter **f3b20**.

RELATED LINKS

[Navigation](#) on page 439

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Popovers](#) on page 22

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

Going to locations with the jump bar

You can use the jump bar to go to bars, rehearsal marks, pages, and flows in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
 2. Optional: Press **Alt-G (Windows) or Ctrl-2 (macOS)** to switch to Go To mode.
 3. Enter the appropriate entry for the location to which you want to go.
For example, enter **f3b20** to go to bar 20 in flow 3.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

Performing commands with the jump bar

You can use the jump bar to perform commands, such as opening the **Layout Options** dialog with the specified page already selected, in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to perform mode-specific commands, you are in the corresponding mode.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
 2. Optional: Press **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)** to switch to Commands mode.
 3. Select the command you want to perform in any of the following ways:
 - Enter relevant text into the jump bar.
When you start entering text into the jump bar in Commands mode, a menu appears that shows valid commands containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select by pressing **Up Arrow / Down Arrow**.
 - Enter the appropriate jump bar alias into the jump bar.
 - To show a list of up to five commands that you perform most frequently, press **Down Arrow**, then press **Up Arrow / Down Arrow** to select a command.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

Assigning jump bar aliases

You can assign jump bar aliases to specific commands; for example, so you can use shorter entries for your favorite commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
2. Optional: Press **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)** to switch to Commands mode.
3. Enter the command to which you want to assign an alias into the jump bar.

TIP

To ensure the command is entered correctly, select it from the menu of valid commands by pressing **Up Arrow / Down Arrow**.

4. Immediately after the command, enter = followed by the characters you want to use as the jump bar alias.
For example, to assign the jump bar alias **rr** to the **Remove Rests** command, enter **Remove Rests=rr**.

5. Do one of the following:

- To perform the command and assign the jump bar alias, press **Return**.
 - To assign the jump bar alias only, without performing the command, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

The characters you entered after the = are assigned as the jump bar alias for the specified command.

TIP

You can also assign jump bar aliases on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Removing jump bar aliases

You can remove jump bar aliases you have assigned to specific commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
 3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
 4. In the **Jump Bar Alias** section, click **Remove Alias**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The jump bar alias is removed from the selected function.

Project and file handling

In addition to opening and importing/exporting projects and other file formats, project and file handling also includes auto-save and project backups.

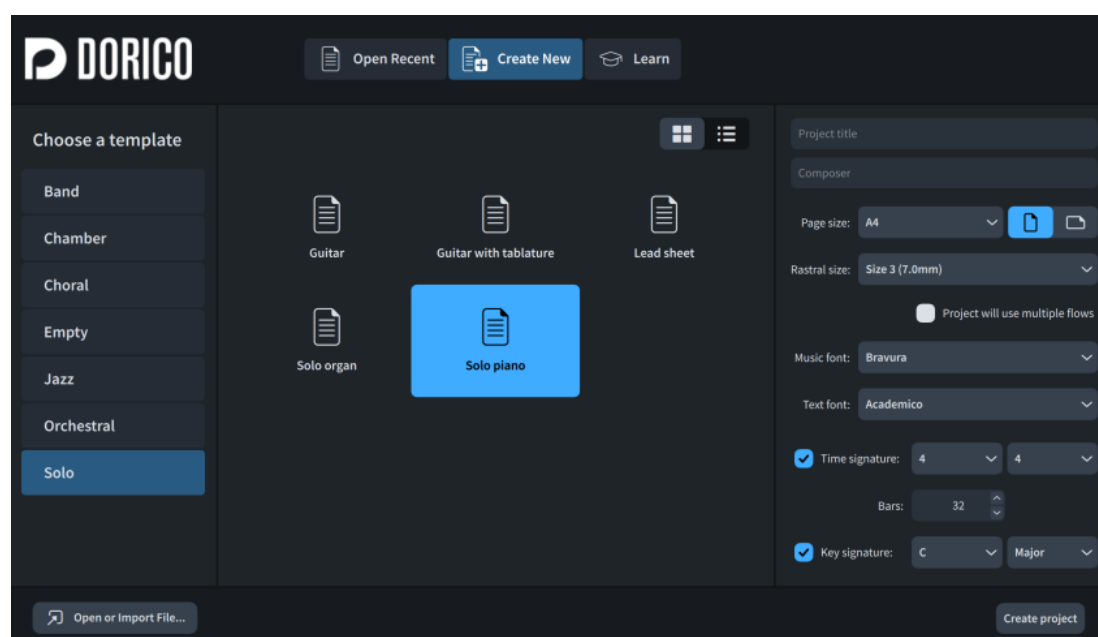
RELATED LINKS

- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [File import and export](#) on page 78
- [Auto-save](#) on page 103
- [Project backups](#) on page 105
- [Project templates](#) on page 77
- [Project Statistics dialog](#) on page 106

Hub

The Hub allows you to access recent projects, start new projects, and keep up-to-date with learning materials including tutorials, videos, and blog updates. The Hub opens automatically when you start Dorico Elements.

- You can also open the Hub by choosing **Window > Hub**.





The Hub contains the following pages:


Open Recent

Allows you quick access to the projects that you worked on last. You can scroll through the list to access recent projects out of view. You can navigate through recent projects by pressing **Up Arrow/Down Arrow**.

Double-clicking a recent project, or selecting it and pressing **Return**, opens the project.

You can choose one of the following view types for recent projects:

- **Grid view** 
- **List view** 

When recent projects are shown in the grid view, you can click the menu button  for each project to access the following options:



- **Remove from Recent Projects:** Removes the project from the **Recent Projects** page.
- **Open Enclosing Folder:** Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and shows the folder where the project is saved.

Create New



Allows you to start new projects from project templates or choose an empty project.

The **Choose a template** list on the left allows you to select a project template category, with available project templates in the selected category listed in the middle. The **Empty** project template creates a project with no players or flows.

You can choose one of the following view types for project templates:

- **Grid view** 
- **List view** 

On the right, the Project Options section provides the following options:

- **Project title:** Allows you to enter the project title.
- **Composer:** Allows you to enter the project composer.
- **Page size:** Allows you to select the page size for the full score layout.
- **Page orientation:** Allows you to choose whether the page orientation in the full score layout is **Portrait**  or **Landscape** .
- **Rastral size:** Allows you to select the staff size for the full score layout.
- **Project will use multiple flows:** When activated, flow headings are shown in all layouts, and flow titles are shown in running headers in score layouts. When deactivated, flow headings are hidden in all layouts, and the project title is shown in running headers in score layouts.
- **Music font:** Allows you to select the music font used in the project.
- **Text font:** Allows you to select the font family used throughout the project by default.
- **Time signature:** Allows you to specify a time signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no time signature, which is treated as open.
- **Bars:** Allows you to set the number of bars you want the project to contain.
- **Key signature:** Allows you to specify a key signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no key signature, which is treated as atonal.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Create project** creates a new project using the selected project template and project options. You can also double-click project templates to start a new project.

Learn

Provides access to learning materials. Dorico Elements displays a notification when new materials are available.

- **Hands-on tutorials:** Displays available practical tutorials that introduce you to common operations directly in Dorico demo projects.
- **Videos:** Displays recent Dorico video tutorials. Double-clicking a video tutorial, or selecting it and clicking **Watch Now**, opens it in a web browser.

You can find more tutorial videos and information about new features on the Dorico YouTube channel.

- **Forum:** Links you to the Steinberg user forum.
- **Manual:** Links you to the documentation.
- **Dorico Blog:** Displays recent entries in the Dorico blog. Clicking a blog entry opens it in a web browser.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Open or Import File** allows you to search for and open MusicXML, MIDI, and Dorico project files.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Project templates](#) on page 77

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Staff size](#) on page 617

Starting new projects

You can start new projects from project templates, such as for orchestra or a vocal ensemble. You can also start empty projects.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the Hub is not open, choose **Window > Hub** to open the Hub.
2. In the Hub, click **Create New** to show the **Create New** page.
3. Choose one of the following project template categories:
 - **Band**
 - **Chamber**
 - **Choral**
 - **Empty**
 - **Jazz**
 - **Orchestral**
 - **Solo**
4. Choose a project template.
5. In the Project Options section, add or change information and settings as required.

NOTE

The Project Options section does not affect **Empty** project templates.

-
6. Create a new project in any of the following ways:
 - Click **Create project**.
 - Double-click the project template.

RESULT

A new project is created using the selected project template.

TIP

- You can start a new, empty project at any time by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-N** or choosing **File > New**.
 - You can also start a new project from a project template by choosing **File > New From Project Template > [Project template category] > [Project template]**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can customize your project, such as by adding or deleting players/instruments.

RELATED LINKS

[Project templates](#) on page 77

[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Deleting players](#) on page 127

[Adding titles](#) on page 997

Opening projects/files

You can open Dorico projects at any time and in addition to other open projects; for example, if the project you want to open is not listed as a recent project in the list in the Hub. You can also open MusicXML and MIDI files.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the File Explorer/macOS Finder in any of the following ways:
 - In the Hub, click **Open or Import File**.
 - Choose **File > Open**.
 - Choose **File > Open Recent > [Project file name]**.
 2. Locate and select the files you want to open.
 3. Click **Open**.
 4. Optional: If you opened a MIDI file, change the settings as required in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog that opens.
-

RESULT

The selected files are opened.

If you opened MusicXML or MIDI files, Dorico Elements creates new project files from the MusicXML or MIDI content, which you can save as default Dorico projects.

If MusicXML files include page size, margin, and staff size settings, Dorico Elements imports those values. If they are not included, Dorico Elements creates suitable settings according to the number of instruments in the file.

TIP

- You can also import MusicXML and MIDI files as new flows in existing projects, rather than opening them as separate projects.
 - You can hide/show complete paths for recent files in the menu in **Preferences > General > Files**.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Hub](#) on page 69
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Importing MusicXML files](#) on page 82
- [Importing MIDI](#) on page 85
- [MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

Opening recent projects from the Hub

You can open projects you have recently worked on from the Hub.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the Hub is not open, choose **Window > Hub** to open the Hub.
 2. In the Hub, click **Open Recent** to show the **Open Recent** page.
 3. Double-click the recent project you want to open.
-

RESULT

The selected Dorico project is opened.

Projects from different versions of Dorico

You can open projects that were last saved in other versions of Dorico than the one you have. In such cases, Dorico Elements shows a warning message to make you aware of any implications.

The contents of the warning message vary according to the version of Dorico in which the project was last saved:

- When opening a project last saved in an older version, it shows the version number the project was last saved in and informs you that the project will be updated to your current version.
- When opening a project last saved in a newer version, it shows only that the project is from a newer version. It also informs you that items and notations from that version might not appear and will be deleted if you save the project in your current version.

In both cases, opening the project is non-destructive. This means that its contents and formatting are unaffected if you do not save it.

You can prevent Dorico Elements from showing you warnings about projects from different versions in **Preferences > General > Files**. In the same section, you can also tell Dorico Elements to prompt you to choose a new location for projects from different versions when you save them. This reduces the risk of you overwriting them by mistake.

RELATED LINKS

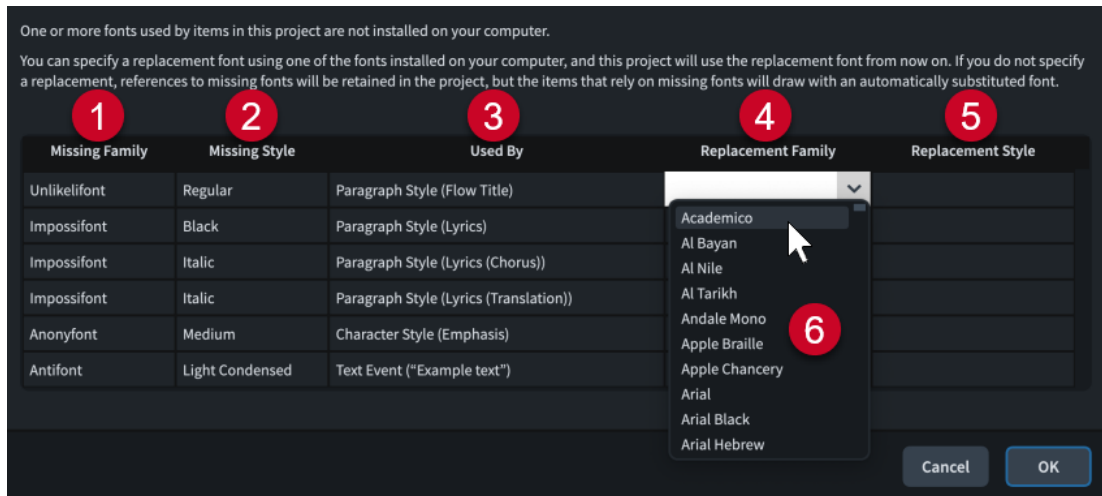
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Missing Fonts dialog

The **Missing Fonts** dialog appears when you open a project that contains a font that you do not have installed on your computer. It allows you to select replacement fonts that are installed on your computer as substitutes.

The **Missing Fonts** dialog displays a table with multiple columns that identify the specific font families and styles that are missing for font, character, and paragraph styles and text items.

Every place in the project where a font is missing has its own row. For example, if the bold style of a font family is used in three different paragraph styles, three rows are shown in the dialog, one for each paragraph style.



The **Missing Fonts** dialog comprises the following:

1 Missing Family

Contains a list of font families included in the project but missing on your computer.


2 Missing Style

Contains a list of the specific styles within the corresponding font families that are included in the project but missing on your computer.


3 Used By

Contains a list of the places in the project where the corresponding font is used.

4 Replacement Family

Allows you to select replacement font families. You can select replacement font families by double-clicking entries, then either entering the font family you want or clicking the arrow  and selecting a font family from the menu. Once selected, their names are displayed in the corresponding entry.

5 Replacement Style

Allows you to select any of the available styles within the corresponding replacement font families. You can select replacement font styles by double-clicking entries, then either entering the font style you want or clicking the arrow  and selecting a font style from the menu. Once selected, the styles are displayed in the corresponding entry.

6 Fonts

Contains a list of all the available fonts installed on your computer. You can access the menu in the **Replacement Family** and **Replacement Style** columns by double-clicking any entry.

TIP

- You can choose whether or not the **Missing Fonts** dialog appears when you open a project containing fonts not installed on your computer on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
- You can change the width of columns in the **Missing Fonts** dialog by dragging between column headings. Their widths are remembered in future projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

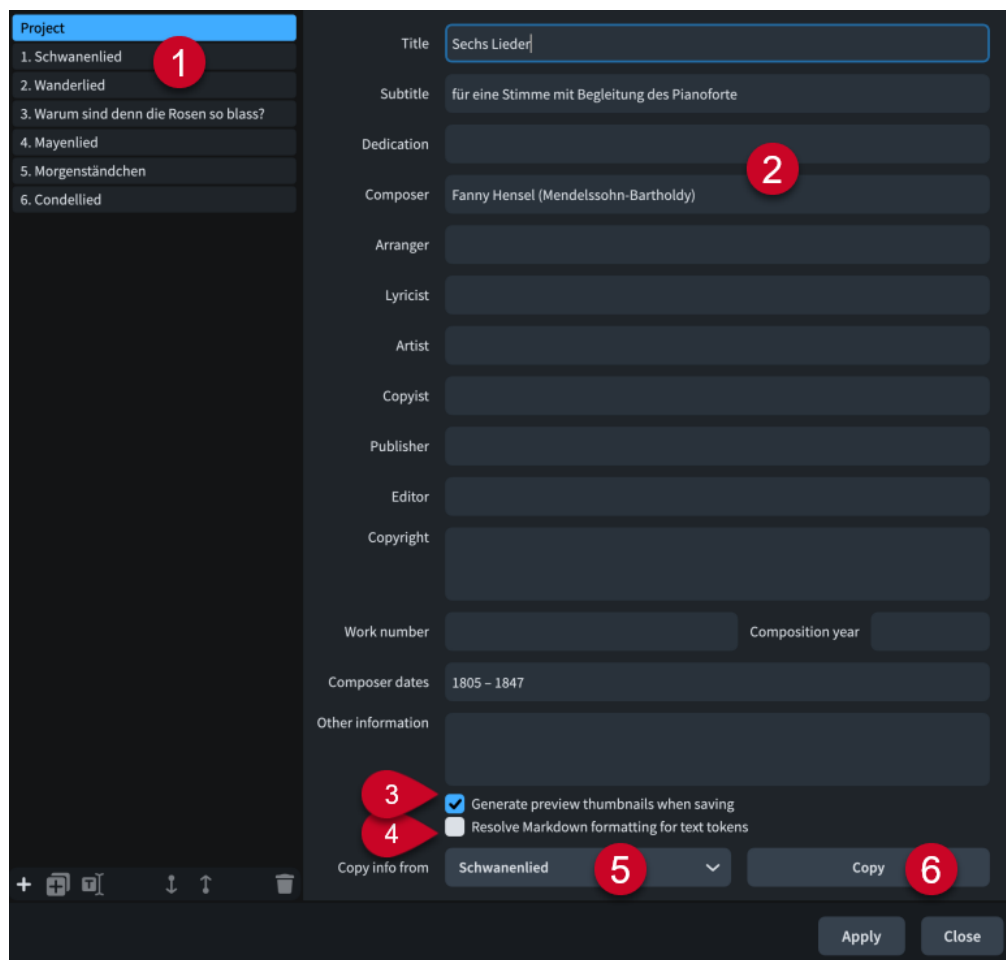
- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Character Styles dialog](#) on page 759
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Text editor options in Write mode](#) on page 389

Project Info dialog

The **Project Info** dialog allows you to specify information about the whole project and each flow within it separately, such as the title, composer, and lyricist, as these might be different for different flows. You can then refer to these entries using tokens in text frames.

You can open the **Project Info** dialog in any mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I**.
- Choose **File > Project Info**.



The **Project Info** dialog comprises the following:




1 Flows list

Contains all the flows in the project, with a separate entry for the project as a whole at the top. You can select individual or multiple flows in the flows list.

NOTE




The flows list uses the names of flows as shown in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode, which can be different to their entry in the **Title** field if you have changed their flow title.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New Flow** : Creates a new flow with no information. Its default name is **New Flow**.
- **Duplicate Flow** : Creates a new flow with all the information of the selected flow. Its default name is **Copy of [selected flow]**.
- **Rename Flow** : Opens the **Rename Flow** dialog, which allows you to change the name of the flow.

NOTE

If you have already manually changed the flow title, changing the name of the flow does not automatically change the flow title.

- **Move Down** : Moves the selected flows down the flows list, which changes their order in the project.
- **Move Up** : Moves the selected flows up the flows list, which changes their order in the project.
- **Delete Flow** : Deletes the selected flows.

2 Information fields

Allow you to enter information about the currently selected flows or the whole project in the corresponding field, such as **Composer** and **Lyricist**.

If you have selected multiple flows with different entries in the same fields, such as flows with different composers, those fields display **Mixed**.

You can change the font style of specific characters within information fields using the following Markdown formatting:

- To make characters appear in italics, enclose them inside single asterisks, such as ****Allegro****.
- To make characters appear bold, enclose them inside double asterisks, such as ******Chaminade******.
- To make characters appear bold and italic, enclose them inside triple asterisks, such as ********2g********.

TIP

If you want entire information fields to appear with the same formatting, such as all in italics, we recommend that you edit the corresponding paragraph styles.

3 Generate preview thumbnails when saving

When activated, Dorico Elements generates the following preview images of the layout open in the music area when you save the project:

- PNG file of the first page. This is displayed on the **Open Recent** page in the Hub.
- PDF file of the whole layout.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements does not generate preview images. This reduces the file size and can make saving large projects quicker.

4 Resolve Markdown formatting for text tokens

Allows you to enable/disable the resolution of Markdown formatting in information fields.

5 Copy info from menu

Allows you to select another flow or the whole project whose information you want to copy; for example, for a project containing multiple flows that all have the same composer and lyricist.

6 Copy

Copies all the information from the specified flow/project to the selected flows/project.

NOTE

- The information you add in **Project Info** only appears on pages where the corresponding tokens exist. For example, if you want to display a dedication above the project title, you must add the dedication token to the **First** page template.
- You cannot specify line breaks in single-line fields. However, you can enter line breaks in larger fields, namely **Copyright** and **Other information**, which you can then copy into single-line fields.
- By default, **First** page templates have tokens that refer to project information. If you only enter information for individual flows in the **Project Info** dialog, that information does not automatically appear on pages that use the **First** page template.

Similarly, if you started a new project from the Hub and deactivated **Project will use multiple flows**, running headers in score layouts display the project title instead of the flow title.

RELATED LINKS

- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187
- [Hiding/Showing flow headings](#) on page 611
- [Front matter](#) on page 997
- [Reordering flows](#) on page 173
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Hub](#) on page 69

Project templates

Project templates allow you to start new projects that already contain a particular set of players and project library settings. For example, full score layouts in orchestral project templates have larger page sizes than in chamber ensemble project templates.

Dorico Elements provides the following project template categories:

Band

Ensembles containing mostly woodwind and brass instruments, such as brass band or pit band.

Chamber

Typically small ensembles containing only a few players, such as string quartet.

Choral

Ensembles containing voices, including popular choir arrangements, such as SATB unaccompanied.

Empty

An empty project template.

Jazz

Popular ensembles commonly used to perform jazz, such as big band or jazz trio.

Orchestral

Large ensembles containing most Western instruments, including strings, woodwinds, brass, and percussion.

Solo

Ensembles containing only a single player/instrument, such as a solo organ, guitar with tablature, or lead sheet.

RELATED LINKS

[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Page templates](#) on page 647

File import and export

External files are files in different formats than Dorico projects, such as MIDI, MusicXML, or tempo tracks. It is possible in Dorico Elements both to import and export different types of files.

This can be useful if, for example, you want to share your project with others who use a different notation software, or to convert the notes, audio, or time signatures and tempo information in your project into other formats.

RELATED LINKS

[Exporting lyrics](#) on page 1034

[Exporting comments](#) on page 500

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

[Exporting project statistics](#) on page 107

Importing flows

You can import individual flows into existing projects; for example, if you want to bring together multiple existing pieces into one project for publishing, or if you have an empty project file with your preferred settings saved and want to reuse those settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Import > Flows** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 2. Locate and select the project files of the flows you want to import.
 3. Click **Open** to open the **Flow Import Options** dialog for the first selected project.
 4. In the **Flow Import Options** dialog, choose one of the following options for **Player handling**:
 - **Create All New Players**
 - **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**
 5. In the **Import flows** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to import. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
 6. Click **OK** to import the selected flows and close the dialog.
 7. Optional: If you selected multiple projects from which to import flows, repeat steps 4 to 6 for each project. The **Flow Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each project.
-

RESULT

The selected flows are imported into the project.

- If you chose **Create All New Players**, new players are added as required for each flow.
- If you chose **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**, any players that the imported flows and existing project have in common are merged; for example, if you imported a flow containing one piano into a project containing a piano and viola, the imported flow is added to the existing piano player.

NOTE

- Players are not automatically added to flows that you imported into the project.
- You can also open flows directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Opening projects/files](#) on page 72

[Flows](#) on page 171

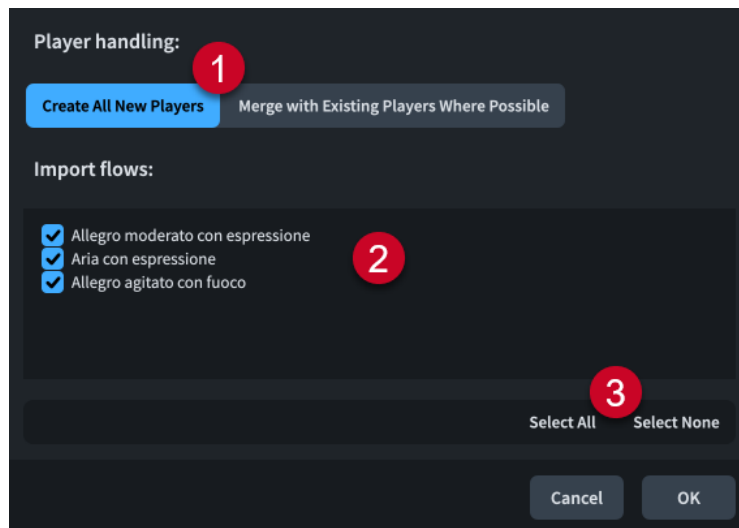
[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

Flow Import Options dialog

The **Flow Import Options** dialog allows you to determine whether players in imported flows are merged with existing players in the project and which flows from within other projects you want to import.

- You can open the **Flow Import Options** dialog by choosing **File > Import > Flows** and opening a Dorico project from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



The **Flow Import Options** dialog comprises the following:

1 Player handling

Allows you to determine how imported flows are assigned to players.

- **Create All New Players** adds separate players for each imported flow.
- **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible** merges players from imported flows with any existing compatible players in the project.

2 Import flows

Contains a list of all the flows in the selected project. Flows are included in the import when their checkbox is activated.

3 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to import.

Exporting flows

You can export individual flows from projects; for example, to save small excerpts of large projects separately.


NOTE

These steps export flows as separate Dorico projects. If you want to export flows as other file formats, such as MusicXML or MP3, there are different methods.

PREREQUISITE

If you want the exported flows to include all players and layouts in the project, including players with no music, you have deactivated **Omit excluded players and layouts when exporting flows** in **Preferences > General > Files**.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Export > Flows** to open the **Export Flows** dialog.
 2. Activate/Deactivate **Export each selected flow as a separate file**.
 3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
 4. Activate/Deactivate **Export layouts as separate files**.
 5. Optional: If you activated **Export layouts as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each layout you want to export in the **Select layouts to export** list. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
 6. Click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
 8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
 9. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
 10. Click **OK** to export the selected flows and layouts and close the dialog.
-

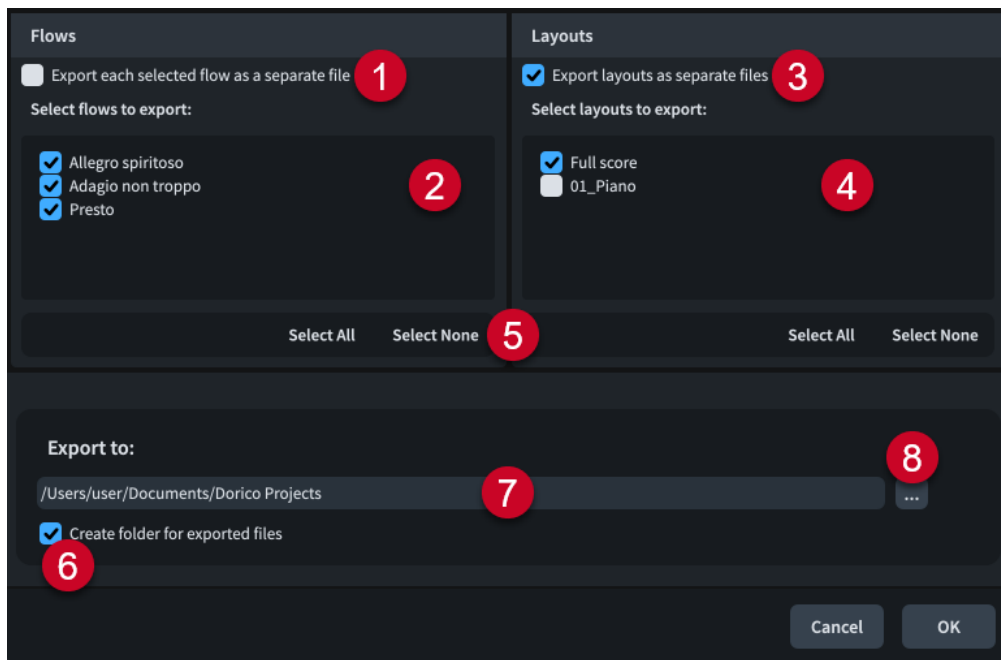
RELATED LINKS

- [Flows](#) on page 171
- [Exporting MusicXML files](#) on page 83
- [Exporting MIDI](#) on page 95
- [Exporting tempo tracks](#) on page 98
- [Exporting audio](#) on page 100

Export Flows dialog

The **Export Flows** dialog allows you to save individual flows and layouts as separate Dorico files.

- You can open the **Export Flows** dialog by choosing **File > Export > Flows**.



The **Export Flows** dialog contains the following options and lists:

- 1 Export each selected flow as a separate file**
Allows you to export each flow as a separate file instead of all the selected flows as a single file.
- 2 Select flows to export**
Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.
- 3 Export layouts as separate files**
Allows you to export each layout in the project as a separate file instead of as a single file.
- 4 Select layouts to export**
Contains a list of all the layouts in the project. Layouts are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export layouts as separate files**.
- 5 Selection options**
Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/layouts in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.
- 6 Create folder for exported files**
Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is "Flows from" followed by the project file name; for example, "Flows from Smyth - String Quintet".
- 7 Export to field**
Displays the export path where exported flows will be saved.
- 8 Choose Folder**
Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing MusicXML files

You can import MusicXML files into existing Dorico Elements projects as separate flows; for example, to continue work on a piece started in a different notation software.

PREREQUISITE

You have set your preferences for importing MusicXML files as appropriate for the file on the **MusicXML Import** page in **Preferences**.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Import > MusicXML** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MusicXML files you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Flow Import Options** dialog for the first selected MusicXML file.
4. In the **Flow Import Options** dialog, choose one of the following options for **Player handling**:
 - **Create All New Players**
 - **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**
5. Click **OK** to import the selected flows and close the dialog.
6. Optional: If you selected multiple MusicXML files, repeat steps 4 and 5 for each file. The **Flow Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each file.

RESULT

The selected MusicXML files are imported into the project as new flows.

- If MusicXML files include page size, margin, and staff size settings, Dorico Elements imports those values. If they are not included, Dorico Elements creates suitable settings according to the number of instruments in the file.
- If you chose **Create All New Players**, new players are added as required for each MusicXML file.
- If you chose **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**, any players that the imported MusicXML files and existing project have in common are merged; for example, if you imported a MusicXML file containing one piano into a project containing a piano and viola, the imported MusicXML file is added to the existing piano player.

TIP

You can also open MusicXML files directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Flow Import Options dialog](#) on page 79

[Opening projects/files](#) on page 72

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

Unpitched percussion imported from MusicXML files

Unpitched percussion music can be expressed in a number of ways in MusicXML. Scoring applications take different approaches to what data is exported and how it is encoded. Therefore, the results of importing MusicXML into Dorico Elements vary considerably.

Dorico Elements identifies each instrument in kits explicitly and then combines them dynamically onto five-line staves. Other scoring applications and MusicXML have a different approach to how unpitched percussion music is represented. For example, a drum set may be effectively notated as pitched notes on a five-line staff and annotated with additional information to help identify which instrument corresponds to each staff position.

Because of these different approaches, mapping information between the MusicXML representation and the Dorico Elements representation can be challenging, so Dorico Elements employs heuristics to improve the quality of results.

Typically, drum set instruments in MusicXML files exported from both Sibelius and Finale are imported quite cleanly into Dorico Elements.

Results are particularly good, and more likely to be imported correctly, if the voicing of the drum set is consistent, such as consistently notating the snare drum in a down-stem voice. If the voicing changes from bar to bar, it is possible that some notes are either identified incorrectly or not imported at all.

Other kinds of percussion that are notated on five-line staves produce more variable results. In most cases, Finale includes information about which percussion instrument maps onto each staff position, but Sibelius does not. As a result, you might find that Dorico Elements chooses different instruments than you expected, but you can change instruments using the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Changing instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 148

[Adding instruments to percussion kits](#) on page 146

[Percussion editor](#) on page 679


[Importing MIDI](#) on page 85

Exporting MusicXML files

You can export flows and layouts as separate MusicXML files; for example, if you want to export just the soloist's layout containing the first flow.

PROCEDURE

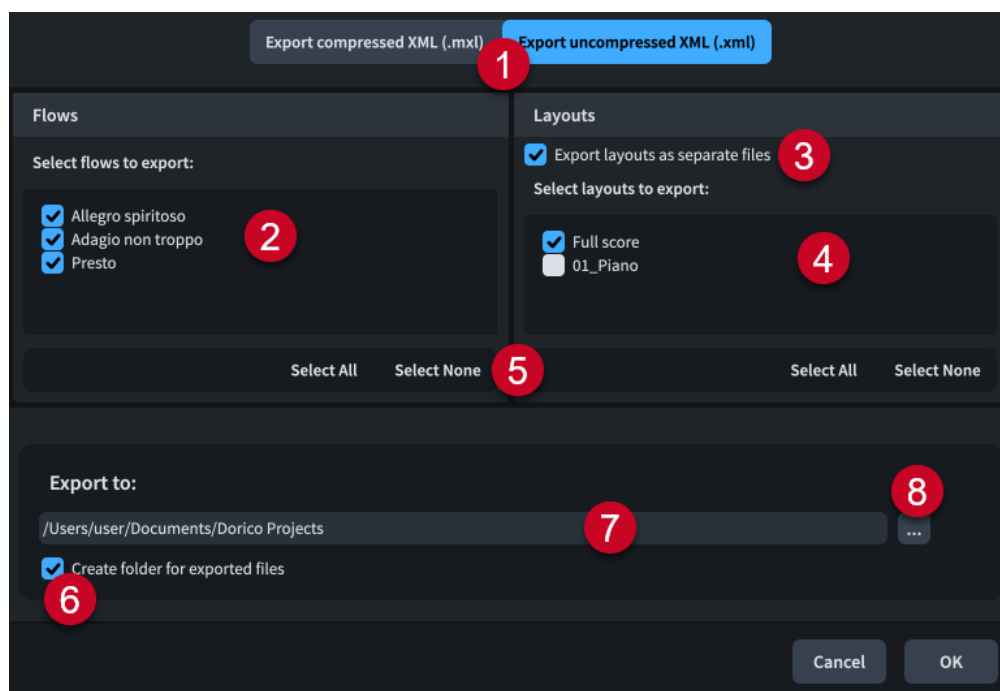
1. Choose **File > Export > MusicXML** to open the **Export MusicXML** dialog.
2. Choose one of the following file format options:
 - **Export compressed XML (.mxl)**
 - **Export uncompressed XML (.xml)**
3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Export layouts as separate files**.
5. Optional: If you activated **Export layouts as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each layout you want to export in the **Select layouts to export** list. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.

6. Click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
 8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
 9. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
 10. Click **OK** to export the selected flows/layouts as MusicXML files and close the dialog.
-

Export MusicXML dialog

The **Export MusicXML** dialog allows you to save individual flows and layouts as separate MusicXML files.

- You can open the **Export MusicXML** dialog by choosing **File > Export > MusicXML**.



The **Export MusicXML** dialog contains the following options and lists:

1 File format options

Allows you to choose the MusicXML file format you want to export. Compressed MusicXML files contain the same information as uncompressed MusicXML files but have a smaller file size.

2 Select flows to export

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

3 Export layouts as separate files

Allows you to export each layout in the project as a separate file instead of as a single file.

4 Select layouts to export

Contains a list of all the layouts in the project. Layouts are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export layouts as separate files**.

5 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/layouts in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

6 Create folder for exported files

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

7 Export to field

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

8 Choose Folder

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing MIDI

You can import MIDI files into existing Dorico Elements projects, as either separate flows or into existing flows; for example, to work on a different version of a section of a piece.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Import > MIDI** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MIDI files you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **MIDI Import Options** dialog for the first selected MIDI file.
4. Change the settings as required.
For example, you can change the playing techniques of tracks, assign tracks to specific players, and customize quantization options.
5. Click **OK** to close the **MIDI Import Options** dialog and import the first selected MIDI file.
6. Optional: If you selected multiple MIDI files, repeat steps 4 to 5 for each file. The **MIDI Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each file.

RESULT

The selected MIDI files are imported into the project according to your settings. Dorico Elements uses an algorithm on imported MIDI notes to produce the correct enharmonic spelling.

If the MIDI files contained markers, they are also imported. If they have SMPTE offset values defined, Dorico Elements uses them to set the timecode position for the start of the flow.

TIP

You can also open MIDI files directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Opening projects/files](#) on page 72

[Requantizing notes](#) on page 266

[Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import](#) on page 270

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

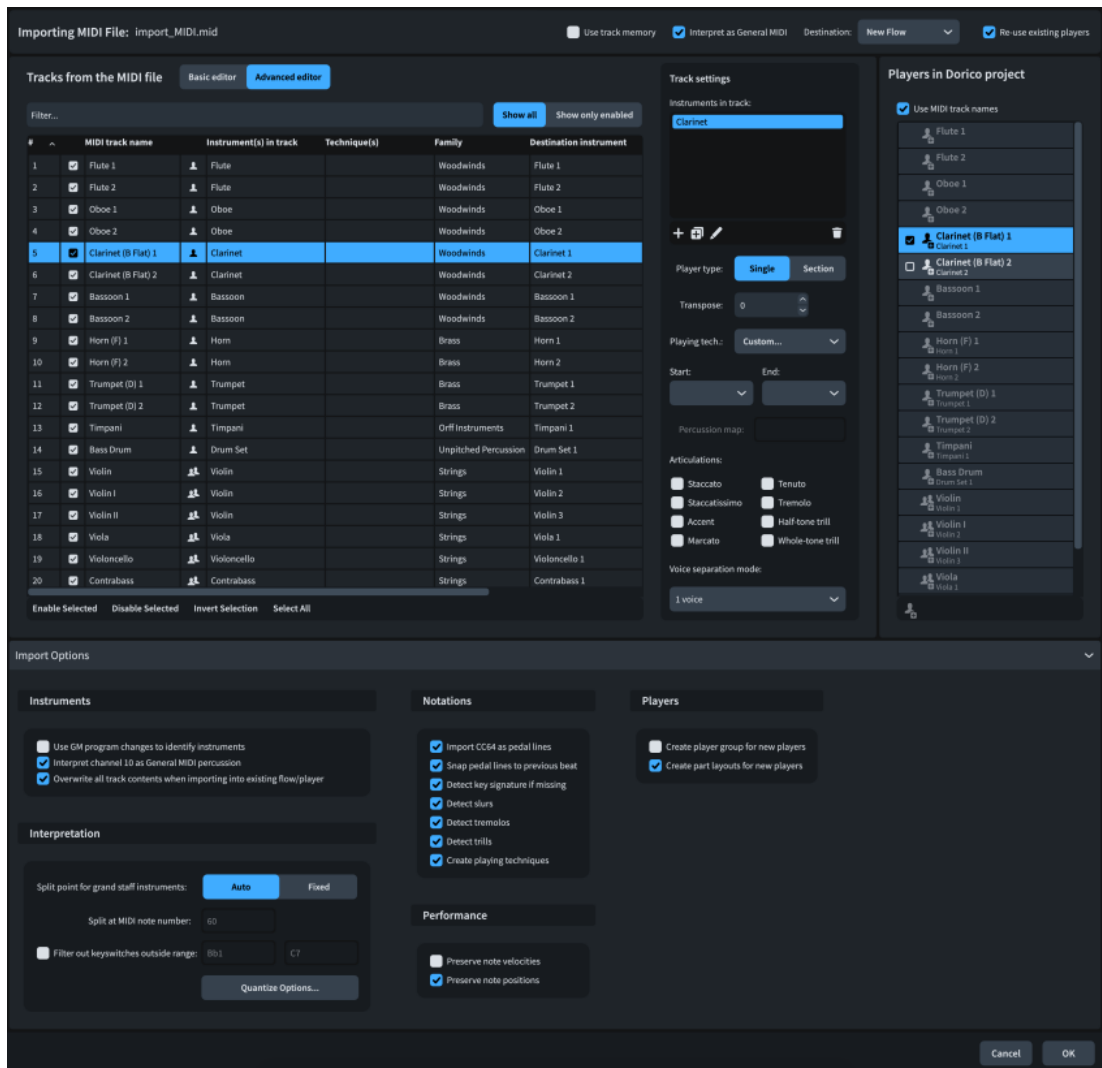
MIDI Import Options dialog

The **MIDI Import Options** dialog allows you to customize the settings Dorico Elements uses to translate MIDI data into a Dorico project when importing and opening MIDI files.

Your MIDI import settings are stored to the track memory, allowing you to reuse settings automatically the next time you open or import MIDI files with similar tracks.

You can open the **MIDI Import Options** dialog in any of the following ways:

- Choose **File > Import > MIDI** and import a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
- Choose **File > Open** and open a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



At the top of the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, there are the following options:

Importing MIDI File

Displays the file name of the MIDI file you are importing or opening.

Use track memory

Allows you both to apply settings from the track memory to the current MIDI file, and to save the settings for the current MIDI file to the track memory for reuse in future when importing or opening MIDI files with identical track names.

Interpret as General MIDI

Allows Dorico Elements to use MIDI program changes at the start of tracks to determine instrument types, including identifying tracks using channel 10 as containing unpitched percussion using the General MIDI drum set.

We recommend deactivating this option for MIDI files that do not conform to General MIDI conventions.

Destination

Allows you to select the flow into which you want to import the MIDI file. You can import MIDI as a new flow or into an existing flow in the project; for example, if you want to overwrite specific tracks in an existing flow. Only available when importing MIDI files.

Re-use existing players

Allows you to determine the players to which tracks in the MIDI file are assigned. Only available when importing MIDI files.

- When activated, tracks from the imported MIDI file are either merged with existing players in the project or overwrite them, depending on your setting for **Overwrite all track contents when importing into existing flow/player** in the **Import Options** section.
- When deactivated, tracks are imported as new players.

Tracks from the MIDI file

Displays all the tracks from the imported or opened MIDI file in a table. Allows you to enable/disable tracks for import and change their player type, instrument, and playing techniques.



#	^	MIDI track name	Instrument(s) in track	Technique(s)	Family	Destination instrument	Max. sim. notes	Total no. of notes
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Flute 1	Flute		Woodwinds	Flute 1	2	22
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Flute 2	Flute		Woodwinds	Flute 2	1	18
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Oboe 1	Oboe		Woodwinds	Oboe 1	1	18
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Oboe 2	Oboe		Woodwinds	Oboe 2	1	16
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Clarinet (B Flat) 1	Clarinet		Woodwinds	Clarinet 1	1	19
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Clarinet (B Flat) 2	Clarinet		Woodwinds	Clarinet 2	1	18
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bassoon 1	Bassoon		Woodwinds	Bassoon 1	1	19
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bassoon 2	Bassoon		Woodwinds	Bassoon 2	1	21
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Horn (F) 1	Horn		Brass	Horn 1	1	14
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Horn (F) 2	Horn		Brass	Horn 2	1	15
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Trumpet (D) 1	Trumpet		Brass	Trumpet 1	1	13
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Trumpet (D) 2	Trumpet		Brass	Trumpet 2	1	13
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Timpani	Timpani		Orff Instruments	Timpani 1	1	13
14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bass Drum	Drum Set		Unpitched Percussion	Drum Set 1	1	2
15	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Violin	Violin		Strings	Violin 1	2	109
16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Violin I	Violin		Strings	Violin 2	2	206
17	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Violin II	Violin		Strings	Violin 3	3	189
18	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Viola	Viola		Strings	Viola 1	2	93
19	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Violoncello	Violoncello		Strings	Violoncello 1	2	83
20	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Contrabass	Contrabass		Strings	Contrabass 1	2	69

At the top of the table, there are the following filter controls:

- **Filter field:** Allows you to filter tracks by name, instrument, or family.
- **Track visibility:** Allows you to show either all tracks or only tracks enabled for import.

The table contains the following columns:

- **#:** Displays the number of the track.
- **Enable:** Allows you to enable/disable the track for import.
- **MIDI track name:** Displays the name of the track in the MIDI file.

- **Player type:** Displays the player type for the track. You can change the player type by double-clicking the icon. Icons show the current player type from the following options:
 - Single player 
 - Section player 
- **Instrument(s) in track:** Displays the instruments identified for the track. You can change the instrument by double-clicking the field and selecting an instrument in the instrument picker that opens. If a single track requires multiple instruments, you must use the advanced editor options.
- **Technique(s):** Displays the playing techniques identified for the track. You can change the playing technique by double-clicking the field and selecting a playing technique from the menu. If a single track requires multiple playing techniques, you must use the advanced editor options.

TIP

- It is not necessary to specify natural or legato playing techniques, as Dorico Elements automatically creates slurs if **Detect slurs** is activated in the **Import Options** section.
 - Dorico Elements inputs the corresponding playing techniques at the required positions in the music if **Create playing techniques** is activated in the **Import Options** section.
-
- **Family:** Displays the instrument family of the track. For tracks with multiple instruments, the family of the first instrument is displayed.
 - **Destination Instrument:** Displays the instrument in the project to which the track will be assigned. You can change the destination instrument by double-clicking the field and selecting an instrument from the menu. For example, if you want to assign multiple tracks to the same destination instrument.
 - **Max. sim. notes:** Displays the number of notes played simultaneously in the track. This can help you identify whether tracks represent single, multiple, or grand staff instruments.
 - **Total no. of notes:** Displays the total number of notes in the track. Tracks containing no notes might be unnecessary to import.

TIP

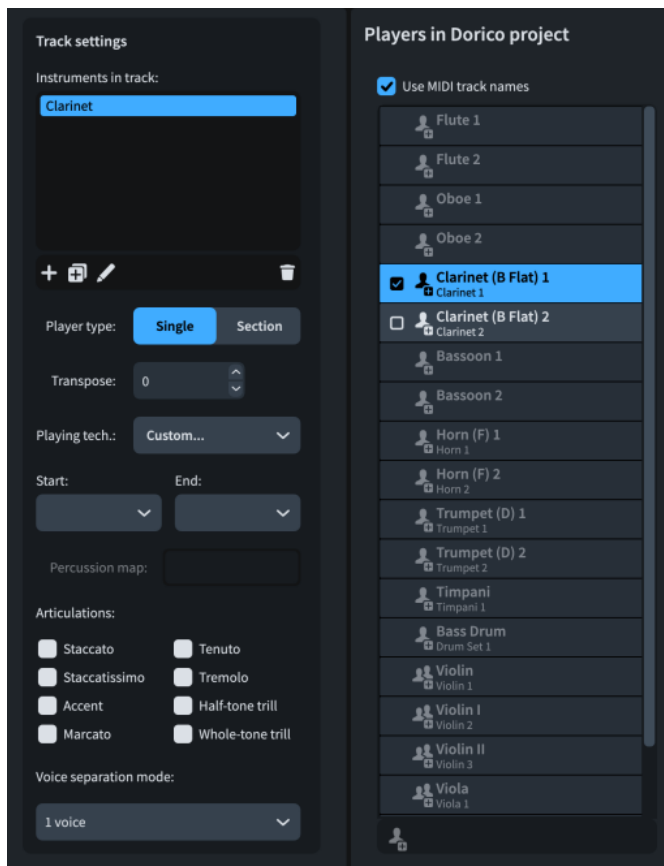
You can click each column's header to change its sort order.

The action bar at the bottom of the table contains the following options:

- **Enable Selected:** Enables the selected tracks for import.
- **Disable Selected:** Disables the selected tracks for import.
- **Invert Selection:** Switches your selection to include all tracks not previously selected.
- **Select All:** Selects all tracks.

Advanced editor options

Contains advanced options that allow you to control how the selected track is mapped to players in the project.



The **Advanced editor** options are divided into the following sections:





Track settings

Contains a list of instruments in the track selected in the **Tracks from the MIDI file** table and allows you to view and change details of how Dorico Elements will interpret the track.

- **Instruments in track list:** Contains all the instruments in the selected track and allows you to change them. For example, you might add enough horn instruments to match the **Max. sim. notes** in a horn ensemble track, and therefore ensure each instrument only plays a single note at a time.

Chords are split between instruments in tracks in pitch order; for example, piccolos receive higher notes than flutes.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker and allows you to add a new instrument to the track.
- **Duplicate Instrument** : Duplicates the selected instrument.
- **Change Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker and allows you to change the selected instrument.
- **Delete Instrument** : Deletes the selected instrument.
- **Player type:** Allows you to choose the player type for the track.
- **Transpose:** Allows you to transpose the track by the specified number of half-steps (semitones).
- **Playing tech.:** Allows you to select the playing techniques for the track; for example, when assigning multiple tracks that represent different playing techniques to the same player.



- **Start:** The playing technique used at the start of the track.
- **End:** The playing technique used at the end of the track.

For example, for a violin part that switches between *pizzicato* and *arco*, using two tracks in the MIDI file, selecting **Pizzicato/Arco** instructs Dorico Elements to input *pizz.* and *arco* playing techniques at the appropriate positions.

- **Percussion map:** Allows you to select a percussion map for the track. Only available for percussion kits.
- **Articulations:** Allows you to select articulations you want to input on all notes in the track.
- **Voice separation mode:** Allows you to select a voice approach for chords. Only available when mapping a track to a single instrument. When mapping one track to multiple instruments or multiple tracks to one player, Dorico Elements automatically distributes notes to voices.
 - **1 voice:** All music in the track is assigned to the same voice.
 - **2 voice (auto):** Music in the track is assigned to two voices on the same staff.
 - **2 voice (fixed split point):** Music in the track is assigned to two voices, each on its own staff, using the split point set in the **Import Options** section.
 - **2 voice (explode):** Music in the track is assigned to two voices, each on its own staff. This option can be useful for fretted instruments.
 - **4 voice keyboard (auto):** Music in the track is assigned to four voices, spread across two staves. We recommend using this option for grand staff instruments, as it can automatically detect common keyboard textures, such as bass and melody with inner chords.

Players in Dorico project


Contains a list of the players in the project to which tracks will be assigned, including existing players in the project and any new players required by the imported MIDI file. Icons for each player indicate if it is new and its type from the following options:

- Single player 
- Section player 

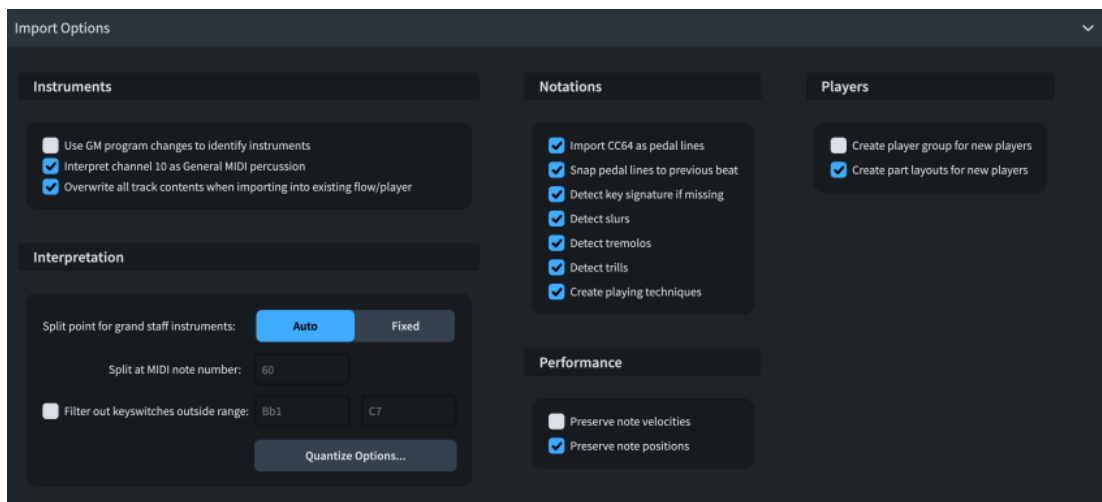
When you select an instrument in the **Instruments in track** list in the **Track settings** section, its current assigned player appears highlighted in the **Players in Dorico project** list.

You can assign instruments to other players by clicking an available player in the list. Only players of the same type and with the same instrument are available. For example, if multiple tracks represent different techniques played by the same instrument, you can assign them all to the same player.

If no instruments are assigned to a new player, it is automatically deleted.

- **Use MIDI track names** allows you to use MIDI track names for player names.
- **Add new player for track**  allows you to assign the selected instrument to a new player. Only available when you have assigned more than one instrument to the same player.

Import Options



The **Import Options** section contains the following subsections:

Instruments

Contains options that determine how Dorico Elements identifies and handles instruments from the imported MIDI file.

- **Use GM program changes to identify instruments:** Allows you to set whether Dorico Elements uses MIDI program changes or track names to identify instruments.
- **Interpret channel 10 as General MIDI percussion:** Allows you to set whether Dorico Elements interprets tracks using channel 10 as conforming to the General MIDI drum set standard.
- **Overwrite all track contents when importing into existing flow/player:** When activated, imported tracks overwrite all existing music belonging to destination players. When deactivated, imported tracks merge with existing music belonging to destination players. Only applies when importing MIDI into an existing flow.

Interpretation

Contains options that determine how Dorico Elements interprets key switches and keyboard music from the imported MIDI file.

- **Split point for grand staff instruments:** Allows you to change how notes are assigned to each staff for grand staff instruments.
 - **Auto:** Dorico Elements automatically determines split points according to the musical context.
 - **Fixed:** Dorico Elements uses the set split point.
- **Split at MIDI note number:** Allows you set a MIDI note number at which notes are split between staves. Only available when **Fixed** is chosen for **Split point for grand staff instruments**.
- **Filter out key switches outside range:** Allows you to set the range of pitches used for notes in the MIDI file. Notes higher/lower than the set range are omitted.
- **Quantize Options:** Opens the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog, which allows you to customize the quantization options.

NOTE

Quantization options are linked between **Preferences > Play > Quantization** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

Notations

Contains options that determine the handling and detection of notations from the imported MIDI file, such as pedal lines and slurs.

NOTE

- Notation settings are linked between **Preferences > Play > Recording** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.
 - When **Detect key signature if missing** is activated, Dorico Elements creates a single key signature at the start of the flow. This option works best for music with a strong tonal center that does not modulate.
-

Performance

Contains options that determine how much of the original performance in the MIDI file is preserved for playback purposes. They do not affect how the imported MIDI notes are notated, as this is controlled by quantization options.

NOTE

Performance settings are linked between **Preferences > Play > Recording** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

Players

Contains options that determine the handling of players and layouts.

For example, if you are importing a MIDI file into an existing project in order to orchestrate, you might want to import players into their own player group without creating any extra part layouts for them.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import](#) on page 270

[Unpitched percussion imported from MusicXML files](#) on page 83

[Types of actions](#) on page 775

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Players](#) on page 123

[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Pedal lines](#) on page 1161

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

[Slurs](#) on page 1283

[Tremolos](#) on page 1399

[Trills](#) on page 1094

[Tuplets](#) on page 1408

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

Quantization options

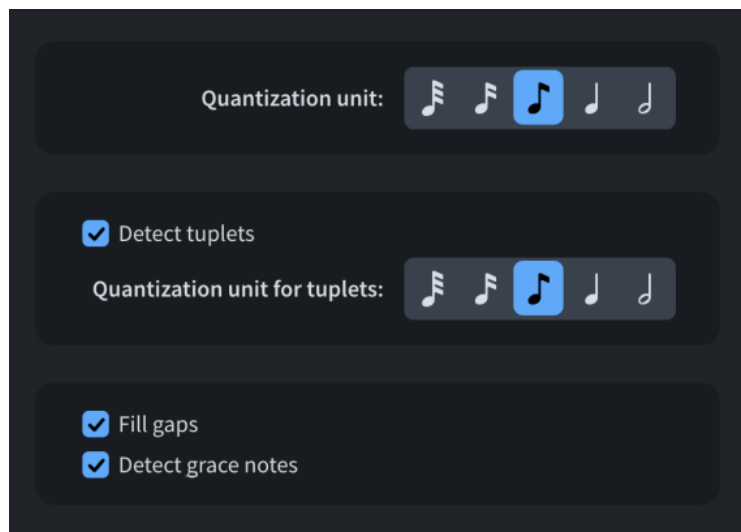
Quantization options allow you to customize the quantization you want to apply to notes when importing MIDI files, inputting notes using MIDI recording, or requantizing notes.

You can access the available quantization options in any of the following ways:

- In **Preferences > Play > Quantization**.
- In the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, click **Quantize Options** in the **Import Options** section.
- When at least one note is selected in the music area, choose **Edit > Requantize**.

NOTE

Quantization options are linked between **Preferences > Play > Quantization** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.



The following quantization options are available:

Quantization unit

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional note duration in your imported file is an eighth note, set **Quantization unit** to eighth notes.

Detect tuplets

Allows you to control whether off-beat notes can be considered tuplets. If you know there are no intentional tuplets in your imported MIDI file, deactivating **Detect tuplets** ensures no notes are imported as tuplets.

Quantization unit for tuplets

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want tuplet notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional tuplet note duration in your imported file is a quarter note, set **Quantization unit for tuplets** to quarter notes.

Fill gaps

Allows you to determine whether Dorico Elements fills in gaps between short notes. If you are importing already precisely quantized music, we recommend that you deactivate **Fill gaps** to ensure that note and rest durations are notated exactly as quantized.

Detect grace notes

Allows you to determine whether Dorico Elements interprets grace notes. When deactivated, Dorico Elements turns grace notes into normal notes.

RELATED LINKS

- [MIDI recording](#) on page 264
- [Requantizing notes](#) on page 266
- [Tuplets](#) on page 1408
- [Grace notes](#) on page 1002


Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE

You can import Groove Agent SE patterns into drum set tracks and show them as notes; for example, if you want to include patterns in notated part layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- You have added a drum set to your project.
- The drum set is assigned to a Groove Agent SE endpoint.
You can apply playback templates that load Groove Agent SE for drum sets automatically, or load Groove Agent SE manually and assign the drum set to the required endpoint.

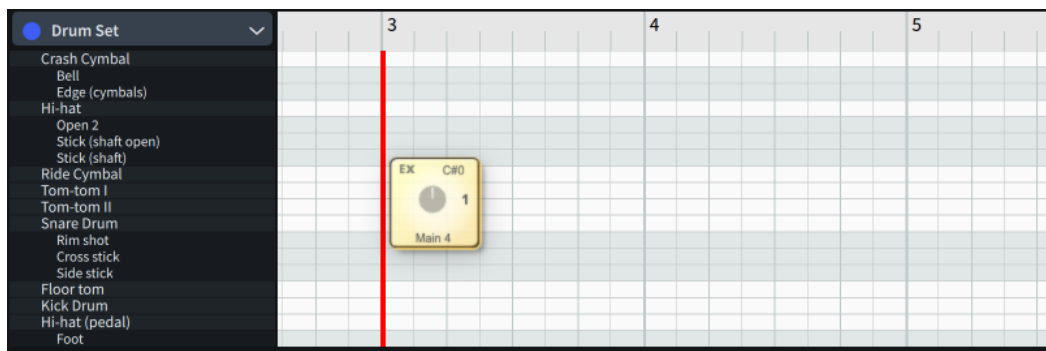
PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, select the drum set track in the track overview.
- In the Track Inspector, in the **Routing** section, click **Edit Instrument**  to open the Groove Agent SE window.
- At the top of the pad section, choose **Pattern** to show pattern pads.
- Click and drag the pattern you want to use into one of the following places:
 - Track overview in Play mode
 - Percussion editor in the Key Editor

TIP

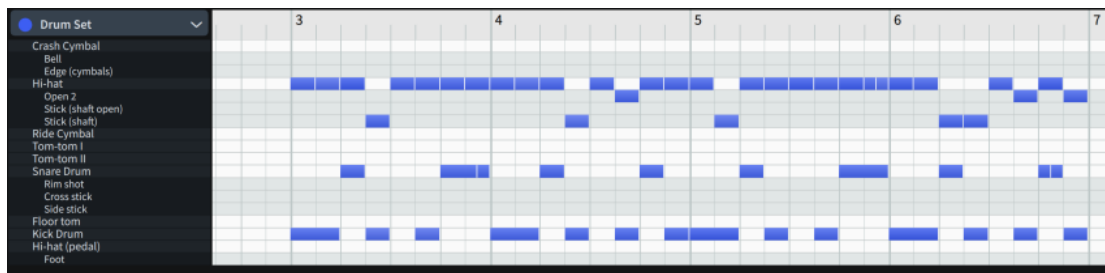
You can click and hold pattern pads to preview them.

An insertion line indicates where the pattern will begin.



RESULT

Notes in the selected pattern are imported into the corresponding drum set. They appear in the track overview, percussion editor, and notation staves in the same ways as normal notes.



TIP

For more information about Groove Agent SE, see the Groove Agent SE user manual.

RELATED LINKS

- [Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142
- [Project window in Play mode](#) on page 519
- [Percussion editor](#) on page 679
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51


Exporting MIDI

You can export flows as separate MIDI files; for example, if you want to edit the audio in further detail in a DAW. MIDI files exported from Dorico Elements contain any markers in the project by default.

PREREQUISITE

- You have opened a layout in the music area that contains the players whose MIDI you want to export.
- Playback is activated in the current project.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **File > Export > MIDI** to open the **Export MIDI** dialog.
- In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export. You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
- Click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
- Locate and select the destination folder you want.
- Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
- Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
- Click **OK** to export the selected flows as MIDI files and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected flows are exported as MIDI files. They contain the MIDI of all the players assigned to the layout open in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

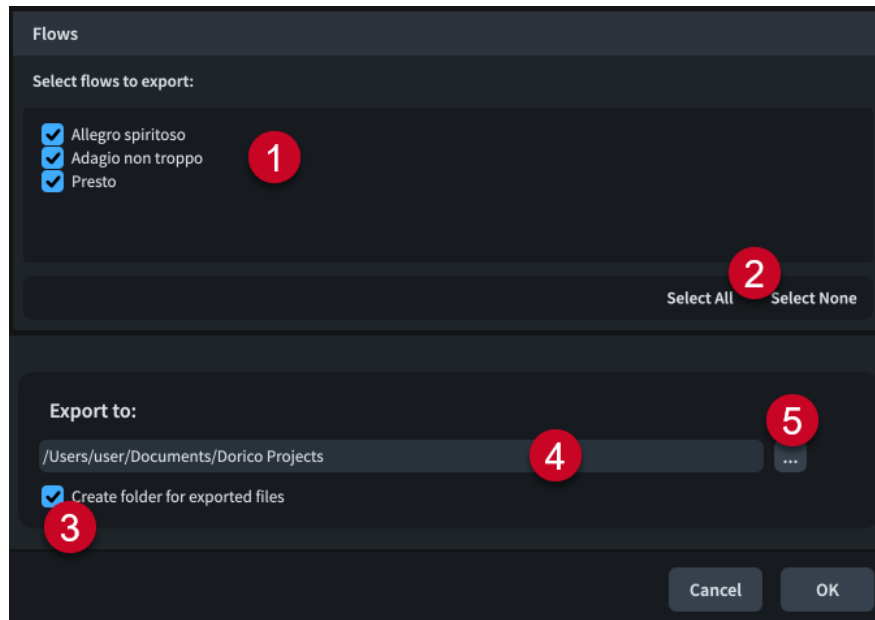
- [Activating/Deactivating playback](#) on page 542

- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
- [Opening new tabs](#) on page 45
- [Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Export MIDI dialog

The **Export MIDI** dialog allows you to save individual flows as separate MIDI files.

- You can open the **Export MIDI** dialog by choosing **File > Export > MIDI**.



The **Export MIDI** dialog comprises the following:

1 Select flows to export

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

2 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

3 Create folder for exported files

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

4 Export to field

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

5 Choose Folder

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing tempo tracks

You can import tempo tracks into individual flows and new flows in existing projects; for example, if you are writing music for a film and changes to the footage require tempo and time signature changes. This does not overwrite the notes and notations in the flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Import > Tempo Track** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MIDI file whose tempo track you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Import Tempo Track** dialog.
4. In the **Import into flow** list, select the flow into which you want to import the tempo track.
5. In the **Import and replace** section, activate the checkbox for each tempo track aspect you want to include.
6. Optional: If you activated the checkbox for **Markers as**, choose one of the following options:
 - **Markers**
 - **System-attached Text**
7. Optional: If you chose **System Text** for **Markers as**, activate/deactivate **Show border around system-attached text markers**.
8. Click **OK** to import the tempo track and close the dialog.

RESULT

The tempo track is imported into the selected flow. If you selected **New Flow** in the **Import into flow** list, a new flow is added to the project. All selected aspects are applied to the existing music or the new flow, and notes and tempo marks are adjusted as required.

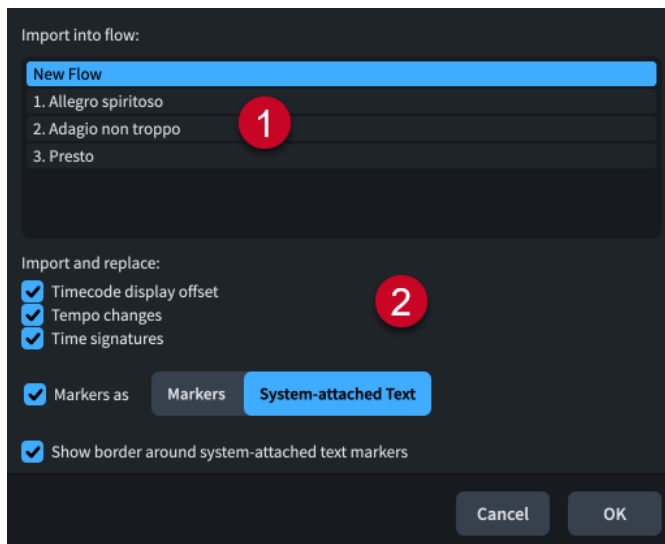
RELATED LINKS

[Flows](#) on page 171

Import Tempo Track dialog

The **Import Tempo Track** dialog allows you to import tempo tracks to individual flows within projects and to control which aspects of the tempo track you want to apply to the flow.

- You can open the **Import Tempo Track** dialog by choosing **File > Import > Tempo Track** and opening a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



The **Import Tempo Track** dialog comprises the following:

1 Import into flow

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. The currently selected flow is highlighted.

NOTE

You can only import tempo tracks into a single flow at a time.

2 Import and replace

Allows you to control which tempo track aspects you want to include in your import and apply to the selected flow.


- **Timecode display offset** sets the initial timecode position at the start of the flow.
- **Tempo changes** replaces all immediate and gradual tempo changes in the flow with the tempo changes from the MIDI file.
- **Time signatures** replaces all time signatures in the flow with time signatures from the MIDI file.
- **Markers as** adds any markers from the MIDI file to the flow as either **Markers** or **System-attached Text**.
Importing markers as **Markers** replaces any existing markers in the flow with markers from the MIDI file, while importing markers as **System-attached Text** does not replace any existing markers or system-attached text items.
- **Show border around system-attached text markers** adds borders to markers imported as system-attached text items when activated. Only available if you have chosen **System-attached Text** for **Markers as**.

Exporting tempo tracks

You can export flows as separate tempo tracks; for example, if you want to apply the tempo marks and time signatures of one flow to a different flow, which can be in the same project.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Export > Tempo Track** to open the **Export Tempo Track** dialog.
2. Activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export as a tempo track.
You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.

3. Click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 4. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
 5. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
 6. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
 7. Click **OK** to export the selected flows as tempo tracks and close the dialog.
-

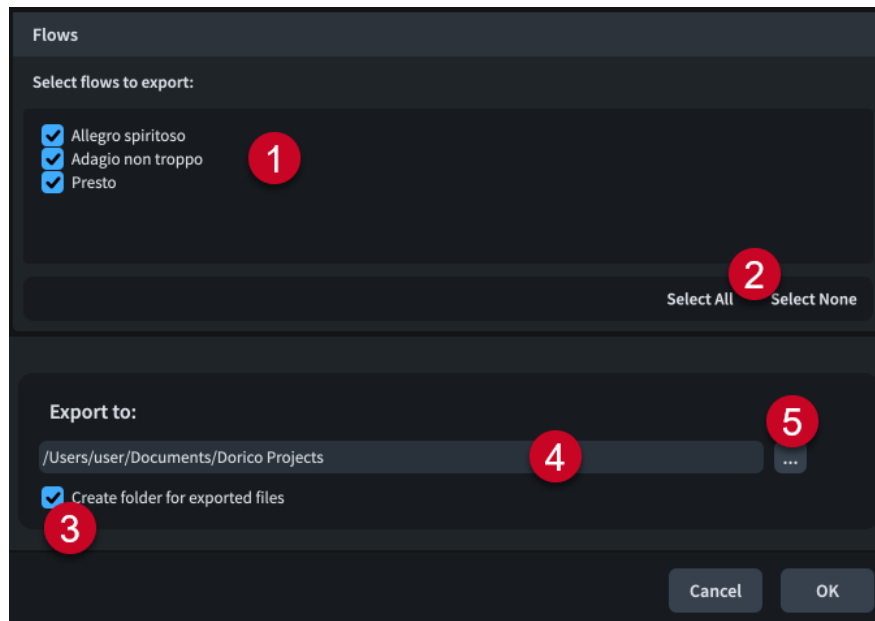
RELATED LINKS

[Importing tempo tracks](#) on page 97

Export Tempo Track dialog

The **Export Tempo Track** dialog allows you to save individual flows as separate tempo tracks in the format of MIDI files.

- You can open the **Export Tempo Track** dialog by choosing **File > Export > Tempo Track**.



The **Export Tempo Track** dialog comprises the following:

1 Select flows to export

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

2 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

3 Create folder for exported files

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

4 Export to field

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

5 Choose Folder

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.


Exporting audio

You can export projects as audio files in MP3, FLAC, or WAV formats, including exporting flows and players as separate files. For example, if you want to share an audio mock-up of only the soloist's part in the second flow.

PREREQUISITE

- You have opened a layout in the music area that contains the players whose audio you want to export.
- Playback is activated in the current project.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Export > Audio** to open the **Export Audio** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Export each selected flow as a separate file**.
3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export as audio.
You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Export players as separate files**.
5. Optional: If you activated **Export players as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each player you want to export in the **Select players to export** list.
You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
6. Click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
9. In the **Audio Export Options** section, choose one of the following audio file formats:
 - **MP3 (.mp3)**
 - **FLAC (.flac)**
 - **WAV (.wav)**
10. Optional: If you chose **FLAC (.flac)** or **WAV (.wav)**, choose one of the following bit depths:
 - **16-bit**
 - **24-bit**
 - **32-bit** (WAV files only)
11. Optional: If you chose **WAV (.wav)**, activate/deactivate **Broadcast WAVE**.
12. Change the reverb tail duration by changing the value in the **Reverb tail (s)** value field.
13. Click **OK** to export the selected flows/players with the set audio export options and close the dialog.

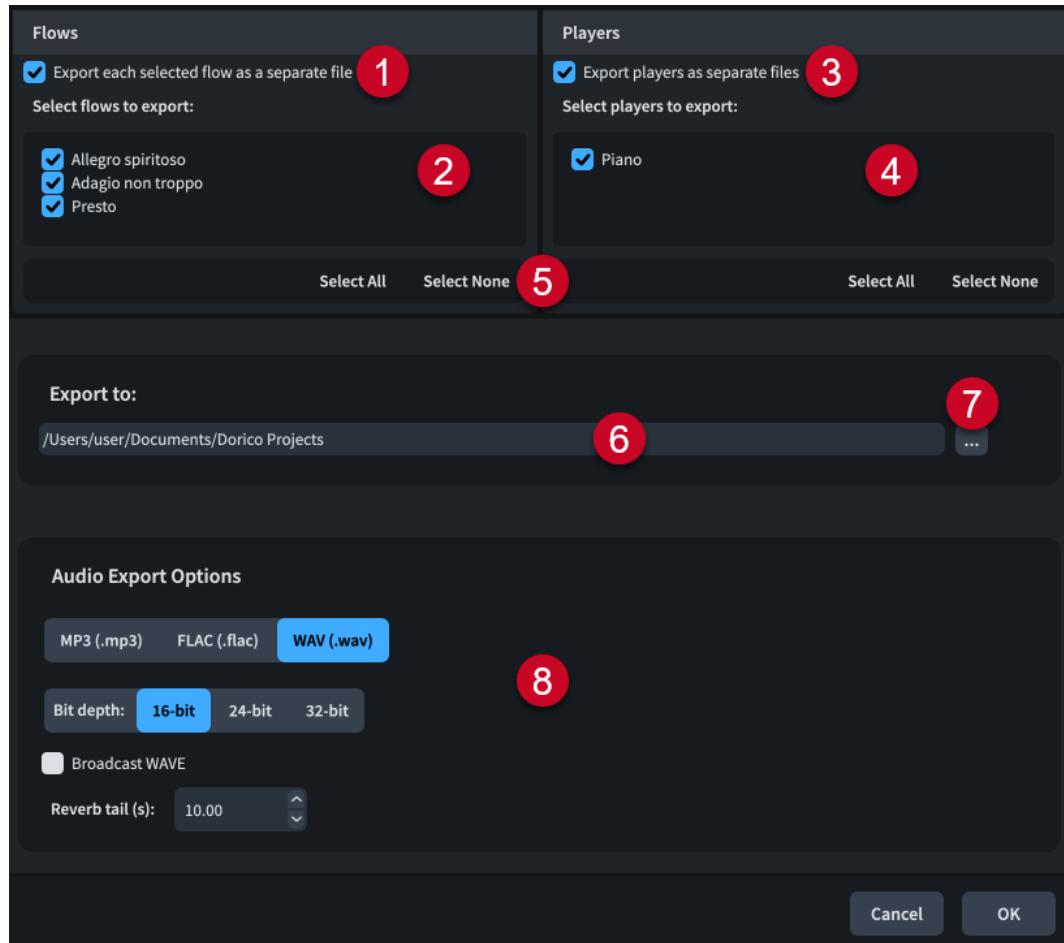
RELATED LINKS

- [Activating/Deactivating playback](#) on page 542
- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
- [Opening new tabs](#) on page 45
- [Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Export Audio dialog

The **Export Audio** dialog allows you to export projects as audio files in MP3, FLAC, or WAV formats, including exporting flows and players as separate files.

- You can open the **Export Audio** dialog by choosing **File > Export > Audio**.



The **Export Audio** dialog contains the following options and lists:

- 1 Export each selected flow as a separate file**
Allows you to export each flow in the project as a separate audio file instead of as a single audio file.
- 2 Select flows to export**
Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.
- 3 Export players as separate files**
Allows you to export each player in the project as a separate audio file instead of all players in a single audio file.
- 4 Select players to export**
Contains a list of all the players in the project. Players are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export players as separate files**.
- 5 Selection options**
Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/players in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

6 Export to field

Displays the export path where exported audio files will be saved.

7 Choose Folder

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

8 Audio Export Options

Contains the following options that allow you to control the audio file format and export:

- **File format:** Allows you to export audio as an **MP3 (.mp3)**, **FLAC (.flac)** or **WAV (.wav)** file.
- **Bit depth:** Allows you to export FLAC files as **16-bit** or **24-bit**, and WAV files as **16-bit**, **24-bit**, or **32-bit**.
- **Broadcast WAVE:** Allows you to export audio in Broadcast WAVE format, which includes start timecodes and markers.
- **Reverb tail (s):** Allows you to change the duration of time added to the end of the exported audio to accommodate reverb effects.

Exporting text

You can export all visible text in the project to a CSV file; for example, to populate catalog databases, or to proof-read text across the project.

Text exports include all fields in the **Project Info** dialog, text in text frames, text items, lyrics, tempo marks, dynamics, and so on.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened a layout in the music area that contains the visible text that you want to export.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Export > Text** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Specify a name and location for the CSV file.
3. Click **Save**.

RESULT

All visible text in the layout currently open in the music area is exported and saved in the selected location as a CSV file. By default, the CSV file opens automatically in your default application for CSV files.

TIP

You can change whether exported text CSV files open automatically in **Preferences > General > Files**.

RELATED LINKS

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Text items](#) on page 1351

[Lyrics](#) on page 1029

[Exporting lyrics](#) on page 1034

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Dynamics](#) on page 921
[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335
[Rehearsal marks](#) on page 1216
[Markers](#) on page 1221
[Comments](#) on page 494
[Exporting comments](#) on page 500

Auto-save

The auto-save function stores a version of the currently active project at regular intervals, including new projects you have not explicitly saved yet. This reduces the chances of losing significant amounts of work if you accidentally close a project without saving or in the unlikely event that Dorico Elements or your computer crashes.

Dorico Elements saves auto-saved projects in an **AutoSave** folder inside the application data folder for your user account. You cannot change this location.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements might become less responsive briefly in order to perform auto-saves, particularly for larger projects.
- Dorico Elements does not generate preview images when auto-saving.

Auto-save with multiple projects open

Only the currently activated project is auto-saved at each auto-save interval if you have multiple projects open. This is because only a single project at a time can be activated for playback. If you are switching between multiple projects frequently, we recommend that you set a smaller auto-save interval.

Removal of auto-save files

All files in the **AutoSave** folder are automatically deleted when you close their corresponding projects and also when you quit Dorico Elements. You can find deleted auto-saved projects in the bin on your computer. Dorico Elements automatically adds “[AutoSave]” to the end of auto-saved project file names so you can identify them.

IMPORTANT

When Dorico Elements deletes files from the **AutoSave** folder, this includes any files in the folder, not just auto-saved Dorico projects. Therefore, it is important that you do not manually save anything in the **AutoSave** folder.

TIP

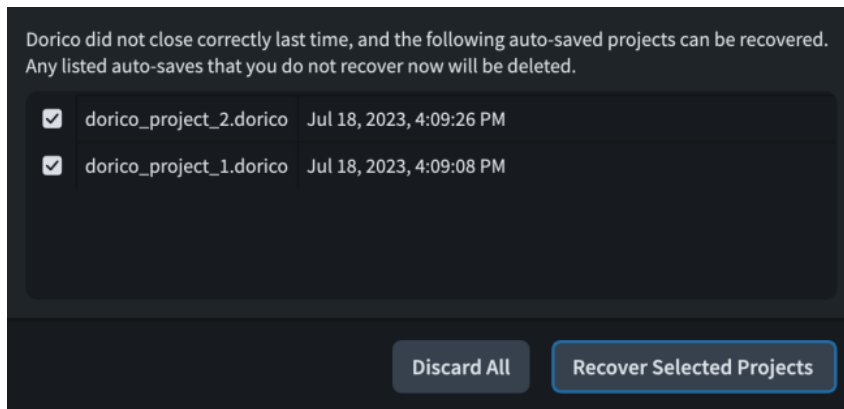
If you want to access earlier versions of projects, you can use project backups.

RELATED LINKS

[Project backups](#) on page 105

Recover Auto-saved Projects dialog

The **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog allows you to recover individual auto-saved projects; for example, if you accidentally closed a project without saving, or if Dorico Elements or your computer crashed.



The **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog contains the following:

Auto-saved projects list

Contains all the auto-saved projects that are available for recovery. Displays the file name of each project and the date and time of the auto-save.

You can activate the checkbox for each project you want to recover.

Discard All

Deletes all auto-saved projects in the list and moves them to the bin on your computer.

Recover Selected Projects

Recovers the selected auto-saved projects and opens them in separate project windows.

Recovering auto-saved projects

If Dorico Elements crashes, you can recover the most recent auto-saved version of each project that was open.

PROCEDURE

1. Reopen Dorico Elements.
2. In the **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog that opens after the Dorico Elements splash screen, activate the checkbox for each auto-saved project you want to recover.

NOTE

Any auto-saved projects you do not recover are permanently deleted once you close the dialog.

3. Click **Recover Selected Projects** to recover the selected auto-saved projects and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected auto-saved projects are recovered and opened in separate project windows.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can save auto-saved projects permanently in any folder location and with new file names if required.

Changing the auto-save frequency

You can change how frequently Dorico Elements auto-saves projects. By default, the auto-save interval is five minutes for the currently active project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **Files** section, change the value for **Auto-save every [n] minutes**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Disabling auto-save

You can disable auto-save completely; for example, if it is significantly affecting the performance of a large project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **Files** section, deactivate **Auto-save every [n] minutes**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Project backups

Dorico Elements stores backup versions of your projects each time you save them explicitly. By default, the previous five saves are stored as backups.

Their default location is in a folder named after the corresponding project file name in the **Backup Projects** folder in the **Dorico Projects** folder, whose default location is in the **Documents** folder for your user account.

You can find deleted project backups in the bin on your computer.

Changing the number of backups per project

You can change the number of backups that Dorico Elements stores for each project; for example, if you want to store a greater range of changes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **Files** section, change the value for **Number of backups per project**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Changing the backup location

You can change the folder that Dorico Elements uses to store project backups. By default, Dorico Elements uses the **Backup Projects** folder inside your **Dorico Projects** folder, whose default location is in the **Documents** folder for your user account.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Files** section, click **Choose** beside the **Project backup folder** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the folder where you want to save project backups.
5. Click **Select Folder** (Windows)/**Open** (macOS) to insert the new path in the **Project backup folder** field.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

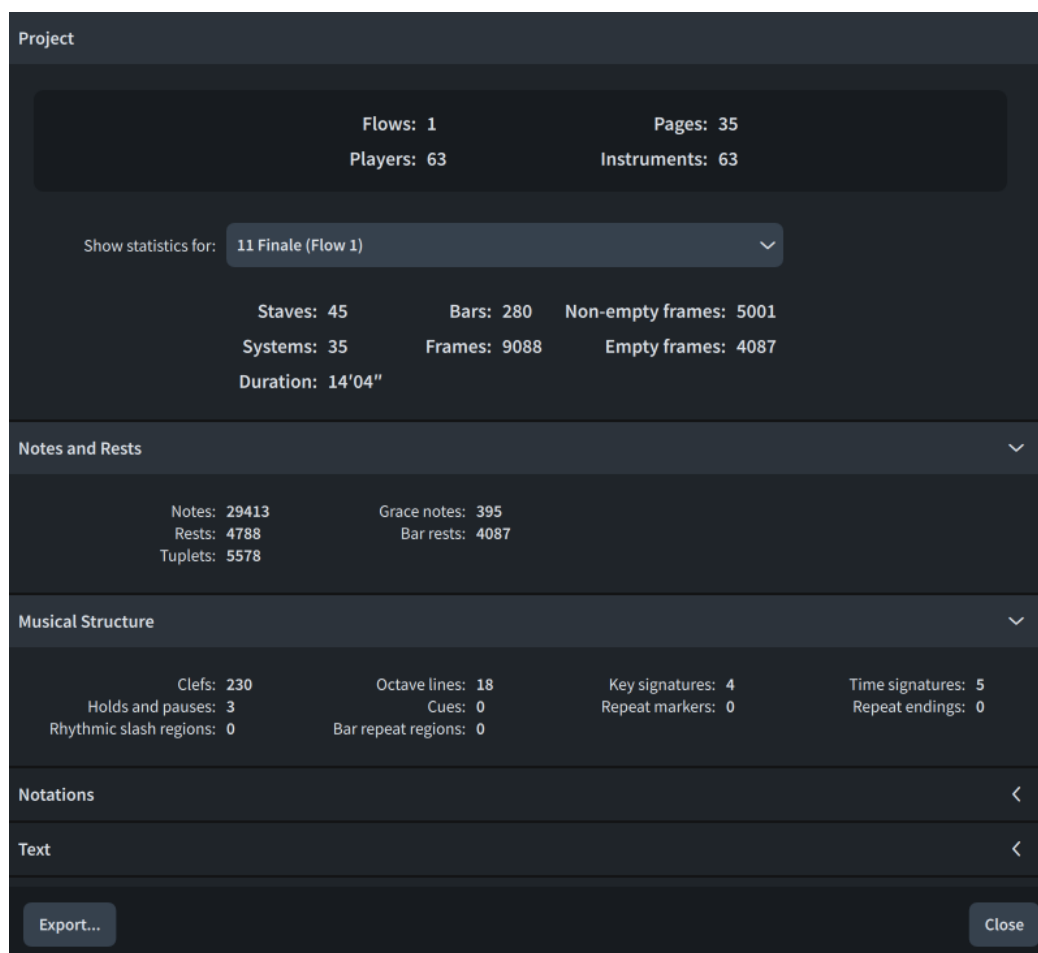
The default folder for project backups is changed. If the folder specified does not exist, Dorico Elements creates it.

Project Statistics dialog

The **Project Statistics** dialog displays and allows you to export statistics for either the whole project or only an individual flow, including the number of staves, notes, filled bars, and empty bars.

By default, Dorico Elements calculates statistics using the full score layout. For projects that contain either no or multiple full score layouts, Dorico Elements calculates statistics using the layout currently open in the music area.

- You can open the **Project Statistics** dialog in any mode by choosing **File > Project Statistics**.



In the **Project** section, you can use the **Show statistics for** menu to show statistics only for the selected flow.

Further sections contain various statistics for notes and notations, grouped according to their function. You can hide/show each section by clicking the corresponding section header.

At the bottom of the dialog, **Export** allows you to export project/flow statistics to a plain text file.

NOTE

In the context of project/flow statistics, a “frame” is a bar on a single staff. For example, a 24-bar flow with two staves contains 48 frames.

Exporting project statistics

You can export statistics for the whole project or only an individual flow; for example, to calculate engraving fees.

By default, Dorico Elements calculates statistics using the full score layout.

PREREQUISITE

If the project contains either no or multiple full score layouts, you have opened the layout that you want to use for generating and exporting statistics in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Project Statistics** to open the **Project Statistics** dialog.

2. Optional: To export statistics from an individual flow only, select the flow from the **Show statistics for** menu in the **Project** section.
 3. At the bottom of the dialog, click **Export** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 4. Specify a name and location for the statistics file.
 5. Click **Save**.
-

RESULT

Statistics for either the whole project or only the selected flow are exported to a plain text file, which opens automatically in your default text editor.

TIP

You can also open project statistics files in spreadsheet applications.

RELATED LINKS

[File import and export](#) on page 78

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Creating layouts](#) on page 176

Setup mode

Setup mode allows you to set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

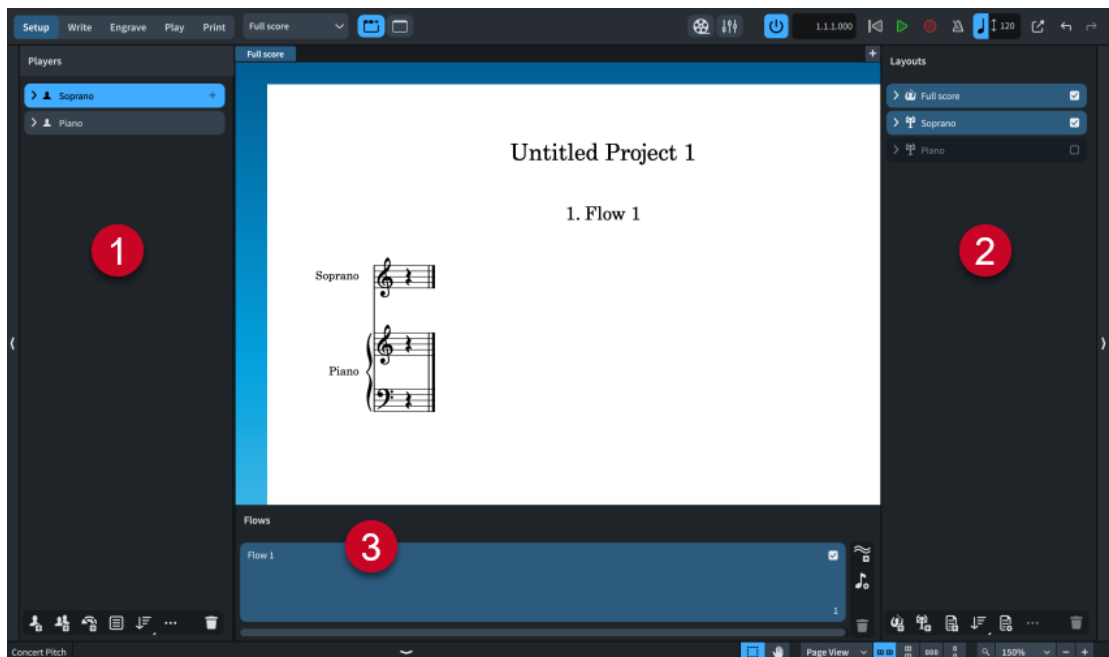
You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other tabs and layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Project window in Setup mode

The project window in Setup mode contains panels with all the tools and functions that allow you to add players and instruments as well as to create layouts and flows for your project.

You can switch to Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-1**.
- In the toolbar, click **Setup**.
- Choose **Window > Setup**.



The following panels are available in Setup mode:

1 Players

Lists the players, instruments, and groups in your project. By default, players are assigned to all flows, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.

2 Layouts

Lists the layouts in your project. A single full score layout and a part layout for each player are created automatically, but you can create and delete layouts as required. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.

3 Flows

Shows the flows in your project, ordered left to right. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

The three panels work together to allow you to control how and where the players, layouts, and flows in your project are used. When you select an item in one of the panels, that panel and the selected item are highlighted in a different color and checkboxes appear in cards in the other panels. You can activate/deactivate these checkboxes independently to change how material is distributed across players, layouts, and flows.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121

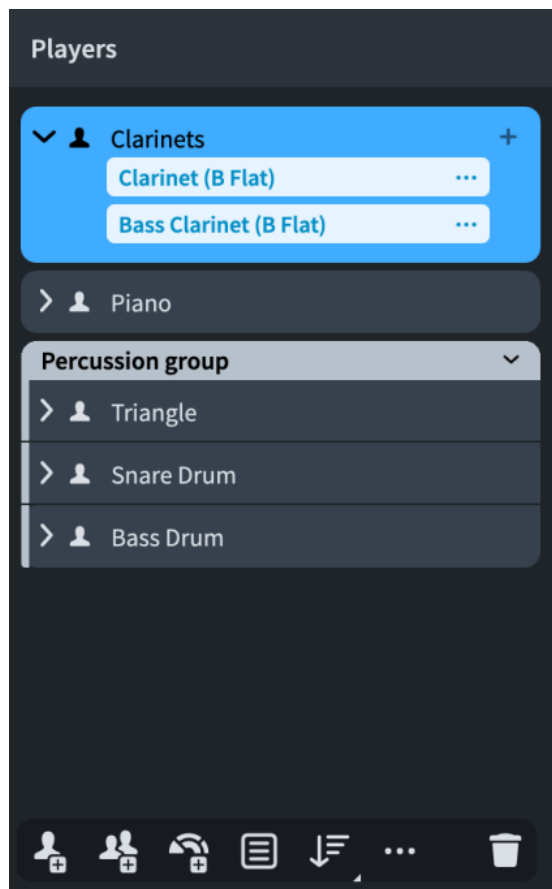
[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

Players panel

The **Players** panel contains all the players and player groups in the project, shown in a list. It is located on the left of the window in Setup mode.

You can hide/show the **Players** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Left Zone**.



The order in which players are listed in the Players panel sets the default player order used in all layouts. You can also set a custom player order in each layout independently.

In the **Players** panel, each player is shown as a card that contains the instruments held by that player. Each player card shows the following:





1 Disclosure arrow

Expands/Collapses the player card.

2 Player type

Shows the type of player from the following options:

- Single player 
- Section player 


3 Player name

Shows the name of the player. By default, player names contain the names of all instruments held by the player. You can also rename players manually.

4 Add instruments icon

Opens the instrument picker, from which you can select an instrument for the player.

5 Instrument labels

Each instrument assigned to a player has its own instrument label. The instrument menu  in each instrument label opens a menu with further options that allow you to, for example, change the instrument names or move the instrument to another player.

Instrument labels appear blue. Kit instrument labels appear green.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Single Player



Adds a single player to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Section Player



Adds a section player to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Ensemble



Adds multiple players to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds part layouts for each player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Group



Adds a player group to your project. If no players were selected, an empty player group is added. If existing players were selected, they are grouped together.

Sort Players



Sorts all players in the **Players** panel according to the first instrument they hold and the current instrument score order.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Players** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **None:** New players are added at the bottom of the players list, regardless of their instrument.
- **Band:** Players are sorted according to the accepted wind/concert band convention; for example, strings positioned between brass and percussion.
- **Jazz:** Players are sorted according to the accepted jazz convention; for example, trumpets positioned above horns, and pitched percussion above guitars.
- **Orchestral:** Players are sorted according to the accepted orchestral order convention ;for example, woodwinds positioned above brass and strings.

Player Settings



Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected player; for example, to rename them or show chord symbols above their staves.

You can also access player settings by right-clicking players.

Delete Player



Deletes selected players and player groups from the project. A warning message appears with further options, including allowing you to cancel.

RELATED LINKS

[Players](#) on page 123

[Player groups](#) on page 167



[Ensembles](#) on page 128

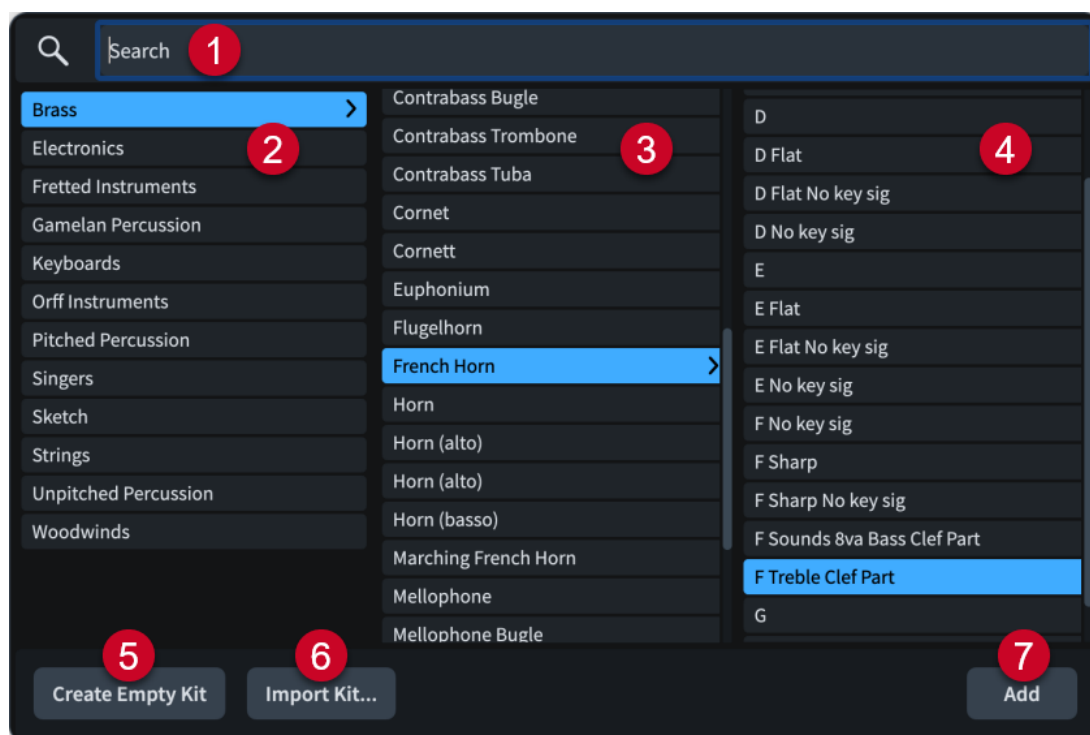
Instrument picker

The instrument picker allows you to find and add instruments to your project. It contains multiple versions of some instruments that have specific formatting and tuning requirements, such as French Horn, which has a version whose transposed pitch layouts are always in treble clef.

The instrument picker uses the application language.

You can open the instrument picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Add a new player.
- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Instrument to Player**  in player cards.
- In the **Players** panel, select a player and press **Shift-I**.
- In the **Players** panel, select a player, then click **Player Settings**  in the action bar and choose **Add Instrument to Player**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.



The instrument picker contains the following sections and options:

1 Search field

Allows you to enter the instrument you are searching for directly. You can enter only part of the instrument name, such as **cello** for Violoncello.

2 Instrument family column

Contains instrument families to help you focus your search.

3 Instrument column

Contains the instruments available in the selected instrument family.

4 Variants column

Contains variants of the selected instrument, such as alternative transpositions, tunings, key signature options, or different behavior in concert/transposed pitch layouts. This column is not populated for instruments without variants.

5 Create Empty Kit

Adds an empty percussion kit to the player.

6 Import Kit

Imports an existing percussion kit previously exported as a library file.

7 Add

Adds the selected instrument to the project.

In addition to entering the instrument you want directly into the **Search** field, you can click options in the instrument picker to select them, and you can also select other items in the same column by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.

You can cycle forwards through the instrument picker by pressing **Tab**, which navigates in the following order: **Search field**, **Instrument**, **Variants**, **Instrument family**. You can also cycle backwards by pressing **Shift-Tab**, which navigates in the opposite direction.

An enclosure line shows which instrument family or instrument is selected when using the keyboard to navigate.

RELATED LINKS



- [Players](#) on page 123
- [Instruments](#) on page 130
- [Transposing instruments](#) on page 132
- [Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153
- [Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142
- [Capos](#) on page 157
- [Adding players](#) on page 124
- [Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133
- [Changing instruments](#) on page 134
- [Changing the application language](#) on page 57

Ensemble picker

The ensemble picker allows you to find and add ensembles containing multiple players to your project. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

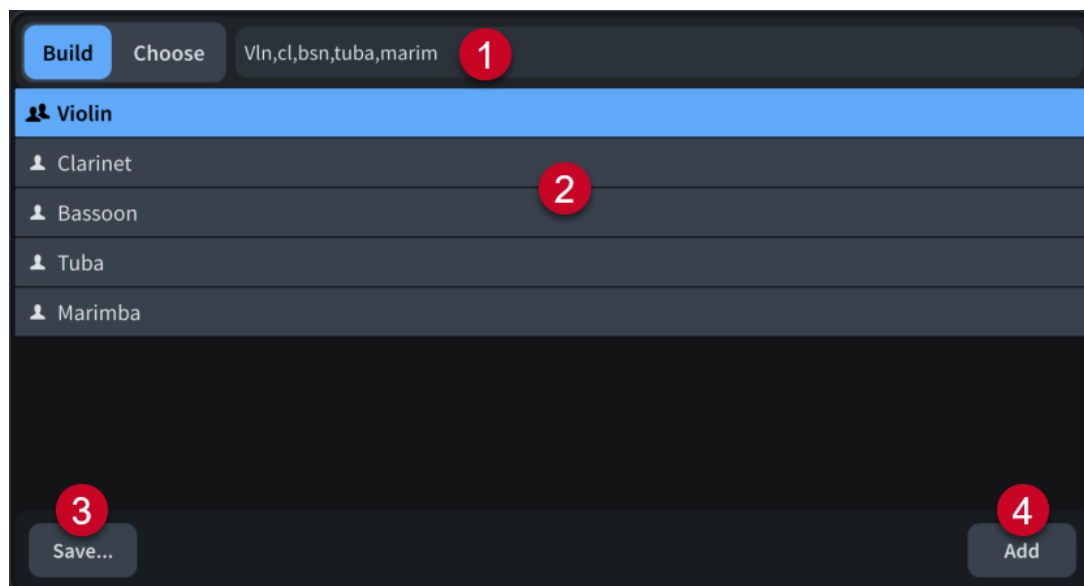
The ensemble picker uses the application language.

You can open the ensemble picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-E**.
- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
- In empty projects, click **Add Ensemble**  in the project start area.

The ensemble picker contains **Build** and **Choose** tabs. You can switch between them using the options in the top left of the ensemble picker.

Build tab



The **Build** tab contains the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to specify the instruments you want to include in the ensemble in the following ways:

- Enter the name of an existing ensemble, such as **String Section**.

- Enter the names or abbreviations of instruments, with each name/abbreviation separated by a comma. You can prefix instruments with a number followed by a space. For example, enter **2 vln, 3 cl,bsn,tuba,marim** to build an ensemble containing two violins, three clarinets, a bassoon, a tuba, and a marimba.
- Enter the corresponding orchestral shorthand, with or without separators. For example, enter **2picc.2.2.2 / 4.3.3.1** to add two flutes, one piccolo, two oboes, two clarinets, and two bassoons followed by four horns, three trumpets, three trombones, and one tuba. To specify only brass instruments, prefix orchestral shorthand entries with **br**, such as **br4331**.



NOTE

You can only use single digit numbers for each instrument type.

2 Player list

Contains the instruments currently in the ensemble based on your entries in the **Search** field.

By default, instruments are held by single players. You can change the player type by double-clicking players in the list. Icons show the current player type from the following options:

- Single player 
- Section player 

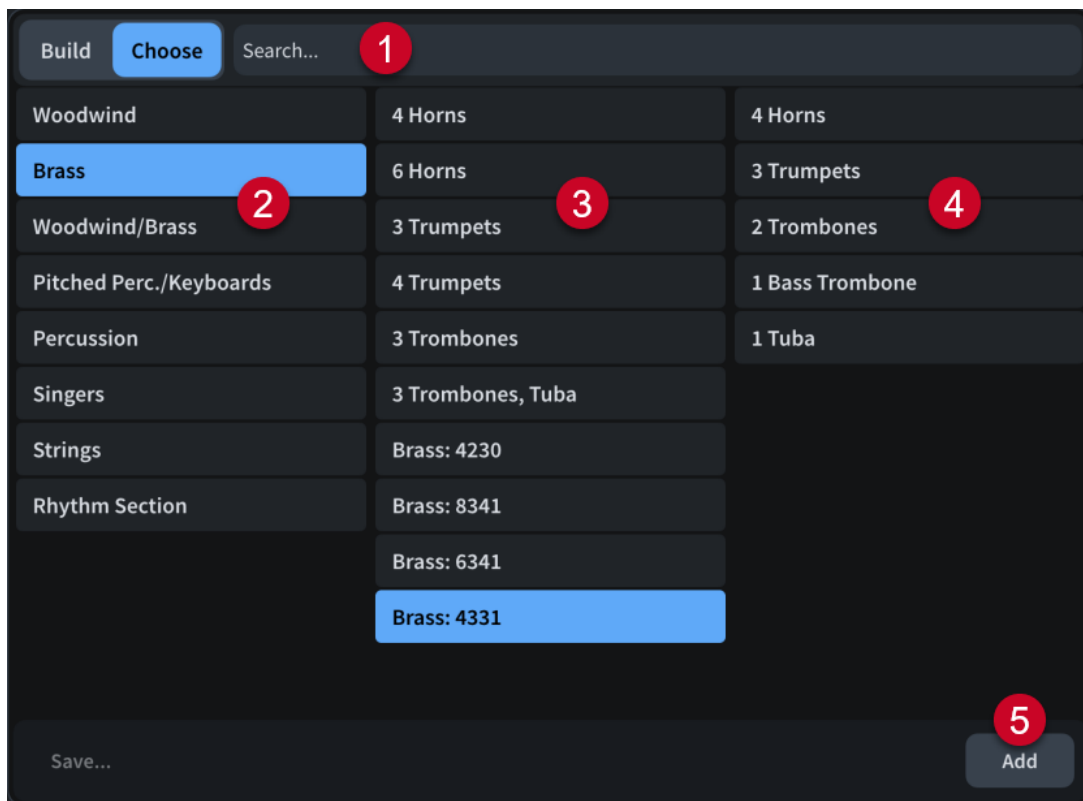
3 Save

Opens the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog, which allows you to name and save your ensemble for reuse in future projects.

4 Add

Adds the players in the custom ensemble to the project.

Choose tab



The **Choose** tab contains the following:

- 1 Search field**
Allows you to enter the ensemble you are searching for directly.
- 2 Ensemble category column**
Contains ensemble categories to help you focus your ensemble search.
- 3 Ensemble column**
Contains the ensembles available in the selected category.
- 4 Ensemble contents column**
Displays the instruments included in the selected ensemble.
- 5 Add**
Adds the players in the selected ensemble to the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Ensembles](#) on page 128

[Players](#) on page 123

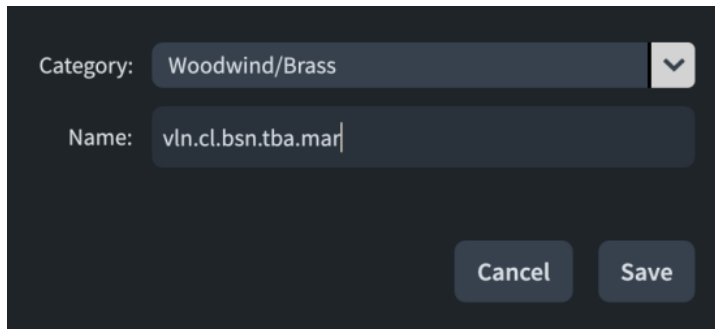
[Project templates](#) on page 77

[Changing the application language](#) on page 57

Save Custom Ensemble dialog

The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog allows you to name and save custom ensembles for reuse in future projects.

- You can open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog in Setup mode from inside the ensemble picker by building a custom ensemble, then clicking **Save**.



The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog contains the following options:

Category

Allows you to select an ensemble category for the custom ensemble.

Name

Allows you to enter a name for the custom ensemble.

RELATED LINKS

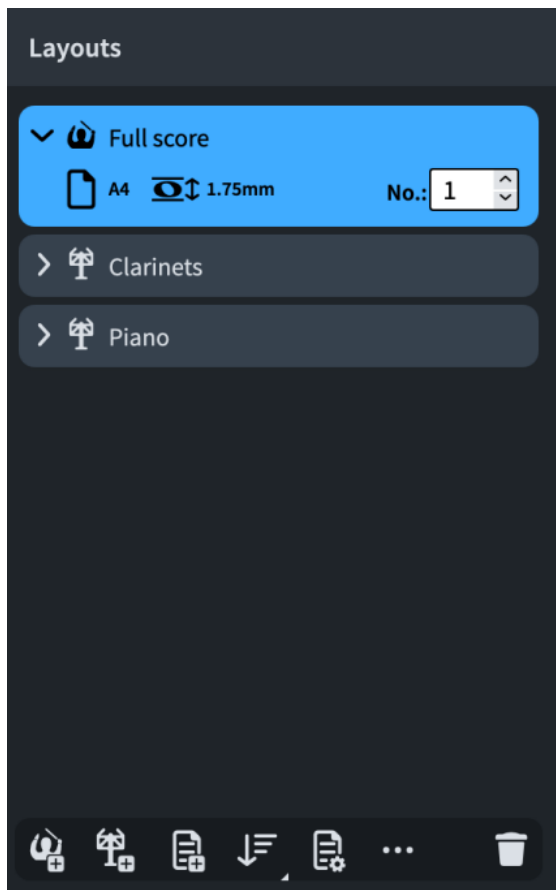
[Building and saving custom ensembles](#) on page 129

Layouts panel (Setup mode)

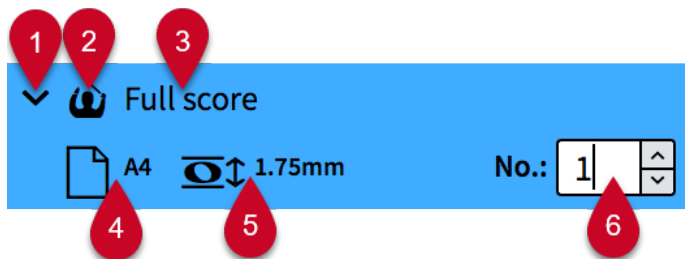
The **Layouts** panel contains all the layouts in the project, shown in a list. In Setup mode, it is located on the right of the window.

You can hide/show the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Right Zone**.



In the **Layouts** panel, each layout is shown as a card. Each layout card shows the following:






1 Disclosure arrow

Expands/Collapses the layout card.

2 Layout type

Shows the type of layout from the following options:

- Full score layout 
- Instrumental part layout 
- Custom score layout 

3 Layout name

Shows the name of the layout. Dorico Elements automatically adds default names depending on the name of the instrument that is assigned to a player and on the type of layout that is added. For example, if you assign a flute to a player, the instrumental part layout automatically gets the same name. If you add an empty instrumental part layout, the layout name shows **Empty part** and an incremental number if you add multiple empty part layouts.

4 Page size and orientation

Shows the size and orientation of the layout as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

5 Space size

Shows the space size between two staff lines in points, as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. This indicates the size of staves in the layout.

6 Layout number

Allows you to set a unique number for the layout that can be used as part of its file name when exported as a graphic. This can be useful to ensure exported part layout files are organized in their orchestral order, as this is usually different to their alphabetical order.

There is a different layout number sequence for each layout type. For example, full score layouts are numbered independently of part layouts.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Full Score Layout



Adds a full score layout to your project. By default, every player and flow is included in the layout.

Add Instrumental Part Layout



Adds an empty instrumental part layout to your project. You can then assign one or multiple players to the layout. By default, part layouts contain all flows that originated in the project.

Add Custom Score Layout



Adds an empty custom score layout to your project. You can then assign players and flows to the layout.

Sort Layouts



Sorts all layouts in the **Layouts** panel according to their type in the following order: full score layouts, instrumental part layouts, custom score layouts.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Layouts** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **Layout Number:** Sorts layouts within each category according to their current layout number.
- **Instrument Score Order:** Sorts layouts within each category according to the corresponding player order in the **Players** panel.

Layout Options



Opens the **Layout Options** dialog for the selected layouts.

Layout Settings



Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected layout; for example, to rename the layout.

You can also access layout settings by right-clicking layouts.

Delete Layout



Deletes selected layouts from the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Layouts panel \(Print mode\)](#) on page 577

[File import and export](#) on page 78

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

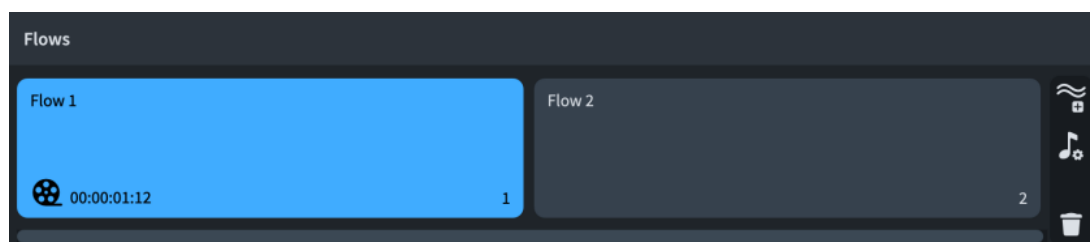
[Assigning flows to layouts](#) on page 177

Flows panel

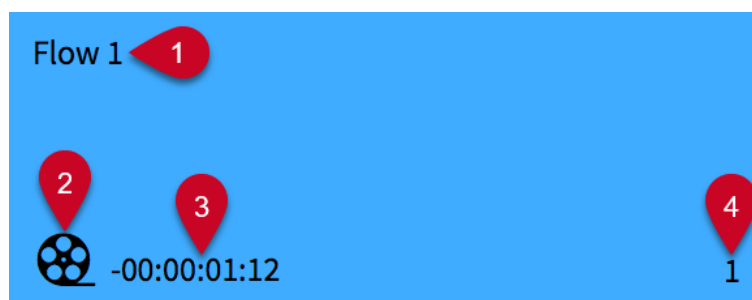
The **Flows** panel contains all the flows in the project, shown in a horizontal list. It is located at the bottom of the window in Setup mode.

You can hide/show the **Flows** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
- Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Lower Zone**.



In the **Flows** panel, each flow is shown as a card. Each flow card shows the following:



1 Flow name

Shows the name of the flow. If you create multiple flows without renaming them, each flow name shows a number that increments with each new flow that you create.

2 Film reel icon

Indicates the flow has an attached video.

3 Flow timecode

Shows the start timecode for the flow.

4 Flow number

Shows the number of the flow. The number increments with each new flow that you create or import. The number also indicates the position of the flow in a layout.

The **Flows** panel contains the following options:

Add Flow



Adds a new flow to your project. By default, every new flow is included in all layouts, and every player is added to the new flow.

Notation Options



Opens the **Notation Options** dialog that provides multiple options that allow you to make changes that affect the way music is notated for each flow.

Delete Flow



Deletes the selected flows from the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Videos](#) on page 189

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Players, layouts, and flows

In Dorico Elements, players, layouts, and flows are all connected to each other. Because they exist in the project rather than in a single score, you can, for example, have players and flows saved in the project without showing them in the full score.

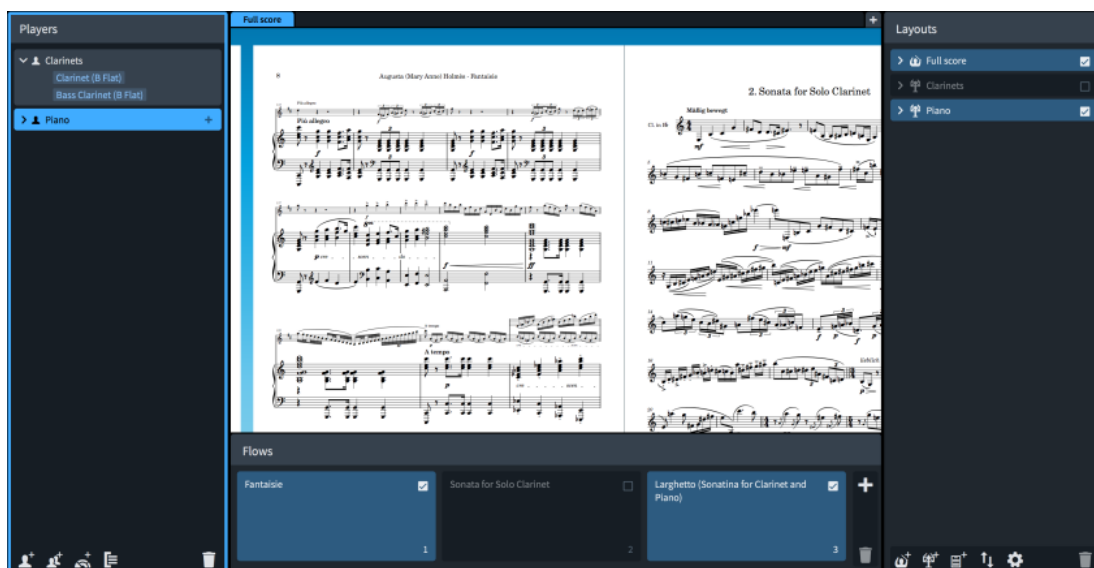
- Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows. For example, you can assign a single player to both the full score layout and their own part layout, and remove them from flows in which they do not play. By default, players are assigned to all flows that originated in the project, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.
- Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. For example, you can assign all the singers to a single part layout, then remove the flows in which they do not sing from the layout. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.
- Flows can contain any combination of players and be assigned to/removed from layouts. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

NOTE

- If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.
- Removing a flow from a layout automatically removes that layout from the flow, and vice versa. The same is true for players and layouts, and players and flows.

When you select a card in one of the panels in Setup mode, each card in the other panels shows a checkbox. Connected cards appear highlighted and have activated checkboxes, while unconnected cards are not highlighted and have deactivated checkboxes. For example, if you select a player card in the **Players** panel, all the flows to which the player is assigned are

highlighted and activated in the **Flows** panel, and all layouts to which the player is assigned are highlighted and activated in the **Layouts** panel.



A piano player selected in the **Players** panel with connected flows and layouts highlighted in the **Flows** and **Layouts** panels

EXAMPLE

A work for string quartet and choir is divided into three movements. The string quartet is tacet for the third movement, which the choir sings a cappella.

The Dorico project contains three flows (one for each movement), four single players for the string quartet, four section players for the choir, and another single player for a piano reduction. It uses the following layouts to produce the required performance materials:

- Four instrumental part layouts, one for each string quartet player. Each part layout contains all three flows but because the string players are not assigned to the third flow, automatic tacets are shown for it.
 - One full score layout containing all three flows, the string quartet players, and the choir players but omitting the piano reduction player.
 - One custom score layout for the vocal score. It contains all three flows, the choir players, and the piano reduction player.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Assigning flows to layouts](#) on page 177

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[File import and export](#) on page 78

[Tacets](#) on page 640

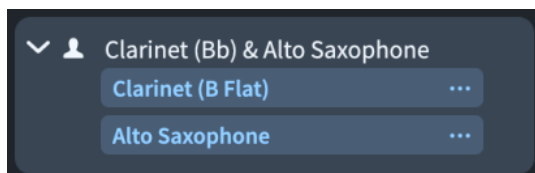
Players

In Dorico Elements, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of players:

Single player

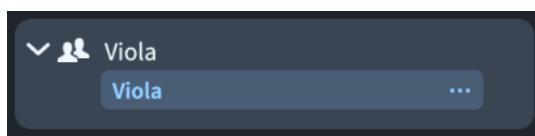
Represents an individual person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinettist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.



A single player in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

Section player

Represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.



A section player in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

NOTE

Section players can only hold one instrument.

You can designate both single and section players as soloists, such as in a concerto for solo violin and orchestra.

When you add a player in Dorico Elements, the following happens automatically:

- A part layout is created and the new player is assigned to it.
- The player is added to any full score layouts that already exist. If no full score layouts exist, a new full score layout is created.
- The player is assigned to all existing flows that originated in the project. It is not added to any flows that you imported into the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Adding ensembles](#) on page 128

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181



[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

[Instrument changes](#) on page 136

Adding players

You can add both single and section players to your project. Single players can hold multiple instruments, while section players can only hold one instrument.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, add an empty-handed player and open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:
 - To add a single player, either press **Shift-P**, or click **Add Single Player**  in the **Players** panel or project start area.
 - To add a section player, either press **Shift-Alt/Opt-P**, or click **Add Section Player**  in the **Players** panel or project start area.
2. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
3. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The single/section player is added and is automatically named after the selected instrument. The player's position in the **Players** panel depends on the current instrument score order.

The player is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

NOTE

- Players are not automatically added to flows that you imported into the project.
- If you want to add multiple instruments to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you added a single player and you want them to hold multiple instruments, you can add other instruments to the single player.
- You can designate the player as a soloist.
- You can change the default order of players in all layouts and set custom player orders in each layout independently.


RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Instrument picker](#) on page 112
- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Showing instrument/player names in staff labels](#) on page 1313
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
- [Instrument numbering](#) on page 131
- [Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133
- [Project templates](#) on page 77
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558

Duplicating players

You can duplicate existing players. This adds another player of the same type holding the same instruments as the original.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to duplicate.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Duplicate Player**.

RESULT

A new player is added, with the same instruments as the original player and is named after those instruments. It is positioned in the **Players** panel according to the current instrument score order, and below the highest-numbered matching player.

The original and new players are automatically numbered to ensure their names are unique.

The new player is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

NOTE

- Any existing music belonging to the original player is not duplicated.
- You can also duplicate players by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Duplicate Player** from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS


[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

[Duplicating flows](#) on page 172

Changing the default player order

You can change the default order in which players' staves appear in all layouts; for example, if your project requires an unconventional instrument order.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click and hold or right-click **Sort Players** .
2. Choose one of the following instrument score orders:
 - **None**
 - **Band**
 - **Jazz**
 - **Orchestral**
3. Optional: Click and drag players upwards/downwards.
An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.

RESULT

The default player order is changed. All players are automatically sorted according to first instrument they hold and the instrument score order, including if you later add or delete players.

NOTE

- This does not change the player order in layouts with custom player orders.

- When you move players manually in the **Players** panel, Dorico Elements automatically changes the instrument score order to **None**. This preserves your player order if you later add more players, for example.
 - You can also select instrument score orders from the **Order** menu in the status bar.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can renumber instruments so that their numbering matches their default player order.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Renumbering instruments](#) on page 132

[Reordering layouts](#) on page 179

Setting custom player orders

You can change the order in which players' staves appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want to have a different player order in a custom score layout than the default player order for your other layouts, as set by the order of players in the **Players** panel.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layout in which you want to set a custom player order.

NOTE

You can only set custom player orders in one layout at a time. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Players** section, activate **Uses custom player order**.
 5. In the list, select a player whose position you want to change.
 6. Change its position relative to other players in one of the following ways:
 - Click **Move up**.
 - Click **Move down**.
 7. Optional: Repeat steps 5 to 6 for other players in the selected layout whose position you want to change.
 8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The player order in the selected layout is changed. This overrides the default player order.

Any subsequent changes you make to the order of players in the **Players** panel are not reflected in layouts with custom player orders.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745


Designating players as soloists

You can designate both single and section players as soloists, such as in a concerto for solo violin and orchestra. You can have multiple soloists in a single project.

PREREQUISITE

You have added the players you want to designate as soloists.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to designate as a soloist.
 2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Soloist**.
-

RESULT

The selected player is designated as a soloist.

Instruments held by players designated as soloists are not automatically numbered. Provided they have default instrument names, they are automatically given the prefix “Solo” as appropriate for the current instrument language setting, which appears in staff labels.

Soloists are automatically positioned in the conventional score position; that is, above the strings, and are bracketed separately from other players.

Choosing **Soloist** again, so that no tick appears beside it in the menu, returns soloists to being a normal player of their type.

TIP

You can also designate players as soloists by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Soloist** from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Instrument numbering](#) on page 131
- [Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866
- [Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
- [Staff labels](#) on page 1309


Deleting players

You can delete players from your project, which also deletes all instruments held by those players. You can also optionally delete their part layouts.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected players in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
 - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player** .
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that appears:

- To delete the selected players and all the instruments they hold, but leave their part layouts in the project, choose **Delete Player Only**.
- To delete the selected players, their instruments, and all corresponding part layouts, choose **Delete Player and Part Layouts**.

NOTE

Part layouts that also contain other players are not deleted.

RESULT

The selected players, and optionally their part layouts, are deleted.

TIP

You can delete only players without music in any flow by choosing **Setup > Delete Empty Players**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Deleting instruments](#) on page 136
- [Deleting layouts](#) on page 180
- [Deleting player groups](#) on page 169
- [Restoring default layouts](#) on page 180
- [Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Ensembles

Ensembles are sets of multiple players that are commonly used together, such as a double woodwind section that contains two flutes, two oboes, two clarinets, and two bassoons. Dorico Elements provides predefined ensembles, but you can also build custom ensembles.

Ensembles can contain single and/or section players, depending on the ensemble. For example, woodwind ensembles contain single players whereas string ensembles contain section players.

You can use ensembles to add multiple players to your project simultaneously and build up the instrumentation quickly.



RELATED LINKS

- [Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121
- [Project templates](#) on page 77

Adding ensembles

You can add multiple players simultaneously by adding ensembles, such as a complete string section or four-part choir. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-E**.
 - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
 - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble**  in the project start area.

2. Select or build the ensemble you want in the ensemble picker.
 3. Optional: If you built a new ensemble that you want to reuse in future projects, click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog and save your ensemble.
 4. Click **Add**.
-

RESULT

The players in the selected ensemble are added to the **Players** panel, as either single or section players depending on the ensemble type. They are assigned to all flows that originated in the project.

TIP

You can use project templates to start projects with multiple players.



RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Ensemble picker](#) on page 114
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
- [Starting new projects](#) on page 71
- [Project templates](#) on page 77
- [File import and export](#) on page 78

Building and saving custom ensembles



You can build custom ensembles in the ensemble picker and save them for reuse in future projects; for example, if you frequently write music for an ensemble with unusual instrumentation.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-E**.
 - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
 - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble**  in the project start area.
2. Click **Build** to switch to the **Build** tab.
3. Enter the instruments you want into the **Search** field.
For example, enter **2 vln, 3 cl,bsn,tuba,marim** to build an ensemble containing two violins, three clarinets, a bassoon, a tuba, and a marimba.

TIP

You can also use orchestral shorthand to specify instruments.

4. Optional: To confirm the instruments identified by your current entry and clear the **Search** field, press **Tab**.
5. Optional: To change the player type, double-click players in the list.
The icons for each player show whether they are single players  or section players .
6. Click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
7. Select an ensemble category from the **Category** menu.
8. Enter a name for your ensemble in the **Name** field.

9. Click **Save** to save your ensemble and close the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
 10. Optional: Click **Add** to add the ensemble to the project and close the ensemble picker.
-

RESULT

Your ensemble is saved, allowing you to add it to future projects. If you clicked **Add** in the ensemble picker, the players in the ensemble are added to the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Ensemble picker](#) on page 114

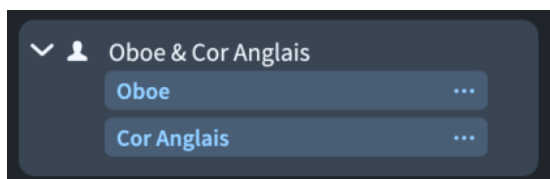
[Save Custom Ensemble dialog](#) on page 116

Instruments

In Dorico Elements, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico Elements, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold one instrument, but single players can hold multiple instruments, which allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

This means that before you can add instruments to a project, you must first add players or ensembles, which may in turn also be assigned to groups if needed. If you add ensembles, the appropriate instruments for the ensemble are automatically added to the players.



A single player holding two instruments, an Oboe and Cor Anglais, in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff, as long as no notes overlap. By default, Dorico Elements allows instrument changes in all layouts and automatically shows instrument change labels. This means that only the top instrument held by players is shown automatically in the music area. You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently. You can also hide/show empty staves in each layout independently.

Instruments in Dorico Elements do not have limited ranges; it is possible to notate any pitch in any register on every instrument. However, in the piano roll editor, only pitches that fall in the MIDI note range 0-127 can be represented. Similarly, if you input a pitch beyond the range of samples in the assigned VST instrument, the pitch does not sound in playback.

There are multiple variants of some instruments that have specific formatting and tuning requirements, such as French Horn, which has a version whose part layouts are always in treble clef.

You can change instruments at any time, add/delete them from players, and move them between players. You can also change the language for instrument names; for example, to recreate a French score.

RELATED LINKS

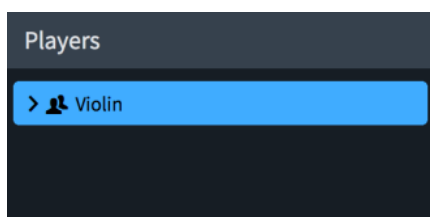
[Players](#) on page 123

- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866
- [Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127
- [Changing the default player order](#) on page 125
- [Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
- [Piano roll editor](#) on page 678

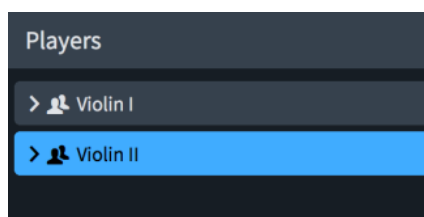
Instrument numbering

It is customary to number instruments when there is more than one in a piece so that they can be easily identified, such as Horn 1 and Horn 2. Dorico Elements automatically numbers instruments where there are multiple instruments of the same type in the same project.

For example, if there is only one flute in a project, it is called Flute, but if there are three flutes, they are automatically called Flute 1, Flute 2, and Flute 3.



One violin with no number



Adding a second violin automatically generates numbers for both violins

Instrument numbering applies to individual instruments, rather than players. For example, if an ensemble contains two flute players and a piccolo player, but the second flute is also holding a piccolo, then the instruments are numbered in the following way:

- Flute 1
- Flute 2 & Piccolo 1
- Piccolo 2

TIP

You can move individual instruments to different players if you want to change which numbered instruments are held by each player. For example, if you want the second flute to double second piccolo rather than first piccolo, you can swap the piccolo instruments between the players.

Dorico Elements automatically generates instrument numbers for players if the following criteria are met:

- The project contains multiple instruments with identical instrument names.
- The instruments have the same transposition.
- The players holding them are the same type, either single or section.
- The players are in the same group.

For example, if you have two flutes in your project, but one flute is a section player and the other flute is a single player, they are not numbered automatically. Similarly, if the two flutes are in different player groups, they are not numbered automatically.

NOTE

Instruments held by players designated as soloists are not automatically numbered.

RELATED LINKS

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Changing instrument names](#) on page 183

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1314

[Moving instruments](#) on page 135

[Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127

[Staff label contents](#) on page 1313

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

Renumbering instruments

You can renumber instruments so that their numbering matches their default player order; for example, if you want to swap the numbering of Horns 2 and 3.

PREREQUISITE

Your default player order matches the instrument numbering you want.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, choose **Setup > Renumber Instruments**.
-

RESULT

Instruments are renumbered according to the order of players in the Players panel.

For players you have not already renamed, player names are updated to reflect the new instrument numbers.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Reordering layouts](#) on page 179

[Renumbering layouts](#) on page 180

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

Transposing instruments

While most instruments produce notes at concert pitch, transposing instruments produce a note that is different to the one that is written. Common transposing instruments include clarinets, horns, trumpets, saxophones, and the cor anglais.

When a clarinet in B \flat plays a C, the sound produced is a B \flat , one whole step (tone) below. When a horn in F plays a C, the sound produced is an F, a fifth below.

Octave-transposing instruments include the piccolo (sounding an octave above written), glockenspiel (sounding two octaves above written), and guitar and double bass (both sounding an octave below written).

Dorico Elements stores all note information in concert pitch and automatically transposes notes as appropriate for the transposition of the instrument. This means notes, key signatures, and chord symbols are automatically changed in transposing layouts compared to non-transposing layouts. You can also change instruments at any time, and the music is adjusted automatically to ensure the correct pitches are shown.

You can also change the octave of individual clefs and whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

NOTE

According to convention, octave-transposing instruments always show transposed pitches, including in concert pitch layouts and without requiring clefs with octave indicators.

RELATED LINKS

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

[Instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1314

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000

[Changing fretted instrument transpositions](#) on page 161

[Enharmonic equivalent key signatures](#) on page 1025

[Changing instruments](#) on page 134

[Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions](#) on page 910

[Clefs with octave indicators](#) on page 913

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Capos](#) on page 157

Adding instruments to players

You can add instruments and percussion kits to both single and section players. Single players can hold multiple instruments, while section players can only hold one instrument.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player to which you want to add instruments.

NOTE

- You can only add instruments to one player at a time.
 - You cannot add instruments to section players who are already holding one instrument.
-

2. Open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-I**.
- Click the plus symbol **+** in the player card.

3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.

4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.
-

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the selected player. Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

If you have not already renamed the player, the player name updates to include all instruments held by the player.

NOTE

- Before you have input any notes, only the first instrument held by single players is shown in full scores in page view. All instrument staves are shown in galley view, so we recommend switching to galley view to input notes for any other instruments held by single players; for example, to create instrument changes.
 - If you want to add multiple players to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Players](#) on page 123

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Adding ensembles](#) on page 128

[Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Instrument changes](#) on page 136

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Capos](#) on page 157

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

[Changing instrument names](#) on page 183

[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Note input](#) on page 223

[Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

Changing instruments

You can change the type of instruments without affecting any music already entered onto their staves; for example, if your Clarinet part is very low and you want to change it to a Bass Clarinet, or you want to change the tuning of a guitar.

NOTE


- You cannot change percussion kits into other instruments, you can only change individual unpitched percussion instruments.
 - You cannot change a pitched instrument into an unpitched instrument, and vice versa.
 - These steps describe changing the instrument type, not an instrument change where a performer switches from one instrument to another partway through a flow.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player whose instrument you want to change.

The card lists the instruments held by the player.



2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Change Instrument** to open the instrument picker.
 3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
 4. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.
-

RESULT

The selected instrument is changed without affecting any music on its staff.

Where appropriate, different clefs are used by default. This means that notes can appear differently so that they are notated correctly according to the new clef.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the player order; for example, if the new instrument requires a different position according to orchestral convention.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Instrument changes](#) on page 136

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

[Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1315

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

Moving instruments

You can move individual instruments without affecting any music already input for those instruments. You can move instruments between players, or to a different position in the instrument list for a single player; for example, if you want to change the order of staves in the score.

Changing the order of instruments held by a single player also affects its player name, if you have not already renamed the player.

PREREQUISITE

You have added the players to which you want to move instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the cards of the players holding the instruments you want to move.
2. Move instruments in any of the following ways:
 - To change the order of instruments for a single player, click and drag a single instrument to the required position, then release the mouse.
 - To move instruments to another player, click and drag a single instrument to the required player card, then release the mouse.

- To move instruments to another player, click the instrument menu  in the instrument label and choose **Move Instrument to Player > [Player]**.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Adding players](#) on page 124
- [Changing the default player order](#) on page 125
- [Setting custom player orders](#) on page 126
- [Renaming players](#) on page 182
- [Resetting player names](#) on page 182


Deleting instruments

You can delete individual instruments without deleting the player holding them or other instruments held by the same player.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the instrument you want to delete.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Delete Instrument**.
 3. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT

The instrument is deleted from the player.

TIP

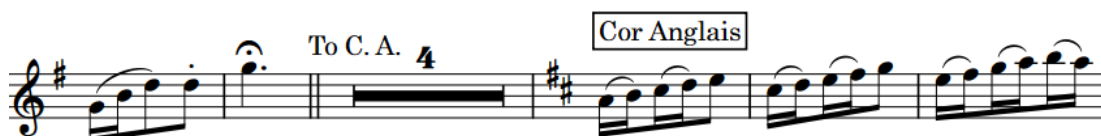
If you want to delete all instruments held by a single player, you can also delete the player.

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Deleting players](#) on page 127

Instrument changes

Instrument changes are when a player holding multiple instruments switches from playing one instrument to a different instrument. They are usually indicated with text labels, both after the last note before the change and at the first note after the change.



An instrument change from Oboe to Cor Anglais

Dorico Elements handles instrument changes automatically, including showing the appropriate instrument change labels, when the following criteria are met:

- You have added a single player holding at least two instruments.
- You have input notes on at least two instrument staves held by the single player, such as inputting oboe notes on the Oboe staff and cor anglais notes on the Cor Anglais staff.
- Notes for different instruments held by the same single player do not overlap.
- Instrument changes are allowed in the layout.

You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently.

By default, instrument changes occur after the last note in old instruments, instrument change labels for new instruments appear after cues on their staves, and instrument change warnings are hidden in full score layouts.

You can change the positions of instrument changes and instrument change labels in each layout independently.

Instrument change labels use the appropriate prefix for the current instrument name language setting.

RELATED LINKS

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

[Changing instruments](#) on page 134

Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes

You can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show multiple percussion instruments on as few staves as possible in the score, but on separate staves for each percussion instrument in the percussion part.

Disallowing instrument changes shows all instrument staves in the selected layouts, including multiple instruments held by one single player.

TIP

If you want to input notes for other instruments held by single players but keep instrument changes in the layout, you can switch to galley view to see all staves in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow/disallow instrument changes.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Allow instrument changes**.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Instrument changes are allowed in the selected layouts when **Allow instrument changes** is activated, and disallowed when it is deactivated.

NOTE

Multiple instruments can only appear on the same staff with an instrument change if none of their notes overlap. If any of their notes do overlap, multiple staves are shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605

[Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows](#) on page 141

[Changing instruments](#) on page 134

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

Changing the position of instrument changes

You can show instrument changes either after the last note in the old instrument or before the first note in the new instrument in each layout independently. You can also change the positions of instrument change labels relative to cues.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the position of instrument changes.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, choose one of the following options for **Instrument transition position**:
 - **After last note in old instrument**
 - **Before first note in new instrument**
 5. Activate/Deactivate **Show instrument change label after cue, if cue precedes first note in new instrument**.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Instrument changes are shown at the corresponding position in the selected layouts.

TIP

When instrument changes occur mid-system, you might prefer to show the new instrument in the staff label, if it is the first sounding instrument in the system. You can change this setting in **Layout Options > Staves and Systems > Staff Labels**.

EXAMPLE



Instrument change after last note in old instrument, and instrument change label at start of cue



Instrument change before first note in new instrument, and instrument change label after cue

RELATED LINKS

[Cues](#) on page 920

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

Editing the default instrument change label text

You can change the default instrument change label prefix and whether instrument change labels show full or short instrument names by default in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show full instrument names in part layouts but short instrument names in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default content in instrument change labels.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, choose one of the following options for **Instrument names to use in change labels**:
 - **Full Names**
 - **Short Names**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Prefix for instrument change warnings**:
 - **To**
 - **Take**
 - **Custom**

NOTE

To and **Take** prefixes appear as appropriate for the current instrument name language setting.

6. Optional: If you chose **Custom**, enter the text you want in the following fields, individually or together:
 - **Custom prefix**
 - **Custom suffix**
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The length of instrument names and prefixes/suffixes in all instrument change labels in the selected layouts is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows](#) on page 141



[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

Editing instrument change label text individually

You can override the text shown in instrument change labels individually; for example, if you want to show the full instrument name in the first instrument change label in the flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the instrument change labels whose text you want to edit.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Instrument Changes** group.
 3. Enter the text you want to appear in the instrument change labels into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
 5. Optional: Activate/Deactivate **Hide prefix**.
-

RESULT

The selected instrument change labels are changed to show the text you entered. If you activated **Hide prefix**, the prefix is hidden.

Deactivating **Custom text** returns the corresponding instrument change labels to their default text.

NOTE

- Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.
 - You can change the default instrument change label prefix and whether instrument change labels show full or short instrument names by default in each layout independently.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows

You can hide/show instrument change labels at the start of each flow in each layout independently. These labels can be useful for players holding multiple instruments as a way of clarifying the instrument required in their part layouts, which do not normally show staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument change labels at the start of flows.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Show instrument change label at start of flow**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Hiding/Showing instrument change warnings

You can hide/show all instrument change warnings after the last notes before instrument changes in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show "To Marimba" in the percussion part layout but hide it in the full score.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument change warnings.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Show instrument change warnings**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes](#) on page 137

Instrument change label paragraph styles

There are different paragraph styles for instrument change labels and instrument change warnings. You can change different aspects of these paragraph styles in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog, such as hiding/showing borders for each type of label.

By default, borders are shown on instrument change labels but not shown on instrument change warnings.



The following paragraph styles are used for instrument change labels:

- 1 **Instrument Change Warnings:** Used for warning labels before instrument changes
- 2 **Instrument Change Labels:** Used for labels after instrument changes

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Editing instrument change label text individually](#) on page 140

[Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001

[Adding borders to text items](#) on page 1358

Percussion kits and drum sets

A percussion kit is a collection of unpitched percussion instruments that are played by a single player. Drum sets are a particular type of percussion kit that are often used in pop and rock music.

NOTE

In this documentation, we use “percussion kit” to refer to both percussion kits and drum sets.

In Dorico Elements, you can present percussion kits in different ways, including as a five-line staff and as a grid. If you want percussion kits to behave as drum sets, you can define them as drum sets. For example, there are options on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options** for handling voices that only apply to drum sets.

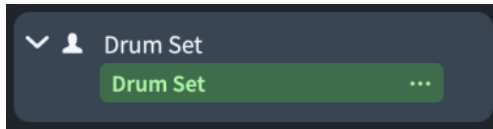
You can add percussion kits to projects in the following ways:

- Add percussion kits to players in the same way as adding instruments.
- Combine existing unpitched percussion instruments held by a single player into kits.
- Add empty kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments.
- Import existing kits you have previously exported and saved.

You can move percussion instruments between players without affecting any music already added to that instrument. If the instrument you want to move is combined into a percussion kit, you must first remove the instrument from the kit before you can move it to another player.

You can change individual percussion instruments like any other instrument. However, you can only change unpitched percussion instruments to other unpitched percussion instruments, and you can only change the percussion instruments in kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

Percussion kit instrument labels appear green in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



A single player holding a percussion kit in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133


[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

[Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

Edit Percussion Kit dialog

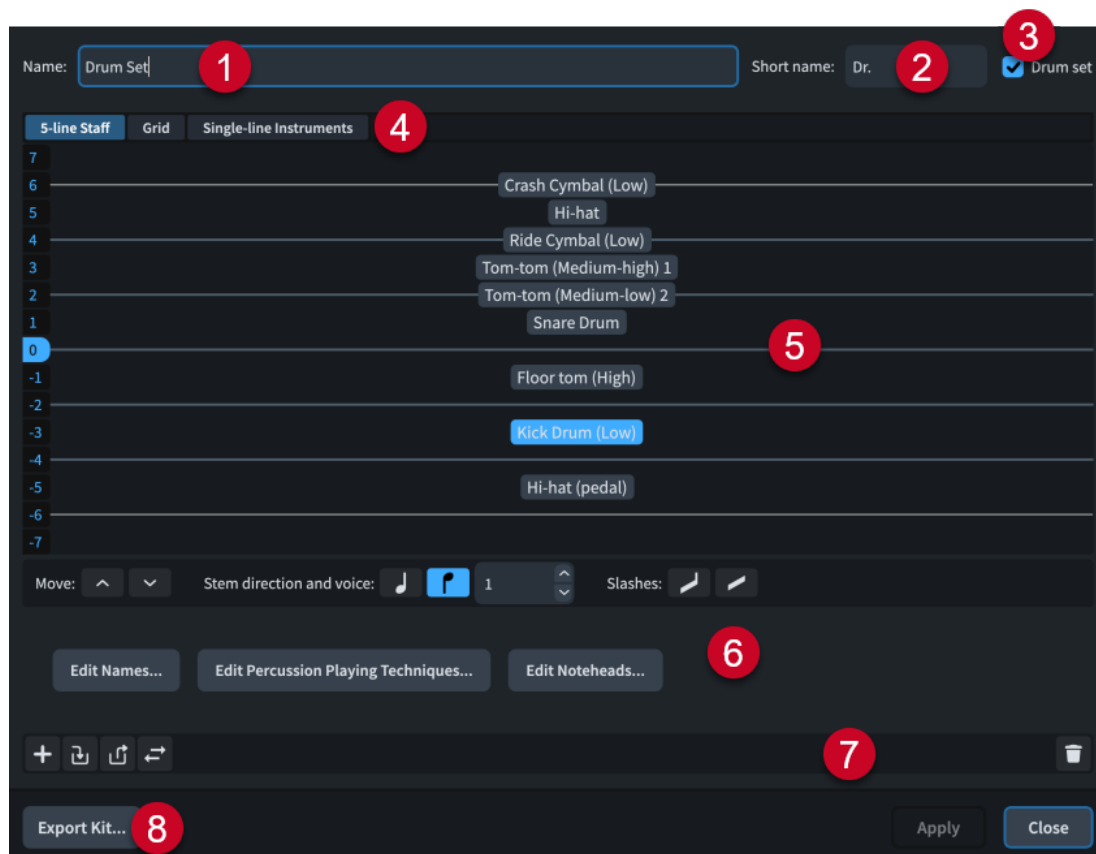
The **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog allows you to make changes to percussion kits, including which instruments they contain and how instruments are arranged in the different available kit presentations.

You can open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in any of the following ways:

- Add an empty percussion kit or combine existing instruments into a percussion kit.
- In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of a player holding a percussion kit, then click the instrument menu  in the kit instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit**.

TIP

Percussion kit instrument labels are green in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



1 Name

Allows you to enter or change the full name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Full** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

2 Short name

Allows you to enter or change the abbreviated name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Abbreviated** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

3 Drum set

Percussion kits are defined as drum sets when the checkbox is activated. Percussion kits that are defined as drum sets follow your settings for drum sets on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**, including for voicing and default stem directions.

4 Presentation types

Allows you to select a percussion kit presentation type in order to edit how the selected percussion kit appears in that presentation type.

- **5-line Staff:** Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.
- **Grid:** Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize how large the gaps between each line are. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.
- **Single-line Instruments:** Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

5 Editor

Displays the current arrangement of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. You can change the order of instruments and the layout of lines and spaces in the grid presentation type by using the controls.

6 Controls

Allows you to change the order and stem direction of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. It also allows you to add slash voices to the kit.

- **Edit Names:** Opens the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog, which allows you to change the names of the currently selected instrument.






NOTE

This changes the appearance of percussion instrument names in all presentations. Depending on the percussion kit presentation type, staff labels might use different information than these instrument names.

- **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques:** Opens the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog, which allows you to change how combinations of noteheads, articulations, and tremolos affect playback for the currently selected instrument.
- **Edit Noteheads:** Opens the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog, which allows you to override the noteheads used by the currently selected instrument in five-line staff kit presentations.

7 Action bar

Contains options that apply to all presentation types.

- **Add New Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched percussion instrument to be added to the kit.
- **Add Existing Instrument From Player** : Shows a menu listing the other players in your project that are holding individual percussion instruments not in kits. You can select a percussion instrument from another player to move to this kit, bringing its music with it.
- **Remove Instrument From Kit** : Removes the selected instrument from the kit, so it appears as an individual instrument. You can move individual instruments to other players or into other kit instruments.
- **Change Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched instrument to replace the selected instrument while retaining its music.
- **Delete Instrument** : Deletes the instrument from the kit, including its music.

8 Export Kit

Allows you to export the percussion kit as a library file so you can use it in other projects.

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Adding empty percussion kits to players](#) on page 146
- [Combining individual percussion instruments into kits](#) on page 147
- [Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142
- [Voices in percussion kits](#) on page 1435
- [Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319
- [Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428
- [Edit Instrument Names dialog](#) on page 184
- [Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog](#) on page 1421
- [Override Percussion Noteheads dialog](#) on page 1423
- [Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420
- [Playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1421
- [Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 1435
- [Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

Adding empty percussion kits to players

You can add empty percussion kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments.

NOTE

You cannot add percussion kits to section players that are already holding one instrument.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in any of the following ways:
 - Select a player, press **Shift-I**, and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
 - Click the plus symbol **+** in a player card and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
 - Select a player, then click **Player Settings** **⋮** in the action bar and choose **Create Empty Kit**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
 2. Add the percussion instruments you want to the kit in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments](#) on page 1419

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Adding instruments to percussion kits

You can add new instruments to percussion kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit to which you want to add instruments.
 2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu **⋮** and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
 3. Click **Add New Instrument** **+** to open the instrument picker.
 4. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
 5. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.
 6. Click **Close**.
-

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the percussion kit.


RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
- [Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428
- [Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

Combining individual percussion instruments into kits

If a player is holding one or more individual percussion instruments, you can combine them into a percussion kit.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player whose percussion instruments you want to combine into a kit.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Combine Instruments into Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

TIP

You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.

3. Edit the new percussion kit.
For example, you can change the order in which the instruments appear in a grid or on a five-line staff.

RESULT

A new kit is created containing all the instruments held by the player.



NOTE

If the player was already holding one or more kit instruments, all individual instruments and any other kits are combined into the first kit.

Removing individual instruments from percussion kits

You can remove individual instruments from percussion kits without affecting other instruments in the kit. For example, if you want to move an instrument from one percussion kit to another player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from which you want to remove instruments.
 2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
 3. Click the instruments you want to remove from the kit.
 4. Click **Remove Instrument From Kit**  in the action bar.
 5. Click **Close**.
-

RESULT

The selected instruments are removed from the percussion kit. They appear as individual instruments belonging to the same player.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move the instruments to other players if required.

RELATED LINKS


[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Moving instruments](#) on page 135

Defining percussion kits as drum sets

You can define individual percussion kits as drum sets. Drum sets follow your per-flow notation options for voicing in drum sets with five-line staff presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit you want to define as a drum set.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Activate **Drum set** in the top right of the dialog.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected percussion kit is defined as a drum set. The arrangement of voices for instruments in the kit when using the five-line staff presentation type follows your per-flow setting on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

If you no longer want a percussion kit to be defined as a drum set, you can deactivate **Drum set** in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog for that kit.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110


[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747


[Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog](#) on page 1421

Changing instruments in percussion kits

You can change existing instruments in percussion kits while retaining any existing music for that instrument.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the instrument you want to change.

4. Click **Change Instrument**  in the action bar to open the instrument picker.
 5. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
 6. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.
 7. Click **Close**.
-

RESULT

The instrument is changed to the one selected in the instrument picker. Any music input for the previous instrument is retained.

NOTE

Playing techniques expressed using playing technique-specific noteheads are not retained.

RELATED LINKS


[Playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1421

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Moving instruments in percussion kits



You can change the positions of instruments within percussion kits of all presentation types to change the order in which the instruments appear in the score and parts. In five-line staff presentation types, you can also change the staff position of slash voices.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change the positions of instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the kit presentation type in which you want to change the order of instruments. For example, click **Grid** to change the order of instruments when the kit uses the grid presentation type.
4. Click the percussion instruments and/or slash voices whose position you want to change.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you can only move one instrument or slash voice at a time.

5. Change the position of the selected instruments/slash voices in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards, click **Move Up** .
 - To move them downwards, click **Move Down** .
 - Click and drag a single instrument upwards/downwards (five-line staff presentation only).
 6. Optional: Repeat these steps for other instruments in the percussion kit, and for other kit presentation types for the same percussion kit.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The positions of the selected instruments and/or slash voices within the kit is changed. Multiple instruments can share the same staff position, but we recommend that they use different noteheads so that the player can tell them apart.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Moving notes to other instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 465


[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

Creating groups of instruments within grid presentation percussion kits

You can create groups of instruments within percussion kits that use the grid presentation type in order to have a better overview of the instruments in the kit.

In grid presentation percussion kits, the name of each individual instrument is shown in the staff label. You can simplify the staff label of grid presentation percussion kits by creating groups; for example, to show “Wood Blocks” instead of “Wood Block (High)”, “Wood Block (Medium)”, and “Wood Block (Low)”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to create groups in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the first instrument you want to include in the group.
5. **Shift**-click the last instrument you want to include in the group.

NOTE

You can only include adjacent instruments in groups.

-
6. Click **Add +**.

RESULT

A group is created containing the selected instruments. The group is given a default name that you can change.

RELATED LINKS


[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits

Group names are shown as instrument labels. You can change the names of groups in percussion kits using the grid presentation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose grid presentation groups you want to rename.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Double-click the group you want to rename to open the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog.
Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Enter the names you want to give the group in the corresponding fields in the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog:
 - **Full Name**
 - **Short Name**
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.



RESULT

The name of the group is changed. This also changes the staff label for the group.


NOTE

Staff labels for groups in grid presentation percussion kits use a different paragraph style to the staff labels for non-grouped instruments in grid presentation percussion kits.

EXAMPLE

Ride Cymbal —
Hi-hat —
Wood Block 1 —
Wood Block 2 
Wood Block 3 
Tom 1 —
Tom 2 —
Kick Drum —

Ungrouped grid presentation percussion kit

Ride Cymbal —
Hi-hat —
Wood blocks 
Tom 1 —
Tom 2 —
Kick Drum —

Grid presentation percussion kit with wood blocks grouped



RELATED LINKS

[Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1319](#)

Deleting groups within grid presentation percussion kits

You can delete groups in percussion kits using the grid presentation type without deleting the instruments within the group.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from whose grid presentation you want to delete groups.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the group you want to delete.
Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Click **Delete** .


RESULT

The group is deleted. The individual staff labels for each instrument in the group are restored.

Changing the size of gaps between lines in percussion grids

You can change the size of gaps between lines in percussion kits using the grid presentation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player in whose percussion kit you want to change the size of gaps in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the instruments below which you want to change the gap size.
5. Change the value for **Gap**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.


RESULT

The size of the gaps below the selected instruments is changed.

Exporting percussion kits

You can export percussion kits as `.dorico.lib` files. This allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player whose percussion kit you want to export.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

3. Click **Export Kit** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
 5. Click **Save**.
-

RESULT

The kit is exported and saved as a `.doricolib` file.

TIP

You can later import the `.doricolib` file into other projects to reuse the percussion kit.

Importing percussion kits

You can import `.doricolib` files containing percussion kits, which allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PREREQUISITE

Your project contains at least one single player or empty-handed section player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, open the instrument picker for the player to which you want to assign the imported percussion kit in any of the following ways:
 - Select the player and press **Shift-I**.
 - Click the plus symbol **+** in the player card.
 - Select the player, then click **Player Settings** **...** in the action bar and choose **Add Instrument to Player**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
 2. Click **Import Kit** in the instrument picker to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 3. Locate and select the percussion kit `.doricolib` file you want to import.
 4. Click **Open**.
-

RESULT

The selected `.doricolib` file is imported as a percussion kit. It is assigned to the player from whose card you opened the instrument picker.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Adding players](#) on page 124

Fretted instrument tuning

Fretted instruments can have different numbers of strings and frets. In order to display tablature for fretted instruments in Dorico Elements, you must specify information about the tuning of fretted instruments.

Dorico Elements requires the following information to display tablature:

- The number of strings the instrument has
- The open pitch of each string

- The number of frets
- The fret number at which each string starts, such as for the fifth string on a banjo
- The pitch intervals between frets
- The fret number of the capo, if applicable

When you add a fretted instrument or change an existing instrument, any available tunings for that instrument are shown in the instrument picker.

You can also customize all aspects of fretted instruments in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog, including adding capos.

RELATED LINKS

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Changing instruments](#) on page 134

[Capos](#) on page 157

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Chord diagrams](#) on page 894


[Tablature](#) on page 1330

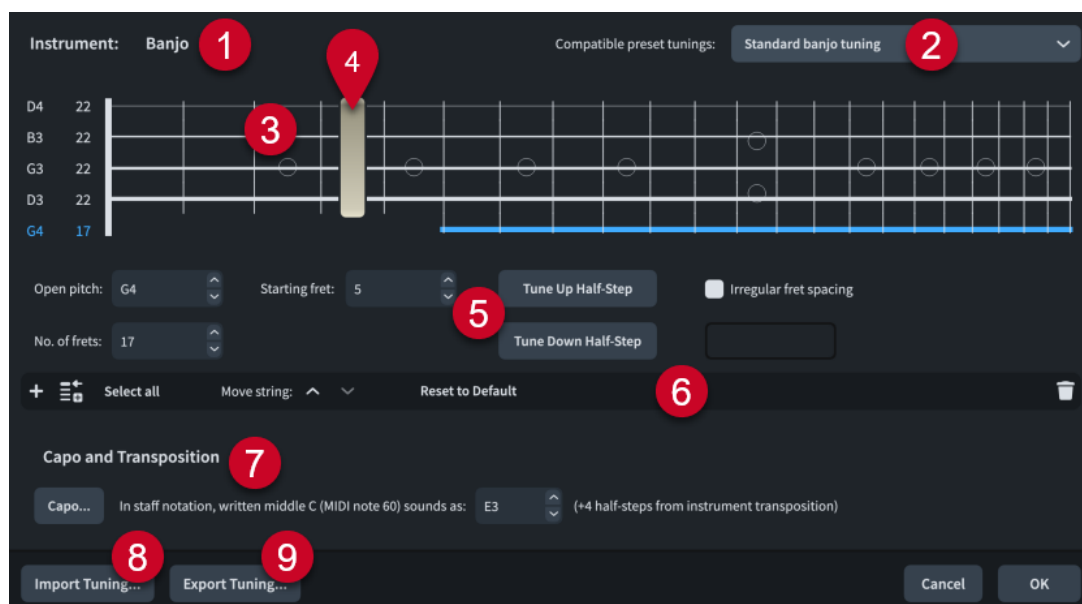
[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Guitar techniques](#) on page 1137

Edit Strings and Tuning dialog

The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog allows you to customize the tuning of individual fretted instruments by changing the number of strings and frets they have, the pitches of their open strings, and the spacing of their frets. It also allows you to add/remove capos and change the fretted instrument transposition.

- You can open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog in Setup mode by expanding the card of the player holding the fretted instrument in the **Players** panel, then clicking the instrument menu  in its instrument label and choosing **Edit Strings and Tuning**.



The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog comprises the following:

1 Instrument

Displays the name of the selected fretted instrument.

2 Compatible preset tunings

Allows you to select preset fretted instrument tunings with the same number of strings as the selected fretted instrument. If your changes in the dialog match a preset tuning, it is automatically selected.

3 String editor

Allows you to select and edit individual or all strings of the fretted instrument. The arrangement of strings in the editor matches that of the real instrument. The pitch and total number of frets of each string is shown to the left of the vertical line that represents the nut.

You can navigate through strings by pressing **Up Arrow / Down Arrow**, and to top/bottom strings by pressing Page Up/Page Down.

4 Capo representation

Indicates the fret position and extent of the capo added to the fretted instrument.




5 Controls

Allow you to edit individual or multiple strings. The following controls are available when at least one string is selected in the string editor:

- **Open pitch:** Allows you to set the open pitch of the string using the appropriate note name and octave for your middle C numbering convention setting, such as **C4** for middle C. If necessary, you can add **#** for sharp and **b** for flat.
- **No. of frets:** Allows you to set the number of frets for the selected strings.
- **Starting fret:** Allows you to set the number of the first fret on the selected strings. For example, the fifth string on the banjo starts at fret 5.
- **Tune Up Half-Step:** Allows you to raise the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Tune Down Half-Step:** Allows you to lower the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Irregular fret spacing:** Allows you to set non-chromatic fret arrangements for instruments with fretboards that correspond to other scales, such as the dulcimer. Enter **1** for a half-step and **2** for a whole step, with each step separated by a comma. For example, enter **2,2,1,2,2,2,1** to set the pattern for a major scale.

6 Action bar

Contains options that allow you to change the number and arrangement of strings.

- **Add String **: Adds a new string below the lowest currently selected string. The new string is a duplicate of the lowest currently selected string.
- **Add String at Top **: Adds a new string at the top of the fretboard. The new string is a duplicate of the previous top string.
- **Select all:** Selects all strings at once.
- **Move string buttons:** Allow you to move the currently selected strings up/down the fretboard.
- **Reset to Default:** Returns all strings and corresponding tunings to the factory default settings for the fretted instrument.
- **Delete String **: Deletes the selected strings.

7 Capo and Transposition section

Contains options that allow you to change the capo and fretted instrument transposition.

- **Capo:** Opens the **Capo Definition** dialog, which allows you to add full and partial capos to fretted instruments.
- **In staff notation, written middle C (MIDI note 60) sounds as:** Allows you to change the transposition of the selected fretted instrument. The pitch determines the spelling of notes and chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.

8 Import Tuning

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricotuning` file that you want to import and apply to the fretted instrument.

9 Export Tuning

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the strings and tuning settings of the fretted instrument as a `.doricotuning` file. You can then import the `.doricotuning` file into other instruments/projects and share it with other users.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Chord diagrams](#) on page 894

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153


[Capos](#) on page 157

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings

You can change the open pitch of each fretted instrument string independently; for example, if your project requires an unconventional tuning that is not available as an instrument variant in the instrument picker.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose open pitches you want to change.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Select the string whose open pitch you want to change.
4. Change the **Open pitch** value; for example, to **G2**.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 3 and 4 to change the open pitch of other strings.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The open pitches of the selected strings are changed. This affects the tuning of the instrument and the pitch of all fret positions on those strings.

The new tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110


[Chord diagrams](#) on page 894

[Hiding/Showing chord diagrams](#) on page 895

Exporting fretted instrument tunings

You can export fretted instrument tunings so you can reuse them for other instruments and in other projects. Fretted instrument tunings are exported as `.doricotuning` library files.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose tuning you want to export.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Export Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The tuning of the selected fretted instrument is exported and saved as a `.doricotuning` library file.


AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can import the library file into other projects to reuse the fretted instrument tuning.

Importing fretted instrument tunings

You can import custom fretted instrument tunings that you have already created and apply them to instruments. This allows you to reuse tunings without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument to which you want to apply an imported tuning.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Import Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the `.doricotuning` library file you want to import.
5. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected `.doricotuning` file is applied to the fretted instrument. The imported tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

Capos

Capos are devices that performers clamp onto the necks of fretted instruments to depress strings at a single fret position. This raises the sounding pitch of open strings affected by the capo, allowing performers to use the same fingerings and chord shapes but produce higher pitches.

In Dorico Elements, you can allow capos to affect your notated music in the following ways, independently of each other:

- You can change the pitches shown on tablature by adding capos to fretted instruments. Dorico Elements treats capos as fret 0 for fret numbers on tablature. Capos added to individual fretted instruments appear at the corresponding fret position and crossing the specified strings in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog and in the Fretboard panel.
- You can change fretted instrument transpositions to reflect capos or detuned fretted instruments, and optionally allow fretted instrument transpositions to affect pitches on notation staves and in main chord symbols.
- You can define capos for chord symbols/diagrams in the music and/or used chord diagrams grids, and show only main chords, only capo chords, or both.

For example, you can show capo pitches on tablature but show sounding pitches on notation staves. You can also show both main and capo chords in chord symbols in layouts that do not contain a fretted instrument, such as when creating lead sheets in vocal part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Strings and Tuning dialog](#) on page 154
- [Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
- [Chord symbols](#) on page 871
- [Chord diagrams](#) on page 894
- [Tablature](#) on page 1330
- [Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
- [Guitar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153
- [Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams](#) on page 163
- [Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 165
- [Layouts](#) on page 174
- [Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178
- [Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Capo vs. main chords

For the same chord symbol, Dorico Elements can show its original pitch only, its sounding pitch based on the defined capo only, or both with capo chords above or below main chords.

Main chord

The original chord symbol you input. Its displayed pitches depend on whether the layout is transposing or concert pitch, and whether the layout uses fretted instrument transpositions for main chord symbols. For example, in the transposed pitch part layout for a trumpet in B \flat , a C7 chord symbol appears as D7.

Capo chord

The chord that the fretted instrument must play in order to produce the desired main chord, according to the fret position of the capo. For example, if a guitarist with a capo on the second fret plays Gm7, the chord that sounds is Am7.

By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

TIP

You can choose to show capo chords in parentheses instead and change the vertical gap between capo and main chord symbols in the **Capo** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Changing fretted instrument transpositions](#) on page 161

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 166

[Respelling chord symbols](#) on page 884

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

[Chord symbol font styles](#) on page 877


Adding capos to fretted instruments

You can add capos to individual fretted instruments. This affects the pitches shown on tablature for the corresponding instruments, as Dorico Elements treats capos as fret 0. For example, if each flow in a project for guitar requires a capo at a different fret, you might add multiple players, each holding a guitar instrument with the required capo.

NOTE

These steps do not affect pitches on notation staves, chord symbols/diagrams in the music, or used chord diagram grids.

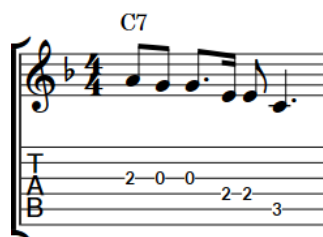
PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument to which you want to add a capo.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
 3. In the **Capo and Transposition** section, click **Capo** to open the **Capo Definition** dialog.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Capo**:
 - **Full Capo**
 - **Partial Capo**
 5. Change the fret position of the capo by changing the value for **Fret**.
 6. Optional: If you chose **Partial Capo**, change the strings across which the capo extends.
 7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Capo Definition** dialog.
 8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
-

RESULT

A capo is added to the selected instrument according to your settings. The capo appears at the corresponding fret position and crossing the specified strings in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog and in the Fretboard panel for the selected instrument.

EXAMPLE



No capo



Capo added to the third fret

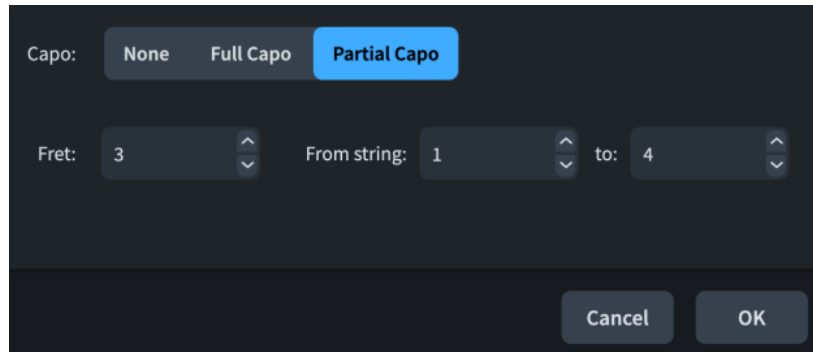
RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Edit Strings and Tuning dialog](#) on page 154
- [Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
- [Changing fretted instrument transpositions](#) on page 161
- [Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams](#) on page 163
- [Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 165

Capo Definition dialog

The **Capo Definition** dialog allows you to add full and partial capos to fretted instruments.

- You can open the **Capo Definition** dialog from inside the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog by clicking **Capo** in the **Capo and Transposition** section.



The **Capo Definition** dialog contains the following options:

Capo

Allows you to choose one of the following capo types:

- None**
- Full Capo**
- Partial Capo**

Fret

Allows you to change the fret position of the capo.


From string [n] to [n]

Allows you to set the first and last strings across which the capo extends. Only available when **Partial Capo** is chosen for **Capo**.

Removing capos from fretted instruments

You can remove capos from individual fretted instruments. This affects the pitches shown on tablature for the corresponding instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose capo you want to remove.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
 3. In the **Capo and Transposition** section, click **Capo** to open the **Capo Definition** dialog.
 4. Choose **None** for **Capo**.
 5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Capo Definition** dialog.
 6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
-


Changing fretted instrument transpositions

You can change the transposition of individual fretted instruments; for example, to reflect capos added to them, or for a fretted instrument whose strings have all been detuned. This can affect the pitches shown on notation staves and in main chord symbols in the music, depending on your per-layout setting for using fretted instrument transpositions.

NOTE

- You can find different tunings for each fretted instrument in the instrument picker.
 - You can also change the open pitch of individual fretted instrument strings.
 - Fretted instrument transpositions do not affect pitches shown on tablature, which use the instrument's capo, or used chord diagram grids.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose transposition you want to change.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
 3. In the **Capo and Transposition** section, change the pitch for **In staff notation, written middle C (MIDI note 60) sounds as**.
The pitch determines the spelling of notes and chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Edit Strings and Tuning dialog](#) on page 154

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings](#) on page 156

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Using fretted instrument transpositions

You can show transposed pitches on notation staves and in main chord symbols, according to the corresponding fretted instrument's transposition, in each layout independently and for each player holding at least one fretted instrument independently.

For example, if you have added a capo to a fretted instrument and want notation staves and main chord symbols to show the pitches the performer must play in order to produce the desired sounding pitch.

PROCEDURE


1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to use fretted instrument transpositions for notation staves and main chord symbols.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Fretted Instruments** section, activate **Use fretted instrument transposition** for each player holding at least one fretted instrument in your project.
5. Choose one of the following options:
 - **For notation**
 - **For notation and main chord symbols**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Transpositions set for the corresponding fretted instruments are used for either notation staves only or both notation staves and main chord symbols in the selected layouts.

For example, you might choose **For notation** for fretted instruments with capos that are set to show capo chord symbols, and **For notation and main chord symbols** for detuned fretted instruments.

EXAMPLE



Fretted instrument transposition (reflecting capo at fret 3) not used for notation staff or main chord symbols



Fretted instrument transposition used for notation staff only



Fretted instrument transposition used for notation staff and main chord symbols

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Players](#) on page 123

[Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature](#) on page 1331

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163


Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams

You can define capos for chord symbols and chord diagrams on a per-player basis. This affects chord diagram shapes and the transposition of capo chord symbols. For example, you might show both main and capo chord symbols for the voice player when creating a lead sheet.

NOTE

These steps do not affect used chord diagram grids or pitches on notation staves/tablatuure.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to define a capo for chord symbols/diagrams.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Chord Symbols > Capo Chord Symbol Definition** to open the **Capo Chord Symbol Definition** dialog.

TIP

You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.

3. Change the pitch for **In capo chord symbols, written middle C (note 60) sounds as**.
The pitch determines the spelling of capo chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

A capo with the set transposition and spelling is set for the selected player.


Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols

You can show only main chords, only capo chords, or both in chord symbols on a per-player basis. For example, if you want to show both for the guitar player but only main chords for the singer.

NOTE

Chord diagrams always reflect the capo set for the player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show capo chords in chord symbols.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose one of the following options:
 - To show only main chords, choose **Chord Symbols > Show Main Chord Symbol for Capo**.

- To show only capo chords, choose **Chord Symbols > Show Transposed Chord Symbol for Capo.**
- To show capo chords above main chords, choose **Chord Symbols > Show Capo Chord Symbol Above Main.**
- To show capo chords below main chords, choose **Chord Symbols > Show Capo Chord Symbol Below Main.**

TIP

You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

Main and/or capo chords are shown in chord symbols, according to the instrument staves and layouts set to show chord symbols for the selected player. By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

In layouts where chord symbols are only shown above the top staff in each system, the visibility of main/capo chords in chord symbols is determined by the setting for the player at the top of each system.

EXAMPLE

The example shows four musical staves, each with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The staves are filled with diagonal lines representing notes. Above each staff, chord symbols are displayed in different configurations:

- Main chords shown only:** F C7 F C7
- Capo chords shown only:** D A7 D A7
- Capo chords shown above main chords:** D A7 D A7 (above) and F C7 F C7 (below)
- Capo chords shown below main chords:** F C7 F C7 (above) and D A7 D A7 (below)

Below each staff, a label describes the configuration: "Main chords shown only", "Capo chords shown only", "Capo chords shown above main chords", and "Capo chords shown below main chords".

RELATED LINKS



- [Capo vs. main chords on page 158](#)
- [Positions of chord symbols on page 878](#)
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 878](#)
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 879](#)
- [Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves on page 880](#)
- [Changing the vertical alignment of chord symbols on page 881](#)
- [Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols on page 887](#)
- [Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 605](#)
- [Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams on page 897](#)
- [Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 895](#)
- [Chord symbol appearance presets on page 872](#)
- [Chord symbol font styles on page 877](#)
- [Inputting chord symbols on page 318](#)

Showing only main or capo chord symbols

You can show only the main or capo chord in individual chord symbols on staves set to show both. For example, if you want to show both the first time each chord symbol appears but only

show main chords for subsequent instances. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The players on whose staves you want to show only main or capo chords are set to show both.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose shown chords you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show only** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Main Chord**
 - **Capo Chord**

RESULT

The selected chord symbols show only main or capo chords. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Both main and capo chords shown in all chord symbols



Only main chords shown in some chord symbols

Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids

You can define capos for used chord diagrams grids in each layout independently. This affects chord diagram shapes and the transposition of capo chord symbols. For example, you might show both main and capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids in the voice part layout when creating a lead sheet.

NOTE

These steps do not affect chord symbols/diagrams in the music or pitches on notation staves/tablatore.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts for which you want to define capos for used chord diagrams grids.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
 4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, change the pitch for **Use capo with transposition**.
The pitch determines the spelling of capo chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898
- [Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158
- [Adding capos to fretted instruments](#) on page 159
- [Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids

You can show only main chords, only capo chords, or both in used chord symbol grids in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show both in the guitar part layout but only main chords in the vocal part layout.

NOTE

Chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids always reflect the capo set for the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
 4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, select one of the following options from the **Capo chord symbols** menu:
 - To show only main chords, select **Show Only Main Chord Symbol**.
 - To show only capo chords, select **Show Only Transposed Chord Symbol**.
 - To show capo chords above main chords, select **Show Above Main Chord Symbol**.
 - To show capo chords below main chords, select **Show Below Main Chord Symbol**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

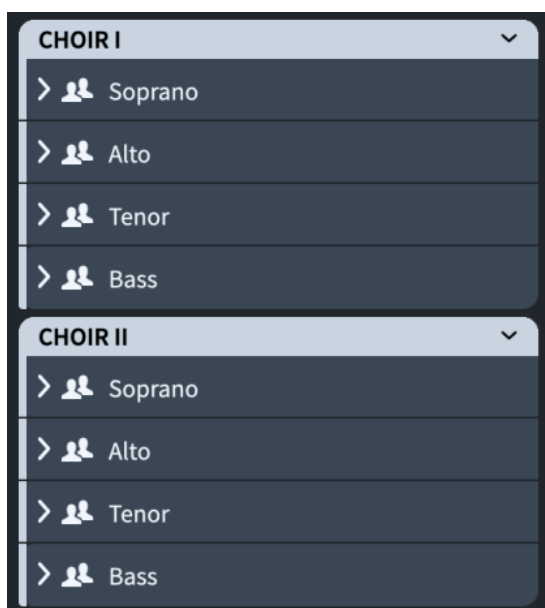
Main and/or capo chords are shown in used chord diagrams grids in the selected layouts. By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

Player groups

A player group represents a collection of musicians that are considered together, such as one choir in a work for double choir or an off-stage ensemble. Player groups can have their own brackets, depending on the bracket grouping set for each layout.

Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the default player order, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

For example, if your project is for double choir (SATB/SATB), all voices are joined by a single bracket by default because they are in the same family. However, if you add each choir to its own group, they are bracketed separately. This is useful in works containing multiple groups, such as in Britten's "War Requiem", which has three distinct groups, or in Walton's "Belshazzar's Feast" which requires two separate off-stage brass groups.



Two choir player groups in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

You can add as many player groups as required; for example, to allow easy separation of forces, or to prevent automatic instrument numbering for percussion instruments when multiple percussion players hold the same instrument to accommodate instrument changes.

You can also show player group labels for player groups in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Setting custom player orders](#) on page 126

[Player group labels](#) on page 1317


[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Players panel](#) on page 110

Adding player groups

You can organize players into groups; for example, if you want to bracket them together. Players in different groups are also numbered separately.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to add a group that includes existing players, select those players in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.
2. In the **Players** panel, click **Add Group** .

RESULT

A new player group is added to the **Players** panel. If you selected players, those players are added to the group. If you did not select players, the new group is empty.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can add players to groups and move them between groups.
- You can rename player groups and show player group labels.



RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Adding players to groups](#) on page 168
- [Moving players between groups](#) on page 170
- [Renaming player groups](#) on page 169
- [Player group labels](#) on page 1317

Adding players to groups

You can add new players to existing player groups.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the group to which you want to add new players.
2. Add new players in one of the following ways:
 - To add a single player, click **Add Single Player**  in the action bar.
 - To add a section player, click **Add Section Player**  in the action bar.

The instrument picker opens.

TIP

You can also open the instrument picker by selecting an existing player in the **Players** panel and pressing **Shift-I**.

3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The corresponding type of player is added to the selected group.

TIP

You can also move existing players to, from, or between groups.


RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Instrument picker](#) on page 112
- [Adding players](#) on page 124
- [Moving players between groups](#) on page 170
- [Player group labels](#) on page 1317
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Renaming player groups

You can change the name of player groups after you have added them. This changes the name shown in player group labels.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player group you want to rename.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Rename Player Group** to open the **Rename Player Group** dialog.

TIP

You can also right-click player groups and choose this option from the context menu.

-
3. Enter new names or edit the existing names in the following fields:
 - **Full name**
 - **Short name**
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The corresponding names for the selected player group are changed.

Player group labels show full player group names by default. Short player group names are used when the full player group name is longer than the bracket.


RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Player group labels](#) on page 1317
- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

Deleting player groups

You can delete groups of players; for example, if you no longer need a group of players that you created when importing a MIDI file. When deleting player groups, you can choose to keep the players within the group or delete them as well.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player groups that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected player groups in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Backspace** or **Delete**.
 - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player** .
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that appears:

- To delete the selected player groups but keep the players within them, choose **Keep Players**.
 - To delete both the selected player groups and the players within them, choose **Delete Players**.
-

Moving players between groups

You can move players to, from, or between player groups. For example, you can move ungrouped players into existing groups and move players from one group to another.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to move.
 2. Click and drag the selected players to the position you want.
An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.
-

RESULT

The players are moved to the new position.

TIP

- You can also add existing players to existing groups by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Add Player to Group > [Group]** from the context menu.
 - You can also add new players to player groups.
-


RELATED LINKS

[Adding players to groups](#) on page 168

Removing players from groups

You can remove players from groups.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, remove players from groups in any of the following ways:
 - Select multiple players, then click and drag them out of the group.
 - Select one player, then click **Player Settings**  in the action bar and choose **Remove Player from Group**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The players are removed from their groups but remain in the project as individual players.

Flows

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content, meaning they can contain completely different players from each other and have different time signatures and key signatures. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Depending on the purpose of each project, a flow could be, for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length.

Dorico Elements automatically adds a flow to projects once you have added at least one player. You cannot add flows until you have added at least one player to the project.

When you add a flow in Dorico Elements, the following happens automatically:

- The flow is assigned to all full score and part layouts in the project.
- All players are assigned to the new flow.

By default, all layouts include all flows in the project. If necessary, you can change the layouts to which flows are assigned and which players are assigned to flows.

IMPORTANT

If you exclude a player from a flow, any notes that you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

You can change notation options, such as beam grouping and accidental duration rules, for each flow independently in the **Notation Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Players](#) on page 123

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Tacets](#) on page 640

[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121

[Importing flows](#) on page 78

[Exporting flows](#) on page 80

[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

[Opening projects/files](#) on page 72


[Changing the gap between flows in playback](#) on page 545

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

Adding flows

You can add any number of new flows to your project; for example, when engraving a large work that comprises multiple movements.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, add a flow in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-F**.
 - In the **Flows** panel, click **Add Flow** .
-

RESULT

A new flow is added to your project. All existing players are assigned to new flows, and new flows are automatically assigned to all existing full score and part layouts.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can rename the flow.
- You can change the players assigned to the flow and the layouts to which the flow is assigned.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

[Importing flows](#) on page 78

[Exporting flows](#) on page 80

[Starting new projects](#) on page 71

[Opening projects/files](#) on page 72

[Renaming flows](#) on page 188

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

[Assigning flows to layouts](#) on page 177

[Adding titles](#) on page 997

Duplicating flows

You can duplicate flows; for example, if you want to experiment with some ideas without affecting the original flow, or if you want to copy material with any barlines you have added.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow that you want to duplicate.
2. Choose **Duplicate Flow** from the context menu.

RESULT

A new flow is added, containing all the music and players of the original flow. It is automatically added to all full score and part layouts.

Assigning players to flows

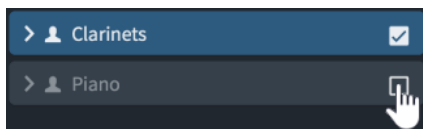
By default, all players in your project are added to all flows that originated in the project. You can assign players to and remove players from flows manually; for example, if the soloists in a choral work do not sing for an entire flow.

NOTE

If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flow whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the flow.



TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple player cards at once.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected flow when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the flow when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

[Tacets](#) on page 640

[Assigning flows to layouts](#) on page 177

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176

Reordering flows

You can change the order of flows; for example, if you want an imported flow to be the first flow rather than the last.



PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flows whose order you want to change.
 2. Click and drag the selected flows to the right/left.
-

RESULT

The selected flows are moved to the specified position. Their flow numbers are automatically updated, as is their order in the **Project Info** dialog and in layouts by default.

TIP

You can also reorder flows in the **Project Info** dialog by selecting them in the flows list and clicking **Move Down**  or **Move Up**  in the action bar. This can be an easier method of reordering flows in projects that contain many flows.

RELATED LINKS

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187

[Importing flows](#) on page 78


[Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Tokens](#) on page 655

Deleting flows

You can delete flows that you no longer need. This deletes all music for all instruments and players in the flows.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flows you want to delete.
 2. Delete the selected flows in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
 - In the **Flows** panel, click **Delete Flow** .
-

RELATED LINKS

[Importing flows](#) on page 78

[Exporting flows](#) on page 80

Layouts

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts typically only show the music for one player, whereas full score layouts show the music of all players in the project.

Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. They share the musical content of these players and flows, such as the notes each instrument plays. For example, when you change the pitch of a note in the full score, that note's pitch is also updated in the corresponding part layout.

You can control practically every aspect of page formatting in each layout independently, including note spacing, staff size, page size, margins, and casting off; that is, the positions of system breaks and page turns. Changing these aspects in one layout does not affect other layouts. For example, inserting systems breaks in a part layout does not change the casting off in the full score.

Similarly, you can change the visual appearance of many items only in one layout, without affecting other layouts, using local properties. For example, you can hide text items in the full score layout but show them in part layouts.

The default formatting of pages in layouts is determined by page templates. By default, full score layouts use a different page template set to part layouts; however, you can apply a different page template set to each layout.

Dorico Elements provides the following layout types:

Full score

A full score layout includes all players and all flows in your project by default. Full score layouts are concert pitch by default.

Dorico Elements automatically creates a single full score layout in every project.

Part

A part layout is automatically created when you add a player to your project. You can also create empty part layouts and assign players to them manually.

By default, instrumental part layouts contain all flows. They are also transposed pitch by default.

You can propagate the formatting of part layouts.

Custom score

A custom score layout initially does not contain any players or flows. This allows you to create your score manually and, for example, assign only one flow instead of all flows or only vocal and piano players to create a vocal score. Custom score layouts are concert pitch by default.

TIP

- You can create as many layouts of each type in each project as required.
- You can combine players, layouts, and flows together in any combination. For example, you might add all percussion players to a single part layout so that the performers can manage instrument changes themselves. In a large-scale work, you might also create a piano reduction for choir rehearsals, but only assign that piano player to the vocal score, meaning it does not appear in the orchestral full score at all.
- By default, respelling notes in score layouts also affects their spelling in all other layouts, but respelling notes in part layouts only affects their spelling in the current part layout.
- You can save options set in **Layout Options** as the default for score and part layouts independently. For example, full scores and part layouts often require different page and staff sizes.
- Deleting layouts does not delete any music from the project.




RELATED LINKS

[Page formatting](#) on page 598
[Part formatting propagation](#) on page 643
[Flows](#) on page 171
[Players](#) on page 123
[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121
[Page templates](#) on page 647
[Page template sets](#) on page 647
[Types of page templates](#) on page 648
[Applying page template sets to layouts](#) on page 601
[Properties](#) on page 663
[Local vs. global properties](#) on page 664
[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
[Renumbering layouts](#) on page 180
[Renaming layouts](#) on page 183
[Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001
[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50
[Hiding/Showing staff labels](#) on page 1310
[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866
[Casting off](#) on page 629
[Condensing](#) on page 643
[Divisi](#) on page 1329
[Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000
[Respelling notes](#) on page 473
[Hiding/Showing text items](#) on page 1362

Creating layouts

You can create any number of full score, custom score, and part layouts in each project. By default, Dorico Elements creates a single full score layout and a part layout for each player.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, click one of the following layout types:
 - **Add Full Score Layout** 
 - **Add Instrumental Part Layout** 
 - **Add Custom Score Layout** 

RESULT

The layout is added to the list of layouts in the **Layouts** panel.

NOTE

- Layouts are not available in the layout selector until you have assigned at least one player to them.
- You can also add new custom score layouts by pressing **Shift-L**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can assign players and flows to the layout.
- If you want to change the position of the new layout in the layouts list, you can reorder and renumber layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117

[Workspace options](#) on page 31

[Reordering layouts](#) on page 179

[Renumbering layouts](#) on page 180

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

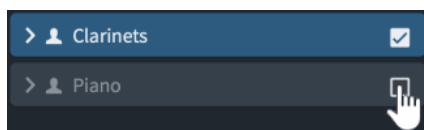
[Opening new tabs](#) on page 45

Assigning players to layouts

By default, all players are included in full score layouts and each player is automatically assigned its own part layout. You can assign players to and exclude players from layouts manually; for example, if you want to remove unnecessary players from the full score, or you want to add the soloists' music to the part for the accompanist.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the layout.



TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple player cards at once.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated. If you have not changed the name of the layout, it is automatically updated to reflect the players included in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Project window in Setup mode](#) on page 109

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Renaming layouts](#) on page 183

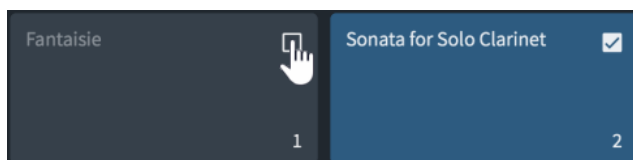
[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

Assigning flows to layouts

By default, all flows in your project are added to all full score and part layouts. You can assign flows to and remove flows from layouts manually; for example, if a flow in your project contains specific performance instructions for strings that you want to show in string part layouts but not in other part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned flows you want to change.
2. In the **Flows** panel, activate the checkbox in the flow card of each flow you want to assign to the layout.



TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple flow cards at once.

RESULT

Flows are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their flow card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated.

Dorico Elements automatically creates enough pages to display the flows assigned to the layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Project window in Setup mode](#) on page 109

Making layouts transposed/concert pitch

You can change whether each layout in your project is transposed or concert pitch. In Dorico Elements, full score layouts are concert pitch and part layouts are transposed pitch by default.

For example, full scores are often concert pitch, to show notes at their sounding pitch, but part layouts are transposed pitch so the player can read the notes they must play in order to achieve the desired sounding pitch.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to make transposing/non-transposing.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Players** section, activate/deactivate **Transposing layout**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are transposed pitch when **Transposing layout** is activated, and concert pitch when it is deactivated.

TIP

You can also change the transposition of the layout currently open in the music area in the following ways:

- To make layouts transposed pitch, choose either **Transposed Pitch** in the status bar or **Edit > Transposed Pitch**.
- To make layouts concert pitch, choose either **Concert Pitch** in the status bar or **Edit > Concert Pitch**.

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

[Changing the input pitch setting](#) on page 215

[Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions](#) on page 910

[Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000

Concert vs. transposed pitch

Layouts in Dorico Elements can use concert or transposed pitch. This affects the pitches and key signatures on staves belonging to transposing instruments.

Concert pitch

When music is in concert pitch, all notes are written as they sound. This means that players with transposing instruments reading music in concert pitch must transpose

the music themselves. For example, if a clarinet in B \flat reads a C in concert pitch, they must play the note D on their instrument to produce the sounding note C.

Transposed pitch

When music is in transposed pitch, the notes written are the ones each instrument must play in order to produce the desired sounding pitch. For example, if a clarinet in B \flat reads a D in transposed pitch, the pitch that sounds from the instrument is C.

Transposed pitch layouts automatically transpose key signatures and chord symbols according to the transposition of the instrument. Transposing and concert pitch layouts can also use different clefs.

RELATED LINKS

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

[Enharmonic equivalent key signatures](#) on page 1025

[Clefs with octave indicators](#) on page 913

[Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158

[Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000

Reordering layouts

You can change the order in which layouts appear in the **Layouts** panel and the layout selector; for example, if you added a custom score layout and want it to be positioned at the top next to the full score layout.


PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts whose order you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected layouts upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected layouts are moved to the specified position. This does not affect their layout numbers.

TIP

You can also automatically sort layouts according to their type by clicking **Sort Layouts**  in the **Layouts** panel, which positions all full score layouts at the top, all part layouts in the middle, and all custom score layouts at the bottom.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Layouts**  to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **Layout Number**
- **Instrument Score Order**

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117


[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Renumbering instruments](#) on page 132

Renumbering layouts

You can renumber all layouts according to their current position in the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode; for example, after you have dragged layouts to different positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select any layout.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings**  and choose **Renumber Layouts**.

TIP

You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.


RESULT

All layouts are renumbered according to their current position in the panel. Full score layouts, custom score layouts, and part layouts are all numbered separately.

Deleting layouts

You can delete layouts without removing the corresponding music from the project. For example, if you only want to use a combined Violin I and II part layout, you can delete their separate part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected layouts in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
 - In the **Layouts** panel, click **Delete Layout** .

RESULT

The selected layouts are deleted without removing any music from the project.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can later restore all the part layouts that Dorico Elements provides by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117

[Players, layouts, and flows](#) on page 121

Restoring default layouts

You can recreate all the part layouts that Dorico Elements provides by default; for example, if you accidentally deleted some part layouts.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, choose **Setup > Create Default Part Layouts**.

RESULT

The default set of part layouts is restored, recreating a single part layout for each player that contains all flows in the project. Any part layouts that were recreated are added at the bottom

of the **Layouts** list. Their order matches the order of the corresponding players in the **Players** panel.

Player, layout, and instrument names

In Dorico Elements, you can use three different names to refer to the same player in different contexts. This allows you to show relevant information in different places, such as in staff labels and at the top of part layouts.

The following names relate to players and instruments:

Player name

The name of each player in the **Players** panel. They can be used in staff labels instead of instrument names.

Player names are automatically generated when you add instruments, and are linked to the corresponding instrument names until you rename the player.

Layout name

The name for each layout in the **Layouts** panel. By default, layout names appear with borders at the top of pages in part layouts that use the **First** page template.

Layout names for part layouts are automatically linked to the corresponding players' names until you rename the layout.

Instrument names

Used in staff labels by default. This means that the instrument label on each staff is relevant to the instrument or percussion kit currently being played by that player, rather than listing all instruments that player is playing in the flow.

For example, if a clarinettist is doubling bass clarinet, the staff label where the player plays clarinet automatically shows **Clarinet**, and the staff label automatically shows **Bass Clarinet** where the player plays bass clarinet.

All instruments in Dorico Elements come with a set of instrument names that you can change for individual instruments, independently of other players in the project holding the same instrument. You can change the language used for instrument names. You can also save changes to instrument names as default, which are then used whenever you add that instrument again in the current project and all future projects.

NOTE

- Changing the default instrument names does not change the instrument names of existing instruments of that type in your project.
- You can change various aspects of how instrument names appear in staff labels without changing instrument names, such as whether instrument transpositions are shown before or after instrument names.

RELATED LINKS

[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

[Percussion legends](#) on page 1430

[Assigning players to layouts](#) on page 176


[Renaming player groups](#) on page 169

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Renaming players

You can change the player names of players, and reset renamed players to their default names. Player names appear in guide instrument labels in galley view for players holding multiple instruments and can appear in staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to rename.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose **Rename Player** to open the **Rename Player** dialog.

TIP

You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.

3. Enter new names or edit the existing names in the following fields:
 - **Full name**
 - **Short name**
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The corresponding names for the selected player are changed. If you have not already renamed the corresponding part layout, its layout name is updated.

NOTE

- This does not affect staff labels that show instrument names, or the name at the top of part layouts if you have already renamed the layout. You can change instrument and layout names separately.
 - Player names you have changed no longer get updated when you change the instruments or names of instruments held by the player.
-


RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Renaming player groups](#) on page 169
- [Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133
- [Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127
- [Showing instrument/player names in staff labels](#) on page 1313
- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

Resetting player names

You can reset both full and short player names to their defaults simultaneously. Default player names automatically update when you change the instruments or names of instruments held by the player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player whose names you want to reset.
 2. Press **Return** to open the player name text field.
 3. Click **Reset to Default** .
-


RESULT

Both the full and short names for the corresponding player are reset to their defaults.

Renaming layouts

You can rename layouts and reset renamed layouts to their default name. By default, layout names appear with borders at the top of pages in part layouts that use the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout you want to rename.
2. Press **Return** to open the layout name text field.
3. Rename the layout in any of the following ways:
 - Enter a new layout name, or edit the existing name.
 - To revert the layout name to the player name, click **Reset to Default** .

TIP

If you want to include an accidental in the instrument transposition, you can enter the appropriate token, such as **{@flat@}** for *b*.

4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The selected layout is renamed, or reverted to its default name.

NOTE

- Renaming layouts does not affect staff labels, which show either instrument or player names.
 - Part layout names you have changed no longer get updated when you rename the corresponding players.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001

[Staff label contents](#) on page 1313

Changing instrument names


By default, instrument names are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can change the different instrument names used for each instrument.

NOTE

- If you want to change instrument names because you want them to appear in a different language, you can instead change the default language for all instrument names.
- You can change various aspects of how instrument names appear in staff labels without changing instrument names, such as whether instrument transpositions are shown before or after instrument names.

- Changing instrument names does not automatically update player and layout names if you have already renamed them.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to change.
This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
 3. Enter new names in any of the name fields.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Show transposition**:
 - **Always**
 - **Follow Layout Options**
 - **Never**
 5. Optional: Activate **Save as default for instrument**.
 6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are changed. If you have not already renamed the corresponding player, its player name is updated.

- If you did not save your changes as default, only the names of the selected instrument are changed. Any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use the original default names.
- If you saved your changes as default, any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use your new instrument names. This does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Showing instrument/player names in staff labels](#) on page 1313


[Changing the appearance/position of instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1315

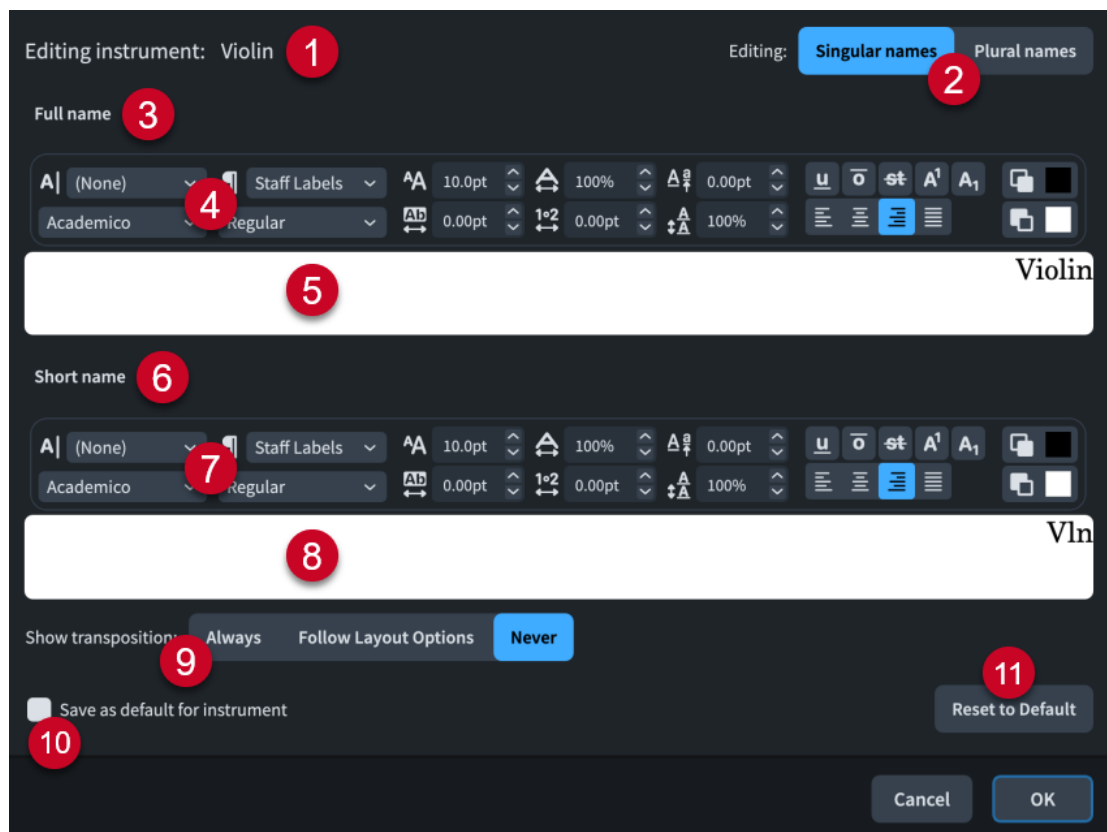
[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

[Editing the default instrument change label text](#) on page 139

Edit Instrument Names dialog

The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog allows you to change the content and formatting of each instrument's names, which are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can edit both singular/plural full instrument names and singular/plural short instrument names.

- You can open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog in Setup mode by clicking the instrument menu  in an instrument label in the **Players** panel and choosing **Edit Names**.



The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 Editing instrument

Displays the permanent underlying name of the instrument.

2 Editing

Allows you to switch between editing the **Singular names** and **Plural names** of the selected instrument.

Singular names are used when the staff contains one player, **Plural names** are used when the staff contains multiple players.

3 Full name section

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the full instrument name.

4 Full name text editor options

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the full instrument name.

5 Full name text editing area

Shows the current long name for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Full** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, instrument names in instrument change labels are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so they appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

6 Short name section

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the short instrument name.

7 Short name text editor options

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the short instrument name.

8 Short name text editing area

Shows the current short staff label for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Abbreviated** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, instrument names in instrument change labels are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so they appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

9 Show transposition

Allows you to choose when the transposition is shown in the instrument name for the selected instrument. It is common to see the transposition included in the name of transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B \flat .

You can choose when the transposition is shown from the following options:

- **Always:** Instrument transpositions are shown even if you have chosen to hide them on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.
- **Follow Layout Options:** Instrument transpositions can be hidden and shown, depending on your per-layout settings in **Layout Options**.
- **Never:** Instrument transpositions are never shown, even if you have chosen to show them in **Layout Options**.

10 Save as default for instrument

Activating the checkbox saves your changes in the dialog as the default. This affects all new instruments of that type that you add to the project and all future projects. It does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

11 Reset to Default

Removes all your changes to the names of the selected instrument type and reverts them to the current default settings. If you changed the default name for an instrument type or the instrument name language setting after adding an instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names and language setting.

NOTE

Overrides to the horizontal alignment or leading of instrument names are only used in staff labels in simple cases. They are not used for inner, grouped, or condensed staff labels.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Staff label paragraph styles](#) on page 1318

[Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1315

[Text editor options in Write mode](#) on page 389


Resetting instrument names

You can reset all your changes to the names of individual instruments and revert them to the current default settings for their instrument type.

NOTE

Resetting instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of part layouts. If you want to change the name used at the top of part layouts, rename the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to reset.
This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.
 2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
 3. Click **Reset to Default**.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are reset to the current default settings for its instrument type. If you changed the default name for the instrument type or the instrument name language setting after adding the instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names and language setting.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Reset Instrument Names** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which resets all instrument names in the project to their default settings.

RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Flow names and flow titles

Whenever you add a flow to a project, the default name of a flow is **Flow** plus an incremental number. In Dorico Elements, flows have both a flow name and a flow title, which are the same by default but can be different if, for example, you want to organize sketch versions of flows without affecting their displayed titles in the music.

Flow names

Set either in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode or in the flows list in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles

Set in the **Title** field for each flow in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles automatically match the flow name until you change the flow title independently. Changing flow titles removes the link between their flow title and flow name.

Titles shown in layouts are linked to the **Title** fields in the **Project Info** dialog, using the **{@projectTitle@}** and **{@flowTitle@}** tokens. This allows you to organize flows with different names to their displayed title in the music.

TIP

You can change both flow names and flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog, and you can also change flow names in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Tokens](#) on page 655
[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
[Flows panel](#) on page 120
[Export File Names dialog](#) on page 588
[Adding titles](#) on page 997

Renaming flows

You can change the names of flows in Setup mode. This automatically updates the title of the corresponding flow until you change the title in the **Project Info** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, double-click the card of the flow you want to rename to open the flow name text field.
 2. Enter a new name for the flow, or edit the existing name.
 3. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The name of the flow is changed. If you have not entered a different title for the flow in the **Project Info** dialog, the title shown in the music area is updated to match the new flow name.

TIP

You can also rename flows in the **Project Info** dialog.

Changing flow titles

You can change flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog. Once you have done so, flow titles are no longer automatically changed if you change their flow name.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
 2. Select the flow whose title you want to change in the flows list.
 3. Enter a new title in the **Title** field.
 4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 and 3 for other flows in your project.
 5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The titles of the selected flows are changed.

NOTE

This breaks the link between flow names and the title shown in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

Videos

Dorico Elements supports the use of videos within the program as well as the associated notations, such as markers and timecodes, and allows you to find appropriate tempos based on where important markers occur.

Videos in Dorico Elements are shown in a separate **Video** window and play back in sync with the music. Any existing audio in the video is also played back, and you can control the volume of this audio independently of the volume of the music.

TIP

You can use these features, including setting a project frame rate, without having a video attached.

RELATED LINKS

[Timecodes](#) on page 1226

[Markers](#) on page 1221

[Find Tempo dialog](#) on page 403

[Changing the volume of video audio](#) on page 193

Supported video formats

Dorico Elements uses the same video engine that was introduced in Cubase and Nuendo in 2017. It supports the most commonly-used video formats.

The following video formats are supported:

- MOV: Including H263, H264, Apple ProRes, DV/DVCPRO and Avid DNxHR codecs
- MP4: Including H263 and H264
- AVI: Including DV/DVCPRO and MJPEG/PhotoJPEG

All the common frame rates, such as 23.976, 24, 24.975, 25, 29.97, and 30 frames per second, are fully supported in Dorico Elements.

NOTE

- Videos with variable frame rates are not supported.
 - Support for more formats is planned for future versions.
-

You can consult the Steinberg support site for more information about the supported formats as well as how to identify and change video formats.

RELATED LINKS

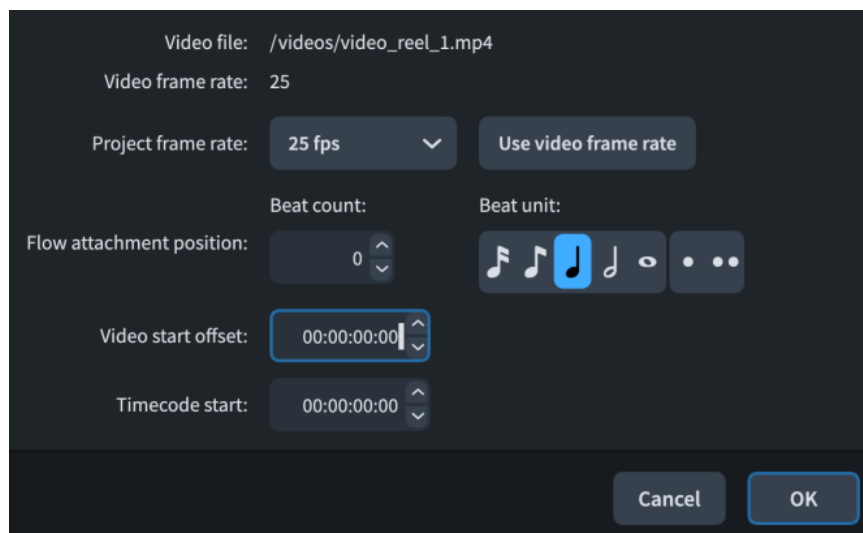
[Frame rates](#) on page 193

Video Properties dialog

The **Video Properties** dialog allows you to change video-related settings, including their frame rate and start position.

- You can open the **Video Properties** dialog in Setup mode by right-clicking a flow in the **Flows** panel and choosing **Video > Properties** from the context menu.

It also opens automatically when you add a new video.



The **Video Properties** dialog contains the following fields and options:

Video file

Shows the location of the video file on your computer. This field is read-only.

Video frame rate

Shows the frame rate of the video file. This field is read-only.

Project frame rate

Allows you to select a frame rate for your project from the menu. You can only have a single frame rate across the project.

Use video frame rate

Sets the project frame rate to be the same as the video file.

Flow attachment position

Allows you to set the rhythmic position at which the video attaches. This is set using the **Beat count** and **Beat unit** settings in combination, such as eight dotted quarter notes.

Video start offset

Allows you to set a position within the video that syncs with the flow attachment position; for example, you can set the fifth second of the video to attach to the start of the third bar.

Timecode start

Allows you to set the timecode at the start of the video. This also affects the timecode of the flow, but the initial timecode of the flow adjusts to accommodate the video. For example, if the initial timecode of the video is 02:00:00:00 but the video does not start until the start of the third bar in 4/4, the initial timecode of the flow is eight beats of time less than 02:00:00:00; if the tempo is 60 bpm, this makes the initial flow timecode 01:59:52:00.

NOTE

Flow timecodes are shown in their flow cards in the **Flows** panel.

RELATED LINKS

[Timecodes](#) on page 1226

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

Adding videos

You can add a video to each flow in your project. You can also follow these steps to reload videos previously added to the project that Dorico Elements can no longer locate.

Flows with missing videos show a warning icon  instead of the video icon in the flow card in the **Flows** panel. This can happen if you send a project to someone else without the video file.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player to the project.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow to which you want to add/reload a video.
 2. Choose **Video > Attach** from the context menu to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 3. Locate and select the video file you want to add.
 4. Click **Open** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.
 5. Change the settings as required.
 6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The selected video file is added to the flow and is shown in the **Video** window. A video reel icon appears in the flow card in the **Flows** panel, beside a timecode indicating the combination of the **Video start offset** and **Timecode start**.

If you reloaded a video, all your previous settings are retained.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Changing the initial timecode value](#) on page 1227

Changing the start position of videos

You can change both the rhythmic position in the music at which videos start, and the position in the video that coincides with that rhythmic position; for example, if you want the fifth second of a video to sync with the start of the third bar of music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Video Properties** dialog in one of the following ways:
 - Add a video to a flow.
 - In the **Flows** panel, right-click a flow and choose **Video > Properties** from the context menu.

2. Change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Flow attachment position**
 - **Video start offset**
 3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

Changing the value for **Flow attachment position** changes the rhythmic position in the music at which the video starts.

Changing the value for **Video start offset** changes the position in the video that occurs at the **Flow attachment position**.

For example, if you change the **Video start offset** to **00:00:05:00** and the **Flow attachment position** to **8**, then the fifth second in the video happens on the eighth beat in the music.


NOTE

- The initial rhythmic position is 0. Therefore, if the **Flow attachment position** is set to **8** and the time signature is 4/4, the flow attachment occurs on the first beat in the third bar.
 - Changing the **Video start offset** changes what part of the video coincides with the **Flow attachment position**, but this does not cut the video before this point. Any preceding video material is shown as long as it happens within the flow.
-

Hiding/Showing the Video window

You can hide and show the **Video** window at any time and in any mode; for example, if you do not want it in view when working on the music in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the **Video** window in any of the following ways:
 - Press **F4**.
 - In the toolbar, click **Show Video** .
 - Choose **Window > Video**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Markers track](#) on page 534

Changing the size of the Video window

You can change the size of the **Video** window at any time.

PREREQUISITE

The **Video** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

- Change the size of the **Video** window in any of the following ways:
 - Click and drag the corners/edges in any direction.
 - **Shift**-click and drag a corner/edge to change the size without changing the shape.
-

RESULT

The size of the **Video** window is changed. Dorico Elements saves the new size and shape and uses this for all projects until you change the size again.


Changing the volume of video audio

Any audio that is part of a video you have added is played back in sync with the music in the project. You can change the video volume manually.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the **Video** channel is not shown in the Mixer, click **Video** in the Mixer toolbar.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To change the volume of video audio, click and drag the **Video** channel fader upwards/downwards.
 - To mute video audio, click **Mute**  in the **Video** channel.

RESULT

The volume of audio from videos in your project is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer](#) on page 717

[Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547

[Deactivating mute/solo instrument states](#) on page 548

Removing videos

You can remove videos from each flow independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow from which you want to remove a video.
2. Choose **Video > Detach** from the context menu.

RESULT

The video is removed from the selected flow.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows panel](#) on page 120

Frame rates

The frame rate of a video is the number of still images that are used per unit of time in order to create the impression of a moving image, commonly measured in frames per second, or “fps”.

The number of frames per second required to create the impression of a moving image is determined by how fast the human eye processes movement, and so the most common frame

rate is around 24 fps. However, recent major films have been released at 48 fps, which results in sharper images.

Dorico Elements supports frame rates from 23.976 fps to 60 fps. For example, the US and Canadian broadcast standard NTSC uses 29.97 fps.

Frame rates are closely linked to timecodes, as timecodes include both the time and the current frame position.

All the common frame rates, such as 23.976, 24, 24.975, 25, 29.97, and 30 frames per second, are fully supported in Dorico Elements.

By default, Dorico Elements uses the same frame rate for the project as the video file, but you can manually choose a different frame rate.

RELATED LINKS

[Timecodes](#) on page 1226

Changing the project frame rate

By default, Dorico Elements uses the video frame rate as the project frame rate. You can change the project frame rate if you want it to be different; for example, if your project contains multiple videos with different frame rates.

TIP

You can change the frame rate even if there are no videos in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Video Properties** dialog in one of the following ways:
 - Add a video to a flow.
 - In the **Flows** panel, right-click a flow and choose **Video > Properties** from the context menu.
 2. Select the frame rate you want to use for the project from the **Project frame rate** menu.
 3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The project frame rate is changed.

Write mode

Write mode allows you to input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode.

Project window in Write mode

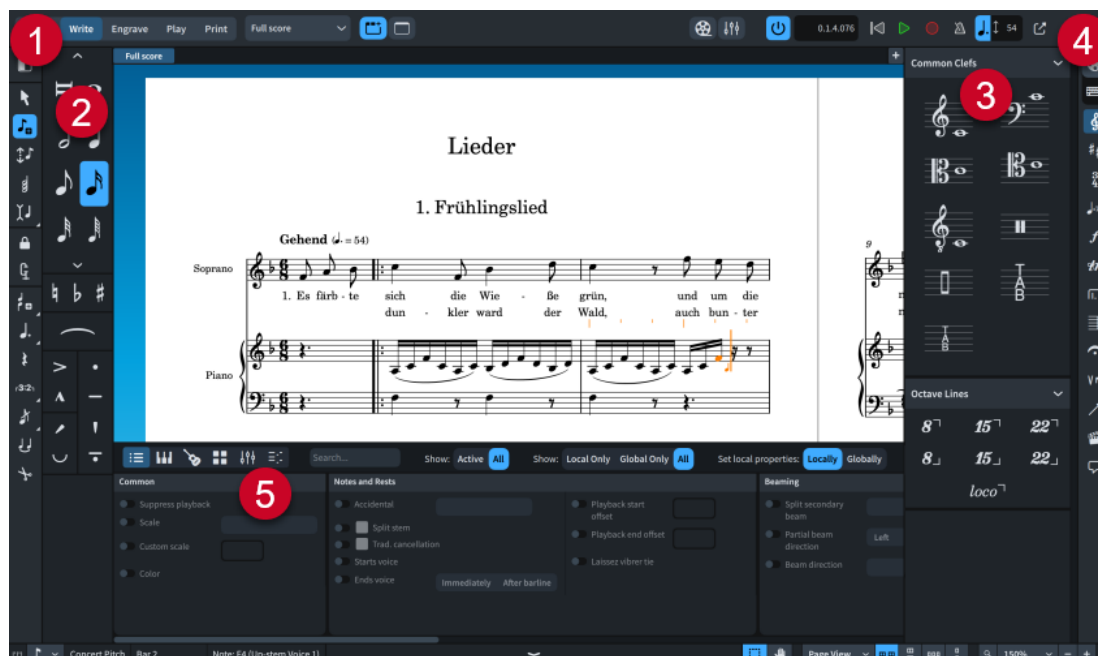
The project window in Write mode contains toolboxes and panels with the tools and functions required to write your music.

You can switch to Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-2**.
- In the toolbar, click **Write**.
- Choose **Window > Write**.
- In Setup mode or Engrave mode, double-click in the music area.

TIP

You can disable this option in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.



The following zones and toolboxes are available in Write mode:



- 1 Notes toolbox**
Contains tools that affect note input and editing.
- 2 Left zone**

Contains the Notes panel. The Notes panel provides the note durations, accidentals, and articulations that are most commonly used during note input.

3 Right zone

Can display different panels, according to the current selection in the Notations toolbox. Panels in the right zone contain notation items that you can add to your music, such as dynamics and playing techniques, divided into separate categories.

4 Notations toolbox

Contains either panel or popover buttons, depending on whether **Panels**  or **Popovers**  is active.

Allows you to show panels for different notations in the right zone, open popovers, and input certain items directly, such as rehearsal marks and text.

5 Lower zone

Can display different panels, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar. Panels in the lower zone include the Properties panel, which allows you to make individual modifications to the currently selected notes and notations, and the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

Notes toolbox

The tools in the Notes toolbox allow you to start note input, modify notes, and change the type and scope of notes you input. The Notes toolbox is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

Show Left Zone



Hides/Shows the left zone.

Select



Enables/Disables mouse input. When **Select** is activated, mouse input is disabled and you cannot input notes by clicking on the staff.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Disable Mouse Input** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Start Note Input



Starts/Stops note input by showing/hiding the caret. If a note, rest, or item is selected in the music area, note input starts at the selected rhythmic position. If nothing is selected in the music area, note input starts at the earliest rhythmic position on the top staff in view.

Pitch Before Duration



When this option is activated, you can select the pitch before specifying the duration during note input. This allows you to experiment with pitches without having to stop note input because you only input the note when you specify the duration.

You can also activate/deactivate **Pitch Before Duration** by pressing **K**.

Chords



Allows you to add multiple notes at the same rhythmic position in order to build a chord during note input. This function prevents the caret from advancing automatically after inputting a note. Chord mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting notes and items without overwriting existing material.

You can also start/stop chord input by pressing **Q**.





Insert



Allows you to insert notes before existing notes in the current voice ahead of the caret, instead of overwriting them, during note input. Insert mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as deleting notes or changing their duration. For example, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes.

When inputting or changing time signatures, Insert mode instructs Dorico Elements to add any extra beats required to fill bars.

You can click and hold or right-click **Insert** to access the following options:

- **Voice** : Insert mode only affects the selected voices.
- **Player** : Insert mode affects all voices and instruments belonging to the selected players.
- **Global** : Insert mode affects all players in the flow.
- **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** : Insert mode affects all players in the flow, changes the duration of the current bar, and updates its time signature to reflect its new duration.

You can also activate/deactivate Insert mode by pressing **I**. You can cycle through the different Insert mode scopes by pressing **Alt/Opt-I**.

Lock Duration



Allows you to maintain the duration of notes while you change their pitches. Only available during note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Lock Duration** by pressing **L**.

Force Duration



Allows you to input notes/rests with the explicit duration you have selected during note input, and fixes the current notated duration of existing notes outside of note input.

For example, you can activate **Force Duration** to force the input of a dotted quarter note on the second quarter beat of 4/4, where Dorico Elements splits the note with a tie by default.

IMPORTANT

You can get unexpected results if you force the duration of notes and later change the time signature or move barlines, for example.

You can remove **Force Duration** from selected notes by resetting their appearance.




You can also activate/deactivate **Force Duration** by pressing **O**.

Create Voice



Allows you to create a new voice on the current staff into which you can input notes during note input. Outside of note input, **Create Voice** allows you to change the voice of existing notes.

You can click and hold or right-click **Create Voice** to access the following options:





- **Create Voice** : Creates a new voice on the current staff. You can also use the key command **Shift-V**.
- **Create Slash Voice** : Creates a new slash voice with each click. For example, the third new slash voice is stemless. You can also use the key command **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**.
- **Next Voice** : Cycles through active voices on the staff. You can also use the key command **V**.

Dotted Notes



Allows you to input dotted notes/rests based on the currently selected duration during note input. Outside of note input, **Dotted Notes** allows you to add rhythm dots to, and remove rhythm dots from, existing notes/rests.

You can click and hold or right-click **Dotted Notes** to access the following options:

- **One Rhythm Dot** : Inputs notes/rests with one rhythm dot during note input. Adds one rhythm dot to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Two Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with two rhythm dots during note input. Adds two rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Three Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with three rhythm dots during note input. Adds three rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Four Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with four rhythm dots during note input. Adds four rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Dotted Notes** by pressing **.** or double-pressing note duration key commands. You can cycle through the different numbers of rhythm dots by pressing **Alt/Opt-.**

Rests



Allows you to input rests of the currently selected duration instead of notes.

You can also start/stop rest input by pressing **,**.

NOTE








If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico Elements automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

Tuplets



Inputs a triplet based on the currently selected note duration at the caret position or at the selected rhythmic position.

You can click and hold or right-click **Tuplets** to access the following options:



- **2:3** : Inputs a duplet; that is, two notes in the space of three.
- **3:2** : Inputs a triplet; that is, three notes in the space of two.
- **4:3** : Inputs a quadruplet; that is, four notes in the space of three.
- **5:4** : Inputs a quintuplet; that is, five notes in the space of four.
- **6:4** : Inputs a sextuplet; that is, six notes in the space of four.
- **7:8** : Inputs a septuplet; that is, seven notes in the space of eight.
- **x:y** : Opens the tuplets popover, into which you can enter any tuplet ratio.

Grace Notes



Allows you to input grace notes instead of normal notes at the caret position. Only available during note input.

You can click and hold or right-click **Grace Notes** to access the following options:

- **Unslashed Grace Notes** : Selects unslashed grace notes.
- **Slashed Grace Notes** : Selects slashed grace notes.

You can also start/stop grace note input by pressing **/**. You can switch between slashed/unslashed grace notes by pressing **Alt/Opt-/**.

Tie



During note input, this ties the next note you input to the previous note of the same pitch, in the same voice, and on the same staff. Outside of note input, you can use this tool to tie together notes of the same pitch in different voices or to tie grace notes to rhythmic notes.

You can also activate **Tie** by pressing **T**.

NOTE

You cannot deactivate **Tie**. If you want to delete ties, you must use **Scissors**.

Scissors



Splits notes and explicit rests in two at the caret position during note input. Outside of note input, it deletes all ties in tie chains.

You can also activate **Scissors** by pressing **U**.


RELATED LINKS

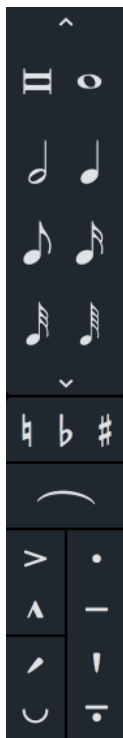
- [Enabling/Disabling mouse input](#) on page 212
- [Inputting notes with rhythm dots](#) on page 230
- [Inputting chords](#) on page 251
- [Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249
- [Inputting triplets](#) on page 254
- [Triplets popover](#) on page 256
- [Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283
- [Resetting the appearance of items](#) on page 436
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Notes panel

The Notes panel contains buttons that allow you to select note and rest durations, and to input accidentals, slurs, and articulations. It is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the Notes panel in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone** .
- Choose **Window > Show Left Zone**.



The upper part of the Notes panel contains note durations that you can select for input or to change the duration of existing notes. By default, only the most common note durations are shown. You can see all note durations by clicking the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the section.

In the middle part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate accidentals and activate slurs.

In the bottom part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate articulations.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244
[Inputting articulations](#) on page 271
[Inputting slurs](#) on page 273
[Inputting nested slurs](#) on page 1295
[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455
[Deleting accidentals](#) on page 792
[Deleting articulations](#) on page 805

Notations toolbox

The Notations toolbox allows you to access panels and popovers, which you can use to input the different notations available. It is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

Panels



Allows you to access panels from the Notations toolbox. Panels allow you to input notations by clicking them in the panel.

Popovers



Allows you to access popovers from the Notations toolbox. Popovers allow you to input notations by typing entries on your computer keyboard. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

NOTE

Popovers are only available during note input or when at least one note/item is selected in the music area.

Panel buttons

Clefs



Hides/Shows the Clefs panel, which contains sections for clefs and octave lines.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals



Hides/Shows the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, which contains sections for key signatures, tonality systems, and accidentals. You can also create and edit custom tonality systems from this panel.

Time Signatures (Meter)



Hides/Shows the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, which contains sections for the different types of time signatures, including a section where you can create custom time signatures, such as interchangeable time signatures and time signatures with pick-up bars.

Tempo



Hides/Shows the Tempo panel, which contains sections for the different types of tempo changes, including gradual tempo changes, metronome marks, and tempo equations.

Dynamics



Hides/Shows the Dynamics panel, which contains sections for the different types of dynamics, including immediate, gradual, and custom combined dynamics.

Ornaments



Hides/Shows the Ornaments panel, which contains sections for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and guitar techniques.

Repeat Structures



Hides/Shows the Repeat Structures panel, which contains sections for the different types of repeat structures, including repeat endings and segments, repeat markers, single-note and multi-note tremolos, bar repeats, and slash regions.

Bars and Barlines



Hides/Shows the Bars and Barlines panel, which contains sections for bars, bar rests, and barlines.

Holds and Pauses



Hides/Shows the Holds and Pauses panel, which contains sections for fermatas, breath marks, and caesuras.

Playing Techniques



Hides/Shows the Playing Techniques panel, which contains sections for the various instrument family groups. Each section contains playing techniques for the corresponding instrument family.

Lines



Hides/Shows the Lines panel, which contains sections for horizontal and vertical lines.

Video



Hides/Shows the Video panel, which allows you to open the **Video Properties** dialog, view and edit markers in the current flow, and to calculate suitable tempos for important markers.

Comments



Hides/Shows the Comments panel, which allows you to view, edit, and export comments in the current flow.

Popover and direct input buttons

Clefs



Opens the clefs and octave lines popover.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals



Opens the key signatures popover.

Time Signatures (Meter)



Opens the time signatures popover.

Tempo



Opens the tempo popover.

Dynamics



Opens the dynamics popover.

Ornaments



Opens the ornaments popover.

Repeat Structures



Opens the repeats popover.

Bars and Barlines



Opens the bars and barlines popover.

Holds and Pauses



Opens the holds and pauses popover.

Playing Techniques



Opens the playing techniques popover.

Rehearsal Marks



Inputs a rehearsal mark.

Text



Opens the text editor for inputting text items.

Lyrics



Opens the lyrics popover.

Chord Symbols



Opens the chord symbols popover.

Note Tools



Opens the note tools popover.

Fingering



Opens the fingerings popover.

Figured Bass



Opens the figured bass popover.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations input](#) on page 271
- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Video Properties dialog](#) on page 190
- [Comment dialog](#) on page 495

Right zone (Write mode)

The right zone in Write mode can display different panels for the available notation items, according to your selection in the Notations toolbox. You can use panels in the right zone to input notations. The right zone is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the right zone in any of the following ways; for example, if you want to find a notation to input but then want to increase the size of the music area after inputting it:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.
- Choose **Window > Show Right Zone**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Clefs panel](#) on page 331
- [Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel](#) on page 279
- [Time Signatures \(Meter\) panel](#) on page 285
- [Tempo panel](#) on page 296

[Dynamics panel](#) on page 312
[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
[Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409
[Bars and Barlines panel](#) on page 303
[Holds and Pauses panel](#) on page 337
[Playing Techniques panel](#) on page 371
[Lines panel](#) on page 385
[Video panel](#) on page 402
[Comments panel](#) on page 496

Lower zone (Write mode)

The lower zone in Write mode can display different panels for inputting notes and editing notes/items.

You can hide/show the lower zone in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
- Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Lower Zone**.

You can use the panel selectors in the top left of the lower zone to display the corresponding panel:

Properties



Shows the Properties panel, which allows you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position.

Keyboard



Shows the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout and displays the pitches of selected notes as depressed keys.

Fretboard



Shows the Fretboard panel, which allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type.

Drum Pads



Shows the Drum Pads panel, which allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout.

Mixer



Shows the Mixer panel, which allows you to control the sounds produced in playback by instruments in the project, both for the master output and each individual instrument's channel.

Key Editor



Shows the Key Editor panel, which allows you to view and edit notes belonging to the selected instrument in a continuous piano roll.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667


[Note input](#) on page 223

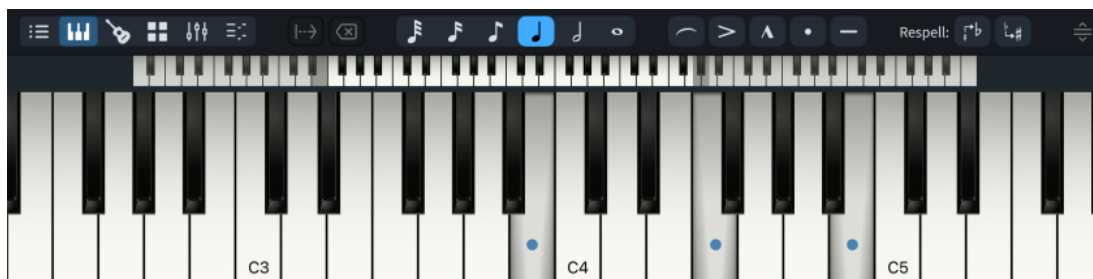
[Notations input](#) on page 271

Keyboard panel

The Keyboard panel allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout, and displays selected notes and sounding notes in playback as depressed keys with blue dots. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Keyboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

- You can show the Keyboard panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Keyboard**  in the lower zone toolbar.



Between the toolbar and the keyboard, there is a keyboard range selector. The brighter keys indicate the keys shown in the panel. The shaded keys at each end of the range allow you to change the keys shown in the panel; for example, if you want to show fewer, wider keys.

The Keyboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret



Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left



Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration



Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Slur



Inputs a slur, starting from the currently selected note or spanning the selected notes. During note input, slurs extend automatically as you input notes.

You can also input slurs by pressing **S**.

Set Articulation



Allows you to activate/deactivate articulations, both for the next notes you input during note input and to add articulations to existing notes.

You can also activate/deactivate articulations by pressing the corresponding key command.

NOTE

Notes cannot have both accent and marcato articulations, or both staccato and tenuto articulations.

Respell Using Note Name Above



Respells the selected notes upwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name above; for example, respelling F# as Gb.

Respell Using Note Name Below



Respells the selected notes downwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name below, such as respelling Gb as F#.

Resize Lower Zone



Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Notes panel](#) on page 200


[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Inputting chords](#) on page 251
- [Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455
- [Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259
- [Inputting slurs](#) on page 273
- [Inputting articulations](#) on page 271
- [Respelling notes](#) on page 473
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Fretboard panel

The Fretboard panel allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type, and displays the pitches of the earliest selected notes as stopped strings with blue dots. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Fretboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

- You can show the Fretboard panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Fretboard**  in the lower zone toolbar.



The Fretboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret



Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left



Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration



Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting notes on tablature](#) on page 242

[Inputting chords](#) on page 251

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259


[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

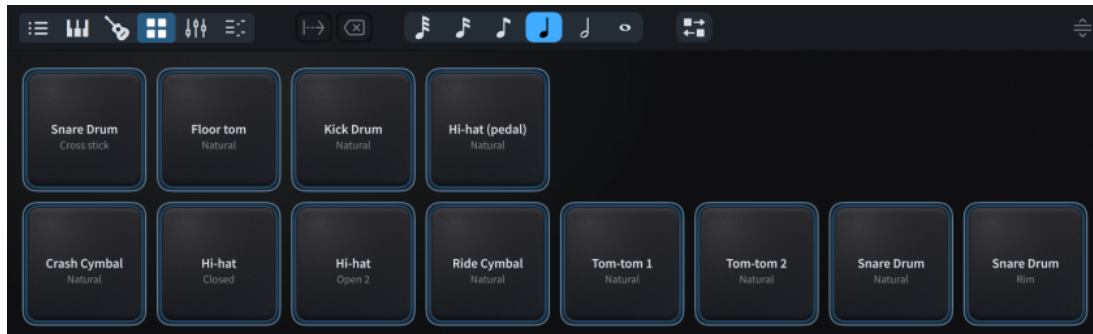
[Tablature](#) on page 1330

Drum Pads panel

The Drum Pads panel allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Drum Pads panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays sounds for the instruments and techniques you press but does not input them.

- You can show the Drum Pads panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Drum Pads**  in the lower zone toolbar.



The Drum Pads panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret



Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left



Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration



Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Reorder Drum Pads



Allows you to move drum pads in relation to each other; for example, to create a different arrangement for easier input in different circumstances.

Resize Lower Zone



Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Voices in percussion kits](#) on page 1435

Inputting vs. editing

Dorico Elements distinguishes the processes for inputting and editing music.

Inputting

If you can see the caret, you are inputting new music. The caret must be activated in order to input notes and notations. If the caret is activated, selecting tools or items in the Notes toolbox and the Notes panel affects the note or chord that you are about to input, as you can specify the duration, rhythm dot, accidentals, and articulations. Then you specify the pitch by clicking the note into the score, by pressing the letter name of the note on your computer keyboard, or by playing the note or chord on your MIDI keyboard.

When the caret is activated, notes and notations are input at the caret position.

If no notes or chords are selected in the music area and you select a duration, either by pressing its key command or by clicking it in the Notes panel, mouse input is activated. If you move the mouse pointer over the staff, a shadow note is displayed to indicate where the note will be input if you click.

NOTE

Deactivating mouse input prevents Dorico Elements from starting mouse input in this circumstance.

Editing

If you cannot see the caret, you can edit existing music. Editing music includes moving, copying/paste, and deleting notes and notations. You can switch back and forth between inputting and editing at any time.

When the caret is not activated, new items are input at the position of the first selected note or item in the music area, according to your item input position setting. If there is no selection, the mouse pointer is loaded with the new item. The item is then created at the location where you click.

To edit existing notes and notations, you must select them in the music area. This allows you to update the selected notes or items when you select, for example, new note durations, accidentals, or articulations in the Notes panel.

We recommend that you spend a moment to understand the difference between how Dorico Elements behaves if the caret is shown and if it is not. In the latter case, all editing functions operate on the items that you have selected in the music area.

NOTE

The results of some edits outside of note input, including copying/pasting notes, can be affected by Insert mode and Chord mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Editing items](#) on page 430

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Note input](#) on page 223

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Chord mode](#) on page 254

[Key Editor](#) on page 667

[Changing the gradual dynamic input position setting](#) on page 317

Changing your mouse input settings

You can change your mouse input settings; for example, if you want to load a playing technique on the pointer once and input it in multiple places without having to reselect the playing technique each time.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Editing** section, choose one of the following options for **Creating items with the mouse**:
 - To input items at the position of the earliest selected note/item in the music area, choose **Create item at selection**.

- To load items onto the mouse pointer so you can click in the music area where you want to input the item, choose **Load pointer with item**.
4. Optional: If you chose **Load pointer with item**, activate/deactivate **Allow multiple items to be created with the mouse**.

NOTE

When this option is activated, you can load an item onto your mouse pointer once, then input that item multiple times without having to reselect it each time.

When this option is deactivated, you can only input an item loaded onto your mouse pointer once.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Your mouse input settings are changed in the current project and for all future projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Notations input](#) on page 271



Enabling/Disabling mouse input

You can enable/disable mouse input; for example, if you only want to input notes using your computer keyboard or MIDI device. Disabling mouse input also allows you to click other items to stop note input.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, in the Notes toolbox, activate/deactivate **Select** .
-

RESULT

Mouse input is enabled in the current project when **Select**  is deactivated, and disabled when **Select**  is activated.

TIP

You can change whether mouse input is enabled/disabled by default in all future projects in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input**.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Enabling/Disabling mouse editing

You can enable/disable mouse editing for notes; for example, if you want to transpose and move notes by dragging with the mouse.

This does not affect your ability to edit notations using the mouse, which is always enabled.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.

2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
 3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Enable note pitch and rhythmic position editing using the mouse**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The setting is changed in the current project and for all future projects.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Toggle Mouse Note Editing** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468
- [Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258
- [Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464

Changing the item input position setting

By default, Dorico Elements inputs items at the position of the earliest note on each selected staff. You can change this setting if you prefer to input items at the same rhythmic position on each selected staff, regardless of whether that represents a note or rest.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
 3. In the **Editing** section, activate/deactivate **Create items at position of first selected note**.
 4. Optional: If you activated **Create items at position of first selected note**, activate/deactivate **Create clefs at position of first selected note**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

When **Create items at position of first selected note** is activated, items are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected note. Items with duration end at the rhythmic position of the last selected note. This can cause items to be input at different rhythmic positions on each selected staff.

When **Create items at position of first selected note** is deactivated, items are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Items with duration end at the rhythmic position of the last selected item. This can cause items to be input at the rhythmic positions of rests rather than notes.

EXAMPLE



Whole bar selected



Octave line input with setting
activated



Octave line input with setting
deactivated

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves](#) on page 235

[Changing the gradual dynamic input position setting](#) on page 317

Changing the note-based notation input setting

You can change your default setting for whether rhythm dots, accidentals, and articulations apply to the last input note or the next note you input during note input. This setting also affects whether or not the last input note remains selected after entry when using pitch before duration for inputting notes.

For example, changing the setting to **After inputting note** when using pitch before duration for notes ensures the last input note remains selected after you input it, making it easier to change its enharmonic spelling when inputting notes using a MIDI keyboard. The last input note is always selected when using duration before pitch for notes, regardless of your note-based notation input setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
 3. In the **Note Input** section, choose one of the following options for **Specify accidental, rhythm dot and articulations** in the **Pitch and Duration** subsection:
 - **After inputting note**
 - **Before inputting note**
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The setting is changed in the current project and for all future projects. If you chose **Before inputting note**, notes do not remain selected after you input them during pitch before duration note input.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting notes using pitch before duration](#) on page 227

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244

[Inputting notes with rhythm dots](#) on page 230

[Inputting articulations](#) on page 271

Changing the input pitch setting

You can input and record notes at either sounding pitch or written pitch; for example, if you want to record notes at their sounding pitch in transposing part layouts.

In concert pitch layouts, written pitch and sounding pitch are the same.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, choose one of the following input pitch settings:
 - To input/record notes at their written pitch, choose **Write > Input Pitch > Written Pitch**.
 - To input/record notes at their sounding pitch, choose **Write > Input Pitch > Sounding Pitch**.

RESULT

The resulting pitch notated or recorded is changed. For example, if you input a C in a Horn in F transposing part layout with the input pitch set to **Sounding Pitch**, the note is written as a G.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting notes using MIDI recording](#) on page 264

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether notes are played back as you input them or not. By default, notes are played back with the prevailing dynamic but you can set a fixed volume instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play notes during note input and selection** in the **Auditioning** subsection.
4. Optional: If you want notes to play back with a fixed volume instead of the prevailing dynamic, activate **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** and change the value in the value field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When the option is activated, notes play back as you input them during note input and when you select them. When it is deactivated, notes do not play back.

When **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** is activated, notes play back with the set volume. When it is deactivated, notes play back with the prevailing dynamic.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Changing the click settings](#) on page 267

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether all notes in chords are played when you select any note in the chord or whether only the selected notes are played.

PREREQUISITE

Notes are played during note input/selection.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
 3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play all notes in chord when any is selected** in the **Auditioning** subsection.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

When the option is activated, all notes in chords are played when any note in the chord is selected. When it is deactivated, only the selected notes are played.

Enabling/Disabling MIDI thru

You can enable/disable MIDI thru at any time. For example, you can enable MIDI thru during note input to hear sounds from your MIDI keyboard, but disable MIDI thru during playback to hear the sounds produced by Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Play**.
 3. In the **Recording** subsection, activate/deactivate **Enable MIDI thru**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The setting is changed in the current project and for all future projects.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Toggle MIDI Thru** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[MIDI recording](#) on page 264

[Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices](#) on page 270

Rhythmic grid

The rhythmic grid is a unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. However, it does not control the duration of notes and items that you input.



Rhythmic grid set to eighth notes (quavers) shown above the staff

The current rhythmic grid resolution is shown by the note value in the status bar, and by ruler markings above the staff on which the caret is active or on which you are dragging notes. Longer lines in the rhythmic grid indicate beat divisions, while shorter lines indicate beat subdivisions.

The rhythmic grid controls the following:

- The possible input positions when using the caret or the mouse, and when copying and pasting. For example, setting the rhythmic grid resolution to 32nd notes allows you to input notes and items at a greater number of possible rhythmic positions than when the rhythmic grid is set to quarter notes.
- The amount by which the caret moves when using **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
- The amount by which notes and items are lengthened/shortened.
- The amount by which notes and items move.
- The duration by which notes are split.

RELATED LINKS

[Rhythmic position](#) on page 24

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Splitting notes by duration](#) on page 261

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

Changing the rhythmic grid resolution

You can change the resolution of the rhythmic grid; for example, you might decrease the rhythmic grid resolution so you can shorten notes by smaller increments. The resolution is indicated by the note value symbol in the status bar and by the beat divisions/subdivisions in the ruler markings above the caret.

The rhythmic grid resolution is set to eighth notes (quavers) by default.

PROCEDURE

- Change the resolution of the rhythmic grid in any of the following ways:
 - To decrease the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-]**.
 - To increase the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-[**.
 - Choose **Write > Rhythmic Grid > Decrease Grid Resolution**.
 - Choose **Write > Rhythmic Grid > Increase Grid Resolution**.

- Choose **Write > Rhythmic Grid > [Beat division]**.
 - Select a value from the **Rhythmic Grid** selector in the status bar.
-

RESULT

Decreasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it finer by making the note value shorter.
Increasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it coarser by making the note value longer.

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675

Caret

In Dorico Elements, the caret is a vertical line that extends above and below five-line staves but appears shorter on percussion staves and tablature. It shows the rhythmic position at which notes, chords, or notation items are input, which can be partway through tie chains.

A caret is a mark that is commonly used when proofreading published text to denote the position at which something should be inserted or added; for example, a missing letter or a word. In software, the caret shows where something is inserted. The caret is also known as an “insertion point” or “cursor”. In this documentation, we use “caret” to refer to the line that appears during note input, and “cursor” to refer to the line that appears during text input.

If you are inputting notes, the caret advances to the next rhythmic position automatically. If you are inputting chords or notes on tablature, the caret does not move automatically, and you must move it to the next rhythmic position manually.

The caret has a note symbol beside it, which indicates the stem direction and type of the currently selected voice. It is accompanied by a + symbol if the voice is new.



The caret

The appearance of the caret changes depending on the input mode and the currently selected voice number.

Multiple staves

The caret extends vertically across all the staves onto which notes and notations will be input. This allows you to input, for example, the same dynamics or playing techniques on multiple staves simultaneously or play in chords on a MIDI keyboard and distribute the notes in those chords onto multiple staves. The note symbol and rhythmic grid also appear for each included staff.



Caret when inputting notes onto multiple staves

Insert

The caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom. Dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend. In Insert mode, inserted notes shift existing notes after the caret along by the input duration instead of overwriting them.



Caret when **Insert (Voice)** is active



Caret when **Insert (Player)** is active



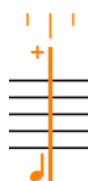
Caret when either **Insert (Global)** or **Insert (Global Adjustment of Current Bar)** is active

NOTE

Insert mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting, deleting, and lengthening/shortening notes.

Chords

The caret shows a plus symbol at the top left. During chord input, you can input multiple notes at the same rhythmic position.



Caret when inputting chords

NOTE

Chord mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting and lengthening/shortening notes and items.

Lock Duration

The caret is dashed. **Lock Duration** allows you to repitch notes without changing their duration or rhythm.



Caret when **Lock Duration** is activated

Grace Notes

The caret is shorter than the default caret. It allows you to input grace notes at the caret position.



Caret when inputting grace notes

Voices

To identify voices, the caret shows the following:

- An up-stem or down-stem note symbol to indicate the stem direction of the voice
- The voice number into which you are about to input notes, for second voices and above
- A plus symbol at the bottom left, if the voice is new



Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new down-stem voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

Slash voices

To identify slash voices, the caret shows the following:

- An up-stem or down-stem slash note symbol, indicating the stem direction of the slash voice, and whether it has stems or is stemless
- The number of the slash voice into which you are about to input notes, for second voices and above

- A plus symbol on the left at the bottom, if the slash voice is new



Caret when inputting notes into an up-stem slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new, stemless slash voice

Percussion kits

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into percussion kits. The name of the kit instrument into which you are currently inputting notes is shown above the rhythmic grid.



Caret when inputting notes into percussion kits

Tablature

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into tablature. On tablature, the caret behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret and move it to other string lines manually.



Caret when inputting notes on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Note input](#) on page 223

[Chord mode](#) on page 254

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Repitching notes without changing their rhythm](#) on page 472

[Splitting tie chains](#) on page 1373



[Splitting notes by duration](#) on page 261

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

Activating/Deactivating the caret

When the caret is activated, you can input notes and notations at the caret position; for example, if you want to input a dynamic in the middle of a tie chain. When the caret is deactivated, you cannot input notes, instead you can select and edit items in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, activate the caret and start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Select an item and press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click a rhythmic position on a staff.
 2. Deactivate the caret and stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**, **Return**, or **Esc**.
 - If you have deactivated mouse input, click any selectable item in the music area.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Switch to another mode.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Enabling/Disabling mouse input](#) on page 212


[Note input](#) on page 223

[Notations input](#) on page 271

Extending the caret to multiple staves

You can extend the caret so it spans multiple staves. This allows you to input notes and notations onto multiple staves simultaneously, including automatically exploding the notes in chords that you play on a MIDI keyboard onto the appropriate staves.

PROCEDURE


1. In Write mode, activate the caret in any of the following ways:
 - Select an item and press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click a rhythmic position on a staff.
 2. Extend the caret to other staves in any of the following ways:
 - To extend to the staff above, press **Shift-Up Arrow**.
 - To extend to the staff below, press **Shift-Down Arrow**.
 3. Optional: Repeat step 2 as many times as you require.
-

RELATED LINKS


[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves](#) on page 235

Moving the caret manually

During normal note input, the caret moves automatically as you input notes, but you can also move it manually. For example, the caret does not move automatically when **Chords**  is activated.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, move the caret in any of the following ways:
 - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous note/rest, whichever is closest, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
 - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret**  in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
 - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
 - To move the caret to the staff above/below, press **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.
 - To move the caret to the top/bottom staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Up Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Down Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting chords](#) on page 251

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

Note input

In Dorico Elements, you can only input notes during note input, which is when the caret is activated. This reduces the risk of you adding notes to staves accidentally.

You can also input notations at the same time as inputting notes. Notations are input at the caret position or on the selected note.

You can input notes in different ways and using any of the following devices, including switching between them at any time:

- MIDI keyboard
- Computer keyboard
- Mouse or touchpad
- Keyboard, Fretboard, and Drum Pads panels

RELATED LINKS

[Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

Inputting notes

You can input notes into your project during note input, which is when the caret is activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform step 7 before steps 4 to 6.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico Elements shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE

- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to hear sounds from connected MIDI devices, you have enabled MIDI thru.
- If you want to select note durations using the Notes panel, the left zone is shown.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in galley view.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.


PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

NOTE


You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input**  in the Notes toolbox.
 - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
- Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.

- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
4. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
 5. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.
 6. Optional: Select any required articulations.
 7. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:


TIP

Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.

- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
 - To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.
-
- Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each note you want to input.
A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
 - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
8. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
- Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an **F#** is input automatically.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico Elements automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

NOTE

- The notes you input overwrite existing notes at the caret position in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret. If you want to add notes to an existing voice, you can input chords. You can also input notes into new voices.
- You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input.
- You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the input pitch setting](#) on page 215
- [Changing the note-based notation input setting](#) on page 214
- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464
- [Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

Register selection during note input

Dorico Elements automatically selects the register of pitches during note input, but you can override this and select the register manually.

During note input, Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. For example, if you input an F and then press **A**, an A is input a third above the F, rather than a sixth below.

You can override this automatic register selection in the following ways:

- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
- To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

Register selection when inputting chords

During chord input, Dorico Elements automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position. For example, if you press **A** then **E** then **A**, a chord of A-E-A is input at the caret position.

You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note name; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

Inputting notes using pitch before duration

You can input notes into your project by specifying their pitch before their duration, meaning you can test pitches before inputting them without leaving note input. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

By default in Dorico Elements, you must specify the duration before the pitch of notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe selecting the pitch before the duration when inputting notes. However, you can also specify the duration before the pitch instead, which is the default note input behavior in Dorico Elements.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform steps 7 and 8 before steps 4 to 6.
- When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico Elements shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE



- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to hear sounds from connected MIDI devices, you have enabled MIDI thru.
- If you want to select note durations using the Notes panel, the left zone is shown.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in galley view.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

NOTE

You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input**  in the Notes toolbox.
- Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
2. Activate **Pitch Before Duration** in any of the following ways:
 - Press **K**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Pitch Before Duration** .
3. Optional: If you want to input notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.
5. Optional: Select any required articulations.
6. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
7. Select a pitch in any of the following ways:
 - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.


- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
- To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

When inputting notes using pitch before duration, you can press these key commands multiple times to select higher/lower octaves.

- Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each note you want to input.
A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
 - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
- Once you have selected a pitch, a shadow note of the corresponding pitch appears at the caret position. You can release the pitch after selecting it.
8. Select a note duration and input the note in any of the following ways:
 - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.


NOTE

When inputting notes on tablature, you must click durations in the Notes panel.

- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
9. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
- Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

10. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F# is input automatically.


If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico Elements automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

NOTE

- The notes you input overwrite existing notes at the caret position in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret. If you want to add notes to an existing voice, you can input chords. You can also input notes into new voices.
- You can switch between using pitch before duration and duration before pitch note input at any time by pressing **K** or clicking **Pitch Before Duration** . For example, duration before pitch can be easier when inputting a sequence of notes with the same duration.
- You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

- You can change whether note input uses pitch before duration or duration before pitch by default on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input. You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the input pitch setting](#) on page 215
- [Changing the note-based notation input setting](#) on page 214
- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464
- [Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

Inputting notes with rhythm dots









The **Dotted Notes** tool allows you to input notes with rhythm dots and add rhythm dots to existing notes. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
 - These steps describe selecting rhythm dots before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify rhythm dots after inputting notes.
 - You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select existing notes to which you want to add rhythm dots.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with rhythm dots onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
 - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
4. Activate **Dotted Notes** in any of the following ways:
 - Press **.**

- Double-press the required note duration key command.
For example, press **6** twice quickly for a dotted quarter note.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes** .
5. Optional: Change the number of rhythm dots in any of the following ways:
- Press **Alt/Opt-** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes** , then click the number of rhythm dots you want.
- Dotted Notes**  in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current number of rhythm dots. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.
6. Optional: Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
- Press **O**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration** .
- If **Force Duration**  is not activated, the notes you input might be shown as tied notes rather than dotted notes, depending on their position in the bar and the prevailing meter.
7. Input the dotted notes you want.
Dotted Notes  remains activated until you either select a different note duration or deactivate it.
8. Press **.** or click **Dotted Notes**  again to deactivate **Dotted Notes**.
9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

During note input, notes are input as dotted notes until you deactivate **Dotted Notes** or change the note duration.

When you add rhythm dots to multiple existing notes that would then overlap, Dorico Elements adjusts the duration of notes in the selection to avoid deleting notes at the end of the selection.

EXAMPLE



A phrase containing eighth notes



After adding rhythm dots to the whole selection

RELATED LINKS



- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Inputting notes using pitch before duration](#) on page 227
- [Changing the note-based notation input setting](#) on page 214
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Insert mode](#) on page 451
- [Chord mode](#) on page 254

Inputting notes into multiple voices

By default, notes are input into the first up-stem voice, as indicated by the symbol of an up-stem quarter note beside the caret. You can input notes directly into other voices during note input, and switch between voices as required.

You can also create new voices on staves with existing notes and input notes into those voices anywhere else on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input multiple voices.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Select the voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:
 - To create a new voice, press **Shift-V** or click **Create Voice**  in the Notes toolbox.
When a new voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a quarter note beside the caret. The quarter note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the quarter note indicates the voice number if applicable.



Caret when adding the first down-stem voice

TIP

You can press **Shift-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes, creating one new voice allows you to input notes into the first down-stem voice, but you can also create another new voice immediately if you want to input notes into the second up-stem voice.


Only voices that contain notes are preserved.

- To select an existing voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice**  in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.

NOTE

- You can switch between voices as often as you like.
- If you have three or more voices on a single staff, you can only cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices and two down-stem voices, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice.

4. Input the notes you want.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

Notes are input into the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

If you are inputting notes into a new voice on a staff that already contains notes in another voice, the stem directions of existing notes at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.

NOTE

- Any voices that you created, but did not input notes into, are deleted.
 - You can show voice colors to check which notes are in which voice. Additionally, when you select single notes or multiple notes in the same voice at the same rhythmic position, their pitches are shown in the status bar and as depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.
-

EXAMPLE



Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem voice



Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap](#) on page 1440

[Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices](#) on page 1278

Inputting notes into slash voices


You can input notes into multiple slash voices; for example, if you want to indicate a precise rhythm without specifying pitches. By default, the first slash voice is up-stem, but you can add extra slash voices both with and without stems, and switch between them as often as you want.

You can also input notes into new slash voices on a staff with existing notes. Once you have created a slash voice somewhere on a staff, you can input notes into that slash voice anywhere else on the same staff.



PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input slash voices.

2. Start note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-N**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
- Double-click the staff.

3. Select the slash voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:

- To create a new slash voice, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**. You can also click and hold **Create Voice** , then click **Create Slash Voice** .

When a new slash voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a note beside the caret, which now appears as a slash note. The slash note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the slash note symbol indicates the voice number if applicable.




Caret when adding the first down-stem slash voice

TIP

You can press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes in slash voices, creating one new slash voice allows you to input notes into the first up-stem slash voice.

You can also create a second new slash voice immediately if you want to input notes into a down-stem slash voice, or a third new slash voice if you want to input notes into a stemless slash voice.

Only voices that contain notes are preserved.

- To select an existing slash voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice**  in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.


4. Input the notes you want.

Notes in slash voices appear at the same staff position, regardless of their pitch. By default, this is the middle line of the staff, but this changes in multiple-slash-voice contexts.

NOTE

By default, notes in slash voices are not played back. However, if you include slash voices in playback, notes in slash voices play back with their input pitch.

5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .

RESULT

Notes are input into new slash voices, as indicated by the caret indicator. The slash note symbol beside the caret changes to indicate which voice is currently selected and into which notes are input.

You can switch between voices as often as you like.

NOTE

- If you are inputting notes into a new slash voice on a staff that already contains notes in other voices/slash voices, the stem directions of existing notes and the staff positions of slash voices at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.
 - If you have three or more voices of any type on a single staff, you must cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices, two down-stem voices, and a slash voice, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice, slash voice.
 - Any voices that you created, but did not input notes into, are deleted.
-

EXAMPLE



Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new stemless slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Slash voices](#) on page 1258

[Slash regions](#) on page 1261

[Adding slash voices to percussion kits](#) on page 1260

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Including/Excluding slash voices in playback](#) on page 1260

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves


You can input notes and notations onto multiple staves simultaneously, including automatically exploding the notes in chords that you play on a MIDI keyboard onto the appropriate staves. For example, if you want to input notes onto both piano staves or input the same dynamics for multiple instruments.

Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves is most useful for multiple adjacent pitched instruments whose music is only a single voice.

PREREQUISITE


If you want to explode individual notes in chords onto multiple staves during note input, you have connected a MIDI keyboard. You can only input the different notes in chords onto separate staves when using a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes/ notations onto multiple staves.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Extend the caret to another staff in any of the following ways:
 - To extend to the staff above, press **Shift-Up Arrow**.
 - To extend to the staff below, press **Shift-Down Arrow**.
4. Optional: Repeat step 3 for as many staves as you require.
5. Input the notes and notations you want.

NOTE

You must input notes using a computer keyboard or MIDI keyboard. If you use the mouse, notes are only input on the staff you click. Similarly, you must use the corresponding popover to input notations on multiple staves. When inputting notations using the corresponding panel, they are only input on the top staff.

6. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .

RESULT

The notes and notations you input are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If the caret extends across both staves of a grand staff instrument, notes are input on either the top or bottom staff according to their pitch. However, this does not apply to grand staff instruments with extra staves.

When inputting notes using a MIDI keyboard, the individual notes in any chords you input are automatically exploded across the staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Inputting notes using pitch before duration](#) on page 227

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Notations input](#) on page 271

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85


Inputting notes in Insert mode

In Insert mode, you can input notes before existing notes in a single voice without overriding them. This allows you to push existing notes ahead at the same time as inputting new notes at their previous positions.

NOTE






- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
 - You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .

In Insert mode, the caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom. Dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.



3. Choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.
 4. Optional: If the Insert mode scope is set to **Voice** , press **V** until the voice you want is selected.
 5. Optional: If the Insert mode scope is set to **Player**  or **Voice**  and you want to input notes in Insert mode onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
 6. Input the notes you want.
 7. Optional: Press **I** or click **Insert**  again to deactivate Insert mode and return to normal note input.
 8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

Notes are inserted at the caret position or where you click without overwriting any existing notes at rhythmic positions after the caret. Instead, existing notes after the caret are pushed ahead to subsequent rhythmic positions.

The voices and staves affected by Insert mode depend on the Insert mode scope.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452

Inputting notes for unpitched percussion

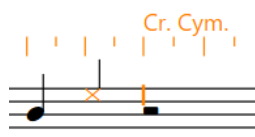
You can input notes for individual unpitched percussion instruments and on all percussion instruments in percussion kits using any presentation type, including selecting playing technique-specific noteheads for individual instruments.

When inputting notes in percussion kits, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on pitched instrument or individual percussion instrument staves. Instead of occupying the whole height of the staff, the caret in percussion kits is positioned at a particular staff position.

The name of the percussion instrument or slash voice currently selected by the caret, and any applicable playing technique, is shown directly above the rhythmic grid display.

NOTE

- You can only input notes into slash voices in percussion kits when using the five-line staff presentation type.
- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.



Inputting notes on instruments with five-line staff kit presentation

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use additional playing technique-specific noteheads for percussion instruments, you have defined these in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog for each instrument.


PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the unpitched percussion instrument/kit staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.
2. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

NOTE

You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input**  in the Notes toolbox.
 - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
3. Optional: When inputting into percussion kits, move the caret up/down to other instruments in the kit in any of the following ways:
 - To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
 - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.
 4. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:

- Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
5. Select an appropriate playing technique for the instrument currently selected by the caret before inputting notes.
- To cycle upwards through playing techniques, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To cycle downwards through playing techniques, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - Play the pitch for the playing technique you want on a MIDI keyboard.


NOTE

You can define MIDI pitches for playing techniques on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

6. Input notes in one of the following ways:
- Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Press **Y** to input notes for the instrument and playing technique shown above the rhythmic grid.
 - Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Click on the staff where you want to input notes, and at the rhythmic positions where you want them.
 - Five-line staff presentation type: Press letters on a computer keyboard or play notes on a MIDI keyboard, corresponding to staff positions for the clef set in **Preferences**. For example, press **B** to input notes for the instrument assigned to the middle line of a five-line staff when **Treble G clef** is set.
 - Grid and single-line instruments presentation types/Individual instruments: Press the letter of any note name **A** to **G** on a computer keyboard or play any note on a MIDI keyboard to input notes for the instrument on whose line the caret is currently positioned.


NOTE

Notes played on MIDI keyboards are interpreted differently, depending on whether **Use percussion map** or **Use staff position** is set for the different kit presentation types in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input**.

7. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
- Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position or where you click with the selected duration and are played back as you input them by default. If you selected playing techniques, their noteheads appear as set in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog for the corresponding instrument and playing technique, or in the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog for five-line staff presentations only.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

TIP

You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420

[Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 1435

[Adding slash voices to percussion kits](#) on page 1260

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Note input setup for percussion kits

Inputting music for unpitched percussion instruments works differently than for pitched instruments. You can use any of the usual methods for unpitched percussion input, but using a MIDI keyboard or a computer keyboard is most efficient.

- You can find options relating to note input for percussion in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input**.

There is one set of options for input onto five-line staves, and another set of options for input onto grids and individual instruments.

The main choice affects input via MIDI keyboards and computer keyboards.

Use percussion map

A percussion map defines which MIDI notes produce which sound for a particular patch in a sound library. For example, in General MIDI percussion, C2 (note 36) produces bass drum, and D2 (note 38) produces snare drum, and so on.

If you know a particular mapping well, you may find it helpful to use the mapping directly for input.

Use staff position

This option uses the staff position defined in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, on a drum set, the bass drum is normally positioned in the bottom space of the staff, while the snare drum is positioned in the third space from the bottom.

You can think of staff positions relative to what they would be when using a treble G clef (F4 and C5 respectively) or using a bass F clef (A2 and E3 respectively).

You can choose which clef is used to interpret staff positions for five-line staves:

- **Treble G clef**
- **Bass F clef**

When you select **Use staff position**, you can designate one octave of your MIDI keyboard to input playing techniques.

By default, the **Input techniques from MIDI key** option is set to MIDI note 48, which is C3 when using the middle C numbering convention that middle C (MIDI note 60) is numbered as C4. You can click the MIDI learn button and then play a note on your MIDI keyboard to change the starting pitch. Assuming a starting pitch of C3, ascending notes operate as follows:

- C3 (48): Previous playing technique
- C#3 (49): Next playing technique
- D3 (50): First mapped playing technique
- Eb3 (51): Second mapped playing technique
- E3 (52): Third mapped playing technique

And so on, up to:

- B3 (59): Tenth mapped playing technique

In general, we recommend that you set **Use staff position** for percussion input. **Use percussion map** is normally only useful when you are inputting notes onto a drum set and you have already memorized the General MIDI percussion map.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Default note selection during note input for percussion kits

During note input in percussion kits, you can press the letters on a computer keyboard that correspond to staff positions for kits using the five-line staff presentation type. For example, you can press **F** to input a note on the F space or line.

In **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input**, you can set options for inputting notes into percussion kits. For example, if you want to use staff positions to determine notes, choose **Use staff position** for **Input onto kit or grid**.

If you have the staff positions set relative to **Treble G clef**, then F could mean either the bottom space on the staff or the top line on the staff. In a standard drum set, this means either the kick drum in the bottom space, or the ride cymbal on the top line.

When inputting notes in pitched instruments, Dorico Elements chooses the lower or upper possible staff position based on which is closer to the current position of the caret.

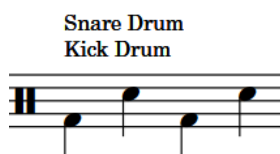
However, when inputting notes in percussion kits, Dorico Elements chooses the staff position of the note with the same stem direction as the last input note, rather than the staff position that is closest to the current position of the caret. This makes it easier to input common note patterns used in percussion kits.

For example, inputting kick drum and snare drum notes on a standard drum set is a common pattern. The kick drum is in the bottom space, and the snare drum is two spaces above: five staff positions away from the bottom space, and four staff positions away from the top line.

You can press **F** for the kick drum and **C** for the snare drum.

The default stem direction behavior for inputting notes in kits in Dorico Elements means that you can alternate pressing **F** and **C**, and the notes are input at the positions of the kick drum and snare drum, even though the top line is the closer position after inputting a snare drum note.

This is because the kick drum uses the same stem direction, and therefore voice, as the snare drum.



NOTE

Dorico Elements automatically changes the directions of stems according to the positions of notes on the staff when only one voice on the staff contains notes, regardless of their voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

Inputting notes on tablature

You can input notes directly into tablature in the same ways as inputting normal notes. When inputting notes on tablature, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on standard five-line staves and behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret manually to input notes at other rhythmic positions.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.



PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the tablature and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.

NOTE

If both notation staves and tablature are shown in the current layout, you must select an item on the notation staff and then move the caret to the tablature after starting note input.

2. Start note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
- To select the next longer duration, press **=**.
 - To select the next shorter duration, press **-**.
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Fretboard panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
4. Input the pitch you want for the current string in any of the following ways:
- Press the number on your computer keyboard or numeric keypad that corresponds to the fret number you want. For example, press **6** for fret 6.
For fret numbers 10 and above, press the two digits quickly.
 - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.
- NOTE
- When using letters, Dorico Elements automatically chooses the octave closest to the nut on the corresponding string.
-
- In the Fretboard panel, click the corresponding string and fret position.
 - Play the note on a MIDI keyboard.
5. Move the caret up/down to input notes on different strings at the same rhythmic position in any of the following ways:
- To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
 - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.
6. Move the caret to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
- To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow / Left Arrow**.
 - To advance the caret according to the note duration currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret**  in the Fretboard panel toolbar.
 - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow / Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position with the selected duration on the string indicated by the caret and are played back as you input them by default. Notes continue to be input at the caret position until you move the caret manually and overwrite any previous note on the same string. If you attempt to input a note that is impossible on the current string, it is input on the closest available string in addition to any existing notes.

If you have input two or more notes on the same string at the same rhythmic position, they are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. You can then select them individually and change their string allocation.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

[Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature](#) on page 1331

[Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332

Inputting accidentals

You can input accidentals during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also change the accidentals of existing notes.

NOTE

- Accidentals that are part of the prevailing key signature are input automatically. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F# is input automatically. You would only need to specify an accidental if you want to input an F \flat , for example.

This also applies if you are using a MIDI keyboard, though you can respell notes if the accidentals chosen automatically are not the ones that you expected.

- These steps describe selecting accidentals before inputting each note. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify accidentals after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select the existing notes to which you want to add accidentals or whose accidentals you want to change.
2. Select the accidental you want to input in one of the following ways:
 - For a flat accidental, press **-**.
 - For a sharp accidental, press **=**.
 - For a natural accidental, press **0**.
 - In the Notes panel, click the accidental you want.

TIP

You can find more accidentals, such as double sharps/flats or microtonal accidentals, in the **Accidentals** section of the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on the right of the window.

3. Optional: During note input, input the note you want with your selected accidental.

RESULT

The accidental is added to the selected existing notes. If you selected existing notes with different accidentals, they are changed to have the accidental you selected.

During note input, the selected accidental is only input on the next note you input. You must reselect the accidental for each subsequent note.

NOTE

- Due to the default accidental duration rule in Dorico Elements, subsequent accidentals for the same note in the same register do not appear in the same bar.

- If you input notes using a MIDI device, Dorico Elements automatically shows an accidental if necessary. It selects a sharp, flat, or natural based on key signature and context. You can later respell notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents with different accidentals.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Accidentals](#) on page 792

[Changing the note-based notation input setting](#) on page 214

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Accidental duration rules](#) on page 800

Accidental selection during MIDI input

Dorico Elements interprets MIDI data to create accidentals, and automatically determines the spelling of notes according to preset rules.

Dorico Elements automatically displays an accidental if one is required. It selects a sharp or flat based on key signature and context.

The algorithm for this takes into account the key signature and the intervals between successive notes and chords. Therefore Dorico Elements prefers sharp accidentals in a key with sharps, and flats in a key with flats. If you change the spelling of an accidental, Dorico Elements follows your spelling preference whenever that note is used again in the score.

If you input notes with accidentals outside the key signature, Dorico Elements uses sharps if the figure is rising, and flats if it is falling. The spelling is also calculated vertically, meaning a simpler interval is produced where possible, such as a major third rather than a diminished fourth.

By default, Dorico Elements makes retrospective changes to how it has spelled accidentals, depending on how your music develops. For example, in C major, if you input a sequence of pitches C-E-G#, but then input a Gb, the G# is respelled as an Ab.


Inputting rests





Dorico Elements automatically shows rests as appropriate in the gaps between the notes you input. However, you can also input rests manually; for example, to show fermatas on specific beats for players without notes in that bar.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting the duration before inputting rests. However, you can also input rests when **Pitch Before Duration** is active, in which case step 7 is unnecessary.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input rests.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.

3. Optional: If you want to input rests onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
 4. Start rest input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **,**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests** .
 5. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
 - Press **O**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration** .
 6. Select the rest duration you want.
 7. Input rests in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Y** or any of the letters from **A** to **G**.
 - Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each rest you want to input.
A shadow rest appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the rest will be input.
 - Play notes on a MIDI keyboard.
 8. Optional: Press **,** or click **Rests**  again to stop rest input.
 9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

Rests of the selected duration are input. If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico Elements automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

RELATED LINKS

[Rests](#) on page 1271

[Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262



Inputting bar rests into specific voices

When inputting music in multiple voices, rests are normally created automatically when there is a gap in the secondary voice. However, if you want secondary voices to begin with explicit bar rests in strict contrapuntal music, you can input a bar rest into those voices.

For music in a single voice, you do not have to input bar rests as they appear in each new bar automatically when you advance the caret. You can also hide/show bar rests in all empty bars in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.

2. Select the appropriate secondary voice by pressing **V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.
Alternatively, if you want to input bar rests into a new voice, press **Shift-V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-B**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Bars and Barlines** .
4. Enter **rest** into the popover to add a bar rest.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** to advance the caret to the start of the next bar after the bar rest.
7. Optional: If you want to show bar rests in multiple bars for the selected voice, repeat steps 3 to 6 as many times as required.

TIP

If your notation options are set to show bar rests in additional voices, bar rests appear in all subsequent empty bars for the selected voice after you have input one bar rest.

RESULT

Bar rests are input into the selected voice at the caret position. If the caret position is within a bar that contains notes for the selected voice, these notes are replaced by the bar rest.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can click **Insert Bar Rest** in the **Insert Bar Rest** section of the Bars and Barlines panel to input bar rests during note input.

RELATED LINKS

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars](#) on page 1277

[Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices](#) on page 1278

Inputting ties

You can input ties manually to join two notes of the same pitch, both during note input and by joining two existing notes with a tie. You can tie existing notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument, or that are not rhythmically adjacent.

For example, you might have input a melody across multiple voices in order to accommodate passing notes, but want to tie two notes together even though they are in different voices. Similarly, you might have written multiple notes before a chord that are all held down and want to reduce the number of tied notes.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically creates ties as required for note durations in each meter. For example, if you want to input a tie between two quarter notes across a barline, you can input a half note at the rhythmic position where you want to input the first quarter note. Dorico

Elements automatically splits the half note into two quarter notes, one on each side of the barline, and joins them with a tie.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to preserve the durations of existing notes, you have forced their duration. For example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

We also recommend starting ties from the first note in the tie chain, as tied notes become a single note whose settings, including forced durations, come from the first note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:


- Start note input.
- Select the note from which you want the tie to start. If you want to input a tie between two specific notes or between a grace note and a normal note, select those two notes.

NOTE

The two notes must be the same pitch, but can be in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument.

2. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the start of the tie.

3. Input a tie in any of the following ways:

- Press **T**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Tie** .

4. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the end of the tie.

NOTE

The second note must be the same pitch as the first note.

RESULT

During note input, the two notes input are joined by a tie.

If you selected a single existing note, it is joined by a tie to the next note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff. If you selected two existing notes, they are tied together, provided they are the same pitch and belong to the same instrument.

NOTE

- During note input, Dorico Elements ties the first note you input after inputting the tie to the previous note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff, even if there are other notes of other pitches between them.
 - Depending on the prevailing time signature, the position of the start of the note in the bar, and your settings on the **Note Grouping** page in **Notation Options**, inputting a tie between two notes can instead create a single note of a different duration, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes. You can override your note grouping settings and fix your notated rhythm by forcing their duration. Dorico Elements then notates your input notes with the rhythmic durations specified, as long as they can fit inside the bar.
-

EXAMPLE



Ties between adjacent notes



Ties between non-adjacent notes



Ties between grace notes and normal notes

RELATED LINKS

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Ties vs. slurs](#) on page 1365



Inputting grace notes

You input grace notes in the same ways as normal notes, and they can have any rhythmic note value, accidental, and articulation.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input grace notes.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to input grace notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Start grace note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **/**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes** .
5. Press the number for the note duration you want. For example, press **5** for eighth grace notes.
6. Optional: Switch between inputting slashed/unslashed grace notes in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Alt/Opt-/**.

- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Grace Notes** , then click **Unslashed Grace Notes**  or **Slashed Grace Notes** .

Grace Notes  in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current grace note type.

7. Input the grace notes you want.

TIP

There is no limit to the number of grace notes that can exist at the same rhythmic position.

8. Press **/** or click **Grace Notes**  again to stop grace note input and return to normal note input.
-

RESULT

The pitches you enter are input as grace notes at the caret position.

TIP

- You can also change the type of grace notes after they have been input.
 - Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Changing the type of grace notes](#) on page 1006

[Grace notes in playback](#) on page 1009

Creating grace note runs for percussion kits

You can create runs of consecutive grace notes for different instruments in percussion kits; for example, to indicate a short drum fill.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, input the grace notes that you require for each instrument in the percussion kit.

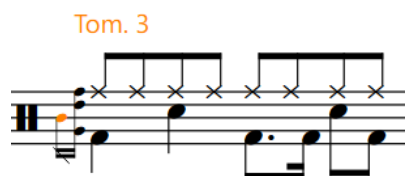
NOTE

- When percussion kits use the grid or five-line staff presentation types, grace notes at the same rhythmic position appear as a chord by default.
 - We recommend creating grace note runs by starting from the end of the run and working backwards.
-

2. Select the grace note that you want to be the penultimate note in the run.



3. Press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** once.



4. Select the grace note that you want to appear to the left of the previous note.
5. Press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** twice.



6. Optional: Repeat steps 4 to 5 as many time as required for the number of grace notes in your run.

NOTE

You must increase the number of **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** presses by 1 each time.

RESULT

The grace notes at the selected rhythmic position are spread out and appear as a run. This affects both the grid and five-line staff presentation types.

EXAMPLE



Run of four grace notes on a five-line staff percussion kit

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238
- [Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

Inputting chords

You can input chords during note input when both note input and **Chords** are activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE


- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.


When inputting chords using pitch before duration, you must use your computer keyboard or a MIDI keyboard and complete step 6 before step 5.

- You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.

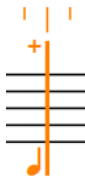
- You can input chords without activating **Chords** when using the Keyboard panel, Fretboard panel, or a MIDI keyboard.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input chords.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.

3. Start chord input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Q**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Chords** .

In chord input, a + sign appears at the top of the caret. This allows you to input multiple notes at the caret position.




4. Optional: If you want to input chords onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
5. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
 - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
6. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:
 - Press the corresponding letters on your keyboard.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position when **Chords**  is activated.

You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note name; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.



- Click the staff at the rhythmic positions where you want to input notes.
A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.

- Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
7. Optional: Advance the caret to input chords at other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
- Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .

During chord input, notes are input at the same rhythmic position and above the previous note until you advance the caret manually.

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

8. Press **Q** or click **Chords**  again to stop chord input.
9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .

RESULT

Multiple notes are input at the caret position.

- If entering pitches by clicking with the mouse, you can put the same pitch into the chord twice by clicking again on the same line.
- If entering pitches with the keyboard, repeated notes are automatically input an octave above. You can change the register of notes by forcing the register selection during note input, or by transposing them after they have been input.

NOTE

- You can stop chord input and immediately continue inputting notes as before, with a single note at each rhythmic position and the caret advancing automatically to the next rhythmic position.
- When chords contain two pitches in the same register but with different accidentals, that is known as an altered unison. Altered unisons are shown with either single stems or with split stems, depending on your settings on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.
- When you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

RELATED LINKS


- [Register selection during note input](#) on page 226
- [Changing the note-based notation input setting](#) on page 214
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
- [Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
- [Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223
- [Altered unisons](#) on page 798
- [Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332

Chord mode

Chord mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Chord mode is activated, notes can overlap or stack on top of each other to create chords rather than overwriting existing notes. During chord input, the caret does not advance automatically.

Edits outside of chord input that are affected by Chord mode include copying/pasting notes or changing their duration. For example, if you copy four notes and paste them to a staff that already has notes with Chord mode activated, the existing notes are not overwritten but instead combine with the new notes to make chords.

- You can activate/deactivate Chord mode in Write mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords**  in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259

[Inputting notes with rhythm dots](#) on page 230

Inputting tuplets


You can input all types of tuplets using the tuplets popover. Tuplets can contain notes of any duration, such as a quarter note at the start of an eighth note triplet.



NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting tuplets using pitch before duration, Dorico Elements determines the base value of the tuplet on either the first note you input after specifying the tuplet or the note value included in your tuplet ratio.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input tuplets.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to input tuplets onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:


- Press **.**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets** , then click **x:y** .

When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.

5. Enter the tuplet you want into the popover as a ratio followed by the beat unit.
For example, enter **3:2e** to input eighth note triplets or **5:4x** to input sixteenth note quintuplets.

NOTE

If you do not specify the beat unit, the tuplet is based on the note value currently selected in the Notes panel.


6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
The tuplet is entered.
 7. Optional: Change the selected note duration.
For example, you can input a tuplet based on eighth notes but input a quarter note within that tuplet.
 8. Enter or play in the pitches you want.
When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
 9. Optional: Advance the caret to continue inputting tuplets of the same ratio at later rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .
 10. Stop tuplet input in one of the following ways:
 - To return to inputting normal notes, press **.** or move the caret with the arrow keys.
 - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.
-

RESULT

The pitches you enter or play in are input as tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If you want to input a different type of tuplet immediately after inputting tuplets, you must stop the first type of tuplet before inputting the second type. If you do not stop the first type, the second type is input as a nested tuplet.

TIP

You can also input tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets**  in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want.

RELATED LINKS

- [Tuplets on page 1408](#)
- [Nested tuplets on page 1408](#)
- [Selecting note/rest durations on page 259](#)
- [Notes toolbox on page 196](#)
- [Notations toolbox on page 201](#)
- [Keyboard panel on page 206](#)
- [Fretboard panel on page 208](#)

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209



[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

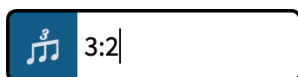
Tuplets popover

The tuplets popover allows you to input tuplets of any ratio and based on any note duration. The table contains examples of what you can enter into the tuplets popover to input different types of tuplets.

You can open the tuplets popover in Write mode during note input or when notes are selected in any of the following ways:

- Press **;**.
As tuplets are often described in ratios, such as 3:2, the tuplets popover uses the semicolon key to be memorable.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets** , then click **x:y** .
- Choose **Write > Create Tuplet**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notes toolbox on the right of the window.



Tuplets popover with an example entry



Tuplets button in the Notes toolbox

When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements continues to input notes as the specified tuplet until any of the following happens:

- You press **;** to return to inputting normal notes.
- You move the caret with the arrow keys.
- You stop note input.

Type of tuplet	Popover entry
Triplet, three notes in the space of two	3, 3:2, 3/2, or 3 2
Triplet, three notes in the space of four	3:4, 3/4, or 3 4
Quadruplet, four notes in the space of three	4:3, 4/3, or 4 3
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of two	5:2, 5/2, or 5 2
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of four	5:4, 5/4, or 5 4
Sextuplet, six notes in the space of four	6:4, 6/4, or 6 4
Septuplet, seven notes in the space of four	7:4, 7/4, or 7 4
Nonuplet, nine notes in the space of eight	9:8, 9/8, or 9 8

Type of tuplet**Popover entry**

Duplet, two notes in the space of three. Often used in compound meters.

2:3, 2/3, or 2 3

Quintuplet, five notes in the space of six. Often used in compound meters.

5:6, 5/6, or 5 6

Quintuplet, five dotted quarter notes in the space of four

5:4q., 5/4q., 5 4q., or 5:4-6.

NOTE

When using a number to specify the beat unit, you must separate the tuplet ratio from the beat unit using a space or hyphen.

This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tuplets.

NOTE

Unless you specify a beat unit in your entry, the total duration of the tuplet depends on the note value selected when you open the popover. For example, if a quarter note is selected when you input a triplet, the triplet input is three quarter notes in the space of two.

Tuplet beat units

Tuplet beat unit**Popover entry**

64th note

z or 2

32nd note

y or 3

16th note

x or 4

Eighth note

e or 5

Quarter note

q or 6

Half note

h or 7

Whole note

w or 8

Double whole note

2w or 9

Rhythm dot

. (period)

RELATED LINKS

[Turning existing notes into tuplets](#) on page 1410

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259



Adding notes above/below existing notes

You can add notes above/below existing notes. You can add multiple notes at the same time, according to their intervals relative to the existing notes.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use the mouse, you have enabled mouse editing.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes to which you want to add notes.
 2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-I**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Note Tools** .
 3. Enter the intervals of the notes you want, relative to your selected notes.
For example, enter **-m3,4** to add notes a minor third below and a fourth above the selected notes.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

Notes are added to the selected notes according to the intervals specified.

TIP

You can also add notes above/below existing notes by **Alt/Opt**-dragging selected notes upwards/downwards.

When you drag notes, shadow noteheads indicate their destination pitches, and the affected region appears highlighted with the rhythmic grid shown above it.

RELATED LINKS

- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#) on page 212

Note durations

In Dorico Elements, you can change note durations both during note input and for existing notes.



RELATED LINKS

- [Notes and rests in Dorico](#) on page 23
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

Selecting note/rest durations

You can select different durations for notes/rests, both during note input and for existing notes/rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to select a note duration not shown in the Notes panel, click the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the notes list to show more note durations.
2. Select a note/rest duration in any of the following ways:
 - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.
For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
3. Optional: Add rhythm dots to the duration in one of the following ways:
 - For a single rhythm dot, press **.**
 - For multiple rhythm dots, press **Alt/Opt-.** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots. You can specify up to four rhythm dots.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes**  to add the displayed number of rhythm dots.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes**  to access different numbers of rhythm dots.

NOTE

You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
- [Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
- [Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209
- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Key commands in Dorico](#) on page 26
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Changing the duration of notes

You can lengthen/shorten the duration of notes after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose duration you want to change.

NOTE

If you want to extend a note to the end of the current selection, select both that note and an item at the rhythmic position to which you want to extend the note.

2. Change the duration in any of the following ways:
 - Press the key command of the duration you want. For example, press **4** for a 16th note (semiquaver).
 - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
 - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To double the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To halve the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Lengthen Duration by Grid Value**.
 - To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Shorten Duration by Grid Value**.
 - To double the length of notes, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Double Note Duration**.
 - To halve the length of notes, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Halve Note Duration**.
 - To lengthen notes up to the next existing note in their voice, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Extend to Next Note**.

NOTE

This does not apply to grace notes.

- To lengthen a single note up to the rhythmic position of the end of the current selection, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Extend to End of Selection**.
 - To shorten overlapping notes in the same voice so that they no longer overlap, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Shorten to Next Note**.
-

RESULT

The duration of the selected notes is changed. Dorico Elements automatically notates and beams the notes appropriately according to their new duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar.

When extending notes, their duration fills in any intervening rests. Extending notes to the end of the current selection does not delete any intervening notes, instead they combine with the extended note to create chords where necessary.

TIP

You can assign your own key commands to lengthen/shorten notes by specific durations and to extend them. You can find these by searching for **Shorten duration by**, **Lengthen duration by**, and **Extend to** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209
[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
[Insert mode](#) on page 451
[Chord mode](#) on page 254
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687
[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466
[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861

Splitting notes by duration

You can split notes by either a specific duration, the current rhythmic grid resolution, or the duration between the start of the note and the caret position; for example, to turn a long tie chain into a sequence of eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to split.
2. Split the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - To split them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-U** or choose **Write > Edit Duration > Split by Rhythmic Grid Resolution**.
 - To split them by the duration between the start of the note and the caret position, activate the caret, extend it across the required staves, move the caret to the required position, then press **Alt/Opt-U**.
 - To split them by a specific duration, choose **Write > Edit Duration > Split by Note Duration > [Note duration]**.

RESULT

The selected notes, or notes across which the caret extends, are split into multiple, shorter notes of the corresponding duration. If multiples of the selected duration do not fit exactly into the original notes, the final note is shortened.

EXAMPLE



A phrase containing long notes



Up-stem notes split into eighth notes

RELATED LINKS

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
[Caret](#) on page 218
[Activating/Deactivating the caret](#) on page 222
[Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Deleting ties](#) on page 1373

[Splitting tie chains](#) on page 1373

Forcing the duration of notes/rests

Dorico Elements automatically notates and beams notes/rests appropriately according to the prevailing time signature and their position in the bar. You can force the duration of notes/rests to specify their notation.

For example, if you input a half note at the start of a 6/8 bar, it is notated as a dotted quarter note (crotchet) tied to an eighth note (quaver). This is because, according to convention, 6/8 bars are subdivided into two groups of three eighth notes. To reflect this for a half note (four eighth notes), Dorico Elements automatically divides the note to show the correct grouping, but you can force the note duration to show a half note instead.

TIP

If you want to force the duration of all notes on a staff to imply a different meter, for example, to show three quarter note groups in 6/8 to indicate a hemiola, you can also input a time signature only on those staves to group notes according to that meter. You can then hide the time signatures if required.

PROCEDURE


1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.
- Select existing notes whose duration you want to force.


TIP

If you later want to tie notes together, we recommend forcing the duration of all notes you want in the tie chain.

2. Optional: If you want input rests with forced durations, start rest input in any of the following ways:

- Press **,**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests** .

3. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:

- Press **O**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration** .

4. Select the note/rest duration you want.

TIP

If you want tie chains to appear as single noteheads with the same total duration, you must first reduce their duration, then change it to the duration you want.

5. Optional: During note or rest input, input the notes or rests you want.

RESULT

During note or rest input, any notes you input are notated with their whole rhythmic value, whatever their position in the bar. If you move them later, they keep the same notation. Rests are input as explicit rests. Notes that cross barlines are notated as tied notes.

Forcing the duration of existing notes or rests preserves their current duration or any duration to which you subsequently change them.

TIP

- **Force position and duration** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically for rests input with forced durations. You can also use this property to force the duration and position of rests.
- You can choose whether or not **Force Duration** retains its previous state when you stop and restart note input in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input**.
- You can change how notes are grouped in different contexts project-wide on the **Note Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

EXAMPLE



Default notation of notes in 6/8



Notes in the down-stem voice input with forced durations

RELATED LINKS

[Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting rests](#) on page 245

[Inputting ties](#) on page 247

[Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861

[Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861

[Turning explicit rests into implicit rests](#) on page 1274

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Changing the style of ties](#) on page 1366

MIDI recording

MIDI recording is a way of inputting notes into Dorico Elements by playing them in real time on a MIDI device. This can be particularly useful if, for example, you prefer to improvise your music rather than plan pitches and note durations in advance.

In Dorico Elements, you can record MIDI notes using any MIDI device.

Dorico Elements automatically transcribes multiple simultaneous parts into separate voices, such as in contrapuntal piano music. Depending on your settings for MIDI recording and quantization, Dorico Elements can also detect slurs, tremolos, trills, pedal lines, tuplets, and grace notes.

Outside of note input, Dorico Elements uses the instrument sounds of your most recent selection for the notes you play on your MIDI device. In Play mode, this is the most recent track header you clicked, while in Write mode, this is the last instrument staff on which you selected an item, started note input, or into which you recorded MIDI. During note input, Dorico Elements always uses the instrument sounds of the instrument into which you are recording notes.

TIP

You can enable/disable MIDI thru on the **Play** page in **Preferences**. For example, if you do not want to hear sounds in Dorico Elements when playing on your MIDI keyboard.

As you play notes on your MIDI device, Dorico Elements uses an algorithm to produce the correct enharmonic spelling for those notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Optimization for MIDI recording](#) on page 268

[Quantization options](#) on page 93

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

[Enabling/Disabling MIDI thru](#) on page 216

Inputting notes using MIDI recording

You can input notes by recording what you play on a MIDI device in real time. You can record notes in both concert and transposed pitch.

PREREQUISITE


- You have connected the MIDI device you want to use.
- You have set the quantization and recording options on the **Play** page in **Preferences** as required for the music you intend to record.
- You have input enough bars or empty rhythmic space for the amount of music you want to record. Dorico Elements does not automatically add extra bars or rhythmic space.
- If you want to hear a click during your recording, you have input a time signature. There is no click in open meter or when there is no time signature.
- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or rest on the staff/instrument track into which you want to record notes, at the position from which you want to record. You can do this in Write mode and Play mode.

NOTE

- In Play mode you cannot select rests, meaning you can only record into instrument tracks that already contain at least one note.

- You can also record MIDI during note input, but this prevents Dorico Elements from using both staves in grand staff instruments.
-
2. Optional: If you want to record notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, activate Chord mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Q**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Chords** .
 3. Optional: If you want to record into a specific voice on the staff, in Write mode, press **Shift-N** to start note input, then do one of the following:
 - If the voice you want already exists on the staff, press **V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
 - If the voice you want does not exist on the staff yet, press **Shift-V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
 4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-R** to start recording.
During recording, the playhead appears red and moves along in time. By default, there is one bar of count-in before the playhead reaches the rhythmic position of either your original selection or the caret.
 5. Play the notes you want on your MIDI device.

NOTE

Notes do not appear until you stop recording.
-
6. Press **Space or Enter** or **Ctrl/Cmd-R** to stop recording.
-

RESULT

The notes you played on the MIDI device are input onto the selected staff.

If you did not specify the voice, notes are recorded into voices according to what you played. For example, if you played notes in rhythmic unison, they are recorded into a single voice. If you played notes with different rhythms, they are recorded into separate voices, up to two voices per staff.

If you activated **Chords**, the notes you played are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

The notated duration of the notes follows your quantization options, but their played durations are retained for playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If the notes you played in are not notated as you intended, you can requantize them.
- If you do not want to retain played durations for playback, you can reset playback overrides.

RELATED LINKS

- [Optimization for MIDI recording](#) on page 268
- [Enabling/Disabling MIDI thru](#) on page 216
- [Changing the input pitch setting](#) on page 215
- [Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300
- [Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283
- [Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466
- [Turning existing notes into grace notes](#) on page 1004
- [Resetting playback overrides](#) on page 689
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58


Retrieving played notes that you did not record

During playback, you can play notes on your MIDI keyboard and hear them without recording them into the score. You can use retrospective recording to retrieve these notes and input them into the project without previously explicitly recording them. For example, if you only intended to experiment with ideas, but afterwards decided you wanted to keep them.

PREREQUISITE

You have started playback, played notes on a MIDI device alongside playback, then stopped playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input the retrieved notes.
2. Optional: If you want to input retrieved notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, press **Q** to activate **Chords**.
3. Retrieve the notes you played in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-R**.
 - In the **Transport** window, click **Retrospective Record** .

RESULT

All the notes you played on your MIDI device during the previous playback are input on the selected staff, starting from the selected rhythmic position. They are input into the first available voice on the staff and overwrite any existing notes in that voice by default. If you activated **Chords**, the retrieved notes are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

NOTE

The retrospective recording buffer is cleared each time you start playback, meaning you cannot retrieve music you played before the most recent playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Transport window](#) on page 555

Repeats in MIDI recording

When recording MIDI into flows that contain repeat structures, such as repeat barlines, Dorico Elements records the notes you play during each playthrough and merges them together into the same voice.

Any differences in rhythms between the recordings are notated according to the current meter.

Requantizing notes

You can requantize notes using different quantization options. For example, if you want to change notated rhythms after importing MIDI or recording notes using a MIDI device. This does not affect the played duration of notes in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Select all the notes you want to requantize. You can do this in Write mode and Play mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Requantize** to open the **Requantize** dialog.

3. Change the quantization options as required.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The notated durations of all selected notes are changed according to the quantization options. This does not affect their played duration in playback.

RELATED LINKS

- [Quantization options](#) on page 93
- [Resetting playback overrides](#) on page 689
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

Changing the click settings

You can change the sound, volume, and subdivision of the metronome click, which is always used during MIDI recording. During playback, the click only sounds if the metronome is activated.

By default, Dorico Elements only subdivides the beat in the metronome click in compound time signatures, and uses a click for the metronome click sound. The click uses different tones for the first beat in each bar, subsequent beats, and further beat subdivisions.

NOTE

- There is no click in open meter or when there is no time signature.
 - The click is produced by a tone generator called DoricoBeep. You can use the Tempo track in Play mode to change the device used for the click.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Click**.
 3. In the **Metronome Click** section, activate/deactivate the following options for **Beat subdivisions**:
 - **Subdivide beats in simple time signatures**
 - **Subdivide beats in compound time signatures**
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Click sound**:
 - **Click** (unpitched)
 - **Beep** (pitched)
 - **Wood Block**
 5. For **Pitch and velocity**, change the **MIDI pitch** and/or **Velocity** values for any of the following types of beat:
 - **First beat**
 - **Subsequent beats**
 - **Beat subdivisions**
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The sound, volume, and subdivision settings for the metronome click in the current project are changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Tempo track](#) on page 532

[Changing the sound used for the click](#) on page 533

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

Changing the count-in duration

For each project, you can change the default number of bars used in the count-in before you start recording. By default, Dorico Elements provides a one bar count-in.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
2. In the category list, click **Click**.
3. In the **Count-in** section, change the value for **Number of bars count-in**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default duration of the count-in is changed in the current project.

Optimization for MIDI recording

Depending on your operating system and the MIDI devices you use for recording, you might find that the notes you record are not notated with the durations or at the rhythmic positions you expected. Optimizing the settings related to MIDI recording can help you achieve better results.

- You can find options that affect MIDI recording on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

Because there can be a time latency between you pressing keys on a MIDI device and the notes being picked up by Dorico Elements, we recommend that you check the latency by inputting a simple rhythm against the click; for example, recording quarter notes in a 4/4 time signature.

Depending on the results, there are different settings you can change:

- If your notes are notated with incorrect durations, such as sixteenth notes notated as eighth notes, we recommend that you change the quantization options.
- If notes are input with missing or incorrect notations, we recommend that you change the detected notations in **Preferences > Play > Recording**.

NOTE

Notation settings are linked between **Preferences** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

-
- If your notes are notated ahead of the beat, we recommend that you increase the latency compensation value.

- If your notes are notated behind the beat, we recommend that you reduce the buffer size for your audio device to the lowest possible value that still produces stable playback with no drop-outs.

NOTE

The built-in audio device on Windows computers cannot always achieve a low enough latency for reliable input in real time. In such cases, we recommend that you use an external USB audio interface with ASIO support.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Quantization options](#) on page 93
- [MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85
- [Turning existing notes into grace notes](#) on page 1004
- [Changing the sound used for the click](#) on page 533
- [Enabling/Disabling MIDI thru](#) on page 216

Changing the MIDI latency compensation value

You can change the MIDI latency compensation value to correct any discrepancy between when you press keys during MIDI recording and where the corresponding notes are notated relative to the beat.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Play**.
 3. In the **Recording** subsection, change the value for **MIDI input latency compensation**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Increasing the latency compensation value increases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated ahead of the beat.

Decreasing the latency compensation value decreases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated behind the beat.

Changing the audio device buffer size

You can change the audio buffer size; for example, if the current buffer size is causing notes input using MIDI recording appear significantly after the beat.

NOTE

- If the notes you play when recording MIDI are notated behind the beat, we recommend that you reduce the buffer size for your audio device to the lowest possible value that still produces stable playback with no drop-outs.
 - The built-in audio device on Windows computers cannot always achieve a low enough latency for reliable input in real time. In such cases, we recommend that you use an external USB audio interface with ASIO support.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit > Device Setup** to open the **Device Setup** dialog.
 2. Select the audio device whose buffer size you want to change from the **ASIO Driver** menu.
 3. Click **Device Control Panel** to open the device settings dialog for the selected audio device.
 4. In the audio device settings dialog, change the buffer size in one of the following ways, as appropriate for your operating system:
 - For Windows systems, in the **Audio buffer size** section, either drag the slider to a different position or activate **User definable** and change the value in the **Selected buffer size** field.
 - For macOS systems, select a sample rate from the **Buffer Size** menu.
 5. Click **OK** (Windows)/**Close** (macOS) to close the audio device settings dialog.
 6. Click **Close** to close the **Device Setup** dialog.
-

Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import

You can change your default setting for whether Dorico Elements interprets sustain pedal controllers as pedal lines when recording MIDI and importing or opening MIDI files.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Play**.
 3. In the **Recording** subsection, activate/deactivate **Import CC64 as pedal lines**.
 4. Optional: If you activated **Import CC64 as pedal lines**, activate/deactivate **Snap pedal lines to previous beat**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

When **Import CC64 as pedal lines** is activated, the MIDI controller CC64 is interpreted as pedal lines.

When **Snap pedal lines to previous beat** is activated, the start of pedal lines is automatically moved back to the start of the beat.

NOTE

These options are also available in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, and your settings are linked between this dialog and **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices

By default, Dorico Elements accepts MIDI input from all connected MIDI devices, including virtual MIDI cables and inter-application buses. You can enable/disable MIDI devices individually; for

example, if you are using devices that continuously output MIDI data or if you want particular devices to remain routed exclusively to another application.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Play**.
 3. In the **MIDI Input Devices** subsection, activate/deactivate the checkbox for each MIDI input device.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Notations input

You can input many types of notations, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes and music. In Dorico Elements, “notation” is a broad term that includes many different items, including articulations, slurs, dynamics, and more.

In Dorico Elements, you can input most notations with the keyboard by using popovers and with the mouse by using panels.

RELATED LINKS

[Popovers](#) on page 22

Inputting articulations

You can input notes with articulations during note input, and you can add articulations to notes after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting articulations before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify articulations after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select the existing notes to which you want to add articulations.
 2. Optional: If you want to input notes with articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Select the articulations you want to input in any of the following ways:
 - Press the key commands for the articulations you want.
 - In the Notes panel, click the articulations you want.
 - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click the articulations you want.
 4. Optional: During note input, input the notes or chords you want with your selected articulations.
-

RESULT

The selected articulations are added to the selected notes. They are positioned between noteheads or stems and tuplet brackets, so they are closer to the notes than tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios.

During note input, the selected articulations are added to all notes that are input until the articulations are deactivated.

NOTE

Some combinations of articulations on the same notes are not possible. For example, you cannot have both staccato and staccatissimo marks on the same notes, as both articulations indicate that notes are played shorter.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Articulations](#) on page 804

[Note input](#) on page 223

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Copying and pasting articulations](#) on page 805

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Key commands for articulations

In addition to clicking them in the Notes panel, you can input common articulations by pressing key commands on your computer keyboard.

You can use the following key commands to input articulations with the keyboard:

Type of articulation	Key command
Accent: >	[
Marcato: ^	'
Stressed: ˇ	{
Unstressed: ˇ	@ (Windows) or " (macOS)
Staccato: `]
Tenuto: -	# (Windows) or \ (macOS)
Staccatissimo: ', ' or '´	}
Combined tenuto and staccato: ¨	~ (Windows) or (macOS)

Inputting slurs

You can input slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time, and to notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument; for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:



- Start note input.
- Select the notes to which you want to add slurs.

TIP

- If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must select both notes; for example, by selecting the first note then **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking the second note.
- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select two existing notes, each on a different staff, to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.

2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.

3. Input a slur in any of the following ways:

- Press **S**.
- In the Notes panel, click **Slur** .
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur** .


NOTE

If you added slurs to existing notes, stop here.

4. During note input, input the notes you want.

The slur extends automatically, even if there are rests between the notes you input.

5. During note input, end the slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-S**.
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur** .


RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection.

TIP

When nothing is selected, you can also click **Slur**  in the Notes panel or Keyboard panel toolbar, and then click and drag to input a slur and extend it to your preferred length.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.
- You can change the curvature direction and style of individual slurs; for example, to make them appear dashed and S-shaped.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notes panel](#) on page 200
- [Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Slurs](#) on page 1283
- [Inputting nested slurs](#) on page 1295
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Slurs in playback](#) on page 1308
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294
- [Changing the curvature direction of slurs](#) on page 1293
- [Changing the style of slurs](#) on page 1290
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

Inputting fingerings



You can input fingerings on existing notes using the fingerings popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

- You can only add fingerings to notes at one rhythmic position at a time, and you can only input as many fingerings as there are notes at each rhythmic position. For example, you can input three fingerings at the rhythmic position of a chord containing three notes, but only one fingering at the rhythmic position of a single note.
 - If you select notes in multiple voices, fingerings are only input into the top voice.
 - Although they contain two numbers, substitution fingerings are considered one fingering, meaning you can add substitution fingerings to single notes.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an existing note on a single staff to which you want to add fingering.
If you want to add fingerings to all notes in a chord, select all the notes in the chord.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the fingerings popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-F**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Fingerings** .
4. Optional: If you are inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, change the hand in one of the following ways:
- To switch to the right hand, press **Down Arrow**.
 - To switch to the left hand, press **Up Arrow**.

The popover icon updates to show the current hand.



Fingerings popover when inputting right-hand fingerings



Fingerings popover when inputting left-hand fingerings

5. Enter the fingerings you want into the popover.
For example, enter:
- **3-2** for a substitution fingering from the third finger to the second finger.
 - **1,3,5** for a chord.
 - **12** to show the first two valves should be depressed on a valved brass instrument.
 - **p** for a right-hand thumb fingering or **t** for a left-hand thumb fingering.
 - **2/** for a fingering with a shift indicator.
6. Optional: When adding fingerings to existing notes, move the popover in one of the following ways:
- To advance the popover to the next note/chord in the current voice, press **Space**.
 - To move the popover back to the previous note/chord in the current voice, press **Shift-Space**.
 - To advance the popover to the first note/chord in the current voice in the next bar, press **Tab**.
 - To move the popover back to the first note/chord in the current voice in the previous bar, press **Shift-Tab**.
 - To move the cursor and popover to the right/left and to the next/previous note/fingering in the current voice, press **Right Arrow / Left Arrow**.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The fingerings are input on the selected notes, including during note input. The popover advances through notes in the voice as indicated by the caret or in the same voice as your initial selection.

RELATED LINKS

[Fingering](#) on page 971

[Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings](#) on page 973

[Fingerings for valved brass instruments](#) on page 989



[Deleting fingerings](#) on page 978

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

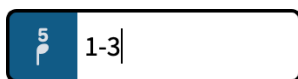
Fingerings popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the fingerings popover to input the different types of fingerings available. The fingerings popover behaves differently for fretted instruments compared to other instruments, so there is a separate table for fretted instrument fingerings.

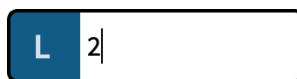
You can open the fingerings popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-F**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Fingerings** .
- Choose **Write > Create Fingerings**.

When inputting fingerings for non-fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover indicates whether you are inputting left-hand or right-hand fingerings.



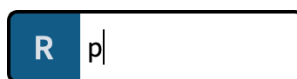
Fingerings popover with an example entry for inputting a non-fretted instrument fingering



Fingerings popover with an example entry for a left-hand fretted instrument fingering



Fingering button in the Notations toolbox



Fingerings popover with an example entry for a right-hand fretted instrument fingering

Non-fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
-------------------	-----------------------

Single fingerings for individual notes, including for brass valve numbers and trombone slide positions	1, 2, 3, and so on
--	---------------------------

Valved brass instruments	12
--------------------------	-----------

Single fingerings for each note in chords	1,3,5
---	--------------

For keyboard instruments, Dorico Elements automatically orders numbers appropriately according to the hand playing the notes. The default is:

- Right hand for the upper staff
- Left hand for the lower staff

Left-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	L2, G2, S5, I2, or H2
--	-------------------------------------

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
Right-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	R5, D5, or M5
Thumb indicator (non-fretted instruments)	T
Multiple fingerings for individual notes; for example, for ornaments such as mordents or turns	2343
Single fingerings for multiple notes: enter the same fingering number for two adjacent notes. For example, in keyboard music the thumb may depress two keys simultaneously.	1,1
Alternative fingerings	2(3)
Editorial fingerings	[4]
Finger substitutions	1-3
Fingering shift indicator (string instruments)	2/

Fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entries
Left-hand fingerings	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
Left-hand thumb	t
Right-hand fingerings	1, 2, 3, 4, 5 p, i, m, a, e
Right-hand thumb	p, t, or 1
Right-hand pinky finger	e, x, c, o, or 5

These lists are not comprehensive as there are many possible fingerings. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entries to input different types of fingerings.

NOTE

Finger substitutions are shown as immediate by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of the substitution by changing the deferral duration.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Fingering](#) on page 971

[Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings](#) on page 973

[Fingerings for valved brass instruments](#) on page 989

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

Input methods for key signatures

You can input key signatures with the keyboard by using the key signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.



RELATED LINKS

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

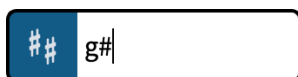
Key signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the key signatures popover that you can use to input the different key signatures available.

You can open the key signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-K**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Key Signatures** .
- Select an existing key signature and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Key Signature**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Key signatures popover with an example entry



Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals button in the Notations toolbox

Type of key signature	Popover entry
Open or atonal key signature	open or atonal
Major keys (capital letters)	C, D, G#, Ab , and so on
Minor keys (lowercase letters)	g, d, f#, bb , and so on
Number of sharps	3s, 2# , and so on

NOTE

Assumes the major key for that many sharps.

Type of key signature

Popover entry

Number of flats

4f, 5b, and so on

NOTE

Assumes the major key for that many flats.

This list is not comprehensive as you can input every possible key signature. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of key signatures.

RELATED LINKS



[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

[Types of key signatures](#) on page 1021

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel

The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel allows you to create and input common key signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

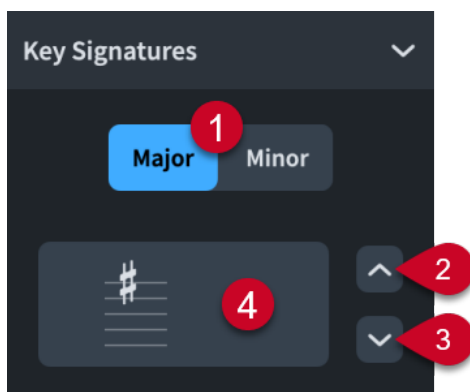
The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

Contains all the key signatures currently used in the flow.

Key Signatures

Allows you to create key signatures.



The **Key Signatures** section contains the following parts:

1 Major/Minor

Allow you to choose whether your key signature is **Major** or **Minor**.

2 More Sharps/Fewer Flats

Each time you click, you add one sharp accidental to the key signature, or remove one flat accidental from the key signature.

3 Fewer Sharps/More Flats

Each time you click, you remove one sharp accidental from the key signature, or add one flat accidental to the key signature.

4 Input key signature

Shows how the key signature looks on a staff. Clicking this button inputs the displayed key signature. If nothing in the project is selected, the key signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

Accidentals

Contains all accidentals available in the currently selected tonality system.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

[Tonality systems](#) on page 1028



Inputting key signatures with the popover

You can input key signatures using the key signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input key signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature. If you want to input a key signature on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the key signatures popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-K**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Key Signatures** .
 4. Enter the key signature you want into the popover.
 - For major keys, enter capital letters or the corresponding number of sharps/flats, such as **G** or **1s** for G major.
 - For minor keys, enter lowercase letters, such as **g** for G minor.
 - For an atonal key signature, enter **open**.
 5. Input the key signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a key signature on all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a key signature only on the selected staves or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. When you input notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

An individual key signature on a single staff is not intended for transposing instruments. Transpositions of notes and key signatures are done automatically for transposing instruments.

RELATED LINKS

[Key signatures popover](#) on page 278

[Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

[Mapping notes to scales](#) on page 484

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Inputting key signatures with the panel



You can input key signatures using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input key signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
 - It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature. If you want to input a key signature on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals**  to show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
 3. Optional: If you have not already used the key signature you want in the current flow, create the key signature you want using the **Key Signatures** editor in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
 4. Input the key signature you want in one of the following ways:
 - To input a key signature on all staves, click it in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
 - To input a key signature only on the selected staves or staff on which the caret is active, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
-

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. When you input notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

An individual key signature on a single staff is not intended for transposing instruments. Transpositions of notes and key signatures are done automatically for transposing instruments.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel](#) on page 279

[Key signatures](#) on page 1019

[Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

[Mapping notes to scales](#) on page 484

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars

You can input time signatures, including time signatures with pick-up bars, with the keyboard by using the time signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.

NOTE

You can create most types of custom time signatures using the **Create Time Signature** section of the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, but certain time signatures are only possible using the time signatures popover. For example, you can only specify beat subdivisions with the time signatures popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58



[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

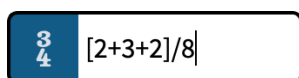
Time signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the time signatures popover that you can use to input the different types of time signatures available.

You can open the time signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-M**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Time Signatures (Meter)** .
- Select an existing time signature and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Time Signature**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Time signatures popover with an example entry



Time Signatures (Meter) button in the Notations toolbox

Time signatures

Type of time signature

Simple time signatures

For example, $2/2$ (two half notes per bar), $2/4$ (two quarter notes per bar), $6/8$ (six eighth notes per bar), $3/4$, $5/4$, and so on

Popover entry

$2/2$, $2/4$, $6/8$, $3/4$, $5/4$, and so on

Type of time signature

Popover entry

Alternating time signatures, such as 6/8+3/4

6/8 + 3/4

NOTE

You must include spaces either side of the plus sign.

Common time, the equivalent of 4/4

c

Cut common time, the equivalent of 2/2

cutc, cut, or c

Open meter indicated by X

X or x

Open meter with no indication

open

NOTE

A time signature signpost is shown at the position of the open meter.

Additive time signature with explicit beat grouping

3+2+2/8, 3+2/4, and so on

Beat grouping specified but not shown in the time signature

[2+3+2]/8

For example, a time signature of 7/8 is shown but beams are subdivided into 2+3+2 eighth notes.

Aggregate time signature with dashed barlines shown in each bar, indicating the divisions between the different meters

2/4 | 6/8

Aggregate time signature without dashed barlines shown in each bar

2/4:6/8

Interchangeable time signature with different styles: parenthesized, slash, equals sign, and dashed

2/4 (6/8), 2/4 / 6/8, 2/4 = 6/8, or 2/4 - 6/8

NOTE

You must include spaces either side of the slashes, equals signs, or dashes, and before opening parentheses.

Pick-up bars

Example time signature with pick-up bar	Popover entry
4/4 time signature with a quarter note (crotchet) pick-up	4/4,1
4/4 time signature with a dotted quarter note pick-up	4/4,1.5
4/4 time signature with a sixteenth note (semiquaver) pick-up	4/4,0.25
3/4 time signature with a dotted eighth note (dotted quaver) pick-up	3/4,0.75
6/8 time signature with a pick-up of two eighth notes (quavers)	6/8,2
2/2 time signature with a quarter note pick-up	2/2,0.5

TIP

The number after the comma indicates a fraction/multiple of the rhythmic unit specified by the time signature denominator. For example, **1** indicates a quarter note in 4/4, or an eighth note in 6/8.

These lists are not comprehensive, as there are many possible time signatures and pick-up bars. They are intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different time signatures and pick-up bars.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Time signature styles](#) on page 1389

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287



[Inputting pick-up bars with the popover](#) on page 289

[Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861

[Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397

Time Signatures (Meter) panel

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel allows you to input different time signatures. In the **Create Time Signature** section of the panel, you can create uncommon time signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Time Signatures (Meter)**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

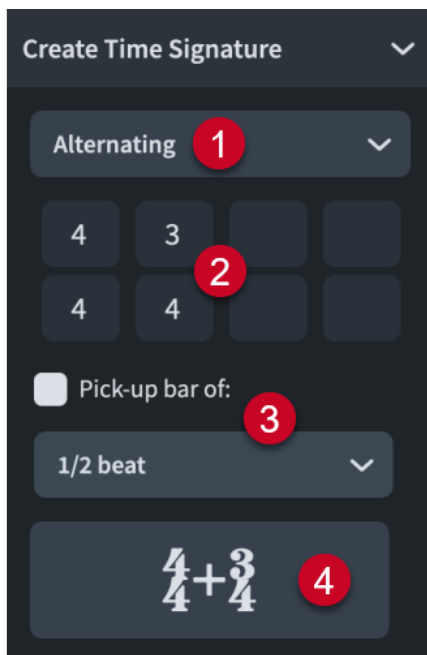
Contains any time signatures already used in the current flow.

Common

Contains common time signatures, such as 4/4, 3/4, 6/8, and 7/8.

Create Time Signature

Allows you to design your own time signatures, including alternating time signatures and aggregate time signatures.



The **Create Time Signature** section contains the following parts:

1 Time signature type menu

Allows you to select one of the following types of time signatures:

- **Regular**
- **Additive**
- **Interchangeable**
- **Aggregate**
- **Alternating**

2 Time signature spaces

Allows you to combine up to four time signatures. For example, you can specify only one time signature for a regular time signature, but for an alternating time signature, you might want to include three time signatures.

3 Pick-up bar of

Allows you to include a pick-up bar before the time signature. A pick-up bar is not a complete bar, and so allows you to include only a few beats before the first complete bar.

You can select one of the following options for the number of beats in a pick-up bar:

- **1/2 beat**
- **1 beat**
- **2 beats**

- **3 beats**
- 4 Input time signature button**

Click the button that displays the time signature to input it. If nothing in the project is selected, the time signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Time signature styles](#) on page 1389

[Inputting time signatures with the panel](#) on page 288

[Inputting pick-up bars with the panel](#) on page 291




Inputting time signatures with the popover

You can input time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature. If you want to input a time signature on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .
 4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-M**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Time Signatures (Meter)** .
 5. Enter the time signature you want into the popover.
For example, enter **4/4** for a 4/4 time signature or **[2+2+3]/8** for a 7/8 time signature with a custom beat grouping.
 6. Input the time signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a time signature on all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a time signature only on the selected staves or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Time signatures popover](#) on page 283

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Time signature styles](#) on page 1389

[Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1392

[Inputting pick-up bars with the popover](#) on page 289

[Inputting barlines with the popover](#) on page 306

[Inputting bars/beats with the popover](#) on page 304

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397

[Rhythmic position](#) on page 24

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860


Inputting time signatures with the panel



You can input time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
- Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature. If you want to input a time signature on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .

3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Time Signatures (Meter)**  to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
 4. Optional: If you want to input a time signature that is not available in the **Used in This Flow** or **Common** sections, select the type of time signature you want to input from the menu in the **Create Time Signature** section.
 5. Optional: Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
 6. Input the time signature you want in one of the following ways:
 - To input a time signature on all staves, click it in the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
 - To input a time signature only on the selected staves or staff on which the caret is active, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
-

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Time Signatures \(Meter\) panel](#) on page 285

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Time signature styles](#) on page 1389

[Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1392

[Inputting pick-up bars with the panel](#) on page 291

[Inputting barlines with the panel](#) on page 307

[Inputting bars/beats with the popover](#) on page 304

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397

[Rhythmic position](#) on page 24

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860




Inputting pick-up bars with the popover

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures with pick-up bars only on specific staves.

NOTE

Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar. If you want to input a pick-up bar on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .
4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-M**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Time Signatures (Meter)** .
5. Enter the time signature and the number of pick-up beats you want into the popover. For example, enter:
 - **3/4,0.75** for a 3/4 time signature with a dotted eighth note (dotted quaver) upbeat.
 - **4/4,1** for a 4/4 time signature with one quarter note (crotchet) upbeat.
 - **6/8,2** for a 6/8 time signature with a pick-up of two eighth notes (quavers).The number after the comma indicates multiples of the rhythmic unit specified by the denominator of the time signature.
6. Input the pick-up bar and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a pick-up bar on all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a pick-up bar only on the selected staves or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.

- You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Time signatures popover](#) on page 283
- [Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386
- [Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars](#) on page 1386
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287
- [Inputting bars/beats with the popover](#) on page 304
- [Inputting barlines with the popover](#) on page 306
- [Rhythmic position](#) on page 24
- [Inputting notes in Insert mode](#) on page 237
- [Insert mode](#) on page 451
- [Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452
- [Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397




Inputting pick-up bars with the panel

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
 - Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar. If you want to input a pick-up bar on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Time Signatures (Meter)**  to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
4. In the **Create Time Signature** section, select the type of time signature you want from the menu.
5. Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
6. Activate **Pick-up bar of** and select one of the following options:
 - **1/2 beat**
 - **1 beat**

- **2 beats**
- **3 beats**

NOTE

Not all pick-up bar lengths are possible when using the panel. For example, you cannot produce a single eighth note upbeat in 6/8 with the available options. In such cases, you must use the time signatures popover.

7. Input the pick-up bar in one of the following ways:
 - To input a pick-up bar on all staves, click the input time signature button in the **Create Time Signature** section.
 - To input a pick-up bar only on the selected staves or staff on which the caret is active, **Alt/Opt**-click the input time signature button in the **Create Time Signature** section.
-

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.
 - You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Time Signatures \(Meter\) panel](#) on page 285
- [Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386
- [Inputting pick-up bars with the popover](#) on page 289
- [Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars](#) on page 1386
- [Inputting bars/beats with the popover](#) on page 304
- [Inputting barlines with the panel](#) on page 307
- [Rhythmic position](#) on page 24
- [Inputting notes in Insert mode](#) on page 237
- [Insert mode](#) on page 451
- [Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452
- [Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Input methods for tempo marks

You can input tempo marks with the keyboard by using the tempo popover, with the mouse by using the Tempo panel, and in the Tempo editor. You can input a tempo mark containing just a text instruction, just a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.

You can also input tempo equations using the tempo popover and Tempo panel.

RELATED LINKS

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335



[Tempo editor](#) on page 706

Tempo popover

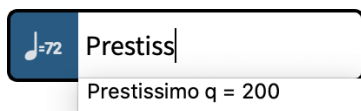
The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the tempo popover to input tempo marks, tempo equations, and rhythmic feels for swing playback.

When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears with suggestions containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions to input, or enter your own tempo into the popover.

You can open the tempo popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-T**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Tempo** .
- Select an existing tempo mark and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Tempo**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Tempo popover with an example entry



Tempo button in the Notations toolbox

Tempo marks

Example tempo mark	Popover entry
<i>Adagio</i>	Adagio
<i>Presto</i> ♩ = 176	Presto q = 176 or Presto q=176
<i>Largo</i> (♩ = 52)	Largo (q = 52) or Largo (q=52)
♩ = 96-112	q = 96-112, q=96-112, 6 = 96-112, or 6=96-112
♩. = 84	q. = 84, q.=84, 6. = 84, or 6.=84

Example tempo mark	Popover entry
$\text{♩} = 60$	h = 60, h=60, 7 = 60, or 7=60
$\text{♩} = 120$	e = 120, e=120, 5 = 120, or 5=120
<i>rit.</i>	rit.
<i>ritardando</i>	ritardando
<i>rit.</i> with continuation line (property override)	rit....
<i>accel.</i>	accel.
<i>accelerando</i>	accelerando
<i>accel.</i> with continuation line (property override)	accel....
<i>più</i>	più
<i>meno</i>	meno
<i>Rubato</i>	Rubato
Faster, with energy	Faster, with energy

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter tempos freely and there are many possible metronome marks and tempo marks. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of tempo marks and metronome marks.

NOTE




- The tempo popover is case-sensitive. If you want your tempo mark to start with a capital letter, you must enter a capital letter into the popover.
- To input hidden tempo marks, enclose your popover entry in parentheses, such as **(q=96)**.

Metronome mark beat units

Metronome mark beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	z or 2
32nd note	y or 3
16th note	x or 4
Eighth note	e or 5
Quarter note	q or 6

Metronome mark beat unit	Popover entry
Half note	h or 7
Whole note	w or 8
Double whole note	2w or 9
Rhythm dot	. (period)

Tempo equations

Example tempo equation	Popover entry
	e = e. or e=e.
	q = e or q=e
	q. = h or q.=h

This list is not comprehensive as there are many possible tempo equations, using all available beat units. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tempo equations.

NOTE

Tempo equations do not yet include tuplet durations. This is planned for future versions.

Rhythmic feels for swing playback

Rhythmic feel	Popover entry
Light 16th note swing rhythmic feel	light swing 16ths
Light eighth note swing rhythmic feel	light swing 8ths
Medium 16th note swing rhythmic feel	medium swing 16ths
Medium eighth note swing rhythmic feel	medium swing 8ths
Heavy 16th note swing rhythmic feel	heavy swing 16ths
Heavy eighth note swing rhythmic feel	heavy swing 8ths
Straight rhythmic feel	straight (no swing)
Triplet 16th fixed rhythmic feel	2:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

Rhythmic feel

Triplet 8th fixed rhythmic feel

Dotted 16th-32nd fixed rhythmic feel

Dotted 8th-16th fixed rhythmic feel

Popover entry

2:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

3:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

3:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335

[Types of tempo marks](#) on page 1336

[Hiding/Showing tempo marks](#) on page 1340

[Changing the style of gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1347

[Changing the order of metronome marks](#) on page 1345

[Swing playback](#) on page 552

[Enabling swing playback for specific sections/instruments](#) on page 554

Tempo panel

The Tempo panel contains the different types of tempo marks available in Dorico Elements, organized into sections. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Tempo panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Tempo**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

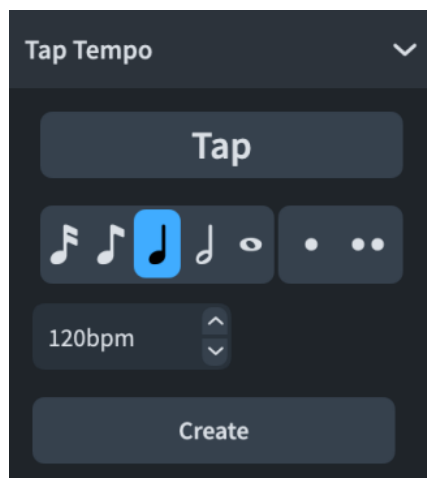
Used in This Flow

Contains any tempo marks already used in the flow, including custom tempo marks added using the tempo popover.

Tap Tempo

Allows you to create an absolute tempo change based on the speed with which you click the **Tap** button. It appears as a metronome mark with no text by default. The metronome mark value is always rounded to the nearest integer.

You can use the available options to set the beat unit on which you want to base the tempo.



Absolute Tempo Change

Contains a range of tempos with both an Italian tempo indication and a metronome mark. You can later choose to show or hide the metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

You can change the range shown in the list by adjusting the slider at the top.



Gradual Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* or *accelerando*.

You can add modifiers to gradual tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

Relative Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement, or with movement). They often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark.

You can add modifiers to relative tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

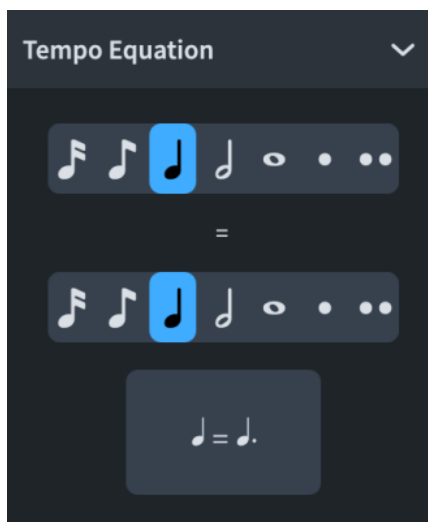
You can later set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

Reset Tempo

Contains tempo marks that indicate a return to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo*.

Tempo Equation

Allows you to input a tempo equation, using beat units from 16th notes to whole notes and up to two rhythm dots.



RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335



[Types of tempo marks](#) on page 1336

[Changing the metronome mark value](#) on page 1342

Inputting tempo marks with the popover

You can input tempo marks using the tempo popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

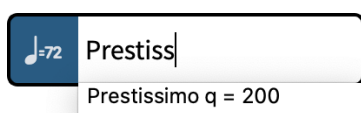
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the tempo popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-T**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Tempo** .
3. Enter the tempo you want into the popover.

For example, enter **q=72** or **Allegretto**.

When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears that shows suggested tempos containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions, or you can enter your own tempo into the popover.

To input a hidden tempo mark, enclose its entry in parentheses, such as **(q=96)**.



NOTE

If you want to show gradual tempo changes separated into syllables spread across their duration, such as *rit-ar-dan-do*, we recommend selecting a suggested entry from the menu. Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables automatically.

You can change the text of existing gradual tempo changes, including adding hyphens manually to control how they are separated into syllables.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

NOTE

Metronome mark values appear as integers without decimal places, even if you input decimal places. However, the exact metronome mark value you input is always reflected in playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

- [Tempo marks](#) on page 1335
- [Tempo track](#) on page 532
- [Tempo editor](#) on page 706
- [Gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1345
- [Metronome marks](#) on page 1341
- [Tempo equations](#) on page 1349
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Hiding/Showing tempo marks](#) on page 1340
- [Changing tempo text](#) on page 1338
- [Changing the style of gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1347
- [Changing the order of metronome marks](#) on page 1345
- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543



Inputting tempo marks with the panel

You can input tempo marks using the Tempo panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
 - You cannot specify decimal places for metronome marks using the panel. You can specify decimal places using the popover or by changing the metronome mark value of existing tempo marks.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Tempo**  to show the Tempo panel.
3. In the Tempo panel, click the tempo mark you want.

TIP

If you want Dorico Elements to calculate the metronome mark for you, you can click **Tap** in the **Tap Tempo** section multiple times at the required speed.

4. Optional: Select a modifier from the available options.

NOTE

You can only add modifiers to a **Gradual Tempo Change** or a **Relative Tempo Change**.

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335

[Gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1345

[Metronome marks](#) on page 1341

[Tempo equations](#) on page 1349

[Changing the metronome mark value](#) on page 1342

[Changing the style of gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1347

[Changing the order of metronome marks](#) on page 1345

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines

You can input both bars and barlines with the keyboard by using the bars and barlines popover, and also with the mouse by using the available options in the Bars and Barlines panel. The bars

and barlines popover also allows you to input beats. Additionally, you can input bars and beats using the system track.

Normally you do not need to create bars in Dorico Elements, as they are created automatically as needed when you input music. However, you can add bars in advance if, for example, you are copying or arranging an existing piece of music.

RELATED LINKS

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[System track](#) on page 425



[Inputting bar rests into specific voices](#) on page 246

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

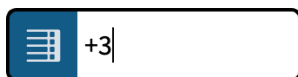
Bars and barlines popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the bars and barlines popover to add and delete bars and beats, and the entries you can use to input the different barlines available.

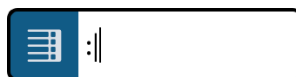
You can open the bars and barlines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-B**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Bars and Barlines** .
- Choose **Write > Create Bar or Barline**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for inputting bars



Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for a barline



Bars and Barlines button in the Notations toolbox

Bars

Example action	Popover entry
Add two bars	2 or +2
Add fourteen bars	14 or +14
Delete one bar	-1
Delete six bars	-6
Add a bar rest	rest
Delete empty bars at the end of the flow	trim

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of bars using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete bars, and input bar rests.

Beats

You can specify a number of beats that you want to add/delete by entering the number of beats you want followed by either the number that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **5** for eighth notes, or the letter that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **h** for half notes. When using numbers for both the number of beats and the beat unit, you must separate them with a space or hyphen. You can also specify beats in the form of a time signature, such as $3/4$ for three quarter note beats.

Example action	Popover entry
Add one whole note beat	1w, 1-8, 1 8, or 4/4
Add two quarter note beats	2q, 2-6, 2 6, or 2/4
Add four eighth note beats	4e, 4-5, 4 5, 4/8, or 2/4
Delete two quarter note beats	-2q, -2-6, -2 6, or -2/4
Delete empty beats at the end of the flow	trim

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of beats using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete beats.

Beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	z or 2
32nd note	y or 3
16th note	x or 4
Eighth note	e or 5
Quarter note	q or 6
Half note	h or 7
Whole note	w or 8
Double whole note	2w or 9
Rhythm dot	.(period)

Barlines



Type of barline	Popover entry
Normal (Single)	, single , or normal
Double	or double
Final] or final
Start repeat	: or start
End repeat	: or end
End/Start repeat	: , : , end-start , or endstart

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Inputting bar rests into specific voices](#) on page 246
- [Bars](#) on page 810
- [Barlines](#) on page 815
- [Deleting bars/beats](#) on page 810
- [Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

Bars and Barlines panel

The Bars and Barlines panel allows you to input bars, bar rests, and different types of barlines. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Bars and Barlines panel by clicking **Panels**  then **Bars and Barlines**  in the Notations toolbox.
You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Bars and Barlines panel contains the following sections:

Insert Bars

Allows you to determine how many bars you want to insert and where to insert them, such as at the end of the flow.

Insert Bar Rest

Allows you to insert a bar rest.

Create Barline

Contains the different barlines you can input.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Repeats in playback](#) on page 549
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44



Inputting bars/beats with the popover

You can input bars/beats using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to or inserting them into existing music. For example, if you want to extend a cadenza in an open meter.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input bars, you have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to add bars/beats. If you want to add bars/beats to specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-B**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Bars and Barlines** .
 4. Enter the number of bars/beats you want to input.
For example, enter **2** to input two bars or **2q** to input two quarter note beats.
 5. Input the bars/beats and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input bars/beats for all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input bars/beats only on the selected staves or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is input.

During note input, bars/beats are input from the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If the caret is in the middle of the bar when inputting bars, sufficient beats are added to ensure that the final bar created has the correct number of beats.

When you add bars/beats to existing music, they are added after selected barlines and before other selected items, including time signatures.

TIP

- Another way to add bars is by choosing a note duration, such as a whole note when in a 4/4 time signature, and pressing **Space** repeatedly during note input.
 - You can assign a key command for **Add Bar at End of Flow** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60



Inputting bars with the panel

You can input bars using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by inserting them into existing music.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an existing barline after which you want to input bars.
 - Select an existing item before which you want to input bars.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Bars and Barlines**  to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. In the **Insert Bars** section of the Bars and Barlines panel, change the number of bars you want to input by changing the value in the value field.
4. Select one of the following options for where you want to input bars:
 - **Start of Flow:** Bars are input at the beginning of the flow.
 - **Start of Selection:** Bars are input from the selected note or rest.
 - **End of Flow:** Bars are input at the end of the flow.

NOTE

If you want to input bars from the caret position, make sure that you have selected **Start of Selection** from the menu.

5. Click **Insert Bars**.
-

RESULT

The number of bars specified is input. During note input, bars are input from the caret position. If you selected **Start of Selection**, bars are input directly after a selected barline, and directly before a selected note, bar, or time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Inputting time signatures with the panel](#) on page 288

Inputting bars/beats with the system track

You can insert bars/beats into existing music using the system track; for example, if you decide you want to repeat several bars before the next section. You can insert whole bars and just a few beats.



NOTE

You cannot use the system track during note input.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track, select the region whose duration you want to insert.
For example, if you want to insert two bars, select two bars in the system track immediately before where you want the two new bars to be input.
 2. Click **Add**  above the system track.
Add  appears highlighted when you hover your mouse pointer over it.
-

RESULT

The rhythmic duration selected in the system track is added immediately after the end of the selection. Existing music after the selection is pushed back after the inserted bars/beats.

RELATED LINKS

- [System track](#) on page 425
- [Hiding/Showing the system track](#) on page 427
- [Selecting bars with the system track](#) on page 427
- [Selecting beats with the system track](#) on page 428

Inputting barlines with the popover

You can input barlines using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

PREREQUISITE



If you want to input barlines onto specific staves only, you have input an independent time signature on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline. If you want to input a barline on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.

TIP

If you want to add repeat barlines at the start/end of a region simultaneously, select items that span the required duration.

2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-B**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Bars and Barlines** .
4. Enter the barline you want into the popover.
For example, enter `||` for a double barline, or `|:` for a start repeat barline.
5. Input the barline and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a barline on all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a barline only on the selected staves or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

NOTE

You can only input barlines onto single staves that already have an independent time signature.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one. However, inputting repeat barlines at the positions of existing repeat barlines produces combined end/start repeat barline as applicable.

When you add start repeat barlines with a range of items selected, end repeat barlines are also added at the end of the selection.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

Explicit single barlines appear with time signature signposts.

RELATED LINKS

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Deleting bars/beats](#) on page 810

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551

Inputting barlines with the panel

You can input barlines using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PREREQUISITE



If you want to input barlines onto specific staves only, you have input an independent time signature on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline. If you want to input a barline on specific staves, select items that only belong to those staves.

TIP

If you want to add repeat barlines at the start/end of a region simultaneously, select items that span the required duration.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**  then **Bars and Barlines**  to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. Input the barline you want in one of the following ways:
 - To input a barline on all staves, click it in the **Create Barline** section.
 - To input a barline only on the selected staves or staff on which the caret is active, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Create Barline** section.

NOTE

You can only input barlines onto single staves that already have an independent time signature.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one. However, inputting repeat barlines at the positions of existing repeat barlines produces combined end/start repeat barline as applicable.

When you add start repeat barlines with a range of items selected, end repeat barlines are also added at the end of the selection.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

Explicit single barlines appear with time signature signposts.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting time signatures with the panel](#) on page 288

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551

Input methods for dynamics

You can input dynamics with the keyboard by using the dynamics popover, and with the mouse by using the Dynamics panel. When using the dynamics popover, you can input whole dynamic phrases containing immediate and gradual dynamics simultaneously, such as **p<f>p**.

You can also input dynamic points that affect playback, but do not appear in the music, in the Dynamics editor.

RELATED LINKS

[Dynamics](#) on page 921

[Inputting dynamics with the popover](#) on page 313

[Inputting dynamics with the panel](#) on page 315

[Niente markings](#) on page 947



[Adding modifiers to existing dynamics](#) on page 933

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

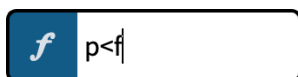
Dynamics popover

The dynamics popover allows you to input all types of dynamics, including whole dynamic phrases containing immediate and gradual dynamics simultaneously, such as **p<f>p**.

You can open the dynamics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-D**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Dynamics** .
- Select an existing dynamic and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Dynamic**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Dynamics popover with an example entry



Dynamics button in the Notations toolbox

Dynamics popover entries

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
<i>pianissimo</i> : pp	pp
<i>piano</i> : p	p
<i>mezzo piano</i> : mp	mp

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
<i>mezzo forte</i> : <i>mf</i>	mf
<i>forte</i> : <i>f</i>	f
<i>fortissimo</i> : <i>ff</i>	ff
<i>fortepiano</i> without separator: <i>fp</i>	fp
<i>fortepiano</i> with separator, such as <i>f-p</i>	f-p, f:p, or f/p
<i>subito</i>	subito, sub, or sub.
<i>possibile</i>	possibile, poss, or poss.
<i>poco</i>	poco
<i>molto</i>	molto
<i>più</i>	piu or più
<i>meno</i>	meno
<i>mosso</i>	mosso
<i>crescendo</i> (appears as \lessgtr by default)	<
<i>cresc.</i> text only (property override)	cresc
<i>cresc.</i> text with continuation line (property override)	cresc...
<i>diminuendo</i> (appears as \gtrless by default)	>
<i>dim.</i> text only (property override)	dim
<i>dim.</i> text with continuation line (property override)	dim...
<i>messa di voce</i> hairpin: \lessgtr (<i>crescendo</i> then <i>diminuendo</i>)	<>
<i>messa di voce</i> hairpin: \gtrless (<i>diminuendo</i> then <i>crescendo</i>)	><

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
---------------------	---------------

A pair of grouped hairpins that looks like a <i>messa di voce</i> hairpin	<> or ><
---	----------

NOTE

You must separate hairpins with a space.

<i>niente</i> hairpins that start/end with a small circle	o < or > o
---	--------------------------

<i>niente</i> hairpins that start/end with the letter "n"	n < or > n
---	--------------------------

<i>sforzando</i> : <i>sfz</i>	sfz
-------------------------------	------------

<i>rinforzando</i> : <i>rfz</i>	rfz
---------------------------------	------------

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter anything as a dynamic modifier. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of dynamics.

NOTE

- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
 - You can input hairpins and *messa di voce* hairpins directly, without using the popover.
 - For a crescendo hairpin, press **<**.
 - For a diminuendo hairpin, press **>**.
 - For a crescendo/diminuendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-,**.
 - For a diminuendo/crescendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-.,**
 - You can also change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.
-

Inputting modifiers into the dynamics popover

You can enter modifiers into the dynamics popover, such as *poco*, *molto*, *subito*, *espressivo*, or *dolce*. Modifiers appear in the correct italic font beside the dynamic. However, you must also enter an accompanying immediate dynamic, such as **p** or **f**, and separate the two with a space; for example, **f molto** or **p espressivo**.

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Dynamics](#) on page 921

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947



[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics](#) on page 927

- [Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics](#) on page 939
- [Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators](#) on page 928
- [Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics](#) on page 929
- [Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers](#) on page 934

Dynamics panel

The Dynamics panel contains the different dynamics available in Dorico Elements, including gradual dynamics and dynamic modifiers, such as *poco* and *possibile*. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Dynamics panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Dynamics**  in the Notations toolbox.
You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Dynamics panel contains the following sections:

Immediate Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as *pp* and *f*, and modifiers, such as *subito* and *possibile*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes. You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

Gradual Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as \lessgtr and \lessgtr , and modifiers, such as *poco* and *niente*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes. You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

NOTE

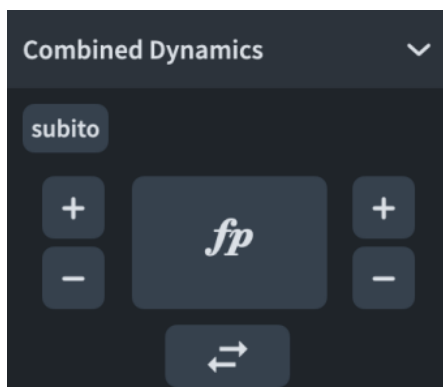
Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

Force/Intensity of Attack

Contains dynamics such as *sfz* and *fz*.

Combined Dynamics

Allows you to create custom combinations of dynamics, such as *fffpp*. The controls allow you to increase and decrease the dynamic on each side, and to swap their order.



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Dynamics](#) on page 921
- [Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators](#) on page 928

Inputting dynamics with the popover

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the dynamics popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music, including inputting whole dynamic phrases. You can also input different dynamics into each voice independently in multiple-voice contexts; for example, to give the separate staves of grand staff instruments different dynamics.

TIP

- You can input dynamics in the middle of tie chains by starting note input, then moving the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.




PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

NOTE

If you want to input voice-specific dynamics, the caret must be active.

- Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items that span the required duration.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the dynamics popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-D**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Dynamics** .
 4. Enter the dynamics you want into the popover.
For example, **p**, **p<f>p**, or **f>**.
 5. Input the dynamics and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input the dynamics for all voices/staves belonging to the selected instruments, press **Return**.
 - During note input, input the dynamics only into the voice indicated by the caret indicator by pressing **Alt/Opt-Return**.
 6. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend open-ended gradual dynamics, such as **p<**, in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .Open-ended gradual dynamics also extend automatically as you continue inputting notes.
 7. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended dynamics in any of the following ways:

- Press **?**.
 - Open the dynamics popover and input an immediate dynamic, such as **f**.
-

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. Unless you input voice-specific dynamics, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments. Voice-specific dynamics are placed on the default side of the staff for the instrument type, regardless of the voice's stem direction.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If you included an open-ended gradual dynamic, it extends automatically when you advance the caret or input notes. Voice-specific dynamics are input in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

Dynamics added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Gradual dynamics added to existing music end at either the start or end of the last selected note, according to your gradual dynamic input position setting.

NOTE

- If you entered a dynamic phrase into the popover during note input, such as **p<f>p**, each gradual dynamic lasts a quarter note (crotchet). You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics and groups of dynamics later.
- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.

- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *mesa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *mesa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
 - You can input hairpins and *mesa di voce* hairpins directly, without using the popover.
 - For a crescendo hairpin, press **<**.
 - For a diminuendo hairpin, press **>**.
 - For a crescendo/diminuendo *mesa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-.**
 - For a diminuendo/crescendo *mesa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-.**
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

[Dynamics](#) on page 921

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
[Changing the gradual dynamic input position setting](#) on page 317
[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209
[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694
[Dynamics in playback](#) on page 953
[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937
[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945
[Niente markings](#) on page 947
[Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938
[Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics](#) on page 939
[Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics](#) on page 948
[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949
[Voice-specific dynamics](#) on page 931
[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932
[Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers](#) on page 934
[Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators](#) on page 928
[Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926
[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
[Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940
[Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics](#) on page 927
[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

Inputting dynamics with the panel

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the Dynamics panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input different dynamics into each voice independently in multiple-voice contexts; for example, to give the separate staves of grand staff instruments different dynamics.

NOTE

- You can input dynamics in the middle of tie chains by starting note input, then moving the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.



PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

NOTE

If you want to input voice-specific dynamics, the caret must be active.

- Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Dynamics**  to show the Dynamics panel.

3. Input the dynamics you want in one of the following ways:

- To input dynamics for all voices/staves belonging to the selected instruments, click them in the Dynamics panel.
- During note input, input the dynamics only into the voice indicated by the caret indicator by **Alt/Opt**-clicking them in the Dynamics panel.

NOTE

- If you want to add expressive or qualifying text to the dynamics, do not deselect them.
- When inputting voice-specific dynamics, you can release **Alt/Opt** once you have input the dynamic level, such as *f*.
- Gradual dynamics have a default duration of a quarter note. You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics later.

4. Optional: In the Dynamics panel, click the expressive/qualifying texts you want in the **Immediate Dynamics** and **Gradual Dynamics** sections.

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. Unless you input voice-specific dynamics, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments. Voice-specific dynamics are placed on the default side of the staff for the instrument type, regardless of the voice's stem direction.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position. Gradual dynamics are input with a default duration of a quarter note. Voice-specific dynamics are input in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

Dynamics added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Gradual dynamics added to existing music end at either the start or end of the last selected note, according to your gradual dynamic input position setting.

NOTE

- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.

- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *mesa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *mesa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
- You can also input gradual dynamics by clicking the gradual dynamic you want in the Dynamics panel when nothing is selected in the music area. Then click and drag to input the gradual dynamic and extend it to the length you want.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Dynamics](#) on page 921
- [Voices](#) on page 1438
- [Dynamics in playback](#) on page 953
- [Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938
- [Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics](#) on page 929
- [Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators](#) on page 928
- [Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926
- [Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics](#) on page 927
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Changing the gradual dynamic input position setting

By default, Dorico Elements inputs gradual dynamics spanning the full duration of selected notes/items. You can change this setting if you prefer gradual dynamics to end at the start of the last selected note.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Editing** section, activate/deactivate **End gradual dynamics at start of last note in multiple selections**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When **End gradual dynamics at start of last note in multiple selections** is activated, gradual dynamics end at the start of the last selected note. Immediate dynamics at the end of gradual dynamics are attached to the last selected note.

When **End gradual dynamics at start of last note in multiple selections** is deactivated, gradual dynamics end at the end of the last selected note. Immediate dynamics at the end of gradual dynamics are attached to the next note/rest.

EXAMPLE



Notes selected



Dynamic phrase input with setting activated



Dynamic phrase input with setting deactivated

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421



Inputting chord symbols

You can input chord symbols using the chord symbols popover with the computer keyboard and any connected MIDI keyboard, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the chord symbols popover during note input; however, inputting a chord symbol stops note input.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input chord symbols using a MIDI device, you have connected the MIDI device you want to use.

PROCEDURE

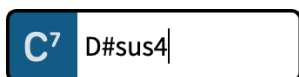
1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a chord symbol.
2. Open the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Q**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Chord Symbols** .

NOTE

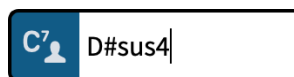
If you selected an item on a staff that has local chord symbols at earlier rhythmic positions, the chord symbols popover is automatically set to input local chord symbols when it opens.

3. Optional: Change the type of chord symbol you want to enter in one of the following ways:
 - To input local chord symbols, press **Alt/Opt-L**.
 - To input global chord symbols, press **Alt/Opt-G**.

The popover icon updates to show the current type.



Chord symbols popover when inputting a global chord symbol



Chord symbols popover when inputting a local chord symbol

4. Enter the chord symbol you want into the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
 - Enter the appropriate letters and numbers using the computer keyboard. For example, enter **D#sus4** for a D#sus4 chord symbol or **CM7|D** for a Cmaj7/D polychord chord symbol.
 - Play the chord in the Keyboard panel.
 - Play the chord using a MIDI keyboard.

TIP

- To input a polychord chord symbol, play the first chord and keep the keys depressed, then play the second chord.
- To input a chord symbol that consists only of the root note, just play a single note.
- You can indicate root notes in any of the following ways:
 - First play the root with one finger, and then play the remaining notes of the chord while still holding down the root.

- Play all the notes of the chord together, then release them all, then replay the root note.
 - You can indicate altered bass notes in any of the following ways:
 - Play all notes of the chord together with the altered bass note at the bottom.
 - Play the chord and its altered bass note separately: Hold down the keys for the chord, then play the altered bass note while keeping the rest of the keys of the chord depressed.
-

5. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the prevailing time signature.

TIP

You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.

6. Optional: To input an individual local chord symbol when the popover is set to global, and vice versa, press **Alt/Opt-Return** to input the chord symbol.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The chord symbol specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show chord symbols in the current layout, the corresponding player is automatically updated to show chord symbols for all instruments.

Global chord symbols apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves set to show chord symbols. Local chord symbols only apply to the selected instrument. Local chord symbols always appear, even if global chord symbols exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

- The chord symbol may look different to what you entered into the popover. For example, entering **D|C7** may result in two chords placed directly above each other or two chords placed beside each other, depending on your settings in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.
 - When you input chord symbols using a MIDI keyboard, the voicing you used is retained for chord symbol playback. You can reset the voicing of chord symbols input using MIDI keyboards.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can hide/show chord symbols above specific staves and hide/show chord diagrams alongside them.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Generating chord symbols from notes](#) on page 326

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts](#) on page 879

[Hiding/Showing chord diagrams](#) on page 895

[Inputting chord symbol regions](#) on page 326

[Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417

[Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices](#) on page 270



[Chords track](#) on page 535

[Enabling chord symbol playback](#) on page 535
[Resetting the voicing of chord symbols](#) on page 536
[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

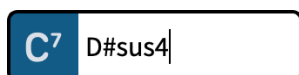
Chord symbols popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the chord symbols popover to input the different possible chord symbol components. You can enter them in any combination.

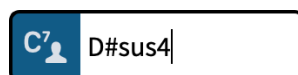
You can open the chord symbols popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-Q**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Chord Symbols** .
- Select an existing chord symbol and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Chord Symbol**.

When inputting global chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a global chord symbol



Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a local chord symbol



Chord Symbols button in the Notations toolbox

NOTE

You can combine multiple types of entries to create more complex chord symbols if you enter them one after another into the chord symbols popover without spaces between them. For example, enter **E♭Locrian** for the following chord symbol:

E♭Loc.

Chord symbol roots

Type of chord symbol root	Popover entry
English note names C, D \flat , F \sharp , B, and so on	C, D\flat, F\sharp, B , and so on
German note names C, D \flat , F \sharp , H, and so on	C, Des, Fis, H , and so on
Fixed-do solfège C, D \flat , F, F \sharp , B, and so on	do, reb, fa, fa\sharp, ti , and so on

Type of chord symbol root**Popover entry**

Nashville numbers representing scale degrees **1, 2b, 4#, 7**, and so on

Assuming C major:

C, Db, F#, B, and so on

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also indicate root notes in any of the following ways:

- First play the root with one finger, and then play the remaining notes of the chord while still holding down the root.
 - Play all the notes of the chord together, then release them all, then replay the root note.
-

Chord symbol accidentals

Type of accidental**Popover entry**

Sharp

#

Flat

b

Double sharp

x or **##**

Triple sharp

x#, **#x**, or **###**

Double flat

bb

Triple flat

bbb

Chord symbol qualities

Chord symbol quality**Popover entry**

Major

maj, **M**, **ma**, or nothing after entering the root.

Minor

m, **min**, or **mi**

Diminished

dim, **di**, or **o**

Augmented

aug, **au**, **ag**, or **+**

Half-diminished

half-dim, **halfdim**, or **hd**

6/9

6/9, **69**, or **%**

NOTE

M and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.

Chord symbol intervals

Interval	Popover entry
Scale degrees	1, 2, 3 , and so on
Major 7th	^7 or ^
Major 9th	^9 , maj9 , or 9maj7

Chord symbol alterations

Type of chord symbol alteration	Popover entry
Alterations	b5 , -5 , #9 , +9 , b10 , and so on
Added notes	add#11 , add+11 , addb9 , add-9 , addF# , addBb , and so on
Suspensions	sus4 , sus9 , and so on
Omissions	omit3 , no7 , and so on

Chord symbols with altered bass notes

Example altered bass note chord symbols	Popover entry
G7/D	G7/D , G7,D , Gmaj7/D or Gmaj7,D
C(♭5)/E♭	CMb5/Eb , CMb5,Eb , Cmajb5/Eb , or Cmajb5,Eb
Fm/D#	Fm/D# , Fm,D# , Fmi/D# , or Fmi,D#

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also indicate altered bass notes in any of the following ways:

- Play all notes of the chord together with the altered bass note at the bottom.
 - Play the chord and its altered bass note separately: Hold down the keys for the chord, then play the altered bass note while keeping the rest of the keys of the chord depressed.
-

Polychord chord symbols

Example polychord chord symbols

G/E

Cmaj7/D

Fm/D#

Popover entry

G | E, G;E, Gmaj | E, or Gmaj;E

CM7 | D, CM7;D, Cmaj7 | D, or Cmaj7;D

Fm | D#, Fm;D#, Fmi | D#, or Fmi;D#

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also input polychord symbols by playing the first chord and keeping the keys depressed, then playing the second chord.

No chord symbols

No chord symbol

No chord

Popover entry

N.C., NC, no chord, or none

Modal chord symbols

Modal chord symbol

Ionian

Dorian

Phrygian

Lydian

Mixolydian

Aeolian

Locrian

Melodic minor

Harmonic minor

Whole tone

Popover entry

ionian

dorian

phrygian

lydian

mixolydian

aeolian

locrian

melodicminor

harmonicminor

wholetone

Modal chord symbol

Half-whole diminished or octatonic

Popover entry

diminishedhalfwhole,
diminishedsemitonetone,
octatonichalfwhole, or
octatonicsemitonetone

Whole-half diminished or octatonic

diminishedwholehalf,
diminishedtonesemitone,
octatonicwholehalf, or
octatonictonesemitone

This list is not comprehensive, as there are many possible chord symbols. It is intended to illustrate the different components you can use to input different chord symbols.

NOTE

The appearance of the resulting chord symbols is determined by Dorico Elements's default settings. The structure of your entry in the chord symbols popover is not considered. For example, entering a C major chord as **C**, **Cmaj**, or **CM** results in the same chord symbol.

Parenthesized chord symbols

Example parenthesized chord symbol

(Cmaj7)

Popover entry

(Cmaj7)

Chord symbol regions

Chord symbol region

New chord symbol region

Popover entry

reg

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Parenthesized chord symbols](#) on page 889

Navigation during chord symbol input

You can move the chord symbols popover manually by different amounts to input chord symbols at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Navigating with a computer keyboard

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	Space
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	Shift-Space
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	Tab
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	Shift-Tab
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Next/Previous note or rest• Next/Previous rhythmic grid position• Next/Previous character in existing chord symbol's entry	Right Arrow / Left Arrow
Move the popover to the next/previous chord symbol.	Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow / Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow

Navigating with a MIDI keyboard

When inputting chord symbols using a MIDI keyboard, by default the popover advances automatically to the next beat after you play a chord.

You can define specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to trigger different navigation behaviors. Use the **MIDI Learn** button on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences** to assign specific keys to the **Note Input > Advance Chord Symbol Input** commands.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60



[Assigning MIDI commands](#) on page 63

[Assigning key commands](#) on page 63

Inputting chord symbol regions

You can input specific regions in which you want to show chord symbols; for example, if an instrument that does not need chord symbols for most of the project has an improvisation section that requires chord symbols to be shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - On each staff where you want to input a chord symbol region, select items that span the required duration.
 2. Open the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Q**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Chord Symbols** .
 3. Enter **reg** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, chord symbol regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note.

When adding chord symbol regions to existing music, they span the selected duration on each selected staff.

The players holding the corresponding instruments are automatically set to show chord symbols in chord symbol regions and slash regions, even if they were previously set to hide all chord symbols.

TIP

You can also input chord symbol regions by choosing **Write > Create Chord Symbol Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbols popover](#) on page 320

[Chord symbol regions](#) on page 882

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878

[Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Generating chord symbols from notes

You can automatically generate chord symbols based on the harmony of notes you have already input. You can specify the musical context you want to consider in the calculation, such as which note durations and inversions to include.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to generate chord symbols.

TIP

You can select notes on multiple staves.

2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Generate Chord Symbols from Selection** to open the **Generate Chord Symbols From Notes** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Change the settings as required.
For example, you can change the minimum note duration you want to include in chord symbols, and disallow the creation of open fifth chord symbols.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Chord symbols are generated based on the selected notes and your settings. Chord symbols are input at the rhythmic positions of chords comprising at least two or three notes, depending on your settings.

All instruments included in your selection are set to show chord symbols.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 878](#)

[Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music on page 381](#)

Generate Chord Symbols From Selection dialog

The **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog allows you to generate chord symbols based on the harmony of notes you have already input, and specify the musical context you want to consider in the calculation.

- You can open the **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog in Write mode when at least one chord is selected in the music area by choosing **Edit > Notations > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Generate Chord Symbols from Selection**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Generate Chord Symbols From Selection' dialog box with the following settings:

- Harmonic rhythm: Every bar, Every beat, **Fixed**, [Musical Notation Icon]
- Minimum duration of single notes following chords to include in analysis: [Musical Notation Icon]
- Minimum duration of chords eligible for chord symbols: [Musical Notation Icon]
- Only use downbeats when creating chord symbols from notes at multiple positions
- Detect inversions: Always, Never, **Below specific pitch**, F4
- Only create chord symbols from horizontal passages when unambiguous
- Try to detect and handle passing notes
- Use vamp detection
- Minimum length for chords in vamp: [Musical Notation Icon]
- Maximum rhythmic separation between chords in vamp: [Musical Notation Icon]
- Advanced Options:
 - Allow creation of open fifths
 - Allow creation of major and minor thirds
- Ignore omitted fifths: Never, In major/minor triads, **In major/minor triads and chords with 7th**, Always
- Buttons: Cancel, OK

The **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog contains the following options:

Harmonic rhythm

Allows you to set the minimum rhythmic interval between generated chord symbols.

- **Every bar:** Chord symbols are created at least every bar.
- **Every beat:** Chord symbols are created at least every beat, according to the prevailing time signature.
- **Fixed:** Chord symbols are created at the specified interval.

Minimum duration of single notes following chords to include in analysis

Allows you to set the shortest note value for single notes that you want to include in the chord symbol calculation. This allows you to exclude passing notes shorter than the set duration.

Minimum duration of chords eligible for chord symbols

Allows you to set the shortest note value for chords that you want to include in the chord symbol calculation. This allows you to exclude transitory chords shorter than the set duration.

Only use downbeats when creating chord symbols from notes at multiple positions

When activated, only notes that start on strong beats in each bar are included in the chord symbol calculation.

Detect inversions

Allows you to change how inversions are handled in the chord symbol calculation.

- **Always:** Inversions are always considered.
- **Never:** Inversions are never considered. This is particularly useful when calculating chord symbols from notes belonging to multiple instruments.
- **Below specific pitch:** Inversions are only considered for notes below the specified pitch.

Only create chord symbols from horizontal passages when unambiguous

When activated, chord symbols are only created from notes at multiple rhythmic positions if the resulting chord is simple.

Try to detect and handle passing notes

When activated, Dorico Elements detects passing notes where possible and excludes them from the chord symbol calculation.

Use vamp detection

When activated, Dorico Elements detects rhythmic patterns and textures often used when vamping and considers them in the chord symbol calculation.

Minimum length for chords in vamp

Allows you to change the minimum note value for chords in vamp sections.

Maximum rhythmic separation between chords in vamp

Allows you to change the maximum gap between chords in vamp sections.

Allow creation of open fifths

When activated, Dorico Elements creates chord symbols from chords comprising only two notes, a fifth apart.

Allow creation of major and minor thirds

When activated, Dorico Elements creates chord symbols from chords comprising only two notes, a third apart.

Ignore omitted fifths

Allows you to change how chords with omitted fifths are handled.

- **Never:** Omitted fifths are never ignored, meaning chords are considered according to the notes available.
- **In major/minor triads:** Omitted fifths are only ignored in chords comprising only two notes, a third apart.
- **In major/minor triads and chords with 7th:** Omitted fifths are ignored in chords comprising only two notes, a third apart, and chords with a seventh.
- **Always:** Omitted fifths are always ignored, meaning chord symbols are created as if the fifth were present.

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878

[Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music](#) on page 381

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

Input methods for clefs and octave lines

You can input clefs and octave lines with the keyboard by using the clefs and octave lines popover, and also with the mouse by using the Clefs panel.

Clefs and octave lines share the same popover and panel as both affect the pitch and register of notes.

RELATED LINKS



[Clefs](#) on page 907

[Octave lines](#) on page 915

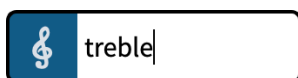
Clefs and octave lines popover

The following tables contain the entries for the clefs and octave lines popover that you can use to input the different clefs and octave lines available.

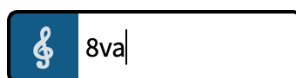
You can open the clefs and octave lines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-C**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Clefs** .
- Select an existing clef or octave line and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Clef**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for a clef



Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for an octave line



Clefs button in the Notations toolbox

Clefs

Type of clef	Popover entry
Treble G clef	g, G, g2, sol, or treble
Bass F clef	f, F, f4, fa, or bass
Tenor C clef	ct, CT, c4, ut4, or tenor
Alto C clef	ca, CA, c3, ut3, or alto
Treble G clef, octave below	g8ba, G8ba, g8d, G8d, treble8ba, or treble8d
Unpitched percussion	perc
4-string tablature	tab4
6-string tablature	tab6

TIP

The rectangular percussion clef is available in the Clefs panel.

Octave shifts for clefs

Function of octave shifts	Popover entry
Shift notes up by one octave	+1
Shift notes up by two octaves	+2
Shift notes down by one octave	-1
Shift notes down by two octaves	-2
Set octave shift for concert pitch	c
Set octave shift for transposed pitch	t

For example, enter **treble+1t** for a treble clef shifted up one octave in transposed pitch layouts, causing notes after the clef in transposed pitch layouts to appear an octave lower than they appear with a normal treble clef.

Octave lines

Function of octave line	Popover entry
Shift notes up by one octave	8va, 8, 8u, or 1u
Shift notes up by two octaves	15ma, 15, 15u, or 2u
Shift notes up by three octaves	22ma, 22, 22u, or 3u
Shift notes down by one octave	8ba, 8vb, 8d, or 1d
Shift notes down by two octaves	15ba, 15vb, 15d, or 2d
Shift notes down by three octaves	22ba, 22vb, 22d, or 3d
<i>Loco</i> indication	loco
End of octave line	 or stop

For example, enter **stop** to specify where an octave line ends during note input.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Clefs](#) on page 907



[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Changing the octave of clefs](#) on page 912

[Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators](#) on page 913

Clefs panel

The Clefs panel contains the different types of clefs and octave lines available in Dorico Elements. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Clefs panel by clicking **Panels**  then **Clefs**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Clefs panel contains the following sections:

Common Clefs

Contains the clefs you are most likely to need, including treble clef and bass clef.

Octave Lines

Contains octave lines, indicating up to three octaves above and below, and a *loco* line.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Clefs](#) on page 907

[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Inputting clefs with the panel](#) on page 333

[Inputting octave lines with the panel](#) on page 335



Inputting clefs with the popover

You can input clefs using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also use the popover to change the type of existing clefs.

NOTE

Many instruments in Dorico Elements have variants that show alternative clefs according to the layout transposition by default. You can select the appropriate instrument variant from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef. If you want to add restorative clefs at later positions, select items that span the required duration.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-C**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Clefs** .
 4. Enter the appropriate entry for the clef you want into the popover.
For example, enter:
 - **bass** for a bass clef.
 - **alto** for an alto clef.
 - **treble+1t** for a treble clef shifted up one octave in transposed pitch layouts.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Clefs added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting. When you add clefs to a range of selected items, restorative clefs are also added at the end of the selection.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

[Clefs](#) on page 907

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Hiding/Showing clefs](#) on page 910

[Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions](#) on page 910

[Changing the octave of clefs](#) on page 912

[Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators](#) on page 913

[Changing instruments](#) on page 134

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133



Inputting clefs with the panel

You can input clefs using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
 - Many instruments in Dorico Elements have variants that show alternative clefs according to the layout transposition by default. You can select the appropriate instrument variant from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef. If you want to add restorative clefs at later positions, select items that span the required duration.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Clefs**  to show the Clefs panel.
 3. In the Clefs panel, click the clef you want.
-

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position.

Clefs added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting. When you add clefs to a range of selected items, restorative clefs are also added at the end of the selection.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Clefs](#) on page 907

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Hiding/Showing clefs](#) on page 910




[Universal Indian Drum Notation](#) on page 1436

Inputting octave lines with the popover

You can input octave lines using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input octave lines only into specific voices in multiple-voice contexts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line. If you want to add an octave line for a single voice, only select notes in that voice.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.

3. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-C**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Clefs** .
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the octave line you want into the popover.
For example, enter **8va** for an octave line that shifts notes up one octave.
5. Input the octave line and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input an octave line for all voices on each selected staff, press **Return**.
 - To input an octave line only for the currently selected voice, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
6. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the octave line in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .

The octave line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
7. Optional: During note input, stop any octave line by opening the clefs and octave lines popover again and entering **|** or **stop**.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input from the caret position, on all staves across which the caret extends. When you stop octave lines, they end at the caret position.

Octave lines added to existing music span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Octave lines appear either above or below your selection, depending on whether they indicate that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

[Clefs and octave lines popover](#) on page 329

[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Hiding/Showing octave lines](#) on page 917

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209



Inputting octave lines with the panel

You can input octave lines using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input octave lines only into specific voices in multiple-voice contexts.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line. If you want to add an octave line for a single voice, only select notes in that voice.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Clefs**  to show the Clefs panel.
3. Input the octave line you want in one of the following ways:
 - To input an octave line for all voices on the selected staves, click it in the **Octave Lines** section.
 - To input an octave line only for the currently selected voice, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Octave Lines** section.

Alternatively, when adding octave lines to existing music, you can click the octave line you want in the Clefs panel first, and then click and drag it to the length you want.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input at the caret position. They are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

Octave lines added to existing music span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Octave lines appear either above or below your selection, depending on whether they indicate that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Input methods for holds and pauses

You can input holds and pauses with the keyboard by using the holds and pauses popover in Write mode, and with the mouse by using the Holds and Pauses panel.

RELATED LINKS



[Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010

[Correct positioning for caesura input](#) on page 340

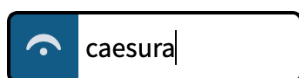
Holds and pauses popover

The table contains the entries for the holds and pauses popover that you can use to input the different holds and pauses available.

You can open the holds and pauses popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-H**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Holds and Pauses** .
- Select an existing hold or pause and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Hold or Pause**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Holds and pauses popover with an example entry




Holds and Pauses button in the Notations toolbox

Fermatas


Type of fermata

Fermata 

Very long fermata 

Long fermata 

Short fermata 

Very short fermata 

Short fermata (Henze) 

Long fermata (Henze) 

Curlew (Britten) 

Popover entry

fer, **fermata**, or **pause**

verylongfermata or **verylongfer**

longfermata or **longfer**

shortfermata or **shortfer**

veryshortfermata or **veryshortfer**

shorthenzefermata or **shorthenzefer**

longhenzefermata or **longhenzefer**


curlew

NOTE

The Curlew mark was originally devised by Benjamin Britten for “Curlew River”, a parable for church performance inspired by Japanese Noh theater. It indicates that a player should hold a note or a rest until a synchronization point in asynchronous music.

Caesuras

Type of caesura

Caesura 

Thick caesura 

Curved caesura 

Short caesura 

Single-stroke caesura 

Popover entry

caes, **caesura**, or **//**

caesurathick, **thickcaesura**, or **thick//**


caesuracurved, **curvedcaesura**, or **curved//**


caesurashort, **shortcaesura**, or **short//**


caesurasingle, **singlecaesura**, or **single//**


Breath marks

Type of breath mark

Breath mark (Comma-like) 

Breath mark (Tick-like) 

Breath mark (Upbow-like) 

Breath mark (Salzedo) 

Popover entry

breathmarkcomma, **comma**, or **,** (comma)

breathmarktick

breathmarkupbow

breathmarksalzedo

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010



[Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011

[Types of caesuras](#) on page 1012

[Types of breath marks](#) on page 1012

Holds and Pauses panel

The Holds and Pauses panel allows you to input all the different types of holds and pauses available in Dorico Elements, including alternative versions of fermatas. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Holds and Pauses panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Holds and Pauses**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Holds and Pauses panel contains the following sections:

- **Fermatas**
- **Breath Marks**
- **Caesuras**

NOTE

Holds and pauses do not currently have an effect in playback, but this is planned for future versions.



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Inputting holds and pauses with the panel](#) on page 339
- [Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010
- [Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011
- [Types of caesuras](#) on page 1012
- [Types of breath marks](#) on page 1012

Inputting holds and pauses with the popover

You can input holds and pauses using the holds and pauses popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a fermata or caesura.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a breath mark.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the holds and pauses popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-H**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Holds and Pauses** .
 4. Enter the hold or pause you want into the popover.
For example, enter **fermata** for a pause or **caesura** for a caesura.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position. Breath marks are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Breath marks added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting.

Fermatas and caesuras added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010

[Holds and pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011

[Types of breath marks](#) on page 1012

[Types of caesuras](#) on page 1012

[Positions of holds and pauses](#) on page 1012



Inputting holds and pauses with the panel

You can input holds and pauses using the Holds and Pauses panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a fermata or caesura.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a breath mark.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Holds and Pauses**  to show the Holds and Pauses panel.
 3. In the Holds and Pauses panel, click the hold or pause you want.
-

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position.

Breath marks added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting.

Fermatas and caesuras added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010

[Holds and pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Positions of holds and pauses](#) on page 1012

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Correct positioning for caesura input

Caesuras are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before a barline. In Dorico Elements, caesuras must be attached to the note immediately after the position where you want it to appear, as then Dorico Elements can automatically position them correctly.

If you input caesuras with your mouse input preference set to **Load pointer with item**, you must click the first note in the next bar for a caesura to appear to the left of the barline. You can also click directly on the barline.



A correctly input caesura. The dotted attachment lines are attached to the notehead after the barline, meaning the caesura is correctly positioned before the barline.



An incorrectly input caesura. By clicking to the left of the barline, the caesura is attached to the last eighth note in the bar.

When input correctly, the dotted attachment lines link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline.

If your dotted attachment lines do not link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline, delete the caesura and re-input it. Caesuras can cause spacing issues when input incorrectly.

RELATED LINKS

[Holds and pauses](#) on page 1010

[Types of caesuras](#) on page 1012

[Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations

You can input ornaments, including arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can input ornaments and arpeggio signs during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input glissando lines during note input. You can only input glissando lines by adding them to existing notes.

You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments](#) on page 1090

[Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145

[Jazz ornaments](#) on page 1146



[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Input methods for lines](#) on page 385

Ornaments popover

The following tables contain the entries for the ornaments popover that you can use to input the different ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations available.

You can open the ornaments popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-O**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Ornaments** .
- Select an existing ornament and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Ornament**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.








Ornaments popover with an example entry



Ornaments button in the Notations toolbox

Ornaments

Type of ornament	Popover entry
Trill: 	tr or trill
Short trill: 	shorttr
Mordent: 	mor or mordent
Turn: 	turn
Inverted turn: 	invturn or invertedturn

Trill intervals

Trill interval or quality	Popover entry
Interval degree Unison, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, octave	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
Major	M, maj, or major
Minor	m, min, or minor
Perfect	p, per, or perf

Trill interval or quality

Diminished

Augmented

Popover entry

d, dim, or diminished

a, aug, or augmented

EXAMPLE

To input a trill with a perfect fifth interval, enter **tr p5**.

Jazz ornaments

Type of jazz ornament

Bend 

Flip 

Jazz turn 

Smear 

Popover entry

brassbend

flip

jazz or shake

smear

Jazz articulations

Type of jazz articulation

Plop (bend)

Plop (smooth)

Scoop

Doit (bend)

Doit (smooth)

Fall (bend)

Fall (smooth)

Popover entry

plop

plopsmooth

scoop

doit

doitsmooth

fall

fallsmooth

TIP

Other ornaments are available in the Ornaments panel. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

Arpeggio signs

Type of arpeggio sign	Popover entry
Up arpeggio sign	arp, arpup, or arpeggioup
Down arpeggio sign	arpdown or arpeggiodown
Non arpeggio sign	nonarp or nonarpeggio
Curved arpeggio sign	slurarp

Glissando lines

Type of glissando line	Popover entry
Default style glissando line	gliss
Straight glissando line	glissstraight
Wavy glissando line	glisswavy

Guitar techniques

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Guitar bend	bend
Vibrato bar dive and return	vibbend
Vibrato bar scoop	vibscoop
Vibrato bar dip	vibdip
Vibrato bar line	wbar or w/bar

NOTE

Must have duration to show its line.

Hammer-on	ho or hammer
-----------	---------------------

NOTE

You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Pull-off	po or pull
NOTE	
You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	
Hammer-on then pull-off or pull-off then hammer-on (<i>ligado</i>)	hp , hopo , hammerpull , lig , or ligado
NOTE	
You must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C or D-C-D.	
Right-hand tapping	tap
Right-hand tapping with pull-off	tappull
NOTE	
You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	
Left-hand tapping	lhtap
Left-hand tapping with pull-off	lhtappull
NOTE	
You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover](#) on page 347
- [Inputting glissando lines with the popover](#) on page 349
- [Inputting jazz articulations with the popover](#) on page 351
- [Inputting guitar bends with the popover](#) on page 354
- [Inputting vibrato bar dives](#) on page 356
- [Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover](#) on page 358
- [Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover](#) on page 360
- [Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover](#) on page 362
- [Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs](#) on page 364
- [Inputting tapping](#) on page 366

[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
[Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332
[Ornaments](#) on page 1090
[Trill intervals](#) on page 1097
[Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108
[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115
[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
[Guitar techniques](#) on page 1137
[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145
[Jazz ornaments](#) on page 1146
[Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

Ornaments panel

The Ornaments panel allows you to input all the different types of ornaments available, including jazz articulations, as well as arpeggio signs, glissando lines, guitar bends, and vibrato bar techniques. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Ornaments panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Ornaments panel contains the following sections:

Jazz

Contains ornaments and pitch alterations commonly used in jazz music, such as bends, scoops, and falls.

Baroque and Classical

Contains ornaments commonly used in Baroque and Classical music, such as mordents, turns, and trills.

Arpeggiation

Contains the different types of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

You cannot input arpeggio signs with the panel during note input.

Glissandi

Contains the different types of glissando lines.

Guitar

Contains techniques and pitch alterations commonly associated with guitars, such as guitar bends and vibrato bar scoops.



RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
[Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel](#) on page 347
[Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel](#) on page 348
[Inputting glissando lines with the panel](#) on page 350
[Inputting jazz articulations with the panel](#) on page 352
[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353

Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. When inputting trills, you can specify the trill interval, such as a minor third.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items that span the required duration.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the ornament you want into the popover.
For example, enter **tr m3** for a trill with a minor third interval or **mor** for a mordent.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Optional: When inputting trills during note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the trill.

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. Trills span the duration of the rhythmic value of the note input at the caret position or the duration by which the caret advanced.

Ornaments added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting. Trills span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Trills have a default interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context. If you specified an interval for your trill, the interval applies only to the first note in the selection, but you can also change the interval partway through trills.

TIP

You can choose to input a separate trill for each selected note in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Ornaments](#) on page 1090
- [Trills](#) on page 1094
- [Trill intervals](#) on page 1097
- [Changing trill intervals](#) on page 1099
- [Changing trill intervals partway through trills](#) on page 1100
- [Trill interval appearance](#) on page 1102
- [Jazz ornaments](#) on page 1146
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting jazz articulations with the popover](#) on page 351

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213



Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items that span the required duration.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
 3. In the Ornaments panel, click the ornament you want.
-

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position. Trills are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

Ornaments added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting. Trills span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

TIP

- You can specify trill intervals when inputting trills using the popover.
 - You can choose to input a separate trill for each selected note in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Inputting jazz articulations with the panel](#) on page 352

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover

You can input arpeggio signs using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.
- Select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.



NOTE

- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
- Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic positions.

2. Optional: If you started note input, press **Q** to start chord input.

NOTE

You can only input arpeggio signs during chord input.

3. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Ornaments** .
5. Enter the appropriate entry for the arpeggio sign you want into the popover.
For example, enter **arpup** for an up arpeggio sign or **arpdown** for a down arpeggio sign.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
7. Optional: During chord input, input the notes you want.

RESULT

During chord input, arpeggio signs are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

When adding arpeggio signs to existing notes, they are input to the left of the selected notes.

Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes at that rhythmic position in the current voice during chord input, and all notes in the selected voices/staves when adding arpeggio signs to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108

[Arpeggios in playback](#) on page 1112

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting chords](#) on page 251

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel

You can input arpeggio signs on existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

- You cannot input arpeggio signs with the panel during note input.



- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. You cannot create cross-staff and cross-voice arpeggio signs if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.

NOTE

- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
 - Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic positions.
-

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
 3. In the **Arpeggiation** section, click the arpeggio sign you want.
-

RESULT

The arpeggio sign specified is input to the left of the selected note or chord. Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
- [Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108
- [Arpeggios in playback](#) on page 1112
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting glissando lines with the popover

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the ornaments popover. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.



NOTE

You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to join with glissando lines.
For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .

3. Enter the appropriate entry for the glissando line you want into the popover.
 - For a default style glissando line, enter **gliss**.
 - For a straight glissando line, enter **glissstraight**.
 - For a wavy glissando line, enter **glisswavy**.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between all selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
 - Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
 - By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

[Changing glissando line text](#) on page 1117

[Changing when glissando line text is shown](#) on page 1118

[Changing the style of glissando lines](#) on page 1116

[Inputting jazz articulations with the panel](#) on page 352

Inputting glissando lines with the panel

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.



NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input glissando lines between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.
 - You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.
-



PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to join with glissando lines.
For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.

3. In the **Glissandi** section, click the style of glissando line you want.

- **Glissando (Straight)** 
 - **Glissando (Wavy)** 
-

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between all selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
 - Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
 - By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

[Changing glissando line text](#) on page 1117

[Changing when glissando line text is shown](#) on page 1118

[Inputting jazz articulations with the panel](#) on page 352

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting jazz articulations with the popover

You can input jazz articulations using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.

PROCEDURE



1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with jazz articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.

4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Ornaments** .
 5. Enter the appropriate entry for the jazz articulation you want into the popover.
For example, enter **scoop** for a scoop or **fall** for a fall.
 6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different jazz articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover](#) on page 346

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145

[Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations](#) on page 1147

[Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations](#) on page 1148

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

Inputting jazz articulations with the panel

You can input jazz articulations using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE



- You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.
 - These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with jazz articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
5. In the **Jazz** section, click the jazz articulation you want.

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different jazz articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel](#) on page 347

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques

You can input guitar bends (including pre-bends and post-bends), vibrato bar techniques (including dips, dives, scoops, and dives and returns) and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can also input guitar pre-bends, post-bends, and vibrato bar pre-dives using properties in the Properties panel.

You can input guitar techniques during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input guitar bends during note input. You can only input guitar bends by adding them to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives](#) on page 1124

[Guitar post-bends](#) on page 1125

[Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Tapping](#) on page 1138

[Hammer-ons and pull-offs](#) on page 1139

Inputting guitar bends with the popover

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the ornaments popover. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.



NOTE

You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.
For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.
 2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
 3. Enter **bend** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
 - You can assign a key command for **Create Guitar Bend** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 355

[Inputting guitar post-bends](#) on page 356

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Inputting guitar bends with the panel

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the Ornaments panel. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE




- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input guitar bends between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.

- You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.
-

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.
For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
 3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend** .
-

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
 - You can assign a key command for **Create Guitar Bend** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
- [Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can input guitar pre-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that pre-bends should be played using the vibrato bar, a technique that is known as a “pre-dive”.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes before which you want to input guitar pre-bends/pre-dives. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
 3. Change the interval as required.
 4. Optional: To turn the guitar pre-bends into guitar pre-dives, activate **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
-

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends of the specified interval are input before the selected notes. They are shown as guitar pre-dives when **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox are both activated.

RELATED LINKS

[Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives](#) on page 1124

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137



[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Inputting guitar post-bends

You can input guitar post-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that post-bends are microtonal.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes after which you want to input guitar post-bends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Change the interval as required.
 - To turn the guitar post-bends into microtonal post-bends, activate **Microtone bend** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.

RESULT

Guitar post-bends of the specified interval are input after the selected notes. They are shown as microtonal when **Microtone bend** is activated.

RELATED LINKS

[Guitar post-bends](#) on page 1125

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Inputting guitar bends with the popover](#) on page 354

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Inputting vibrato bar dives

You can input vibrato bar dives, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.





Vibrato bar dives are notated using a smooth fall jazz articulation combined with a vibrato bar indication.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar dives.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
5. Enter **fallsmooth** into the popover to input a smooth fall jazz articulation.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
7. Optional: During note input, move the caret back to the position of the note with the smooth fall.
8. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
9. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input a vibrato bar indication.
10. Press **Return** to close the popover.
11. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.

RESULT

The smooth fall jazz articulation is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Vibrato bar indications added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

You can also input both smooth fall jazz articulations and vibrato bar indications using the Ornaments panel. When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want vibrato bar indications to show a line, you can lengthen them to give them duration.

RELATED LINKS

- [Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Ornaments popover](#) on page 341
- [Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223
- [Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145
- [Inputting jazz articulations with the popover](#) on page 351
- [Inputting jazz articulations with the panel](#) on page 352
- [Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations](#) on page 1147
- [Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations](#) on page 1148
- [Deleting jazz articulations](#) on page 1149
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent existing notes using the ornaments popover.

NOTE

You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE



You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.



NOTE

The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
3. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the dive.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

NOTE

The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

6. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
7. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the return.

8. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions, and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions.

If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point.

If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Inputting guitar bends with the popover](#) on page 354

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent existing notes using the Ornaments panel.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input vibrato bar dives and returns between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.
 - You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.
-

PREREQUISITE




You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.

NOTE

The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar**  to input the vibrato bar dive.
4. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

NOTE

The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

5. Click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar**  to input the vibrato bar return.
-

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions, and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions.

If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point.

If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
- [Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127
- [Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
- [Inputting vibrato bar dives](#) on page 356
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.



PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with vibrato bar scoops onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
 4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
 5. Enter **vibscoop** into the popover.
 6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover](#) on page 363

[Deleting guitar techniques](#) on page 1143

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the panel

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.




PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with vibrato bar scoops onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
5. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Scoop** .
-

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137



[Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel](#) on page 364

[Deleting guitar techniques](#) on page 1143

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dips using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
 4. Enter **vibdip** into the popover.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
 6. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar dip.
-

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Vibrato bar dips added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142



[Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover](#) on page 363


[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dips using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.

3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Dip** .
-

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position.

Vibrato bar dips added to existing music are input on each selected staff, at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected either note or item, according to your item input position setting.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Ornaments panel](#) on page 345

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142



[Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel](#) on page 364

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items that span the required duration.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
 4. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input the vibrato bar indication.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
 6. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.
-

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Vibrato bar indications added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.




RELATED LINKS

- [Ornaments popover](#) on page 341
- [Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Ornaments**  to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Line** .

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position.

Vibrato bar indications added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

- [Ornaments panel](#) on page 345
- [Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs

You can input hammer-ons/pull-offs on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. If you select multiple notes, Dorico Elements automatically inputs the appropriate slurs. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.



TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow / Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add hammer-ons/pull-offs.

NOTE

- If you want to input hammer-ons, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.
 - If you want to input pull-offs or tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.
 - If you want to input *ligados*, you must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C for a hammer-on then pull-off or D-C-D for a pull-off then hammer-on.
-

2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
 4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Ornaments** .
 5. Enter the appropriate entry for the hammer-on/pull-off you want into the popover. For example, enter **ho** for a hammer-on or **hopo** for a hammer-on then pull-off.
 6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The hammer-on/pull-off you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

If you selected multiple adjacent notes assigned to the same string, Dorico Elements automatically inputs slurs spanning the selected notes and centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on the slurs. For slurs with multiple hammer-on/pull-off indications, each indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu. To show hammer-on/pull-off indications centered on slurs, select all notes except the first note under each slur.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Hammer-ons and pull-offs](#) on page 1139

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142

[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
[Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332
[Deleting guitar techniques](#) on page 1143

Inputting tapping

You can input right-hand and left-hand tapping indications on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add tapping indications.

NOTE

If you want to input tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.

2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.

3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.

4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-O**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .

5. Enter the appropriate entry for the tapping indication you want into the popover.

For example, enter **tap** for right-hand tapping or **lhtappull** for left-hand tapping with pull-off.

6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The tapping indication you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, tapping indications appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add tapping indications to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Tapping](#) on page 1138

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
[Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142
[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
[Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature](#) on page 1332
[Deleting guitar techniques](#) on page 1143

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams

You can input playing techniques with the keyboard by using the playing techniques popover, and with the mouse by using the Playing Techniques panel.

You can input string indicators outside the staff in the same ways, using either the playing techniques popover or Playing Techniques panel.

You can input string indicators inside the staff using a property in the **String Indicators** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS



[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180
[Pedal lines](#) on page 1161
[Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153
[String indicators](#) on page 993
[Inputting playing techniques with the popover](#) on page 372
[Inputting playing techniques with the panel](#) on page 374
[Inputting pedal lines with the popover](#) on page 375
[Inputting pedal lines with the panel](#) on page 377
[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the popover](#) on page 379
[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the panel](#) on page 380
[Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover](#) on page 381
[Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel](#) on page 383
[Inputting string indicators inside the staff](#) on page 383

Playing techniques popover

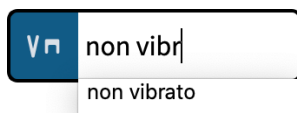
The following tables contain the entries for the playing techniques popover that you can use to input playing techniques, harp pedal diagrams, pedal lines, and retakes.

When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter. You can then select one of these playing techniques to input.

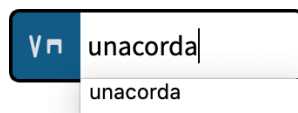
You can open the playing techniques popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-P**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Playing Techniques** .
- Select an existing playing technique and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Playing Technique**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a playing technique



Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a pedal line



Playing Techniques button in the Notations toolbox

Playing techniques

Playing technique	Popover entry
<i>Naturale</i> (nat.)	nat
<i>Vibrato</i>	vibrato
<i>Senza vibrato</i>	senza vibrato
Harmonic (o)	o
Con sord.	con sord
Strong air pressure	strong air pressure
Double-tongue	double-tongue
Down bow	downbow
Up bow	upbow
<i>Sul ponticello</i>	sul pont
<i>Sul tasto</i>	sul tasto
<i>Poco sul tasto</i>	pst
<i>Pizzicato</i>	pizz
<i>Spiccato</i>	spicc
<i>Arco</i>	arco
Tongue click (Stockhausen)	tongue click
Finger click (Stockhausen)	finger click
Vibraphone motor on	motor on
Vibraphone motor off	motor off

Playing technique	Popover entry
Open	open
Damp	damp
Damp (large)	damp large
Full barré	full barre
Half barré	half barre
Strum up	strum up
Strum down	strum down
Left hand	lh
Right hand	rh

This list is not comprehensive as there are many valid playing techniques. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of common playing techniques.

If you do not know the correct entry for a playing technique, start entering part of the playing technique and see if it becomes available in the popover menu.

NOTE

- To give playing techniques duration, add -> at the end of your entry, such as **vibrato->**. During note input, the duration of the playing technique extends as you continue inputting notes or advance the caret. When adding playing techniques to existing music, they are added as a group.
 - To input hidden playing techniques, enclose your popover entry in parentheses, such as **(pizz)**.
 - As playing techniques correspond to specific samples, they must be input as described or selected from the popover menu.
-

Pedal lines

Type of pedal line or retake	Popover entry
Sustain pedal line	ped
Retake in sustain pedal line	^, notch, or retake
Remove retake in sustain pedal line	nonotch
Stop sustain pedal line	*

Type of pedal line or retake	Popover entry
<i>Sostenuto</i> pedal line	sost
Stop <i>sostenuto</i> pedal line	s*
<i>Una corda</i> pedal line	unacorda
Stop <i>una corda</i> pedal line	u*

Harp pedaling

Example harp pedaling	Popover entry
D, C, B \flat , E \flat , F, G, A	DCB\flatE\flatFGA, B\flatE\flat, or --^ ^---
D, C \sharp , B, E, F \sharp , G \sharp , A	DC\sharpBEF\sharpG\sharpA, C\sharpF\sharpG\sharp, or -v- -vv-

TIP

The pipe character is optional.

String indicators outside the staff

Example string indicator	Popover entry
1	string1
3	string3

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Groups of playing techniques](#) on page 1191

[Pedal lines](#) on page 1161

[Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162

[Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Adding retakes with the popover](#) on page 377



[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the popover](#) on page 379

[Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover](#) on page 381

[Hiding/Showing playing techniques](#) on page 1183

Playing Techniques panel

The Playing Techniques panel contains the different playing techniques available in Dorico Elements, divided into instrument families. It is located in the right zone in Write mode. Pedal lines are included in the **Keyboard** section.

- You can hide/show the Playing Techniques panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Playing Techniques panel contains the following sections:

Common

Contains commonly used playing techniques that also apply to multiple different instrument families, such as “mute” and “legato”.

Wind

Contains playing techniques typically only used for wind instruments, such as “key clicks” and “whistle tones”.

Brass

Contains playing techniques typically only used for brass instruments, such as “cup mute” and “stopped”.

Unpitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for unpitched percussion instruments, such as “rim” and “scrape”.

Pitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for pitched percussion instruments, such as “motor on” and “½ Ped.” for vibraphones.

Keyboard

Contains playing techniques typically only used for keyboard instruments, such as “Ped.” and different pedal depression levels.

Choral

Contains playing techniques typically only used for the voice, such as “mouth open” and “tongue click”.

Strings

Contains playing techniques typically only used for string instruments, such as “col legno battuto” and “down bow”.

Guitar

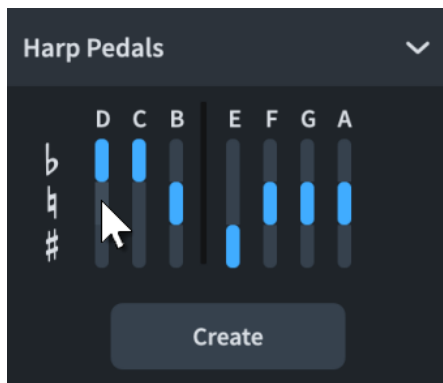
Contains playing techniques typically only used for guitars and fretted instruments, such as string indicators, “half barré”, and “strum up”.

Harp Pedals

Allows you to create harp pedal diagrams.

You can change the pitch settings for pedals by clicking the column section that corresponds to the required pitch alteration, as displayed by accidentals on the left.

You can then input the harp pedal diagram by clicking **Create**.



TIP

You can hover your mouse pointer over the options in each section to show the name of each playing technique.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel](#) on page 383

[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the panel](#) on page 380

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Pedal lines](#) on page 1161

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153



Inputting playing techniques with the popover

You can input playing techniques using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- You can only enter one playing technique into the popover during note input. You can enter two playing techniques when adding playing techniques to existing music if they are separated by ->.
 - You can input playing techniques in the middle of tie chains by starting note input, then moving the caret to the required rhythmic position.
-

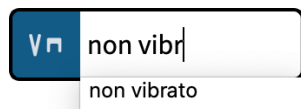
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration or a separate playing technique for each note, select items that span the required duration.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-P**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Playing Techniques** .
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the playing technique you want into the popover.


For example, enter **pizz** or **non vibrato->**.

When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.

- To give the playing technique duration, add **->** at the end.
- To input a hidden playing technique, enclose its entry in parentheses, such as **(pizz)**.



5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

Open-ended playing techniques, such as **non vibrato->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret**  in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.

6. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended playing techniques by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering one of the following entries:
 - To end the current playing technique with another playing technique, enter that playing technique. For example, enter **vibrato**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
 - To end the current playing technique with another open-ended playing technique, enter that playing technique followed by **->**. For example, enter **vibrato->**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
 - To end the current playing technique without inputting another playing technique, enter **?** into the popover. This leaves the current playing technique with a duration line rather than a continuation line.

RESULT

The specified playing techniques are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

Adjoining playing techniques, or playing techniques that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding playing techniques to existing notes.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If you included an open-ended playing technique with duration, it extends automatically when you advance the caret or input notes.

Playing techniques added to existing music are input according to their playback technique and your selection:

- If you selected a single item on each staff, a playing technique without duration is input on each staff at the corresponding rhythmic position.
- If you selected a range of items on each staff and input a playing technique with an **Attribute** playback technique, a playing technique is input at the rhythmic position of either only notes or any items in the selection, according to your item input position setting.
- If you selected a range of items on each staff and input a playing technique with a **Direction** playback technique, a playing technique with duration is input that spans either only notes or any items in the selection, according to your item input position setting. For playing

techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can move playing techniques within playing technique groups, lengthen/shorten playing techniques, and hide/show playing technique duration lines.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

- [Groups of playing techniques](#) on page 1191
- [Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186
- [Hiding/Showing playing techniques](#) on page 1183
- [Playback techniques](#) on page 787
- [Edit Playback Techniques dialog](#) on page 788
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545



Inputting playing techniques with the panel

You can input playing techniques using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- You cannot input playing techniques with duration in sequence, which automatically groups them, when using the panel. If you want to input playing techniques with duration in sequence, you can use the popover.
- You can input playing techniques in the middle of tie chains by starting note input, then moving the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If you want to input the same playing technique in multiple places, change your mouse input preference to **Load pointer with item** so that you do not have to reselect the playing technique for each note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration or a separate playing technique for each note, select items that span the required duration.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  to show the Playing Techniques panel.
 3. In the Playing Techniques panel, click the playing technique you want.
-

RESULT

The specified playing technique is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position, even if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

Playing techniques added to existing music are input according to their playback technique and your selection:

- If you selected a single item on each staff, a playing technique without duration is input on each staff at the corresponding rhythmic position.
- If you selected a range of items on each staff and input a playing technique with an **Attribute** playback technique, a playing technique is input at the rhythmic position of either only notes or any items in the selection, according to your item input position setting.
- If you selected a range of items on each staff and input a playing technique with a **Direction** playback technique, a playing technique with duration is input that spans either only notes or any items in the selection, according to your item input position setting. For playing techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you want to show transition lines between playing techniques, you can group them together.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Edit Playback Techniques dialog](#) on page 788

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Grouping playing techniques together](#) on page 1192



[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

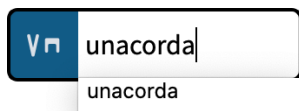
Inputting pedal lines with the popover


You can input pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. Because pedal lines extend automatically as you input notes during note input, you can also input retakes when you reach the appropriate rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - On each staff where you want to input a pedal line, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-P**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Playing Techniques** .
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the pedal line you want into the popover.
For example, enter **ped** for a sustain pedal line.
- When you start entering a pedal line into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid pedal lines containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.



4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
The pedal line is input.
5. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the pedal line in any of the following ways:
- Press **Space**.
 - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret** .
- The pedal line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
6. Optional: During note input, input retakes by opening the playing techniques popover again at the appropriate rhythmic position and entering **^** or **retake** into the popover.
7. Optional: During note input, stop the pedal line by opening the playing techniques popover again and enter the appropriate entry into the popover.
For example, enter ***** to stop a sustain pedal line.
8. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, pedal lines start at the caret position, and end at the caret position.

Pedal lines added to existing music span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

NOTE

Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines; for example, to show a sign at the end.

RELATED LINKS

[Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162

[Positions of pedal lines](#) on page 1167

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209

Adding retakes with the popover

You can add retakes to sustain pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.



NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to input retakes.
 2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-P**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Playing Techniques** .
 4. Enter **^** or **retake** into the popover.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, retakes are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends.

Outside of note input, retakes are input at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff.

TIP

You can also input retakes by selecting notes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines and choosing **Edit > Notations > Pedal Lines > Add Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

[Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162

[Playing techniques popover](#) on page 367

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173

[Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223

[Removing retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1167

Inputting pedal lines with the panel



You can input pedal lines using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

- When using the panel, you cannot input pedal lines during note input.

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, on each staff where you want to input a pedal line, select items that span the required duration.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  to show the Playing Techniques panel.
 3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.
 4. Click the pedal line you want.
-

RESULT

Pedal lines added to existing music span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

TIP

Alternatively, when nothing is selected, you can click the pedal line you want in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, then click and drag in the music area to input a pedal line and extend it to the duration you want.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines; for example, to show a sign at the end.
- You can add retakes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines.

NOTE

Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playing Techniques panel](#) on page 371
- [Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162
- [Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213
- [Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173
- [Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Adding retakes with the panel

You can add retakes to existing sustain pedal lines using the Playing Techniques panel.




NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to input retakes.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  to show the Playing Techniques panel.
 3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.
 4. Click **Retake Pedal** .
-

RESULT

The retake is input at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff.

TIP

- Alternatively, when nothing is selected in the music area, you can click **Retake Pedal** in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, and then click at each rhythmic position where you want to input the retake.
 - You can also input retakes by selecting notes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines and choosing **Edit > Notations > Pedal Lines > Add Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162

[Playing Techniques panel](#) on page 371

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173



[Removing retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1167

Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the popover

You can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major. Any pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedaling, excluding the two lowest harp strings, appear red when colors for notes out of range are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input on a harp staff.
 - Select an item on a harp staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a harp pedal diagram.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-P**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Playing Techniques** .
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the harp pedals you want.
For example, enter:
 - **C#F#G#** or **-v-|-vv-** for C#, F#, and G# pedals, such as in A major.
 - **BbEb** or **--^|^---** for B \flat and E \flat pedals, such as in B \flat major.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The corresponding harp pedal diagram is input at the selected rhythmic position. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

During note input, harp pedal diagrams are input at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing techniques popover](#) on page 367

[Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153

[Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts](#) on page 1155

[Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 1154

[Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064

[Signposts](#) on page 450



Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the panel

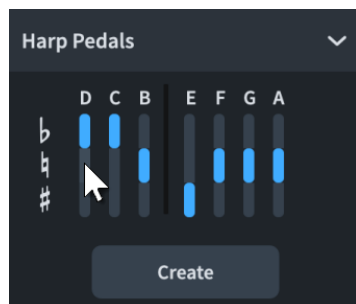
You can input harp pedal diagrams using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

- You cannot input harp pedal diagrams with the panel during note input.
 - These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on a harp staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a harp pedal diagram.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.
4. For each pedal, click the column section that corresponds to the required pitch alteration, as displayed by accidentals on the left.



5. Click **Create**.
-

RESULT

The corresponding harp pedal diagram is input at the selected rhythmic position. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playing Techniques panel](#) on page 371
- [Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153
- [Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts](#) on page 1155
- [Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 1154
- [Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064
- [Signposts](#) on page 450

Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music

You can automatically calculate suitable harp pedal diagrams based on the notes you have already input, either from a single point onwards or within a selected region.

If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major. Any pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedaling, excluding the two lowest harp strings, appear red when colors for notes out of range are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the region you want to use to calculate harp pedaling in one of the following ways:
 - Select an existing single note from which you want to calculate harp pedaling.
 - Select a range of notes for which you want to calculate harp pedaling.

NOTE

Dorico Elements ignores the lowest two harp strings, C and D, when calculating harp pedals.

2. Choose **Write > Calculate Harp Pedals**.
-

RESULT

A harp pedal diagram is input at the start of your selection. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

RELATED LINKS




- [Generating chord symbols from notes](#) on page 326

Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items that span the required duration.
2. Optional: During note input, if you want to input notes and notations onto multiple staves, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-P**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Playing Techniques** .
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the string indicator you want into the popover.
For example, enter **string1** for just a string 1 indicator or **string3->** for a string 3 indicator with duration.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
Open-ended string indicators, such as **string3->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret**  in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
 6. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended string indicators by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering **?** into the popover.
This leaves the current string indicator with a duration line. You can also enter another string indicator into the popover, but this joins the current string indicator to the following one with a continuation line rather than a duration line, which is a less common notation.
-

RESULT

The specified string indicators are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If you included an open-ended string indicator with duration, it extends automatically when you advance the caret or input notes.

String indicators added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting. String indicators with duration show a duration line, which is dashed with a hook cap end by default.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing techniques popover](#) on page 367

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

[Extending the caret to multiple staves](#) on page 222

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

[Fretboard panel](#) on page 208

[Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209



Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- You cannot input string indicators with duration during note input when using the panel. You can only do so when using the popover.
 - These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If you want to input the same string indicator in multiple places, change your mouse input preference to **Load pointer with item** so that you do not have to reselect the string indicator for each note.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on each staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items that span the required duration.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Playing Techniques**  to show the Playing Techniques panel.
 3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Guitar** section.
 4. Click the string indicator you want.
-

RESULT

The specified string indicator is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position, even if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

String indicators added to existing music are input at the rhythmic position of, or span the duration of, either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting. String indicators with duration show a duration line, which is dashed with a hook cap end by default.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing Techniques panel](#) on page 371

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting string indicators inside the staff



You can show a string indicator inside the staff for each fretted instrument note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. Dorico Elements

automatically detects a string that each pitch could be played on, but you can also specify the string manually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to notes belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments beside which you want to show string indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.
-

RESULT

String indicators are shown in the staff beside each selected note. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Unless you have specified a string for each note, the string number shown in the string indicators is calculated automatically. String indicators inside the staff for open strings appear as a bold number zero without a circle enclosure.

By default, string indicators appear on the left of noteheads without left-hand fingerings and on the right of noteheads with left-hand fingerings.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can specify the string on which notes are played, which affects the number shown in their corresponding string indicators.
- You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059

[Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators](#) on page 995

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Input methods for lines

You can input both horizontal and vertical lines by using the Lines panel. There is no popover for lines.

TIP

If you want lines to represent specific notations that affect playback if applicable, you can instead input these notations directly. For example, dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills all have dedicated features in Dorico Elements.

RELATED LINKS

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367



[Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

Lines panel

The Lines panel contains the different types of lines available in Dorico Elements. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Lines panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Lines**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Lines panel contains the following sections:

Horizontal

Contains the different horizontal lines available. The options at the top of the section allow you to determine the attachment type for the start and end of horizontal lines you subsequently input.

Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and the start and end can have different attachment types.



Vertical

Contains the different vertical lines available.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Line components](#) on page 1196

Inputting horizontal lines

You can input horizontal lines between existing notes or spanning a specified duration using the Lines panel. Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and can have different attachment types at their start and end.

You can also input barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines that apply to all staves.

NOTE






- You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.
- If you want to input notehead-attached horizontal lines to represent glissandi, you can instead input glissando lines directly.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
 - If you want to input a notehead-attached line, select the notes you want to join with a line.
 - If you want to input a barline-/rhythmic position-attached line, select items that span the required duration of the line.
 - If you want to input a horizontal line that is attached to noteheads at one end but barlines/rhythmic positions at the other end, select the required note and any item at the required rhythmic position of the other end.

TIP

You can input horizontal lines on multiple selected staves simultaneously. However, notehead-attached lines can only join notes belonging to the same player, although they can be in different voices and on different staves.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Lines**  to show the Lines panel.
3. In the **Horizontal** section, choose one of the following options for both **Start** and **End**:
 - **Attach to notehead** 
 - **Attach to barline (where available)** 
 - **Attach to rhythmic position** 
4. Input a line with the specified attachments in one of the following ways:
 - To input a notehead-attached line or barline-/rhythmic position-attached line on the selected staves only, click it in the **Horizontal** section.
 - To input a barline-/rhythmic position-attached line that applies to all staves, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Horizontal** section.

RESULT

A horizontal line with the specified attachments is input. They are positioned according to their attachment types and their rhythmic positions.

Barline-/Rhythmic position-attached lines span the duration of either only notes or any items on each selected staff, according to your item input position setting.

Horizontal lines that apply to all staves are categorized as system objects. Therefore, they follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the placement and staff position of barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Positions of lines](#) on page 1197

[Length of lines](#) on page 1203

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Adding text to lines](#) on page 1208

[Changing the placement of horizontal lines](#) on page 1201

[Inputting glissando lines with the popover](#) on page 349

[Changing the item input position setting](#) on page 213

Inputting vertical lines

You can input vertical lines on existing notes using the Lines panel, including across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.



NOTE

- If you want to input vertical lines to represent arpeggios, you can instead input arpeggio signs directly.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. You cannot create cross-staff and cross-voice vertical lines if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add a vertical line.

NOTE

- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff vertical lines. However, you cannot create cross-staff vertical lines between different instruments, even if they are held by the same player.
 - Vertical lines are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic positions.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Lines**  to show the Lines panel.
 3. In the **Vertical** section, click the line you want.

RESULT

The vertical line specified is input to the left of the selected notes. Its length is adjusted automatically so that it spans the range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the order of lines when multiple exist at the same rhythmic position and show vertical lines on the right of notes.
- You can lengthen/shorten vertical lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Length of lines](#) on page 1203

[Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines](#) on page 1204

[Adding text to lines](#) on page 1208

[Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes](#) on page 1198

[Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines](#) on page 1199



[Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover](#) on page 347

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting text items

You can input text at specific rhythmic positions in the score using text items. You can input staff-attached text for single staves or input system-attached text that applies to all staves and appears in all applicable layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input text.
 2. Open the text editor in any of the following ways:
 - To input staff-attached text, press **Shift-X** or click **Popovers** , then **Text**  in the Notations toolbox.
 - To input staff-attached text with a specific paragraph style, choose **Write > Create Text > [Paragraph style]**.
 - To input system-attached text, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-X**.
 - To input system-attached text with a specific paragraph style, choose **Write > Create System Text > [Paragraph style]**.
 3. Enter the text you want.
 - To insert a line break, press **Return**.
 - To insert a music symbol, right-click in the text item and choose **Insert Music Text** from the context menu to open the **Insert Music Text** dialog. Select the music symbol you want to insert, then click **OK**.
 - To insert a Unicode character, enter its four-character hexadecimal code, then press **Alt/Opt-X**.
 4. Optional: Format the text using the text editor options.
 5. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd-Return** to close the text editor.
-

RESULT

During note input, the text you entered into the text editor is input at the caret position. When adding text to existing music, it is input at the position of the earliest selected item.

If you did not change or specify the paragraph style, the text item uses the **Default Text** paragraph style.

Text items are automatically placed above the staves to which they apply and follow the default settings for the vertical position of text.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, system-attached text is categorized as a system object. Therefore, system-attached text follows your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.
- If you override the paragraph style of text in an individual text item or text frame, such as by making text bold, any changes you later make to corresponding parameters of the paragraph style are not applied to the overridden text. However, font size overrides are combined with the font size in the paragraph style.
- You can assign key commands for inputting text with specific paragraph styles, for both **Create Text** and **Create System Text**, on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Text items](#) on page 1351

[Types of text](#) on page 1352

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

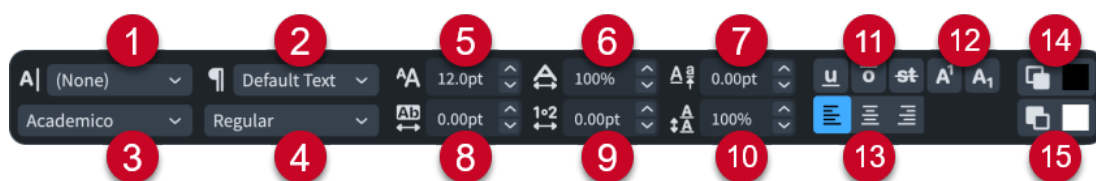
[Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance](#) on page 1357

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Text editor options in Write mode

The text editor allows you to add and format text. In Write mode, it opens when you add or edit text items.



The text editor provides the following options:

1 Character Style

Allows you to change the appearance of selected text within paragraphs. This overrides the paragraph style applied to the corresponding paragraph.

2 Paragraph Style

Allows you to change the paragraph style applied to the whole text item. Depending on the paragraph style, this can change the appearance, formatting, and alignment of the text.

3 Font

Allows you to change the font family of selected text.

4 Font Style

Allows you to change the font style of selected text.

NOTE

- Depending on the font selected, some font styles might not be available.
- You can also change the font style using the following standard key commands:
 - **Ctrl/Cmd-B** for bold
 - **Ctrl/Cmd-I** for italic

5 Font Size

Allows you to change the size of selected text.

TIP

You can also change the font size using the following key commands:

- **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-.** to increase the font size
- **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-,** to decrease the font size

6 Font Stretch

Allows you to make selected text wider or narrower.

7 Baseline Shift

Allows you to shift the baseline of selected text gradually up or down.

8 Letter Spacing

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the characters of selected text.

9 Word Spacing

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the words of selected text.

10 Leading

Allows you to increase/decrease the line spacing of the whole text item.

11 Line Types

Allows you to show any of the following types of lines, in any combination, on selected text:

- **Underline**
- **Overline**
- **Strikethrough**

TIP

You can also make selected text underlined by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-U**.

12 Script Types

Allows you to position selected text in one of the following positions relative to the text on the baseline:

- **Superscript**
- **Subscript**

13 Alignment

Allows you to choose one of the following alignments for the text item relative to its rhythmic position:

- **Align Left**
- **Align Center**

- **Align Right**

14 **Foreground Color**

Allows you to change the color of selected text.

15 **Background Color**

Allows you to change the background color of selected text.

NOTE

If you override the paragraph style of text in an individual text item or text frame, such as by making text bold, any changes you later make to corresponding parameters of the paragraph style are not applied to the overridden text. However, font size overrides are combined with the font size in the paragraph style.

RELATED LINKS

[Types of text](#) on page 1352

[Text items](#) on page 1351

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

[Text formatting](#) on page 753

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

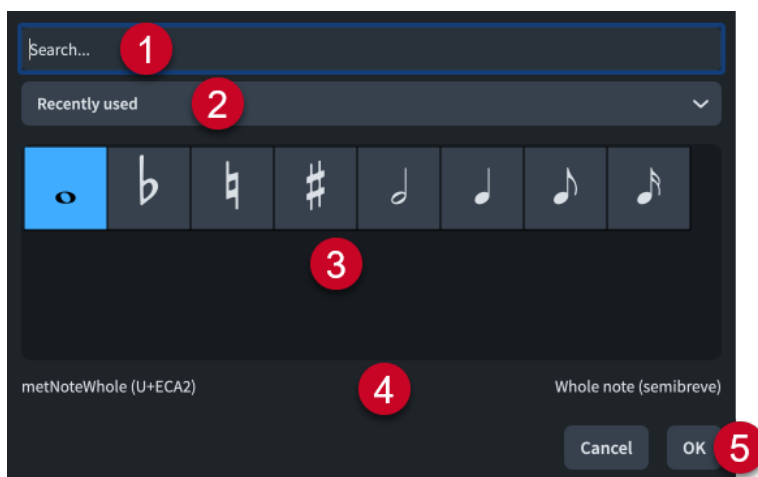
[Character Styles dialog](#) on page 759

[Missing Fonts dialog](#) on page 73

Insert Music Text dialog

The **Insert Music Text** dialog allows you to add music symbols, such as accidentals and note symbols, to text items.

- You can open the **Insert Music Text** dialog when inputting or editing text in a text item by right-clicking and choosing **Insert Music Text** from the context menu.



The **Insert Music Text** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to search for music symbols by their SMuFL name. When you start entering text, a menu appears that shows valid music symbols containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.

2 **Range menu**

Allows you to select which SMuFL glyph range is available in the music symbol selector. By default, **Recently used** is selected, which contains common accidentals and note symbols in addition to music symbols you have used in recent projects.

3 Music symbol selector

Contains the available music symbols in the selected range or that match your entry.

4 Name

Displays the SMuFL name and description, where available, of the selected music symbol.

5 OK

Inserts the selected music symbol at the cursor position with the **Music Text** character style applied to them automatically.

You can also insert music symbols by selecting them and pressing **Return**, or double-clicking them.

Editing text in text items

You can edit the text shown in text items; for example, to replace individual words or to change their formatting.



PROCEDURE

1. Open the text editor for an existing text item in any of the following ways:
 - Select the text item and press **Return**.
 - Double-click the text item.
 2. Edit the text in the text item.
For example, you can format the text using the text editor options.
 3. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd-Return** to close the text editor.
-

Inputting lyrics

You can input lyrics by entering text into the lyrics popover, and you can advance the lyrics popover to the next note on the staff without closing and reopening it for every note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the note on the staff from which you want to start inputting lyrics.
2. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-L**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Lyrics** .
3. Optional: Change the type of lyric in one of the following ways:
 - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
 - To input lyrics above the staff, press **Shift - Up Arrow**.
 - To input chorus lines, press **Up Arrow**.
 - To input lyric line translations, press **Alt/Opt - Down Arrow**.
4. Enter the word or syllable you want to add to the selected note into the popover.
 - To include multiple words in a single lyric, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Space** for a non-breaking space.
 - To include a hyphen within a single word or syllable, press **Alt/Opt--** (hyphen).

- To include an elision in a lyric, press **_** (underscore).
5. Advance the popover to the next note in one of the following ways:
- If you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.
 - If you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word that is not the final syllable, press **-** (hyphen).
 - If you do not want the syllable to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.

TIP

For lyrics sung over multiple notes, you can press these key commands multiple times until the lyrics popover reaches the note where you want to input the next lyric.

6. Continue entering words and syllables into the popover for the rest of the notes to which you want to add lyrics.
7. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover.
The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.
-

RESULT

The text you entered into the popover is input as lyrics of the type indicated by the icon on the left-hand side of the popover.

When you advance the popover to the next note by pressing **-**, a hyphen appears after the last entered lyric. This is used for multi-syllabic words across multiple notes.

When you advance the popover by pressing **Space**, either a gap or a lyric extender line appears after the last entered lyric, depending on the available horizontal space and whether the note appears as a tie chain. This is used for single-syllable words or for the final syllable in multi-syllabic words.

TIP

- You can later change whether a gap or a hyphen appears between lyrics by changing their syllable type.
 - You can also input lyrics by copying and pasting them; for example, from an external text editor.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Copying and pasting lyrics](#) on page 1032
- [Lyrics](#) on page 1029
- [Navigation during lyric input](#) on page 395
- [Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029
- [Types of syllables in lyrics](#) on page 1031
- [Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035
- [Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047
- [Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045
- [Elision slurs](#) on page 1050
- [Lyric text editing](#) on page 1043

Lyrics popover

You can input lyrics, including chorus lines and lyric line translations, using the lyrics popover. You can use key commands to change the type of lyric being input at any time.

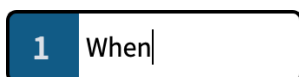
You can open the lyrics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-L**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Lyrics** .
- Select an existing lyric and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Lyrics**.

Lyric lines

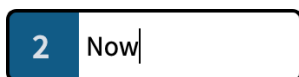
The popover automatically opens ready to input lyrics into Line 1, except if you are changing an existing lyric.

The number shown on the left-hand side of the lyrics popover indicates the lyric line into which the lyric is input.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 1

You can change the lyric line number by pressing **Up Arrow** and **Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 2

Lyric lines above the staff

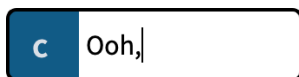
You can input lyrics into lines above the staff by pressing **Shift - Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

You can then press **Up Arrow** and **Down Arrow** to change the lyric line number above the staff.

Chorus lines

You can input chorus lines by pressing **Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open. You can do this when inputting lyrics below the staff and above the staff.

A **c**, for "chorus lines", is shown on the left-hand side of the popover.

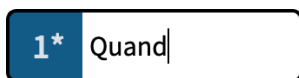


The lyrics popover with an example entry for a chorus line

Lyric line translations

You can input lyric line translations by pressing **Alt/Opt - Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

An asterisk (*) is shown beside the lyric line number for which you are inputting a lyric line translation on the left-hand side of the popover.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for a lyric line translation

Navigation during lyric input

You can move the lyrics popover to input new lyrics and edit existing lyrics without having to close and reopen the lyrics popover.

Popover navigation

Key command

Finish the current word and advance the popover to the next note or chord.

Space

Finish the current syllable and advance the popover to the next note or chord.

- (hyphen)

Advance the popover to the next note without showing an extension line or hyphen.

Right Arrow

Move the cursor to the next/previous letter. If the next/previous letter is in another lyric, the popover advances to that lyric.

Right Arrow / Left Arrow

Move the popover forwards/backwards from syllable to syllable within lines of lyrics.

Alt/Opt-Right Arrow / Alt/Opt-Left Arrow

Add non-breaking spaces without advancing the popover.

Shift-Alt/Opt-Space

Add a hyphen within a single word or syllable without advancing the popover.

Alt/Opt-- (hyphen)



Add an elision slur within a word or syllable.

_ (underscore)

Inputting figured bass

You can input figured bass using the figured bass popover, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the figured bass popover during note input; however, inputting a figure stops note input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to start inputting figured bass.
2. Open the figured bass popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-G**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Figured Bass** .

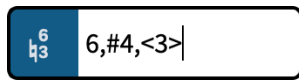
NOTE

If you selected an item on a staff that has local figures at earlier rhythmic positions, the figured bass popover is automatically set to input local figures when it opens.

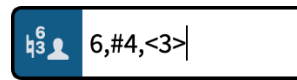
-
3. Optional: Change the type of figure you want to enter in one of the following ways:
 - To input local figures, press **Alt/Opt-L**.

- To input global figures, press **Alt/Opt-G**.

The popover icon updates to show the current type.



Figured bass popover when inputting a global figure



Figured bass popover when inputting a local figure

4. Enter the figure you want into the figured bass popover.

For example, enter **4->3d=4r=2** for a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note. For bracketed figures, include parentheses around the required figures or accidentals, such as **(#)64(3)**.

If you want Dorico Elements to follow your entry exactly, include **O**, **o**, or **!** at the start of your entry. For example, to force Dorico Elements to show 5,3 figures.

5. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the prevailing time signature.

TIP

You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.

6. Optional: To input an individual local figure when the popover is set to global, and vice versa, press **Alt/Opt-Return** to input the figure.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The figured bass specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show figured bass in the current layout, its player is automatically updated to show them. If Dorico Elements cannot identify the bass note at the position of a figure, such as if you input a figure on a rest, it appears as a signpost.

Dorico Elements calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico Elements to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

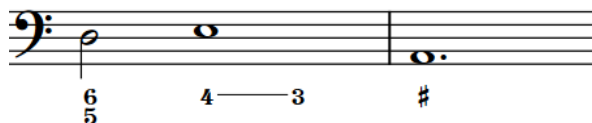
Global figures apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves whose players are set to show figured bass. Local figures only apply to the selected instrument, and by default refer to its lowest staff. Local figures always appear, even if global figures exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

- Unless you included an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of the resulting figure is determined by the default settings in Dorico Elements
 - The appearance of *tasto solo* indications depends on the formatting of the **Figured Bass Tasto Solo** paragraph style.
 - You can move figures graphically in Engrave mode, including changing the graphical length of hold lines.
-

EXAMPLE

Entering **4->3d=4r=2** into the figured bass popover produces a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can hide/show figured bass above specific players in each layout independently.
- You can simplify compound figures; that is, figures 9 and above.
- You can show figures on individual rests.


RELATED LINKS

- [Figured bass on page 957](#)
- [Figured bass hold lines on page 961](#)
- [Navigation during figured bass input on page 400](#)
- [Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 958](#)
- [Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines on page 961](#)
- [Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines on page 962](#)
- [Moving figured bass resolutions on page 966](#)
- [Paragraph Styles dialog on page 756](#)
- [Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 960](#)
- [Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines on page 963](#)
- [Simplifying figured bass compound intervals on page 969](#)
- [Showing figured bass on rests on page 959](#)
- [Fixing the current appearance of figured bass on page 969](#)

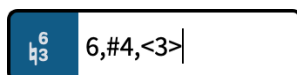
Figured bass popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the figured bass popover to input the different possible figured bass figures, including alterations and suspensions.

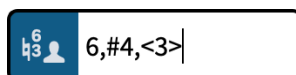
You can open the figured bass popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-G**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Figured Bass** .
- Choose **Write > Create Figured Bass**.

When inputting global figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a global figure



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a local figure



Figured Bass button in the Notations toolbox

Figures and suspensions

Type of figure	Example popover entry
Figures (1-19)	1, 2, 3, and so on, up to 19
Bracketed figures or accidentals	(#643), #64(3), (#)643, and so on
Figures determined by chord symbols Dorico Elements automatically converts chord symbols, as you would enter into the chord symbols popover, into correct figured bass.	Em7, Amaj7, or G/B, and so on
<i>tasto solo</i>	ts or tasto
Hold duration	d=2 (number of quarter notes) or d=1/2n (fraction of bass note duration)
Multiple figures	6#42 or 6,#4,2
TIP You can separate figures with commas to remove ambiguity.	
Hide figures	<3> or {3}
Suspensions	4->3, 4_3, or 4~3
Suspension duration; that is, the duration between suspension and resolution figures	r=2 (number of quarter notes) or r=1/2n (fraction of bass note duration)
Hold and suspension durations both specified For example, a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.	4->3d=4r=2 or 4->3d=1nr=1/2n
Follow Engraving Options for this figure only	R, r, V, v, or ?
NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	
Follow input literally for this figure only	O, o, or !
NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	

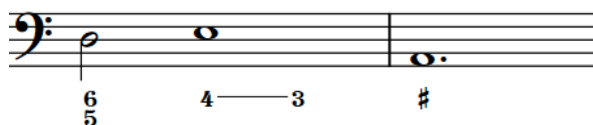
This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different figures.

NOTE

- Unless you include an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of resulting figures is determined by Dorico Elements's default settings.
- The appearance of *tasto solo* indications depends on the formatting of the **Figured Bass Tasto Solo** paragraph style.

EXAMPLE

Entering **4->3d=4r=2** into the figured bass popover produces a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.



Accidentals and alterations

Type of accidental/alteration	Popover entry
Sharp	# or s
TIP	
For raised thirds, you can enter just without the number.	
Flat	b or f
Natural	N or n
Double sharp	x, ##, or ds
Triple sharp	x#, #x, ###, or ts
Double flat	bb or db
Triple flat	bbb or tb
Raise figure by a half-step (semitone)	+
Lower figure by a half-step (semitone)	-
Diminished figure	d
Unaltered figure	u

RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Figured bass](#) on page 957
- [Figured bass hold lines](#) on page 961
- [Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines](#) on page 961
- [Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines](#) on page 962
- [Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines](#) on page 963
- [Showing single brackets on figured bass](#) on page 960
- [Chord symbols popover](#) on page 320
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Navigation during figured bass input

You can move the figured bass popover manually by different amounts to input figured bass figures at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	Space
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	Shift-Space
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	Tab
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	Shift-Tab
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Next/Previous note or rest• Next/Previous rhythmic grid position• Next/Previous character in existing figure's entry	Right Arrow / Left Arrow
Move the popover to the next/previous figure.	Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow / Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow

RELATED LINKS

- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Inputting rehearsal marks

You can input rehearsal marks with the mouse and the keyboard. You can input rehearsal marks during note input and later by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.

- Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a rehearsal mark. For example, a barline or a note.

NOTE

You can only input one rehearsal mark at a time, even if multiple items are selected.

2. Input a rehearsal mark in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-A**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Rehearsal Marks** .
-

RESULT

A rehearsal mark is input at the selected barline, or at the rhythmic position of other selected items.

The order of rehearsal marks is updated automatically, meaning you can input them in any order, including before and between existing rehearsal marks.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to change the letter/number displayed in the rehearsal mark, you can change its index and/or sequence type.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Rehearsal marks](#) on page 1216

[Changing the index of rehearsal marks](#) on page 1217

[Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type](#) on page 1218

[Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks](#) on page 1219

[Going to rehearsal marks](#) on page 442

[Changing your mouse input settings](#) on page 211

Inputting markers/timecodes

You can input markers at specific positions in time. In Dorico Elements, timecodes are automatically shown alongside markers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, move the playhead to the time position where you want to input a marker.
 2. Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-M** to open the **Add Marker** dialog.
 3. Enter the marker text you want into the **Text** field.
 4. Optional: Change the timecode in the **Timecode** field.
 5. Click **OK** to input the marker and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

A marker is input at the timecode position set in the **Add Marker** dialog, which by default is the position of the playhead. It shows the text you entered, or the default text "Marker" if you did not change the marker text, and a timecode reflecting its position.

TIP

You can also input markers by clicking **Add Marker**  in the **Markers** section of the Video panel, or by using the Markers track in Play mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Markers](#) on page 1221

[Timecodes](#) on page 1226

[Moving the playhead](#) on page 538

[Editing marker text](#) on page 1223


[Changing the timecodes of markers](#) on page 1224

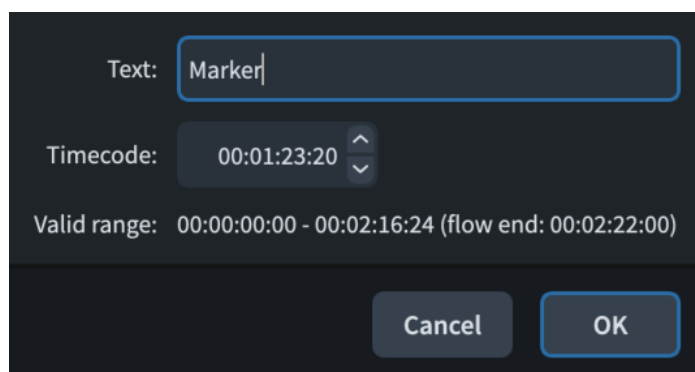
[Video panel](#) on page 402

[Markers track](#) on page 534

Add Marker dialog

The **Add Marker** dialog allows you to input markers with custom text at specific timecodes.

- The **Add Marker** dialog opens automatically when you input markers in Write mode, either by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-M** or by clicking **Add Marker**  in the **Markers** section of the Video panel.



The **Add Marker** dialog contains the following options:

Text

Allows you to enter custom text that is shown in the marker.

Timecode



Allows you to specify the timecode at which you want to input the marker. For example, if you already know the timecodes for each marker, you can enter them directly rather than positioning the playhead at the position of each marker.

Valid range

Displays the timecode range of the flow.

Video panel

The Video panel in Write mode allows you to access the **Video Properties** dialog, and to input and edit markers and timecodes. You can also define markers as important and calculate suitable tempos for them. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Video panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Video**  in the Notations toolbox.
You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

In the **Video** section of the Video panel, you can click **Properties** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.

The **Markers** section of the Video panel contains a table of markers, divided into the following columns:

Timecode

Shows the timecode of the marker. You can edit the timecode by double-clicking in the field.

Text



Shows the text of the marker. You can edit the text by double-clicking in the field.

Imp.

Stands for “important”. Allows you to define markers as important by activating their checkbox in this column.

When markers are defined as important, their entry uses a bold font in the table and they are considered when finding a suitable tempo in the **Find Tempo** dialog.

The action bar at the bottom of the table contains the following options:

- **Add Marker** : Adds a marker at the playhead position.
- **Delete Marker** : Deletes the selected marker.

NOTE

You can only delete one marker at a time.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Video Properties dialog](#) on page 190

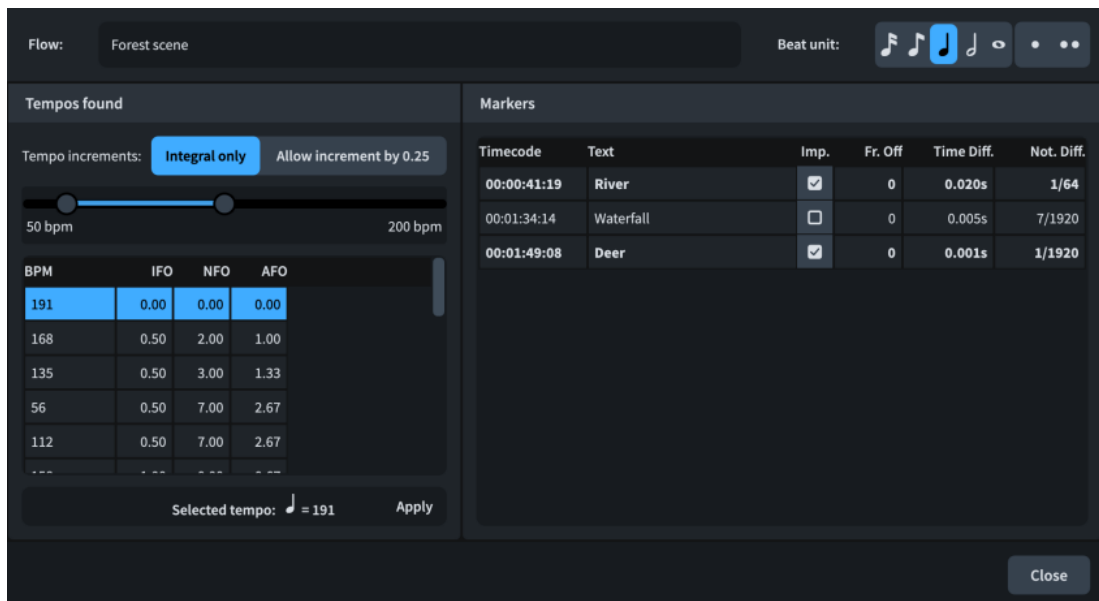
Find Tempo dialog

The **Find Tempo** dialog allows you to calculate tempos that best accommodate your important markers; for example, by identifying which tempos cause markers to coincide as closely as possible with strong beats.

- You can open the **Find Tempo** dialog in Write mode by clicking **Find Tempo** in the **Markers** section of the Video panel.

NOTE

- The **Find Tempo** dialog only considers markers in a single flow. You can change which flow by selecting an item in the corresponding flow and then opening the dialog.
 - The **Find Tempo** dialog is only available if you have input at least one marker in the flow and defined at least one marker as important.
-



The **Find Tempo** dialog contains the following options and sections:

Flow

Shows the name of the flow whose tempo you are determining. This field is read-only.

Beat unit

Allows you to change the beat unit considered for the tempo. For example, if the time signature for the flow is 6/8, you might want to change the beat unit to a dotted quarter note.

Tempo increments

Allows you to filter the suggested tempos according to their precision.

- **Integral only:** Only whole number tempos, that is, tempos without decimal places, are suggested.
- **Allow increment by 0.25:** Allows tempos with decimal places of .25, .5, and .75 to be suggested.

Tempo range

Allows you to set the minimum/maximum tempos you want to consider.

Tempos found

Contains a list of possible tempos that you can select to see how they affect the position of your markers relative to beats. The list is updated automatically when you change options such as **Tempo range** and **Beat unit**.

The list contains columns for the following information:

- **BPM:** Stands for “beats per minute”. Lists different possible tempos according to their metronome mark value.
- **IFO:** Stands for “important frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which important markers miss significant beats, either before or after.
- **NFO:** Stands for “non-important frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which non-important markers miss significant beats, either before or after.
- **AFO:** Stands for “all frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which all markers in the flow miss significant beats, either before or after.

Found tempos are listed in descending order of average frames off for important markers.

Markers

Shows the impact that the tempo currently selected in the **Tempos found** list would have on each marker in the flow in more detail.

- **Timecode:** Shows the exact timecode of each marker.
- **Text:** Shows the marker text of each marker to help you identify them.
- **Imp.:** Indicates whether a marker has been defined as important.
- **Fr. Off:** Stands for “frames off”. Shows the average number of frames by which each marker misses being aligned to beats.
- **Time Diff.:** Stands for “time difference”. Shows the time difference between the position of the marker and the position of the nearest beat, expressed in fractions of a second.
- **Not. Diff.:** Stands for “notated difference”. Shows the notated difference between the position of the marker and the position of the nearest beat, expressed in fractions of a whole note.

Selected tempo

Displays the currently selected tempo for the flow.

Apply

Applies the selected tempo to the flow by inputting it as a tempo mark at the beginning of the flow. Any other tempo marks in the flow are automatically deleted.

RELATED LINKS

[Defining markers as important](#) on page 1225

[Metronome marks](#) on page 1341

Input methods for repeats and tremolos

You can input repeats and tremolos, including repeat endings, repeat markers, and rhythm slashes, with the keyboard by using the repeats popover, and with the mouse by using the Repeat Structures panel.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

TIP

To indicate repeats using repeat barlines, you can input repeat barlines using the available input methods for barlines.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[Types of barlines](#) on page 816

[Repeat endings](#) on page 1230

[Repeat markers](#) on page 1236

[Tremolos](#) on page 1399

[Rhythm slashes](#) on page 1258

[Bar repeats](#) on page 1245



[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

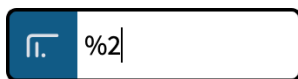
Repeats popover

The following tables contain the entries for the repeats popover that you can use to input the different tremolos, repeat markers, repeat endings, and bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar regions available.

You can open the repeats popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-R**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
- Select an existing repeat marker, slash region, or bar repeat and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create Repeat**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Repeats popover with an example entry



Repeat Structures button in the Notations toolbox

Repeat endings

Part of repeat ending	Popover entry
Whole repeat ending	end or ending
Additional repeat ending segment	add

Repeat markers

Type of repeat marker	Popover entry
D.C.	dc , D.C. , da capo , and so on
D.C. al Fine	dcalf , DC al Fine , D.C. al Fine , and so on
D.C. al Coda	dcalc , DC al Coda , D.C. al Coda , and so on
D.S.	ds , D.S. , dal segno , and so on
D.S. al Fine	dsalf , DS al Fine , D.S. al Fine , and so on
D.S. al Coda	dsalc , DS al Coda , D.S. al Coda , and so on
to Coda	toc , tc , to coda , To Coda , and so on

Type of repeat marker	Popover entry
Segno	s, seg, segno , and so on
Fine	f, fin, fine , and so on
Coda	c, co, coda , and so on

The list of entries for repeat markers is not comprehensive, as the flexibility of the popover means you can enter any reasonable version or abbreviation of the type of repeat marker you want, and the popover recognizes it in most cases.

Single-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	/, \, or 1
Two strokes	//, \\, or 2
Three strokes	///, \\, or 3
Four strokes	////, \\, or 4
Z on stem (buzz roll)	z or zonestem
Tremolo with release; for example, two-strokes with release	rel ; for example, //rel or 2rel
Tremolo with attack; for example, two-strokes with attack	att ; for example, //att or 2att
Remove all tremolos	0 or clear

Multi-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	/2, \2, or 12
Two strokes	//2, \\2, or 22
Three strokes	///2, \\2, or 32
Four strokes	////2, \\2, or 42
Remove all tremolos	0 or clear

Slash regions

Slash region	Popover entry
New slash region	slash

Numbered bar regions

Numbered bar region	Popover entry
New numbered bar region	nb, num, numbars, or number bars

Bar repeats

Type of bar repeat	Popover entry
Repeat last bar	% or %1
Repeat last 2 bars	%2
Repeat last 4 bars	%4
Repeat last bar, group in 2	%1,2
Repeat last bar, group in 4	%1,4
Repeat last 2 bars, group in 4	%2,4



RELATED LINKS

- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Inputting repeat endings with the popover](#) on page 409
- [Inputting repeat markers with the popover](#) on page 413
- [Inputting tremolos with the popover](#) on page 414
- [Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417
- [Inputting bar repeats](#) on page 418
- [Inputting numbered bar regions](#) on page 419
- [Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301
- [Repeat endings](#) on page 1230
- [Repeat markers](#) on page 1236
- [Tremolos](#) on page 1399
- [Rhythm slashes](#) on page 1258
- [Bar repeats](#) on page 1245
- [Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

Repeat Structures panel

The Repeat Structures panel contains the different types of repeat notations available in Dorico Elements, including repeat endings, tremolos, and bar repeats. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

- You can hide/show the Repeat Structures panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Repeat Structures panel contains the following sections:

Repeat Endings

Contains options that allow you to input new repeat endings and add additional endings to existing repeat endings.

Repeat Jumps

Contains different types of repeat markers that instruct players to jump to a specific point in the piece, such as “D.S. al Coda”.

Repeat Sections

Contains different sections used in conjunction with repeat jumps, such as “Coda”.

Tremolos

Contains different types of single-note and multi-note tremolos.

Rhythm Slashes

Allows you to input a region that displays rhythm slashes that are automatically formatted to be compatible with the prevailing time signature.

Bar Repeats

Allows you to input a region that indicates that the preceding bar is repeated without re-notating the bar.

TIP

You can input bar repeat regions with different bar groupings when using the repeats popover.

Numbered Bars

Allows you to input a region that displays bar counts without additional notations.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

Inputting repeat endings with the popover



You can input repeat endings using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.
 2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter **end** or **ending** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

[Repeat endings](#) on page 1230

Adding additional repeat endings with the popover

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the repeats popover. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.



TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

NOTE

Your selection must start from the first bar in the final repeat ending segment.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter **add** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
 5. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.
-

RESULT

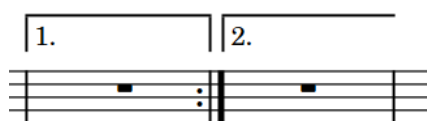
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

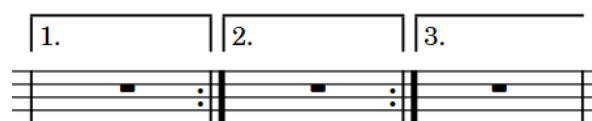
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

Inputting repeat endings with the panel

You can input repeat endings using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.




PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Create Repeat Ending** .

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS

[Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409

Adding additional repeat endings with the panel

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the Repeat Structures panel. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.



TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow / Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

NOTE

Your selection must start from the first bar in the final repeat ending segment.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  to show the Repeat Structures panel.

3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Add Section To Repeat Ending** .

NOTE

If increasing the number of endings makes the repeat ending collide with any part of another repeat ending, the other repeat ending is deleted. However, its repeat barlines are not deleted.

4. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.

RESULT

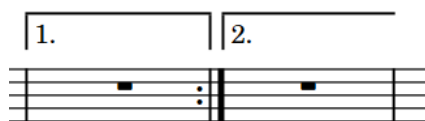
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

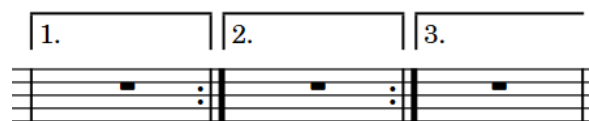
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

Inputting repeat markers with the popover

You can input repeat markers, including repeat jumps and repeat sections, using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.



PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.
For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of repeat marker you want into the popover.
For example, enter **coda** to input a coda section or enter **\$** to input a segno.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material. When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

- [Repeats popover](#) on page 406
- [Repeat markers](#) on page 1236
- [Repeats in playback](#) on page 549
- [Changing the gap before codas](#) on page 1242
- [Hiding/Showing repeat markers](#) on page 1240

Inputting repeat markers with the panel

You can input repeat markers using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE



1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.
For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  to show the Repeat Structures panel.

3. Click the repeat marker you want to input in any of the following sections:

- **Repeat Jumps**
 - **Repeat Sections**
-

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material. When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

Inputting tremolos with the popover

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.



TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

NOTE

If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes that are in the same voice, have the same duration, and are notated using a single notehead. The notes can also be tuplets and cross-staff notes.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of tremolo you want into the popover.
For example, enter:
 - **//** for single-note tremolos with two strokes.
 - **///2** for multi-note tremolos with three strokes.
 - **//rel** for two-stroke single-note tremolos with release.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified. They appear on all notes in tie chains.

Tremolos with release show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the last note. Tremolos with attack show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the first note.

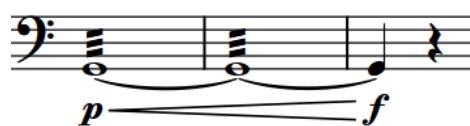
Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes. The notated duration of notes in multi-note tremolos is automatically updated. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets



Tremolo with release added to tie chain

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have tremolos in one voice and slurs in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

- [Repeats popover](#) on page 406
- [Tremolos](#) on page 1399

- [Tremolos in playback](#) on page 1405
- [Tremolos in tie chains](#) on page 1401
- [Deleting tremolos](#) on page 1403
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262
- [Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851
- [Tuplets](#) on page 1408

Inputting tremolos with the panel

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.






TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

NOTE

If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes that are in the same voice, have the same duration, and are notated using a single notehead. The notes can also be tuplets and cross-staff notes.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Tremolos** section, click the tremolo you want to input.
For example, click:
 - **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo**  for single-note tremolos with two strokes.
 - **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo**  for multi-note tremolos with three strokes.
 - **Tremolo With Release**  for three-stroke single-note tremolos with release.

RESULT

Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified. They appear on all notes in tie chains.

Tremolos with release show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the last note. Tremolos with attack show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the first note.

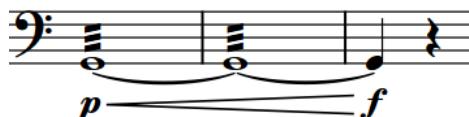
Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes. The notated duration of notes in multi-note tremolos is automatically updated. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets



Tremolo with release added to tie chain

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have tremolos in one voice and slurs in another voice.



RELATED LINKS

- [Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262
- [Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851
- [Tuplets](#) on page 1408

Inputting slash regions

You can input slash regions using the repeats popover.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - On each staff where you want to input a slash region, select items that span the required duration.
 - Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 - Enter **slash** into the popover.
 - Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

During note input, slash regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note.

When adding slash regions to existing music, they span the selected duration on each selected staff.

Slash regions are automatically formatted as appropriate for the meter. If you later change the time signature, slash regions retain their duration but the appearance of slashes within them automatically updates.

TIP

You can also input slash regions by clicking **Create Slash Region** in the **Rhythm Slashes** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write > Create Slash Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Repeats popover](#) on page 406
- [Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409
- [Rhythm slashes](#) on page 1258
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Slash voices](#) on page 1258
- [Inputting chord symbol regions](#) on page 326
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Inputting bar repeats



You can input bar repeat regions when at least one bar before the region contains notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, on each staff where you want to input a bar repeat region, select items that span the required duration.

NOTE

You cannot input bar repeat regions in the first bar of a flow.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of bar repeat region you want into the popover. For example, enter **%2,4** to repeat the previous two bars, grouped in four.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

A bar repeat region spanning the selected duration is input on each selected staff, in which the corresponding type of bar repeat symbol is shown at the intervals specified.

NOTE

- You can also input bar repeat regions during note input; however, this inputs bar repeat regions from the bar containing the currently selected note. As bar repeats are mostly shown in empty bars, this is likely to produce unintended results.
- You can also input one-bar repeat regions by clicking **Create Bar Repeat Region** in the **Bar Repeats** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write > Create Bar Repeat**

Region. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change how bar repeats are grouped.

RELATED LINKS

[Bar repeats](#) on page 1245



[Bar repeat grouping](#) on page 1251

[Changing bar repeat grouping](#) on page 1251

Inputting numbered bar regions

You can input numbered bar regions using the repeats popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, on each staff where you want to number bars, select items that span the required duration.
 2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-R**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Repeats** .
 3. Enter **num** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

A numbered bar region spanning the selected duration is input on each selected staff.

By default, bar counts are shown on every bar in the region. If the numbered bar region lasts four or more bars, Dorico Elements adds the total range in parentheses to the count on the first bar, such as showing "1 (-8)" on the first bar in a numbered bar region lasting eight bars.

NOTE

- You can also input numbered bar regions during note input; however, this only inputs a numbered bar region in the bar containing the currently selected note.
 - You can also input numbered bar regions by clicking **Create Numbered Bar Region** in the **Numbered Bars** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write > Create Numbered Bar Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
 - Numbered bar regions are hidden in full score layouts and shown in part layouts by default, but you can choose to hide/show numbered bar regions in any layout.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

[Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409

[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

[Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254

[Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions](#) on page 1254

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

Inputting MIDI trigger regions

You can input MIDI trigger regions using the MIDI trigger regions popover.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate middle C numbering convention setting.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - On each staff where you want to input a MIDI trigger region, select items that span the required duration.
2. Press **Shift-0** to open the MIDI trigger regions popover.
3. Enter the notes you want to trigger into the popover.
For example, enter **C4,E4,G4, 60,64,67**, or play a C major chord on a MIDI keyboard. To specify the velocity, include the required number in parentheses, such as **(112)**, at the end of your entry.

TIP

You can audition notes/chords while the popover is open.

-
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, MIDI trigger regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note.

When adding MIDI trigger regions to existing music, they span the selected duration on each selected staff. If you selected a duration within an existing MIDI trigger region, the new MIDI trigger region replaces the existing region only for the selected duration.

RELATED LINKS

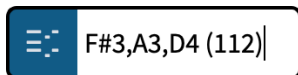
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51
- [Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

MIDI trigger regions popover

The following table contains examples of what you can enter into the MIDI trigger regions popover to input notes for playback that are not shown in the music.

You can open the MIDI trigger regions popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-0**.
- Select an existing MIDI trigger region and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write > Create MIDI Trigger Region**.



MIDI trigger regions popover with an example entry

Notes and velocity

Notes by pitch and octave

NOTE

Follows your middle C numbering convention setting.

Notes by MIDI note number

Played notes

Specify velocity

Popover entry

C0, Db1, E2, F#3, and so on

12, 25, 40, 54, and so on

Play notes on a MIDI keyboard

TIP

This also sets the velocity.

(0) to **(127)** after the final note

Selecting notes/items

In Dorico Elements, there are multiple different ways you can select notes and items in your project, from selecting items individually to making large selections covering multiple staves. You can also change whether notes play back during note input/selection.

RELATED LINKS

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[System track](#) on page 425

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Selection tools](#) on page 40

[Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection](#) on page 215

[Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection](#) on page 216

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually

You can select/deselect existing notes and other notation items individually in the music area; for example, if you want to add articulations to a selection of notes or delete a short passage of music. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

TIP

If you want to select a large number of notes/items, we recommend that you use one of the larger selection methods.

PROCEDURE

1. Select individual notes/items in the music area in any of the following ways:

- Click a single note/item.

TIP

If the item you want to select is behind another item, **Shift - Alt/Opt** -click it.

- **Ctrl/Cmd** -click individual notes/items.
- **Shift** -click adjacent notes/items.
- To select all notes in a beam group, click the beam.
- To select all notes in a chord, click the stem.
- To select everything in a bar, click on the staff in that bar, but not on any notes, stems, or items.
- Make a marquee selection around multiple notes/items.
- Navigate to other items from an existing selection.
- If nothing is selected in the music area, press any arrow key on your computer keyboard to select the first note, rest, or other item on the top staff in the current layout.

2. Deselect all currently selected items in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-D**.
 - Choose **Edit > Select None**.
 - Click outside of the staves within the music area.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting multiple items using marquee selections](#) on page 424

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection](#) on page 215

[Navigating to other items in the music area](#) on page 439

[Undoing/Redoing actions](#) on page 438

[Filters](#) on page 429

Extending selections

You can extend your current selection to adjacent notes and items, including to the start/end of systems and flows.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, make a selection in the music area.

2. Extend the selection in any of the following ways:

- To select adjacent notes/items to the right, press **Shift-Right Arrow**.
- To select adjacent notes/items to the left, press **Shift-Left Arrow**.
- To select to the end of the bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Right Arrow**.
- To select to the start of the bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Left Arrow**.
- To select to the end of the system, choose **Edit > Select To End Of System**.
- To select to the start of the system, choose **Edit > Select To Start Of System**.
- To select to the end of the flow, choose **Edit > Select To End Of Flow**.

- To select to the start of the flow, choose **Edit > Select To Start Of Flow**.
-

Selecting more items of the same type

You can incrementally extend your current selection to more items of the same type and notes in the same voices, which is particularly helpful if you want to select multiple different items at once, such as dynamics and lyrics.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes and items you want to select more of. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

TIP

You can select notes and items on multiple staves and in specific voices; for example, if you only want to select notes in up-stem voices on four staves.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** to expand your selection.
 3. Optional: Continue pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** to extend your selection further.
-

RESULT

More of the same types of items and notes in the same voices as your original selection are selected, with the range of selected items expanding each time you press the key command: firstly to the boundaries of the bar, secondly to the boundaries of the system, and finally to the rest of the flow. If there are no other items available in the bar, Dorico Elements automatically advances to the second expansion. In galley view, the second expansion is to the entire flow directly as there is only a single system in galley view.

For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

NOTE

Dorico Elements selects the following items differently if you select only a single one of them:

- Lyrics: The selection expands only to other lyrics with the same line number, placement, and line type as the originally selected lyric.
 - Dynamics: The first expansion is to all other dynamics in the same group and on the same staves as the original selection, with further expansions selecting other dynamics in other groups.
 - Text items: The selection expands only to other text items using the same paragraph style as the originally selected text item.
 - Playing techniques: The selection expands only to playing techniques of the same category, such as **Strings** or **Choral**. Additionally, if you select either an up bow or down bow playing technique, the selection expands only to other up bow and down bow playing techniques. It does not select any other playing techniques.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503


[Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029

[Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047
[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949
[Changing the paragraph style of text items](#) on page 1356
[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Selecting multiple items using marquee selections

You can use a marquee selection to select multiple notes and notations at the same time within a specific area. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

PROCEDURE

1. In the status bar, click **Marquee Tool** .
2. In the music area, click and drag across the area where you want to select everything.
A gray rectangle indicates which notes and notations will be selected. We recommend that you click in one corner of the area you want to select and drag diagonally across to the other corner.

RESULT

When you release the mouse, all notes and notations in the area within the gray rectangle are selected.

NOTE

Only items completely within the area are selected. However, if any part of a note/tie chain is within the area, the whole note/tie chain is selected.


RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38
[Selection tools](#) on page 40
[Extending selections](#) on page 422
[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676
[Changing values using the Transform tool](#) on page 715

Large selections

You can make large selections, including selecting the contents of whole staves or the whole flow.

Select everything in a specific area

You can use the **Marquee Tool**  to specify an area in which you want to select everything.

Select everything in the whole flow

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-A**.
- Choose **Edit > Select All**.

Select everything on a single staff

- Select the first note on the staff, hold down **Shift**, then select the last note on the staff.
- Select the first note on the staff and choose **Edit > Select To End Of System** or **Edit > Select To End Of Flow**.

- Select the last note on the staff and choose **Edit > Select To Start Of System** or **Edit > Select To Start Of Flow**.

Select everything on multiple adjacent staves

- Select one whole staff at the top/bottom of the range of staves you want to select and press **Shift-Up Arrow** or **Shift-Down Arrow** until all the staves you want are selected.
- Select one whole staff at the top/bottom of the range of staves you want to select and **Shift**-click the staff at the other end of the range of staves you want to select.

Select more of the currently selected types of items

You can use **Edit > Select More (Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A)** to expand your current selection horizontally and incrementally to other items of the same types and in the selected voices and staves in Write mode. For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

1. The first expansion is to the boundaries of the current bar, both to the left and right. If there is nothing to select within the bar, such as if you selected a whole note in a 4/4 bar, Dorico Elements automatically advances to the second expansion.
2. The second expansion in page view is to the boundaries of the current system, both to the left and right. In galley view, the second expansion is to the rest of the flow, as there is only a single system in galley view.
3. In page view, the third expansion is to the entire flow.

Select everything in the system within a range of beats/bars

You can use the system track to select a region of beats/bars and then select everything on all staves in the system within that region.

System track selections include system objects, such as chord symbols, key signatures, and time signatures.

TIP

If you want to select only a certain type of item, such as lyrics or dynamics, you can then use the corresponding filters.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

[Extending selections](#) on page 422

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Selecting more items of the same type](#) on page 423

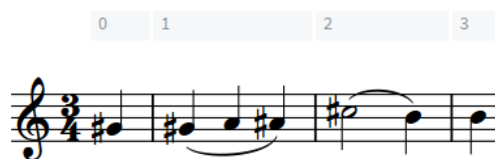
[Undoing/Redoing actions](#) on page 438

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

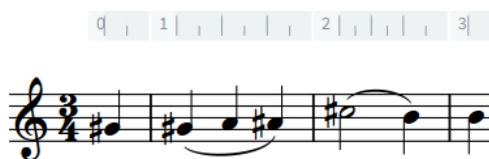
System track

The system track is a translucent line above the top of each system in Write mode. It allows you to add and delete bars and beats, and to select everything on all staves in the system.

System track selections include system objects, such as chord symbols, key signatures, and time signatures.



The system track above a staff, showing bars



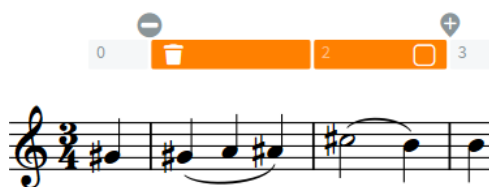
The system track above a staff, showing beat units reflecting the current rhythmic grid resolution (available when you hold **Alt/Opt**)

The color of the system track changes depending on how you are interacting with it.

- When you hover the mouse over it, it becomes more opaque.
- When you select a region in the system track, it appears highlighted.



The system track when the mouse pointer hovers over it



The system track with a region selected

When you have selected a region in the system track, the following options are available:



1 Set Edit Stop Position

Allows you to set and delete Insert mode stop positions.

2 Delete

Allows you to delete the selected region.

NOTE

When you hover over **Delete**, the highlight color of the selected region changes.

3 System Track Select

Allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected region.

4 Add

Allows you to add bars or beats of the same duration as the selection in the system track. The extra time is inserted immediately after the end of the selection.

NOTE

Selections on the system track are cleared whenever you make any other kind of selection, or when you switch layouts. However, selections on the system track are retained when switching between page and galley view.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting bars/beats with the system track](#) on page 305

[Deleting bars/beats with the system track](#) on page 811

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

Hiding/Showing the system track

The system track is shown by default in new projects, but you can hide/show it in Write mode at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the system track in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Alt/Opt-T**.
 - Choose **View > System Track**.
-

RESULT

The system track is hidden/shown.

TIP

You can hide the system track in all future projects by default in **Preferences > General > View**.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58



Selecting bars with the system track

The system track allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected bars.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, click a bar in the system track.
 2. Optional: Select additional bars in any of the following ways:
 - **Shift**-click bars to the right/left along the system track.
 - Click and drag to the right/left along the system track.
 3. Click **System Track Select**  in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.
System Track Select  appears filled in when you hover your mouse pointer over it.
-

RESULT

Everything on all staves in the selected bars is selected and highlighted, including system objects, notations, and signposts.

NOTE

If you then delete your selection, any signposts included are also deleted. This can affect the page layout; for example, by removing ossia staves whose signposts were included in the selection.

Selecting beats with the system track

The system track allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected beats.

PREREQUISITE


The system track is shown.


PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, press and hold **Alt/Opt**.
Grid lines that match the current rhythmic grid resolution appear in the system track.
2. Without releasing **Alt/Opt**, click and drag to the right/left along the system track.

NOTE

You cannot **Shift**-click when selecting beats.

3. Click **System Track Select**  in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

System Track Select  appears filled in when you hover your mouse pointer over it.

RESULT

Everything on all staves in the selected beats is selected and highlighted, including system objects, notations, and signposts.

NOTE

If you then delete your selection, any signposts included are also deleted. This can affect the page layout; for example, by removing ossia staves whose signposts were included in the selection.

RELATED LINKS

- [Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457
- [Deleting the contents of bars](#) on page 812
- [Deleting bars/beats with the system track](#) on page 811
- [System objects](#) on page 1326
- [Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

Filters

Filters in Dorico Elements allow you to select only a specific type of item from a larger selection. Dorico Elements includes a filter for every notation item.

- You can find the available filters by choosing **Edit > Filter > [Item] > [Item type]**. You can also choose filters from the context menu.

All significant notation items have their own filter; for example, arpeggio signs, chord symbols, key signatures, and playing techniques. You can also filter for note spacing changes.

The following items have multiple filters because they have multiple types:

Notes

Allows you to filter notes, grace notes, and chords. You can also filter notes according to their position in chords.

Voices

Allows you to filter voices according to their stem direction. You can also filter slash voices.

Dynamics

Allows you to filter all dynamics, or just gradual or immediate dynamics.

Tempos

Allows you to filter all tempo marks, or just absolute, relative, or gradual tempo changes.

Lyrics

Allows you to filter all lyrics, or just lyrics with a specific line number, type, or staff-relative placement.

NOTE

There is no filter for barlines. You also cannot filter notations that are considered part of the notes to which they apply, including fingerings, beams, articulations, and tremolos.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters for lyrics](#) on page 1034

[Selecting more items of the same type](#) on page 423

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Changing the line number and type of lyric lines](#) on page 1048

Changing filters to select/deselect

You can change whether the available filter options select or deselect the specified items. By default, filters select items, meaning that the resulting selection only includes the item being filtered.

When filters are set to deselect, the resulting selection includes everything except the item being filtered.

PROCEDURE

- Change the filter behavior in one of the following ways:
 - To change filters to select, choose **Edit > Filter > Select Only**.
 - To change filters to deselect, choose **Edit > Filter > Deselect Only**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Editing items

In Dorico Elements, there are editing methods that are common to most notations, including lengthening/shortening items and changing their staff-relative placement.

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Undoing/Redoing actions](#) on page 438

Lengthening/Shortening items

You can lengthen/shorten items with duration rhythmically after they have been input; for example, if you want an octave line to cover more/fewer notes.

Lengthening figured bass or playing techniques, including string indicators outside the staff and vibrato bar indications, that were input without a specified duration gives them duration and shows duration or hold lines if required.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the items you want to lengthen/shorten.

NOTE

- When multiple items are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution.
 - You can only lengthen/shorten one of the following items at a time: slurs, gradual dynamics, groups of gradual dynamics, and bar repeat regions.
 - When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten a single item at a time. Figured bass and playing techniques, including string indicators and vibrato bar lines, must have duration already.
 - When lengthening/shortening multiple figured bass or playing techniques using the keyboard, they must all have duration already.
 - You can only lengthen/shorten non-grouped playing techniques or the last playing technique in a group.
 - You can only lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint, and you can only lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in the same voice as the corresponding endpoint.
-
2. Lengthen/Shorten the selected items in any of the following ways:
 - To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.

- To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the previous notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping.

- To lengthen a single item to the next notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To shorten a single item to the previous notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

NOTE

Playing technique groups only have a single handle at their start and end, not individual handles for each playing technique within the group.

RESULT

The selected items are lengthened/shortened by moving their end rhythmically to the right/left. Most items are lengthened/shortened either by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer, or directly to the next/previous notehead.

Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping. Numbered bar regions are lengthened/shortened by bars. Slurs are lengthened/shortened to notes.

If figured bass or playing techniques previously had no duration, they now have duration and show duration or hold lines if required.

If any part of slash regions now overlap rhythmic positions with other slash regions, the staff positions of slashes are automatically adjusted to accommodate multiple slash regions at the same positions.

Dynamic groups are lengthened/shortened proportionally by lengthening/shortening the gradual dynamics and moving any other type of dynamic in the group. This retains the relative durations of the gradual dynamics in the group.

NOTE

- The minimum length of a bar repeat region is one bar. If you shorten regions with longer groupings, such as every four bars, the length of the region is halved until a one-bar repeat region remains.
- Only a single bar repeat region or chord symbol region can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If a bar repeat region or chord symbol region collides with another item of the same type when it is lengthened/shortened, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly. For bar repeat regions, this can mean the grouping of other bar repeat regions is changed.

You can undo this action and restore the previous lengths of the other regions. However, if you lengthened/shortened a bar repeat region or chord symbol region using the mouse and it overwrote another region of the same type completely, the other region is permanently deleted.

- You can move items graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.
-

EXAMPLE

In the example, lengthening the phrase moves the *p* at the end two quarter notes to the right, but moves the *f* in the middle only one quarter note to the right. This keeps the lengths of the gradual dynamics equal.



Original dynamic phrase



Lengthened dynamic phrase

RELATED LINKS

- [Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
- [Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
- [Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings](#) on page 1232
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
- [Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines](#) on page 1189
- [Notations input](#) on page 271
- [Bar repeat grouping](#) on page 1251
- [Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186
- [Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187
- [Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171
- [Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162
- [Slashes in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1268
- [Octave lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 918
- [Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300
- [Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294
- [Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949
- [Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940
- [Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines](#) on page 961

Changing existing items

You can change all items that have an associated popover, rather than deleting them and inputting new ones. For example, if you want to change an 8va octave line into a 15va octave line or change a short fermata into a long fermata.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the item or the signpost of the item you want to change.
 2. Open the popover for that item in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Return**.
 - Double-click the item.
 3. Change the existing entry in the popover.
For chord symbols, you can also play the new chord on your MIDI keyboard.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The selected item is changed according to the new entry in the popover. This changes different parameters for different items, such as the duration of a hold or pause or the volume of a dynamic.

NOTE

- Any properties previously set on the item are reset.
- If you change a fermata to a breath mark, only the fermata on the top staff is changed to a breath mark. If you change a caesura to a breath mark, a breath mark is input on the top staff at the end of the bar to which the caesura is attached. However, the existing caesura also remains on all staves.
- If you open the playing techniques popover in this way, Dorico Elements inputs your new entry as a separate playing technique and does not delete the previous one.
- If you change an immediate dynamic to a combined dynamic, such as *f* to *fp*, or vice versa, Dorico Elements inputs your new entry as a separate dynamic and does not delete the previous one.

RELATED LINKS

[Popovers](#) on page 22

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the text of existing lyrics](#) on page 1043

[Assigning key commands](#) on page 63

[Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926



Changing the size of notes/items

You can change the size of individual notes and items using the default scale sizes for cues, grace notes, a custom scale size, or a custom scale size in addition to a default scale size. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

TIP

- To make all notes, items, and staves proportionally larger/smaller, you can change the staff size.
- If you want to make notes smaller to represent grace notes, you can input them as grace notes instead.
- You can change the default size of many text-based notations, such as rehearsal marks and chord symbols, project-wide by editing the corresponding font style or paragraph style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/items whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Common** group:

- To use a default scale size, activate **Scale**.
 - To use a custom scale size, activate **Custom scale**.
 - To use a custom scale size based on a default scale size, activate both **Scale** and **Custom scale**.
3. Optional: If you activated **Scale**, select one of the following options from the menu:
- **Normal**
 - **Grace**
 - **Cue**
 - **Cue grace**
4. Optional: If you activated **Custom scale**, change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The size of the selected notes/items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- If you activated **Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the selected default scale size.
- If you activated **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size you set.
- If you activated both **Scale** and **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size of the selected default scale size. For example, if you selected **Grace** for **Scale** then set **Custom Scale** to **50**, the size of the selected notes/items is half the size of grace notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Staff size](#) on page 617

[Changing the default staff size](#) on page 602

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

[Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249

[Cues](#) on page 920

[Notehead set designs](#) on page 1053

[Text formatting](#) on page 753

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Changing the size of accidentals](#) on page 794

[Changing the size of fingerings](#) on page 976

[Large time signatures](#) on page 1387

Changing the staff-relative placement of items

You can flip any item that can be placed both above/below the staff to change their staff-relative placement; for example, if you want to change the stem direction of notes quickly. For many items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames or pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items you want to flip. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

- You cannot flip items during note input. You cannot flip text items when the text editor is open.
- If you want to select parts of items, such as articulations, a single notehead within a tie chain, or a single fermata, you must be in Engrave mode.
- To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

-
2. Press **F**.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected items is changed by setting **Placement**, **Position**, or **Direction** properties appropriately in the corresponding groups of the Properties panel. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain for items whose staff-relative placement properties are local.

Deactivating these properties resets items to their default placement.

NOTE

If you flipped multiple multi-segment slurs or tuplet brackets with different hook directions at the same time, all selected items are set to either above or below the staff, unless they all originally had compatible directions set.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you need to move items to different graphical positions, you can move them graphically in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS

- [Filters](#) on page 429
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Local vs. global properties](#) on page 664
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646
- [Tucking index properties](#) on page 518
- [Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of beams](#) on page 846
- [Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes](#) on page 808
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings](#) on page 974
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets](#) on page 1414
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols](#) on page 882
- [Changing the curvature direction of slurs](#) on page 1293
- [Changing the curvature direction of ties](#) on page 1369
- [Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 1129
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035

Resetting the appearance of items

You can reset all changes that you have made to the appearance of individual items, which returns them to the default settings.

Properties relating to the appearance of items include those that change their style, type, and some additions, such as *poco a poco* text for dynamics.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose appearance you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Choose **Edit > Reset Appearance**.
-

RESULT

All properties that affect the appearance of the selected items are reset to their default settings.

NOTE

Local properties that were originally set with the property scope set to **Globally** are reset in all layouts and frame chains that do not have subsequent local overrides.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
[Local vs. global properties](#) on page 664
[Filters](#) on page 429
[Large selections](#) on page 424

Resetting the position of items

You can reset the position of individual items that you have moved graphically, which returns them to their default position.

Properties relating to the position of items include horizontal and vertical offsets, beat-relative position, and staff-relative placement.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose position you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Choose **Edit > Reset Position**.
-

RESULT

All properties that affect the position of the selected items are reset to their default settings.

NOTE

Local properties that were originally set with the property scope set to **Globally** are reset in all layouts and frame chains that do not have subsequent local overrides.

Hiding non-printing elements

You can temporarily hide all visible elements that do not print, such as signposts and selection highlights. This allows you to view the current layout as it will appear when printed/exported without switching to Print mode.

PROCEDURE

- Press and hold **⌘ (Windows) or ⌘ (macOS)**.
-

RESULT

All non-printing elements in the current layout are hidden until you release the key command. Printing elements appear as they will when printed/exported.

TIP

You can also hide/show individual non-printing elements permanently.

RELATED LINKS

- [Annotations on page 597](#)
- [Printing layouts on page 581](#)
- [Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 585](#)
- [Hiding/Showing signposts on page 450](#)
- [Hiding/Showing the system track on page 427](#)
- [Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 829](#)
- [Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 1064](#)
- [Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1439](#)
- [Hiding/Showing region highlights on page 1247](#)
- [Hiding/Showing slash region highlights on page 1265](#)

Hiding/Showing attachment lines

You can hide/show attachment lines in Write mode and Engrave mode. Attachment lines link a single selected item to its rhythmic position, including items that you have moved graphically.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Attachment Lines**.
-

RESULT

Attachment lines are hidden/shown.

EXAMPLE



Attachment lines shown



Attachment lines hidden

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing crosshairs](#) on page 517

[Rhythmic position](#) on page 24

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Undoing/Redoing actions

You can undo/redo sequences of edits and selections in reverse order.

PROCEDURE

1. Undo actions in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Z** as many as times as required.
 - In the toolbar, click **Undo** .
 - Choose **Edit > History** to open the **History** dialog, select the action that you want to undo up to, then click **OK**.
 2. Redo actions in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Z** or **Ctrl/Cmd-Y** as many as times as required.
 - In the toolbar, click **Redo** .
 - Choose **Edit > History** to open the **History** dialog, select the action that you want to redo up to, then click **OK**.
-

RESULT

All edits and selections you made up to the selected action are undone/redone.

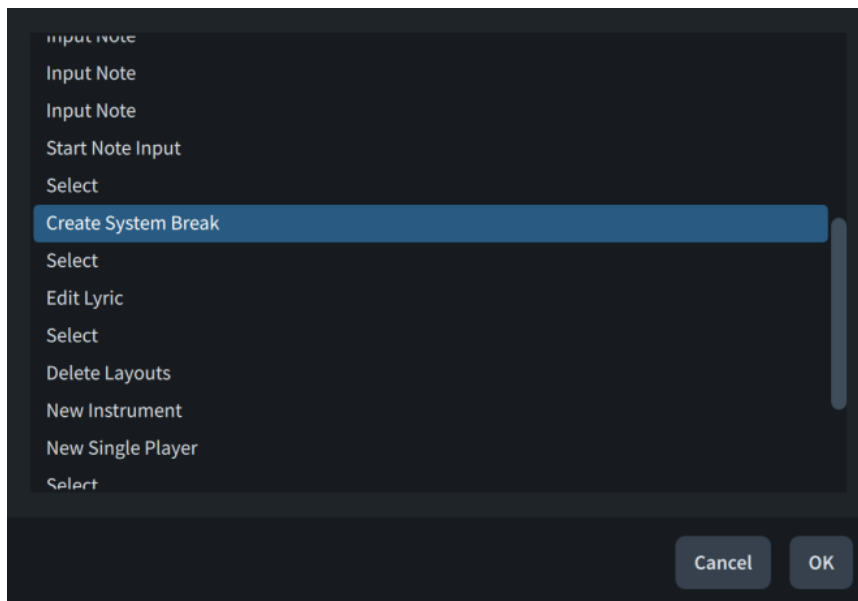
RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

History dialog

The **History** dialog displays all your edits and selections in the current session, and allows you to undo/redo all actions up to the selected one.

- You can open the History dialog in any mode by choosing **Edit > History**.



RELATED LINKS

- [Undoing/Redoing actions](#) on page 438
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Editing items](#) on page 430

Navigation

There are different ways you can navigate around the layout currently open in the music area, such as moving the selection to different items or bringing specific bar numbers or pages into view. Many navigation methods function in multiple modes.

If you have an item selected, you can navigate to other notes/items, which moves the selection to those notes/items.

RELATED LINKS

- [Workspace setup](#) on page 43
- [Going to locations with the jump bar](#) on page 66
- [Jump bar](#) on page 65
- [Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223

Navigating to other items in the music area

You can navigate to other notes and items in the music area after you have selected a note/item; for example, if you want to move the selection to other notes along the staff without using the mouse.

NOTE

In Engrave mode, navigating to other items always moves the selection to the closest item graphically, rather than the next/previous item of the same type.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item in the music area.
 - If you want to navigate through notes, select a note.

- If you want to navigate through a particular type of item, such as rehearsal marks, select an item of that type.

NOTE

You can only navigate forwards/backwards through items on the same staff. You cannot navigate to other items of the same type on other staves.

2. Navigate to other notes or items in any of the following ways:

- To navigate to the next item or note in the same voice, press **Right Arrow**.
- To navigate to the previous item or note in the same voice, press **Left Arrow**.
- To navigate to the closest note above the current selection, press **Up Arrow**.
This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the lowest note/rest on the staff above. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the bottom note in the chord selected.
- To navigate to the closest note below the current selection, press **Down Arrow**.
This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the highest note/rest on the staff below. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the top note in the chord selected.
- To navigate forwards to the note/rest at the start of the next bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow**.
- To navigate backwards to the note/rest at the start of the previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
- To navigate to the top staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Up Arrow**.
- To navigate to the bottom staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Down Arrow**.

3. Optional: Switch the selection to another type of item at the same rhythmic position in one of the following ways:

- To cycle forwards through items, press **Tab**.
- To cycle backwards through items, press **Shift-Tab**.

NOTE

You cannot switch the selection to system objects, such as system-attached text or rehearsal marks. However, you can select system objects directly and navigate through them.

4. Optional: After switching the selection to another type of item, navigate to other items of that type.

RELATED LINKS

[System objects](#) on page 1326

Going to flows

You can go to the next/previous flow in the current layout, which automatically brings the start of that flow into view in the music area. This is particularly useful when navigating around layouts that contain many flows.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

- Go to a different flow in one of the following ways:
 - To go to the previous flow in the layout, choose **Edit > Go To > Go To Previous Flow**.
 - To go to the next flow in the layout, choose **Edit > Go To > Go To Next Flow**.
-

RESULT

The music area updates to show the start of the corresponding flow. Dorico Elements automatically positions the top staff towards the top left of the music area.

TIP

You can assign key commands to both **Go To Previous Flow** and **Go To Next Flow** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Going to pages

You can go to any specified page in the current layout using its page number; for example, to jump quickly to the exact page that requires changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit > Go To > Go To Page** to open the **Go To Page** dialog.
 2. Enter the page number to which you want to go into the **Page** field.
 3. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT

The music area updates to show the start of the corresponding page. Dorico Elements automatically centers the top of the page in the music area.

TIP

- You can assign a key command for **Go To Page** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
 - You can also move the view and navigate to other pages in the layout in other ways.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Page arrangements for page view](#) on page 41

[Moving the view in the music area](#) on page 442

[Zooming in/out of the music area](#) on page 443

Going to bars

You can go to any specific bar in any flow in the current layout; for example, to jump quickly to the exact bar that requires changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-G** to open the **Go To Bar** dialog.

2. Select the flow containing the bar to which you want to go from the **Flow** menu.
 3. Enter the bar number to which you want to go into the **Bar** field.
 4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT

The music area updates to show the corresponding bar. Dorico Elements automatically positions the top staff towards the top left of the music area.

In Play mode, the playhead moves to the start of the corresponding bar. Dorico Elements automatically positions the playhead at the start of the ruler.

Going to rehearsal marks

You can go to any specific rehearsal mark in any flow in the current layout; for example, to jump quickly to passages that require changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit > Go To > Go To Rehearsal Mark** to open the **Go To Rehearsal Mark** dialog.
 2. Select the flow containing the rehearsal mark to which you want to go from the **Flow** menu.
 3. Enter the rehearsal mark to which you want to go into the **Rehearsal mark** field.
 4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT

The music area updates to show the corresponding rehearsal mark.

TIP


You can assign a key command for **Go To Rehearsal Mark** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Moving the view in the music area

You can move the view in the music area to show different parts of layouts. For example, you can scroll through a layout to view each page in sequence.

PROCEDURE

- Move the view in any of the following ways:
 - To move the view upwards/downwards, scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel or swipe upwards/downwards on a touchpad.
 - To move the view to the right/left, **Shift**-scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel or swipe to the right/left on a touchpad.
 - To navigate to the next page, press **End (horizontal page arrangements) or Page Down (vertical page arrangements)**.
 - To navigate to the previous page, press **Home (horizontal page arrangements) or Page Up (vertical page arrangements)**.
 - To navigate to the first page, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Home**.
 - To navigate to the last page, press **Ctrl/Cmd-End**.

- In the status bar, click **Hand Tool** , then click and drag in any empty space within the page boundaries in the music area.
The mouse pointer changes into a hand symbol during the move.
-

RESULT

The view in the music area is moved.

TIP

- You change the maximum overscroll amount, that is, how far beyond the edges of pages you can move the view, on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
 - You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Selection tools](#) on page 40

[Enabling/Disabling playhead following](#) on page 539



Zooming in/out of the music area

You can change the zoom level in the music area; for example, if you want a larger overview when inputting notes, but want to see notes and notations more closely when making detailed graphical amendments.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to keep a specific item in the center of the music area when you zoom in/out, you have selected that item.

PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd+= or Z**.
 - Spread two fingers outwards on a touchpad.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards on a mouse wheel.
 - Use the zoom options  in the status bar.
 2. Zoom out in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-- or X**.
 - Pinch two fingers together on a touchpad.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards on a mouse wheel.
 - Use the zoom options  in the status bar.
-

RESULT

The zoom level in the music area is changed. If you had anything selected, Dorico Elements uses your selection as the focal point of the zoom. If you had nothing selected, Dorico Elements focuses on the area previously in the center of the view.

TIP

- You can change the default zoom level that is used when opening layouts in all future projects in **Preferences > General > View**.
 - You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Zoom options](#) on page 42

[Zooming in/out of tracks](#) on page 537

[Workspace setup](#) on page 43

Assigning key commands for custom zoom levels

You can assign key commands for multiple custom zoom levels; for example, if you regularly use zoom levels not available from the preset menu in the status bar.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
 3. In the functions list, expand **View**, then select **Zoom**.
 4. In the **Key Commands** section, enter the zoom level for which you want to assign a key command into the **Parameter 'ZoomPercent'** value field.
 5. Click the **Press shortcut** input field.
 6. On your computer keyboard, press the key command that you want to assign.
 7. Click **Add Key Command**.
If the key command you pressed is already used by another function, a warning is displayed.
 8. Click **Apply**.
The functions list is refreshed, and **Zoom** is no longer selected. To assign key commands for other custom zoom levels, you must navigate to **Zoom** again in the functions list.
 9. Click **Close**.
-

RESULT

The key command you pressed is added to the list of assigned key commands for the selected zoom level.

In the functions list, **Zoom** now has a disclosure arrow and your new zoom level is listed beneath. Each zoom level for which you have assigned a key command appears separately.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Zooming in/out of the music area](#) on page 443

Instrument filters

Instrument filters allow you to show only the staves of selected instruments in galley view in Write mode. This can be useful in large projects when you want to focus on a specific set of instruments, such as only the woodwinds or strings.

When instrument filters are active, dashed lines are shown at the vertical positions of hidden staves, and you can only select and edit music on visible staves.

Instrument filters are layout-specific.



The image shows a music score in galley view with an instrument filter overlay. The overlay is a green button with a funnel icon, labeled "Fl 1.2, Vln 1.2" with a dropdown arrow, a plus sign, and a three-dot menu icon. Below the overlay, the score is visible for Flute 1, Flute 2, Violin I, and Violin II. The tempo is marked "Allegro" with a quarter note equal to 140. The dynamics are marked "f" for flute and "sf" for violin. Dashed lines indicate hidden staves.

Instrument filter containing flute and violin instruments active in galley view

TIP

You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

RELATED LINKS

- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Editing items](#) on page 430
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
- [Scrubbing](#) on page 542

Instrument filter overlay

The instrument filter overlay allows you to apply instrument filters to layouts and add new instrument filters. It only appears in galley view in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the instrument filter overlay in Write mode by choosing **View > Instrument Filter Overlay**.



The image shows an instrument filter overlay with a green button containing a funnel icon, the text "Vln 1.2, Vla", a dropdown arrow, a plus sign, and a three-dot menu icon.

The instrument filter overlay contains the following options:

Filter

Activates/Deactivates the selected instrument filter. Only available when the layout contains at least one instrument filter.



Filter when deactivated



Filter when activated

Instrument filter menu



Allows you to select the instrument filter you want to apply to the current layout. Only available when **Filter** is activated.

Add Instrument Filter



Adds an instrument filter containing the instruments on which you have selected items. Only available when at least one item is selected in the music area.

Manage Instrument Filters




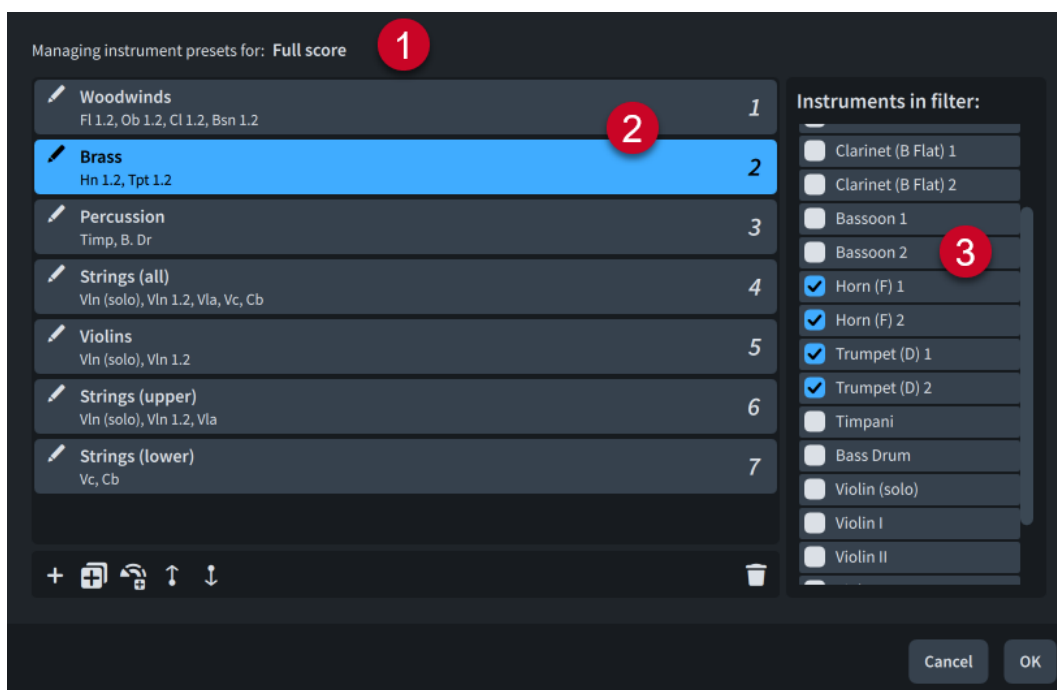
Opens the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog, which allows you to add, edit, and delete instrument filters for the current layout.

Manage Instrument Filters dialog

The **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog allows you to add, edit, and delete instrument filters for the current layout.

You can open the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- In the instrument filter overlay, click **Manage Instrument Filters** .
- Choose **Write > Instrument Visibility > Edit Instrument Filter Presets**.



The **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog comprises the following:

1 Managing instrument presets for

Displays the name of the layout whose instrument filters are listed in the dialog.






2 Instrument filters list

Contains the instrument filters set for the layout. Each instrument filter displays its name and the instruments it contains. If multiple instrument filters contain the same instruments, Dorico Elements displays a warning.

The first ten instrument filters show a number corresponding to their order in the list. This denotes the instrument filters for which you can assign key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Rename Instrument Filter  allows you to rename each instrument filter.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Filter Preset** : Adds a new empty instrument filter.
- **Duplicate Filter Preset** : Creates a copy of an existing instrument filter that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Add Presets From Instrument Families** : Generates an instrument filter for each instrument family in the layout automatically, such as woodwind and brass.
- **Move Up** : Moves the selected instrument filter up the list, which can change its key command.
- **Move Down** : Moves the selected instrument filter down the list, which can change its key command.

3 Instruments in filter list

Contains the instruments in the layout. Allows you to change the instruments included in the selected instrument filter by activating/deactivating instrument checkboxes.


Activating/Deactivating instrument filters

You can activate/deactivate instrument filters at any time in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show only woodwind staves whilst working on the woodwind section.

PREREQUISITE

- You are in galley view.
- The instrument filter overlay is shown.
- You have added the instrument filters you want to use.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout in which you want to activate/deactivate instrument filters.
2. In the instrument filter overlay, click **Filter** .



Filter when activated



Filter when deactivated

3. Optional: If you activated instrument filters, select the instrument filter you want to use from the menu.

RESULT

Instrument filters are activated/deactivated. When instrument filters are active, dashed lines are shown at the vertical positions of hidden staves and you can only select and edit music on visible staves.

TIP

- You can also activate/deactivate and select instrument filters from the **Write > Instrument Visibility** menu.
- You can assign a key command for **Use Instrument Filter** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

RELATED LINKS

- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50
- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Editing items](#) on page 430
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
- [Scrubbing](#) on page 542
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60


Adding instrument filters

You can add any number of instrument filters to each layout independently.

PREREQUISITE

- You are in galley view.
- The instrument filter overlay is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout to which you want to add instrument filters.
2. Select at least one item belonging to each instrument you want to include in the instrument filter.
3. In the instrument filter overlay, click **Add Instrument Filter** .

RESULT

A new instrument filter containing the selected instruments is added to the layout open in the music area. Dorico Elements automatically activates instrument filters in the layout and selects the new instrument filter.


TIP

- You can also add, edit, and delete instrument filters in the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog.
- You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

Renaming instrument filters

You can change the names of instrument filters, and reset renamed instrument filters to their default names; for example, to summarize instrument filter contents into a shorter name.

PROCEDURE


1. In Write mode, open the layout whose instrument filters you want to rename.
2. Choose **Write > Instrument Visibility > Edit Instrument Filter Presets** to open the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog.
3. Click **Rename Instrument Filter**  for the instrument filter you want to rename.
4. Rename the instrument filter in any of the following ways:
 - Enter a new instrument filter name, or edit the existing name.
 - To reset the instrument filter name, delete the existing name.
5. Press **Return**.

Deleting instrument filters

You can delete instrument filters you no longer need from each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout from which you want to delete instrument filters.

2. Choose **Write > Instrument Visibility > Edit Instrument Filter Presets** to open the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog.
3. Select the instrument filter you want to delete.
4. In the action bar, click **Delete Filter Preset** .

RESULT

The selected instrument filter is deleted from the layout open in the music area.

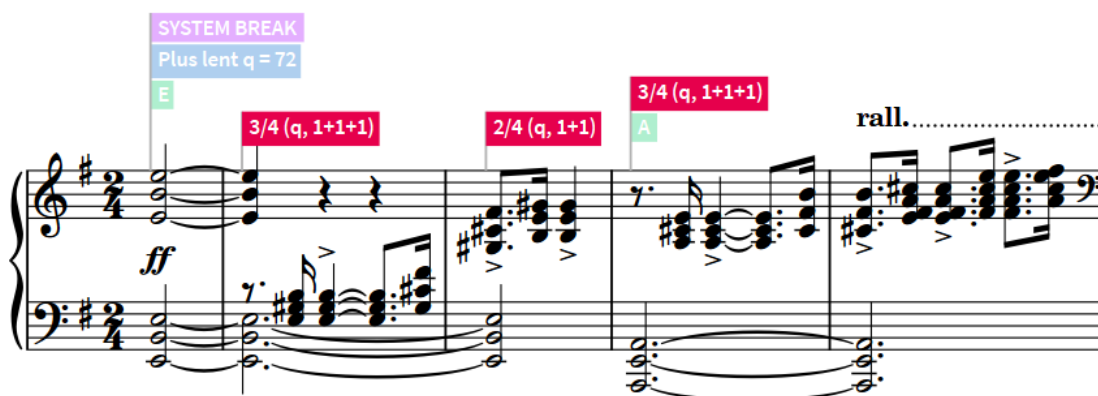
Signposts

In Dorico Elements, signposts indicate the positions of important items or changes that cannot be seen in the score, such as key signatures with no accidentals, hidden items, and rhythmic feel changes.

Signposts have different colors depending on the item they mark because many items can show signposts, such as hidden bar numbers and time signatures. They are selectable, meaning you can use signposts to change properties of hidden/invisible items; for example, by selecting system break signposts in order to change the staff size from that position. Selected signposts appear solid, while unselected signposts appear translucent.

Signposts include a text summary of the hidden/invisible item to help you identify it. For example, time signature signposts include the time signature, expressed as a fraction, and its beat subdivision.

When multiple signposts exist at the same rhythmic position or in close proximity to each other, they stack vertically so that they do not overlap and remain legible.



The image shows a musical score snippet with two staves (treble and bass clef). Above the staff, several signposts are visible, stacked vertically at different points. From left to right, the signposts are: a purple box labeled 'SYSTEM BREAK', a blue box labeled 'Plus lent q = 72', a green box labeled 'E', a red box labeled '3/4 (q, 1+1+1)', a red box labeled '2/4 (q, 1+1)', a green box labeled 'A', and a red box labeled '3/4 (q, 1+1+1)'. The word 'rall.' is written above the staff on the right side. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and dynamics like 'ff'.

Multiple signposts for different items above the staff, with time signature signposts selected

NOTE

By default, signposts are not printed or included when you export graphics files.

RELATED LINKS

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Hiding/Showing signposts

You can hide/show all signposts or only hide/show signposts for specific items at any time in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show signposts in any of the following ways:
 - To hide/show all signposts, choose **View > Signposts > Hide Signposts**.
 - To hide/show signposts for specific items, choose **View > Signposts > [Type of item]**.
-

Insert mode


Insert mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Insert mode is activated, notes are pushed to subsequent rhythmic positions instead of being overwritten if you input new notes or lengthen existing notes. Similarly, deleting notes or reducing their duration with Insert mode activated pulls surrounding notes closer together without leaving rests between them.

For example, if you input four quarter notes with Insert mode activated, all subsequent notes are pushed four quarter note beats back to accommodate the new notes.

Edits outside of note input that are affected by Insert mode include copying/pasting notes, deleting notes, changing the duration of notes including by adding/removing rhythm dots, or inputting time signatures.

The voices and staves affected by Insert mode depend on the Insert mode scope. The current Insert mode scope is indicated in the Notes toolbox and by the caret during note input.

You can set a single rhythmic position in each flow as an Insert mode stop position, which prevents any material beyond the stop point being affected by inserted notes. For example, if you want to insert notes at the start of a flow but want to preserve material from a specific position later in the flow. Stop positions appear as a vertical translucent line that spans all staves.

- You can activate/deactivate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert**  in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

When Insert mode is not activated, Dorico Elements does not add extra beats before an existing time signature if you change a previous time signature. When Insert mode is activated, Dorico Elements inserts beats before existing time signatures to fill the final bar.



3/4 time signature input without Insert mode activated



3/4 time signature input with Insert mode activated

RELATED LINKS


- [Inputting notes in Insert mode](#) on page 237
- [Rhythmic position](#) on page 24
- [Chord mode](#) on page 254
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [System track](#) on page 425
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455
[Turning tuplets into normal notes](#) on page 1410

Insert mode scopes

Insert mode has different scopes, from affecting only selected voices to affecting all players and changing the duration of the current bar. All scopes apply until the Insert mode stop position or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

You can change the Insert mode scope in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Alt/Opt-I** to cycle through the different Insert mode scopes.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Insert** , then click the scope you want.
- Choose **Write > Insert Scope > [Scope]**.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following Insert mode scopes:

Voice



Insert mode only affects the selected voices. During note input, this is the voice indicated by the caret indicator. Outside of note input, this includes all selected voices, such as when you copy and paste material across multiple staves.

Player



Insert mode affects all voices and instruments belonging to the selected players. During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

Global



Insert mode affects all players in the flow. During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

Global Adjustment of Current Bar



Insert mode affects all players in the flow, changes the duration of the current bar, and updates its time signature to reflect its new duration. For example, inputting notes extends the duration of bars while deleting notes shortens the duration of bars.

During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

TIP

You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS

[Caret](#) on page 218


[Arranging tools](#) on page 455
[Players](#) on page 123
[Voices](#) on page 1438
[Time signatures](#) on page 1381
[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

Changing the Insert mode scope

You can change the Insert mode scope; for example, if you want to switch from inserting notes into the selected voice only to inserting rhythmic time for all players.

The current Insert mode scope is indicated in the Notes toolbox and by the caret during note input.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, change the Insert mode scope in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Alt/Opt-I** to cycle through the different Insert mode scopes.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Insert** , then click the scope you want.
 - Choose **Write > Insert Scope > [Scope]**.


RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
[Inputting notes in Insert mode](#) on page 237

Setting Insert mode stop positions

You can set a single rhythmic position in each flow as an Insert mode stop position, which prevents any material beyond the stop point being affected by inserted notes. For example, if you want to insert notes at the start of a flow but want to preserve material from a specific position later in the flow.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the rhythmic position that you want to be the Insert mode stop position in any of the following ways:
 - Select an item in the music area.
 - In the system track, select the bar whose start barline you want to set as the stop position.
2. Set the Insert mode stop position in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-I**.
 - In the system track, click **Set Edit Stop Position** .
 - Choose **Write > Insert Scope > Set Edit Stop Position**.

RESULT

The Insert mode stop position for the flow is set at the selected rhythmic position. It appears as a vertical translucent line that spans all staves.

Because each flow can only have a single stop position, any existing stop position elsewhere in the flow is deleted.

When Insert mode is activated, existing notes that would otherwise be pushed beyond the stop position are deleted.

TIP

You can also move stop positions to barlines by clicking the top handle and dragging to the right/left.

EXAMPLE



Insert mode stop position across two piano staves


RELATED LINKS

- [System track](#) on page 425
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Deleting Insert mode stop positions

You can delete Insert mode stop positions after they have been set.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, delete Insert mode stop positions in any of the following ways:
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position of the Insert mode stop position and press **Shift-Alt/Opt-I**.
 - In the system track, click **Set Edit Stop Position**  above existing stop positions.
 - Click the stop position top handle and drag it in any direction until the mouse pointer is outside the music, then release the mouse.



TIP

When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, the stop position appears as a dotted line.

Arranging tools

Arranging tools in Dorico Elements allow you to allocate notes to different staves and voices quickly and efficiently.

These tools include copying notes and items to multiple staves at the same time, and multiple times within a selected range, moving notes between staves, and changing the voices of notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Note durations](#) on page 258

[Transposing tools](#) on page 468

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Copying and pasting articulations](#) on page 805

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Repitching notes without changing their rhythm](#) on page 472

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Chord mode](#) on page 254

[Musical transformations](#) on page 477

Deleting notes/items

You can delete any notes/items you have input into your project independently of each other, such as deleting repeat endings without deleting the notes in them. However, you must be in Write mode. You cannot delete notes and items in Setup, Engrave, or Print modes.

You can also delete notes in the Key Editor, but not other notation items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, and/or the signposts of items you want to delete.

NOTE

- You must select barlines directly, not their signposts.
- If you delete some but not all dynamics from a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves.
- Deleting only tuplets does not delete the notes within them, and vice versa.
- To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RESULT

All selected notes/items are deleted from your project. Dorico Elements moves your selection to the most logical and nearby item to the deleted items. For example, if you deleted a note, Dorico Elements's first choice is the nearest note in the same voice.

If Insert mode was activated, notes following deleted notes move up to fill the gap. If Insert mode was deactivated, deleted notes are replaced by implicit rests as appropriate.

TIP

You can also delete markers by selecting them in the **Markers** section of the Video panel and clicking **Delete** in the action bar.

If a slur began or ended on a deleted note, the slur is automatically repositioned to the next/previous notehead. If only one note is left under a slur, the slur is automatically deleted.

Holds and pauses are not automatically deleted if they are not selected when you delete notes. They are positioned above the note/rest closest to their rhythmic position, or over whole bar rests if you delete all notes in a bar.

Any repeat barlines input as part of repeat endings are not deleted automatically when you delete repeat endings.

When you delete barlines, the two bars on either side combine into one bar, containing the same number of beats but without changing the time signature. This might cause note, rest, and beam groupings to change. Signposts are shown at the start of passages with deleted single barlines.

When you delete time signatures, subsequent bars are re-barred according to the previous time signature in the score, up until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without time signatures are notated in an open meter, but notes and items retain their duration and positions.

When you delete clefs and key signatures, the pitches of notes are not changed but they are automatically notated according to the previous clef and key signature on the staff, such as with additional accidentals, up to the next existing one or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

When you delete octave lines, any notes to which the deleted octave lines previously applied are shown at either concert pitch or transposed pitch, depending on your current setting for the layout.

If you delete some but not all dynamics in a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves. However, if you select and delete the whole group of dynamics from a single staff, those dynamics are not deleted from other linked staves. Deleting immediate dynamics immediately before/after hairpins can automatically adjust the length of hairpins, depending on the context.

When you delete rehearsal marks, any subsequent rehearsal marks are adjusted until the next change in the sequence or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. For example, if you delete the first rehearsal mark, the second rehearsal mark shows either the letter A, the number 1, or the bar number, depending on your choice of sequence type.

Deleting tempo marks also removes them from the Tempo editor and the Tempo track in Play mode. The tempo in playback follows the previous tempo mark, or the default tempo of 120 bpm if there is no previous tempo mark.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you deleted notes/items because you want to change where they occur, you can input new notes/items at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Editing items](#) on page 430

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Filters](#) on page 429

- [Selecting lyrics using filters](#) on page 1035
- [Deleting rests](#) on page 1276
- [Deleting notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 687
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Turning existing notes into tuplets](#) on page 1410
- [Turning tuplets into normal notes](#) on page 1410
- [Insert mode](#) on page 451
- [Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452
- [Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949
- [Linked dynamics](#) on page 951
- [Accidental duration rules](#) on page 800
- [Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type](#) on page 1218
- [Hiding/Showing clefs](#) on page 910
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Notations input](#) on page 271

Copying and pasting notes/items

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, to other rhythmic positions and staves in different ways.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use the mouse, you have enabled mouse editing.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy.

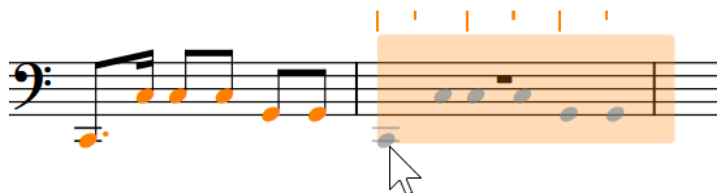
TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Copy the selected notes/items to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**, select the position to which you want to paste them, then press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.
- **Alt/Opt**-click each position to which you want to paste them.
- **Alt/Opt**-drag notes to the position and staff to which you want to paste them.

When you drag notes, shadow noteheads indicate their destination positions, and the affected region appears highlighted with the rhythmic grid shown above it.



- To repeat the material directly after itself, press **R**.
 - To copy notes/items to the staff above, select them and choose **Edit > Paste Special > Duplicate to Staff Above**.
 - To copy notes/items to the staff below, select them and choose **Edit > Paste Special > Duplicate to Staff Below**.
-

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied without deleting them from their original positions. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

When you copy or move chord symbol regions to other staves, the corresponding players are set to show chord symbols.

TIP

You can assign key commands for **Duplicate to Staff Above** and **Duplicate to Staff Below** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting](#) on page 460
[Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#) on page 212
[Copying and pasting articulations](#) on page 805
[Copying and pasting lyrics](#) on page 1032
[Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 686
[Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor](#) on page 676
[Copying dynamic points to other instruments](#) on page 699
[Copying MIDI points to other instruments](#) on page 705
[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
[Filters](#) on page 429
[Large selections](#) on page 424
[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421
[Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464
[Resetting notes crossed to other staves](#) on page 854
[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
[Splitting notes by duration](#) on page 261
[Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting](#) on page 460
[Repitching notes without changing their rhythm](#) on page 472
[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951
[Linked slurs](#) on page 1297
[Musical transformations](#) on page 477
[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253
[Insert mode](#) on page 451
[Chord mode](#) on page 254

Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves

You can copy and paste notes and other items to multiple staves at once; for example, to copy a single phrase to all the woodwind staves when they are playing in unison.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy to multiple staves.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected notes/items.
3. Select an item on each staff to which you want to paste the selected items.

NOTE

The earliest selected item on the top selected staff determines the rhythmic position for pasted items on all staves.

4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the selected notes/items.
-

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied to all of the selected staves. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

When you copy or move chord symbol regions to other staves, the corresponding players are set to show chord symbols.

TIP

If you selected a range of notes/items on each staff, the selected notes/items are also pasted multiple times to fill the selected range.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting](#) on page 460

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Linked slurs](#) on page 1297

[Resetting notes crossed to other staves](#) on page 854

Copying and pasting notes/items to fill a selected range

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, multiple times within a selected range at once; for example, if you want to fill multiple bars with the same phrase.

NOTE

You can only copy and paste items that have a duration to fill a selection. For example, you can copy and paste gradual dynamics to fill a selection but not immediate dynamics.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy throughout a range.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected notes/items.

3. Select the range throughout which you want to paste the selected notes/items.
 4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the selected notes/items.
-

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied as many times as will fit within the selected range without extending beyond it. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

When you copy or move chord symbol regions to other staves, the corresponding players are set to show chord symbols.

TIP

If you selected a range on multiple staves, the selected items are also pasted to multiple staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Splitting notes by duration](#) on page 261

Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting

By default, dynamics and slurs are automatically linked when you copy them to other staves at the same rhythmic position. You can disable this behavior so dynamics and slurs are not linked by default.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
 3. In the **Editing** section, deactivate **Link dynamics and slurs to existing items when pasting**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Linked slurs](#) on page 1297

Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting

By default, all MIDI CC, MIDI pitch bend, and dynamic points are copied when you copy the notes to which they apply. You can disable this behavior for all future projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, deactivate **Include MIDI CC, pitch bend and dynamics from Key Editor when copying music**.

4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

[Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 686

Moving notes/items rhythmically

You can move notes and items to new rhythmic positions to the right/left along staves after they have been input. For example, if you want a *cresc.* dynamic to start a beat later. You can also move individual dynamics and playing techniques within a group.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following items: barlines, notehead brackets, glissando lines, notehead-attached horizontal lines, fingerings and fingering slides, jazz articulations, guitar bends, vibrato bar dives/returns, pedal retakes, and tremolo strokes. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of these items, you must delete them from their original positions and input new ones at the new positions.

We recommend deleting and inputting new arpeggio signs and vertical lines rather than moving them. If you move arpeggio signs and vertical lines to the rhythmic position of a rest, they are deleted.

- Because markers have a fixed position in time, moving markers relative to the notated music automatically changes the tempo on either side of the marker. If you want to move a marker to a new time position, you must change the timecode of the marker; for example, if you want to move it from 25 seconds to 28 seconds.

PREREQUISITE



- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.
- If you want to use the mouse, you have enabled mouse editing.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, or signposts that you want to move.

NOTE

- If you want tuplet notes to remain tuplets, you must also select their tuplet numbers/ratios, brackets, or tuplet signposts, otherwise notes become normal notes of their rhythmic value when you move them beyond the boundaries of tuplets.
 - You can only move a single slur, marker, repeat ending, or bar repeat region at a time.
 - When using the mouse, you can only move a single item at a time.
 - You cannot move the following items using the mouse: tuplets, lyrics, slash regions, time signatures, arpeggio signs, and vertical lines.
 - You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
 - To move a single dynamic within a group, you must click and drag it with the mouse. If you use the key commands, the whole group is moved.
 - Moving multiple playing techniques or dynamics in the same group at the same time ungroups them.
-

- Optional: If you selected notes and do not want them to overwrite existing notes they pass over as part of their move, activate one of the following:
 - If you want the selected notes to overlap with existing notes, activate Chord mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords**  in the Notes toolbox.
 - If you want the selected notes to move through existing notes, activate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert**  in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

Moving notes rhythmically with Insert mode activated can affect the durations of existing notes the selected notes move through.

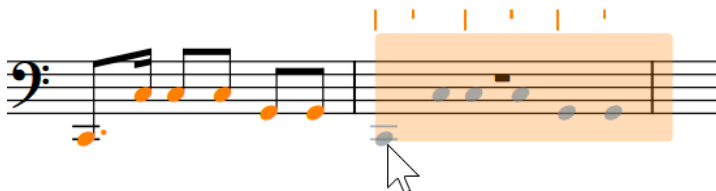
- Move the notes, items, and/or signposts in any of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To move them to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. A single selection of the following items moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: ornaments, slurs, horizontal lines, octave lines, pedal lines, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

- To move items to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To move items to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- Click and drag them to the right/left.

When you drag notes, shadow noteheads indicate their destination positions, and the affected region appears highlighted with the rhythmic grid shown above it.



NOTE

The following items move to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: ornaments, slurs, horizontal lines, octave lines, pedal lines, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

RESULT

The selected notes, items, and/or signposts are moved to new rhythmic positions. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. However, a single selection of some items automatically moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines. When multiple items are selected, they move as a block according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

NOTE

Only a single instance of many items, such as tempo marks and clefs, can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If an item passes over another item of the same type as part of its move, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly.

You can undo this action, but any items deleted in the process are only restored if you moved items using the keyboard.

Items that can have multiple instances at the same rhythmic position on the same staff include dynamics, octave lines, playing techniques, horizontal lines, slash regions, and text items. However, if you move multiple items together, any existing items of the same type between the selected items or that they pass over as part of the move are deleted or shortened accordingly unless Insert mode is activated.

Notes are automatically positioned according to their rhythmic duration and position relative to other notes.

If a tuplet number/ratio or tuplet bracket is included in the selection, the whole tuplet is moved along the staff. If it crosses a barline, the tuplet is automatically adjusted to compensate. However, tuplets are not automatically adjusted at the mid-point of bars, where it is convention to split tuplets to show the beat division. You must enter two tuplets manually to show the beat division at the mid-point of bars.

Items such as clefs, key signatures, and time signatures take effect from their new positions until the next item of the same type or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Barlines on either side of a moved time signature are automatically updated up to the previous/next existing time signature, or the start/end of the flow.

If you moved divisi change signposts, any music on divisi staves outside of divisi passages is automatically hidden, and any unison ranges before/after divisi passages are automatically updated.

If you moved harp pedal diagrams and colors are shown for notes out of range, any notes that no longer fit with the prevailing harp pedal diagram appear red.

The position of holds and pauses you have moved might not appear to change. For example, if one staff has a bar rest and you move a fermata rhythmically within the bar, the fermata still appears above the bar rest.

The rhythmic duration of slurs is usually maintained. However, depending on the rhythms they cross as they move, slurs may cover longer/shorter durations than before the move.

Moving repeat endings does not automatically input, delete, or move repeat barlines.

When you move markers, their fixed position in time is not changed. Therefore, the tempo immediately preceding the marker automatically updates so that the marker occurs at the correct time. For example, moving a marker to the right increases the preceding tempo. Any gradual tempo changes between the preceding tempo change or the start of the flow and the marker are removed. The tempo change affects the positions of all other markers in the flow relative to the notated music.

RELATED LINKS

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#) on page 212

[Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Chord mode](#) on page 254

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413
[Tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416
[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434
[Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464
[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851
[Moving figured bass resolutions](#) on page 966
[Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945
[Splitting pedal lines](#) on page 1169
[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
[Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064
[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949
[Groups of playing techniques](#) on page 1191
[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455
[Input methods for lines](#) on page 385
[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340
[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353
[Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329
[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405
[Adding retakes with the popover](#) on page 377
[Adding retakes with the panel](#) on page 378
[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274
[Hiding/Showing fingering slides](#) on page 988
[Showing brackets on noteheads](#) on page 1067
[Changing the timecodes of markers](#) on page 1224

Moving notes/items to other staves

You can move notes and items to other staves of any type; for example, if you want to move individual notes from one keyboard staff to another after importing a keyboard part from a MIDI file.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to pedal lines or system objects.
- If you want notes to appear on a different staff but remain attached to their original staff, such as to create a cross-staff beam, you can cross notes to other staves instead.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use the mouse, you have enabled mouse editing.

PROCEDURE

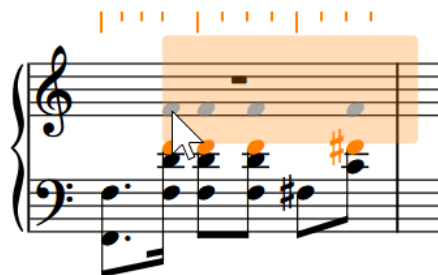
1. In Write mode, select the notes and/or items you want to move to another staff.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Move the selected notes/items another staff in one of the following ways:
 - To move them to the staff above, press **Alt/Opt-N**.
 - To move them to the staff below, press **Alt/Opt-M**.
 - Click and drag notes to other staves.

When you drag notes, shadow noteheads indicate their destination positions, and the affected region appears highlighted with the rhythmic grid shown above it.



- Choose **Edit > Paste Special > Move to Staff Above**.
- Choose **Edit > Paste Special > Move to Staff Below**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected notes and/or items are moved to another staff by cutting them from their original staff and pasting them to the new staff. By default, notes are pasted into the first voice active on that staff.

Notes within tuplets remain tuplets even if you did not select the tuplet bracket, tuplet number/ratio, or tuplet signpost.

When you copy or move chord symbol regions to other staves, the corresponding players are set to show chord symbols.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#) on page 212

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves](#) on page 458

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Moving notes to other instruments in percussion kits

You can move notes to different instruments in the same percussion kit after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps do not apply in layouts using the single-line instruments kit presentation type. In such layouts, you can cross or move notes to other staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to move to a different instrument in the percussion kit.
 2. Move the notes to another instrument in any of the following ways:
 - To move them to the instrument above, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To move them to the instrument below, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the position of each instrument in the kit.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 149

[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

Changing the voice of existing notes





You can change the voice of notes after they have been input, including notes in slash voices. For example, you can change notes in an up-stem voice to a down-stem voice or a slash voice.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose voice you want to change.

TIP

You can use large selections and filters to select many notes in the same voice quickly.

2. Change the voice in any of the following ways:
 - To change the selected notes to a new normal voice, press **Shift-V** or click **Create Voice**  in the Notes toolbox.
 - To change the selected notes to a new slash voice, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**. You can also click and hold **Create Voice** , then click **Create Slash Voice** .
 - To change the selected notes to an existing voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice**  in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.
-

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, which might cause Dorico Elements to change the stem directions of the selected notes and other notes on the staff. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.

By default, notes in slash voices are not played back. However, if you include slash voices in playback, notes in slash voices play back with their input pitch.

TIP

You can also change the voice of selected notes by choosing **Edit > Notations > Voices > Change Voice > [Voice]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu. If there is only one voice on the staff, you can create a new voice for your selected notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can later delete or hide rests and change the stem direction of notes manually.
- You can also change whole voices into slash voices.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439
[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232
[Inputting notes into slash voices](#) on page 233
[Large selections](#) on page 424
[Filters](#) on page 429
[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273
[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276
[Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076
[Changing the slash voice type](#) on page 1259
[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
[Tuplets](#) on page 1408
[Signposts](#) on page 450

Swapping the contents of voices

You can swap the contents of two voices that contain musical material.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes in two voices that you want to swap.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Swap Voice Contents**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The contents of the voices are swapped. For example, the notes previously in an up-stem voice are now in a down-stem voice, and the notes previously in a down-stem voice are now in an up-stem voice.

NOTE

Depending on the pitches involved in the swap and their stem directions, the notes might overlap. Dorico Elements automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. However, if you want to change this arrangement, you can change the order of voices or change the voice column index.

EXAMPLE



An E is in the up-stem voice, an F in the down-stem voice.



After swapping their voice contents, the E is in the down-stem voice, and the F is in the up-stem voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Swapping the order of voices](#) on page 1442

[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

Transposing tools

In Dorico Elements, you can change the pitches of existing notes in a variety of ways.

RELATED LINKS

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Transposing notes in the piano roll editor](#) on page 685

Changing the pitch of individual notes

You can raise/lower the pitch and register of individual notes, including grace notes, after they have been input by octave divisions, staff position, and octaves.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use the mouse, you have enabled mouse editing.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to change.
2. Raise/Lower the pitches of the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - To move notes up one staff position, such as from C to D, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To move notes down one staff position, such as from D to C, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes up a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes down a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes up an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes down an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes up/down by staff position, click and drag notes upwards/downwards.
 - To transpose notes up/down by octave division, start dragging notes upwards/downwards, then press and hold **Shift**.
 - To transpose notes up/down by octaves, start dragging notes upwards/downwards, then press and hold **Ctrl/Cmd**.

When you drag notes, shadow noteheads indicate their destination pitches, and the affected region appears highlighted with the rhythmic grid shown above it.



RESULT

The pitch or register of the selected notes is changed. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is updated automatically.

If the pitch is now impossible to play on a fretted instrument, such as if a note would have to be played below the nut on the lowest string, it appears on tablature as a question mark.

NOTE

You can press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** and **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow** to change the staff positions of notes in percussion kits using grid and five-line staff presentation types. However, this also changes the instrument playing the note.

RELATED LINKS

[Equal Division of the Octave \(EDO\)](#) on page 1028

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244

[Transposing notes in the piano roll editor](#) on page 685

[Enabling/Disabling mouse editing](#) on page 212

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Figured bass](#) on page 957

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Musical transformations](#) on page 477

[Inverting pitches](#) on page 478

[Reversing pitches/rhythms](#) on page 478

[Rotating pitches/rhythms](#) on page 480

[Mapping notes to pitches](#) on page 482

[Mapping notes to scales](#) on page 484

Transposing selections

You can transpose whole flows or specific selections, including selected key signatures, using the **Transpose** dialog.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: In Write mode, select the region you want to transpose.

NOTE

- To transpose key signatures, chord symbols, or figured bass, you must include them in your selection.
 - If nothing is selected, the whole flow in which you last selected a note/item is transposed.
-
2. Choose **Write > Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
 3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

TIP

- We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings; for example, if you want to transpose from G \flat major to G major.
- Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

4. Optional: If you want to transpose any key signatures in the flow or included in your selection, activate **Transpose key signatures**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

All notes in your selection, or all notes in the flow if nothing was selected, are transposed according to the interval or number of divisions of the octave specified in the **Transpose** dialog.

If your selection included key signatures and you activated **Transpose key signatures**, all key signatures in the selection are also transposed.

Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.

Key signatures that apply to all staves are transposed on all staves in the layout, even if your selection did not include all staves. Key signatures that apply only to single staves are transposed if they are included in a selection, but this does not affect any other staff in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[System track](#) on page 425

[Figured bass](#) on page 957

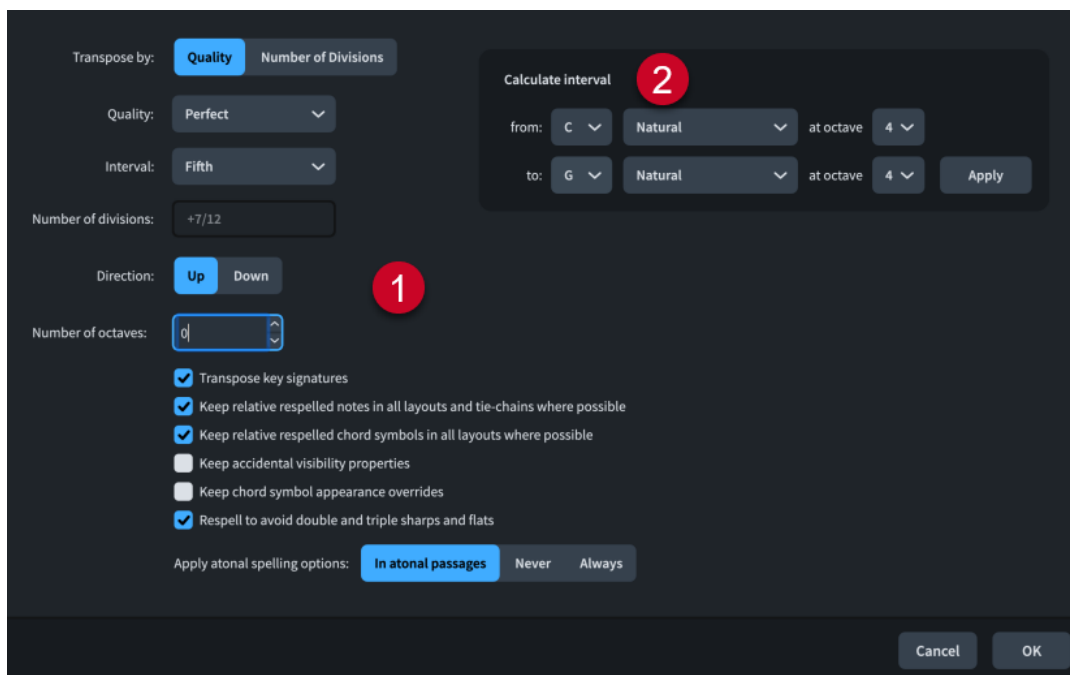
[Enharmonic equivalent key signatures](#) on page 1025

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

Transpose dialog

The **Transpose** dialog allows you to transpose whole flows or selections of notes, including key signatures. You can transpose according to an interval and quality or by a set number of octave divisions.

- You can open the **Transpose** dialog in Write mode by choosing **Write > Transpose**.



The **Transpose** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Transposition options

Contains options that allow you to specify the transposition you want. For example, you can choose to transpose by an interval quality, such as a major third, or by a set number of divisions of the octave. You can choose the direction of the transposition, whether it includes octaves, and the interval and quality or number of divisions by which you want to transpose your selection.

According to convention, different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

Additional options also allow you to transpose any key signatures included in your selection, keep relative respelled notes and chord symbols where possible, and avoid double and triple accidentals.

NOTE

You can only use **Respell to avoid double and triple sharps and flats** when transposing music in tonality systems that are compatible with 12-EDO.

2 Calculate interval

Allows you to set transposition options according to a starting note and the resulting note you want. For example, if you want to transpose a selection relative to a C₄ becoming a G₄ but you are not certain of the interval and quality required, you can enter those two notes in the **Calculate interval** section, click **Apply**, and Dorico Elements automatically sets the required transposition options for you.

NOTE

The **Transpose** dialog does not allow transpositions that would result in impossible notations, such as sharper than a triple sharp, or that require a microtonal accidental that does not exist in the tonality system in place at the position of your selection.



RELATED LINKS

- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Equal Division of the Octave \(EDO\)](#) on page 1028
- [Tonality systems](#) on page 1028
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Musical transformations](#) on page 477
- [Mapping notes to pitches](#) on page 482
- [Mapping notes to scales](#) on page 484

Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover

You can change the pitch of notes after they have been input using the note tools popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to transpose.
 2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-I**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Note Tools** .
 3. Enter the transposition interval you want into the popover.
For example, enter **t3** to transpose the notes up a third, or **t-min6** to transpose the notes down a minor sixth.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The selected notes are transposed by the degree specified. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.


RELATED LINKS



- [Notations toolbox](#) on page 201
- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Figured bass](#) on page 957

Repitching notes without changing their rhythm

You can repitch notes after you have input them while keeping their durations the same. For example, if you want to duplicate the rhythm but have different pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the first note you want to repitch.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to repitch notes on multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Activate **Lock Duration** in any of the following ways:
 - Press **L**.

- In the Notes toolbox, click **Lock Duration** .
5. Enter the pitches you want.
 6. Optional: Press **L** or click **Lock Duration**  again to deactivate **Lock Duration**.

NOTE

Lock Duration automatically deactivates when you reach the last existing note on the staff. By default, normal note input continues using the previous note value selected before you activated **Lock Duration**.

RESULT

Existing notes on the selected staff are repitched without their rhythms being changed. The caret automatically advances from note to note, even if there are large rests between notes on the staff.

TIP

You can set a maximum number of rests over which you want to advance when repitching notes in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input > Lock Duration**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Caret on page 218](#)
- [Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 222](#)
- [Arranging tools on page 455](#)
- [Musical transformations on page 477](#)
- [Mapping notes to pitches on page 482](#)
- [Mapping notes to scales on page 484](#)
- [Copying and pasting articulations on page 805](#)
- [Preferences dialog on page 58](#)

Respelling notes

You can change the enharmonic spelling of notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents; for example, to show the stepwise movement in a phrase clearly, or to avoid altered unisons in a chord. You can do this for all layouts or only in the current part layout.

By default, Dorico Elements uses an algorithm that automatically decides the spelling of pitches, based on key signature and context.

There are always at least three options for every pitch, as Dorico Elements allows enharmonic spellings to show up to two accidental glyphs. This means the same note can be spelled four ways if the original pitch can be spelled with the note name either two notes below or two notes above, using a maximum of two accidental glyphs. For example, B[♯] is a possible enharmonic spelling of G[♯] because a triple-flat uses a single accidental glyph, whereas an F[♯] uses two accidental glyphs.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to respell accidentals. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.



NOTE

By default, respelling notes in score layouts also affects their spelling in all other layouts, but respelling notes in part layouts only affects their spelling in the current part layout.

2. Select the notes you want to respell.

NOTE

If you want to respell individual noteheads in tie chains, you must be in Engrave mode.

3. Respell the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - To respell them upwards, press **Alt/Opt-=** or click **Respell Using Note Name Above**  in the Keyboard panel toolbar.
 - To respell them downwards, press **Alt/Opt--** or click **Respell Using Note Name Below**  in the Keyboard panel toolbar.
 - To respell them automatically, choose **Write > Respell > Respell Notes Automatically** to open the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog.
 4. Optional: If you opened the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog, change the settings for respelling as required, then click **OK** to close the dialog and respell the selected notes.
-

RESULT

The enharmonic spelling of the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE



A G sharp



When respelled downwards, the G sharp becomes an F triple-sharp



When respelled upwards, the G sharp becomes an A flat



When respelled upwards again, the G sharp becomes a B triple-flat

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can copy note spellings to other layouts, such as if you respelled notes in a part layout but want the same spelling to appear in the full score layout.

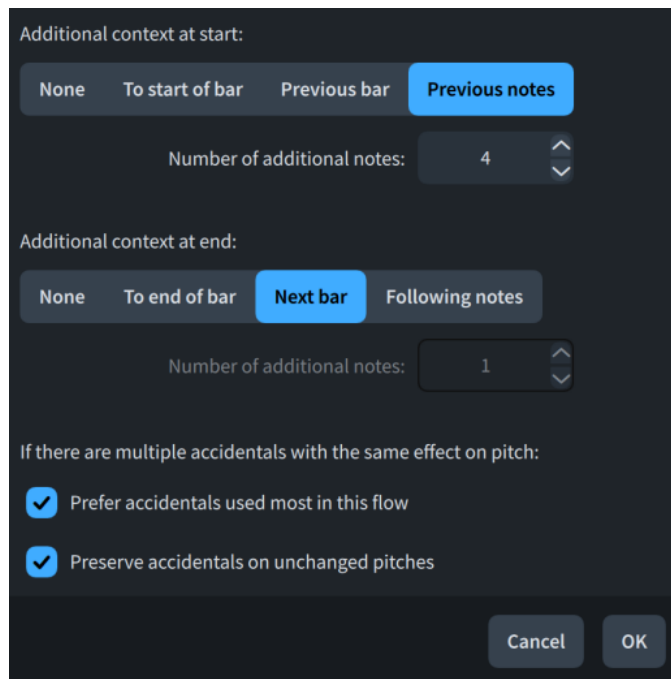
RELATED LINKS

- [Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Accidentals](#) on page 792
- [Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244
- [Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245
- [Key signatures](#) on page 1019
- [Tonality systems](#) on page 1028
- [Input methods for key signatures](#) on page 278
- [Mapping notes to pitches](#) on page 482
- [Mapping notes to scales](#) on page 484

Respell Notes Automatically dialog

The **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog allows you to simplify the note spelling of all notes in specific selections based on the musical context, including respelling some notes upwards and other notes downwards.

- You can open the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write > Respell > Respell Notes Automatically**.



The **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog contains the following options:

Additional context at start

Allows you to specify additional musical context before the selected notes that you want Dorico Elements to consider when calculating automatic note spellings.

- **None:** Only notes in the selection.
- **To start of bar:** Includes notes back to the start of the earliest selected bar.
- **Previous bar:** Includes notes back to the start of the previous bar.
- **Previous notes:** Includes a specified number of notes before the selection.
- **Number of additional notes:** Allows you to specify the number of additional notes you want to consider. Only available if you have activated **Previous notes**.

Additional context at end

Allows you to specify additional musical context after the selected notes that you want Dorico Elements to consider when calculating automatic note spellings.

- **None:** Only notes in the selection.
- **To end of bar:** Includes notes up to the end of the last selected bar.
- **Next bar:** Includes notes up to the end of the next bar.
- **Following notes:** Includes a specified number of notes after the selection.
- **Number of additional notes:** Allows you to specify the number of additional notes you want to consider. Only available if you have activated **Following notes**.

Prefer accidentals used most in this flow

Allows you to specify whether to choose accidentals based on how frequently they are used in the flow or the default accidental for the corresponding pitch delta. Useful in tonality systems that contain multiple accidentals with the same pitch delta.

Preserve accidentals on unchanged pitches

Allows you to specify whether existing accidentals on notes that are not respelled are retained or chosen according to your setting for **Prefer accidentals used most in this flow**. Useful in tonality systems that contain multiple accidentals with the same pitch delta.

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244

[Accidental selection during MIDI input](#) on page 245

[Tonality systems](#) on page 1028

Copying note spellings to other layouts

You can copy note spellings to other layouts; for example, if you originally respelled notes in a part layout but want those spellings to appear in the full score layout as well.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout containing the note spellings you want to copy.
2. Select the notes you want to respell.
3. Choose **Write > Respell > Propagate Note Spellings**.

RESULT

The spellings of the selected notes in the current layout are copied to all other layouts in which those notes appear.

RELATED LINKS

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Part formatting propagation](#) on page 643

Resetting note spellings

You can reset changes to note spellings so they follow the spelling in score layouts; for example, if you want future revisions to note spellings you make in the full score layout to affect notes whose spelling you previously overrode in a part layout. You can do this in either one part layout only or in all layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to reset note spellings in one part layout only, open that layout in the music area.
 2. In Write mode, select the notes whose spellings you want to reset.
 3. Reset their note spellings in one of the following ways:
 - Choose **Write > Respell > Reset Note Spellings in Current Layout**.
 - Choose **Write > Respell > Reset Note Spellings in All Layouts**.
-

RESULT

The spellings of the selected notes are reset either in the current part layout only or in all layouts. Their link to the score note spelling is restored, meaning all future changes you make to the spelling of the selected notes in score layouts also affect their spelling in either the current part layout or all layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

Musical transformations

Dorico Elements provides multiple tools for transforming pitches and rhythms, including reversing and inverting pitches and rotating rhythms.

In Dorico Elements, the term “musical transformations” covers the following methods of changing the pitch and/or rhythm of notes:

Inversion

The melodic contours of phrases are switched upside-down by forcing pitch intervals between notes in the opposite direction, such as a note originally a fifth above the previous note becoming a fifth below the previous note.

Reversal

The order of notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and items is reversed so they are played backwards; for example, the first note of a phrase becoming the last note. Also known as “retrograde”.

Rotation

Notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and items are shifted along by a specified number of steps either forwards or backwards, so that, for example, the first note in a phrase’s original pitch is given to the second note, the second note’s pitch to the third note, and so on.

Repetition

The pitches of the specified number of notes at the start of a phrase is repeated across all subsequent notes in the selection.

Pitch mapping

Specified pitches are transposed to become other specified pitches, such as mapping all C#s to Dbs.

Scale mapping

All notes in the specified source scale are transposed to become the equivalent notes in the destination scale according to their scale degree.

RELATED LINKS

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Note tools popover](#) on page 487

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover](#) on page 472

Inverting pitches

You can invert the pitches of selected notes, which switches the melodic contour of phrases upside-down by forcing pitch intervals between notes in the opposite direction, such as a note originally a fifth above the previous note becoming a fifth below the previous note. This transformation is also known as “inversion”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to invert.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To invert pitches only, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Invert Pitches** to open the **Invert Pitches** dialog.
 - To invert and reverse pitches, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Reverse and Invert Pitches** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog.
 - To invert and reverse pitches and reverse rhythms, choose **Write > Transform > All > Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog.
3. Change the settings as required for your inversion.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected notes are transformed according to your initial menu selection and your settings in the dialog.

TIP

You can also invert pitches using the note tools popover.

RELATED LINKS

- [Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms dialogs](#) on page 479
- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Reversing pitches/rhythms

You can reverse notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and staff-attached items so that selections are played backwards; for example, the first note of a phrase becomes the last note. This transformation is also known as “retrograde”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and staff-attached items whose pitches and/or rhythms you want to reverse.
For example, to reverse dynamics alongside notes, include dynamics in your selection.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To reverse pitches only, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Reverse Pitches**.
 - To reverse rhythms only, choose **Write > Transform > Rhythm > Reverse Rhythms**.

- To reverse pitches and rhythms, choose **Write > Transform > All > Reverse Pitches and Rhythms**.
 - To reverse and invert pitches, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Reverse and Invert Pitches** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog.
 - To reverse and invert pitches and reverse rhythms, choose **Write > Transform > All > Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog.
3. Optional: If you chose to reverse and invert pitches, change the settings as required for your inversion.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The selected notes and staff-attached items are transformed according to your initial menu selection and optionally your settings in the dialog.

TIP

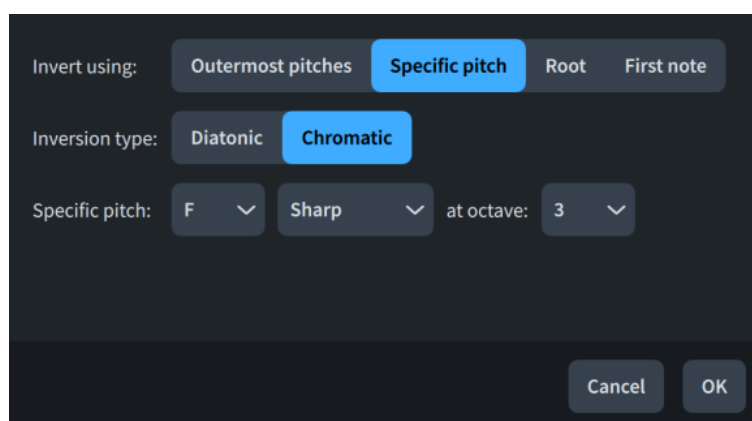
You can also reverse pitches/rhythms using the note tools popover.

Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms dialogs

The **Invert Pitches**, **Reverse and Invert Pitches**, and **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialogs allow you to invert and reverse the pitches and reverse the rhythms of selected notes. These transformations are also known as “inversion” and “retrograde inversion”.

You can open these dialogs in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area in the following ways:

- To open the **Invert Pitches** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Invert Pitches**.
- To open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Reverse and Invert Pitches**.
- To open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > All > Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms**.



The dialogs contain the following options:

Invert using

Allows you to change the inversion behavior.

- **Outermost pitches:** Inverts pitches within the range of the highest and lowest notes in the selection.

- **Specific pitch:** Inverts pitches around the specified pitch.
- **Root:** Inverts pitches around the root of the prevailing key. In open keys or music without key signatures, C is used.
- **First note:** Inverts pitches around the first note in the selection.

Inversion type

Allows you to change how intervals are handled in the inversion.

- **Diatonic:** Inversions use the interval degree, according to the scale degrees in the prevailing key signature. Diatonic inversions preserve the interval relationship between pitches, which can result in, for example, a minor second interval below becoming a major second interval above.
- **Chromatic:** Inversions use the specified number of half-steps (semitones), regardless of the prevailing key signature.

Not available when **Outermost pitches** is chosen for **Invert using**.

Specific pitch

Allows you to specify the central pitch for inversion. You can select the note name, accidental, and octave, according to your middle C numbering convention setting. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Only available when **Specific pitch** is chosen for **Invert using**.

When first note is a chord, use

Allows you to specify which pitch to use as the central pitch for inversion when the first note is part of a chord.

- **Top note of chord:** The highest note in the chord is used.
- **Bottom note of chord:** The lowest note in the chord is used.

Only available when **First note** is chosen for **Invert using**.

RELATED LINKS

[Tonality systems](#) on page 1028

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Rotating pitches/rhythms

You can rotate notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and staff-attached items by a specified number of steps either forwards or backwards, so that, for example, the first note in a phrase's original pitch is given to the second note, the second note's pitch to the third note, and so on.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and staff-attached items whose pitches and/or rhythms you want to rotate.
For example, to rotate dynamics alongside notes, include dynamics in your selection.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To rotate pitches only, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Rotate Pitches** to open the **Rotate Pitches** dialog.
 - To rotate rhythms only, choose **Write > Transform > Rhythm > Rotate Rhythms** to open the **Rotate Rhythms** dialog.
 - To rotate pitches and rhythms, choose **Write > Transform > All > Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** to open the **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialog.

3. Change the settings as required for your rotation.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The selected notes and staff-attached items are rotated according to your settings in the dialog.

TIP

You can also rotate pitches/rhythms using the note tools popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Note tools popover](#) on page 487

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

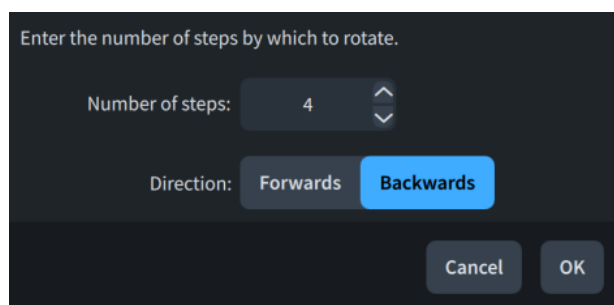
[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Rotate Pitches/Rhythms dialogs

The **Rotate Pitches**, **Rotate Rhythms**, and **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialogs allow you to rotate the pitches and/or rhythms of selected notes.

You can open these dialogs in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area in the following ways:

- To open the **Rotate Pitches** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Rotate Pitches**.
- To open the **Rotate Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > Rhythm > Rotate Rhythms**.
- To open the **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write > Transform > All > Rotate Pitches and Rhythms**.



The dialogs contain the following options:

Number of steps

Allows you to set the number of steps in the rotation.

Direction

Allows you to set the rotation direction.

- **Forwards:** Rotates forwards; that is, pitches/rhythms shift to the right.
- **Backwards:** Rotates backwards; that is, pitches/rhythms shift to the left.

Repeating pitches across notes

You can repeat a specified number of pitches across all subsequent notes in the selection; for example, if you want to change the harmonic pattern for a passage.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, make a selection that includes both of the following:
 - The notes whose pitches you want to repeat
 - The notes across which you want to repeat pitches
2. Choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Repeat Pitches** to open the **Repeat Pitches** dialog.
3. Change the value in the value field.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The specified number of pitches at the start of the selection is repeated across the following notes in the selection.

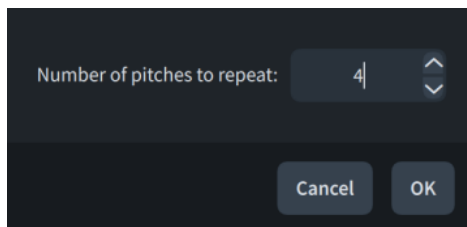
TIP

You can also repeat pitches using the note tools popover.

Repeat Pitches dialog

The **Repeat Pitches** dialog allows you to set the number of pitches you want to repeat across all subsequent notes in the selection.

- You can open the **Repeat Pitches** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write > Transform > Pitches > Repeat Pitches**.



The **Repeat Pitches** dialog contains the following option:

Number of pitches to repeat

Allows you to set the number of pitches you want to repeat across the selection, starting from the first selected note.

Mapping notes to pitches

You can map multiple source pitches to destination pitches in a single transformation; for example, if you want to transform all C#s, F#s, and A#s into Dbs, Gbs, and Bbs.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to map.
2. Choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Map Pitches** to open the **Map Pitches** dialog.
3. Change the settings for **Map pitch** to specify the source pitch.

4. Activate/Deactivate **Include enharmonic equivalents**.
 5. Change the settings for **To** to specify the destination pitch.
 6. Click **Add mapping**.
 7. Optional: Repeat steps 3 to 6 for each pitch you want to map.
 8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The specified source pitches are mapped to the specified destination pitches according to your settings.

TIP

You can also map pitches using the note tools popover.

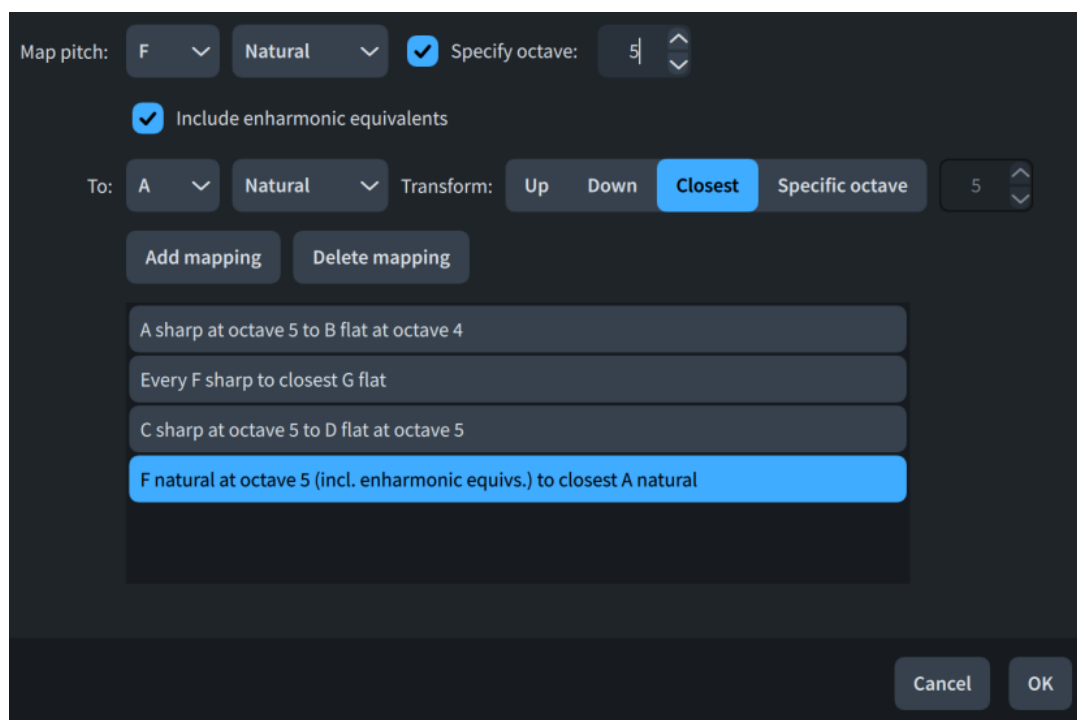
RELATED LINKS

- [Note tools popover](#) on page 487
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Respelling notes](#) on page 473
- [Arranging tools](#) on page 455
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Map Pitches dialog

The **Map Pitches** dialog allows you to set multiple pitch mappings in a single transformation; for example, if you want to transform all C#s, F#s, and A#s into Dbs, Gbs, and Bbs.

- You can open the **Map Pitches** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write > Transform > Pitches > Map Pitches**.



The **Map Pitches** dialog contains the following options:

Map pitch

Allows you to specify the source pitch you want to map to the destination pitch. You can select a note name and accidental, and you can also optionally specify the octave, according to your middle C numbering convention setting. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Include enharmonic equivalents

When activated, enharmonic equivalents to the specified source pitch are included in the mapping. For example, if you want to map A \sharp s and B \flat s to Gs.

When deactivated, enharmonic equivalents to the specified source pitch are excluded from the mapping.

To

Allows you to specify the destination pitch to which you want to map the source pitch. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Transform

Allows you to specify the octave selection for the mapping.

- **Up:** Destination pitches are higher than the source pitch.
- **Down:** Destination pitches are lower than the source pitch.
- **Closest:** Destination pitches use the octave the smallest interval from the source pitch.
- **Specific octave:** Destination pitches use the octave specified in the value field. Follows your middle C numbering convention setting.

Add mapping

Adds the set mapping to the mapping list.

Delete mapping

Removes the selected mapping from the mapping list.

Mapping list

Contains the set mappings for the transformation.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Mapping notes to scales

You can map all notes in a specified source scale to equivalent degrees of a destination scale; for example, if you want to transform a passage from major to minor with the same root.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to map.
 2. Choose **Write > Transform > Pitches > Map Scale** to open the **Map Scale** dialog.
 3. Adjust the parameters required for your scale mapping, such as scale roots and scale patterns.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The specified pitches in the source scale are mapped to the specified pitches in the destination scale according to your settings.

TIP

You can also map scales using the note tools popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Note tools popover](#) on page 487

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

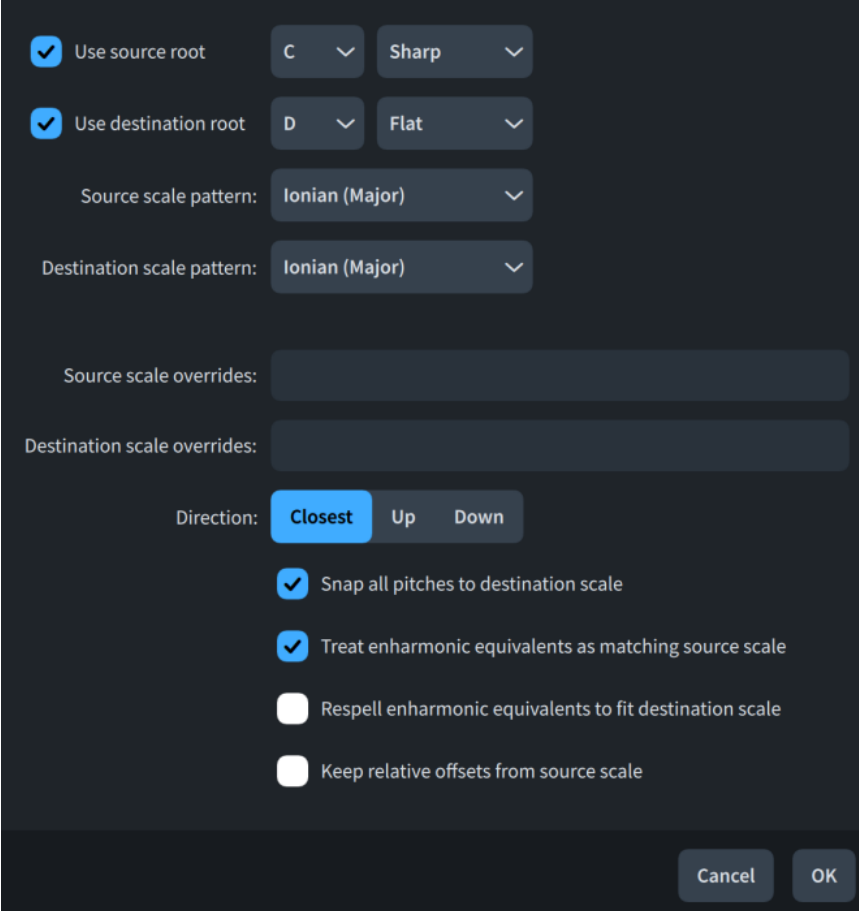
[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

Map Scale dialog

The **Map Scale** dialog allows you to map all notes in the specified source scale to equivalent degrees of the destination scale; for example, if you want to transform a passage from major to minor with the same root.

- You can open the **Map Scale** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write > Transform > Pitches > Map Scale**.



The screenshot shows the 'Map Scale' dialog box with the following settings:

- Use source root: C (Sharp)
- Use destination root: D (Flat)
- Source scale pattern: Ionian (Major)
- Destination scale pattern: Ionian (Major)
- Source scale overrides: (empty text field)
- Destination scale overrides: (empty text field)
- Direction: **Closest** (Up, Down)
- Snap all pitches to destination scale
- Treat enharmonic equivalents as matching source scale
- Respell enharmonic equivalents to fit destination scale
- Keep relative offsets from source scale

Buttons: Cancel, OK

The **Map Scale** dialog contains the following options:

Use source root

When activated, allows you to specify the source scale root you want to map to the destination scale root. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements uses the scale root implied by the prevailing key signature.

Use destination root

When activated, allows you to specify the destination scale root to which you want to map the source scale root. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements uses the scale root implied by the prevailing key signature.

Source scale pattern

Allows you to select the scale type of the source scale.

Destination scale pattern

Allows you to select the scale type of the destination scale.

Source scale overrides

Allows you to customize the source scale by specifying pitches that deviate from its preset pattern. Notes are mapped relative to the customized scale pattern. For example, if you add a sharp sixth source scale override when mapping C major to C harmonic minor, A₆s are treated as flattened sixths and become A^bs.

- To specify flat scale degrees, enter **b[n]**, such as **b2**.
- To specify sharp scale degrees, enter **#[n]**, such as **#6**.

Destination scale overrides

Allows you to customize the destination scale by specifying pitches that deviate from its preset pattern. Notes are mapped relative to the customized scale pattern. For example, if you add a flattened second destination scale override when mapping C major to C harmonic minor, D₂s become D₂^bs.

- To specify flat scale degrees, enter **b[n]**, such as **b2**.
- To specify sharp scale degrees, enter **#[n]**, such as **#6**.

Direction

Allows you to specify the octave selection for the mapping.

- **Closest:** Destination pitches use the octave the smallest interval from the source pitch.
- **Up:** Destination pitches are higher than the source pitch.
- **Down:** Destination pitches are lower than the source pitch.

Snap all pitches to destination scale

When activated, all notes are snapped to the nearest pitch in the destination scale, including notes outside the source scale. When deactivated, only notes in the source scale are mapped to the destination scale.

Treat enharmonic equivalents as matching source scale

When activated, notes that are enharmonic equivalents to notes in the source scale are included in the mapping. When deactivated, only notes whose enharmonic spelling is in the source scale are mapped to the destination scale.

Respell enharmonic equivalents to fit destination scale

When activated, enharmonic equivalent notes included in the mapping are respelled to fit the destination scale. When deactivated, enharmonic equivalent notes are transposed according to the scale mapping without being respelled.

Only available when **Treat enharmonic equivalents as matching source scale** is activated.

Keep relative offsets from source scale

When activated, Dorico Elements preserves the relative offsets between notes in the source scale. For example, if you map C major to D Aeolian, a B \flat would be mapped to C \flat .



When deactivated, Dorico Elements changes the relative offsets between notes in the source scale if different intervals are more appropriate in the destination scale. For example, if you map C major to D Aeolian, a B \flat would be mapped to C \natural .

Note tools popover

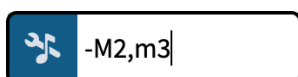
The note tools popover allows you to add notes above and below existing notes, transpose existing notes, and transform the pitches and rhythms of selected notes.

It makes much of the functionality provided by the **Add Notes Above or Below**, **Transpose**, **Reverse and Invert Pitches/Rhythms**, **Rotate Pitches/Rhythms**, **Map Pitches**, **Map Scale**, and **Repeat Pitches** dialogs accessible directly via the keyboard.

You can open the note tools popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when notes are selected, including during note input:

- Press **Shift-I**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Note Tools** .
- Choose **Write > Add Intervals**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Note tools popover with an example entry



Note Tools button in the Notations toolbox

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the note tools popover to transform selections, transpose notes, or add notes above/below existing notes.

Intervals

Interval or quality	Popover entry
Interval degree	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and so on, up to 15
Unison, second, third, fourth, fifth, and so on, up to two octaves	
Major	M, maj, or major

Interval or quality	Popover entry
Minor	m, min, or minor
Perfect	p, per, or perf
Diminished	d, dim, or diminished
Augmented	a, aug, or augmented
Diatonic	diat or diatonic
[n] octave divisions in any tonality system	[n] d, [n] div, or [n] divisions
[n] half-steps (semitones) in 12-EDO	[n] s, [n] st, [n] semi, or [n] semitones
[n] quarter tones in 24-EDO	[n] q, [n] qt, or [n] quartertones

NOTE

- You must include an interval degree before a specified total number of octave divisions, such as **5 8 div**. Together, they specify the desired note name and accidental.
- **M** and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.

Note additions

Type of addition	Popover entry
Add notes a third above	3 or 3rd
Add notes a fourth below	-4 or -4th
Add notes [n] octave divisions above, using the note name a fifth above	5 8 div in any tonality system 5 8 st in 12-EDO 5 16 qt in 24-EDO
Add notes [n] octave divisions below, using the note name a sixth below	-6 9 div in any tonality system -6 9 st in 12-EDO -6 18 qt in 24-EDO
Add chords containing multiple notes	3,6 or -3,3,4
Add notes only to the top notes in chords	top
Add notes only to the bottom notes in chords	bottom

NOTE

- When adding multiple notes, you must separate notes with commas, not spaces.
 - If you do not specify the interval quality, the interval degree follows the prevailing key signature. For example, in C major, if you enter **3** to add a third above a D₄, the added note is an F₄. You can specify the interval quality by including it before the interval degree, such as **maj3**.
-

EXAMPLE

- To add notes a major second below and minor third above the bottom notes in the selected chords, enter **-M2,m3 bottom**.
 - To add G_♯s above C_♯s in 24-EDO, enter **5 16 qt**.
-

Transposition

Example transposition

Popover entry

Transpose notes upwards by a third

t3

Transpose notes downwards by a sixth

t-6

Transpose notes upwards by [n] octave divisions, using the note name a fifth above

t 5 8 div in any tonality system

t 5 8 st in 12-EDO

t 5 16 qt in 24-EDO

Transpose notes downwards by [n] octave divisions, using the note name a sixth below

t -6 9 div in any tonality system

t -6 9 st in 12-EDO

t -6 18 qt in 24-EDO

EXAMPLE

To transpose C₄ upwards by nine quarter tones in 24-EDO, you can enter **t 3 9 qt** for E₄ or **t 4 9 qt** for F₄.

Inversion

Type of inversion

Popover entry

Invert pitches within the range of the highest and lowest notes in the selection

inv, **invert**, **inversion**, or **mirror**

Specify the central pitch for inversion

C4, **eb4**, **F5**, **g#6**, and so on

For example, C₄, E_{b4}, F₅, G_{♯6}, and so on

Type of inversion**Popover entry**

Specify the central octave division for inversion **d1/24 4** or **A-3/24 5**

For example, D \sharp 4 or A \sharp 5 in 24-EDO

Specify root of prevailing key as central pitch for inversion **root**

NOTE

In open keys or music without key signatures, C is used.

Specify first note as central pitch for inversion **first**

Specify top note in first chord as central pitch for inversion **top**

Specify bottom note in first chord as central pitch for inversion **bottom**

Diatonic inversion **diatonic** or **diat**

Chromatic inversion **chromatic** or **chrom**

EXAMPLE

To invert pitches around Eb4, enter **inveb4**.

Reversal

Type of reversal**Popover entry**

Reverse the selection, including pitches and rhythms **retrograde**, **ret**, **reverse**, or **rev**

Specify pitches only **pitch** or **pt**

Specify rhythms only **rhythm** or **rm**

Reverse and invert pitches **ret invert**, **rev inv**, and so on

TIP

You can also include additional specifications for the inversion.

Include additional items belonging to the same player as the selection **player**

Type of reversal

Popover entry

Include only items belonging to the same voice **voice**
as the selection

EXAMPLE

To reverse the pitches and items in the selected voice only, enter **rev pt voice**.

Rotation

Type of rotation

Popover entry

Rotate the selection, including pitches and
rhythms

rotate or **rot**

Specify pitches only

pitch or **pit**

Specify rhythms only

rhythm, **rhy**, or **rm**

Specify number of steps forwards

1, 2, 3, 4, and so on

Specify number of steps backwards

-1, backwards 2, bw 3, prev 4, and so on

EXAMPLE

To rotate only the rhythms of the selected notes backwards three steps, enter **rot rm bw 3**.

Repetition

Type of repetition

Popover entry

Repeat the first two pitches in the selection
across the selection

repeat 2 pitches

Repeat the first eight pitches in the selection
across the selection

repeat 8 pitches

This list is not comprehensive as you can repeat any number of pitches. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry.

Pitch mapping

Type of pitch mapping

Specify source and destination pitches

For example, to map C4 to Eb4, F4 to G4, and A4 to Bb4.

NOTE

- Separate source and destination pitches with equals signs, and pairs of pitches with commas.
- The octave number is optional.

Popover entry

c4=eb4,f4=g4,a4=bb5

Include enharmonic equivalents of specified notes

***** after note name and octave, if specified

Specify that destination pitch is higher than source pitch

up

Specify that destination pitch is lower than source pitch

down

EXAMPLE

To map A#s and enharmonic equivalents, including Bbs, to the G below, enter **a#*=Gdown**.

Scale mapping

Type of scale mapping or scale

Scale mapping structure

Popover entry

[source scale] to [destination scale], such as **c M to c m** or **Fmin to Dmaj**

Snap pitches outside the source scale to the nearest pitch by interval in the destination scale

snap

Specify snapped pitches should be raised

up or **higher**

Specify snapped pitches should be lowered

down or **lower**

Respell notes to the specified scale

spell [scale], such as **spell Cmaj**

Snap notes to the specified scale

snap [scale], such as **snap cmin**

Scale roots

c, Db, e, f#, g, and so on

Type of scale mapping or scale	Popover entry
Alterations	#4, b6 , and so on
Major	maj or M
Minor	min or m
Ionian major	ion maj or ion M
Harmonic minor	harm m or hmc min
Melodic minor (ascending)	me m or mdc min
Dorian	dor or drn
Phrygian	phryg , phry , or phr
Lydian	lyd
Mixolydian	mixlyd , mlyd , mixo , mix , or ml
Aeolian or natural minor	aeol m , aeo m , aln min , or nat min
Locrian	loc
Super Locrian (altered scale)	super loc , sup loc , or spr loc
Major pentatonic	pent maj , 5tonic M , or 5ton M
Minor pentatonic	pent min , 5tonic m , 5ton m
Major blues	blue maj or bls M
Minor blues	blue min or bls m
Whole tone	wholetone , whole-tone , wtone , wton , whole , or wt
Half-whole diminished	half whole dimin , halfwhole dimin , hw dim , half-tone dimin , half tone dimin , halftone dimin , htone dim , hton dim , half dim , or ht dim
Half-whole octatonic	half whole octa , halfwhole octa , hw oct , half-tone octa , half tone octa , halftone octa , htone oct , hton oct , half oct , or ht oct

Type of scale mapping or scale	Popover entry
Whole-half diminished	whole half dimin, wholehalf dimin, wh dim, whole tone dimin, whole-tone dimin, wholetone dimin, wtone dim, wton dim, whole dim, or wt dim
Whole-half octatonic	whole half octa, wholehalf octa, wh oct, whole tone octa, whole-tone octa, wholetone octa, wtone oct, wton oct, whole oct, or wt oct
Locrian $\sharp 7$ or harmonic major mode 7	loc maj mode7 or harm M mod7
Super locrian $\sharp 7$ or harmonic minor mode 7	sup loc min mode7 or spr loc m mod7

NOTE

- You can use scale type entries in any combination, such as **me min, me m, mdc min, and mdc m.**
- **M** and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.
- You must separate roots from **M** and **m** with a space, such as **c M.**

EXAMPLE

To respell all $F\flat$ s in a selection as $E\flat$ s, and snap $A\flat$ s to $A\sharp$ s, enter **spell snap Cmaj.**

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Equal Division of the Octave \(EDO\)](#) on page 1028

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

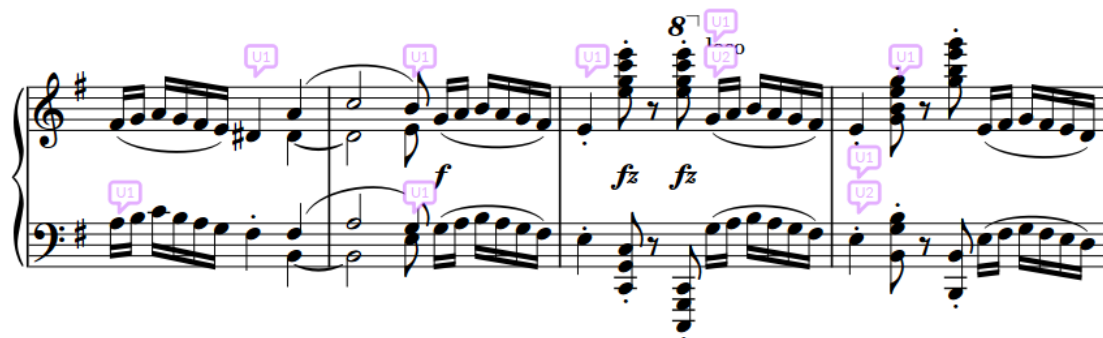
[Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover](#) on page 472

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

Comments

Comments allow you to add notes or instructions at precise positions in your project without affecting the music. They are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.

Comments exist outside of the music, so they do not affect note spacing, vertical spacing, or casting off. However, you can attach them to specific items and staves in order to show the precise subject of each comment.



A passage with comments and replies

By default, comments are shown in the music area. They appear as speech bubble symbols as close as possible to their attached position. Comments that are replies are stacked vertically below the original comment.

All comments in the current layout are listed in the Comments panel in Write mode. Clicking a comment, either in the Comments panel or in the music area, automatically moves the view to bring that rhythmic position into focus.

In addition to its content, each comment identifies the following by default:

- Author of the comment, using either the current user account name or a custom name
On macOS, the user account name uses the long account name; on Windows, it uses the full name associated with the account. If Dorico Elements cannot determine your account name, a dialog appears into which you can add the name and initials you want to use for comments. You can also change these in **Preferences**.
- Date the comment was added
- Instrument to which the comment applies
- Bars to which the comment applies

NOTE

In the music area, only the initials of the author are shown.

You can hide/show comments in the music, and hide/show comment information in the Comments panel. You can also choose to include comments, alongside other view options, when printing/exporting layouts.

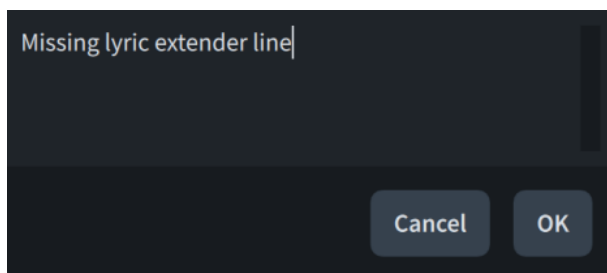
RELATED LINKS

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Comment dialog



The **Comment** dialog allows you to enter and edit text as comments.

- You can open the **Comment** dialog by adding a comment, replying to a comment, or double-clicking an existing comment, either in the music area or in the Comments panel.

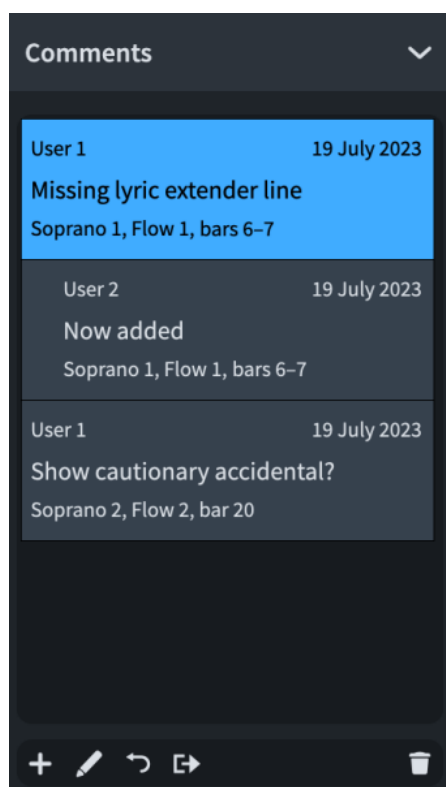


Comments panel

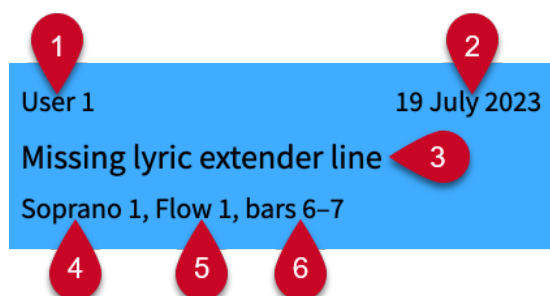
The Comments panel shows all the comments in the current layout as a list. Replies to comments are indented to indicate their relationship to the original comment. The Comments panel is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Comments panel by clicking **Panels** , then **Comments**  in the Notations toolbox.

You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.



Each comment in the panel shows the following information by default:



- 1 **Author name:** This uses either the current user account or a custom name, depending on the preference that was set when the comment was added.
- 2 Date the comment was added to the project
- 3 Comment content
- 4 Instrument to which the comment applies
- 5 Flow to which the comment applies
- 6 Bars to which the comment applies

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Create Comment



Adds a comment to the selected rhythmic position and staff.

Edit Comment



Opens the selected comment in the **Comment** dialog and allows you to change its content.

Reply to Comment



Adds a comment that is a reply to the selected comment. Replies are shown indented in the Comments panel and stacked in the music area.

Export Comments



Exports all the comments in the project as an HTML file, which opens automatically in your default web browser. The HTML file is automatically saved in the same location as the project.

Delete Comment



Deletes the selected comments.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Hiding/Showing comment information](#) on page 499

[Changing the author name used for comments](#) on page 499

[Reordering comments](#) on page 500

[Exporting comments](#) on page 500

Adding comments

You can add comments at any rhythmic position in your project, including adding different comments to multiple staves at the same rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to add a comment. If you want your comment to apply to a range, select multiple items.
2. Press **Alt/Opt-C** to open the **Comment** dialog.
3. Enter your comment into the dialog.

4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the comment.
-

RESULT

The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a comment.

- In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials.
- In the Comments panel, the text you entered is shown alongside additional comment information.

TIP

You can also add comments by clicking **Create Comment**  in the Comments panel, or by choosing **Write > Create Comment**.

EXAMPLE



A comment in the music area

Replying to comments

You can add replies to existing comments, which is useful when co-ordinating with others, as this organizes the list of comments in the Comments panel into clear sections.

PROCEDURE


1. In Write mode, select the comment to which you want to reply. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
 2. Press **Alt/Opt-R** to open the **Comment** dialog.
 3. Enter your reply into the dialog.
 4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the reply.
-

RESULT

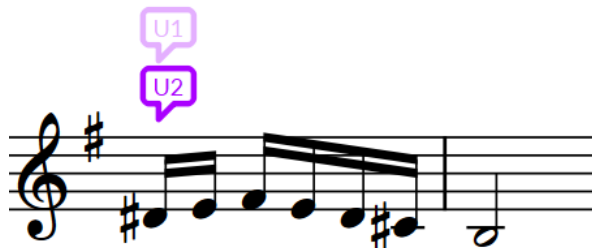
The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a reply to the selected comment.

- In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials and is positioned immediately below the selected comment.
- In the Comments panel, the reply is indented below the selected comment.

TIP

You can also reply to comments by clicking **Reply to Comment**  in the Comments panel, or by choosing **Write > Reply to Comment**.

EXAMPLE



A reply to a comment

Editing existing comments

You can change the contents of existing comments after you have added them; for example, to correct misspellings or add further information.



PROCEDURE

1. Double-click the comment you want to edit to open the **Comment** dialog. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
 2. Change the text in the dialog.
 3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

Hiding/Showing comment information

You can change which pieces of information appear in comments, independently of each other. For example, if you mostly create comments for yourself, showing the author name might be superfluous.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, in the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Comments**  to show the Comments panel.
 2. Right-click in the Comments panel, then choose **Show > [information]**.
For example, to hide the author name, choose **Show > Author**, so that no tick appears beside it in the menu.
-

RESULT

The corresponding information is hidden/shown in all comments in the current project and all future projects on your computer.

Changing the author name used for comments

You can change the author name used for comments to either your user account name or a custom name. This affects subsequent comments you add to the project without changing the author name used for existing comments.

For the custom name, you can specify both the full name that is shown in the Comments panel and the initials shown in the music area.



PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **General**.
 3. In the **Comments** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Author name for comments**:
 - **User Name**
 - **Custom Name**
 4. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the full name you want to use into the **Full name** field.
 5. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the initials you want to use into the **Initials** field.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Reordering comments

You can change the order in which layouts appear in the Comments panel. By default, comments are sorted according to their flow and bar number.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, in the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Comments**  to show the Comments panel.
 2. Right-click in the Comments panel, then choose **Sort By > [information]**.
For example, to sort comments according to their instrument, choose **Sort By > Instrument**.
-




RESULT

The order of all comments is changed in the current project and all future projects on your computer.

Exporting comments

You can export all comments from all flows in the layout currently open in the music area to an HTML file. For example, if you want to view them all in a single place.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout whose comments you want to export.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Comments**  to show the Comments panel.
 3. In the **Comments** section action bar, click **Export Comments** .
-

RESULT

All comments in the layout currently open in the music area are saved as an HTML file, which opens automatically in your default web browser. Comments are displayed in a table, with columns corresponding to the comment information currently shown in the Comments panel. The HTML file is automatically saved in the same location as the project. Its file name includes the layout name.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing comment information](#) on page 499

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Exporting lyrics](#) on page 1034

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Hiding/Showing comments

You can hide/show comments at their positions in the music; for example, if you want to hide them when inputting music but show them when engraving.

Comments are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Comments**.

RESULT

Comments are hidden/shown. When shown, comments appear in the music as speech bubbles.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing comment information](#) on page 499

Splitting flows

You can split flows at specific rhythmic positions. For example, if you want the music from a specific bar onwards to be a new flow, separate from the preceding music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a note or item at the position where you want to split the flow.
2. Choose **Write > Split Flow**.

RESULT

The flow is split into two flows: the existing flow, and a new flow that begins from the position of the item you selected. By default, new flows in full score layouts start on a new page in page view, and are shown on a separate background in galley view.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can set options for each flow independently in the **Notation Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Adding flows](#) on page 171

[Duplicating flows](#) on page 172

[Deleting flows](#) on page 174

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Deleting empty bars/beats at the end of flows](#) on page 812

[Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page](#) on page 609

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

Engrave mode

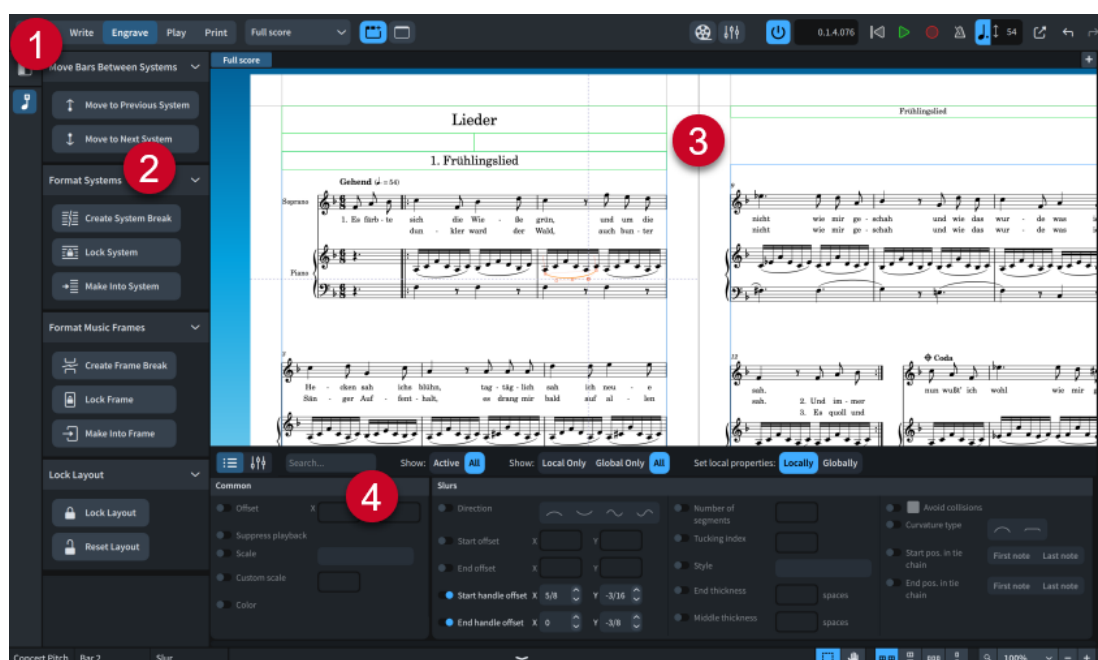
Engrave mode allows you to manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine the casting off in each layout of your project using system and frame breaks.

Project window in Engrave mode

The project window in Engrave mode contains a toolbox and panels with all the tools and functions that allow you to format the pages, systems, and properties of individual notations in your score.

You can switch to Engrave mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-3**.
- In the toolbar, click **Engrave**.
- Choose **Window > Engrave**.





The project window in Engrave mode contains the following:

1 Engrave toolbox

Allows you to switch between Engrave mode tools, and to hide/show the left zone.






2 Left zone

Contains the Formatting panel, which allows you to change how systems and frames are formatted on pages, including inserting system/frame breaks.

The left zone is hidden automatically when either **Note Spacing**  or **Staff Spacing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

3 Music area

Displays layouts in page view. Additional engraving aids are shown on pages, according to the current selection in the Engrave toolbox.

- Frame outlines are always shown.
- System and frame fullness indicators are shown when either **Graphic Editing** , **Staff Spacing** , or **Note Spacing**  is selected.
- When **Staff Spacing**  is selected, staff/system spacing handles, gap measurements, and music frame margin highlights are shown.
- When **Note Spacing**  is selected, note spacing handles, system handles, and dashed lines that represent spacing columns are shown.

4 Lower zone

Can display either the Properties panel or Mixer panel, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Project window](#) on page 29

[Music area](#) on page 34

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

[System fullness indicators](#) on page 506

[Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506

[Moving individual staves/systems vertically](#) on page 624

[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509

[Hiding/Showing crosshairs](#) on page 517

Engrave toolbox

The Engrave toolbox allows you to change the panel shown in the left zone and to activate note and staff spacing. The Engrave toolbox is located on the left of the window in Engrave mode.

Show Left Zone



Hides/Shows the left zone.

Graphic Editing



Allows you to select and edit items in the music area or page template editor. Shows the Formatting panel in the left zone, which contains options for formatting systems, frames, brackets, braces, and barline joins.

Staff Spacing




Allows you to move individual staves and systems vertically.

Note Spacing



Allows you to edit the graphical horizontal positions of individual notes and other items, such as clefs and key signatures.

TIP


- By default when you switch to Engrave mode, Dorico Elements automatically selects **Graphic Editing** . You can choose to remember your last selected tool instead on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
- You can assign key commands for Engrave mode tools on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Formatting panel](#) on page 504
- [Staff spacing](#) on page 620
- [Note spacing](#) on page 507
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Formatting panel

The Formatting panel allows you to change how systems and frames are formatted on pages, including inserting system/frame breaks. It is located in the left zone in Engrave mode.

- You can show the Formatting panel by showing the left zone, then clicking **Graphic Editing**  in the Engrave toolbox.

The Formatting panel contains the following sections:

Moving Bars Between Systems

The **Moving Bars Between Systems** allows you to move selected bars to other systems.

Move to Previous System



Moves the selected bars to the previous system. Inserts system breaks at the start and end of the system to which the bars were moved.

You can also move bars to the previous system by pressing .

Move to Next System



Moves the selected bars to the next system. Inserts system breaks at the start and end of the system to which the bars were moved.

You can also move bars to the next system by pressing .

Format Systems

The **Format Systems** section allows you to change how the music in the layout currently open in the music area is arranged into systems.

Insert System Break



Forces music from the selected item onwards onto the next system. Depending on your staff size and other settings, this may mean the music is forced onto the next page.

You can insert system breaks by pressing **Shift-F**.

Lock System



Fixes the formatting of the selected systems, even if you change the formatting of surrounding musical material and other systems.

Make into System



Forces all music between the selected items into the same system.

Format Music Frames

The **Format Music Frames** section allows you to change how the music in the layout currently open in the music area is arranged into frames.

Insert Frame Break



Forces music from the selected item onwards onto the next frame, which is often on the next page. This allows you to control what music appears on each page.

You can insert frame breaks by pressing **Shift-F**.

Lock Frame



Fixes the formatting of the selected frames, even if you change the formatting of surrounding frames.

Make into Frame



Forces all music between the selected items into the same frame. You can use this option to force music onto a single page.

Lock Layout

The **Lock Layout** section allows you to fix and reset all systems and pages in the current layout.

Lock Layout



Inserts system and frame breaks on all systems in the current layout as required to fix its current casting off.

Reset Layout



Removes all system and frame breaks from the current layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Project window in Engrave mode](#) on page 502

[Frame breaks](#) on page 636

[System breaks](#) on page 633

[Page templates](#) on page 647

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Casting off](#) on page 629

System fullness indicators

System fullness indicators are highlighted regions that are shown to the right of systems in Engrave mode. They use colors and percentages to indicate the horizontal fullness of the corresponding system.

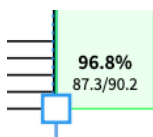
The following colors are used in system fullness indicators:

- Green: the system is comfortably full. Notes have enough horizontal space to be legible but are not too far apart. Systems that are 60-100% full are considered comfortably full.
- Purple: the system is under-full, meaning notes might appear overly stretched. Systems that are less than 60% full are considered under-full.
- Red: the system is over-full, meaning notes might appear squashed with not enough horizontal space between them. Systems that are more than 100% full are considered over-full.

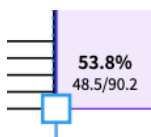
The fullness of systems is also expressed using a percentage. The percentage indicated is calculated by dividing the number of spaces occupied in the system by the total number of available spaces in the system, which is measured from the start of the rhythmic space to the right of the initial clef/time signature/key signature up to the final barline in the system.

Both the color of the system fullness indicator and the fullness percentage are updated in real time as you adjust note spacing in the system.

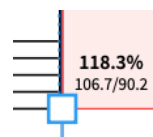
System comfortably full



System under-full



System over-full



RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509

[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035

[Project window in Engrave mode](#) on page 502

[Margins](#) on page 614

Frame fullness indicators

Frame fullness indicators are highlighted regions that are shown outside the bottom left corners of music frames in Engrave mode. They use colors and percentages to indicate the vertical fullness of the corresponding music frame, which in most cases represents a full page.

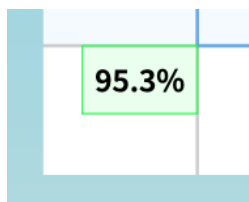
The following colors are used in frame fullness indicators:

- Green: the frame is comfortably full. Staves and systems have enough vertical space to be legible but are not too far apart. Frames that are 60-100% full are considered comfortably full.

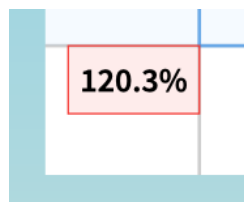
- Red: the frame is over-full, meaning staves and systems might appear squashed with not enough vertical space between them. Frames that are more than 100% full are considered over-full.

The fullness of frames is also expressed using a percentage. The percentage indicated is calculated by dividing the number of spaces occupied in the frame by the total number of available spaces in the frame, which is measured using the vertical distance between the top and bottom music frame padding margins.

Frame comfortably full



Frame over-full



RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621

[Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603

[Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems](#) on page 604

[Project window in Engrave mode](#) on page 502

[System fullness indicators](#) on page 506

[Margins](#) on page 614

Note spacing

The positions of notes and rests relative to each other, and the automatic gaps between them, are known as note spacing.

You can change note spacing in your project at different levels:

- Change the default note spacing in each layout in **Layout Options > Note Spacing**.
- Change the note spacing at individual rhythmic positions and for individual voice columns.

RELATED LINKS

[System fullness indicators](#) on page 506

[Staff spacing](#) on page 620

[Changing the default staff size](#) on page 602

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

[Enabling/Disabling vertical line collision avoidance](#) on page 1199

Changing the default note spacing

You can change the default note spacing in each layout independently. For example, you can have tighter note spacing in full score layouts compared to part layouts. The options available include changing the default space for quarter notes and the scale space for grace notes and cues.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change note spacing.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
 4. Change the values of the options you want to change.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The default note spacing is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035

[Casting off](#) on page 629

[Locking layouts](#) on page 631

Per-layout note spacing options

Dorico Elements provides multiple options that you can use to control the default note spacing in each layout. You can also change how full the final system in flows must be before it is automatically justified.

- You can access per-layout note spacing options by opening the **Layout Options** dialog and clicking **Note Spacing** in the category list.

The **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options** contains the following options:

Default space for crotchet/quarter note

Sets the default note spacing for quarter notes (crotchets). The spacing of other durations is scaled proportionally. Increasing the value increases note spacing, decreasing the value decreases note spacing. This is reflected in the preview as you change the value.

Minimum space for short notes

Sets the minimum note spacing for notes with short durations. This can be independent of the default note spacing value.

Custom spacing ratio

Sets the spacing of notes in relation to other notes according to their rhythmic values. For example, setting **Custom spacing ratio** to **2** means half notes (minims) take up twice as much space as quarter notes, and eighth notes (quavers) take up half as much space as quarter notes.

Scale space for grace notes by

Sets the note spacing for grace notes as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value increases the note spacing for grace notes, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for grace notes.

Scale space for cue notes by

Sets the note spacing for cues as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value

increases the note spacing for cues, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for cues.

Make space for lyrics

Controls whether or not lyrics are included in note spacing calculations. When deactivated, lyrics are excluded from note spacing calculations, producing a result where notes are spaced as if lyrics were not there.

We recommend using this option with caution and only if you intend to space lyrics manually, such as in tightly-spaced hymnals.

Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full

Allows you to change how full the final system in each flow must be before it is justified to the full width of the frame. By default, final systems that are 50% full or less are not justified.

Use optical spacing for beams between staves

When activated, stems in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean the noteheads are unevenly spaced. When deactivated, noteheads in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean stems appear unevenly spaced.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing](#) on page 852

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

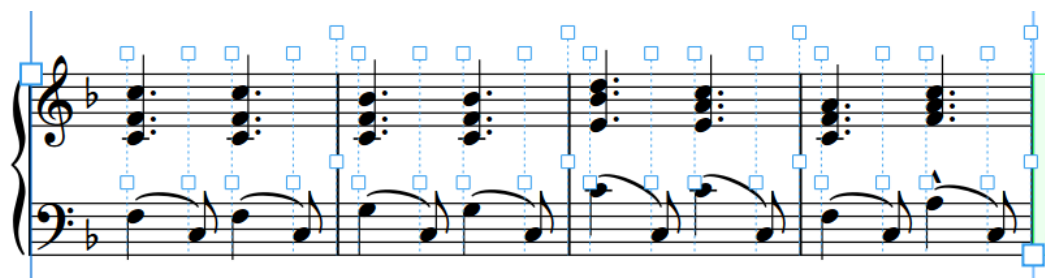
[Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics](#) on page 1042

Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions

You can make adjustments to the note spacing at individual rhythmic positions independently of your project-wide settings.

When **Note Spacing**  is activated in the Engrave toolbox, the following are shown:

- Dashed lines that represent spacing columns.
- Note spacing handles: square handles on every staff for each spacing-significant item, such as notes, grace notes, rests, clefs, key signatures, and time signatures.
- System handles: larger square handles at the start/end of each system, which control the start/end horizontal position of individual systems. System handles are positioned on the top left and bottom right corners of each system.



Handles and dashed lines are shown when **Note Spacing** is activated.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a square note spacing handle on the dashed line at each rhythmic position whose spacing you want to adjust.



2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To increase the space to the left of selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To decrease the space to the left of selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE



- To move handles by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move handles by moderate increments, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move handles by small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

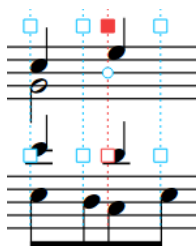
The selected note spacing handles are moved, which increases/decreases the spacing to the left of their original rhythmic position. This also affects the spacing of each selected rhythmic position on all staves in the system. The color of the handles changes to indicate that you have moved them.

System breaks are automatically inserted at the start/end of each system in which you adjusted note spacing.

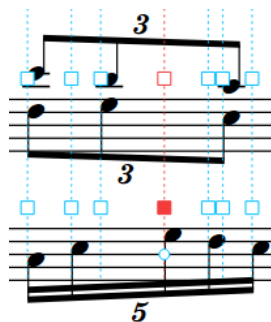
NOTE

- Moving notes too far away from their intended rhythmic positions can be misleading for players reading the music.
- You can also adjust the spacing of individual notes/items independently of their rhythmic positions.
- When **Note Spacing**  is activated, you cannot select or edit anything other than note spacing handles. To resume normal selection and editing, click **Graphic Editing**  in the Engrave toolbox or return to Write mode.

EXAMPLE



Moving note spacing handles to the left reduces spacing to the left of the rhythmic position



Moving note spacing handles to the right increases spacing to the left of the rhythmic position

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the default note spacing](#) on page 507
- [System fullness indicators](#) on page 506
- [Moving the start/end of systems](#) on page 513
- [Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612
- [Enabling/Disabling vertical line collision avoidance](#) on page 1199
- [System breaks](#) on page 633
- [Signposts](#) on page 450

Adjusting the spacing of individual notes/items independently of their rhythmic positions

You can change the graphical position of notes according to their voice column, independently of their rhythmic positions. These steps also apply to certain notation items, such as key signatures, time signatures, and clefs.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square note spacing handle at the rhythmic position of the note/item you want to move graphically.



A circular handle appears beside each voice/item.

2. Press **Tab** to select the circular handle.



3. Move the handle in any of the following ways:

- To move it a standard amount to the right or left, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left.
- To move it a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move it a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move it a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

The graphical position of the selected note/item is changed without changing the note spacing of its rhythmic position. Other notes in the same voice column at the same rhythmic position are also moved.

System breaks are automatically inserted at the start/end of each system in which you adjusted the position of individual notes/items.

EXAMPLE



Removing individual changes to note spacing

You can remove changes you have made to the note spacing at individual rhythmic positions and reset note spacing handles to their original default positions.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the note spacing handles you want to restore to their original positions.
 2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RESULT

The selected rhythmic positions are reset to their default positions.

TIP

You can also reset all note spacing changes within selected systems, frames, or all note spacing changes in the layout by choosing one of the options in the **Engrave > Note Spacing** menu.

Moving the start/end of systems

You can change the horizontal start/end position of each system individually; for example, if you want to indent a single system or increase the gap before an individual coda section.

NOTE

- If you want to increase the space before staff labels, you can change the minimum indent for systems with staff labels.
 - If you want to change the end position of systems because they do not fill the entire width of the page, you can change the minimum fullness for horizontal justification.
 - If you want to change the width of all systems on a page by the same amount, you can change the width of the music frame.
-

PREREQUISITE

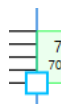
Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system handle at the start/end of each system whose start/end position you want to change.



System handle at the start of a system



System handle at the end of a system

2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount to the right or left, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

The start/end position of the selected systems is changed. Notes on the selected systems appear more/less tightly spaced, depending on whether moving the system handles made their system narrower or wider.

Dorico Elements automatically inserts system breaks at the start of the moved and subsequent systems.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[System indents](#) on page 1327

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

[Changing the first system indent](#) on page 1328

[Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels](#) on page 1311

[Positions of repeat markers](#) on page 1241

[System breaks](#) on page 633

Moving items graphically


You can move items graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached; for example, to offset individual items on specific pages without moving other items of the same type elsewhere in the layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

You can move individual instances of system objects, such as tempo marks or system-attached text, independently of other instances shown at different staff positions. You can also move each end of items with duration, such as gradual dynamics or octave lines, independently, allowing you to adjust their graphical length and angle.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following: text in text frames, accidentals, notes, clefs, barlines, key signatures, or time signatures shown on staves.
- You can only move some items and handles in specific directions. For example, you can move:
 - Articulations upwards/downwards only, not to the right/left.
 - Octave line end handles to the right/left only, not upwards/downwards.
- When using the mouse, you can only move whole guitar bends and vibrato bar dives/returns upwards/downwards.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following that you want to move.
 - Whole items or segments of items that cross system/frame breaks
 - Lines extending from items, such as figured bass hold lines or lyric extender lines
 - Individual handles on items

TIP

- You can cycle through handles on a selected item by pressing **Tab**.

2. Move the selected items in any of the following ways:

- To move items a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move items to the left. This moves beams by 1/4 space and all other items by 1/8 space per press.
- To move items a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1 space per press.
- To move items a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/2 space per press.
- To move items a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them in any direction.

NOTE

- To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.
- You cannot move vibrato bar scoops using the mouse.

RESULT

The selected items are moved graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong.

Moving some items, such as notehead brackets and jazz articulations, causes other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, to move automatically to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

If you move dynamics linked to other dynamics, all dynamics linked to the selected dynamics in the current layout are also moved.

Moving items with continuation or hold lines, such as playing techniques or figured bass, moves them both together. Moving continuation/hold lines or continuation/hold line handles moves the continuation/hold lines independently of the item. Dorico Elements automatically lengthens hold lines between figured bass suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

Lengthening/Shortening lyric hyphens does not change the size or shape of the hyphens themselves. Instead, you increase/decrease the distance between the handles in which hyphens can appear.

By default, player labels erase their backgrounds if positioned in the staff so they do not collide with staff lines.

NOTE

- Moving the start handle of hairpins with the keyboard changes the vertical position of whole hairpins, not their angles. You must change the end offset position as well to change the angle of hairpins. Dragging hairpin handles with the mouse always changes the angle.

- Properties that control the graphic offsets of items are activated automatically when you move items. You can find these properties in the corresponding group of the Properties panel for the item, or in the **Common** group for some items, such as text items and lyrics.

Some offset properties have separate value fields for horizontal offsets on the X axis and vertical offsets on the Y axis. Similarly, items with length or duration have separate offset properties for each end.

You can also use these properties to move items graphically by changing the values in the value fields. Deactivating offset properties resets the selected items to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Resetting the position of items](#) on page 436
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646
[Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437
[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
[Moving figured bass resolutions](#) on page 966
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
[Tucking index properties](#) on page 518
[Changing the vertical order of playing techniques](#) on page 1185
[Properties panel](#) on page 663
[Casting off](#) on page 629
[Note spacing](#) on page 507
[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509
[Moving clefs graphically](#) on page 909
[Moving barlines graphically](#) on page 821
[Moving key signatures graphically](#) on page 1023
[Moving time signatures graphically](#) on page 1395
[Moving accidentals graphically](#) on page 797
[Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes](#) on page 880
[Guitar bends in Engrave mode](#) on page 1131
[Notehead brackets in Engrave mode](#) on page 1072
[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035
[Moving lyric lines vertically](#) on page 1039
[Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045
[Octave lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 918
[Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 1163
[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300
[Lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 1215
[Frames](#) on page 654

Selecting handles on items

In Engrave mode, you can select individual handles on items; for example, if you want to move the graphical end of a gradual dynamic without moving its start.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a handle in any of the following ways:
 - Select the whole item and press **Tab** until the handle you want is selected.

- Click the handle you want.
2. Optional: Select handles on other items as well by **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking them.

NOTE

You cannot select subsequent handles on other items by selecting the items and pressing **Tab**.

RELATED LINKS

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937

[Changing the shape/angle of ties](#) on page 1375

Hiding/Showing crosshairs

You can hide/show crosshairs in Engrave mode for selected items and/or when dragging items using the mouse. Crosshairs can make it easier to align items graphically.

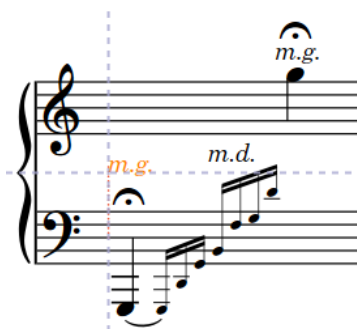
PROCEDURE

- In Engrave mode, do one or both of the following:
 - To hide/show crosshairs when dragging items, choose **Engrave > Crosshairs > Show When Dragging**.
 - To hide/show crosshairs for selected items, choose **Engrave > Crosshairs > Show When Selected**.

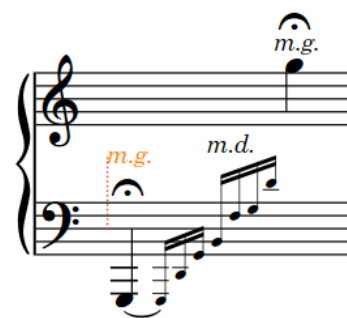
RESULT

Crosshairs are hidden/shown in the corresponding context.

EXAMPLE



Crosshairs shown



Crosshairs hidden

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding non-printing elements](#) on page 437

[Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Tucking index properties

The tucking index of notations determines their position relative to other notations in the vertical stacking order when multiple notations exist at the same rhythmic positions.

In most published music, the order in which items appear relative to each other is consistent. Dorico Elements uses established conventions to determine the position and placement of notations automatically. For example, where slurs and tuplet brackets exist at the same positions, Dorico Elements calculates their placement based on their relative lengths. If the slur is longer than the tuplet bracket, the slur is placed outside the tuplet bracket; if the tuplet bracket is longer than the slur, the slur is placed inside the tuplet bracket.

However, rules for the order and placement of articulations, slurs, tuplets, and octave lines frequently vary, based on their lengths and musical context. Therefore, you can override the automatic order and manually change the order in which they appear in specific contexts.

To allow you this flexibility, slurs, octave lines, and tuplets all have **Tucking index** properties in their respective Properties panel groups.

NOTE

- Articulations are considered alongside these notations when calculating the stacking order, but do not have a tucking index property.
- Playing techniques have a separate tucking index that allows you to change the vertical order of playing techniques relative to each other.

A **Tucking index** value of **0** positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further away the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the vertical order of playing techniques](#) on page 1185

[Changing the vertical stacking order of octave lines](#) on page 919

Play mode

Play mode allows you to change how your music sounds in playback, including by adjusting the mix, changing the playback template, and assigning VST instruments.

Project window in Play mode

The project window in Play mode contains all the tools and functions for setting up your project for playback. In Play mode, your project appears in a similar way to that used in a digital audio workstation, or “DAW”, such as Cubase.

You can switch to Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-4**.
- In the toolbar, click **Play**.
- Choose **Window > Play**.



The project window in Play mode comprises the following:

1 Left zone

Can display either the Track Inspector or VST and MIDI panel, according to the current selection at the top of the left zone.

2 Track overview

Allows you to view the tracks in the selected flow, mute/solo instrument tracks, and select the track whose music you want to show in the Key Editor or whose sounds you want to edit in the Track Inspector.

3 Lower zone

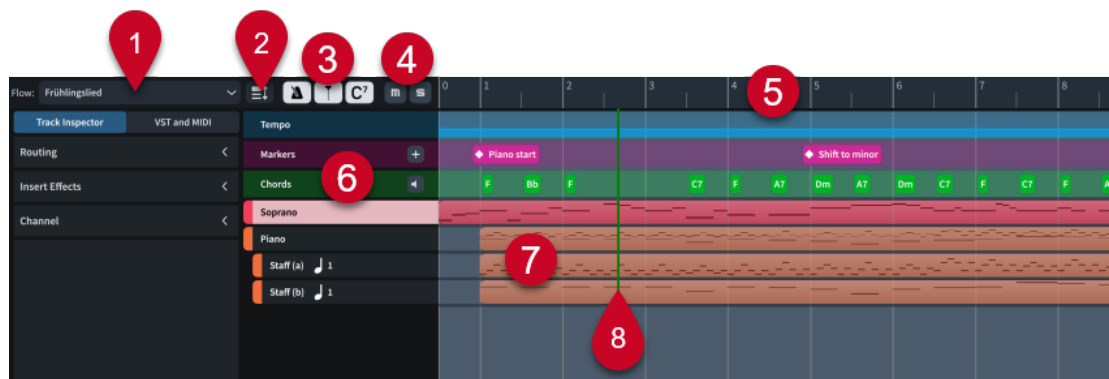
Can display either the Key Editor panel or Mixer panel, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar.

RELATED LINKS

- [Toolbar](#) on page 30
- [Project window](#) on page 29
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [VST and MIDI panel](#) on page 525
- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Mixer panel](#) on page 717
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

Track overview

The track overview allows you to view the tracks in the selected layout and flow, and to mute and solo instrument tracks. It also allows you to select a single track whose music you want to show in the Key Editor, if it is unlocked, or whose sounds you want to edit in the Track Inspector. It is the central part of the window in Play mode.



The track overview contains the following:

1 Flow selector




Allows you to select the flow you want to show in the track overview. Only a single flow can be shown at a time. Only available when nothing is selected in any flow.

2 Track height button

Allows you to cycle through different heights for all tracks in the track overview.

3 Track visibility buttons

Allow you to hide/show the corresponding track.

- **Tempo** : Hides/Shows the Tempo track.
- **Markers** : Hides/Shows the Markers track.
- **Chords** : Hides/Shows the Chords track.

4 Mute /Solo buttons

Allow you to mute/solo tracks. Shown in track headers when tracks are sufficiently tall, and at the top of the track overview when tracks appear short. They apply to the corresponding track when shown in track headers, and the selected track when shown at the top of the track overview.

5 Ruler

Displays bar numbers and shows beat divisions.

6 Track headers

Display the name of each track and contain appropriate options for the track type.
Percussion kit track headers contain disclosure arrows, which allow you to show a separate track for each instrument in the kit.

7 Tracks

Rows that display an overview of the corresponding musical element, such as notes in instrument tracks and chord symbols in the chord symbols track.

8 Playhead

Shows the current rhythmic position in playback.

RELATED LINKS

- [Tracks](#) on page 530
- [Instrument tracks](#) on page 531
- [Tempo track](#) on page 532
- [Markers track](#) on page 534
- [Chords track](#) on page 535
- [Key Editor](#) on page 667
- [Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671
- [Hiding/Showing tracks](#) on page 536
- [Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547
- [Playhead](#) on page 538
- [Changing the height of tracks](#) on page 537
- [Zooming in/out of tracks](#) on page 537
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

Switching between flows in the track overview

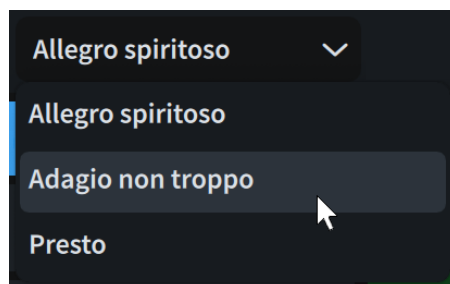
You can change which flow is displayed in the track overview in Play mode manually. Only a single flow can be shown at a time.

PREREQUISITE

You have deselected all notes/items. You cannot switch flows when notes/items are selected.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, click the flow selector at the top of the track overview and select a flow from the menu.



RELATED LINKS

- [Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421
- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

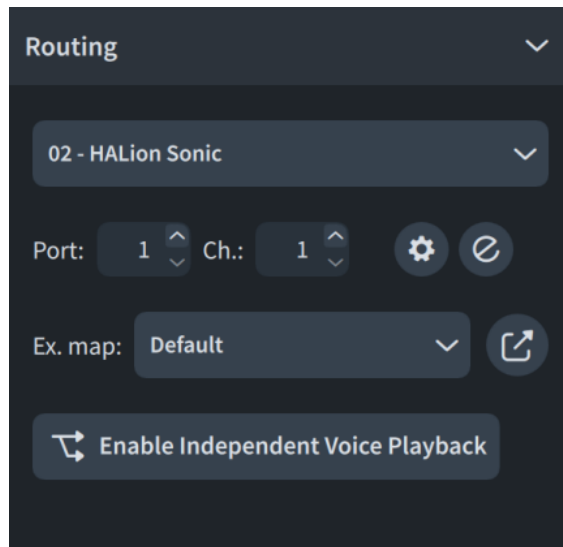
Track Inspector

The Track Inspector allows you to edit sounds for the track currently selected in the track overview. It is located in the left zone in Play mode.

The Track Inspector contains the following sections:

Routing

Allows you to change the sound routing of the selected track.



The following routing controls are available:

Audio plug-in menu



Allows you to select the VST or MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for the selected track. Only plug-ins already loaded in the project are available.

Port field

Allows you to change the endpoint to which the selected track is assigned by entering the port you want to use. Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

Channel field

Allows you to change the endpoint to which the selected track is assigned by entering the channel you want to use in the loaded VST or MIDI instrument.

NOTE

- You must assign a VST or MIDI instrument and a channel for the Chords track in order to hear chords in playback.
- If you manually load sounds into the channel you selected for your Chords track and later add more instruments to your project, the sounds for the new instruments overwrite the sounds you manually loaded in that channel.

Endpoint Setup



Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

Edit Instrument



Opens the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, which allows you to edit its settings.

Expression map/Percussion map

Allows you to change the expression/percussion map for the endpoint to which the selected track is assigned.

Percussion map is only available for unpitched percussion tracks.

Edit Expression Map/Edit Percussion Map



Opens the **Expression Map/Percussion Map** dialog, with the corresponding expression/percussion map selected automatically.

Enable Independent Voice Playback



Allows you to enable independent voice playback for the selected instrument track. This shows each voice belonging to the instrument as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Dorico Elements automatically loads enough additional channels, and additional plug-in instances if necessary, to accommodate all voices belonging to the corresponding instrument project-wide, according to the current playback template. Voices are automatically assigned to endpoints according to their voice order.

Disable Independent Voice Playback



Allows you to disable independent voice playback for the selected instrument track and return it to using a single endpoint for all voices.

Edits apply to

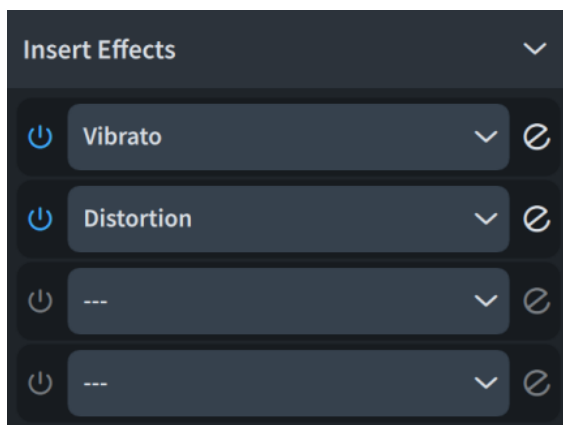
Allows you to determine whether changing the routing of the selected voice affects the current flow only or all flows in the project.

Only applies to future changes you make immediately after choosing either **This flow** or **All flows**.

Only available for voice tracks belonging to instruments with independent voice playback enabled.

Insert Effects

Allows you to add and manage inserts on the Mixer channel for the selected instrument track. Each instrument track's Mixer channel has four insert slots.



Each slot contains the following:

Activate Insert



Activates/Deactivates the insert slot.

Insert menu



Allows you to select an insert to load into the slot.

Edit Insert



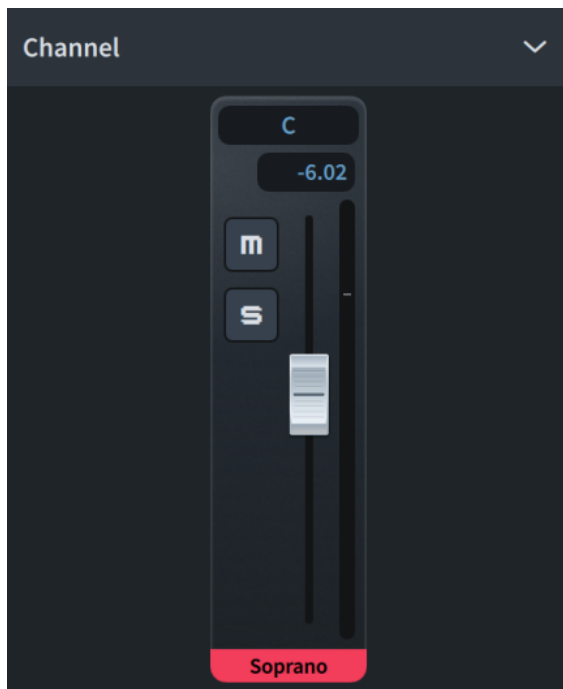
Opens the corresponding effect in a window, which allows you to edit its settings.

TIP

- You can also access inserts for all channels in the Mixer.
 - For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.
-

Channel

Shows the Mixer channel strip for the selected track and allows you to adjust the channel.



TIP

You can also access all channels in the Mixer.

RELATED LINKS

- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Instrument tracks](#) on page 531
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762
- [Percussion Maps dialog](#) on page 781
- [Mixer](#) on page 717
- [Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Changing the sound used for chord symbol playback](#) on page 535
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528

VST and MIDI panel

The VST and MIDI panel contains the VST and MIDI instruments available and used in your project, and allows you to edit their settings. It is located in the left zone in Play mode.

VST Instruments

The **VST Instruments** section of the panel contains plug-in instances that each contain a VST instrument plug-in. Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-ins and enough plug-in instances for the instruments you add to your project according to the current playback template, but you can also load VST instruments manually.

NOTE

Dorico Elements only shows VST 3 instruments in the **VST Instruments** section by default. If you also want VST 2 instruments to be available, you must allow them. Only Kontakt and NotePerformer are allowed by default.



Each VST plug-in instance contains the following:

1 Activate Instance

Activates/Deactivates the plug-in instance.

2 Name

Displays the number and name of the plug-in instance. Plug-in instances are automatically numbered to help you differentiate between instances when you have multiple instances of the same plug-in.

3 VST Instruments menu

Displays the VST instrument currently loaded in the plug-in instance and allows you to select another available VST instrument from the menu.





4 Endpoint Setup

Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

5 Edit Instrument

Opens/Closes the VST instrument window.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add** : Adds a new empty plug-in instance.
- **Duplicate** : Creates a copy of the selected plug-in instance that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Save Endpoint Configuration** : Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to save the current state of all plug-in instances in the section as a custom endpoint configuration.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected plug-in instance.

MIDI Instruments

The **MIDI Instruments** section of the panel contains plug-in instances that each contain a MIDI device to use for output during playback. Which MIDI devices are available depends on your operating system.

- On Windows, you can select any MIDI device that is plugged into your computer.
- On macOS, you can select any MIDI device that is plugged into your computer, and any other device set up in the Audio MIDI Setup application. For example, this allows you to use MIDI from one application in another application.

TIP

We recommend plugging MIDI devices into your computer before starting Dorico Elements. Similarly, if your device is not recognized, we recommend restarting Dorico Elements.



Each MIDI plug-in instance contains the following:

1 Name

Displays the number and name of the plug-in instance. Plug-in instances are automatically numbered to help you differentiate between instances when you have multiple instances of the same plug-in.




2 MIDI Instruments menu

Displays the MIDI device currently loaded in the plug-in instance and allows you to select another available MIDI device from the menu.

3 Endpoint Setup

Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add** : Adds a new empty plug-in instance.
- **Save Endpoint Configuration** : Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to save the current state of all plug-in instances in the section as a custom endpoint configuration.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected plug-in instance.

RELATED LINKS

- [Project window in Play mode](#) on page 519
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Endpoints](#) on page 567
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Custom endpoint configurations](#) on page 571
- [Save Endpoint Configuration dialog](#) on page 573
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
- [Editing VST instruments](#) on page 529

Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins




You can allow individual VST 2 instrument plug-ins that you want to use in Dorico Elements and block plug-ins you want to prevent Dorico Elements from using. Allowed plug-ins are subsequently available in any project.

Dorico Elements automatically blocks plug-ins that crash and plug-ins that Steinberg has not already qualified for use with Dorico Elements. Only Kontakt and NotePerformer are allowed by default.

NOTE

This application runs natively on Apple Silicon and supports native VST 3 plug-ins only. Support for VST 2 plug-ins is available in Rosetta mode.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **VST Plug-ins**.
 3. In the **Allowed VST 2 Plug-ins** subsection, allow plug-ins in any of the following ways:
 - To allow individual blocked plug-ins, select them in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list and click **Allow selected plug-ins**  in the action bar.
 - To allow all blocked plug-ins, click **Allow All** in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list action bar.
 - To allow a plug-in not included in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list, click **Add plug-in name**  in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list action bar, then enter the name of the plug-in in the new entry.
 4. Block plug-ins in any of the following ways:
 - To block individual allowed plug-ins, select them in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list and click **Block selected plug-ins**  in the action bar.
 - To block all allowed plug-ins, click **Block All** in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list action bar.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
 6. Quit Dorico Elements.
-

RESULT

When Dorico Elements next opens, your allowed VST plug-in entries are available for use in the program.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558

Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually

Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-in instances as required, according to the instruments in the project and the current playback template. However, you can also load VST/MIDI instruments manually, either into new plug-in instances or into existing ones to replace existing VST/MIDI instruments.


PREREQUISITE

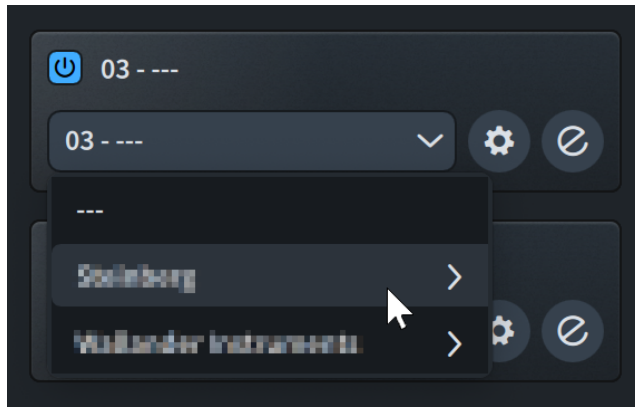
- Any VST instruments you want to use are saved on your computer.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use.

TIP

We recommend plugging MIDI devices into your computer before starting Dorico Elements. Similarly, if your device is not recognized, we recommend restarting Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, choose **VST and MIDI** in the left zone to show the VST and MIDI panel.
2. Optional: If you want to load a VST/MIDI instrument into a new plug-in instance, click **Add**  in the corresponding section of the VST and MIDI panel.
3. In the plug-in instance into which you want to load a new VST/MIDI instrument, select the one you want to load from the menu.



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can edit VST instruments, such as by loading sounds into channels.
- You can assign instruments/voices and expression/percussion maps to endpoints in the VST/MIDI instruments you loaded.
- You can save your changes to VST instruments and endpoints as custom endpoint configurations for reuse in other projects.

NOTE

If you loaded a MIDI instrument, we strongly recommend disabling it for MIDI input to avoid feedback loops.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564
- [VST and MIDI panel](#) on page 525
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices](#) on page 270
- [Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints](#) on page 569
- [Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints](#) on page 570
- [Saving custom endpoint configurations](#) on page 572
- [Creating custom playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94


Editing VST instruments

You can edit the sounds and effects loaded into VST instruments; for example, if you are using a third-party sound library.

PREREQUISITE

You have loaded the VST instruments that you want to edit, either manually or by applying a playback template.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, choose **VST and MIDI** in the left zone to show the VST and MIDI panel.
2. In a plug-in instance containing the VST instrument that you want to edit, click **Edit Instrument**  to open the VST instrument window.
3. Edit the VST instrument using the available options.

For example, you can:

- Load sounds into channels, such as a different type of guitar or “Oo” vocals.
- Adjust controls, such as the amount of air for flute sounds.
- Change effects, such as loading distortion and delay effects for guitars.

TIP

- For more information about the sounds and effects you can edit and load, see the documentation for your sound libraries.
 - You can assign a key command for **Show VST Plug-in Window For Selected Staff** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command opens the VST instrument window for the first selected staff/voice in the music area, or the track selected in the track overview.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can assign instruments/voices and expression/percussion maps to endpoints in VST instruments.
- You can save your changes to VST instruments and endpoints as custom endpoint configurations for reuse in other projects.

Tracks

Tracks are rows that represent a musical element across time, extending from left to right. They allow you to control multiple musical elements in a project simultaneously but independently of each other.

The term was established when audio mixing was done on tapes, and multitracking allowed separate elements of the music to be recorded and edited independently of each other before being combined into the final piece of music.

In modern programs, such as Cubase, tracks can contain many types of sounds, including audio recordings and software instruments. Tracks containing audio recordings often display the waveform of the audio, while tracks containing software instruments often display the pitches as rectangular note events positioned horizontally in time and vertically in pitch on a piano roll.

Dorico Elements provides the following types of tracks in Play mode:

Instrument tracks

Display previews of the notes belonging to the corresponding instrument. Each instrument in the project has its own instrument track, including when a single player holds multiple instruments.

Selecting an instrument track shows its music in the Key Editor, if it is unlocked, and its track settings in the Track Inspector.

Tempo track

Displays a preview of any tempo changes in the flow. Each project contains a single Tempo track.

Selecting the Tempo track shows the Tempo editor in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked, and its track settings in the Track Inspector.

Markers track

Displays any markers in the flow, including their text. Each project contains a single Markers track.

Chords track

Displays any chord symbols in the flow. Each project contains a single Chords track.
Selecting the Chords track shows its track settings in the Track Inspector.

RELATED LINKS

- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Key Editor](#) on page 667
- [Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671
- [Tempo track](#) on page 532
- [Chords track](#) on page 535
- [Markers track](#) on page 534
- [Changing the height of tracks](#) on page 537
- [Hiding/Showing tracks](#) on page 536
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Mixer channels](#) on page 720

Instrument tracks

Instrument tracks allow you to preview notes belonging to the corresponding instrument and select the instrument you want to show in the Key Editor.

Each instrument in the project has its own instrument track in Play mode, including when a single player holds multiple instruments. Instrument tracks are labeled using the full instrument name set for each instrument.

When independent voice playback is enabled, each voice belonging to the corresponding instrument appears as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Similarly, you can expand percussion kit tracks to show a separate track for each instrument in the kit.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor.

When an instrument track is selected in the track overview, you can do the following:

- View and edit its notes and data in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked.
- Use the Track Inspector to change the routing of the track.



Piano instrument track with two voice tracks below

Each instrument track comprises the following:

1 Track name

Shows the name of the track.

- Instrument tracks display the full instrument name set for the instrument.
- Voice tracks display the stem direction and number of the corresponding voice. For instruments with multiple staves, the staff of the corresponding voice is also included.

2 Mute /Solo buttons

Allow you to mute/solo the track. Shown in track headers when tracks are sufficiently tall, and at the top of the track overview when tracks appear short. They apply to the corresponding track when shown in track headers, and the selected track when shown at the top of the track overview.

3 Track preview

Displays a preview of notes belonging to the instrument.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor](#) on page 667

[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678

[Percussion editor](#) on page 679

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Velocity editor](#) on page 691

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Playing Techniques editor](#) on page 690

[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Changing instrument names](#) on page 183

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567

[Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints](#) on page 569

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Setting custom player orders](#) on page 126

[Changing the height of tracks](#) on page 537

Tempo track

The Tempo track displays tempo changes in the selected flow. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Tempo track.



Tempo track

When the Tempo track is selected in the track overview, you can do the following:

- Edit and input tempo changes in the Tempo editor in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked.
- Use the Track Inspector to change the sound used for the click.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing tracks](#) on page 536

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[Key Editor](#) on page 667

[Tempo editor](#) on page 706

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Changing the click settings](#) on page 267

[Hiding/Showing tempo marks](#) on page 1340
[Exporting MIDI](#) on page 95

Changing the sound used for the click

You can change the sound used for the click in playback by assigning the Tempo track to the required endpoint, including loading a new sound manually if required; for example, if you want to use a sound that is not provided by default.


TIP

You can choose an available factory default click sound in **Playback Options > Click > Metronome Click**. Click, beep, and wood block sounds are provided by default.

PREREQUISITE

- The Tempo track is shown.
 - You have loaded the VST/MIDI instrument you want to use for the click.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, select the Tempo track in the track overview.
2. In the Track Inspector, in the **Routing** section, select the VST/MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for the click from the audio plug-in menu.
3. Optional: If the sound you want to use is not already loaded in the plug-in instance, click **Edit Instrument**  to open the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, then load the required sound into an available channel.
4. Select the required endpoint in the plug-in instance using the following value fields, individually or together:
 - To assign the Tempo track to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

NOTE

Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

- To assign the Tempo track to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
[Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
[Track Inspector](#) on page 522
[Endpoints](#) on page 567
[Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567

Markers track

The Markers track displays markers in the selected flow and allows you to input new markers. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Markers track.



The Markers track comprises the following:

1 Add Marker

Opens the **Add Marker** dialog, which allows you to input a marker.

2 Markers

Show the position of each marker in the flow, including their text.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing tracks](#) on page 536

[Markers](#) on page 1221

[Videos](#) on page 189

[Editing marker text](#) on page 1223

Inputting markers in the Markers track

You can input markers directly into the Markers track in Play mode.

PREREQUISITE

The Markers track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, move the playhead to the time position where you want to input a marker.

NOTE

You cannot input markers in negative time, such as when a video starts three bars into the flow, causing the initial timecode of the flow to be in negative time.

2. In the Markers track header, click **Add Marker** **+** to open the **Add Marker** dialog.
3. Enter the marker text you want into the **Text** field.
4. Optional: Change the timecode in the **Timecode** field.
5. Click **OK** to input the marker and close the dialog.

RESULT

A marker is input at the position of the playhead. It shows the text you entered, or the default text "Marker" if you did not change the marker text.

EXAMPLE



Marker in the Markers track

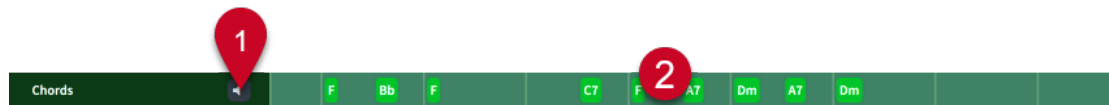
RELATED LINKS

- [Moving the playhead](#) on page 538
- [Add Marker dialog](#) on page 402
- [Editing marker text](#) on page 1223
- [Changing the start position of videos](#) on page 191

Chords track

The Chords track displays chord symbols in the selected flow and allows you to hear the corresponding chords in playback. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Chords track.

When the Chords track is selected in the track overview, you can use the Track Inspector to change its routing.



The Chords track comprises the following:

1 Enable Chords Playback

Allows you to include chords in, or exclude chords from, playback.

2 Chords

Indicates where chord symbols exist in the flow and shows the chord symbol name.

RELATED LINKS

- [Chord symbols](#) on page 871
- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
- [Hiding/Showing tracks](#) on page 536

Enabling chord symbol playback

You can include chord symbols in playback. They are played as sustained chords, with their duration taken from the gap between one chord symbol and the next. Chord symbols input via a MIDI keyboard use the voicing you played when inputting them, whereas chord symbols input via a computer keyboard use a default voicing.

PREREQUISITE

The Chords track is shown.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, activate **Enable Chords Playback**  in the Chords track header.
-

Changing the sound used for chord symbol playback


You can change the sound used for chord symbol playback by assigning the Chords track to the required endpoint, including loading a new sound manually if required; for example, if you want to use a sound that is not used by any of the instrument tracks in your project.

PREREQUISITE

- The Chords track is shown.

- You have loaded the VST/MIDI instrument you want to use for chord symbol playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, select the Chords track in the track overview.
2. In the Track Inspector, in the **Routing** section, select the VST/MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for chord symbol playback from the audio plug-in menu.
3. Optional: If the sound you want to use is not already loaded in the plug-in instance, click **Edit Instrument**  to open the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, then load the required sound into an available channel.
4. Select the required endpoint in the plug-in instance using the following value fields, individually or together:
 - To assign the Chords track to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

NOTE

Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

- To assign the Chords track to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.

RELATED LINKS

[Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[Endpoints](#) on page 567

[Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567

Resetting the voicing of chord symbols

When you input chord symbols via a MIDI keyboard, the voicing you used is retained for chord symbol playback. You can reset the voicing of chord symbols input using MIDI keyboards; for example, if you prefer to hear the default voicing for that chord symbol in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbols whose voicing you want to reset.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Clear Chord Symbol Played Pitches**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318




Hiding/Showing tracks

You can hide/show the Tempo, Markers, and Chords tracks at the top of the track overview independently of each other.

NOTE

You cannot hide/show player and instrument tracks.

PROCEDURE

- At the top of the track overview, hide/show tracks in the following ways:
 - To show/hide the Tempo track, activate/deactivate **Tempo** .
 - To show/hide the Markers track, activate/deactivate **Markers** .
 - To show/hide the Chords track, activate/deactivate **Chords** .
-

RELATED LINKS

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Tracks](#) on page 530


[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667

[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678



Changing the height of tracks

You can change the height of all types of tracks; for example, to preview more tracks simultaneously. This does not affect the width of tracks.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, click **Track height**  at the top left of the track overview to cycle through different track heights.

NOTE

When tracks appear short, **Mute**  and **Solo**  buttons appear at the top of the track overview. They only appear in each track header when there is sufficient vertical space.

RELATED LINKS



[Changing the height of the Key Editor](#) on page 673

[Zooming in/out of the Key Editor](#) on page 674

Zooming in/out of tracks

You can change the width of tracks in the track overview; for example, to preview more bars simultaneously. This does not affect the height of tracks.

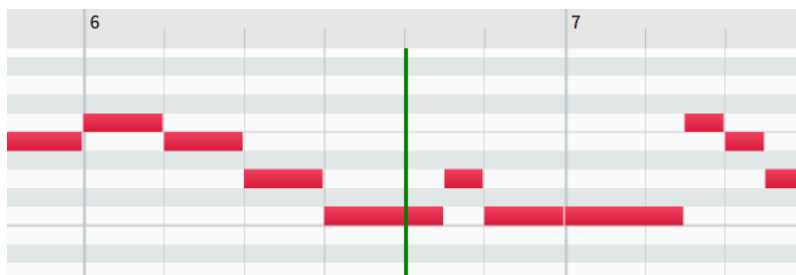
PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in horizontally in any of the following ways:
 - Click in the ruler and drag upwards.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the ruler.
 - Click **Zoom In**  at the bottom of the track overview.
 2. Zoom out horizontally in any of the following ways:
 - Click in the ruler and drag downwards.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the ruler.
 - Click **Zoom Out**  at the bottom of the track overview.
-

Playhead

The playhead is a vertical line that moves during playback, showing the current rhythmic position. It is also known as a “playback line”.

The playhead appears at all times in Play mode and during playback in other modes, and its current position is displayed in both the **Transport** window and the mini transport in the toolbar. You can also choose to show the playhead when playback is stopped in other modes.



The playhead in the Key Editor

Dorico Elements automatically keeps the playhead in view during playback by moving it along with the music, but you can disable playhead following to keep the view stationary. When playhead following is enabled, Dorico Elements tries to keep systems in a consistent place on the screen.

You can also move the playhead manually.

NOTE

The playhead never appears in Print mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54




Moving the playhead

The playhead automatically moves along with the music during playback, but you can also move the playhead manually in any mode.

You can move the playhead both when it is stopped and during playback, but not all methods of moving the playhead work during playback.

By default, the playhead is only shown during playback but you can choose to show the playhead at all times.

PROCEDURE

- Move the playhead in any of the following ways:
 - To move the playhead forwards, press **Num +** (plus on a numeric keypad) or click **Fast Forward**  in the **Transport** window.
 - To move the playhead backwards, press **Num -** (minus on a numeric keypad) or click **Rewind**  in the **Transport** window.
 - To move the playhead back to the start of the flow, press **Num .** (period on a numeric keypad) or click **Rewind to Beginning of Flow**  in the **Transport** window or mini transport.
 - To move the playhead to the start of the earliest selected item, press **Alt/Opt-P**.

- To move the playhead forwards by frames, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Num + or Ctrl/Cmd-F9**.
- To move the playhead backwards by frames, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Num - or Ctrl/Cmd-F7**.
- In Play mode or the Key Editor, click the ruler at any position.

NOTE

You cannot click the ruler to move the playhead during playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Transport window](#) on page 555

[Mini transport](#) on page 32

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Frame rates](#) on page 193

Hiding/Showing the playhead

You can hide/show the playhead when playback is stopped; for example, to help line up your music when working with timecodes and video. By default, the playhead is hidden when playback is stopped, except in Play mode, where it always appears.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-**, to open **Preferences**.
 2. In the category list, click **Play**.
 3. In the **Playhead** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show playhead when stopped**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The playhead is shown outside of playback when **Show playhead when stopped** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

NOTE

This does not apply to Play mode or Print mode. The playhead always appears in Play mode and never appears in Print mode.

Enabling/Disabling playhead following

You can enable/disable views to follow the playhead during playback in each project window independently; for example, if you want keep a specific system in view while listening to your music.

PROCEDURE

- In the status bar, activate/deactivate **Follow playhead**.
-

RESULT

Playhead following during playback is enabled when **Follow playhead** is activated, and disabled when it is deactivated.

TIP

- You can change whether playhead following is enabled/disabled by default in all projects in **Preferences > Play > Playhead**.
 - You can assign a key command for **Toggle Follow Playhead** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Opening multiple project windows](#) on page 49

[Moving the view in the music area](#) on page 442

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Playing back music


You can listen to the music you have written from the beginning of your project or from a specific point. You can use playback key commands in any mode.

PREREQUISITE

- Playback is activated in the current project.
 - You have applied a playback template to the project that includes sounds for the instruments in your project.
 - If you want to use different sounds for different voices, you have enabled independent voice playback for those instruments.
 - If you do not want to hear sounds from connected MIDI devices, you have disabled MIDI thru.
-

PROCEDURE



1. Start playback in one of the following ways:


- To play back from the earliest selected item, make a selection, then either press **P**, click **Play From Selection**  in the **Transport** window, or choose **Play > Play From Selection**.

TIP

- To play back all instruments, select a single note.
- To play back only a single staff, select multiple items on the staff.
- To play back multiple staves, select items on multiple staves.



This does not affect which channels are soloed or muted in the Mixer.

- To continue playback from the playhead position, either press **Space or Enter**, click **Play**  in the mini transport, click **Play From Playhead Position**  in the **Transport** window, or choose **Play > Play From Playhead Position**.
- To move the playhead and start playback from its new position simultaneously, double-click the ruler at the top of the track overview or Key Editor at the required position.
- To play back from the last playback start position, press **Shift-Space** or choose **Play > Play From Last Start Position**. This works even if you have since deselected the item at that position.

- To play back from the start of the flow, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Space** or choose **Play > Play From Start of Flow**.
 - To play back from the start of the project, choose **Play > Play From Start of Project**.
2. Optional: Move the playhead during playback to later/earlier positions.
 3. Optional: To enable/disable the metronome click, click **Click**  in the **Transport** window or mini transport.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Enable Click** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

4. Stop playback in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Space or Enter** or **P**.
 - Press **Num 0** (0 on a numeric keypad).
 - In the mini transport, click **Stop** .
 - In the **Transport** window, click **Stop** .
 - Double-click the ruler at the top of the track overview or Key Editor.

TIP

If you notice a change in sound when stopping playback, you can deactivate **Reset controllers and send 'all notes off' when stopping playback** on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.


RELATED LINKS

- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Enabling/Disabling MIDI thru](#) on page 216
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
- [Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins](#) on page 527
- [Playhead](#) on page 538
- [Mixer](#) on page 717
- [Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547
- [Repeats in playback](#) on page 549
- [Including/Excluding pauses in playback](#) on page 1016
- [Changing the pre-roll duration](#) on page 544
- [Changing the gap between flows in playback](#) on page 545
- [Changing the click settings](#) on page 267
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Transport window](#) on page 555
- [Mini transport](#) on page 32
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Status bar](#) on page 38

Activating/Deactivating playback

You can activate/deactivate playback and transport functions in each project independently. For example, to prevent re-loading of sounds when copying material between projects with different playback templates.

PROCEDURE

- In the toolbar or **Transport** window, activate/deactivate **Activate Project** .

RESULT

Playback and transport functions are activated/deactivated.

TIP

You can change the default playback activation behavior in **Preferences > Play > Project Activation**.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Transport window](#) on page 555

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58


Scrubbing

You can use scrub playback to listen to your music at variable speeds and both forwards and backwards, according to how you move the mouse pointer. This can help you locate specific rhythmic positions to edit.

PREREQUISITE

- Playback is activated in the current project.
- You have applied a playback template to the project that includes sounds for the instruments in your project.
- If you want to scrub specific instruments only, you have activated the appropriate instrument filter or selected at least one note/item on the corresponding staves.


PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, activate scrub playback in any of the following ways:
 - In the toolbar, activate **Scrub Playback** .
 - Choose **Play > Scrub Playback**.
 - To scrub all staves, press and hold **Ctrl-Space (Windows) or Opt-Space (macOS)**.
 - To solo the instrument underneath the mouse pointer, press and hold **Ctrl-Shift-Space (Windows) or Shift-Opt-Space (macOS)**.
2. Scrub in any of the following ways:
 - Move the mouse pointer to the rhythmic positions and instruments you want to hear played back.
 - When scrubbing all staves, press **Right Arrow / Left Arrow** to move the playhead to the next/previous note.

During scrub playback, the playhead is shown at the mouse pointer position and the mouse pointer appears as a speaker icon.



3. Deactivate scrub playback in any of the following ways:

- Press **Esc**.
- In the toolbar, deactivate **Scrub Playback** .
- Choose **Play > Scrub Playback**.
- Release the key command.

RESULT

Music at the mouse pointer position is played back and sustained. The speed of playback depends on how fast you move the mouse pointer. During solo scrubbing, the instrument played back depends on the staff the mouse pointer is over.

NOTE

- Non-rhythmic notes, including grace notes, are not played back during scrubbing.
- When scrubbing music with repeats, Dorico Elements plays back music from the first playthrough.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Scrub Playback** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547
- [Activating/Deactivating instrument filters](#) on page 448
- [Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60


Changing the tempo mode

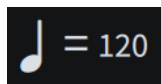
You can switch the tempo mode at any time between using a single fixed tempo and following tempo changes; for example, if you have a project with multiple tempo changes but want to use a single fixed tempo when recording MIDI.

PREREQUISITE

Playback is activated in the current project.

PROCEDURE


1. Change the tempo mode in any of the following ways:
 - Click **Tempo Mode**  in the toolbar.
 - Choose **Play > Fixed Tempo Mode**.

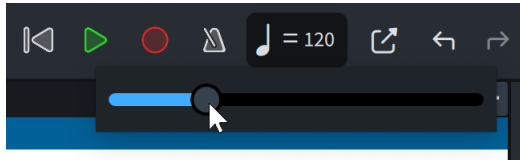


Fixed Tempo Mode



Follow Tempo Mode

- Optional: When **Fixed Tempo Mode**  is active, change the metronome mark value by clicking the **Fixed Tempo Mode** number in the toolbar to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



RESULT

In follow tempo mode, the tempo for playback and recording is set by tempo marks in the project.

In fixed tempo mode, the tempo for playback and recording is a single tempo, as determined by the **Fixed Tempo Mode** metronome mark value.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335

[Tempo track](#) on page 532

[Tempo editor](#) on page 706

[MIDI recording](#) on page 264

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

[Including/Excluding pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Transport window](#) on page 555

Changing the pre-roll duration

In Dorico Elements, pre-roll is the time added to playback before the first beat of the first bar in each flow. You can change the pre-roll duration before all flows project-wide; for example, if some flows in your project start with grace notes and you want to hear them in playback.

PROCEDURE

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
- In the category list, click **Timing**.
- In the **Flows** section, change the value for **Pre-roll before flow**.
For example, for flows starting with a single grace note, **0.25** seconds is usually sufficient.
- Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The duration of the pre-roll before each flow in playback, measured in seconds, is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

Changing the gap between flows in playback

You can change the gap between all flows in playback, measured in seconds; for example, if the flows in your project should be played *attacca* and you want no gap between them.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Timing**.
 3. In the **Flows** section, change the value for **Gap between flows during playback**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Changing the playback tuning

You can change the tuning used for playback, based on the pitch of the A above middle C; for example, if you want to hear your music played at the Baroque pitch of A=415 Hz.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Tuning**.
 3. Change the value for **Pitch of first A above middle C**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The tuning of all notes in the project is changed, which affects their sounding pitch in playback.

TIP

The sample rate of the current playback device also affects the playback tuning.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Changing the audio device buffer size](#) on page 269
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Enabling independent voice playback

By default, all voices belonging to a single instrument, including divisi staves, use the same endpoint for playback. You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments; for example, to hear the different playing techniques in playback for a string divisi where some parts are *pizzicato* and some parts are *arco*.

NOTE

You cannot enable independent voice playback for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument track for which you want to enable independent voice playback.

2. In the Track Inspector, click **Enable Independent Voice Playback**  in the **Routing** section.
-

RESULT

Independent voice playback is enabled for the selected instrument. Each voice belonging to the instrument appears as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Dorico Elements automatically loads enough additional channels, and additional plug-in instances if necessary, to accommodate all voices belonging to the corresponding instrument project-wide, according to the current playback template. Voices are automatically assigned to endpoints according to their voice order.

NOTE

When independent voice playback is enabled, you can only change the routing and effects of each voice track.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the routing and effects of each voice track, including in each flow independently; for example, if some voices in some flows require a solo sound instead of an ensemble one.

RELATED LINKS

- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Endpoints](#) on page 567
- [Instrument tracks](#) on page 531
- [Piano roll editor](#) on page 678
- [Velocity editor](#) on page 691
- [Dynamics editor](#) on page 694
- [MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701
- [Playing Techniques editor](#) on page 690
- [Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints](#) on page 569
- [Playback techniques](#) on page 787
- [Tremolos in playback](#) on page 1405
- [Articulations in playback](#) on page 809
- [Slurs in playback](#) on page 1308
- [Dynamics in playback](#) on page 953

Disabling independent voice playback

You can disable independent voice playback for individual instrument tracks and return them to using a single endpoint for all voices.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument track for which you want to disable independent voice playback.

NOTE

You must select the instrument track, not any of its voice tracks.

2. In the Track Inspector, click **Disable Independent Voice Playback**  in the **Routing** section.
-





RESULT

Independent voice playback is disabled for the selected instrument. Its voice tracks disappear from the track overview, and all voices belonging to the instrument return to using a single endpoint for playback.

Muting/Soloing tracks

You can mute/solo individual tracks, instruments, and voices belonging to instruments with independent voice playback enabled. This can be useful if you want to ensure only certain instruments are played back while you are working on a specific section of a project.

PROCEDURE

1. Mute tracks in any of the following ways:
 - In the Mixer, click **Mute**  in the corresponding channels.
 - In Play mode, click **Mute**  for the corresponding tracks in the track overview.
2. Solo tracks in any of the following ways:
 - In the Mixer, click **Solo**  in the corresponding channels.
 - In Play mode, click **Solo**  for the corresponding tracks in the track overview.
 - To solo selected instruments and mute other instruments, select at least one note belonging to each instrument you want to solo, then press **Alt/Opt-S** or choose **Play > Solo Selected Instruments**.

RESULT

The corresponding tracks are muted/soloed. This affects playback until you change which tracks are muted/soloed, meaning you do not have to reselect the tracks you want to hear each time.

NOTE

- Soloing tracks automatically mutes all other tracks. If you solo a track that was muted, it is automatically unmuted.
- You can also play back only specific tracks/staves temporarily by selecting notes/items on each track/staff you want to hear, then starting playback.

EXAMPLE



Mute when enabled



Solo when enabled

RELATED LINKS

[Track overview](#) on page 520



[Mixer](#) on page 717

[Playing back music](#) on page 540

Deactivating mute/solo instrument states

You can deactivate the mute and solo states of all instruments in your project; for example, if you want to hear all instruments in playback after soloing a small selection.

PROCEDURE

- Deactivate mute/solo instrument states in the following ways:
 - To deactivate all mute instrument states, press **Alt/Opt-U** or click **Deactivate All Mute States**  in the Mixer toolbar.
 - To deactivate all solo instrument states, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-S** or click **Deactivate All Solo States**  in the Mixer toolbar.

RESULT

All instruments in the project have the corresponding state removed. For example, removing both mute and solo instrument states reverts all instruments to their default state, causing all instruments to be included in playback.

RELATED LINKS



[Mixer window](#) on page 718

[Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719

Muting notes/items individually

You can mute individual notes and items to exclude them from playback without deleting them, and in specific playthroughs only. For example, if you want to hear chords without their arpeggios, a passage with multiple dynamics at a single volume level, or without tempo changes from specific tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/items you want to mute. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Suppress playback** in the **Common** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - To mute the selected notes/items in all playthroughs, choose **Always**.
 - To mute the selected notes/items only in specific playthroughs, choose **On Passes**.
4. Optional: If you chose **On Passes**, activate **Suppress on passes**.
5. Optional: Enter the playthroughs in which you want to mute the selected notes/items.
 - To specify a range of playthroughs, enter the first playthrough and last playthrough separated with a dash, such as **1-4**.
 - To specify individual playthroughs or separate ranges, enter each playthrough/range separated with commas, such as **1,3,5-8**.

RESULT

The selected items are muted in either all or only the specified playthroughs.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Toggle Suppress Playback** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Hiding/Showing colors for muted notes/items

You can hide/show colors for individual notes/items whose playback you have suppressed, which causes them to appear gray.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Suppressed Playback**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[View options for notes and rests](#) on page 1064

[Hiding/Showing rest colors](#) on page 1275

[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

Repeats in playback

Dorico Elements supports the playback of repeat structures, including repeat endings, repeat barlines, and repeat markers, provided all the correct jumps and sections are in place.

There is no limit to the number of repeat structures you can have in a single flow and still obtain correct playback.

By default, Dorico Elements plays sections between repeat barlines twice and includes repeats in playback, except after repeat jumps, such as D.S. al Coda.

During playback, the bars/beats and time displays in the mini transport and **Transport** window reflect the playhead position in repeat structures.

Dynamics and tempo marks are reflected in repeats by default. Repeats are also included in both audio and MIDI exports.

NOTE

- When repeat structures are unbalanced and would play back infinitely, Dorico Elements automatically excludes repeats from playback.
 - You can mute individual notes/items to exclude them from playback in specific playthroughs only.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Transport window](#) on page 555

[Mini transport](#) on page 32

[Repeat endings](#) on page 1230

[Repeat markers](#) on page 1236

[Types of barlines](#) on page 816
[Tremolos](#) on page 1399
[Rhythm slashes](#) on page 1258
[Bar repeats](#) on page 1245
[MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
[Muting notes/items individually](#) on page 548

Including/Excluding repeats in playback

By default, Dorico Elements plays back all playthroughs in all types of repeat structures. You can include/exclude all repeats in playback project-wide. For example, you might exclude all repeats to listen to your music as a single playthrough.

NOTE

When repeat structures are unbalanced and would play back infinitely, Dorico Elements automatically excludes repeats from playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Repeats**.
 3. In the **Repeats** section, activate/deactivate **Play repeats**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
[Including/Excluding pauses in playback](#) on page 1016
[Including/Excluding slash voices in playback](#) on page 1260



Including/Excluding repeats in playback after repeat jumps

By default, Dorico Elements plays back all playthroughs in all types of repeat structures. You can manually include/exclude repeats indicated by repeat markers, repeat endings, and repeat barlines in playback after individual repeat jumps, independently of your project-wide setting.

NOTE

You can only include/exclude repeats after repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Fine* and *D.S. al Coda*.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat jumps after which you want to include/exclude repeats in playback. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Replay repeats** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Repeats are included in playback after the selected repeat jumps when the checkbox is activated, and excluded from playback when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, repeat markers follow your project-wide setting for including repeats in playback after repeat jumps.



TIP

You can include/exclude all repeats after all repeat jumps project-wide on the **Repeats** page in **Playback Options**.

Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines

End repeat barlines typically indicate that the preceding music is played through twice. You can change the number of playthroughs for each end repeat barline individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the end repeat barlines whose number of playthroughs you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Play n times** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

NOTE

The minimum value is 2.

RESULT

The number of times the music preceding the selected end repeat barlines is played through is changed.

When repeats are included in playback, repeat counts are shown at system object positions for end repeat barlines set to have three or more playthroughs.

EXAMPLE



Final repeat barline with the default 2 playthroughs set



Final repeat barline with 4 playthroughs set and repeat count shown

RELATED LINKS

- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [Types of barlines](#) on page 816
- [Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300
- [Muting notes/items individually](#) on page 548
- [Including/Excluding repeats in playback after repeat jumps](#) on page 550
- [Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings](#) on page 1230
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663

Swing playback

Swing is a style of performance where equally-notated notes are played in a regular pattern of alternating longer and shorter notes, which commonly entails eighth notes being played as a quarter note triplet followed by an eighth note triplet.



A swing phrase with simplified straight notation

How the same phrase sounds with a 2:1 swing ratio

Swing playback allows you to hear the uneven rhythms you want whilst retaining their simplified notation, including if the second eighth note beat is divided into two 16th notes. In Dorico Elements, you can enable swing playback for your whole project, only for certain sections, and only for individual instruments. You can swing either eighth notes or 16th notes.

Based on academic research into the rendering of swing by musicians, swing patterns in Dorico Elements are tempo-dependent by default. This means that the swing feels more pronounced at lower tempos, and straighter at higher tempos.

Swing ratios and rhythmic feels

Swing ratios express the strength of the swing using beat units. For example, a swing ratio of 2:1 means the first note in each pair is twice as long as the second, creating a triplet swing.

A swing ratio of 1:1 means the music is played straight, while a swing ratio of 5:1 means each pair of notes is played as if they were sextuplets, with the first note in the pair lasting five divisions and the second note lasting one.



Swing ratio 1:1



Swing ratio 5:1

The following rhythmic feels and swing ratios are provided by default in Dorico Elements:

2:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of 16th notes to be twice as long as the second, creating a strict triplet 2:1 ratio. This is also known as a “triplet swing”. This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

2:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of eighth notes to be twice as long as the second, creating a strict triplet 2:1 ratio. This is also known as a “triplet swing”. This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

3:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of 16th notes to be three times as long as the second, creating a dotted 16th-32nd ratio (dotted semiquaver-demisemiquaver). This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

3:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of eighth notes to be three times as long as the second, creating a dotted eighth-16th ratio (dotted quaver-semiquaver). This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

Heavy swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 3:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Heavy swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 3:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Light swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 1.5:1 at low tempos and 1:1 at high tempos.

Light swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 1.5:1 at low tempos and 1:1 at high tempos.

Medium swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 2:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Medium swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 2:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Straight (no swing)

Produces no swing; that is, even eighth notes in the ratio 1:1 at all tempos.

You can change the swing ratio used project-wide, and you can also change the swing ratio used for specific sections and for individual players.

Enabling swing playback project-wide

You can enable swing playback project-wide using any of the default swing ratios or custom swing ratios you have created in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.

2. In the category list, click **Timing**.
 3. In the **Rhythmic Feel** section, select the rhythmic feel you want from the **Default rhythmic feel** menu.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

All pairs of either eighth notes or 16th notes in your project are played back with the selected swing ratio, depending on the swing unit for the selected ratio. This includes if the second beat is divided into two, such as two 16th notes in an eighth note swing.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749



Enabling swing playback for specific sections/instruments

You can enable swing playback for specific sections in your project and for individual instruments independently; for example, if you want only the trumpet player to swing for a twelve-bar section, or if you only want swing playback in one flow.

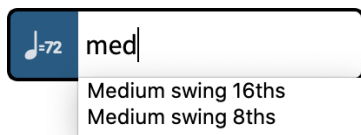
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
 - If you want to enable swing playback from a specific rhythmic position onwards, select a single item at the start of the bar where you want swing playback/a different rhythmic feel to start.
 - If you want to enable swing playback within a section then return to straight playback, select multiple items that span the duration where you want swing playback/a different rhythmic feel.

NOTE

- If you want to enable swing playback for a single instrument, select items that belong to that instrument only.
 - If you select an item in the middle of a bar, the rhythmic feel change only takes effect from the start of the next bar.
-
2. Open the tempo popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-T**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Tempo** .
 3. Enter the appropriate entry for the rhythmic feel you want into the popover.

When you start entering a rhythmic feel into the tempo popover, a menu appears that shows valid rhythmic feels containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.



NOTE

If you do not enter the name of a rhythmic feel that exists in your project, the text you entered into the popover is input as a tempo mark and does not enable swing playback.

4. Input the rhythmic feel change and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a rhythmic feel change for all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a rhythmic feel change only for the selected instrument, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

The rhythmic feel used for swing playback is changed from the start of the bar containing the earliest selected item, or the start of the next bar if you selected an item in the middle of a bar. If you selected multiple items, the rhythmic feel is automatically reset at the position of the last selected item.

If you pressed **Alt/Opt-Return**, the rhythmic feel change only applies to the instrument on whose staff you selected an item or items. Rhythmic feels added to single instruments apply to all staves belonging to those instruments.

A signpost appears showing the name of the rhythmic feel you input. It is shown above the top staff in the system for rhythmic feel changes that apply to all staves, and directly above the top staff of the instrument for rhythmic feel changes that apply only to single instruments.

RELATED LINKS

- [Tempo popover](#) on page 293
- [Signposts](#) on page 450
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450

Deleting rhythmic feel changes

You can delete rhythmic feel changes you have enabled for specific sections or for individual players only.

PREREQUISITE

Rhythmic change signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the signposts of the rhythmic changes you want to delete.
 2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RESULT

The rhythmic changes are deleted. The affected staves return to the default non-swing playback until the next existing rhythmic change signpost, if applicable.

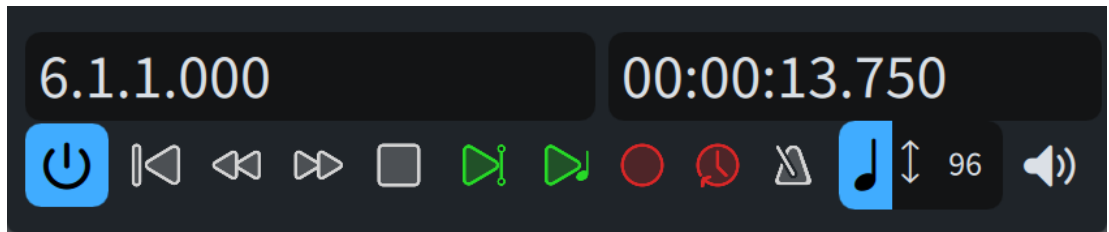
Transport window

The **Transport** window contains playback and MIDI recording functions, such as rewinding and fast-forwarding. It contains additional and more precise versions of the playback functions available in the toolbar.

You can hide/show the **Transport** window in any of the following ways:

- Press **F2**.

- In the toolbar, click **Show Transport Bar** .



The **Transport** window contains the following information and functions:

Bars/Beats display

6.1.1.000

Shows the position of the playhead relative to bars and beats in the current flow in the following order of units: bars, beats, 16th notes, 120ths of a 16th note.

Time display

Shows the position of the playhead in one of the following formats:

- Elapsed time in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, milliseconds
- Timecode in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, frames

00:00:42.500

Time display showing elapsed time

00:00:42:12

Time display showing the timecode

You can change the content shown in the time display by clicking it.

Activate Project



Activates/Deactivates playback in the project. When playback is deactivated, transport and playback functions are disabled.

Rewind to Beginning of Flow



Moves the playhead back to the beginning of the flow.

Rewind



Moves the playhead back by a second each time you click.

Fast Forward



Moves the playhead forwards by a second each time you click.

Stop



Stops playback.

Play From Playhead Position



Plays back from the position of the playhead.

Play From Selection



Plays back from the position of the first selected item in the music area.

If you select items on multiple staves, or multiple items on a single staff, only the selected staves are played back.

Record

Starts/Stops MIDI recording.



Record outside of MIDI recording



Record during MIDI recording

Retrospective Record



Retrieves any MIDI notes you played during the previous playback and allows you to input them on any staff, even if you were not recording them explicitly.

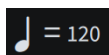
Click



Plays/Mutes the metronome click during playback and recording.

Tempo Mode

Displays the tempo used for both playback and recording. The value changes according to the playhead position, and its appearance changes according to its mode.

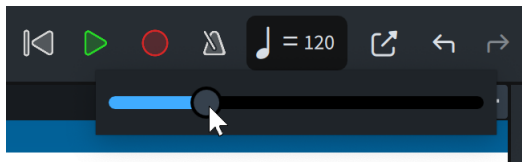


Fixed Tempo Mode



Follow Tempo Mode

- You can change the tempo mode by clicking the beat unit.
- You can change the metronome mark value used in fixed tempo mode by clicking the number to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



Scrub Playback

Activates/Deactivates scrub playback.



Scrub Playback outside of scrubbing



Scrub Playback during scrubbing

RELATED LINKS

- [Toolbar](#) on page 30
- [Mini transport](#) on page 32
- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543
- [MIDI recording](#) on page 264
- [Changing the sound used for the click](#) on page 533
- [Timecodes](#) on page 1226

Changing the content shown in the transport display

You can switch between showing the timecode, the total elapsed time, and the current rhythmic position of the playhead expressed in bars, beats, and ticks in both the mini transport in the toolbar and the **Transport** window.

PROCEDURE

- In either the mini transport in the toolbar or the **Transport** window, click the transport display until the content you want appears.
In the **Transport** window, this is the display on the right.

RESULT

Each time you click in the mini transport display, it cycles through showing the rhythmic position of the playhead, elapsed time, and the timecode.

In the **Transport** window, it only switches between the timecode and elapsed time, as the rhythmic position of the playhead is shown permanently on the left of the window.

TIP

You can change what is shown in the mini transport by default for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Playback templates

Dorico Elements uses playback templates to allocate sounds from VST instruments and MIDI devices to the instruments in your project.

Playback templates combine the following information in order to obtain correct playback:

- The instrument sounds, articulations, and playback techniques provided by plug-ins, such as VST instruments
- The expression/percussion maps required to obtain those sounds
- The endpoint configurations required for the sounds for each instrument

When you add instruments to players in a project, Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-ins for them according to the current playback template and sets up expression maps

and percussion maps as required. Dorico Elements also automatically loads enough plug-in instances, as many plug-ins can only load a limited number of sounds in each instance.

You can override playback templates and make your own manual changes to the sounds used by instruments in your project, such as by changing the expression maps assigned to endpoints. You can then save such changes as custom endpoint configurations, which you can include in your own custom playback templates.

You can also export custom playback templates; for example, to share them with other users. Playback templates are saved as `.dorico_pt` files.

NOTE

- Playback templates are available in all projects you open or create on your computer, meaning any changes you make to playback templates affect all projects that use those playback templates.
- Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for any new instruments you add to the project, using the sounds included in the current playback template. Therefore, we recommend that you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of custom playback templates as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.
- Any changes you make within plug-ins are saved when you save the project but are not communicated to Dorico Elements, which can lead to unexpected low notes sounding in playback because Dorico Elements is still using the expression and percussion maps for the original sounds. If you make changes in plug-ins, you must manually assign the correct expression and percussion maps to the appropriate endpoints.
- The **Silence** playback template prevents Dorico Elements from loading sounds. This can make project files significantly smaller.

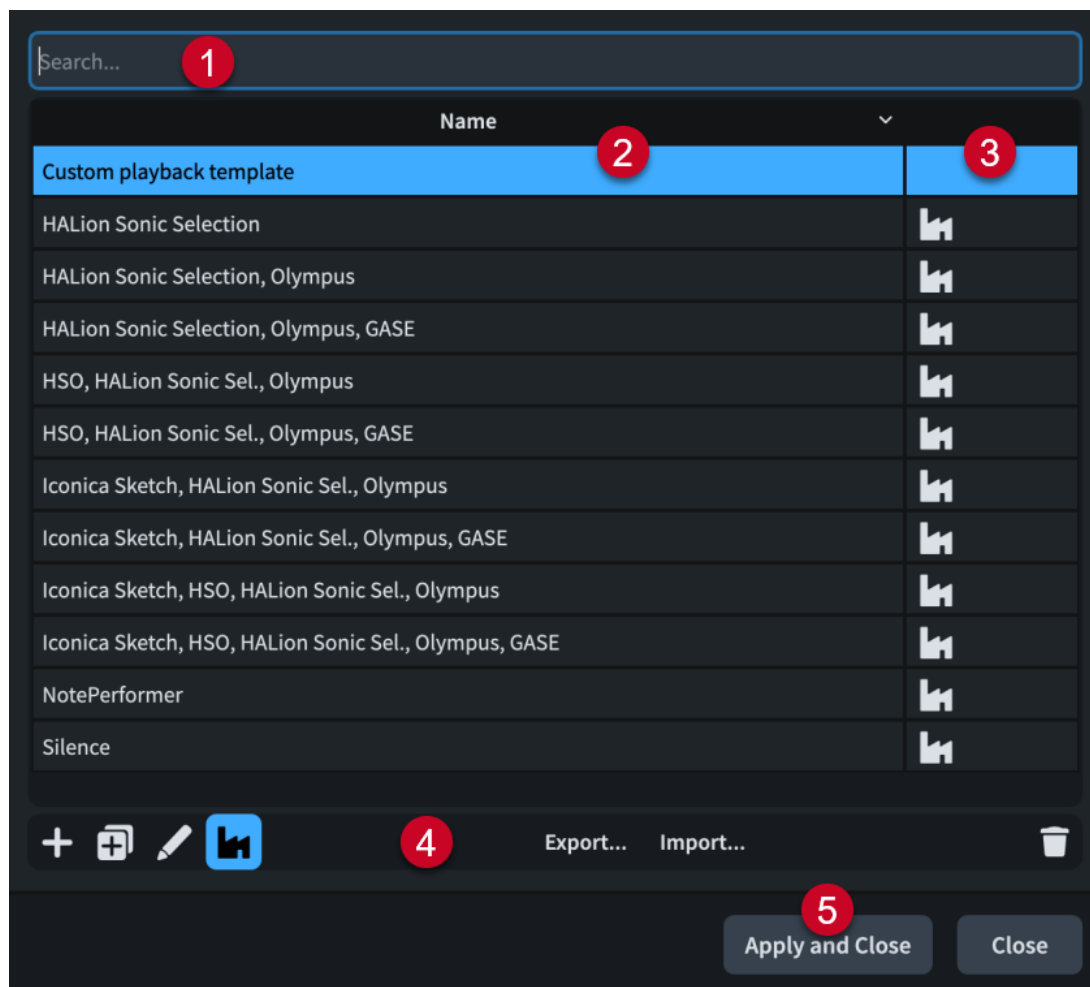
RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Playback Template dialog](#) on page 561
- [Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Creating custom playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Exporting playback templates](#) on page 566
- [Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528
- [Editing VST instruments](#) on page 529
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Endpoints](#) on page 567
- [Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints](#) on page 569
- [Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints](#) on page 570
- [Saving custom endpoint configurations](#) on page 572
- [Activating/Deactivating playback](#) on page 542
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

Apply Playback Template dialog

The **Apply Playback Template** dialog allows you to change the playback template applied to the current project and to import/export playback templates. It also allows you to access the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.

- You can open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog by choosing **Play > Playback Template**.



The **Apply Playback Template** dialog comprises the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to filter playback templates in the list according to your entry.

2 Name column

Contains a list of the playback templates available on your computer. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.

NOTE



Dorico Elements only shows playback templates for sounds that you have installed and for which you own licenses.


3 Factory column

Contains the factory symbol if the playback template in the corresponding row is a factory default playback template. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.

4 Action bar



Contains the following options for playback templates:

- **Add Playback Template** : Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to create a new playback template.
- **Duplicate Playback Template** : Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to create a new playback template that starts as a duplicate of the selected one.

- **Edit Playback Template** : Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to edit the existing selected playback template.

NOTE

You cannot edit factory default playback templates.

- **Show Factory** : Allows you to hide/show factory default playback templates in the table.
- **Export**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected playback templates as `.dorico_pt` files. You can then import the `.dorico_pt` files into Dorico Elements on other computers and share them with other users.
- **Import**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.dorico_pt` files that you want to import as playback templates.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected playback templates.

NOTE

You cannot delete factory default playback templates.




5 Apply and Close

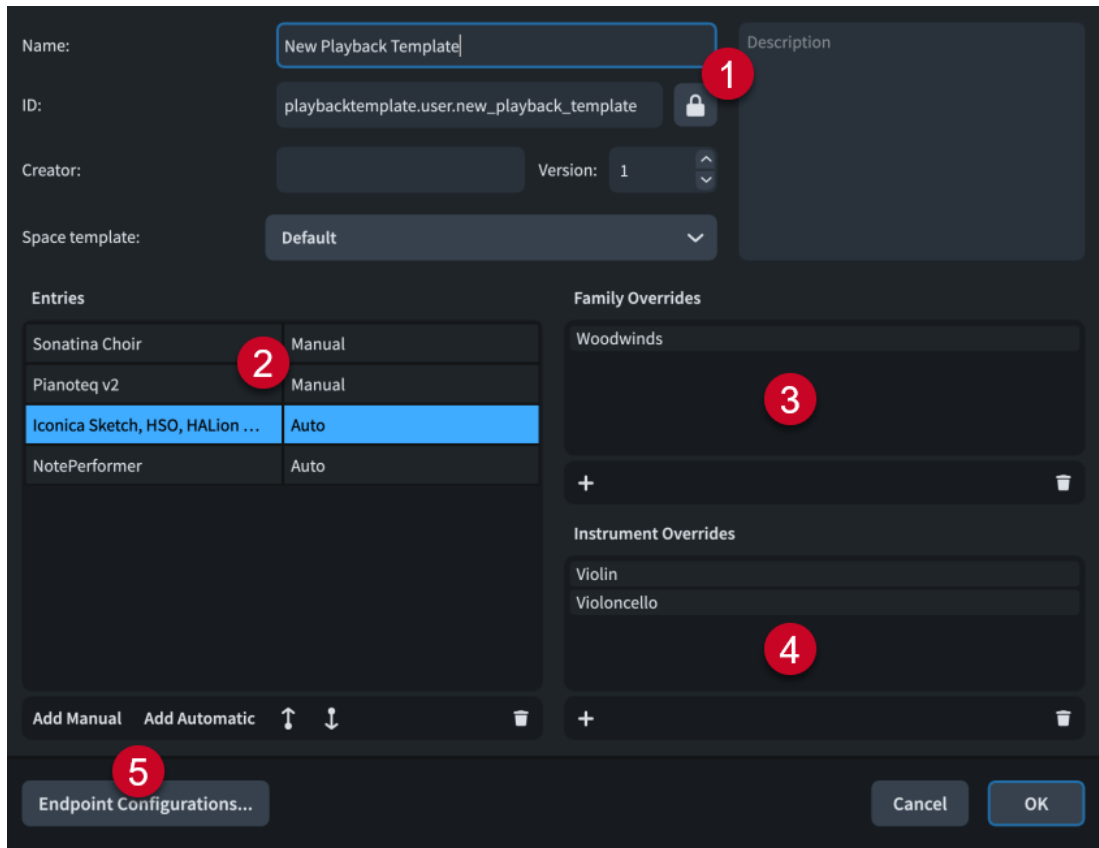
Applies the selected playback template to the project and closes the dialog.

Edit Playback Template dialog

The **Edit Playback Template** dialog allows you to create new custom playback templates and edit existing ones. You can use any combination of custom endpoint configurations and existing playback templates and specify the order in which they should be used.

Playback templates are available in all projects you open or create on your computer.

- You can open the **Edit Playback Template** dialog from inside the **Apply Playback Template** dialog by clicking **Add Playback Template** , **Duplicate Playback Template** , or **Edit Playback Template** .



The **Edit Playback Template** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 Playback template data

Allows you to specify the following identifying information for the selected custom playback template:

- **Name:** Allows you to set the name of the playback template that appears in the program; for example, in the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
- **ID:** Allows you to set the unique ID of the playback template. Dorico Elements automatically populates the **ID** field with the information you enter into the **Name** field.
- **Creator:** Allows you to name the creator if you are sharing your playback template with other users.
- **Version:** Allows you to indicate the playback template version so you can identify the most recent one; for example, you can increase the **Version** number each time you make changes to the playback template.
- **Space template:** Allows you to select the space template that you want the playback template to use.
- **Description:** Allows you to add any other information about the playback template.

NOTE

All fields in the playback template data section, except for **Name**, are locked by the **Lock Info** button. You must click this button in order to change the information in the fields.

2 Entries

Contains a table of all the custom endpoint configurations and existing playback templates used by the selected custom playback template. Entries are listed in order of priority, meaning that Dorico Elements assigns sounds from the top entry first. We recommend that




you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of the list as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.

In most cases, listing entries in your order of preference in the **Entries** section is sufficient to achieve your desired playback. However, if multiple entries in your custom playback template provide sounds for the same instrument, you must set family and/or instrument overrides; for example, if you only want to use woodwind sounds from the first entry and use all other sounds from the second entry.

The column on the right identifies the type of the entry in the corresponding row.

- **Manual:** Entries that cannot load sounds automatically, including custom endpoint configurations
- **Auto:** Entries that can load sounds automatically; that is, factory default playback templates



The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Manual:** Allows you to add a manual entry to the playback template.
- **Add Automatic:** Allows you to add an automatic entry to the playback template.
- **Move Up** : Moves the selected entry up the list.
- **Move Down** : Moves the selected entry down the list.
- **Delete** : Removes the selected entry from the playback template.

3 Family Overrides

Contains a list of family overrides applied to the selected entry and allows you to add/remove overrides. Family overrides allow you to specify the instrument family sounds you want to use; for example, if you only want to use the woodwind sounds from an entry that also includes brass and string sounds.



The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Instrument Family** : Allows you to select an instrument family to apply as an override to the selected entry.
- **Delete Instrument Family** : Removes the selected family override from the selected entry.

4 Instrument Overrides

Contains a list of instrument overrides applied to the selected entry and allows you to add/remove overrides. Instrument overrides allow you to specify individual instrument sounds you want to use; for example, if you only want to use a solo violin sound from an entry that also includes ensemble string sounds.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Instrument** : Allows you to select an instrument to apply as an override to the selected entry.
- **Delete Instrument** : Removes the selected instrument override from the selected entry.

5 Endpoint Configurations

Opens the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog, which allows you to rename and delete custom endpoint configurations, and view the plug-ins and players they contain.

RELATED LINKS

[Endpoints](#) on page 567

[Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog](#) on page 573

[Space templates](#) on page 738

Applying/Resetting playback templates

You can change the playback template applied to the current project; for example, if you want to use a different sound library for playback. Re-selecting playback templates resets them to their default settings.

PREREQUISITE

You have installed all the sounds that you want to use for playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Select the playback template you want to use.

NOTE

Dorico Elements only shows playback templates for sounds that you have installed and for which you own licenses.

3. Click **Apply and Close**.
-

RESULT

The playback template applied to the current project is changed. If you re-selected the playback template already in use, the playback template is reset.

Sounds are loaded into plug-in instances in their score order.

TIP

- You can change the default playback template used for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**. If Dorico Elements detects that you have installed new sounds, a dialog appears that allows you to update your default playback template.
 - You can also load sounds only for instruments without assigned sounds by choosing **Play > Load Sounds for Unassigned Instruments**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Activating/Deactivating playback](#) on page 542

[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

[Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

Creating custom playback templates




You can create custom playback templates that can include combinations of factory default playback templates, custom endpoint configurations, and other non-factory default playback templates that cannot load sounds automatically.

PREREQUISITE

You have saved custom endpoint configurations for any third-party sound libraries you want to include in your custom playback template.




PROCEDURE


1. Choose **Play > Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.

2. Open the **Edit Playback Template** dialog to create a new playback template in one of the following ways:
 - To create an empty playback template, click **Add Playback Template**  in the action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing playback template, select it and click **Duplicate Playback Template**  in the action bar.
3. In the **Edit Playback Template** dialog, click **Lock Info**  to unlock the data fields.
4. Enter information for your playback template in the relevant fields.
5. In the **Entries** section, add the custom endpoint configurations and/or factory default playback templates you want.
 - To add a custom endpoint configuration or non-factory default playback template, click **Add Manual** and select the one you want from the menu.
 - To add a factory default playback template, click **Add Automatic** and select the one you want from the menu.

TIP

We recommend that you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of the list as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.

6. Optional: To change the order of entries and their order of preference in the playback template, select an entry and click one of the following options in the action bar:
 - To move the selected entry upwards, click **Move Up** .
 - To move the selected entry downwards, click **Move Down** .
7. Optional: Repeat step 6 until all the entries are in the correct order of preference.
8. Optional: Select an entry for which you want to specify instrument family overrides.
9. In the **Family Overrides** section action bar, click **Add Instrument Family**  and select the one you want from the menu.

For example, if you only want to use the woodwind sounds from a sound library that also has string sounds, select **Woodwinds**.
10. Optional: Select an entry for which you want to specify individual instrument overrides.
11. In the **Instrument Overrides** section action bar, click **Add Instrument**  and select the one you want in the instrument picker.

For example, if you only want to use the piano sound from a sound library that has other keyboard instrument sounds, select **Piano**.
12. Optional: Repeat steps 8 to 11 for other entries for which you want to specify instrument family and instrument overrides.
13. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Your new custom playback template is created. It is available to use in the current project and all projects you create/open on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

- [Apply Playback Template dialog](#) on page 559
- [Edit Playback Template dialog](#) on page 561
- [Endpoints](#) on page 567

[Saving custom endpoint configurations](#) on page 572

Importing playback templates

You can import playback templates into projects; for example, if someone you are working with exported their custom playback template for you to use. Playback templates are saved as `.dorico_pt` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Click **Import** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the playback template file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected playback template is imported. It becomes available in the current project and all projects you create/open on your computer.

If the imported playback template included a space template, that space template is applied to the project automatically.

TIP

You can also import playback templates by dragging `.dorico_pt` files into a Dorico Elements project window.

RELATED LINKS

[Space templates](#) on page 738

Exporting playback templates

You can export playback templates so you can send them to other users or use them on other computers. By default, any playback templates you create are available in all projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Select the playback templates you want to export.
3. Click **Export** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Specify a name and location for the playback template files.
5. Click **Choose**.

RESULT

The selected playback templates are exported and saved in the selected location as separate `.dorico_pt` files.

Any space templates used by the selected playback templates are included in the export.

Endpoints

“Endpoint” is the term used for the unique combination of inputs and outputs that together allow the correct sounds to be played for each instrument.

In Dorico Elements, each endpoint brings together the following:

- A VST instrument or MIDI output device instance
- A specific channel on that VST instrument or MIDI output device
- The patch or program assigned to that channel
- The expression map and/or percussion map that describes the instrument or instruments that can be played by that patch or program, and the playback techniques and articulations provided

Each instrument in your project is connected to a specific endpoint. Assigning an expression/percussion map to the same endpoint allows Dorico Elements to translate any playing technique changes and articulations you input into the key switches and controller switches necessary to produce the required sounds for the instrument in playback.

When you use a factory default playback template, Dorico Elements sets up endpoints and expression/percussion maps automatically. If you want to load other plug-ins or change the patches within HALion Sonic SE, you can do so in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.

NOTE

Any changes you make within plug-ins are not communicated to Dorico Elements; for example, changing a sound that the expression map expects to use a modulation wheel for dynamics to one that uses note velocity instead. This can lead to unexpected low notes sounding in playback because Dorico Elements is still using the expression and percussion maps for the original sounds. If you make changes in plug-ins, you must manually assign the correct expression and percussion maps to the appropriate endpoints.

You can then save your changes as a custom endpoint configuration if you want to reuse them in other projects.

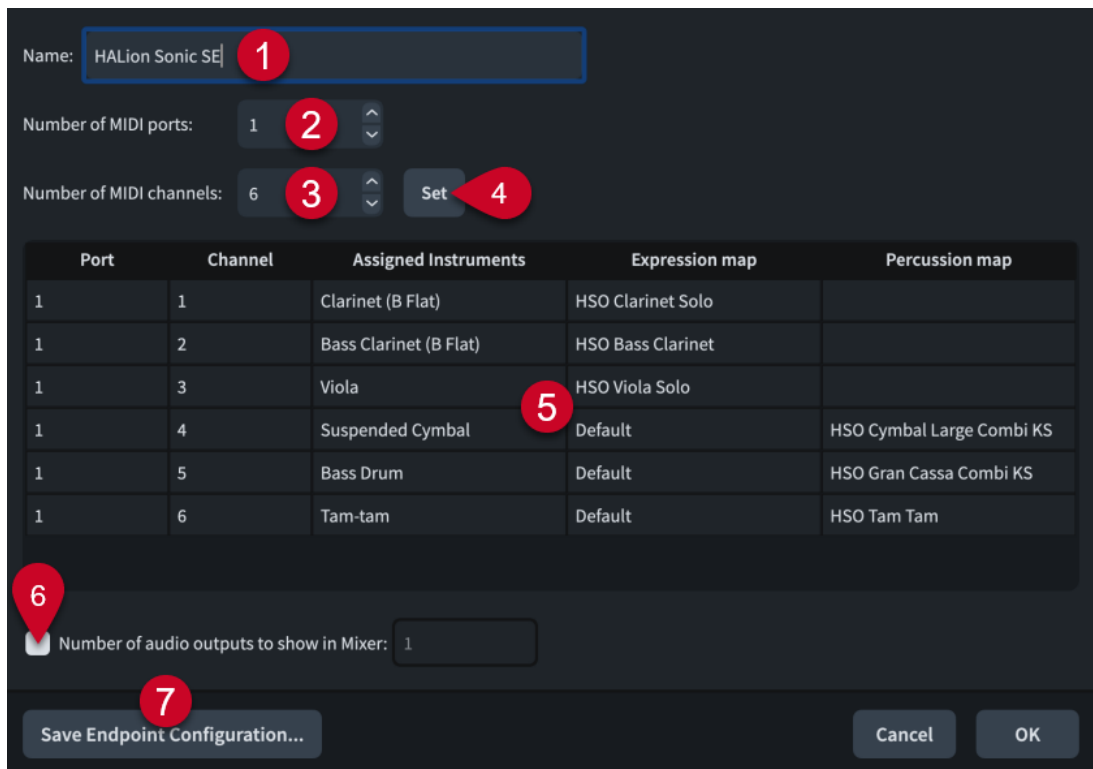
RELATED LINKS

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

Endpoint Setup dialog

The **Endpoint Setup** dialog displays which expression and percussion maps are currently linked to each endpoint in the corresponding plug-in instance, and allows you to change these settings. It also allows you to save your current settings as custom endpoint configurations, which you can then include in custom playback templates.

- You can open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog by clicking **Endpoint Setup**  in each plug-in instance in the VST and MIDI panel, or in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.



The **Endpoint Setup** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 Name

Allows you to change the name of the selected plug-in instance. This affects the name shown in the VST and MIDI panel and in the Mixer.

2 Number of MIDI ports

Displays the number of MIDI ports the corresponding plug-in instance currently uses.

You can change the number of MIDI ports; for example, if you are using a plug-in that uses more than one port. Dorico Elements does not load multiple MIDI ports by default.

3 Number of MIDI channels

Displays the number of MIDI channels the corresponding plug-in instance currently uses.

You can change the number of channels; for example, if you have a monotimbral plug-in such as a piano sampler which only has one MIDI channel, or a multitimbral plug-in with 16 MIDI channels and 16 audio outputs.

4 Set

Sets the plug-in instance to have the number of MIDI ports and channels specified in the **Number of MIDI ports** and **Number of MIDI channels** value fields. This changes the number of rows in the table.

5 Endpoint setup table

Contains the settings for the corresponding plug-in instance, arranged into the following columns:

- **Port:** Displays the port used by the instrument in the corresponding row of the table.

NOTE

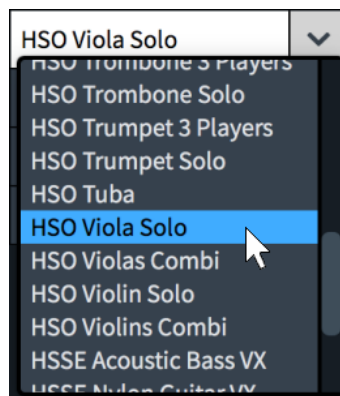
You cannot change the port from within the **Endpoint Setup** dialog. You must change the port in the Track Inspector.

- **Channel:** Displays the channel used by the instrument in the corresponding row of the table.

NOTE

You cannot change the channel from within the **Endpoint Setup** dialog. You must change the channel in the Track Inspector.

- **Assigned Instruments:** Displays the full name of the instrument in the corresponding row, as set for that instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog, and its instrument number, if applicable.
- **Expression map:** Displays the expression map currently assigned to the instrument in the corresponding row. You can change the expression map by double-clicking it and selecting another expression map from the menu.



- **Percussion map:** Displays the percussion map currently assigned to the instrument in the corresponding row. You can change the percussion map by double-clicking it and selecting another percussion map from the menu.

6 Number of audio outputs to show in Mixer

Allows you to change the number of audio outputs shown in the Mixer; for example, if you want to hide unused outputs when using plug-ins that provide more audio outputs than Dorico Elements uses.

7 Save Endpoint Configuration

Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to enter a name for the current endpoint configuration and save it as a custom endpoint configuration.

RELATED LINKS

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[VST and MIDI panel](#) on page 525

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Edit Instrument Names dialog](#) on page 184

[Mixer](#) on page 717

Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints

You can assign instruments to any endpoint; for example, if you have loaded a plug-in with multiple ports and want to change the endpoint of an existing instrument to an endpoint on

one of your new ports. For instruments with independent voice playback enabled, you can assign each voice to a different endpoint.

PREREQUISITE

- If you want to assign different voices belonging to the same instrument to different endpoints, you have enabled independent voice playback.
- If you want to assign instruments to endpoints in specific plug-in instances, you have loaded those plug-in instances. You can do this by applying a suitable playback template or by loading VST/MIDI instruments manually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument/voice track whose assigned endpoint you want to change.
2. Optional: If you selected a voice track, choose one of the following options for **Edits apply to** in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector:
 - To change the assigned endpoint for the selected voice in the current flow only, choose **This flow**.
 - To change the assigned endpoint for the selected voice in all flows, choose **All flows**.
3. Optional: To assign the instrument/voice to an endpoint in a different plug-in instance, select that plug-in instance from the audio plug-in menu in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.
4. Change the endpoint using the following value fields, individually or together:
 - To assign the instrument/voice to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

NOTE

Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

- To assign the instrument/voice to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.

RELATED LINKS

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[Instrument tracks](#) on page 531

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints

You can assign expression/percussion maps to the endpoints in your project; for example, if you have created a custom percussion map and must link it to the endpoint for the corresponding VST patch.


TIP

You can also assign expression/percussion maps to endpoints in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.

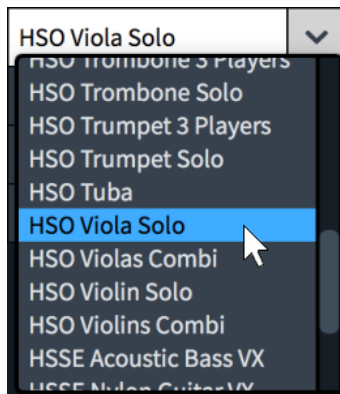
PREREQUISITE

You have made or imported any expression/percussion maps that you require but do not exist on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the VST and MIDI panel, click **Endpoint Setup**  in the plug-in instance in which you want to change the expression/percussion maps assigned to endpoints to open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.
2. Double-click the expression/percussion map you want to change.
3. Click the disclosure arrow to the right of the field.

A menu appears containing all maps of the same type currently loaded in your project.



4. Select the expression/percussion map you want from the menu.
 5. Press **Return**.
 6. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 5 for any other endpoints whose assigned expression/percussion maps you want to change.
 7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[VST and MIDI panel](#) on page 525

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[Expression maps](#) on page 761

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780

Custom endpoint configurations

Custom endpoint configurations save the current state and settings of plug-ins in your project, such as the number and type of VST/MIDI instruments loaded and the instruments and expression/percussion maps assigned to endpoints.

You can save custom endpoint configurations that include the settings for all plug-ins currently loaded or only a single one.

Custom endpoint configurations are available in all projects you open or create on your computer. You can view, rename, and delete the custom endpoint configurations on your computer in the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog.


Saving custom endpoint configurations

You can save any overrides you have made to endpoint configurations, such as changing the instruments and expression maps assigned to particular endpoints. This allows you to use these overrides in custom playback templates and re-use the same endpoint configurations in other projects.

PREREQUISITE

- You have opened a project containing all instruments and plug-ins that are necessary for the custom endpoint configuration.
- You have created any necessary expression maps and playback technique combinations.
- You have created any necessary custom playing techniques.

PROCEDURE

1. Load the plug-ins you want.
You can do this by applying a playback template or by adding plug-in instances manually in the VST and MIDI panel in Play mode.
2. Change the settings for the endpoints as required.
For example, change the instruments or expression maps assigned to each endpoint.
3. Open the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog in one of the following ways:
 - To save a custom endpoint configuration for only a single plug-in instance, open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for that plug-in instance and click **Save Endpoint Configuration**.
 - To save a custom endpoint configuration that includes all VST instrument or MIDI instrument plug-in instances, click **Save Endpoint Configuration**  in the action bar of the corresponding section of the VST and MIDI panel.
4. Enter a name for your custom endpoint configuration in the **Name** field.

NOTE

If you enter a name that already exists, or select an existing custom endpoint configuration from the menu, the existing custom endpoint configuration is overwritten.

5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The current state of either the selected plug-in instance or all plug-in instances in the corresponding section is saved as a custom endpoint configuration. This includes any custom playing techniques included in any of the expression/percussion maps.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can include custom endpoint configurations in custom playback templates, which allows you to use endpoint configurations in other projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually](#) on page 528

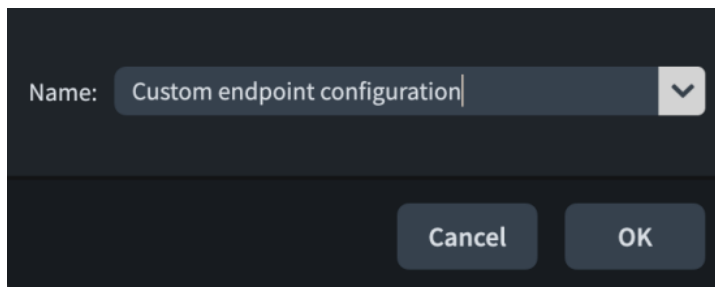
[Adding/Editing switches in expression maps](#) on page 777

Save Endpoint Configuration dialog

The **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog allows you to save the current state and settings of plug-ins in your project. Saving custom endpoint configurations allows you to re-use them in other projects and include them in custom playback templates.

You can open the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog in Play mode in any of the following ways:

- In the VST and MIDI panel, click **Save Endpoint Configuration** in the **VST Instruments** or **MIDI Instruments** action bar. This saves the current state of all plug-ins in the corresponding section of the panel.
- In the **Endpoint Setup** dialog, click **Save Endpoint Configuration**. This saves the current state of the selected plug-in only.



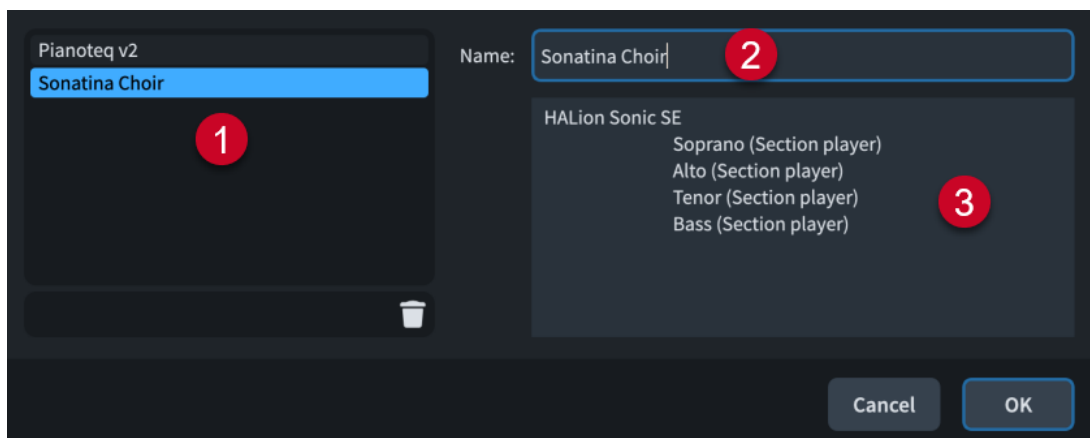
The **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog contains a **Name** field that allows you to enter a name for the endpoint configuration you are saving. The arrow at the end of the field allows you to select an existing custom endpoint configuration to use to populate the field.

If you enter a name that already exists, you can overwrite the existing custom endpoint configuration. When you overwrite existing custom endpoint configurations, Dorico Elements moves the previous version to your recycle bin.

Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog

The **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog allows you to rename and delete custom endpoint configurations, and view the plug-ins and players they contain.


- You can open the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog by clicking **Endpoint Configurations** in the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.



The **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog comprises the following:

1 Endpoint configurations list

Contains all the endpoint configurations on your computer.

Delete Endpoint Configuration  in the action bar at the bottom of the list allows you to delete the selected endpoint configuration from your computer.

2 Name

Allows you to set the name of the selected endpoint configuration that appears in the program; for example, in the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.

3 Plug-ins and players list

Contains all the plug-ins and players contained within the selected endpoint configuration. If the endpoint configuration contains multiple instances of the same plug-in, each plug-in instance is listed separately.

MIDI trigger regions

MIDI trigger regions allow you to play back notes in specific bars without showing them in the music. This can be particularly useful when using pattern-based software instruments, such as Groove Agent SE, for playback.

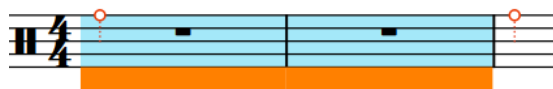


Multiple adjacent midi trigger regions

By default, MIDI trigger regions are highlighted with a solid colored line below the bottom staff line and a colored background. As you zoom out, the colored backgrounds become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

The names of notes played by the MIDI trigger region are displayed at the start of the solid colored line, according to your middle C numbering convention setting. If the velocity is specified, it is displayed in parentheses after the note names.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



Handles on a selected MIDI trigger region

TIP

You can input slash regions at the same positions as MIDI trigger regions.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 420
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Annotations](#) on page 597

Hiding/Showing MIDI trigger region highlights

You can hide/show colored highlights for MIDI trigger regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Highlight MIDI Trigger Regions**.
-

Print mode

Print mode allows you to print your layouts or to export them as graphics files, such as PDF and SVG.

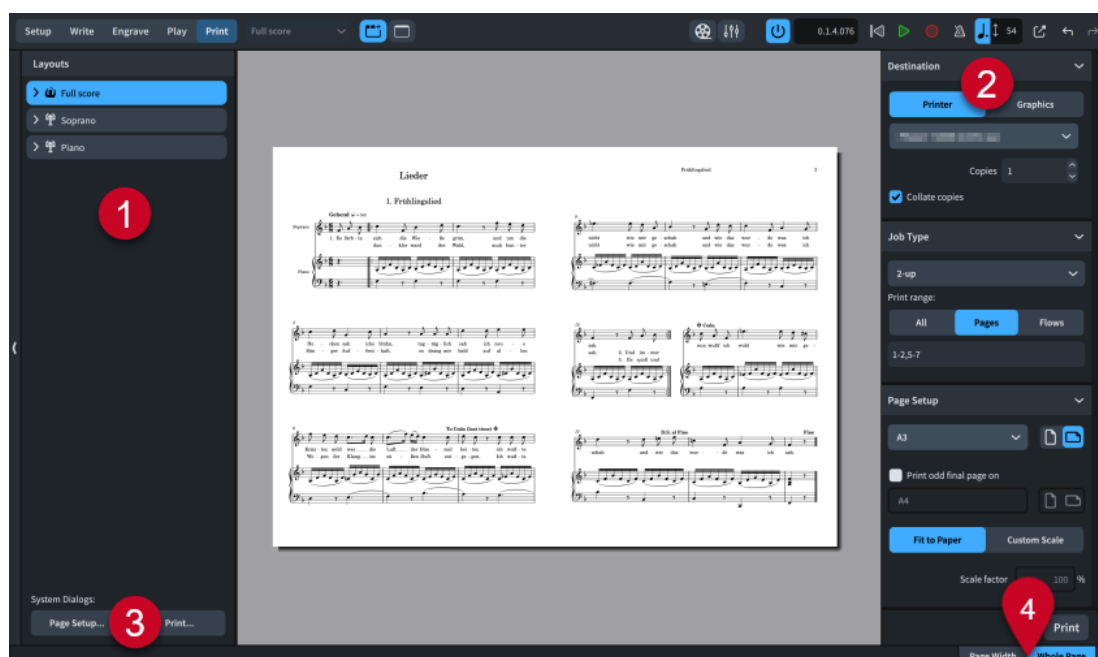
- When printing layouts, you can specify the paper size and other options, such as duplex or booklet printing.
- When exporting layouts, you can specify different graphics file types and the information you want to include in their exported file names.

Project window in Print mode

The project window in Print mode contains the print preview area and panels that provide all the necessary tools and functions for printing and exporting layouts.

You can switch to Print mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-5**.
- In the toolbar, click **Print**.
- Choose **Window > Print**.



The following panels and options are available in Print mode:

1 Layouts panel

Shows a list of all layouts in your project and allows you to select the layouts you want to print or export.

NOTE

The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2 Print Options panel

Contains options for printing or exporting your layouts.

3 System Dialogs (macOS only)

Contains macOS-specific printing options.

4 View options

Allows you to change the print preview area to show pages in one of the following views:

- **Page Width:** The page fills the width of the print preview area, which might not show the whole page depending on the orientation and format of the page.
- **Whole Page:** Shows the whole page in the print preview area.

TIP

You can go directly to the first page in the layout by pressing **Home**, and to the last page by pressing **End**. You can change these key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Project window](#) on page 29

[Print preview area](#) on page 36

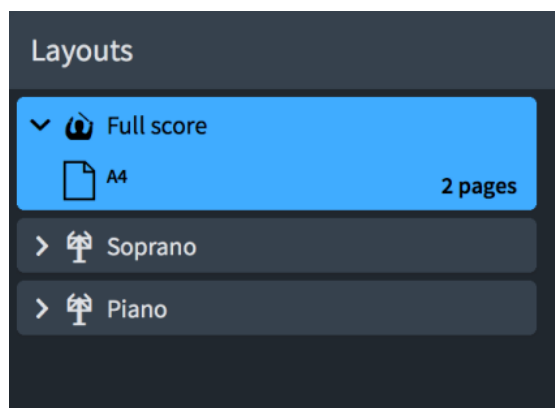
[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Layouts panel (Print mode)

In Print mode, the **Layouts** panel shows a list of all layouts in your project and allows you to select layouts to preview, print, and export. It is located on the left of the window.

You can hide/show the **Layouts** panel in Print mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Left Zone**.



The **Layouts** panel contains all the layouts in your project, displayed as cards. Each layout card shows the following:






1 Disclosure arrow

Expands/Collapses the layout card.

2 Layout type

Shows the type of layout from the following options:

- Full score layout 
- Instrumental part layout 
- Custom score layout 

3 Layout name

Shows the name of the layout. Dorico Elements automatically adds default names depending on the name of the instrument that is assigned to a player and on the type of layout that is added. For example, if you assign a flute to a player, the instrumental part layout automatically gets the same name. If you add an empty instrumental part layout, the layout name shows **Empty part** and an incremental number if you add multiple empty part layouts.

4 Page size and orientation

Shows the size and orientation of the layout as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

5 Layout length

Shows the number of pages in the layout. You can use this in combination with its page size and orientation to determine the best job type for printing/exporting.

TIP

A layout with two pages might best be printed as 2-up, while a layout with five pages might best be printed as spreads with the final page printed on a different paper size. A layout with 12 pages might best be printed as a booklet.

The selected layouts are printed/exported when you click **Print** or **Export** in the Print Options panel. If you have selected some layouts set to print and some set to export graphics, the button reads **Print and Export**.

RELATED LINKS

[Page arrangements for printing/exporting](#) on page 590

[Booklet printing](#) on page 591

Print Options panel

The Print Options panel contains options for printing or exporting your layouts. It is located on the right of the window in Print mode.

You can hide/show the Print Options panel in any of the following ways:

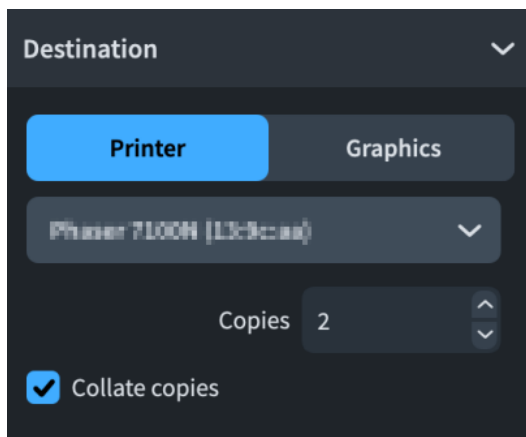
- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window > Show Right Zone**.

All the options that you set in the Print Options panel are saved with your project. The options are divided into the following sections:

Destination

Allows you to select a physical printer for printing or a file location for exporting a graphics file.

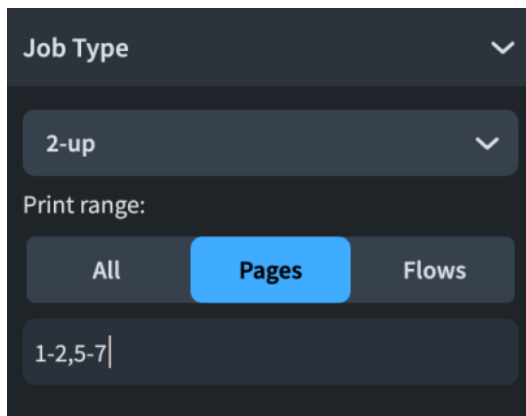
- For layouts set to print, you can change the number of copies.
- For layouts set to export as graphics files, you can specify the format, color mode, image resolution, file name, and directory of the saved file.



Job Type

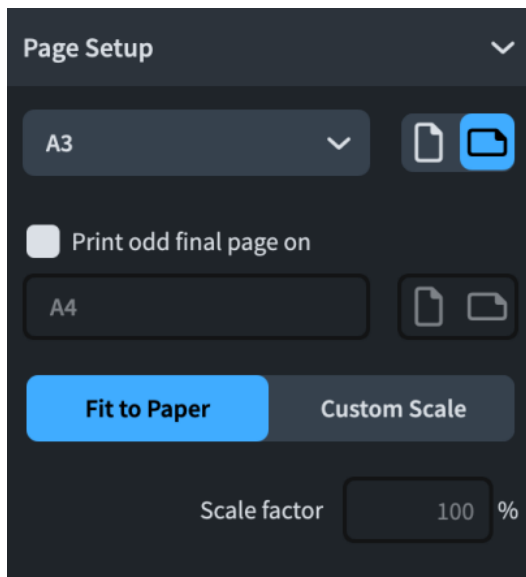
Allows you to choose the pages to be printed or exported, and how they are arranged. You can choose all pages, a range of pages, or a range of flows.

When exporting ranges of flows to PDF, you can also choose to export each flow as a separate PDF file.



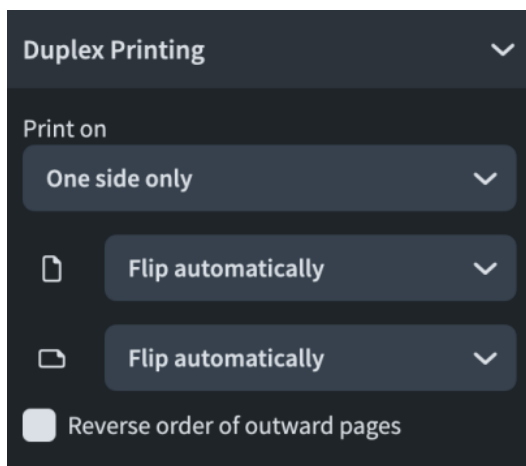
Page Setup

Allows you to set the paper size and orientation. You can specify the scale factor of the image to be printed or exported.



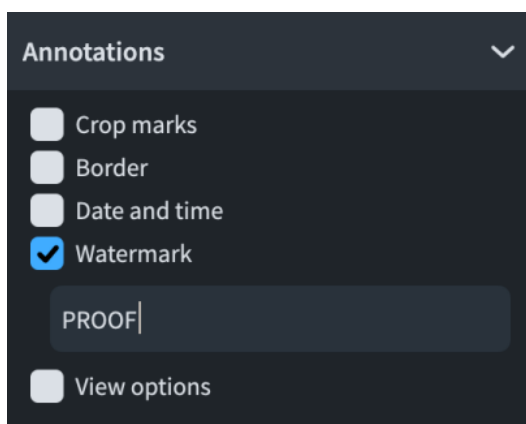
Duplex Printing

Allows you to specify whether to print on one or on both sides of each sheet of paper. Only available when **Printer** is selected in the **Destination** section.



Annotations

Allows you to activate options that are often required by publishing houses or printing agencies, such as crop marks or a border around the printed image.



Print button

Allows you to print/export selected layouts according to the settings you have set in the Print Options panel.

Depending on your selection, the print button can appear in one of the following ways:

- **Print**
- **Export**
- **Print and Export**

For example, if you selected layouts that are all set to print, **Print** is shown. If you selected some layouts set to export graphics and some layouts set to print, **Print and Export** is shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Project window in Print mode](#) on page 576

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Printers](#) on page 589

[Duplex printing](#) on page 592

[Page arrangements for printing/exporting](#) on page 590

[Page vs. paper size](#) on page 593

[Graphics file formats](#) on page 595

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Printing layouts

You can print hard copies of individual layouts or multiple layouts together. You can specify print settings for each layout independently; for example, you can set different numbers of copies or select different printers for layouts in the same project.

Dorico Elements uses settings for layouts to create automatic print settings, so you might find that many print options are already appropriate for the layouts you want to print. For example, if you are connected to a printer that can print A3 paper and the page size of your full score layout is set to A3 in **Layout Options**, Dorico Elements automatically selects A3 in the **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel.

TIP

- If you want to save layouts in graphics files formats, such as PDF or PNG, we recommend that you export them.
- You can select individual layouts and set up their printing options without printing straight away. Once you have set up the printing options you want for different layouts, you can then select all the layouts you want to print and click **Print**. Your existing print settings are applied, even if your selection contains layouts with different print settings.

For example, you can set your full score layout to print **3** booklet copies and the part layouts to print **1** 2-up copy each. You can then select all layouts to print them together and the previously set values are followed.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts that you want to print.

NOTE

The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2. In the Print Options panel, enter the number of copies you want into the **Copies** field in the **Destination** section.

NOTE

The **Copies** field appears blank when you have selected layouts with different values.

3. Activate/Deactivate **Collate copies**.
 4. In the **Destination** section, choose **Printer** and select a printer from the menu.
 5. In the **Job Type** section, select the page arrangement you want from the menu.
 6. Optional: Specify a range of pages/flows.
 7. In the **Page Setup** section, select a paper size from the menu.
 8. Choose the paper orientation you want.
 9. Optional: If you selected **Spreads** or **2-up** for the job type, activate/deactivate **Print odd final page on** to specify the paper size on which you want to print final pages for layouts with odd numbers of pages.
 10. Select a paper size and paper orientation for the odd final page.
 11. Choose one of the following size options:
 - **Fit to Paper**
 - **Custom Scale**
 12. Optional: If you selected **Custom Scale**, enter the scale factor you want into the **Scale factor** field.
 13. In the **Duplex Printing** section, select one of the printing options from the **Print on** menu.
 14. Optional: If you selected a duplex printing option, use the bottom two menus to select how the printed image is flipped when printing on the reverse side of the paper.
 15. In the **Annotations** section, activate each annotation you want to add to the selected layouts.
 16. Click **Print**.
-

RESULT

The selected layouts are printed according to the print settings you have applied.

If your selection included part layouts set to concert pitch that contain transposing instruments, Dorico Elements shows a warning and offers to switch them all to transposed pitch before printing/exporting. You can also select which layouts you want to switch to transposed pitch or proceed anyway with no changes.

TIP

- You can choose to show a warning when printing/exporting concert or transposed pitch full score and custom score layouts in **Preferences > General > Files**.
 - You can assign key commands to different printing and exporting commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Printers](#) on page 589
- [Paper size and orientation setup](#) on page 594
- [Export File Names dialog](#) on page 588
- [Page arrangements for printing/exporting](#) on page 590
- [Print Options panel](#) on page 578
- [Duplex printing](#) on page 592
- [Annotations](#) on page 597
- [Changing the page size and/or orientation](#) on page 600
- [Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

Specifying ranges of pages/flows

By default, Dorico Elements prints/exports all pages in the selected layouts. You can specify ranges of either pages or flows for each layout independently.

NOTE

You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts for which you want to specify ranges of pages/flows.
2. In the Print Options panel, in the **Job Type** section, choose one of the following options for **Print range**:
 - To specify ranges of pages, choose **Pages**.
 - To specify ranges of flows, choose **Flows**.
3. If you chose **Pages**, enter the pages you want into the value field.
 - To specify a range of pages, enter the first page and last page separated with a dash, such as **1-4**.
 - To specify individual pages or separate ranges, enter each page/range separated with commas, such as **1,3,5-8**.

NOTE

Separate ranges are exported as separate files.

4. If you chose **Flows**, click **Choose** to open the **Print Flows** dialog. Select the flows you want to print/export, then click **OK**.
-

RESULT

The pages set to be printed/exported from the selected layouts are changed. Ranges of flows include all pages on which those flows appear, in full or in part.

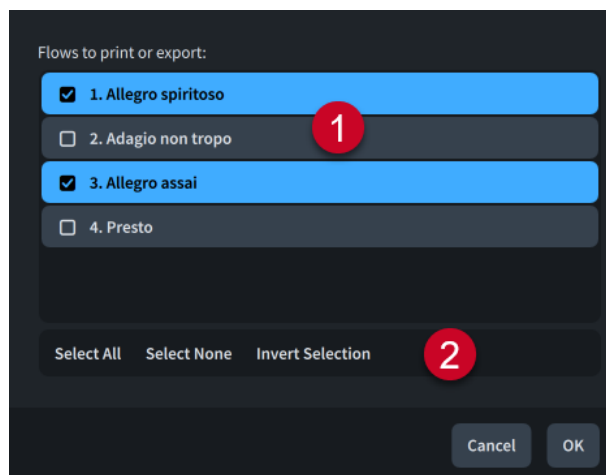
RELATED LINKS

- [Print Options panel](#) on page 578
- [Export File Names dialog](#) on page 588
- [Page arrangements for printing/exporting](#) on page 590
- [Exporting flows](#) on page 80

Print Flows dialog

The **Print Flows** dialog allows you to select the flows you want to print/export from the selected layouts. Ranges of flows include all pages on which those flows appear, in full or in part.

- You can open the **Print Flows** dialog in Print mode by clicking **Choose** in the **Job Type** section of the Print Options panel. **Choose** is available when the selected layouts are set to print/export a range of flows.



1 Flows to print or export

Contains a list of all the flows in the selected layouts. Flows are included in the page range to be printed/exported when their checkbox is activated.

2 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect flows. The following selection options are available:

- **Select All:** Selects all flows.
- **Select None:** Deselects all flows.
- **Invert Selection:** Switches your selection to include all flows not previously selected.

Specifying printing options (macOS only)

Dorico Elements allows you to access the standard printing options of your operating system.

NOTE

If you use the standard printing options of your operating system, the settings in the Print Options panel are ignored. macOS-specific print settings are not saved with your project. These must be set each time you want to print, whereas the Dorico Elements print options are always saved with your project.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, click **Page Setup** in the **OS X Dialogs** section to open the macOS **Page Setup** dialog.
 2. In the **Page Setup** dialog, set the paper size.
 3. Click **OK**.
 4. In the **OS X Dialogs** section, click **Print** to open the macOS **Print**.
 5. In the **Print** dialog, set up the printing options you want.
-

Exporting layouts as graphics files

You can export layouts as a variety of graphics files, such as PDF or PNG.

TIP

You can export layouts with different image settings and export paths simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts you want to export.

NOTE

The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2. In the Print Options panel, choose **Graphics** in the **Destination** section.
3. Optional: Change the image settings for the selected layouts.
4. Optional: Change the export path for the selected layouts.
5. Optional: If you want to change the file name recipe, click **File Name Options** to open the **Export File Names** dialog.
6. Optional: In the **Export File Names** dialog, change the file name recipe for your selected graphics file formats.

TIP

- We recommend including the **Page number** token for PNG, SVG, and TIFF files as each page in layouts using these formats is exported as a separate file.
 - When exporting ranges of flows to PDF as separate files, we recommend including either the flow name or flow number to prevent the files from overwriting each other.
-

7. Optional: Specify a range of pages/flows.
8. Optional: If you are exporting a range of flows to PDF, activate/deactivate **Separate file for each flow** in the **Job Type** section.
9. In the **Page Setup** section, choose the page orientation you want.
10. In the **Annotations** section, activate each annotation you want to add to the selected layouts.

NOTE

Watermarks are only included in layouts exported as **Color** graphics.

11. Click **Export**.
-

RESULT

The selected layouts are exported as the selected graphics format, using the file name recipe set for their graphics file format in the **Export File Names** dialog. They are saved in the folder set in the **Destination folder** field, or in the same folder as the project file if the set export path is no longer accessible.

Exported layouts use the page size set for the layout on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

If your selection included part layouts set to concert pitch that contain transposing instruments, Dorico Elements shows a warning and offers to switch them all to transposed pitch before

printing/exporting. You can also select which layouts you want to switch to transposed pitch or proceed anyway with no changes.

TIP

- You can choose to show a warning when printing/exporting concert or transposed pitch full score and custom score layouts in **Preferences > General > Files**.
 - You can assign key commands to different printing and exporting commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Specifying ranges of pages/flows](#) on page 583
- [Changing the page size and/or orientation](#) on page 600
- [Export File Names dialog](#) on page 588
- [Annotations](#) on page 597
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
- [Page vs. paper size](#) on page 593
- [Exporting flows](#) on page 80
- [Exporting project statistics](#) on page 107

Changing the image settings for layouts

You can change the graphics file format, color mode, and image resolution of layouts individually; for example, if you want to export some layouts as PDF files but others as PNG files.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose export path you want to change.
2. In the Print Options panel, choose **Graphics** in the **Destination** section.
3. Select a graphics file format from the menu.
4. Choose a color mode.
 - **Mono** exports the graphic in black and white.
 - **Color** exports the graphic in full color.

NOTE

- For layouts that you want to export with watermarks, or that contain colored or not completely transparent elements, you must choose **Color**. If you select **Mono**, such elements appear black in the exported file.
 - When exporting graphics files with a resolution of 72 dpi, we recommend that you select **Color**. If you select **Mono**, staff lines can disappear.
-
5. Optional: For **PNG** or **TIFF** files, do the following:
 - If you chose **Color**, activate/deactivate **Transparent background**.
 - Select a resolution from the **Resolution** menu.

TIP

The **Resolution** setting does not affect **PDF** and **SVG** files as they are vector formats.

RESULT

The image settings for the selected layouts are changed. This also changes the file name recipe used for the corresponding layouts when you export them.

RELATED LINKS

[Graphics file formats](#) on page 595

[Image resolution](#) on page 595

[Monochrome and color graphics processing](#) on page 596

[Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files](#) on page 596


[Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060

Changing the export path for layouts

You can specify an export path to any folder to which you want to export layouts as graphics files. You can specify a different export path for each layout and still export them all simultaneously.

By default, Dorico Elements exports graphics files into the same folder as your project file. If you have not saved your project yet, graphics files are saved in your **Dorico Projects** folder.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose export path you want to change.
2. In the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel, click **Choose Folder**  beside the **Destination folder** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
4. Click **Select Folder** (Windows)/**Open** (macOS) to insert the new path in the **Destination folder** field.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 1 to 4 for other layouts whose export path you want to change.
6. Optional: If you want to change the file name recipe, click **File Name Options** to open the **Export File Names** dialog.
7. Optional: In the **Export File Names** dialog, change the file name recipe for your selected graphics file formats.

TIP

We recommend including the **Page number** token for PNG, SVG, and TIFF files as each page in layouts using these formats is exported as a separate file.

RESULT

The export path for the selected layouts is changed. When exported, the layouts use the file name recipe set for their graphics file format in the **Export File Names** dialog.

NOTE

If the export path specified is no longer accessible, such as if you receive a project from someone who uses a different operating system, Dorico Elements automatically updates the export path to the same location as the project file.

Export File Names dialog

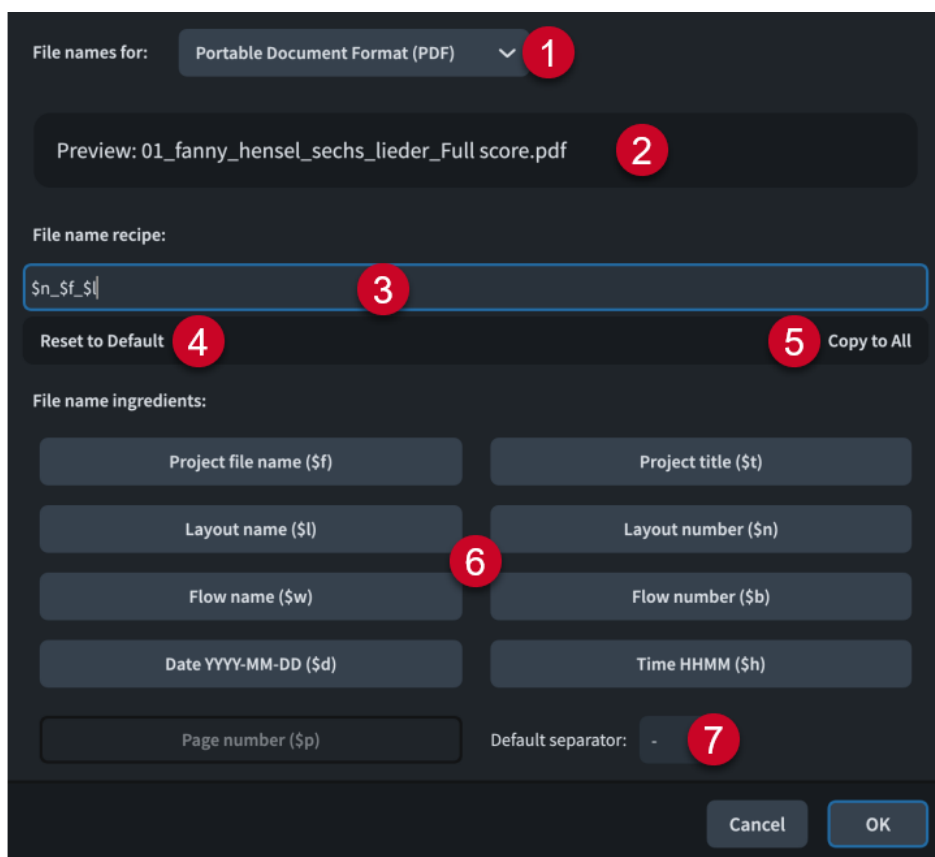
The **Export File Names** dialog allows you to determine the contents of file names for each graphics file format independently. You can use universal ingredients that update to show the correct information for each layout automatically, and you can enter text that is the same for all layouts.

You can open the **Export File Names** dialog in any of the following ways:

- In Print mode, click **File Name Options** in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel when the currently selected layout is set to **Graphics**.
- In **Preferences > General > Exporting Files**, click **Edit**.

NOTE

Your settings are linked between both ways of accessing the dialog and are saved as the default for all future projects.



The **Export File Names** dialog contains the following options:

1 File names for

Allows you to select different graphics file formats. You can set different file name recipes for each graphics file format.

2 Preview

Displays an example file name based on the current recipe. The layout used for the preview is the one shown in the layout selector in the toolbar.

For example, the preview for a full score PDF file name using the default recipe might be 01 - Full score - Lieder.pdf.

3 File name recipe

Displays the recipe for the selected graphics file format. You can enter text directly into this field, and click ingredients to add them automatically.

For example, the default PDF file name recipe is **\$n - \$l - \$t**.

4 Reset to Default

Resets the file name recipe to the default for the selected graphics file format.

5 Copy to All

Copies the file name recipe to all layouts in the project.

6 File name ingredients

Allow you to add ingredients to the file name recipe quickly that are automatically populated as appropriate for each layout. For example, the ingredient **\$l** becomes Piano when used to export a piano part layout.

The buttons for each ingredient display both the information to which the ingredient refers and the characters for it.

When you click file name ingredients, they are added to the end of the file name recipe. They are automatically separated from the previous ingredient using the default separator.

NOTE

The page number ingredient is not available for the PDF file name recipe as it is a multi-page format.

7 Default separator

Allows you to set the characters used to separate ingredients in the file name recipe by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187

Printers

You can print layouts from Dorico Elements projects to any printer to which your computer is connected.

You can select different printers for each layout in your project. This allows you to send layouts to the most appropriate printer for their requirements. You can select a printer when **Printer** is chosen in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel.

Dorico Elements uses the same printer as designated by the operating system by default, unless you specify another printer. In this case, the settings in the following sections in the Print Options panel can change:

- In the **Page Setup** section, the list of available paper sizes lists only paper sizes that the chosen printer provides.
- In the **Duplex Printing** section, the option for automatic duplex printing is only available if the chosen printer has this function.

NOTE

The printer menu in the **Destination** section only shows the name of a printer if all currently selected layouts are set to print to the same printer. If you select a new printer from the menu, all selected layouts are set to print to that printer.

RELATED LINKS

[Print Options panel](#) on page 578

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

Page arrangements for printing/exporting

Dorico Elements provides several page arrangements that you can use for printing/exporting your layouts.

In the **Job Type** section of the Print Options panel, you can specify how you want the layouts to be printed/exported. You can select the following job types from the **Job Type** menu:

Normal

Prints one page on each sheet of paper. This produces single-sided pages; for example, for instrumental parts that do not have regular page turns and must be bound in a continuous line.

Spreads

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper, with odd-numbered pages on the right-hand side and even-numbered pages on the left-hand side.

You can also specify a paper size on which to print odd final pages; for example, if you are printing a layout containing five pages.

2-up

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper. The first page in the range is printed on the left-hand side of the first sheet of paper. This can be useful for printing instrument parts as it reduces the number of edges that must be bound, because pages can also be folded in half.

You can also specify a paper size on which to print odd final pages; for example, if you are printing a layout containing five pages.

Booklet

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper according to imposition requirements. This means that if the paper is folded, the pages are laid out like a book. This can be useful for scores and choir parts in particular as they often contain more pages than instrumental parts.

NOTE

You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.

NOTE

- Depending on the job type that you choose, Dorico Elements switches the page orientation automatically. The changed orientation is immediately displayed in the music area. If this is not what you want, you can override the orientation in the **Page Setup** section.
- All of the job types allow printing either onto a single side of each sheet of paper or on both sides of the paper.

- It is usual to print booklets, spreads, and 2-up onto paper in landscape orientation. Printing one page to each sheet typically uses portrait orientation, unless the layout itself uses landscape orientation.
-

Also in the **Job Type** section, you can choose which pages you want to print/export.

All

Allows you to print/export all pages in the selected layouts.

Pages

Allows you to set a range of pages to be printed/exported. Choosing **Pages** makes the value field available.

- To specify a range, enter the first page and last page separated with a dash, such as **1-4**.
- To specify individual pages or separate ranges, enter each page/range separated with commas, such as **1,3,5-8**.

Flows

Allows you to set a range of flows to be printed/exported. When **Flows** is chosen, you can click **Choose** to open the **Print Flows** dialog, which allows you to select the flows you want to print/export.

RELATED LINKS

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Paper size and orientation setup](#) on page 594

[Specifying ranges of pages/flows](#) on page 583

[Margins](#) on page 614

Booklet printing

Booklets are documents printed on both sides of the paper and folded to resemble the pages in a book. When printed as a booklet, pages are reordered so that you can fold the printed pages and read the content in the same order as they were in the project.

Printing layouts as a booklet can be much quicker than printing pages single-sided or double-sided. For example, if your full score is twenty pages long and you print it on both sides automatically, you must then bind one edge of the printed pages in order to keep them together. However, if you print the full score as a booklet, you can simply fold the printed pages in the middle.

Booklet printing settings reorder pages so that they appear in the correct order on the printed page. For example, a layout containing four pages printed as a booklet is laid out as follows:

- First side: page four on the left, page one on the right
- Reverse side: page two on the left, page three on the right

If the layout you are printing as a booklet contains an odd number of pages, Dorico Elements automatically places any empty last pages at the end of the booklet. This follows the convention of showing odd-numbered pages on the right. For example, if you print a layout containing six pages as a booklet, a total of eight pages are printed with the last two pages in the booklet left blank. If you want the empty pages to be positioned differently, you can add extra pages to the layout; for example, a title page.

NOTE

- You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.
- If the order of inward pages is incorrect when you are printing booklets using manual duplexing, you can activate **Reverse order of outward pages** in the **Duplex Printing** section of the Print Options panel, which instructs Dorico Elements to output the first set of pages in the opposite order.

Duplex printing

Dorico Elements allows duplex printing, which means that you can print on both sides of each sheet of paper.

If your printer supports automatic duplex printing, you can use this function in Dorico Elements. If your printer can only print on one side of each sheet of paper, there is a manual duplex printing option.

The **Print on** menu in the **Duplex Printing** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options:

One side only

Prints on one side of each sheet of paper.

Both sides manually

Prints on both sides of each sheet of paper. Use this option if your printer lacks an automatic duplex printing function. After all outward pages have been sent to the printer, a message box informs you to turn over the stack of printed pages and put them back into the printer. Click **OK** to continue printing the inward pages.

Both sides automatically

Prints on both sides of each sheet of paper automatically. This option is only available if your printer supports this type of printing.

The other menus in the **Duplex Printing** section allow you to set how the printed image is flipped when printing on the reverse side of the paper.

Flip image (portrait)



Determines how the image is flipped for reverse side printing in portrait orientation.

- **Flip automatically** uses the printer's default settings for printing on the reverse side. If you find that the printer flips on a different edge than expected, use one of the other options.
- **Flip long side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the long edge.
- **Flip short side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the short edge.

Flip image (landscape)



Determines how the image is flipped for reverse side printing in landscape orientation.

- **Flip automatically** uses the printer's default settings for printing on the reverse side. If you find that the printer flips on a different edge than expected, use one of the other options.
- **Flip long side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the long edge.

- **Flip short side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the short edge.

Reverse order of outward pages at the bottom of the section instructs Dorico Elements, when activated, to output the first set of pages in the opposite order when printing booklets using manual duplexing. This is necessary for some printers so that you do not have to reverse sort the pages manually before returning them to the printer to print the other sides.

RELATED LINKS

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

Page vs. paper size

In Dorico Elements, page sizes and paper sizes use different settings. This means that you can print layouts with any page size onto paper with a different paper size.

For each layout in your project, you can define a page size on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**, which sets the dimensions of the layout.

When exporting layouts as graphics files, the layout's page size is always used. When printing layouts, you must usually choose a paper size that is provided by the printer that you are using.

Normally, the layout's page size and the printed paper size match. However, if you define a layout with an unusual page size that is not supported by your printer, such as 10" x 13", one of the standard page sizes for instrumental parts, you may have to print the layout onto a different paper size. You can change the paper size in the **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel according to your needs. As long as your printer supports sufficiently large paper for your page size settings, and they match a standard paper size, your dimensions are included in the menu. Changing the paper size has no effect on your layout's page size, and does not, therefore, affect the way the music is laid out.

If you do not select a specific paper size, Dorico Elements automatically chooses a paper size that is based on your computer's locale settings. For example, if these are set to a European country, an international ISO standard might be used, such as A4. If they are set to a North American country, one of their typical standards might be used, such as US Letter.

If you have defined a page size for your layout that is larger than a typical standard, Dorico Elements automatically chooses the next larger paper size, provided that your printer supports this. For example, if the layout's page size is larger than A4/US Letter, A3/Tabloid is used.

If you print to a different paper size than the layout's page size, Dorico Elements automatically scales the image to fit the paper. You can change this setting by specifying a custom scale factor in the **Page Setup** section.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Margins](#) on page 614

Paper orientation

Paper orientation is the direction of rectangular paper for viewing and printing. Paper can have either landscape or portrait orientation.

Instrumental parts are most often printed using portrait orientation, as this allows two or three pages to be spread out at a time on most music stands.

Full scores for conductors are also commonly printed using portrait orientation, as this allows more staves to fit on the page than with landscape orientation. However, full scores for small ensembles might use landscape orientation as fewer staves have to fit on the page. Having more horizontal room on the page allows more bars to fit on each page, reducing the number of page turns required.

In Dorico Elements, you can set the orientation of pages independently of the paper orientation; for example, you can print portrait pages on landscape paper. You can also separately set the paper orientation of the odd final page in layouts using the **Spreads** and **2-up** page arrangements.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the page size and/or orientation](#) on page 600

Paper size and orientation setup

Layouts can have different paper sizes and orientation settings.

NOTE

If you have selected **Graphics** in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel, you can only change the paper orientation. No other options are available.



The **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options when you have chosen **Printer** in the **Destination** section:

Paper size

Allows you to select one of the available paper sizes from the menu. The paper sizes available depend on the capabilities of the selected printer.

Paper orientation

Allows you to choose one of the following paper orientation options:

- **Portrait** 
- **Landscape** 

Print odd final page on

For **Spreads** and **2-up** job types only: If this is activated, you can select a different paper size or orientation for the odd final page.

This setting is useful when printing layouts with an odd number of pages on A3 paper in landscape orientation. For example, if your layout contains five pages, the first four pages fit onto two sheets of A3, while the fifth page would occupy only the left-hand side of a third sheet of A3. This setting allows you to print the odd final page on A4 paper in portrait orientation instead.

Fit to Paper

The whole page is scaled to fit the paper size selected. For example, if you select a layout with a page size of A4 and select a paper size of A3, pages in the layout are enlarged to fit the larger paper size.

Custom Scale

The page is scaled to the set percentage of its original size. For example, if you are printing a layout with a page size of A3, select a paper size of A4, and set **Custom Scale** to **100**, the original page remains at its original size, exceeding the boundaries of the A4 paper.

RELATED LINKS

[Page arrangements for printing/exporting](#) on page 590

[Changing the page size and/or orientation](#) on page 600

[Margins](#) on page 614

Graphics file formats

Dorico Elements supports multiple graphics file formats as which you can export your layouts.

PDF

Stands for Portable Document Format. Exporting layouts to PDF allows you to create a platform-independent document that contains a fixed version of each layout; for example, to send to someone who does not have access to Dorico Elements.

PNG

Stands for Portable Network Graphics. PNG files are losslessly compressed, meaning they produce high-quality images.

SVG

Stands for Scalable Vector Graphics. Because SVG is an XML-based text format, it can be scaled to any size without any loss of quality. Dorico Elements renders SVG graphics using drawing instructions rather than rasterizing them, resulting in better resolutions and smaller file sizes.

TIFF

Stands for Tagged Image File Format. TIFF files are not compressed, which means their file sizes can be larger than other formats and the quality of the image is not reduced.

RELATED LINKS

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Changing the image settings for layouts](#) on page 586

Image resolution

Image resolution refers to the number of pixels contained in an image. The larger the number of pixels, the sharper and clearer the image appears.

In Dorico Elements, you can export PNG and TIFF files with different image resolutions. The image resolution is measured in dots per inch, or “dpi”.

- **72**
- **150**
- **300**
- **600**
- **1200**

NOTE

A resolution of 72 dpi is suitable for display on screen so that you can embed the graphic in an e-mail or on a web page. If you choose 300, 600, or 1200 dpi, a high-resolution image is saved that you can include as an illustration in a word processing or desktop publishing document.

Monochrome and color graphics processing

Dorico Elements applies different settings when you export monochrome and color graphics. The most appropriate setting depends on your intended purpose for the graphics.

Most musical scores are monochrome, meaning they use only black ink and are normally printed on white/near-white paper. Some educational books occasionally use colors to highlight particular notations; for example, to identify clefs, or to color notes according to their pitch. If you export graphics files and print them with your own printer, you can leave **Color** selected in the **Destination** section.

However, if you export graphics files in PDF format for direct printing on a platesetter or for further production work in a page layout program, select **Mono**, unless your layout actually contains elements with color or opacity set. If you select **Mono**, Dorico Elements uses a different color space for the resulting PDF, ensuring that the printed image only uses black ink. If you choose **Color**, then the black items in your layout are exported as rich black; that is, black produced by combining multiple colored inks. This can cause problems in production when making color separations at the pre-press stage.

Dorico Elements specifies colors using the RGB color model, rather than the CMYK color model that is used by platesetters and other professional printing machines. If you have colored objects in your layouts and your layouts are printed professionally, you must post-process the graphics files that are exported from Dorico Elements in another graphics application to convert the colors from RGB to CMYK.

Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files

How fonts are handled in PDF and SVG files mainly depends on the fonts that you use in the project.

PDF Files

The music and text fonts, and their sub-sets, that are supplied with Dorico Elements are embedded in PDF files during the export. If you open the PDF files on a different computer, they look the same, even if that computer does not have the fonts installed that are used in the document. If you use different fonts, make sure that these permit embedding.

SVG Files

SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) files do not embed fonts directly. Some font characters, such as note heads, articulations, and accidentals, are converted into outlines, so that they do not depend on the font from which they are taken. Other font characters, such as time signature and tuplet digits, are only encoded using references to the font from which they are taken. The latter also applies to regular text, such as staff labels, tempo instructions, and dynamics. This means that the SVG file looks incorrect if rendered by a web browser on a computer that does not have the fonts installed. The appearance of SVG files depends on the browser or the rendering software, and on the fonts that are installed on the computer.

To ensure that the SVG file appears correctly if embedded in a web page, you can open the SVG file in an illustration program and convert all font characters to outline paths, then re-export the SVG file and embed that file. Alternatively, you can use web fonts to ensure that the necessary fonts are available on the web server.

SVG graphics that are exported from Dorico Elements conform to the SVG Tiny 1.1 specification, which defines a subset of features in the full SVG specification.

For information about using web fonts with SVG, refer to the Help Center on the Steinberg website.

RELATED LINKS

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Changing the image settings for layouts](#) on page 586

Annotations

Annotations provide additional information for printed or exported documents, such as the date and time it was printed. Publishers and printing agencies can use these to identify and register printed images correctly or to embed exported graphics files into a desktop publishing application.

When printing/exporting your layouts for publication, you can include typical annotations. You can also allow Dorico Elements to print or export any view options that you have activated in your project.

NOTE

Crop marks and the border can only be printed if the page size is smaller than the paper size.

The **Annotations** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options:

Crop marks

Adds short vertical and horizontal lines at each of the four corners of the page.

Border

Adds an outline around the edge of the page dimensions.

Date and time

Adds the date and time of printing at the bottom of each page.

Watermark

Adds large translucent text across the middle of each page. This is useful for indicating that this version is a draft, proof, or perusal score.

In the **Watermark** field at the bottom of the section, you can enter the text that you want to show on each page.

TIP

- Watermarks use the **Print Watermark Font** font style. You can edit the formatting of this font in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog; for example, to change its font size.
 - Watermarks are only included in layouts exported as **Color** graphics.
-

View options

Adds all active view options, such as signposts, comments, and note and rest colors, to the printout or exported graphic.

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Comments](#) on page 494

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Printing layouts](#) on page 581

[Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585

[Hiding non-printing elements](#) on page 437

Page formatting

The formatting of pages in Dorico Elements is determined by a number of factors, including the layout's staff size, page margins, the page template applied to them, any casting off values applied to them, system and frame breaks, and frame padding.

Important factors that determine how pages are formatted in Dorico Elements include:

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose and contents of the layout. In many cases, changing the staff size is the quickest way to produce legible layouts.

Staff spacing

Staff spacing is the vertical spacing of your music. It involves the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

Note spacing

Note spacing is the horizontal spacing of your music. It involves the positions of notes and rests relative to each other, and the automatic gaps between them.

Casting off

"Casting off" is the term used to encompass fixing the layout of pages of music, such as setting the number of systems per page.

System and frame breaks

System and frame breaks allow you to adjust layouts at a more granular level, by determining which bars are shown on each system and where music is pushed into the next frame.

Page size

The page size determines the available space for music and frames for each layout.

Page margins

Page margins determine the dimensions of pages in layouts. Frames cannot exceed the boundaries set by the margins of the layout, which you can change on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. You can change the size of margins on each edge of each page.

Page templates

All pages in your layouts inherit their layout formats from page templates. Although you cannot create or edit page templates in Dorico Elements, we recommend being familiar with them as a concept, so you are aware of how pages are formatted. For example, if you override a page template, such as by editing the title directly in the music area, empty pages that are no longer required might not be deleted automatically.

TIP

We recommend entering information such as the composer, librettist, and flow/project titles in the **Project Info** dialog. The default page templates display different information from the **Project Info** dialog according to their type.

Flow headings

Flow headings show the number and title of each flow immediately above their first system automatically. They have no fixed vertical position and follow the music if it moves. The default flow heading contains tokens to display the flow number and flow title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”.

You can hide/show flow headings on a per-layout basis. You can change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles. Deleting or editing individual flow headings is considered a page template override, which is a type of page format change.

Music frame margins

Music frames have margins at the top and bottom. Music frame margins provide padding to ensure that musical material displayed within the frame remains on the page. For example, if music frames have no padding, the top line on the top staff in the frame is positioned at the top of the frame. Any notes that require ledger lines above the staff might then be positioned off the top of the page. You can change the music frame margins for each layout.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, and how to use them together and in different contexts, in order to produce well-formatted layouts.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit all the objects and settings used to determine page formatting, such as frames and page templates. However, we have included basic information about these topics in this documentation for your information.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
[Staff size](#) on page 617
[Staff spacing](#) on page 620
[Casting off](#) on page 629
[System breaks](#) on page 633
[Frame breaks](#) on page 636
[Page templates](#) on page 647
[Types of page templates](#) on page 648
[Flow headings](#) on page 651
[Hiding/Showing flow headings](#) on page 611
[Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651
[Tacets](#) on page 640
[Margins](#) on page 614
[Page vs. paper size](#) on page 593
[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
[Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898
[Layouts](#) on page 174
[Flows](#) on page 171
[Players](#) on page 123
[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
[Project templates](#) on page 77
[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Changing the page size and/or orientation

You can change the page size and/or orientation of each layout independently. For example, you can use a large, landscape page in full score layouts and a small, portrait page for part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page size and/or orientation.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Size** section, select a page size from the **Size** menu.

For example, you can select fixed page sizes, such as **A3** or **Letter**, or select **Custom** to define your own page size.
5. Optional: If you selected **Custom**, set the page dimensions by changing the values in the following value fields:
 - **Width**
 - **Height**
6. Choose one of the following options for **Orientation**:
 - **Portrait**
 - **Landscape**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page size and/or orientation is changed for all the selected layouts.

NOTE

Changing the page size of layouts might not change the paper size automatically selected for those layouts in the Print Options panel in Print mode. For example, if your default printer cannot print the page size selected for layouts, the largest paper size the printer can handle is selected. Similarly, if you had already set options for printing layouts before changing the page size in **Layout Options**, Dorico Elements attempts to preserve your original print options.

Similarly, the page orientation is independent of the paper orientation. We recommend that you check that layouts have the correct paper orientation set for their page orientation in the Print Options panel in Print mode before printing/exporting, as it is possible to print landscape layouts on portrait paper and vice versa.

RELATED LINKS

- [Paper size and orientation setup](#) on page 594
- [Printing layouts](#) on page 581
- [Exporting layouts as graphics files](#) on page 585
- [Hiding/Showing status bar tools](#) on page 40

Changing page margins

You can change the page margins of each layout independently; for example, if you want wider margins for layouts in your project that will be spiral bound.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page margins.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Margins** section, choose one of the following options for **Page margins**:
 - **Same**: All pages in the selected layouts have the same margins.
 - **Different**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts can have completely different margins.
 - **Mirrored**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts use the same margin values but they correspond to the inside/outside edges of pages.
5. Optional: Change the margins by changing the values in the value fields.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page margins in the selected layouts are changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Margins on page 614](#)

[Changing the first system indent on page 1328](#)

[Changing the gap before codas on page 1242](#)

[Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1310](#)

[Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 898](#)

Applying page template sets to layouts

You can change the page template set used by each layout in your project; for example, if you want a custom score layout to use the **Default Part** page template set because that set shows the layout name on the first page.

By default, full score and custom score layouts use the **Default Full Score** page template set and part layouts use the **Default Part** page template set.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose page template set you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Page Template** section, select the page template set you want from the **Page template set** menu.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The selected page template set is applied to the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Page template sets](#) on page 647

[Changing when the First page template is used](#) on page 610

[Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page](#) on page 609

[Hiding/Showing flow headings](#) on page 611

Changing the default staff size

You can change the default size of staves in each layout independently. For example, you can have a small staff size in full score layouts but a larger staff size in part layouts.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose staff size you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Space Size** section, select the staff size you want from the **Rastral size** menu.

NOTE

If you select **Custom**, you can set a custom value in the **Space size** field, expressed in your preferred unit of measurement.

You can also set a **Custom** value by changing the value when any **Rastral size** is selected.

5. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 4 for other layouts.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The staff size is changed throughout the selected layouts.

TIP

You can also change the size of individual staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Staff size](#) on page 617
[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
[Brackets and braces](#) on page 864
[System objects](#) on page 1326

Changing the default staff/system spacing

You can change the default gaps between staves and systems in each layout independently. For example, you can have smaller gaps between staves in full score layouts to accommodate more staves, and larger gaps between systems in part layouts to give players space to add pencil markings.

TIP

- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
 - We recommend that you set the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you, as Dorico Elements automatically allocates additional space for other items, such as system objects and dynamics, and avoids collisions between notes and staves above/below.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default staff/system spacing.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
 4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the values for the different contexts as required.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The minimum gaps between staves and systems in the corresponding contexts are changed. This affects how much space Dorico Elements allows for staves/systems in its casting off estimations and whether frames are considered full enough to justify vertically automatically.

RELATED LINKS

[Staff spacing](#) on page 620
[Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance](#) on page 1357
[Locking layouts](#) on page 631
[Note spacing](#) on page 507
[Changing the first system indent](#) on page 1328
[Changing the gap before codas](#) on page 1242

[Hiding/Showing staff labels](#) on page 1310
[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
[Changing the default player order](#) on page 125

Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems

You can change the minimum fullness threshold above which Dorico Elements automatically vertically justifies staves and systems, which means they are evenly distributed to fill the height of frames. You can also control whether staves and systems are both vertically justified or only systems are vertically justified.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the automatic vertical justification of staves/systems.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, choose one of the following options for **Gap to use for divisi staves**:
 - **Staff to staff**
 - **Braced staff to braced staff**
5. In the **Vertical Justification** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
 - **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
6. Activate/Deactivate **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The automatic vertical justification of staves and systems in the selected layouts is changed. Braced staves are never vertically justified.

EXAMPLE



A musical score page for a full orchestra. The page is divided into three systems. Each system contains staves for Violin I (Vn), Violin II (Vc), Viola (Va), Violoncello (Vcl), and Double Bass (Cb). The staves are justified, meaning they are aligned to the right margin. The systems are also justified, meaning they are aligned to the right margin. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings.

A page with staves and systems both justified



The same musical score page as the first example, but with only the systems justified. The staves within each system are not justified, meaning they are not aligned to the right margin. This results in a more compact and efficient use of space.

The same page with only systems justified

RELATED LINKS

- [Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621
- [Moving multiple systems simultaneously](#) on page 627
- [Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506

Hiding/Showing empty staves

You can hide/show empty staves differently in each layout independently. For example, you can show all staves, including empty staves, in a full score layout for the conductor but hide empty staves in a full score layout intended for reference only.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show empty staves.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Staff Visibility** section, choose one of the following options for **Hide empty staves**:
 - **After first system**
 - **All systems**
 - **Never**
5. Activate/Deactivate **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**.

- Optional: For **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves**, activate the checkbox for each instrument you want to be shown regardless of your choice for **Hide empty staves**.
 - Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Empty staves in the selected layouts are hidden/shown according to your choice. If you activated **All individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**, any single empty staves in multi-staff instruments, such as piano or harp, can be hidden in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

- [Extra staves](#) on page 1323
- [Divisi](#) on page 1329
- [Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621
- [Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows](#) on page 608
- [Changing the default player order](#) on page 125
- [Hiding/Showing system dividers](#) on page 1324
- [Hiding/Showing secondary brackets](#) on page 868
- [Hiding/Showing braces on single staves](#) on page 867
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Instrument filters](#) on page 445

Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks

You can manually change staff visibility from the rhythmic positions of system/frame breaks onwards by hiding, showing, and resetting individual staves. For example, if you have hidden empty staves in the layout but want specific empty staves to appear in some sections, or you want to hide staves with music on them in some layouts.

PROCEDURE

- Optional: If you want to change staff visibility manually from a rhythmic position that does not yet have a system/frame break, select an item at the position from which you want to change staff visibility.
 - Open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in one of the following ways:
 - If a system/frame break signpost exists at the position where you want to change staff visibility, select it and press **Return** or double-click it.
 - If no system/frame break exists, choose **Edit > Notations > Staff > Manual Staff Visibility**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
 - Change staff visibility as required.

For example, you can activate and change the setting for individual staves, or use the options in the action bar to change the setting for all staves simultaneously.
 - Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

Staff visibility is changed from the selected rhythmic position or system/frame break signpost onwards until the next staff visibility change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first and whether the staves are empty or not.

If a system/frame break signpost did not yet exist at the selected rhythmic position, a system break with your staff visibility settings is inserted at the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

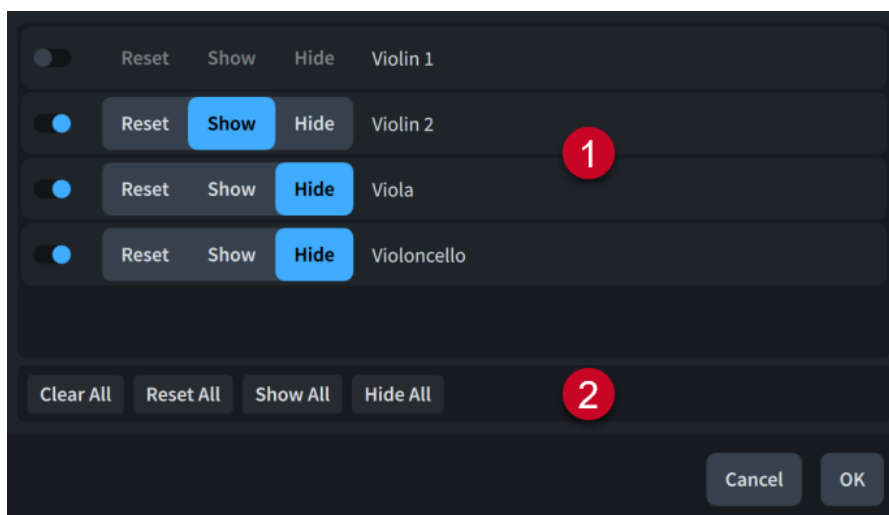
- [Frame breaks](#) on page 636
- [System breaks](#) on page 633
- [Staff spacing](#) on page 620
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574

Manual Staff Visibility dialog

The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog allows you to hide, show, and reset individual staves manually from system/frame breaks.

You can open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Choose **Edit > Notations > Staff > Manual Staff Visibility** when an item is selected in the music area. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
- Select a system/frame break signpost and press **Return**, or double-click a system/frame break signpost.



The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog comprises the following:

1 Staff list

Contains all the staves that exist at the selected rhythmic position, including hidden empty staves. Activating staves includes them in the manual staff visibility change.

For each staff, the following staff visibility options are available:

- Reset:** Resets the visibility of the staff to the default setting in the layout, as set on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.
- Show:** Shows the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.
- Hide:** Hides the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.

2 Action bar

Contains options that allow you to change the staff visibility setting of all staves simultaneously.

- Clear All:** Deactivates all staves.
- Reset All:** Activates all staves and sets them to **Reset**.
- Show All:** Activates all staves and sets them to **Show**.

- **Hide All:** Activates all staves and sets them to **Hide**.

Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows

You can hide/show additional blank staves to fill the page after the final flow in each layout independently; for example, if you want to emulate the convention of showing additional blank staves between the final system and the bottom of the page when formatting part layouts for recording sessions.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show blank staves after the ends of flows.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, activate/deactivate **Fill frame with blank staves**.
5. If you activated **Fill frame with blank staves**, activate/deactivate **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**.
6. Customize the appearance of blank staves in one of the following ways:
 - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to show clefs that follow the previous flow on blank staves, choose **Include clefs**.
 - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to hide clefs on blank staves, choose **Exclude clefs**.
 - If you deactivated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**, change the number of staff lines in blank staves by changing the value for **Number of staff lines for blank staves**.

RESULT

Blank staves are shown after the final flow in the selected layouts when **Fill frame with blank staves** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. When shown, blank staves appear below the final system in the final flow and fill the width of the final system if it is not fully horizontally justified.

When **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** is activated, blank staves follow the staff grouping of the final flow, such as two bracketed staves in a part layout with two players assigned to it. When it is deactivated, single blank staves without clefs are shown.

NOTE

You cannot input music or change brackets/braces on blank staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

[Brackets and braces](#) on page 864

Starting layouts on left-hand pages

By default, all layouts start on a right-hand page, as convention dictates that odd numbered pages are always on the right-hand page. However, you can set individual layouts to start on a left-hand page; for example, to facilitate page turns better in that layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to start on a left-hand page.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, change the value for **Initial page number** to an even number.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The first page in the selected layouts is shown on a left-hand page when the initial page number is even.

Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page

You can allow/disallow new flows to be shown on the same page as previous flows if there is space; for example, to reduce the number of pages required for parts in works with multiple movements. By default, new flows are allowed on the same page in part layouts and are not allowed in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow multiple flows to be shown on each page.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **New flows**:
 - **Always start new page**
 - **Allow on existing page**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Always start new page ensures flows in the selected layouts always begin at the start of the next page after the end of the previous flow.

Allow on existing page allows flows in the selected layouts to continue immediately after each other, including within the same music frame if there is sufficient space. Flow headings are

automatically shown above the start of flows if you have chosen to show flow headings in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Flows are not automatically split into separate music frames. You must insert frame breaks manually to divide flows into separate music frames if required.

RELATED LINKS

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Casting off](#) on page 629

[Assigning flows to layouts](#) on page 177

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

[Hiding/Showing information above flow headings](#) on page 611

[Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows](#) on page 608

Changing when the First page template is used

You can change the circumstances when the **First** page template is used in each layout independently; for example, if you want to use it for the start of every flow in the full score but only want to use it for the first flow in part layouts, even when subsequent flows start at the top of the page.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change when the **First** page template is used.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Use 'First' page template**:
 - **Never**
 - **First flow only**
 - **Any flow starting at top of page**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

- Choosing **Never** means the **First** page template is not used for any page in the selected layouts.
- Choosing **First flow only** means the **First** page template is used for the first page in the layout but no other pages, even if some subsequent flows start at the top of a page.
- Choosing **Any flow starting at top of page** means the **First** page template is used for all pages in the layout that begin with the start of a flow.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

Hiding/Showing flow headings

You can hide/show flow headings in each layout independently; for example, if your project only contains a single flow and you only want to show the project title. You can also hide the heading for the first flow but show flow headings for subsequent flows.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show flow headings.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Show flow headings**:
 - **Never**
 - **Not for first flow**
 - **For all flows**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Flow headings are shown above the first system in each flow in the selected layouts when you choose **For all flows**, hidden when you choose **Never**, and hidden above the first system in the first flow but shown above all other flows when you choose **Not for first flow**.

They are automatically positioned above each flow and below the preceding flow according to the margins set for each layout.

NOTE

Hiding flow headings does not hide the flow title shown at the top of the second page onwards by default.

RELATED LINKS

- [Flow headings on page 651](#)
- [Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 609](#)
- [Hiding/Showing information above flow headings on page 611](#)
- [Project Info dialog on page 75](#)
- [Types of page templates on page 648](#)
- [Changing when the First page template is used on page 610](#)

Hiding/Showing information above flow headings

You can hide/show flow titles, page numbers, and flow page numbers separately when they appear above flow headings at the top of a new page in each layout independently. Hiding such information in running headers is a custom in publishing.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show information in running headers above flow headings.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Flow title in header**:
 - **Show above flow heading**
 - **Hide above flow heading**
 5. Choose one of the following options for **Page number in header**:
 - **Show above flow heading**
 - **Hide above flow heading**
 6. Choose one of the following options for **Flow page number in header**:
 - **Show above flow heading**
 - **Hide above flow heading**
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The corresponding information is hidden/shown when they appear above flow headings at the top of the page.

NOTE

In order to hide running header information, the top of the music frame containing the flow heading frame must be lower than the top of text frames containing the corresponding information. If the top of the music frame is the same height as a running header text frame, any corresponding information in the text frame is shown, regardless of your setting.

RELATED LINKS

[Frames](#) on page 654

[Page templates](#) on page 647

[Hiding/Showing page numbers](#) on page 1151

Changing the horizontal justification of final systems

You can change whether the final systems of flows always fill the width of frames or only do so above a certain fullness threshold in each layout independently. By default in Dorico Elements, the final systems of flows only justify to the full width of the frame when they are more than half full.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the justification of the final systems in flows.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
 4. Change the justification of final systems in flows in one of the following ways:
 - If you always want the final systems in flows to justify fully, deactivate **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.
 - If you want to change the minimum fullness of final systems before they justify, change the value for **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The automatic justification of the final systems in flows in the selected layouts is changed.

TIP

You can also change the width of individual systems independently of your default settings by changing their start/end positions.

EXAMPLE



Final system below fullness threshold, unjustified



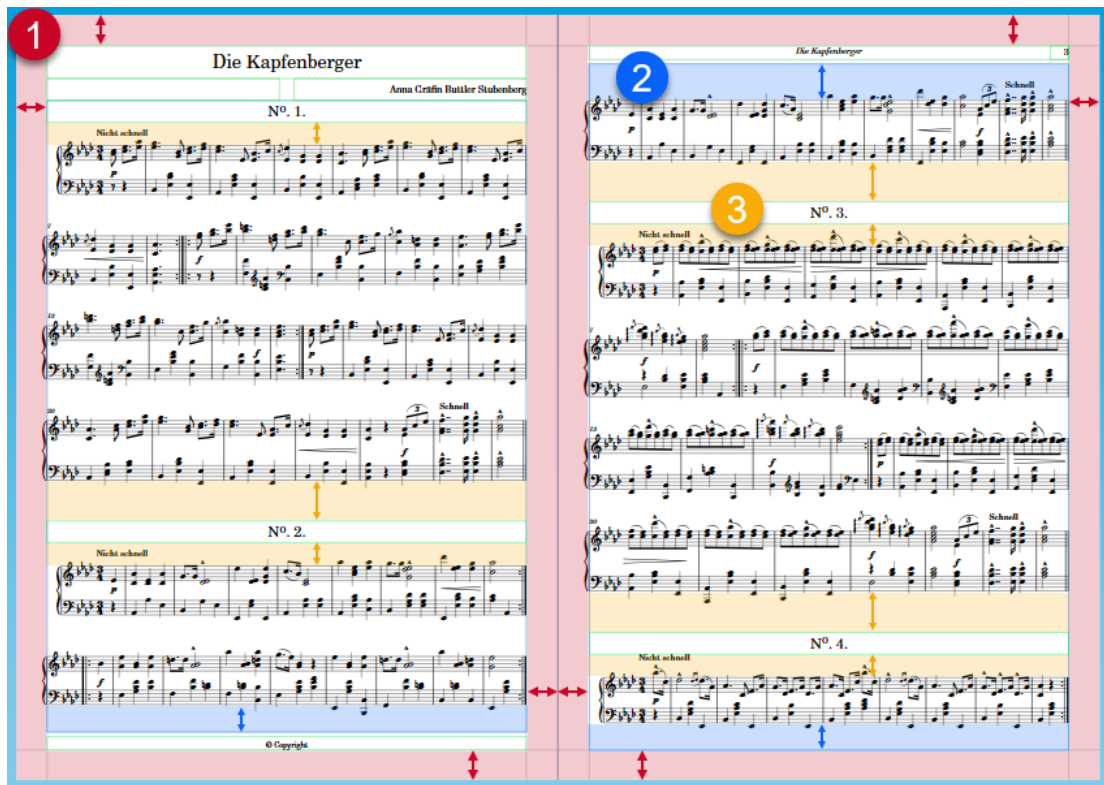
Final system justified

RELATED LINKS

- [Note spacing on page 507](#)
- [Moving the start/end of systems on page 513](#)
- [Changing the first system indent on page 1328](#)
- [Changing the gap before codas on page 1242](#)
- [Fixing the number of bars per system on page 629](#)
- [Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 608](#)
- [Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 1277](#)
- [Deleting rests on page 1276](#)

Margins

Margins determine the spacing around music on pages, such as on all four edges of each page and above/below flow headings.



In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of margins:

1 Page margins

The gaps between the four edges of pages and the boundary of the content on them. For example, systems that are horizontally justified span the full width of pages between the left and right page margins. You cannot position frames beyond the page margins.

2 Music frame margins

The gaps at the top and bottom of music frames. Also known as “music frame padding”.

- Top music frame margins set the gap between the top edges of music frames and the top staff line of the highest staff in the frame.
- Bottom music frame margins set the gap between the bottom edges of music frames and the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame.

3 Flow heading margins

The gaps above and below flow headings. When flow headings are positioned at the top of music frames, the flow heading bottom margin sets the gap at the top of the music frame, rather than the music frame margin.

- Flow heading top margins set the gap between the top of flow headings and the bottom staff line of the preceding flow, if applicable.
- Flow heading bottom margins set the gap between the bottom of flow headings and the top staff line of the next flow.

NOTE

Notes and notations above the highest staff and below the lowest staff extend into margins.

RELATED LINKS

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Changing page margins](#) on page 601

[Changing the margins above/below tacets](#) on page 642

[Changing the page size and/or orientation](#) on page 600

[Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603

[Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems](#) on page 604

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

[System fullness indicators](#) on page 506

[Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506

Changing the margins above/below flow headings

You can change the margins both above and below flow headings, which control the gap between the preceding flow and the flow heading, and the gap between the flow heading and the start of the next flow.

PREREQUISITE

Flow headings are shown in the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Flows** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Flow heading top margin**
 - **Flow heading bottom margin**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The margins above/below flow headings in the selected layouts are changed.

- **Flow heading top margin** sets the gap between the top of flow headings and the end of the preceding flow.
- **Flow heading bottom margin** sets the gap between the bottom of flow headings and the start of the next flow.

For example, when the bottom margin is set to **0**, the bottom of the lowest frame in the flow heading aligns with the top staff line of the first system in the flow below the flow heading.

EXAMPLE

A musical score snippet in 2/4 time, key of D major. The first staff contains a treble clef, a key signature of one sharp (F#), and a common time signature. It features a series of chords: a whole note chord (F#4, A4, C5), a half note chord (F#4, A4), a half note chord (B4, D5), and a whole note chord (F#4, A4, C5). The dynamic marking *ff* is placed below the first chord. Below the staff is a green horizontal bar containing the text "2. Andante maestoso". The second staff contains a treble clef, a key signature of one sharp, and a common time signature. It features a melodic line starting with a quarter note (F#4), followed by eighth notes (A4, B4), a quarter note (C5), and a quarter note (B4). The dynamic marking *p* is placed below the first note.

Flow heading with default margins above/below

A musical score snippet identical to the one on the left, but with significantly reduced vertical spacing between the two staves. The green bar containing the text "2. Andante maestoso" is positioned closer to both the top and bottom staves compared to the first example.

Flow heading with decreased margins above/below

RELATED LINKS

- [Flow headings on page 651](#)
- [Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 621](#)
- [Moving individual staves/systems vertically on page 624](#)
- [Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 898](#)
- [Changing the margins above/below tacets on page 642](#)

Changing the default music frame margins

You can change the default margins in all music frames in each layout independently. For example, you might want more padding at the top of music frames in part layouts containing lots of notes above the staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose music frame margins you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Music Frame Margins** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Top**
 - **Bottom**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The margins within all music frames in the selected layouts are changed.

- **Top** sets the gap between the top edges of music frames and the top staff line of the highest staff in the frame.
- **Bottom** sets the gap between the bottom edges of music frames and the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame.

For example, when the bottom music frame margin is set to **0**, the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame aligns with the bottom edge of the music frame.

NOTE

Notes and notations above the highest staff and below the lowest staff extend into music frame margins.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing page margins](#) on page 601

[Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603

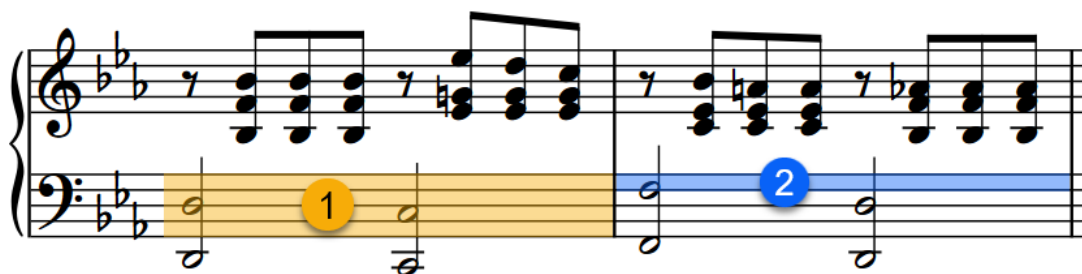
[Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves, and can be expressed as a point size or in another supported unit of measurement, such as millimeters. For individual staves, you can use a scale size of the default staff size in the layout. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose of the layout.

For example, full orchestral scores that are quite dense need a much smaller staff size than individual parts, which require large enough notes so that performers can read them easily. Staves can overlap and the music can become illegible if the staff size is too large in dense scores.

In Dorico Elements, you can set the staff size using the rastral size and the space size, depending on which measurement is more appropriate for the selected layouts.



- 1 Rastral size is the size of the full staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line.
- 2 Space size is the distance between two staff lines.

When changing the staff size of each layout in **Layout Options**, we recommend that you use one of the preset rastral sizes, as these are based on traditional and generally accepted staff sizes that are all widely used in music engraving.

NOTE

The size of staves can affect the size of system objects.

RELATED LINKS

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

[Changing the default staff size](#) on page 602

[Staff spacing](#) on page 620



Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks

You can change the staff size of all staves from the rhythmic position of system/frame breaks onwards in layouts. For example, you can have smaller staves only on pages with more staves, and larger staves on other pages with fewer staves.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks at the positions from which you want to change the staff size.
 - Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.
 - The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system/frame break signposts from which you want to change the staff size.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Space size** in the **Format** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The staff size of all staves in the layout is changed until the next change in staff size or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

By default, the next flow uses the default staff size in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the default staff size](#) on page 602

[Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634

[Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637

[Hiding/Showing system break signposts](#) on page 636

[Hiding/Showing frame break signposts](#) on page 639

Changing the staff size for individual players

You can change the size of all staves belonging to individual players throughout each flow in the current layout only, independently other players' staves. For example, piano accompaniment parts often include the solo instrument on a smaller staff.

You can change the size of staves to a set scale size, expressed as a percentage of the normal staff size in the layout, or set a custom scale.

TIP

If you want to change the staff size to represent an alternative version of a passage, you can instead add an ossia staff, which you can show for specific regions.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only change the size of a single staff at a time.

2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Staff Size > [Staff size]**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
 3. Optional: If you chose **Custom Staff Size**, set the staff size in the **Custom Staff Size** dialog that opens.
-

RESULT

The size of all staves held by the selected player are changed throughout the whole flow in the current layout only.

This also works in combination with the other ways of changing the staff size, such as changing the size of all staves in the layout or changing the size of staves from specific system/frame breaks.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

EXAMPLE



The image shows a musical score for piano. It consists of three staves: a top staff, a middle staff, and a bottom staff. The top staff is significantly smaller than the other two. The music is in a key with three flats (B-flat, E-flat, A-flat) and a common time signature. The top staff contains a melodic line with a slur and an accent mark. The middle and bottom staves contain a piano accompaniment with a steady eighth-note pattern in the right hand and a bass line in the left hand. A dashed line is drawn above the top staff, and the text '8va' is written above it, indicating an octave shift.

A piano part with smaller staff above

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Brackets and braces](#) on page 864

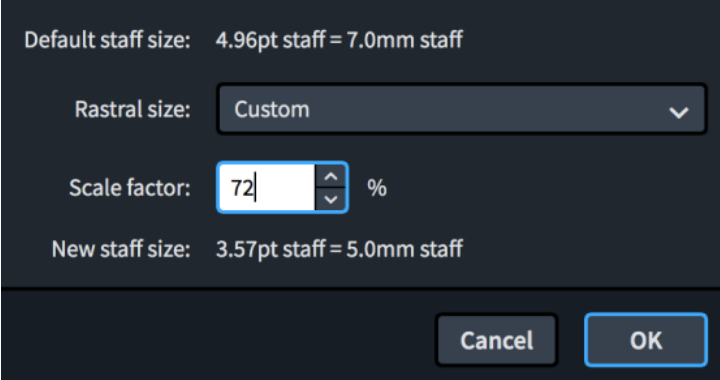
[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Custom Staff Size dialog

The **Custom Staff Size** dialog allows you to change the size of individual staves by a custom scale factor.

- You can open the **Custom Staff Size** dialog by selecting an item on a staff and choosing **Edit > Notations > Staff Size > Custom Staff Size**.



Default staff size: 4.96pt staff = 7.0mm staff

Rastral size: Custom

Scale factor: 72 %

New staff size: 3.57pt staff = 5.0mm staff

Cancel OK

The **Custom Staff Size** dialog contains the following options:

Default staff size

Displays the default size of staves in the current layout. This size is set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

The default staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

Rastral size

Allows you to select the rastral size on which you want to base your custom staff size.

Scale factor

Sets the custom staff size, expressed as a percentage of the selected rastral size.

New staff size

Displays the new custom staff size for the selected staff as a result of the changes you have made in the dialog.

The new staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

Staff spacing

The vertical positioning of staves and systems within frames is known as staff spacing. Staff spacing calculations consider the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

You can change staff spacing in your project at different levels:

- Change the default staff spacing in each layout in **Layout Options**.
- Change the staff spacing between individual staves.

NOTE

- We recommend adjusting the default staff spacing values and/or changing the staff size in layouts before moving individual staves, as in most cases Dorico Elements produces suitable results without the need to move individual staves.

- We recommend that you add extra pages and finish laying out your pages before moving individual staves. Individual staff spacing changes are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes.
 - Moving individual staves/systems vertically does not affect the casting off. If you want to show more/fewer systems in a frame, you can change the casting off by, for example, using frame breaks or setting a fixed number of systems per frame.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
[Staff size](#) on page 617
[Staves](#) on page 1322
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
[Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506
[Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603
[Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance](#) on page 1357
[Changing the staff spacing in galley view](#) on page 623
[Changing the default staff size](#) on page 602
[Margins](#) on page 614
[Casting off](#) on page 629
[Frame breaks](#) on page 636
[Making selections into frames](#) on page 638
[Moving bars to other systems](#) on page 631
[Fixing the number of systems per frame](#) on page 630
[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Per-layout vertical spacing options

Dorico Elements provides multiple options that you can use to control the default vertical spacing and justification of staves and systems in each layout.

- You can access per-layout vertical spacing options by opening the **Layout Options** dialog and clicking **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.

The **Vertical Spacing** page contains the following sections and options:

Ideal Gaps

Contains multiple scenarios that allow you to set the gap you want Dorico Elements to allow between staves and systems in the corresponding context, including the default scaling of these gaps in galley view, as Dorico Elements does not automatically avoid collisions between staves and items in galley view. The options are accompanied by diagrams to help you visualize the contexts to which each option applies.

We recommend setting the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you because Dorico Elements never reduces the gap between staves to less than your set values. Setting smaller values gives Dorico Elements greater flexibility when determining staff spacing, particularly in very full frames, such as reducing the space between staves with no dynamics to allow more space between staves with dynamics. Similarly, we recommend setting vertical spacing options after you have finished inputting notes and items, as this allows you to consider the entire project when setting these options.

Depending on the context, the options are affected by automatic vertical justification in different ways:

- **Staff to staff, Staff group to staff, Staff to staff group, Staff group to staff group, Inter-system gap, and Timecode staff to staff**

These gaps do not apply in frames that are automatically justified.

- **Braced staff to braced staff, Braced staff to unbraced staff, and Ossia staff to staff**

These gaps always apply, including in frames that are automatically justified, because braced and ossia staves are never justified. This includes extra staves.

NOTE

- Divisi staves are vertically justified when they use the **Staff to staff** gap. When they use the **Braced staff to braced staff** gap, the staves in each divisi section use only the gap set for braced staves and are not vertically justified.
- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
- When calculating the number of systems that can fit in each frame in a layout, Dorico Elements considers the height of staves, the minimum gaps between staves, the maximum distances between very high/low notes and staves, and other items that require vertical space, such as pedal lines and tempo marks. However, this calculation happens before horizontal spacing is finalized, which can result in either more or fewer systems being allocated to frames than ideally fit. In such circumstances, you can use fixed casting off settings and system/frame breaks to change which systems appear in frames.

Minimum Gaps

Contains options for the minimum gaps you want Dorico Elements to allow for items in addition to the staff spacing gaps.

- **Automatically resolve collisions between adjacent staves and systems:** When activated, Dorico Elements automatically allows extra space between staves and systems to avoid collisions. When deactivated, Dorico Elements only uses your set gaps for vertical spacing, which produces evenly-spaced staves and systems but with the possibility of collisions between items.
- **Minimum inter-staff gap with content:** Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between staves when items are present.
- **Minimum inter-system gap with content:** Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between systems when items are present.

NOTE

Minimum gaps do not affect casting off. For example, increasing the **Minimum inter-system gap with content** value changes the space above/below systems on a page but does not push systems to later pages. Instead, you can change the ideal gaps.

Vertical Justification

Contains options that allow you to control the frame fullness thresholds above which you want staves and/or systems to justify vertically automatically.

- **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full:** When frames are filled above this threshold, the staves and systems they contain are all automatically vertically justified, meaning they are evenly distributed to fill the height of the frame. Frames filled below this threshold are not automatically justified; instead, staves follow your ideal gap settings. This can leave gaps between the bottom staff/system and the bottom of the frame.

- **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full:** When frames are filled above this threshold, only the distance between systems in the frame is justified. Staves follow your per-layout ideal gap settings. This helps keep a clear distance between systems on very full pages.
- **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold:** When activated, all the staves in a single system taller than the set threshold are vertically justified, which distributes them evenly to fill the height of the frame.

Staff Visibility

Contains options allowing you to control when and which empty staves are hidden in the layout.

- **Hide empty staves:** Allows you to control when empty staves are hidden. For example, it is a common practice to show all staves in the first system, even if some are empty, but this is not always required.
- **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden:** Allows you to control whether individual empty staves belonging to multi-staff instruments can be hidden independently or all multi-staff instrument staves must always be shown.
- **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves:** Allows you to identify specific players whose staves you always want to show, even if their staff is empty on systems where you have hidden empty staves.

RELATED LINKS

- [Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
- [Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603
- [Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506
- [Page formatting](#) on page 598
- [Casting off](#) on page 629
- [Margins](#) on page 614
- [Staff size](#) on page 617
- [Brackets and braces](#) on page 864
- [Staves](#) on page 1322
- [Ossia staves](#) on page 1323
- [Tablature](#) on page 1330
- [Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks](#) on page 606
- [Making selections into systems](#) on page 635
- [Making selections into frames](#) on page 638
- [Changing the vertical position of markers](#) on page 1222
- [Changing the vertical position of timecodes](#) on page 1227

Changing the staff spacing in galley view

You can change the vertical space between staves in galley view in each layout independently, expressed as a percentage of the set ideal gaps. Increasing the gaps between staves in layouts with very high/low notes can be useful because Dorico Elements does not perform automatic collision avoidance in galley view.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff spacing in galley view.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
 4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the value for **In galley view, expand ideal staff gaps to**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Instrument filters](#) on page 445

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

Moving individual staves/systems vertically

You can change the spacing of individual staves, including ossia staves, by changing the vertical position of individual staves and systems independently of your project-wide settings.

IMPORTANT

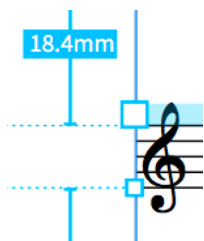
We recommend that you finish casting off before moving individual staves, as individual staff spacing changes are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes.

NOTE

Moving individual staves/systems vertically does not affect the casting off. If you want to show more/fewer systems in a frame, you can change the casting off by, for example, using frame breaks or setting a fixed number of systems per frame.

When **Staff Spacing**  is activated in the Engrave toolbox, the following are shown:

- System spacing handles: Large square handles on the top left corner of the top staff in each system. System spacing handles control the vertical position of whole systems.
- Staff spacing handles: Small square staff handles on the bottom left corner of each staff. Staff spacing handles control the vertical position of individual staves.
- Gap measurements: Lines and highlighted numbers indicating the distances between staves and systems, shown using your preferred unit of measurement.
- Music frame margin highlights: Translucent highlights at the top/bottom of music frames indicating the extent of music frame margins.



System spacing handle, staff spacing handle, and gap measurement in Engrave mode when **Staff Spacing** is activated

PREREQUISITE

Staff Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the following on each staff/system you want to move vertically:

- Staff spacing handle



- System spacing handle



NOTE

- You can switch between having a staff or system spacing handle selected by pressing **Tab**.
- When using the mouse, you can only move one staff/system at a time.



2. Move the selected staves/systems in any of the following ways:

- To move them a standard amount upwards or downwards, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards.
- To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
- To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
- To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
- Click and drag a single staff/system spacing handle upwards/downwards.

RESULT

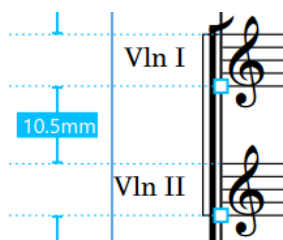
The vertical position of the selected staves/systems is changed. The color of the handles changes to indicate that you have moved them. When you move system handles, both the square handle and the highlighted strip at the top of the system change color.

NOTE

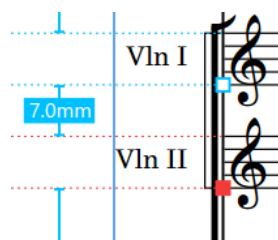
- When **Staff Spacing**  is activated, you cannot select or edit anything other than staff/system spacing handles. To resume normal selection and editing, click **Graphic Editing**  in the Engrave toolbox or return to Write mode.
- You can also click the gap measurement numbers and change the value using any of the supported units of measurement, which are points, millimeters, centimeters, and inches.

You can change your preferred unit of measurement to be used throughout Dorico Elements on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Staff spacing handles at their default positions



The second staff has been moved upwards

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can copy manual changes you have made to the staff spacing on individual pages to other pages in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Frame fullness indicators](#) on page 506
- [Moving multiple systems simultaneously](#) on page 627
- [Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance](#) on page 1357
- [Changing the default music frame margins](#) on page 616
- [Copying staff spacing changes to other pages](#) on page 628
- [Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51
- [Margins](#) on page 614
- [Casting off](#) on page 629
- [Frame breaks](#) on page 636
- [Making selections into frames](#) on page 638
- [Moving bars to other systems](#) on page 631
- [Fixing the number of systems per frame](#) on page 630

Removing individual changes to staff spacing

You can remove changes you have made to the staff/system spacing and reset staff/system spacing handles to their original default positions.

PREREQUISITE

Staff Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the staff/system handles you want to reset to their original positions.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The selected staff/system handles are reset to their original positions.

TIP

You can also reset all staff spacing changes within selected systems, frames, or all staff spacing changes in the layout by choosing one of the options in the **Engrave > Staff Spacing** menu.

Moving multiple systems simultaneously

You can move multiple systems at the same time so that the gaps between each system remain equal. This is also known as “concertina dragging”.

IMPORTANT

We recommend that you add extra pages and finish laying out your pages before moving individual staves. Individual staff spacing changes are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes.

NOTE

- You can only move multiple systems closer together, you cannot use this method to move them further apart.
 - You cannot follow these steps for staff spacing handles on tacets.
 - Moving individual staves/systems vertically does not affect the casting off. If you want to show more/fewer systems in a frame, you can change the casting off by, for example, using frame breaks or setting a fixed number of systems per frame.
-

PREREQUISITE

Staff Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system handle on the highest systems you want to move.



NOTE

When using the mouse, you can only move systems below a single system at a time.

2. Move the selected systems in any of the following ways:
 - To move them downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt-J**.
 - To move them downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-J**.
 - **Alt/Opt**-click and drag the system handle downwards.
-

RESULT

All systems below the selected system, until the bottom of the music frame, are moved closer together. The gaps between each system remain equal.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Staff spacing](#) on page 620
- [Tacets](#) on page 640
- [Casting off](#) on page 629
- [Frame breaks](#) on page 636
- [Making selections into frames](#) on page 638
- [Moving bars to other systems](#) on page 631
- [Fixing the number of systems per frame](#) on page 630

Copying staff spacing changes to other pages

You can copy manual staff spacing changes you have made on individual pages to other pages in the layout.

NOTE

In order to copy staff spacing changes, destination pages must have the same number of staves per system and the same number of systems per frame as the source page.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, select an item on the page whose staff spacing you want to copy.
 2. Choose **Engrave > Staff Spacing > Copy Staff Spacing** to open the **Copy Staff Spacing** dialog.
 3. Optional: Change the page whose staff spacing you want to copy by changing the value for **From page**.
By default, the page on which you selected an item is set in the value field.
 4. Change the first page to which you want to copy staff spacing by changing the value for **To page start**.
 5. Change the last page in the range to which you want to copy staff spacing by changing the value for **To page end**.
 6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Moving individual staves/systems vertically](#) on page 624

Copy Staff Spacing dialog

The **Copy Staff Spacing** dialog allows you to choose pages whose individual staff spacing changes you want to copy and the pages to which you want to copy them.

- You can open the **Copy Staff Spacing** dialog in Engrave mode by choosing **Engrave > Staff Spacing > Copy Staff Spacing**.

TIP

You can assign a key command for opening the **Copy Staff Spacing** dialog on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

The **Copy Staff Spacing** dialog contains the following options:

From page

Allows you to change the page whose staff spacing you want to copy by specifying the page number. If you have an item selected when you open the dialog, that page is set in the value field automatically.

To page start

Allows you to set the first page in the layout to which staff spacing changes are copied.

To page end

Allows you to set the last page in the layout to which staff spacing changes are copied.

For example, if you wanted to copy staff spacing changes you made on the first page to the next three pages, meaning pages two, three, and four, but not to page five and onwards, you would set **From page** to **1**, **To page start** to **2**, and **To page end** to **4**.

Previews show the displayed page number beside each value field, so that if you have changed the displayed page number of pages within the layout you can still identify the page to which you are copying staff spacing changes.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Casting off

“Casting off” is the term used to encompass fixing the layout of pages of music, such as setting the number of systems per page.

When calculating how much music can fit in each system and on each page, Dorico Elements considers multiple aspects of the layout, including note spacing and vertical spacing settings. You can change these settings to change the default casting off in each layout.

In Dorico Elements, you can set fixed numbers of bars per system and systems per music frame throughout each layout independently.

You can control the casting off at a more granular level by moving bars to other systems, inserting system/frame breaks, making selections into systems/frames, and locking/resetting the casting off in the current layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Per-layout note spacing options](#) on page 508

[Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621

[Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634

[Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637

[Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars](#) on page 633

[Moving bars to other systems](#) on page 631

[Locking layouts](#) on page 631

[Resetting casting off](#) on page 632

[Splitting multi-bar rests](#) on page 1281

[Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows](#) on page 608

[Margins](#) on page 614

Fixing the number of bars per system

You can define a fixed number of bars you want included in each system in each layout independently; for example, if you want four bars per system in a lead sheet.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of bars per system.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.

4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of bars per system**.
 5. Change the value in the value field.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The number of bars automatically contained in each system in the selected layouts is changed. If any of the layouts contain two-bar or four-bar repeat regions, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts casting off to ensure phrases are not split across systems.

RELATED LINKS

- [Bar repeats](#) on page 1245
- [Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634
- [Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637
- [Making selections into systems](#) on page 635
- [Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

Fixing the number of systems per frame

You can define a fixed number of systems you want included in each music frame in each layout independently. Because the default page templates have a single music frame per page, fixing the number of systems per frame usually fixes the number of systems per page.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of systems per frame.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of systems per frame**.
 5. Change the value in the value field.
 6. Activate/Deactivate **Scale number of systems by frame height**.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The number of systems automatically contained in each music frame in the selected layouts is changed.

If you activated **Scale number of systems by frame height**, the number of systems contained in each frame is adjusted according to the size of the music frame. For example, pages with smaller frames, such as the first page, contain fewer systems than your casting off setting.



Moving bars to other systems

You can move bars to the next or previous system; for example, if you want specific bars to appear in the same system.

PREREQUISITE

Graphic Editing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item in the bar you want to move to another system.
For example, select an item in the earliest bar you want to move to the next system, or select an item in the last bar you want to move to the previous system.
 2. Move bars to another system in one of the following ways:
 - To move all bars between the start of the current system and the selection to the previous system, press **←** or click **Move to Previous System**  in the **Move Bars Between Systems** section of the Formatting panel.
 - To move all bars between the selection and the end of their current system to the next system, press **→** or click **Move to Next System**  in the **Move Bars Between Systems** section of the Formatting panel.
-

RESULT

The selected bars are moved to the previous or next system. System breaks are inserted at the start and end of each new system.

NOTE

- System breaks inserted at the start of systems have **Wait for next system break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.
 - You can change how many systems are locked as a consequence of moving bars to other systems in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Note Input > Breaks**.
-


RELATED LINKS

- [Making selections into frames](#) on page 638
- [Making selections into systems](#) on page 635
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Locking layouts

You can lock the current casting off throughout individual layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The left zone is shown.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose casting off you want to lock.

2. In the Formatting panel, click **Lock Layout**  in the **Lock Layout** section.
-

RESULT

System and frame breaks are inserted at the start of every system as required to lock the current casting off in the layout open in the music area.

NOTE

- The system and frame breaks have **Wait for next system break** and **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break, frame break, or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system or frame breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.
 - You can assign a key command for **Lock Layout** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Formatting panel](#) on page 504

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[System breaks](#) on page 633

[Frame breaks](#) on page 636

[Casting off](#) on page 629


[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60


Resetting casting off

You can delete all system and frame breaks in individual layouts and return the layouts to their default casting off and spacing settings.

PREREQUISITE

- The left zone is shown.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose casting off you want to reset.
 2. In the Formatting panel, click **Reset Layout**  in the **Lock Layout** section.
-

RESULT

All system and frame breaks in the layout open in the music area are deleted. The layout returns to following its default casting off and spacing settings.

NOTE

- The system and frame breaks have **Wait for next system break** and **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break, frame break, or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system or frame breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.

- System breaks at the start of systems that were created using **Make into System** have **Wait for next system break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. When this property is activated, Dorico Elements creates a system containing all material between that system break and the next system break or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

If you later delete subsequent system breaks, this creates very full, tightly spaced systems. For example, if you delete all subsequent system breaks, all music until the end of the flow is forced into a single system.

- You can also control the content of systems by fixing the number of bars per system in each layout.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Fixing the number of bars per system](#) on page 629


[Splitting multi-bar rests](#) on page 1281

[Signposts](#) on page 450


Inserting system breaks

You can insert system breaks at any rhythmic position; for example, so that musical phrases fit in systems for readability.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- If you want to insert system breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next system.
 2. Insert a system break in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-S**.
 - In the Formatting panel, click **Create System Break**  in the **Format Systems** section.
-

RESULT

A system break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If breaks are disallowed within bars, it snaps to the preceding barline. All notations after the system break are moved to the next system.

NOTE

If you insert a system break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico Elements does not automatically move the system break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the system break.

RELATED LINKS


[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

- [Formatting panel](#) on page 504
- [Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars](#) on page 633
- [Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279
- [Splitting multi-bar rests](#) on page 1281
- [Locking layouts](#) on page 631
- [Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks](#) on page 606
- [Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks](#) on page 1312
- [Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks](#) on page 618

Making selections into systems

You can force all musical material between two selected rhythmic positions into a single system; for example, if you want specific bars to appear in the same system.

PREREQUISITE


- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- The left zone is shown.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position that you want to be the start of the system.

NOTE

We recommend that you select noteheads or barlines. Selecting other items, such as slurs, can cause system breaks to be inserted earlier/later than you might have intended.

2. **Ctrl/Cmd**-click one of the following:
 - A notehead that you want to be at the end of the system
 - An item that you want to be at the start of the next system
3. In the **Format Systems** section of the Formatting panel, click **Make into System** .

RESULT

A fixed system is created by inserting system breaks at the start/end of your selection. The system contains all musical material between the two selected items.

If breaks are disallowed within bars, the first break snaps to the barline before the earliest selected item, while the second break snaps to the barline after the last selected item.

If breaks are allowed within bars, the content of the system depends on your selections.

- If you selected items, such as barlines or slurs, the start of your first selected item is positioned at the start of the system, and the end of your last selected item is positioned at the start of the next system.
- If you selected noteheads, the last selected notehead is also included in the system, rather than being positioned at the start of the next system.
- If you selected ties, all musical material between the first and last notes tie chains is included in the system, regardless of where in the tie chains you made selections.

NOTE

The system break inserted at the start of the selection has **Wait for next system break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico

Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.

Deactivating **Wait for next system break** allows Dorico Elements to cast off subsequent music as normal.

Hiding/Showing system break signposts

You can hide/show system break signposts at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Signposts > System Breaks**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding non-printing elements](#) on page 437

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

Deleting system breaks

You can delete system breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

System break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the system break signposts of the system breaks you want to delete.
 2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Resetting casting off](#) on page 632

Frame breaks

Frame breaks occur when musical material reaches the right page margin at the bottom of a frame and must continue on a new system in the next frame in the music frame chain, which is usually on the next page. Dorico Elements automatically arranges music in frames so that systems are correctly spaced and legible, but you can also control frame breaks manually; for example, to insert page turns at specific positions in part layouts.

Frame breaks that you have inserted manually are indicated by signposts, which you can hide/show at any time. They are also layout-specific, meaning each layout can have frame breaks at different rhythmic positions.



Frame break signpost, selected

NOTE

- By default, system/frame breaks snap to the barline before the earliest selected item. You can change whether breaks are allowed at rhythmic positions within bars.
- Frame breaks at the start of frames that were created using **Make into Frame** have **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. When this property is activated, Dorico Elements creates a frame containing all material between that frame break and the next frame break.

If you later delete subsequent frame breaks, this creates very full frames with tightly spaced, or overlapping, systems. For example, if you delete all subsequent frame breaks, all music until the end of the flow is forced into a single frame.

- You can also control the content of music frames by fixing the number of systems per music frame in each layout.


RELATED LINKS

- [Staff spacing](#) on page 620
- [Frames](#) on page 654
- [Music frame chains](#) on page 662
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Fixing the number of systems per frame](#) on page 630
- [Signposts](#) on page 450


Inserting frame breaks

You can insert frame breaks at any rhythmic position; for example, to create page turns at appropriate places in the current layout.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- If you want to insert frame breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next frame.
2. Insert a frame break in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-F**.
 - In the Formatting panel, click **Create Frame Break**  in the **Format Music Frames** section.

RESULT

A frame break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If breaks are disallowed within bars, it snaps to the preceding barline. All notations after the frame break are moved to the next music frame.

NOTE

If you insert a frame break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico Elements does not automatically move the frame break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the frame break.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Formatting panel](#) on page 504

[Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars](#) on page 633

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

[Splitting multi-bar rests](#) on page 1281

[Locking layouts](#) on page 631

[Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks](#) on page 606

[Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks](#) on page 1312

[Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks](#) on page 618

Making selections into frames

You can force all musical material between two selected rhythmic positions into a single frame; for example, if you want specific bars to appear on the same page.

PREREQUISITE


- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- The left zone is shown.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position that you want to be the start of the frame.

NOTE

We recommend that you select noteheads or barlines. Selecting other items, such as slurs, can cause frame breaks to be inserted earlier/later than you might have intended.

2. **Ctrl/Cmd**-click one of the following:
 - A notehead that you want to be at the end of the frame
 - An item that you want to be at the start of the next frame
3. In the **Format Music Frames** section of the Formatting panel, click **Make into Frame** .

RESULT

A fixed frame is created by inserting frame breaks at the start/end of your selection. The frame contains all musical material between the two selected items.

If breaks are disallowed within bars, the first break snaps to the barline before the earliest selected item, while the second break snaps to the barline after the last selected item.

If breaks are allowed within bars, the content of the frame depends on your selections.

- If you selected items, such as barlines or slurs, the beginning your first selected item is positioned at the start of the frame, and the end of your last selected item is positioned at the start of the next frame.
- If you selected noteheads, the last selected notehead is also included in the frame, rather than being positioned at the start of the next frame.
- If you selected ties, all musical material between the first and last notes tie chains is included in the frame, regardless of where in the tie chains you made selections.

NOTE

The frame break inserted at the start of the selection has **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the frame until the next frame break, if you later delete subsequent frame breaks, this can create very full frames with tightly spaced, or overlapping, systems.

Deactivating **Wait for next frame break** allows Dorico Elements to cast off subsequent music as normal.

Hiding/Showing frame break signposts

You can hide/show frame break signposts at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Signposts > Frame Breaks**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding non-printing elements](#) on page 437

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

Deleting frame breaks

You can delete frame breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

Frame break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the frame break signposts of the frame breaks you want to delete.
 2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Resetting casting off](#) on page 632

Tacets

Tacet is the indication used to show that a player does not play anything in an entire flow, which might be a movement in a symphony or cue in a film score. In Dorico Elements, you can generate tacets automatically.

Dorico Elements shows tacets for flows in part layouts when the following conditions are met:

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the page template frame chain in the part layout.
- You have chosen to show tacets in the part layout.




2. Andante

Tacet


3. Menuetto



An extract of a part layout where the player is tacet in the second flow

In Engrave mode, tacets behave like systems, meaning they have their own staff spacing handle when **Staff Spacing**  is activated. This allows you to move individual tacets and their flow headings upwards/downwards. You can also insert system and frame breaks at the start of tacets.

NOTE

We do not recommend that you use **Copy Staff Spacing** and **Lock Frame**  on pages where tacets are the first or last system in frames. Because tacets do not contain any bars, Dorico Elements cannot insert system or frame breaks at the ends of tacets in order to lock the frame contents.

You can change the text shown in tacets and the margin above/below them in each layout independently.

You can further customize the project-wide appearance and design of tacets by editing the **Tacet** paragraph style in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172

[Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page](#) on page 609

[Staff spacing](#) on page 620

[System breaks](#) on page 633
[Frame breaks](#) on page 636
[Flow headings](#) on page 651
[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Hiding/Showing tacets

You can hide/show tacets in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show empty bars or multi-bar rests in some layouts to allow those players to add in notes on those staves later.

PREREQUISITE

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the page template frame chain in the part layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tacets.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Tacets** section, activate/deactivate **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Tacets are shown in the selected layouts when **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned** is activated and the prerequisite criteria are also met.

When it is deactivated, any flows to which the player is not assigned do not appear in the layout. When the player is assigned to those flows, all bars in the flow are shown in the part, split into empty bars and multi-bar rests as appropriate for the flow.

RELATED LINKS

[Multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279
[Assigning players to flows](#) on page 172
[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

Editing tacet text

You can change the text shown in tacets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose tacet text you want to edit.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Tacets** section, enter the text you want in the **Tacet text** field.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The text shown in all tacets in the selected layouts is changed.

Changing the margins above/below tacets

You can change the margins both above/below tacets in each layout independently; for example, if you want smaller gaps between flow headings and tacets in some layouts to facilitate page turns better.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below tacets.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Tacets** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Margin above tacet**
 - **Margin below tacet**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Changing the value for **Margin above tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever precedes them.

Changing the value for **Margin below tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever follows them.

RELATED LINKS

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Margins](#) on page 614

[Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621

Condensing

Condensing is the process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot enable automatic condensing as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, if you import or open a project that contains layouts with condensing enabled, those staves remain condensed.

NOTE

- You cannot select anything on condensed staves.
- Condensing is never enabled in galley view, so you can switch to galley view to see all staves separately. This does not disable condensing in the current layout.
- Having condensing enabled in any layout in a project can cause Dorico Elements to operate more slowly, due to the large number of calculations involved.

RELATED LINKS

[Staff labels on condensed staves](#) on page 1320

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Divisi](#) on page 1329

Part formatting propagation

The propagation of part formatting involves copying the layout options and system formatting that determine the layouts of pages in specific part layouts and applying them to other part layouts. This can save time when formatting similar parts.

System formatting includes the positions of system and frame breaks, but also note spacing changes that affect the horizontal space that notes require.

In Dorico Elements, you can copy layout options and system formatting both together and independently of each other from a selected source layout to other destination layouts. For example, for source layouts whose formatting relies primarily on their **Casting Off** settings in **Layout Options**, it is likely that copying only their layout options is sufficient to produce the required formatting in the destination layouts without adding system/frame breaks on every system.

You can also copy the layout-specific property settings from the layout currently open in the music area to all other layouts in which those items appear.

NOTE

- Part formatting propagation is only available for part layouts. You cannot propagate part formatting from/to full score or custom score layouts.
- We do not recommend using layouts with multiple music frame chains as either source or destination layouts as you can get unexpected results.

Copying part formatting to other layouts


You can copy all the formatting from one part layout to other part layouts; for example, to save time if multiple part layouts in your project require similar formatting. You can include layout

options, such as page size and margins, and other page formatting, such as system and frame breaks.

NOTE

- Part formatting propagation is only available for part layouts. You cannot propagate part formatting from/to full score or custom score layouts.
 - We do not recommend using layouts with multiple music frame chains as either source or destination layouts as you can get unexpected results.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings**  and choose **Propagate Part Formatting** to open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog.

TIP

You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.

3. In the **Copy formatting from** list, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.
By default, the layout whose card you used to open the dialog is selected.
 4. In the **Propagate formatting to** list, select the part layouts to which you want to copy part formatting.
You can use the selection options in the action bar, click and drag across multiple layouts, **Shift**-click adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual layouts.
 5. Activate/Deactivate **Include layout options**.
 6. Activate/Deactivate **Include system formatting**.
 7. Click **OK** to copy part formatting to the selected layouts and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

Part formatting from the selected source layout is copied to the selected destination layouts.

- If you activated **Include layout options**, layout options are copied from the source layout to the destination layouts.
- If you activated **Include system formatting**, Dorico Elements copies the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts.


TIP

- If the formatting of the source layout relies primarily on its **Casting Off** settings in **Layout Options**, it is likely that only activating **Include layout options** is sufficient to produce very similar formatting in the destination layouts without adding system/frame breaks on every system.
 - You can assign a key command for **Propagate Part Formatting** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. You can use this key command in any mode.
-

Propagate Part Formatting dialog

The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog allows you to copy the page formatting and layout options from a source layout to destination layouts.

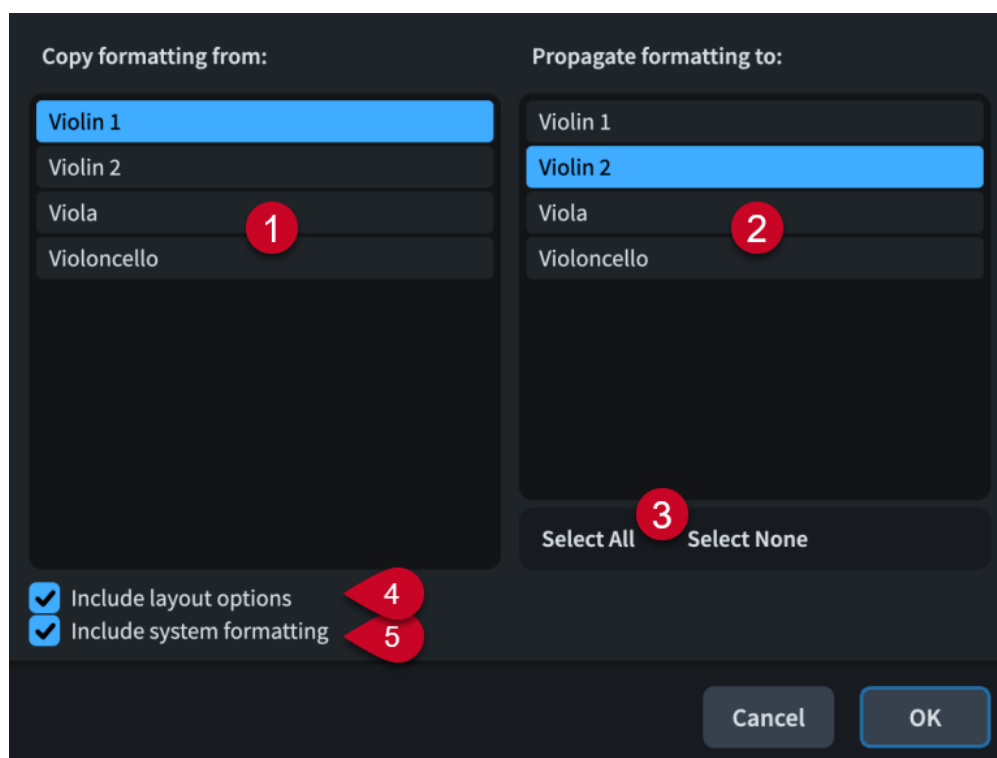
You can open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- In the **Layouts** panel, select a part layout, then click **Layout Settings**  in the action bar and choose **Propagate Part Formatting**. This automatically selects that layout as the source layout in the **Copy formatting from** list.

TIP

You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.

- Choose **Setup > Propagate Part Formatting**.



The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 Copy formatting from

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can only select a single part layout as the source layout.

2 Propagate formatting to

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can select multiple part layouts as destination layouts.

3 Selection options

Allow you to select/deselect all the part layouts in the **Propagate formatting to** list.

4 Include layout options

Allows you to copy layout options relating to part formatting from the source layout to the destination layouts. These options include page size, page margins, the default page

template set, space size, vertical spacing, note spacing, casting off, multi-bar rest settings, and staff labels.

5 Include system formatting

Allows you to copy the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts. Dorico Elements achieves this by copying system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes, inputting additional system and frame breaks as required, and deleting any existing system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes in the destination layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Layouts panel \(Setup mode\)](#) on page 117

Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains

Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific, meaning that by default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains. You can copy the properties set on notes and items to all other layouts and frame chains in which they appear; for example, to show gradual dynamics with the same style in part layouts after changing their style in the full score layout.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes or items whose properties you want to copy to other layouts. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

Only the properties that are available in the current mode are copied.

2. Choose **Edit > Propagate Properties**.

RESULT

All properties set on the selected notes/items that are available in the current mode are copied to all layouts and frame chains in which those notes/items appear. For example, if you selected slurs in Write mode, their staff-relative placement and design settings are copied. If you selected them in Engrave mode, their slur end and control point positions are also copied.

TIP

If you know in advance that you want your changes to affect all layouts and frame chains, you can change the property scope before changing property settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Local vs. global properties](#) on page 664

[Resetting the appearance of items](#) on page 436

[Resetting the position of items](#) on page 436

Page templates

Page templates in Dorico Elements allow you to achieve consistent page formatting by applying the same arrangements of frames to multiple pages and in different layouts.

NOTE

You can set the page size, margins, page orientation, and staff size for each layout in **Layout Options**.

All pages in your scores and parts inherit their default formatting from page templates.

Dorico Elements provides different types of page templates so that there is appropriate page formatting for first pages independently of subsequent pages, as the first page typically includes additional information, such as the title, composer, and copyright. Dorico Elements uses tokens to display this additional information.

Page templates are contained in page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides separate page template sets for full score and part layouts. Page template sets are automatically applied to every layout that you create.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page templates or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.
- Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides.

RELATED LINKS

- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651
- [Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
- [Flow headings](#) on page 651
- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Applying page template sets to layouts](#) on page 601
- [Page formatting](#) on page 598
- [Project templates](#) on page 77

Page template sets

In Dorico Elements, page templates are provided as parts of page template sets. Page template sets group page templates and flow headings together, so there is suitable page formatting available for all possible situations in your project.

New projects contain the following page template sets by default:

- **Default Full Score:** Used for full score and custom score layouts by default.
- **Default Part:** Used for part layouts by default.

The default page template sets contain page templates for first (**First**) and subsequent (**Default**) pages.

Page template sets also contain flow headings that allow you to show flow titles above the start of each flow automatically, including when they start on the same page as a previous flow. The default page template sets each contain a single flow heading.

The default page template sets are applied automatically to the appropriate layouts in each new project. You can apply different page template sets to each layout independently.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page template sets or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

RELATED LINKS

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Applying page template sets to layouts](#) on page 601

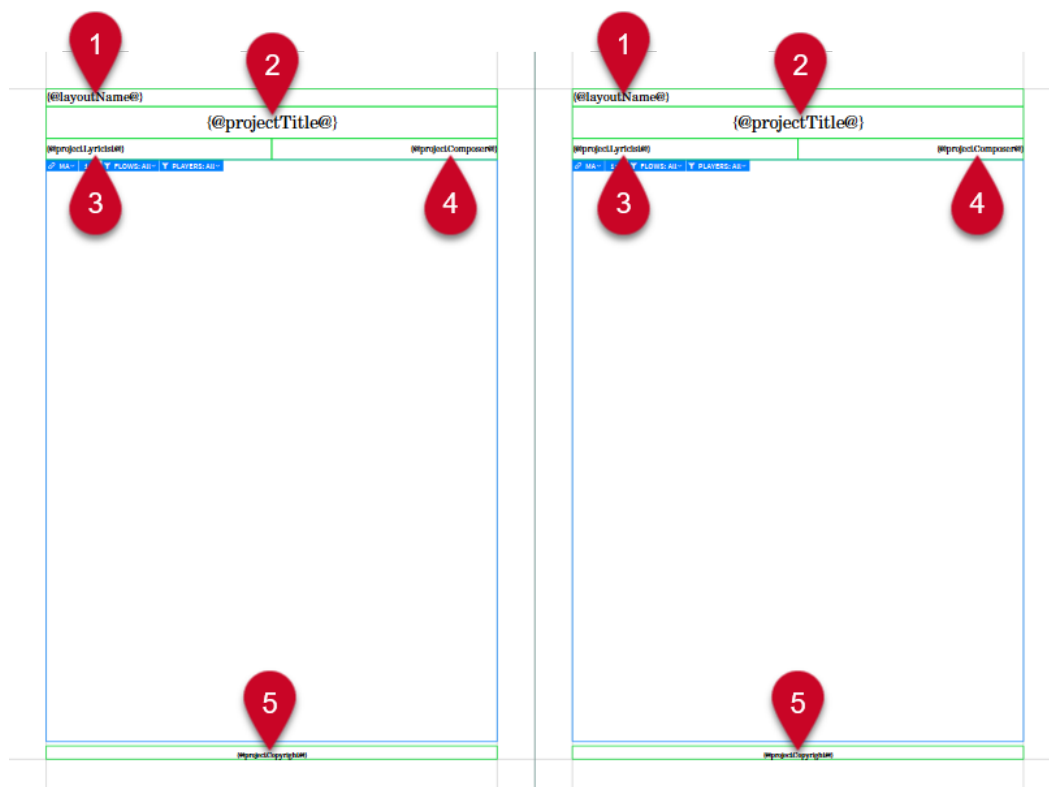
Types of page templates

Page template sets contain different types of page templates, which are used in different circumstances. For example, **First** page templates are usually used for the first page of music in a layout.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of page templates:

First

A page template that is usually used for the first page of music in a layout. It contains a single large music frame and multiple text frames to display information, such as the project title and composer.



First page template open in the page template editor

The **First** page template contains the following tokens in text frames:

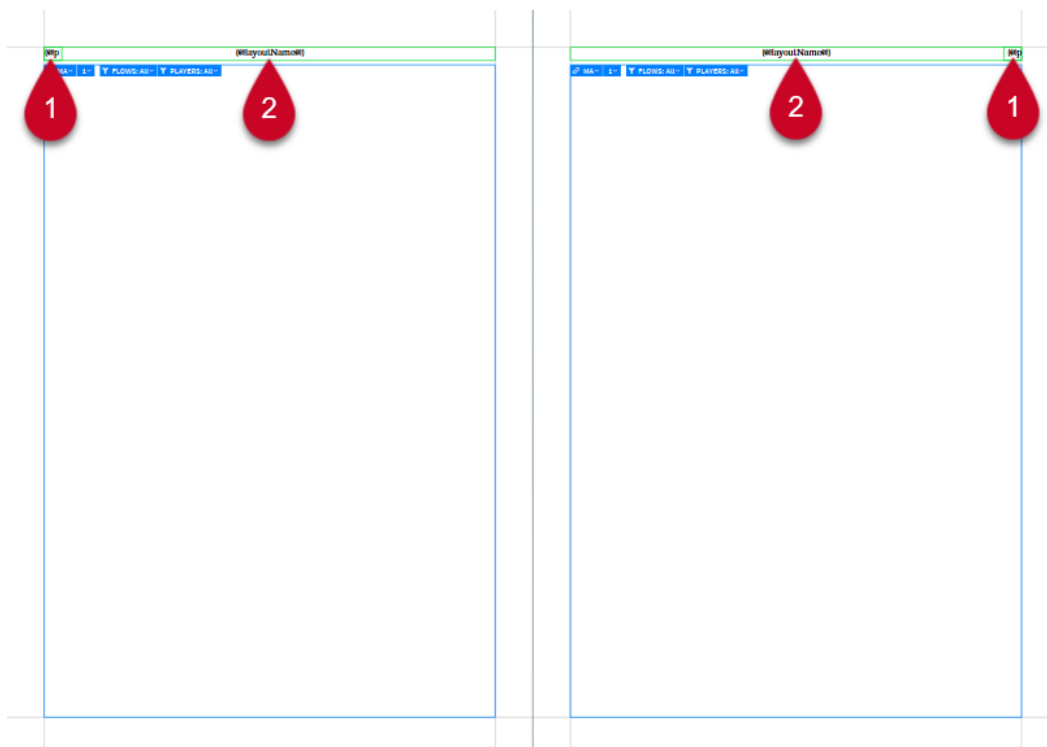
- 1 **Layout name (Default Part page template set only)**
- 2 **Project title**
- 3 **Project lyricist**
- 4 **Project composer**
- 5 **Project copyright**

TIP

You can edit the formatting of the paragraph styles used for tokens on page templates in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog. For example, layout names on **First** page templates use the **Layout name** paragraph style by default.

Default

A page template that is usually used for the second page of music onwards. It contains a single large music frame and text frames to show the running header and page number.



Default page template open in the page template editor

The **Default** page template contains the following tokens in text frames:

- 1 Page number**
- 2 Default Full Score** page template set: **Flow title** (optionally **Project title** for projects created from the Hub with **Project will use multiple flows** deactivated)
Default Part page template set: **Layout name**

TIP

You can edit the formatting of the paragraph styles used for tokens on page templates in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog. For example, flow titles and layout names on **Default** page templates use the **Header** paragraph style by default.

RELATED LINKS

- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Page template sets](#) on page 647
- [Changing when the First page template is used](#) on page 610
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001
- [Changing flow titles](#) on page 188
- [Flow headings](#) on page 651
- [Hub](#) on page 69

Removing page template overrides

You can remove overrides that you have made to individual pages and return them to following the page template format.

Page template overrides include editing the title or running header on individual pages, rather than by changing the contents of fields in the **Project Info** dialog.

Removing overrides from empty pages deletes them from the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose page template overrides you want to remove.
 2. Optional: If you want to remove overrides from individual pages, select items on those pages.
 3. Remove page template overrides in one of the following ways:
 - To remove overrides from selected pages only, choose **Engrave > Remove Page Override(s)**.
 - To remove overrides from all pages, choose **Engrave > Remove All Page Overrides**.
-

RESULT

Any overrides you made to the page template format are removed from either the selected pages only or from all pages in the layout currently open in the music area. Empty pages that are considered overrides are deleted.

If you removed overrides from selected pages only, any other pages with overrides in the layout are unaffected.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

[Frames](#) on page 654

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Customizing flow headings](#) on page 652

Flow headings

Flow headings allow you to show the titles of flows immediately above their first system automatically. They function like templates, in much the same way as page templates, allowing the same flow heading formatting to be applied to multiple flows in different layouts.

Flow headings exist as part of page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides one flow heading in each page template set, which contains tokens to display the flow number and flow title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”. This is used automatically for all flow headings.

By default, flow headings use the **Flow Title** paragraph style, which you can edit in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

You can change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles.

3. Menuetto



A flow heading above the third flow in a part layout

Any changes you make in the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog are automatically reflected on the pages that use those flow headings. For example, if you delete a token, that token is removed from all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set, so long as the pages on which the flow headings appear do not have page template overrides.

Flow headings are automatically inserted inside music frames above the first system of the flow to which they apply, meaning they do not have a fixed vertical position on the page like other frames and follow the music if it moves. They also occupy vertical space within music frames. You can change the margins for the space above and below flow headings.

NOTE

Changing individual flow headings in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, deleting a token from a flow heading on one page, rather than in the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog. Pages with page template overrides no longer get updated if you edit the flow heading and are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

RELATED LINKS

[Tacets](#) on page 640

[Hiding/Showing flow headings](#) on page 611

[Changing the margins above/below flow headings](#) on page 615

[Hiding/Showing information above flow headings](#) on page 611

[Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651

[Margins](#) on page 614

[Frames](#) on page 654

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Adding titles](#) on page 997

Customizing flow headings

You can change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles. This affects all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set; for example, customizing the flow heading in a part layout updates flow headings in all other part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open a layout that uses the page template set containing the flow heading you want to customize.
 2. Choose **Engrave > Edit Flow Heading** to open the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog.
 3. Change the tokens included in the flow heading.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

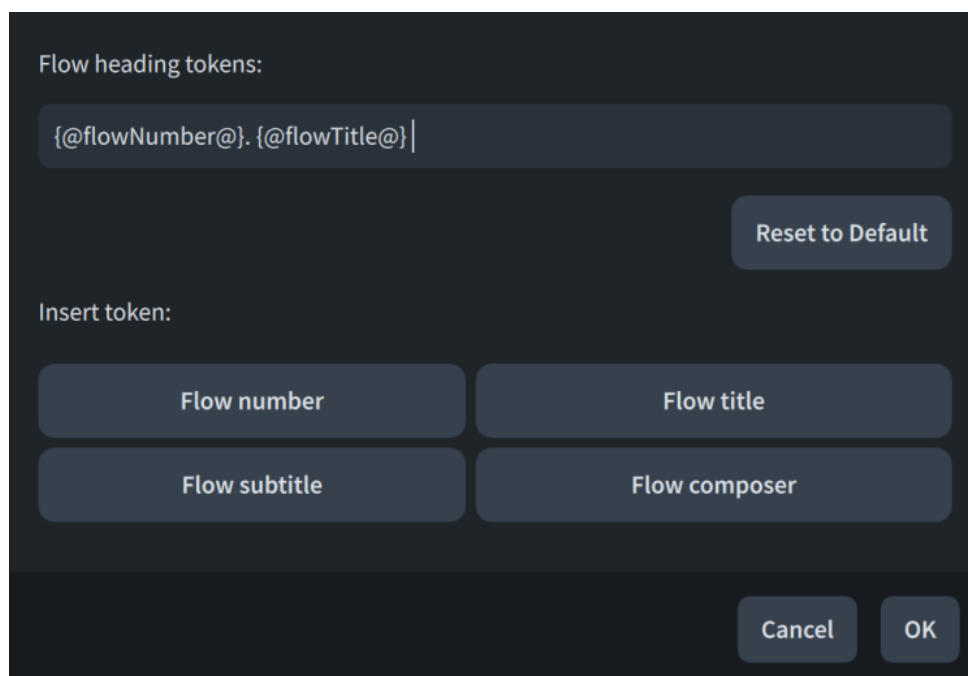
RELATED LINKS

- [Switching between layouts](#) on page 43
- [Page template sets](#) on page 647
- [Applying page template sets to layouts](#) on page 601
- [Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Tokens](#) on page 655

Edit Flow Heading dialog

The **Edit Flow Heading** dialog allows you to change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles. This affects all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set.

- You can open the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog in Engrave mode by choosing **Engrave > Edit Flow Heading**.



The **Edit Flow Heading** dialog contains the following options:

Flow heading tokens

Displays the tokens included in the flow heading. You can enter text directly into this field, and click tokens to add them automatically.

Reset to Default

Resets the tokens in the flow heading.

Insert token

Allows you to add tokens to the flow heading.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave mode](#) on page 502
- [Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651
- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Tokens](#) on page 655

[Export File Names dialog](#) on page 588

Frames

Dorico uses boxes called frames to position music, additional text, and graphics inside the margins of pages. In Dorico Elements, you cannot input or edit frames, but frames on page templates control the formatting of pages in your project.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of frames:

Music frames

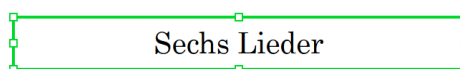
Music frames display the music of selected players and flows or blank staves.



A music frame displaying the start of a piano piece

Text frames

Text frames display text, which you can enter directly or by using tokens.



A text frame displaying a project title, "Sechs Lieder"

Graphics frames

Graphics frames display the images that you load into them, which can be in a variety of formats.



A graphics frame with image loaded

EXAMPLE

The screenshot shows a page from a Dorico project. At the top, there are two decorative graphics of a branch with blue berries, one in the top-left and one in the top-right. Between them is a text frame containing the dedication "A Mme. Aline van Bürentzen" and the title "ESQUISSES" in a large, bold, serif font. Below the title is another text frame with the composer's name "Julie Reisserová". A flow heading "I" is positioned above the music frame. The music frame itself contains a piano score for "Allegro deciso" with a tempo marking of quarter note = 138. The score is in 3/4 time and consists of three measures. The first two measures are in 3/4 time, and the third measure is in 4/4 time. The piano part is marked with dynamics *f sfz*, *sfz*, and *mf*. The music frame is outlined in blue, and the text frames are outlined in green. A blue bar at the top of the music frame contains the text "MA 1" and "FLOWS: All PLAYERS: All".

The first page of a piano piece. It contains a music frame, text frames for the title, dedication, and composer, a flow heading frame inside the top of the music frame, and graphics frames in the top corners.

RELATED LINKS

- [Project window in Engrave mode](#) on page 502
- [Flows in Dorico](#) on page 20
- [Layouts in Dorico](#) on page 24
- [Frame breaks](#) on page 636
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Page templates](#) on page 647
- [Flow headings](#) on page 651
- [Changing page margins](#) on page 601

Tokens

Tokens are codes that you can use as substitutes for information stored in your project, such as titles, composers, and the time and date. This can reduce the risk of mistakes or outdated information appearing in your project. Tokens are also known as “wildcards” or “text codes”.

For example, if you use a token for the title of your project, you can change the project title in the **Project Info** dialog as often as you want, and the project title in every layout in your project is updated automatically.

Tokens can refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog, including for the whole project or each flow individually. Tokens can also refer to the current time and date or the time and date the project was last saved.

NOTE

- You can only use tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in text items. Full text frame functionality is only available in Dorico Pro, but we have included the available tokens for your reference.
- Flow tokens refer to the nearest flow below the top edge of their text frame and on the same page. When the top edge of a text frame containing a flow token is in line with or above the top staff line of the first staff in a system, it then refers to that flow.

You can specify the flow number to which you want flow tokens to refer, such as **{@flow2title@}**. This always shows the specified flow, regardless of the token's position.

You can see the flow number of each flow in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.

- You can access all the available tokens from the context menu when the cursor is inside a text frame. In the context menu, tokens are organized into submenus.
-

The following tokens are available in Dorico Elements:

General tokens

Description	Token
Project file name	{@projectfilename@}
Path to the project's save location, including the project file name	{@projectfilepath@}
Total duration of the project in minutes and seconds, using smart quotes	{@projectDuration@}
Total duration of the project in minutes and seconds, using straight quotes	{@projectDurationStraightQuotes@}
Total duration of the project in minutes and seconds, using primes	{@projectDurationPrimes@}

Player tokens

Description	Token
Player list	{@playerlist@}
Player names	{@playernames@}

Layout tokens

Description	Token
Layout name	{@layoutname@}
Layout number, as set in the Layouts panel in Setup mode	{@layoutnumber@}

Description	Token
Layout transposition	{@layouttransposition@}
NOTE	
Uses your instrument language setting.	

Staff label tokens

Staff label	Token
Full staff labels of the players in the current layout	{@staffLabelsFull@}
Abbreviated staff labels of the players in the current layout	{@staffLabelsShort@}

NOTE

- You can use staff label tokens as an alternative way to name part layouts, instead of using the default **{@layoutName@}** token shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts.
 - Staff label tokens might not exactly match the appearance of staff labels shown before initial barlines; however, staff label tokens respect your per-layout options for how transpositions appear in staff labels.
-

Music symbol tokens

Music symbol	Token
Flat accidental: \flat	{@flat@}
Sharp accidental: \sharp	{@sharp@}
Natural accidental: \natural	{@natural@}
Treble clef (G clef)	{@gClef@}
Bass clef (F clef)	{@fClef@}
Alto clef (C clef)	{@cClef@}
Fermata above	{@U+E4C0@}

TIP

- This list is not comprehensive, as you can enter the code point for any SMuFL symbol within a token. You can find the necessary code points in the SMuFL specification online.

- Music symbol tokens in text frames automatically use the **Music text** character style, which is set to Bravura Text by default.
 - You can include music symbol tokens in fields in the **Project Info** dialog. For example, if you enter **Symphony in B_♭ major** into the **Title** field, the title displayed in text frames using the corresponding title token is Symphony in B_♭ major.
 - You can also enter music symbols in text items and text frames using the **Insert Music Text** dialog.
-

Project/Flow information tokens

Field in the Project Info dialog	Token for Project page	Token for Flow pages
Title	{@projecttitle@}	{@flowtitle@}
Subtitle	{@projectsubtitle@}	{@flowsubtitle@}
Dedication	{@projectdedication@}	{@flowdedication@}
Composer	{@projectcomposer@}	{@flowcomposer@}
Arranger	{@projectarranger@}	{@flowarranger@}
Lyricist	{@projectlyricist@}	{@flowlyricist@}
Artist	{@projectartist@}	{@flowartist@}
Copyist	{@projectcopyist@}	{@flowcopyist@}
Publisher	{@projectpublisher@}	{@flowpublisher@}
Editor	{@projecteditor@}	{@floweditor@}
Copyright	{@projectcopyright@}	{@flowcopyright@}
Work number	{@projectworknumber@}	{@flowworknumber@}
Composer dates	{@projectcomposerdates@}	{@flowcomposerdates@}
Composition year	{@projectcompositionyear@}	{@flowcompositionyear@}
Other information	{@projectotherinfo@}	{@flowotherinfo@}

Flow tokens

Per-flow token function	Token
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the project	<code>{@flownumber@}</code>
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the current layout	<code>{@flowInLayoutNumber@}</code>
Flow number of the current flow shown in lower case Roman numerals, such as iii or xvi	<code>{@flowNumberRomanLower@}</code>
Flow number of the current flow shown in upper case Roman numerals, such as III or XVI	<code>{@flowNumberRomanUpper@}</code>
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using smart quotes	<code>{@flowDuration@}</code>
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using straight quotes	<code>{@flowDurationStraightQuotes@}</code>
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using primes	<code>{@flowDurationPrimes@}</code>
Duration of the specified flow “n” in minutes and seconds, such as <code>{@flow3Duration@}</code>	<code>{@flownDuration@}</code> , <code>{@flownDurationStraightQuotes@}</code> , or <code>{@flownDurationPrimes@}</code>

Page number tokens

Page number token function	Token
Page number	<code>{@page@}</code>
Total number of pages in the layout	<code>{@pageCount@}</code>
Number of this page within the current flow, counting from 1 for the first page of the flow and including pages with no displayed page number	<code>{@flowPage@}</code>
Total number of pages in the current flow	<code>{@flowPageCount@}</code>
The displayed page number on which the specified flow “n” begins, such as <code>{@flow3FirstPage@}</code>	<code>{@flownFirstPage@}</code>

NOTE

{@flowPage@} and **{@flowPageCount@}** tokens only consider the flow that is active at the beginning of the first system of the music frame closest to the top left corner of the page on which the tokens are used.

Time/Date tokens: project last saved

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	{@projectdate@}
Four-digit year	2017	{@projectdateyear@}
Two-digit year	17	{@projectdateyearshort@}
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	{@projectdatemonth@}
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	{@projectdatemonthshort@}
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	{@projectdatemonthnum@}
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	{@projectdateday@}
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	{@projectdatedayshort@}
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	{@projectdatedaynum@}
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	{@projectdateymd@}
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	{@projectdatemdy@}
Day month year	31 December 2017	{@projectdatedmy@}
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	{@projectdatetime@}
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	{@projectdatetimeHHMM@}
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	{@projectdatetimeHHMMSS@}

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	{@projectdatetimehour24@}
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	{@projectdatetimehour12@}
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	{@projectdatetimeminute@}
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	{@projectdatetimesecond@}

Time/Date tokens: current time and date

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	{@date@}
Four-digit year	2017	{@dateyear@}
Two-digit year	17	{@dateyearshort@}
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	{@datemonth@}
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	{@datemonthshort@}
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	{@datemonthnum@}
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	{@dateday@}
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	{@datedayshort@}
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	{@datedaynum@}
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	{@dateymd@}
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	{@datemdy@}
Day month year	31 December 2017	{@datedmy@}
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	{@datetime@}

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	<code>{@datetimeHHMM@}</code>
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	<code>{@datetimeHHMMSS@}</code>
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	<code>{@datetimehour24@}</code>
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	<code>{@datetimehour12@}</code>
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	<code>{@datetimeminute@}</code>
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	<code>{@datetimesecond@}</code>

RELATED LINKS

- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187
- [Insert Music Text dialog](#) on page 391
- [Renumbering layouts](#) on page 180
- [Reordering flows](#) on page 173
- [Instrument transpositions in staff labels](#) on page 1314
- [Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
- [Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178
- [Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000
- [Exporting text](#) on page 102
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Music frame chains

A music frame chain is a collection of music frames that show the same selection of music in a set order, often in sequence. Music frame chains can include any number of frames, including only a single music frame.

The default page templates contain a single frame chain that is set to display all flows and all players in the layout. Therefore, Dorico Elements automatically creates enough pages and frames to display all flows in all the layouts that use those page templates.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot create new frame chains or change the flows and players assigned to frame chains; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

RELATED LINKS

- [Page templates](#) on page 647
- [Layouts in Dorico](#) on page 24

Properties

Properties are settings that apply to individual notes and items and allow you to edit them, such as by changing their appearance or position. You can access properties in the Properties panel.

Properties can affect items only in the current layout and frame chain, known as “local properties”, or in all layouts and frame chains, known as “global properties”.


Many properties also have equivalent default settings available that control the appearance or position of all instances of the corresponding type of note or notation. You can access the available default settings in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Properties panel

The Properties panel provides options that allow you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode and Engrave mode.

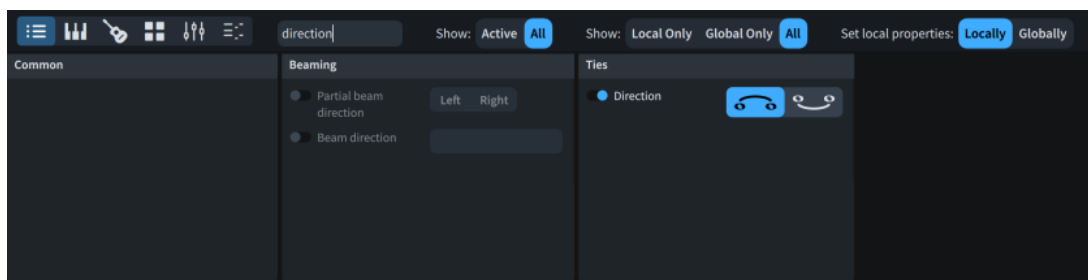
- You can show the Properties panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Properties**  in the lower zone toolbar.

The Properties panel contains a group of properties for each notation item. When you select a note or item in the music area, the Properties panel displays the groups and options that you might require to edit the selected note or item. If there are more available groups than can fit in the panel simultaneously, you can scroll to the right/left along the displayed groups.

All the properties that are available in the Properties panel in Write mode are also available in Engrave mode, but additional properties in Engrave mode allow you to edit items in more detail.

NOTE

- If you select multiple different types of notation items, only the groups that they have in common are displayed. For example, if you select a slur, the **Common** and **Slurs** groups are displayed in the Properties panel. However, if you select a slur and a note, only the **Common** group is displayed.
- If the property scope is set to **Locally**, changing local properties only affects the current layout and frame chain. You can set the property scope to **Globally** if you want subsequent changes to local properties to affect all layouts and frame chains. You can also copy property changes to other layouts and frame chains later.
- In Write mode, you can only change the properties of complete notes and items. For example, you can only change the line style of whole pedal lines, even if they extend across multiple systems. In Engrave mode, you can change individual parts of notes and items separately; for example, the curvature direction of a single tie within a tie chain.
- You can activate properties by clicking their activation switch or property name.



Properties panel in Write mode, filtered by a search term

The Properties panel toolbar contains the following options:

Search

Allows you to filter properties according to your entry.

Show (active status)

Allows you to filter properties according to their activated status.

- **Active:** Shows only activated properties.
- **All:** Shows all properties.

Show (property scope)

Allows you to filter properties according to their property scope.

- **Local Only:** Shows only local properties.
- **Global Only:** Shows only global properties.
- **All:** Shows all properties.

Set local properties

Allows you to change the scope of subsequent local properties you change.

- **Locally:** Local properties only take effect locally.
- **Globally:** Local properties take effect globally.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

[Selecting handles on items](#) on page 516

[Resetting the appearance of items](#) on page 436

[Resetting the position of items](#) on page 436

Local vs. global properties

Properties can affect items either in the current layout and frame chain only or in all layouts and frame chains. This allows you to have the same items appear differently in different layouts, such as if you want to show gradual dynamics as hairpins in part layouts but as “cresc.” text in full score layouts.

Local properties

Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific. By default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains. This is particularly useful for local properties that control the graphical position of items, as usually this needs to be different in the part layout compared to the full score.

You can force local properties to apply globally by changing the property scope in the Properties panel to **Globally** before changing their setting. Local properties that have been set globally appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties that have been set locally. You can also show only local properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

NOTE

Changing local properties with the property scope set to **Globally** overrides any local settings for those properties for the selected notes or items in other layouts.

Global properties

Global properties affect items in all layouts and frame chains, including new layouts you subsequently create. They appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties. You can also show only global properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

RELATED LINKS

[Layouts](#) on page 174


[Music frame chains](#) on page 662

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the property scope

You can change the property scope of local properties; for example, if you want the subsequent properties you change to affect all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

- In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Set local properties**:
 - **Locally**
 - **Globally**

RESULT

The property scope is changed. All subsequent local properties you change take effect only in the current layout and frame chain if you chose **Locally**, or in all layouts and frame chains if you chose **Globally**.

NOTE

- The property scope includes local properties that control the graphical position of items. Because it is common for items to require different graphical positions in different layouts, we recommend that you change the property scope to **Globally** only when required.
 - This only applies to subsequent properties you change. If you want to change the property scope of existing properties, you can copy property settings to other layouts and frame chains.
 - You can change the default property scope for all future projects on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

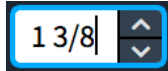
[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Changing values in numeric value fields

You can change the values in numeric value fields in multiple different ways, such as doubling or halving the existing values. In Dorico Elements, value fields are most commonly used in the Properties panel and in options dialogs.

Numeric value fields have up/down buttons. They are also known as “spin boxes”.



A numeric value field in the Properties panel

PREREQUISITE

For value fields that are only accessible when their corresponding property/option is activated, you have activated their property/option.

PROCEDURE

- Change the value in numeric value fields in any of the following ways:
 - Enter a number directly.
 - To increase/decrease the value by 1/8 space, click the up/down buttons.
 - To increase/decrease the value by 1/32 space, **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift**-click the up/down buttons.
 - To increase/decrease the value by 1/2 space, **Shift**-click the up/down buttons.
 - To increase/decrease the value by 1 space, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click the up/down buttons.
 - To increase the current value by a specific amount, enter **+=** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **+=2** to increase the current value by two.
 - To decrease the current value by a specific amount, enter **-=** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **-=3.5** to decrease the current value by three and a half.
 - To multiply the current value by a specific amount, enter ***** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter ***3** to triple the current value.
 - To divide the current value by a specific amount, enter **/** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **/2** to halve the current value.

NOTE

You must replace the existing value with your calculation entry.

RELATED LINKS

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

Key Editor

The Key Editor is a MIDI editor that comprises multiple components. It allows you to edit notes and other playback items, including note velocity, MIDI CC, and tempo. You can access the Key Editor in the Key Editor panel in the lower zone, which you can show alongside layouts in Write mode and the track overview in Play mode.

The Key Editor contains the following editors, which you can show in different combinations:

- Piano roll editor
- Percussion editor
- Playing Techniques editor
- Velocity editor
- Dynamics editor
- MIDI Pitch Bend editor
- MIDI CC editor
- Tempo editor

The Key Editor also provides different tools and controls, according to the requirements of each editor.

RELATED LINKS

[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678

[Percussion editor](#) on page 679

[Playing Techniques editor](#) on page 690

[Velocity editor](#) on page 691

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[MIDI Pitch Bend editor](#) on page 700

[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701


[Tempo editor](#) on page 706

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

[MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574

Key Editor panel

The Key Editor panel allows you to view and edit notes, either in a continuous piano roll for pitched instruments or in the percussion editor for unpitched instruments. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode and Play mode.

- You can show the Key Editor panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Key Editor**  in the lower zone toolbar.

In Write mode, you can show the Key Editor panel alongside layouts in the music area. In Play mode, you can show the Key Editor panel alongside the track overview.

By default, the Key Editor displays the instrument on whose staff you have selected an item. However, you can also select the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor manually.



1 Key Editor panel toolbar

Contains tools that allow you to select and edit notes and items in the Key Editor.

2 Key Editor ruler

Displays bar numbers and shows beat divisions that match the current rhythmic grid resolution.

3 Playhead

Shows the current rhythmic position in playback.

4 Header

Displays the name of each editor and can contain further options, according to the editor.

5 Primary editor

Contains either the piano roll editor, percussion editor, or Tempo editor, depending on your most recent selection and whether the Key Editor is locked.

6 Playing Techniques editor

Displays where playing techniques are in use for the corresponding instrument or voice. Only available when a single instrument/voice is shown in the Key Editor.

7 Additional editors

You can add/close multiple additional editors below the piano roll/percussion editor, such as the Velocity and MIDI CC editors. You can save configurations of editors for use in other projects.

8 Add Editor

Allows you to add additional editors to the Key Editor.

9 Presets

Allows you to save, apply, and delete Key Editor configurations.

10 Zoom controls

Allow you to change the zoom manually, such as making notes wider and/or taller.

11 Scroll bars

Allow you to scroll vertically and horizontally in the Key Editor.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Key Editor configurations](#) on page 715

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

[Transform tool](#) on page 713

Key Editor panel toolbar

The Key Editor panel toolbar contains tools that allow you to select and edit notes and items in the Key Editor. It is located at the top of the Key Editor panel in the lower zone.

Select



Allows you to select items in the Key Editor, such as notes in the piano roll editor or velocity bars in the Velocity editor, including by clicking and dragging marquee selections.

You can also select **Select** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1**.

Draw



Allows you to input notes in the piano roll and percussion editors. The end positions and minimum durations of notes follow the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

You can also select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2**.

Drumstick



Allows you to set a different rhythmic duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently, and input sequences of notes with the corresponding duration by clicking and dragging in the percussion editor.

Also allows you to delete notes by clicking them.

Only available in the percussion editor.

You can also select **Drumstick** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-3** when the percussion editor is shown.

Line



Allows you to draw straight lines between two points. Not available in the piano roll editor or percussion editor.

Transform



Allows you to make Transform selections and use Transform controls on the selected range. Only available in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors.

Sync Region



Copies data from the primary track to secondary tracks. Only available in the Dynamics and MIDI CC editors, and when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

Delete



Deletes the selected items.

You can also delete selected items by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Played Durations



Allows you to change when notes start/end in playback without affecting their notated durations. Displays the played durations of notes as a rectangle, above a thinner line that shows their notated duration.


Notated Durations





Allows you to change the rhythmic duration of notes, which affects the position and notation of those notes. Displays the full, notated durations of notes as rectangles.

Lock Played Durations



Allows you to control how changing notated durations impacts on played durations. Only available when **Notated Durations**  is selected.

- When **Lock Played Durations**  is activated, played durations retain their original positions/durations, regardless of the new notated positions/durations of the corresponding notes.
- When **Lock Played Durations**  is deactivated, played durations move with their corresponding notes and retain their start/end offsets relative to them.

Rhythmic Grid



Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution for the Key Editor. The Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution affects the minimum duration of the notes you input, the number of grid lines, and certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which you can drag notes to the right/left. The button updates to show the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Playing Techniques



Hides/Shows the Playing Techniques editor.

Voice selector



Allows you to select the voice whose notes you want to appear highlighted in the piano roll and into which you want to input notes. Automatically updates according to your current selection.

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, only voices belonging to the primary instrument are available.

Resize Lower Zone



Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

TIP

- You can right-click and hold in the Key Editor to access tools in the quick tool selector.
- You can also select tools by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1** to **Shift-Alt/Opt-6**. The tool selected by each key command depends on the tools currently available in the Key Editor panel toolbar, counted from left to right.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 678
- [Playing Techniques editor](#) on page 690
- [Velocity editor](#) on page 691
- [Dynamics editor](#) on page 694
- [MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701


Showing instruments in the Key Editor

You can show specific instruments in the Key Editor, change the primary instrument, and lock the Key Editor to keep those instruments in view. For example, if you want to draw MIDI points for all string instruments in your project simultaneously.

By default, the Key Editor is unlocked and follows the current selection in either the music area or track overview.

For example, if your most recent selection was a Flute note or the Flute track, that Flute is shown in the piano roll editor. If your most recent selection was a tempo mark or the Tempo track, the Tempo editor is shown in the Key Editor, provided you had not already added the Tempo editor manually.

PREREQUISITE

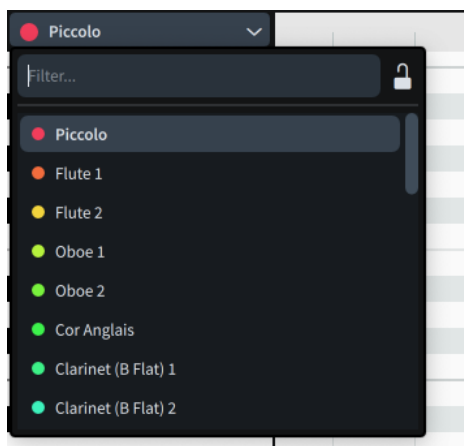
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- Your most recently selected item belonged to an instrument, so that either the piano roll or percussion editor is shown in the Key Editor.


NOTE

You cannot add editors to the Key Editor when the Tempo editor is the primary editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll/percussion editor header, click the instrument menu, then select the instrument you want to show as the primary instrument.

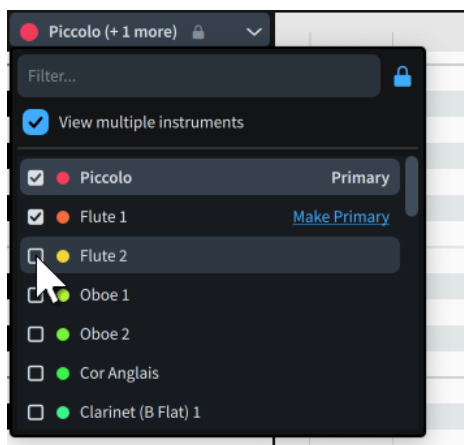


2. To lock the Key Editor and keep the selected instrument in view, click **Lock Key Editor** .
3. To show multiple instruments in the Key Editor simultaneously, activate **View multiple instruments**.

NOTE

You can only show multiple pitched instruments in the Key Editor. You cannot show multiple unpitched percussion instruments, or unpitched percussion instruments in addition to pitched instruments.

4. Activate each instrument you want to show in the Key Editor.



5. Optional: Click **Make Primary** beside the instrument you want to designate as the new primary instrument.
-

RESULT

The Key Editor shows the selected instruments. If you locked the Key Editor, including if you optionally selected multiple instruments, it no longer follows your most recent selection.

TIP

You can assign key commands for the following commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**:

- **Lock Key Editor to Selection** automatically shows in the Key Editor the instruments on whose staves you have selected notes/items in the music area, and locks the Key Editor to that selection.

- **Toggle Key Editor Locked View** locks/unlocks the Key Editor.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can view, input, and edit notes, dynamic points, and MIDI points for all the instruments shown in the Key Editor.
- You can copy dynamic and MIDI points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments.


RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675
[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678
[Percussion editor](#) on page 679
[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694
[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701
[MIDI Pitch Bend editor](#) on page 700
[Tempo editor](#) on page 706
[Track overview](#) on page 520
[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
[Copying dynamic points to other instruments](#) on page 699
[Copying MIDI points to other instruments](#) on page 705



Changing the height of the Key Editor

You can change the height of the whole Key Editor and each editor within it. For example, you can make the piano roll editor taller when inputting notes, and make the Velocity editor taller when changing note velocity.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
-

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
 - To change the height of the whole Key Editor, click and drag **Resize Lower Zone**  or the top edge of the lower zone upwards/downwards.
 - To change the height of individual editors, click and drag their splitters  upwards/downwards. When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Cycle Lower Zone Size** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which makes the lower zone fill 25%, 50%, then 75% of the project window.


RELATED LINKS

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
[Opening multiple project windows](#) on page 49





Zooming in/out of the Key Editor

You can change the zoom level in the Key Editor; for example, you can zoom in vertically and horizontally to make notes appear taller and wider in the piano roll editor. This does not affect the height of the Key Editor.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in horizontally in any of the following ways:
 - Press **H**.
 - Click **Zoom In**  at the bottom of the Key Editor.
 - Click in the Key Editor ruler and drag upwards.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the Key Editor ruler.
2. Zoom out horizontally in any of the following ways:
 - Press **G**.
 - Click **Zoom Out**  at the bottom of the Key Editor.
 - Click in the Key Editor ruler and drag downwards.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the Key Editor ruler.
3. Zoom in vertically in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-H**.
 - Click **Zoom In**  on the right of the Key Editor.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the area to the left of the piano roll/percussion editor.
4. Zoom out vertically in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
 - Click **Zoom Out**  on the right of the Key Editor.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the keyboard to the left of the piano roll.


RELATED LINKS

- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Zooming in/out of tracks](#) on page 537
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

Scrolling in the Key Editor

You can scroll in any direction in the Key Editor; for example, to view higher/lower notes in the piano roll editor, or MIDI points in later bars in the MIDI CC editor.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.


PROCEDURE

- In the Key Editor, scroll in any of the following ways:
 - Click and drag the sliders on the right and bottom edges of the Key Editor.
 - Swipe in any direction on a touchpad.
 - To scroll vertically when using a mouse wheel, scroll upwards/downwards.
 - To scroll horizontally when using a mouse wheel, **Shift**-scroll upwards/downwards.
-


Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution

You can change the rhythmic grid resolution used for the Key Editor, independently of the rhythmic grid used outside of the Key Editor. The Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution affects the minimum duration of the notes you input, the number of grid lines, and certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which you can drag notes to the right/left.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you want to use key commands, your most recent selection must have been in the Key Editor panel.
-

PROCEDURE

- Change the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution in any of the following ways:
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Rhythmic Grid**  and choose the resolution you want.
 - To decrease the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-]**.
 - To increase the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-[**.
-

RELATED LINKS


[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 678

Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor

You can add/close all types of editors in the Key Editor, excluding the piano roll and percussion editors. You can also change the editor type shown in an existing editor.



PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- Your most recently selected item belonged to an instrument, so that either the piano roll or percussion editor is shown in the Key Editor.

NOTE

You cannot add editors to the Key Editor when the Tempo editor is the primary editor.

PROCEDURE

- Change the editors shown in the Key Editor in one of the following ways:
 - To add a new editor, click **Add Editor**  at the bottom left of the Key Editor.
 - To change the editor type shown in an existing editor, click the menu in its header and select an editor from the menu.
 - To close editors, click **Close Editor**  in their headers.
-


AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can save Key Editor configurations for use in other projects.



Selecting items in the Key Editor

You can select notes and items, such as MIDI or dynamic points, in the Key Editor in the same ways.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
 - You have added the editors whose points you want to select.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the **Select** tool in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-1**.
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Select** .
 - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Select** , then release the mouse.
 2. Select notes or items in any of the following ways:
 - Click a single note or point.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click or **Shift**-click multiple notes or points.
 - In one editor, click and drag across an area where you want to select everything.
A blue rectangle indicates which notes or points will be selected when you release the mouse. We recommend that you click in one corner of the area you want to select and drag diagonally across to the other corner.
-



Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor

You can copy and paste points in the Key Editor, including to other editors and repeating them directly after themselves in the same editor. For example, if you want to copy a pattern of MIDI points between different MIDI controllers.

NOTE

These steps describe copying/pasting points within/between editors belonging to the same instrument. However, you can also copy/paste dynamic and MIDI points between instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the editors whose points you want to copy/paste.

PROCEDURE

1. In one of the open editors, select the points you want to copy.
2. Copy the selected points in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**.
 - Choose **Edit > Copy**.
3. Move the playhead to the position to which you want to paste the selected points.
4. Select the header of the editor into which you want to paste the selected points.
5. Paste the selected points in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.
 - Choose **Edit > Paste**.

RESULT

The selected points are copied to the selected position and editor, without deleting them from their original positions. They apply to all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

NOTE

- All the points of gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics input in Write mode are copied, even if you only selected a single point.
- You can also repeat points immediately after themselves by selecting them, then pressing **R**. In each repetition, the earliest selected point replaces the last selected point.
- You can also copy points by selecting them, then **Alt/Opt**-dragging them to the position where you want to paste them.

RELATED LINKS

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Moving the playhead](#) on page 538

[Copying dynamic points to other instruments](#) on page 699

[Copying MIDI points to other instruments](#) on page 705



[Inputting dynamic points](#) on page 696

[Inputting MIDI points](#) on page 703

Deleting points in the Key Editor

You can delete selected points from multiple editors simultaneously.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the editors whose points you want to delete.

PROCEDURE

1. In any of the open editors, select the points you want to delete.

TIP

You can select points in multiple editors simultaneously.

2. Delete the selected points in any of the following ways:

- Press **Backspace or Delete**.
- In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Delete** .

RESULT

The selected points are deleted.

Deleting dynamic points that overrode dynamics input in Write mode reverts those dynamics to their default points. Deleting the points of dynamics input in Write mode also deletes the corresponding dynamics.

Deleting tempo points also deletes their corresponding tempo marks or tempo mark signposts from layouts.

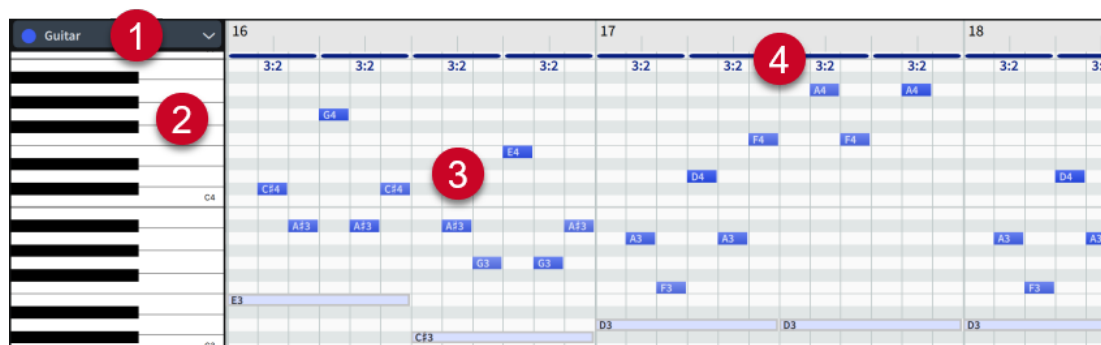
Notes in the Key Editor

In the Key Editor, notes appear as colored rectangles in either the piano roll editor for pitched instruments, or the percussion editor for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits.

Piano roll editor

The piano roll editor displays MIDI notes for pitched instruments in a continuous sequence. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

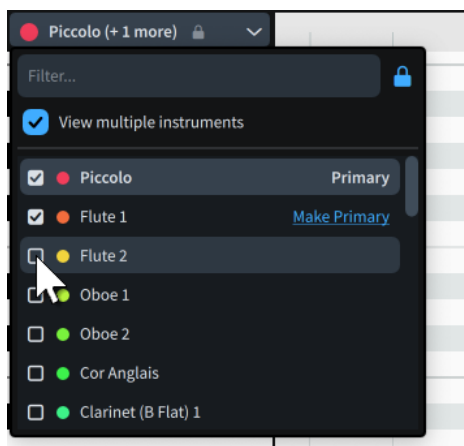
- You can show the piano roll editor by showing a pitched instrument in the Key Editor.



The piano roll editor comprises the following:

- 1 **Instrument menu**

Allows you to select the instruments you want to show in the piano roll editor, and to change the primary instrument when multiple instruments are shown.



2 Piano keyboard

Provides a reference for pitches.

3 Piano roll

Displays the notes belonging to the instruments shown in the Key Editor. The horizontal position of notes indicates their rhythm, and their width indicates their duration. The vertical position of notes indicates their pitch. When notes are sufficiently tall and wide, pitches are also displayed inside each note.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor.

When multiple instruments are shown, notes belonging to the primary instrument appear solid and bold in the piano roll editor, while notes belonging to secondary instruments appear with gray outlines and pastel colors.

4 Tuplets

Bars and ratios at the top of the piano roll editor indicate tuplets in the active voice.

You can input and edit notes in the piano roll editor, including moving and transposing them. This also updates their notation in all applicable layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Mixer](#) on page 717

[Tuplets](#) on page 1408

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

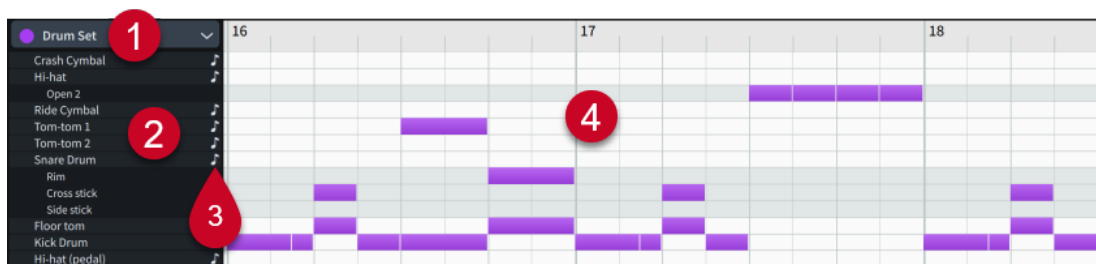
[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

[MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574

Percussion editor

The percussion editor displays MIDI notes for unpitched percussion instruments in a continuous sequence. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

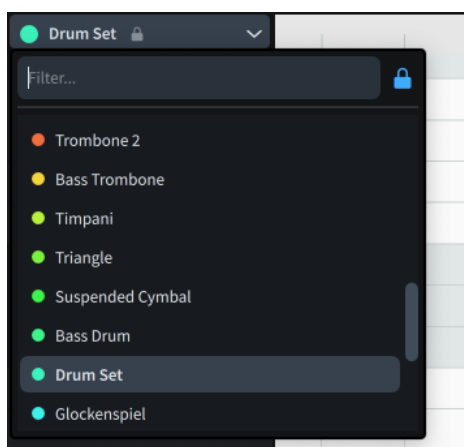
- You can show the percussion editor by showing an unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit in the Key Editor.



The percussion editor comprises the following:

1 Instrument menu


Allows you to select the instrument you want to show in the percussion editor. You can only show one percussion kit or individual percussion instrument at a time.



2 Percussion instrument names and playing techniques

In the percussion editor, each unpitched percussion instrument has its own row, including when they are in a percussion kit. Alternative playing techniques are listed beneath the corresponding unpitched percussion instrument.

3 Percussion Rhythmic Grid

Allows you to set a different default note duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently. Only available when the **Drumstick**  tool is selected.

4 Percussion editor

Displays the notes belonging to the instruments shown in the Key Editor. The vertical position of notes indicates their instrument and playing technique, where applicable. The horizontal position of notes indicates their rhythm, and their width indicates their duration.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor. Percussion kits are assigned a single color for the whole kit.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool](#) on page 682

[Track overview](#) on page 520


[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420

[MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574




Inputting notes in the Key Editor

You can input notes in the Key Editor, in either the piano roll editor for pitched instruments, or in the percussion editor for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits. Notes you input in the Key Editor also appear in all applicable layouts.

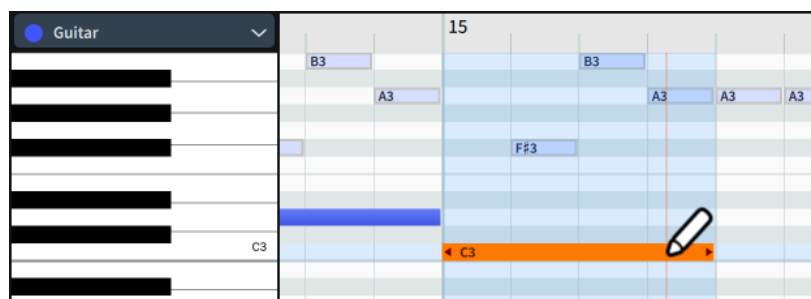
PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- If you want to input notes into a specific voice for an instrument, you have created that voice in Write mode and input at least one note into it.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to input notes into a specific voice, select it from the voice selector in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Select the **Draw** tool in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-2**.
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Draw** .
 - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Draw** , then release the mouse.
3. Click **Rhythmic Grid**  and choose the default note duration you want.
4. Input notes in any of the following ways:
 - To input single notes with the default note duration, click in the piano roll/percussion editor at each rhythmic position where you want to input a note.
 - To input notes with any duration, click and drag horizontally in the piano roll/percussion editor at the required pitch position and for the required duration.

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.



RESULT

For pitched instruments, notes are input at the pitches indicated by the piano keyboard on the left of the piano roll, and into the active voice indicated by the voice selector in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

For unpitched percussion instruments and kits, notes are input into the instrument in the corresponding row of the percussion editor.

When you click once, notes are input with the default note duration, set by the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution. When you click and drag, their duration is determined by the width of your drag.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change both the notated and played durations of notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Zooming in/out of the Key Editor](#) on page 674

[Changing the height of the Key Editor](#) on page 673

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466


[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687




Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool

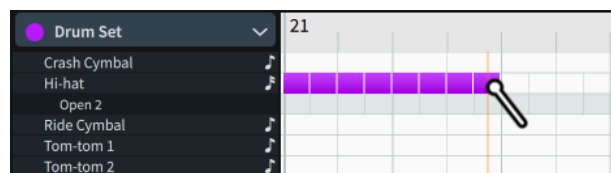
The **Drumstick** tool allows you to input notes with a different rhythmic duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit that you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE


1. Select the **Drumstick** tool in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-3**.
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Drumstick** .
 - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Drumstick** , then release the mouse.
2. In the percussion editor header, click **Percussion Rhythmic Grid**  for each instrument and choose its required note duration.
For example, you might set quarter notes for the kick drum, and eighth notes for the hi-hat.
3. Input notes in any of the following ways:
 - To input single notes, click in the percussion editor at each rhythmic position where you want to input a note.
 - To input multiple notes, click and drag horizontally in the percussion editor.



RESULT

Notes are input with the note duration set for the corresponding instrument, either a single note per click, or to fill the region in which you clicked and dragged.


TIP

When **Drumstick**  is selected, you can also delete notes by clicking them.



Moving notes in the Key Editor

You can move notes rhythmically in the Key Editor. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE


1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Notated Durations** .
2. Activate/Deactivate **Lock Played Durations** .
3. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to move rhythmically.
4. Move the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To move them to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - Click and drag them to the right/left.

TIP

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.

RESULT

The selected notes are moved to new rhythmic positions. If you selected multiple notes, they are moved together as a block.

If you activated **Lock Played Durations** , played durations are not moved; they retain their original positions.

Key commands move notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. Clicking and dragging moves notes according to the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675


[Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques](#) on page 685

[Requantizing notes](#) on page 266



Lengthening/Shortening notes in the Key Editor

You can change the notated duration of notes in the Key Editor. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE


1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Notated Durations**  to show notated note durations.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Lock Played Durations** .
3. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to lengthen/shorten.
4. Lengthen/Shorten the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To double the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To halve the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - Click and drag the right end of one of the selected notes to the length you want.

TIP

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.

RESULT

The selected notes are lengthened/shortened.

If you activated **Lock Played Durations** , played durations are not lengthened/shortened; they retain their original positions/durations.

Key commands lengthen/shorten notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. Clicking and dragging lengthens/shortens notes according to the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Note durations](#) on page 258

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

[Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 675


[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Requantizing notes](#) on page 266

Transposing notes in the piano roll editor

You can transpose notes in the piano roll editor by moving them vertically to other pitch positions. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll editor, select the notes you want to transpose.
2. Transpose the notes in any of the following ways:
 - To move notes up one staff position, such as from C to D, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To move notes down one staff position, such as from D to C, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes up a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes down a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes up an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To transpose notes down an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

TIP

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, and pitches against the piano keyboard.

RESULT

The selected notes are transposed according to their new pitch positions in the piano roll editor.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44


[Equal Division of the Octave \(EDO\)](#) on page 1028

[Transposing tools](#) on page 468

Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques

You can move notes to other instruments and playing techniques in the percussion editor; for example, if you want hi-hat notes to be played on a cymbal instead. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit that you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the percussion editor, select the notes you want to move to other instruments/playing techniques.
2. Move the notes in any of the following ways:
 - To move notes to the instrument above, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To move notes to the instrument below, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To cycle notes upwards through the playing techniques of their current instrument, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To cycle notes downwards through the playing techniques of their current instrument, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

TIP

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, and notes against instruments/playing techniques.

RESULT

The selected notes are moved to the instrument/playing technique in the corresponding row in the percussion editor.

RELATED LINKS



[Percussion editor](#) on page 679

[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420

Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor

You can copy and paste notes in the piano roll and percussion editors, including to other pitched instruments and voices, and repeating them directly after themselves.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to copy.
2. Copy the selected notes in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**.
 - Choose **Edit > Copy**.
3. Move the playhead to the position to which you want to paste the selected notes.
4. Optional: If you want to paste notes to another instrument, make that instrument the primary instrument.
5. Optional: If you want to paste notes into another voice, select that voice from the voice selector in the Key Editor toolbar.

6. Paste the selected notes in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.
- Choose **Edit > Paste**.

RESULT

The selected notes are copied to the selected position, instrument, and voice, without deleting them from their original positions. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

TIP

- You can also repeat notes immediately after themselves by selecting them, then pressing **R**.
- You can also copy notes by selecting them, then **Alt/Opt**-dragging them to the position where you want to paste them.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving the playhead](#) on page 538

[Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting](#) on page 460

[Copying dynamic points to other instruments](#) on page 699


[Copying MIDI points to other instruments](#) on page 705

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457




Deleting notes in the Key Editor

You can delete notes in the Key Editor. This also removes notes from all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.


PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, select the notes you want to delete in the piano roll/percussion editor.
2. Delete notes in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Delete** .
 - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Drumstick** , then click each note you want to delete in the percussion editor.

Played vs. notated note durations

In the Key Editor, you can show notes with their played duration or notated duration.


Played duration

When **Played Durations**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, notes in the piano roll/percussion editor are each shown with two components:



- A filled, light-colored rectangle showing the played duration of the note.
- A thin, darker rod showing the notated duration of the note.

This allows you to change the played, sounding duration of notes. For example, notes with staccato articulations are played for less time than their notated duration, whereas notes under slurs are played for longer than their notated duration.

Notated duration

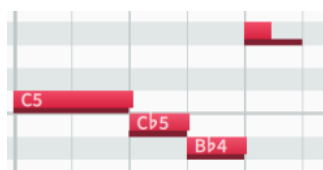
When **Notated Durations**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, notes in the piano roll/percussion editor appear as single rectangles whose width corresponds to the notated duration of the note. This allows you to change the duration of notes.

You can control how changing notated durations impacts on played durations:

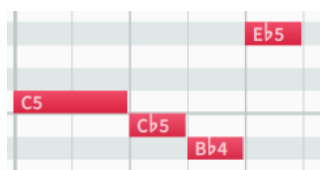
- When **Lock Played Durations**  is activated, played durations retain their original positions and durations, regardless of the new notated positions/durations of the corresponding notes.
- When **Lock Played Durations**  is deactivated, played durations move with their corresponding notes and retain their start/end offsets relative to them.

EXAMPLE

The following examples all contain the same musical phrase, shown in different ways.



Played duration



Notated duration



Score

TIP

You can choose to display played or notated note durations in the piano roll editor by default in all future projects on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel toolbar](#) on page 669

[Slurs in playback](#) on page 1308

[Articulations in playback](#) on page 809

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259

[Lengthening/Shortening notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 684

[Requantizing notes](#) on page 266


[Quantization options](#) on page 93

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58


Changing the played duration of notes

You can change the played duration of notes individually, both at the start and end of notes. For example, you can make notes sound for longer, or start sounding later.

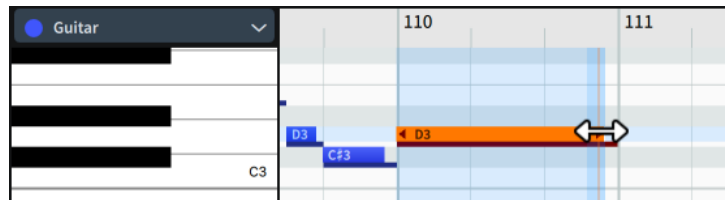
PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have applied a playback template to the project that includes sounds for the instruments in your project.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Played Durations**  to show played note durations.
2. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes whose played duration you want to change.
3. Click and drag the start or end of one of the notes to the right/left.


When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.



RESULT

The played duration of the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can assign key commands for increasing/decreasing playback start/end offsets in **Preferences > Key Commands > Note Editing**. You can use these commands when **Played Durations**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Resetting playback overrides

You can remove all changes made to how individual notes play back; for example, if you previously changed the played duration of notes and want to revert them to their default start position, length, and velocity.

Removing playback overrides also removes any offsets to the start and end position of notes imported from MIDI files with preserved note positions.

NOTE

Any note velocities that are set on notes are reflected in playback, including from imported MIDI files or MIDI recording. If you want dynamics you input in Write mode to be reflected in playback instead, you must remove playback overrides.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose playback overrides you want to reset.
You can do this in the music area, piano roll editor, percussion editor, or Velocity editor.
2. Choose **Play > Reset Playback Overrides**.

RESULT


All playback overrides are removed from the selected notes.

RELATED LINKS

- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421
- [Music area](#) on page 34
- [Piano roll editor](#) on page 678
- [Percussion editor](#) on page 679
- [Resetting note velocity](#) on page 693
- [MIDI recording](#) on page 264
- [Importing MIDI](#) on page 85
- [Opening projects/files](#) on page 72

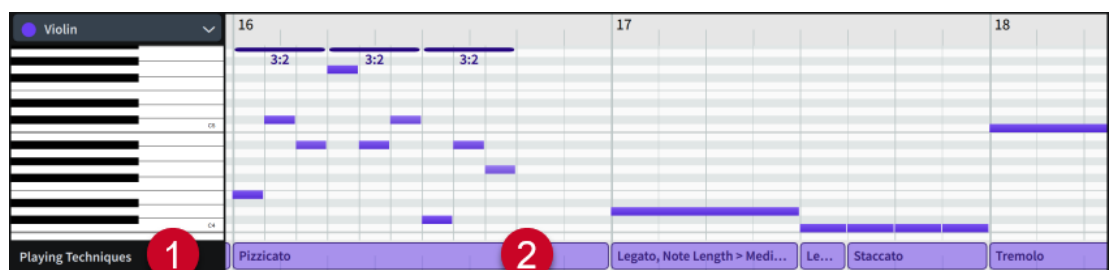
Playing Techniques editor

The Playing Techniques editor displays where playing techniques are in use for the corresponding instrument or voice; for example, as a result of inputting playing techniques, slurs, or articulations. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can hide/show the Playing Techniques editor by clicking **Playing Techniques**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

NOTE

You can only show the Playing Techniques editor when a single instrument/voice is shown in the Key Editor.



The Playing Techniques editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Displays the name of the editor.

2 Playing technique regions

Display the playing technique and note length condition that apply to notes in the region. You can hover your mouse pointer over playing technique regions to see the following related information:

- Any playback techniques, switches, and other effects in place, such as adjustments for articulations
- Expression map used for the region
- Channel in the VST or MIDI instrument used for the region
- VST or MIDI instrument used for the region

NOTE

You cannot change playing techniques in the Playing Techniques editor. You can only change them in Write mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Expression maps](#) on page 761

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

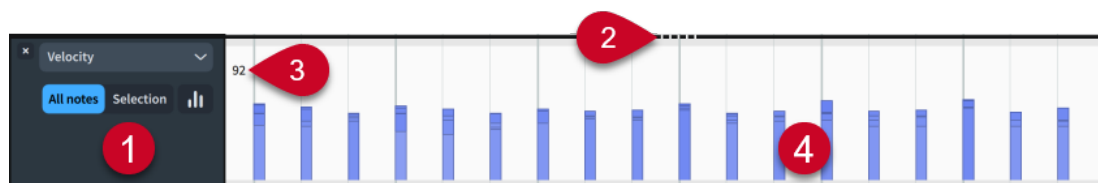
[Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques](#) on page 685

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Velocity editor

The Velocity editor allows you to view and edit the velocity of notes belonging to the instruments/voices shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.




- You can show the Velocity editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **Velocity** from the editor menu.





The Velocity editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu:** Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Velocity edit scope:** Allows you to change the scope of changes you make to velocity values. Only available when **Draw** , **Line** , or **Transform**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - **All notes:** Allows you to edit the velocity of all notes shown in the Velocity editor.
 - **Selection:** Allows you to edit the velocity of selected notes only.

- **Histogram** : Shows the Histogram tool in the editor.
- **Value field**: Displays the velocity value of the earliest selected note/velocity bar in the primary instrument. You can change the velocity value of all selected notes in the value field or click and drag velocity bars upwards/downwards in the editor. Only available when **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Value read-out

Displays the value of the current mouse pointer position in the editor.

4 Velocity bars

Velocities appear as vertical bars in the Velocity editor. Every note has its own velocity bar and a velocity value. When multiple notes exist at the same rhythmic position, such as in chords, the velocities for all notes appear stacked on top of each other, ordered by their value.

Velocity bars with higher values appear with bolder colors.

You can select velocity bars directly in the Velocity editor or by selecting their corresponding notes, in either the piano roll editor, percussion editor, or music area.

TIP

- Clicking and dragging velocity bars causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their value.
- You can use the Histogram and Transform tools to change velocity values.

RELATED LINKS


- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Key Editor panel toolbar](#) on page 669
- [Histogram tool](#) on page 710
- [Transform tool](#) on page 713
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675
- [Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232
- [Inputting notes in the Key Editor](#) on page 681
- [Voices](#) on page 1438

Changing the velocity of notes










You can change the velocity of notes individually, including for a single note in a chord, or to create a consistent increase/decrease in velocity across a range of notes.

Velocity is often used to control the dynamics of non-sustaining instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Velocity editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on how you want to change velocities:
 - To change the velocity of selected notes, select **Select** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1** or clicking **Select**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - To change the velocity using free shapes, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - To change the velocity using consistent slopes, select **Line** by clicking **Line**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Optional: If you selected **Select** , select the notes whose velocity you want to change, such as individual notes in chords. This also selects their velocity bars.
3. Optional: If you selected either the **Draw**  tool or **Line**  tool, choose one of the following velocity edit scopes in the Velocity editor header:
 - **All notes**
 - **Selection**
4. In the Velocity editor, change the velocity in one of the following ways:
 - If you selected **Select** , click and drag the top of one of the selected velocity bars upwards/downwards.
 - If you selected **Draw** , click and draw any shape across the required range.
 - If you selected **Line** , click and drag a line across the required range.

RESULT

The velocity of the affected notes is changed. If you selected the **Selection** velocity edit scope, this only applies to selected velocity bars.


TIP

You can also use the Transform and Histogram tools to change velocities on a large scale in different ways.


Resetting note velocity

You can remove changes you have made to the velocity of notes and reset them to their default velocity. You can do this for all notes belonging to an instrument, all notes in a specific voice, or only selected notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Velocity editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Velocity editor header, activate **Histogram**  to show the Histogram tool.
2. At the top of the Histogram tool, choose one of the following filters:
 - **All notes**
 - **Voice**

- **Selection**

3. Click **Reset**.

RESULT

Any changes you have made to the velocity of notes in the selected filter are reset.

NOTE

This also resets the played duration of the selected notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

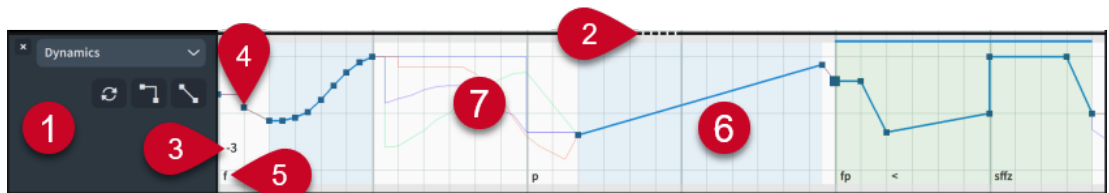
[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Resetting playback overrides](#) on page 689

Dynamics editor

The Dynamics editor allows you to view, input, and edit dynamics for the instruments/voices shown in the Key Editor. It displays both dynamics input in Write mode and dynamic points input in the Dynamics editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.




- You can show the Dynamics editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **Dynamics** from the editor menu.



The Dynamics editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu:** Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Sync** : Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.
- **Convert to Constant Point** : Makes the selected points constant. Only applies to points input in the Dynamics editor.
- **Convert to Linear Point** : Makes the selected points linear. Only applies to points in input in the Dynamics editor.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Value read-out

Displays the value of the current mouse pointer position in the editor.

4 Dynamic point

An immediate change in dynamic, input either in Write mode or using the **Draw** tool in the Dynamics editor. Immediate dynamic points are constant by default.

The maximum range of dynamic levels is from 8 to -8, loudest to quietest.

- Dynamic level 3 is equivalent to the dynamic *fff*.
- Dynamic level 0 is equivalent to the dynamic *mf*.
- Dynamic level -3 is equivalent to the dynamic *ppp*.

NOTE

- Clicking and dragging dynamic points causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their dynamic level.
- Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.
- Dynamic points that you input in the Dynamics editor do not appear in layouts.

5 Dynamic text

Shows the dynamic level or crescendo/diminuendo symbol of dynamics input in Write mode; that is, dynamic points that correspond to notation items.

6 Dynamic region

Blue highlighted regions contain multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion in the Dynamics editor with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool. By default, dynamic points in regions input in the Dynamics editor are linear.

Green highlighted regions represent gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics, such as *fp* and *sfz*, input in Write mode.

Thin blue bars at the top of the Editor represent dynamic groups.

NOTE

- Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.
- Dynamic regions that you input in the Dynamics editor override default playback adjustments for dynamics, such as humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents. However, the dynamic curve setting still applies to dynamic regions.
- Default playback adjustments for dynamics, such as humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents, still apply to notes within gradual dynamics that you input in Write mode.
- Start and end points for *messa di voce* regions are linked and always have the same value.
- Because the points of combined/force dynamics correspond to parameters of their envelopes, they function differently than other dynamic points. Combined dynamics have three points, while force dynamics have four points.

For example, if you change the value of the second point of a force dynamic, the third point also moves because it controls the duration of the second point; they always have the same value. Similarly, you cannot move combined/force dynamic points outside their regions.

7 Dynamic value line

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Dynamics](#) on page 921

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949


[Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217



Inputting dynamic points

You can input single dynamic points and dynamic regions in the Dynamics editor. Dynamic points that you input in the Dynamics editor do not appear in layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the type of dynamic points you want to input:
 - To input single dynamic points, or dynamic regions containing multiple dynamic points at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - To input smooth dynamic regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Input dynamic points in one of the following ways:
 - To input single dynamic points, click in the Dynamics editor at each position where you want a dynamic point.
 - To input a dynamic region containing multiple dynamic points at regular intervals, click and drag in a single motion in the Dynamics editor.
 - To input smooth dynamic regions, click and drag in the Dynamics editor from where you want the region to start to where you want it to end.

RESULT

Dynamic points are input for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

- If you used the **Draw** tool, separate dynamic points are input at each position you clicked.
- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, dynamic points are input at 32nd note intervals in a dynamic region.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two dynamic points are input in a dynamic region, one at each end of the dragged range.

By default, dynamic points input using the **Draw** tool are constant, while dynamic points in dynamic regions are linear.

Dynamic regions appear with highlighted regions in the Dynamics editor.

Dynamic points input in the Dynamics editor affect playback, but are not shown in layouts.

NOTE

- Inputting dynamic points/events at the positions of dynamics input in Write mode overrides default playback adjustments for those dynamics. Single dynamic points only override the dynamic level. Dynamic regions also override, for example, humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents. However, the dynamic curve setting still applies to dynamic regions.
 - For sound libraries that use MIDI CC 1 to control dynamics, the MIDI CC editor for CC 1 displays values from the dynamics you input, including dynamic points, combined with humanization.
-



Making dynamic points constant/linear

You can make individual dynamic points input in the Dynamics editor constant or linear. By default, dynamic points you input in the Dynamics editor are linear.



NOTE

These steps do not apply to the points of dynamics input in Write mode.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
 - You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.
-

PROCEDURE

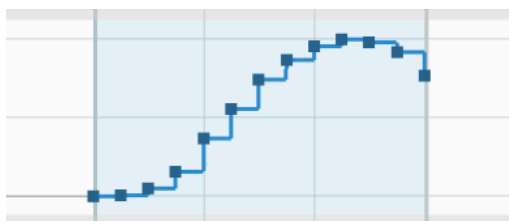
1. In the Dynamics editor, select the dynamic points you want to make constant/linear.
 2. Do one of the following:
 - To make the selected points constant, click **Convert to Constant Point**  in the editor header.
 - To make the selected points linear, click **Convert to Linear Point**  in the editor header.
-

RESULT

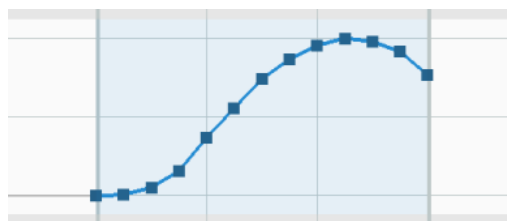
The selected dynamic points become constant or linear.

Value lines always appear horizontal after constant points. Value lines appear angled after linear points if the next point has a different value, indicating a smooth transition between the points.

EXAMPLE



Constant points in the Dynamics editor





Linear points in the Dynamics editor

Moving dynamic points

You can move individual dynamic points, including moving them upwards and downwards to change their dynamic level. For example, if you want individual dynamics to take effect slightly earlier, or to adjust the volume of specific existing dynamics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Dynamics editor, select the dynamic points you want to move.

TIP

To move dynamics input in Write mode rhythmically, you can select only their start point, including for gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics that have multiple points.

2. Move the selected dynamic points in any of the following ways:

- Click and drag them in any direction.

NOTE

- To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.
 - You can only move dynamics input in Write mode either horizontally or vertically at a time.
-
- To move dynamic points to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To move dynamic points to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

RESULT

The selected dynamic points are moved to new positions. Moving them to the right/left affects their rhythmic positions. Moving them upwards/downwards affects their dynamic level.

Moving the end points of gradual dynamics to the right/left lengthens/shortens the corresponding gradual dynamics rhythmically. Their notated length is automatically updated in all applicable layouts.

NOTE

- Moving dynamic points for linked dynamics affects all linked dynamics.
- You cannot drag dynamics input in Write mode beyond other existing dynamic points during the same move. Releasing the mouse causes the moved dynamic points to change the value of the existing dynamic point.

RELATED LINKS

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937


[Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430



Copying dynamic points to other instruments

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can copy dynamic points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. You can copy only individual points and regions, or all points belonging to the primary instrument in the selected flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.
- Multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to sync individual dynamic points or regions only, click **Sync Region**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar to select **Sync Region**.
2. In the Dynamics editor, do one of the following:
 - To copy individual dynamic points or regions, click each dynamic point and region, or click and drag across multiple dynamic points and regions.
 - To copy all dynamic points in the current flow, click **Sync**  in the editor header.

RESULT

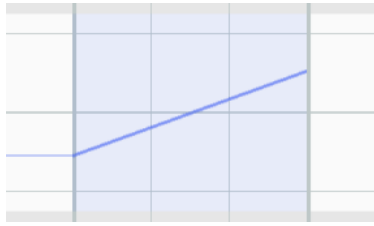
The corresponding dynamic points are copied from the primary instrument to secondary instruments, and become editable for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

Existing dynamic points in the affected regions belonging to secondary instruments are overwritten.

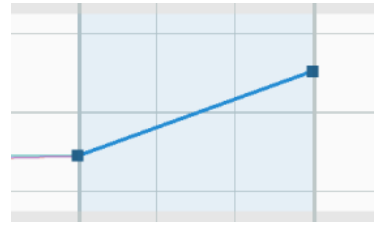
TIP

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can input dynamic points for all instruments directly.

EXAMPLE



Dynamic region in primary instrument only



Dynamic region copied to secondary instruments

RELATED LINKS

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

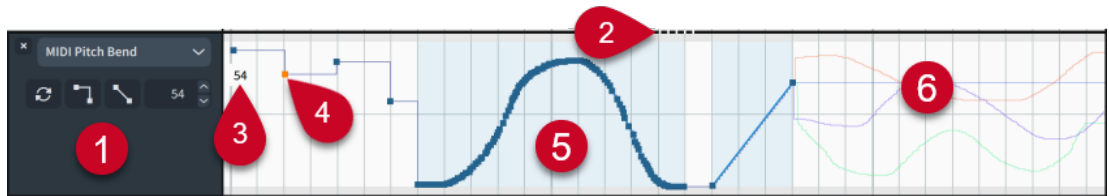
[Switching between flows in the track overview](#) on page 521

[Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

MIDI Pitch Bend editor

The MIDI Pitch Bend editor allows you to view, input, and edit MIDI pitch bend controller data for the instruments shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.




- You can show the MIDI Pitch Bend editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **MIDI Pitch Bend** from the editor menu.



The MIDI Pitch Bend editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- Editor menu:** Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- Sync** : Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.
- Convert to Constant Point** : Makes the selected points constant. Only applies to points in regions.
- Convert to Linear Point** : Makes the selected points linear. Only applies to points in regions.
- Value field:** Displays the value of the earliest selected MIDI point. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor. The available range for MIDI pitch bend is -100% to +100%.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Value read-out

Displays the value of the current mouse pointer position in the editor.

4 MIDI point

A single change to the MIDI pitch, input using the **Draw** tool. Individual MIDI points are constant by default. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

5 MIDI region

A highlighted region that contains multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool.

By default, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last point is constant. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

6 MIDI value line

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

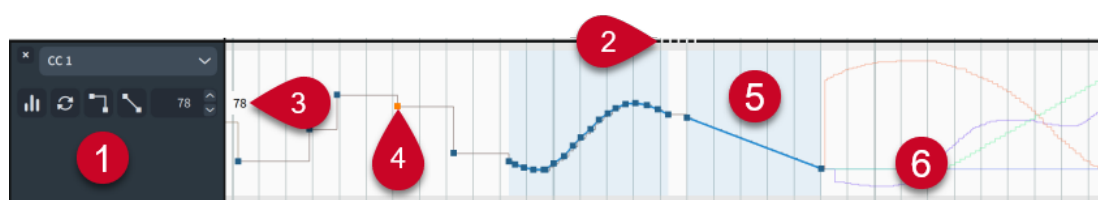
MIDI CC editor

The MIDI CC editor allows you to view, input, and edit data in any MIDI controller for the instruments shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can show the MIDI CC editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting a MIDI controller from the editor menu.

TIP



- You can add multiple MIDI CC editors to the Key Editor simultaneously; for example, to copy MIDI points between two MIDI controllers.
- Dorico Elements displays generated values as non-editable value lines. For sound libraries that use MIDI CC 1 to control dynamics, the MIDI CC editor for CC 1 displays values from the dynamics you input, including dynamic points, combined with humanization.





The MIDI CC editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- Editor menu:** Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- Histogram **: Shows the Histogram tool in the editor.
- Sync **: Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

- **Convert to Constant Point** : Makes the selected points constant. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Convert to Linear Point** : Makes the selected points linear. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Value field**: Displays the value of the earliest selected MIDI point. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor. The available range for MIDI CC is 0 to 127.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Value read-out

Displays the value of the current mouse pointer position in the editor.

4 MIDI point

A single change to the MIDI value, input using the **Draw** tool. Individual MIDI points are constant by default. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

5 MIDI region

A highlighted region that contains multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool.

By default, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last point is constant. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

6 MIDI value line

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

TIP

- Clicking and dragging MIDI points causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their value.
- You can use the Histogram and Transform tools to change MIDI CC values.
- MIDI CC data is included when exporting MIDI files.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

[Transform tool](#) on page 713

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[MIDI Pitch Bend editor](#) on page 700

[Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Exporting MIDI](#) on page 95

[Dynamics](#) on page 921

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Playback Options for dynamics](#) on page 954


[Pedal lines in playback](#) on page 1178

[Dynamics in playback](#) on page 953



Inputting MIDI points

You can input MIDI CC points into any MIDI controller, including pitch bend, in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the MIDI points you want to input:
 - To input single MIDI points, or MIDI regions containing multiple points at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - To input smooth MIDI regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Input MIDI points in one of the following ways:
 - To input single MIDI points, click in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor at each position where you want a MIDI point.
 - To input a MIDI region containing multiple MIDI points at regular intervals, click and drag in a single motion in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor.
 - To input smooth MIDI regions, click and drag in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor from where you want the region to start to where you want it to end.

TIP

The horizontal line in the middle of the MIDI Pitch Bend editor represents the unmodified pitch.

RESULT

MIDI points are input for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

- If you used the **Draw** tool, separate MIDI points are input at each position you clicked.
- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, MIDI points are input at small intervals in a MIDI region.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two MIDI points are input in a MIDI region, one at each end of the dragged range.

By default, single MIDI points are constant, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last MIDI point in regions is constant.



MIDI regions appear highlighted with colored backgrounds in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors.

Making MIDI points constant/linear



You can make selected MIDI points in regions constant or linear after they have been input; for example, if you want some points in a region to be constant.

By default, MIDI points are constant when you input them separately, and linear when you click and drag them as a region. The last MIDI point in a region is constant.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

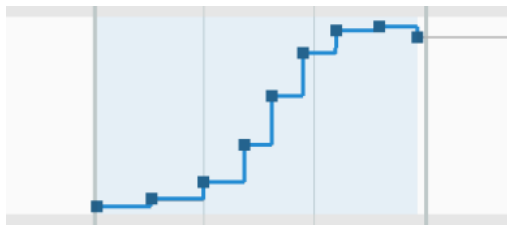
1. In the MIDI CC or Pitch Bend editor, select the MIDI points in regions you want to make constant/linear.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To make the selected points constant, click **Convert to Constant Point**  in the editor header.
 - To make the selected points linear, click **Convert to Linear Point**  in the editor header.

RESULT

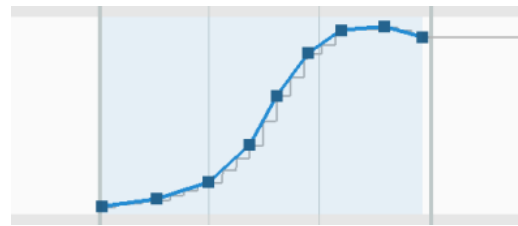
The selected MIDI points become constant or linear.

Value lines always appear horizontal after constant points. Value lines appear angled after linear points if the next point has a different value, indicating a smooth transition between the points.

EXAMPLE



Constant points in the MIDI CC editor





Linear points in the MIDI CC editor

Moving MIDI points

You can move individual MIDI points in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors, including moving them upwards and downwards to change their values.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
 - You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In the MIDI CC or Pitch Bend editor, select the MIDI points you want to move.

NOTE

You can only move MIDI points in a single editor at a time.

2. Move the selected MIDI points in any of the following ways:
 - Click and drag them in any direction.
 - To move them upwards/downwards only, hold **Shift** while dragging them upwards/downwards.
 - To move them to the right/left only, hold **Shift** while dragging them to the right/left.


TIP

You can also move MIDI points according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, as indicated in the status bar, by pressing **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow / Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.



Copying MIDI points to other instruments

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can copy MIDI points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. You can copy only individual points and regions, or all points belonging to the primary instrument in the selected flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.
 - Multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to sync individual MIDI points or regions only, click **Sync Region**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar to select **Sync Region**.
 2. In the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor, do one of the following:
 - To copy individual MIDI points or regions, click each MIDI point and region, or click and drag across multiple MIDI points and regions.
 - To copy all MIDI points in the current flow, click **Sync**  in the editor header.
-

RESULT

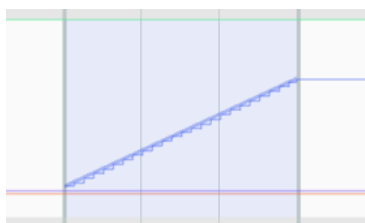
The corresponding MIDI points are copied from the primary instrument to secondary instruments, and become editable for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

Existing MIDI points in the affected regions belonging to secondary instruments are overwritten.

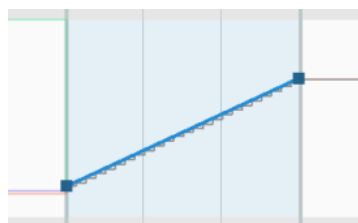
TIP

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can input MIDI points for all instruments directly.

EXAMPLE



MIDI region in primary instrument only



MIDI region copied to secondary instruments

RELATED LINKS

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

[Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

Tempo editor

The Tempo editor allows you to view, input, and edit tempo changes. It displays both tempo marks input in Write mode and tempo changes input in the Tempo editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

You can show the Tempo editor in any of the following ways:

- Add an editor to the Key Editor, then select **Tempo** from the editor menu.
- When the Key Editor is unlocked, select either a tempo mark or the Tempo track in Play mode.

NOTE

This shows the Tempo editor as the primary editor. To return to showing the piano roll/percussion editor and/or other editors in the Key Editor, you must select a note/item belonging to an instrument in the music area.



The Tempo editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu:** Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Range max. value field:** Allows you to set the maximum metronome mark value in the editor.
- **Tempo value field:** Displays the metronome mark value of the earliest selected tempo point, without decimal places. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Value read-out

Displays the value of the current mouse pointer position in the editor.

4 Tempo point

An immediate change in tempo, input either in Write mode or using the **Draw** tool in the Tempo editor. Absolute tempo changes comprise a single constant point.

TIP

- Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.
- Tempo points input in the Tempo editor appear as signposts in the music. Signposts are not printed by default, so if you want tempo points to appear in layouts as tempo marks, we recommend that you show them.
- All tempo points input in the Tempo editor are included when exporting MIDI files.

5 Tempo mark text

Shows the text of tempo marks input in Write mode; that is, tempo points that correspond to notation items.

6 Tempo region

A highlighted region with a linear point at the start and a constant point at the end, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion in the Tempo editor with the **Line** tool.

Tempo regions can also represent gradual tempo changes input in Write mode, such as *rallentando*.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667

[Tempo track](#) on page 532

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335

[Hiding/Showing tempo marks](#) on page 1340


[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Signposts](#) on page 450



Inputting tempo changes in the Tempo editor

You can input single tempo changes and tempo regions in the Tempo editor. Tempo changes input in the Tempo editor do not appear in layouts, but instead are shown as signposts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the type of tempo change you want to input:
 - To input single absolute tempo changes, or multiple absolute tempo changes at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
 - To input tempo regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Input tempo changes in one of the following ways:
 - To input single absolute tempo changes, click in the Tempo editor at each position where you want a tempo change.
 - To input multiple absolute tempo changes at regular intervals, click and drag in the Tempo editor.
 - To input tempo regions, click and drag in the Tempo editor from where you want the region to start, to where you want it to end.

TIP

Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.

RESULT

- If you used the **Draw** tool and clicked multiple times, separate tempo changes are input at each position you clicked.
- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, tempo changes are input at 32nd note intervals.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two tempo changes are input in a tempo region, one at each end of the dragged range.

This affects the speed of playback, but the tempo changes are not shown in layouts. Instead, they appear as signposts.

Tempo changes input in the Tempo editor are included when exporting MIDI files.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel toolbar](#) on page 669



[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding/Showing tempo marks](#) on page 1340

Moving tempo changes in the Tempo editor

You can move tempo changes to new rhythmic positions in the Tempo editor. This affects their rhythmic position in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Tempo editor, select the tempo changes you want to move.
2. To move the selected tempo changes without changing their metronome mark value, hold **Shift** while dragging them to the right/left.

NOTE

You cannot drag tempo regions and single tempo changes input in Write mode beyond other existing tempo changes during the same move. Releasing the mouse causes the moved tempo change to change the value of the existing tempo change.

RESULT

The selected tempo changes are moved rhythmically. When you move multiple selected absolute tempo changes, they maintain their positions relative to each other. This also affects their rhythmic positions in any layouts in which they appear.



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also move tempo changes vertically, which changes their metronome mark value.

Changing the tempo in the Tempo editor

You can change the metronome mark value of individual tempo changes in the Tempo editor, expressed in beats per minute.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select**  is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Tempo editor, select the tempo changes whose metronome mark values you want to change.
2. To change the metronome mark values of the selected tempo changes without moving them rhythmically, hold **Shift** while dragging them upwards/downwards.

Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.

RESULT

The metronome mark values of the selected tempo changes are changed proportionally. This affects the speed of playback, and the displayed metronome mark of any tempo changes also shown in layouts.

TIP

You can also change the metronome mark value of selected tempo changes using the **Tempo** value field in the Tempo editor header.

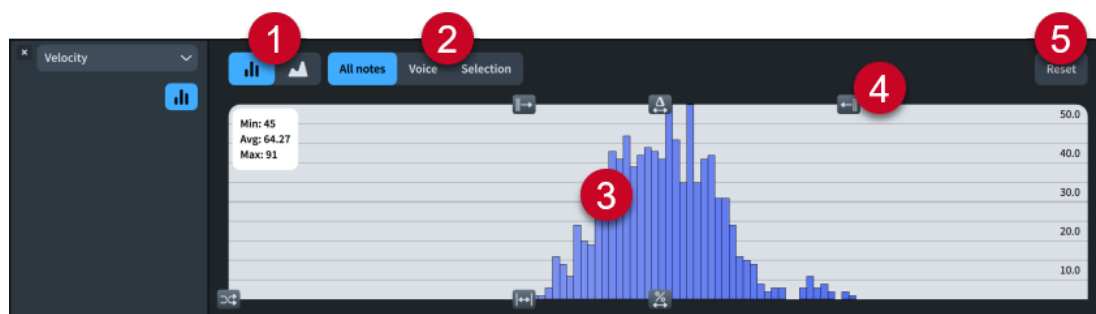
RELATED LINKS

[Selecting items in the Key Editor](#) on page 676

Histogram tool



The Histogram tool displays velocity and MIDI CC values as a chart, with values grouped according to their frequency distribution. It allows you to change values on a large scale, including across entire tracks; for example, increasing all velocity values proportionally.

- You can show the Histogram tool in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors by clicking **Histogram**  in the corresponding editor header.



1 Chart shape

Allows you to change the shape of the Histogram chart.

- Bars** : Values are displayed as bars.
- Area** : Values are displayed as an area.

2 Histogram filter

Allows you to filter the values shown in the Histogram tool.

- All/All notes**: Shows all values for all instruments currently shown in the Key Editor.
- Voice**: Shows only notes in the selected voice. Only available in the Velocity editor.
- Selection**: Shows only values for selected items.

3 Histogram chart

Shows values according to the selected filter. The X axis represents numerical values, while the Y axis represents the frequency distribution of the corresponding values.

4 Histogram controls

Allow you to change the values currently in view.

5 Reset

Resets all values currently in view.

TIP

If you want to change values on a smaller scale, you can use the Transform tool.

RELATED LINKS

- [Key Editor panel](#) on page 667
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675
- [Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671
- [Changing the velocity of notes](#) on page 692
- [Voices](#) on page 1438
- [Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232
- [Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466
- [Transform tool](#) on page 713
- [Velocity editor](#) on page 691
- [MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701

Histogram controls

Histogram controls allow you to change velocity and MIDI CC values on a large scale, in different ways.

- You can access Histogram controls when the Histogram tool is shown in the Key Editor.

Delta



Represents the center point of values. Allows you to move all displayed values to the right/left. This maintains explicit gaps between values.

Scale



Proportionally scales values. This maintains proportional relationships between values; that is, gaps between values widen when you scale multiply to the right, and narrow when you scale multiply to the left.

Spread



Spreads out values to both the right and left of the center point.

Lower Limit



Represents the lowest value. Allows you to raise low values.

Upper Limit



Represents the highest value. Allows you to lower high values.

Randomize



Allows you to randomize values by clicking on the button and dragging upwards/downwards. The higher your mouse pointer, the wider and more extreme the randomization. Randomization uses standard distribution on an approximate bell-shape.


Changing values using the Histogram tool

You can use the Histogram tool to change velocity and MIDI CC values on a large scale, including across entire tracks; for example, increasing all velocity values proportionally.



TIP

If you want to change values on a smaller scale, you can use the Transform tool.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
 - You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.
-


PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram**  to show the Histogram tool.
 2. Optional: Choose the appropriate Histogram tool filter for each editor.
 3. Use the available Histogram controls as required.
For example, you can click and drag **Scale**  to the right to increase the values currently in view proportionally.
-


Changing the Histogram tool filter

You can change the values shown in, and therefore affected by, the Histogram tool using the available filters. For example, if you only want the Histogram tool to affect values you have already selected.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.
-


PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram**  to show the Histogram tool.
 2. At the top of each Histogram tool, choose one of the following filters:
 - **All** (MIDI CC editor) or **All notes** (Velocity editor)
 - **Voice** (Velocity editor only)
 - **Selection**
-




Changing the Histogram chart shape

You can switch between showing values in the Histogram tool as bars or as an area.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

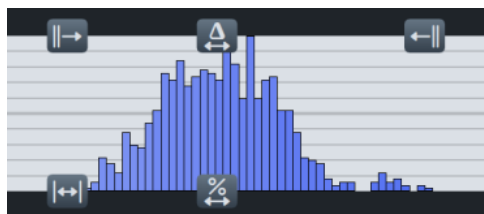
PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram**  to show the Histogram tool.
2. At the top of each Histogram tool, choose one of the following chart shapes:
 - **Bars** 
 - **Area** 

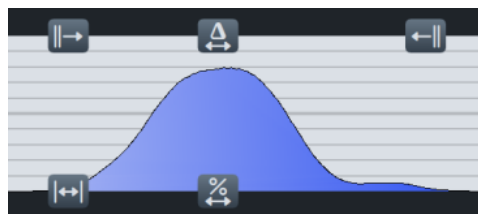
RESULT

The shape of the Histogram chart in each editor is changed.

EXAMPLE



Bars



Area

RELATED LINKS


[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

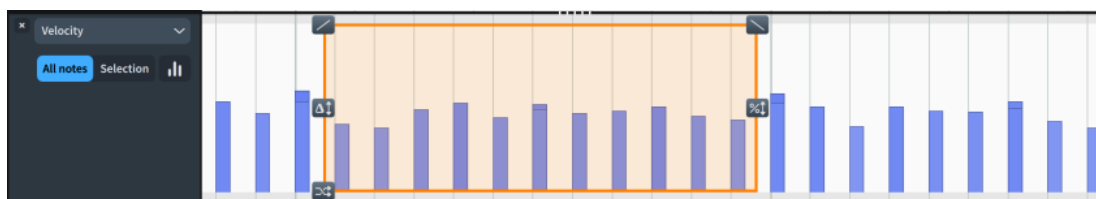
[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

Transform tool

The Transform tool allows you to change consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values within a selected range in a variety of ways. For example, you can increase all velocity values proportionally, but only in two specific bars.

- You can use the Transform tool in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors by clicking **Transform**  in the Key Editor panel toolbar, then clicking and dragging in one of those editors to make a Transform selection.



Transform selection in the Velocity editor

TIP

If you want to change values on a larger scale, you can use the Histogram tool.

RELATED LINKS

[Key Editor panel](#) on page 667

[Key Editor panel toolbar](#) on page 669

[Histogram tool](#) on page 710

[Velocity editor](#) on page 691

[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701

Transform controls

Transform controls allow you to change consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values within a Transform selection in different ways.

- You can access Transform controls when you have made a Transform selection in the Key Editor.

Tilt Left



Allows you to lower values according to an angled line by clicking on the button and dragging downwards. This lowers values on the left more than on the right.

Tilt Right



Allows you to lower values according to an angled line by clicking on the button and dragging downwards. This lowers values on the right more than on the left.

Delta



Represents the center point of values. Allows you to move all displayed values to upwards/downwards. This maintains explicit value gaps between bars.

Scale



Proportionally moves values upwards/downwards. This maintains proportional relationships between bars; that is, gaps between bars widen when you scale multiply upwards and narrow when you scale multiply downwards.

Randomize



Allows you to randomize values by clicking on the button and dragging upwards. The higher your mouse pointer, the wider and more extreme the randomization. Randomization uses standard distribution on an approximate bell-shape.

RELATED LINKS

[Histogram controls](#) on page 711

[Changing the velocity of notes](#) on page 692


Changing values using the Transform tool

You can make Transform selections around consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values, then use Transform controls to change the selected values in a variety of ways; for example, increasing all values proportionally.



TIP

If you want to change values on a larger scale, you can use the Histogram tool.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments that you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Transform**  to select the Transform tool.
 2. In the editor in which you want to change values, click and drag across the required range.
 3. Use the available Transform controls as required.
For example, you can click and drag **Scale**  upwards to increase values proportionally.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Key Editor panel toolbar](#) on page 669

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675

[Showing instruments in the Key Editor](#) on page 671

Key Editor configurations


Key Editor configurations allow you to open specific combinations of editors simultaneously. This can be much quicker than adding/closing the required editors manually.

For example, if you regularly switch between showing the Velocity and Dynamics editors, and several MIDI CC editors, you can save Key Editor configurations for these combinations, then apply each configuration as required.

Saving Key Editor configurations



You can save configurations of editors in the Key Editor; for example, if you regularly use the Velocity and Dynamics editors together. You can access Key Editor configurations in all projects on your computer.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have added the editors you want to save in your Key Editor configuration.

PROCEDURE

1. Save the editors currently open in the Key Editor as a Key Editor configuration in one of the following ways:
 - To save a new Key Editor configuration, click **Presets**  at the bottom left of the Key Editor, then choose **Save Configuration**.
 - To replace an existing Key Editor configuration, click **Presets**  at the bottom left of the Key Editor, choose **Replace Configuration**, then select the configuration you want to replace.
2. If you saved a new Key Editor configuration, enter a name for the configuration in the **Configuration Name** dialog that opens.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS


[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor](#) on page 675


Applying Key Editor configurations

You can apply Key Editor configurations to projects, which adds the editors saved in that configuration to the Key Editor and replaces any editors that were already open.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have saved at least one Key Editor configuration on your computer.


PROCEDURE

1. At the bottom left of the Key Editor, click **Presets** .
2. Select the configuration you want to apply.


Deleting Key Editor configurations

You can delete Key Editor configurations; for example, if you no longer require a specific configuration after finishing a project.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. At the bottom left of the Key Editor, click **Presets** .
 2. Choose **Delete Configuration**.
 3. Select the configuration you want to delete.
-

Mixer

The Mixer allows you to control the volume, panning, and sounds of channels in playback.

You can access the Mixer in the following places:

- In the Mixer panel in the lower zone
- In the **Mixer** window

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer window](#) on page 718


[Zones and panels](#) on page 37

[Stage templates](#) on page 730

[Space templates](#) on page 738

Mixer panel

The Mixer panel allows you to control the volume and panning of channels in playback. When the Mixer panel is sufficiently tall, it also provides access to channel strips. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

- You can show the Mixer panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Mixer**  in the lower zone toolbar.



The Mixer panel comprises the following:

1 Mixer toolbar

Contains tools that allow you to edit the mix, and to hide/show and add/remove channels.

2 Channel strips

Allow you to change the sound of the channel; for example, by loading inserts or changing its equalization.

3 Channels

Allow you to change the volume and pan position of the corresponding track or aspect of playback. There are audio and MIDI channels for each instrument/voice track, and additional channels, such as for the click and master output.

When additional channels are available beyond those currently in view, channels at the right/left edges of the Mixer appear faded.

Any changes you make in the Mixer are automatically saved and applied to the project.

TIP

In order to control the volume levels in your project, we recommend that you first input dynamics and adjust the dynamic curve to suit your project before using the track faders.


RELATED LINKS

- [Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719
- [Mixer channels](#) on page 720
- [Zones and panels](#) on page 37
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Playback Options for dynamics](#) on page 954
- [Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Mixer window

The **Mixer** window allows you to control the volume and panning of channels in playback. It also provides permanent access to channel strips.

You can hide/show the **Mixer** window in any of the following ways:

- Press **F3**.
- In the toolbar, click **Show Mixer** .



The **Mixer** window comprises the following:

- 1 Mixer toolbar**
Contains tools that allow you to edit the mix, and to hide/show and add/remove channels.
- 2 Channel strips**
Allow you to change the sound of the channel; for example, by loading inserts or changing its equalization.
- 3 Channels**

Allow you to change the volume and pan position of the corresponding track or aspect of playback. There are audio and MIDI channels for each instrument/voice track, and additional channels, such as for the click and master output.

When additional channels are available beyond those currently in view, channels at the right/left edges of the Mixer appear faded.

Any changes you make in the Mixer are automatically saved and applied to the project.

TIP

In order to control the volume levels in your project, we recommend that you first input dynamics and adjust the dynamic curve to suit your project before using the track faders.

RELATED LINKS

[Toolbar](#) on page 30

[Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719

[Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722

[Muting/Soloing tracks](#) on page 547

[Changing the volume of channels](#) on page 725


[Playback Options for dynamics](#) on page 954

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Hiding/Showing the Mixer window

You can hide and show the **Mixer** window at any time; for example, if you do not want it in view when working on the music in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the **Mixer** window in any of the following ways:
 - Press **F3**.
 - In the toolbar, click **Show Mixer** .
 - Choose **Window > Mixer**.
-



Mixer toolbar

The Mixer toolbar contains tools that allow you to edit the mix, and to hide/show and add/remove channels. It is located at the top of the Mixer, both in the lower zone and in the **Mixer** window.

Channel type buttons

Allow you to hide/show channels according to their type, and in any combination.

Deactivate all

Allows you to deactivate all mute  and solo  states by clicking the corresponding button. Indicates whether any channels have an active mute or solo state.

Add Effects Channel



Adds an FX channel.

Remove Effects Channel



Removes the FX channel furthest to the right in the Mixer.

Live Stage



Opens the **Live Stage** dialog.

Live Space



Opens the **Live Space** dialog.

Resize Lower Zone



Allows you to change the height of the lower zone. Only available in the Mixer panel.

RELATED LINKS

[Live Stage dialog](#) on page 732

[Live Space dialog](#) on page 739

[Stage templates](#) on page 730

[Space templates](#) on page 738

Mixer channels

Mixer channels allow the sources connected to them, such as instrument tracks, to produce sound. You can access all channels in the Mixer panel and **Mixer** window, and individual channels in the Track Inspector for the corresponding track.



Each channel in the Mixer panel provides the following controls and displays:

1 Pan control

Allows you to position the sound/MIDI output of the channel on the stereo spectrum for stereo playback.

2 Fader value

Displays the current volume as a value, corresponding to the position of the fader. Allows you to enter the volume level directly.

- Audio channels use dB.
- MIDI channels use MIDI volume, from 0 to 127.

3 Fader

Allows you to control the volume level of the channel.

4 Channel meter

Indicates the output volume of the channel in real time.

5 Mute

Allows you to mute the channel. Indicates whether the channel has an active mute state.

6 Solo

Allows you to solo the channel. Indicates whether the channel has an active solo state.

7 Channel name

Displays the name of the channel.

Instrument channels display the full instrument name set for that instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog and its instrument number, if applicable.

RELATED LINKS

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522

[Edit Instrument Names dialog](#) on page 184

[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

[Renaming channels](#) on page 728

Types of Mixer channels

There are different types of channels available in the Mixer. The channel type can affect the controls available for the corresponding channel.

Instruments

There is a channel for each instrument/voice track in your project. When instrument channels are shown, all applicable channels are included, even if they are spread across multiple plug-in instances.

There is an additional instrument channel named "DoricoBeep", which allows you to control the volume of the metronome click.

MIDI

Every VST instrument in your project has its own MIDI channel in addition to its VST channel. These MIDI channels allow you to change the MIDI volume and MIDI pan of each instrument.

Video

Allows you to control the volume of video audio.

FX

Allows you to control the volume of send effects, such as reverb. By default, the Mixer contains a single FX channel named "Reverb", which has REVERence loaded as an insert.

FX channels have green backgrounds.

TIP

For more information about REVerence, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

Output

Allows you to control the master output volume. The **Output** channel is always shown and has a red background.

RELATED LINKS

[Renaming channels](#) on page 728

[Adding FX channels](#) on page 727

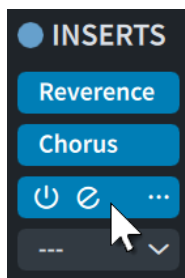
[Loading inserts into channels](#) on page 728

Mixer channel strips

Each channel in the Mixer has its own channel strip, which contains the channel controls. Channel strips are located at the top of the **Mixer** window permanently, and at the top of the Mixer panel when it is sufficiently tall.

Each channel strip contains the following types of controls:

Inserts



Each channel has four slots into which you can load an insert. You can select inserts from the menu.

The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

The indicator can have one of the following states:

- **Disabled** : No inserts are loaded into the channel.
- **Enabled** : At least one insert is loaded into the channel, and inserts are enabled.
- **Bypassed** : At least one insert is loaded into the channel, and all inserts are bypassed.

The following controls are available for slots with loaded inserts:

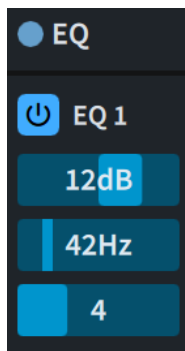
- **Enable Insert** : Enables/Bypasses the insert slot.
- **Edit Insert** : Opens the plug-in window for the loaded plug-in, which allows you to edit its settings.
- **Insert menu** : Opens the plug-in menu, which allows you to select a different plug-in to load into the insert slot.

TIP

- For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

- You can access inserts for individual channels in the Track Inspector for the corresponding track.
-


EQ



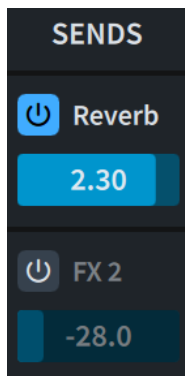
Each channel has four bands for default EQ.

The indicator allows you to enable and disable the section. The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

The following controls are available for each EQ band:

- **Enable EQ** : Enables/Bypasses the corresponding band.
- **Gain**: Sets the amount of attenuation/boost for the corresponding band in dB.
- **Frequency**: Sets the frequency of the corresponding band in Hz.
- **Q**: Controls the width of the band; that is, how many frequencies above/below it also affects, and by how much.


Sends



Each channel has a send slot for each FX channel.

The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

The following controls are available for each send slot:

- **Enable Send** : Enables/Bypasses the corresponding send slot.
- **Gain slider**: Sets the amount of sound sent post-fader to the corresponding FX channel.

TIP

You can use stage and space templates to set the send gain for all instruments in the project automatically.

RELATED LINKS

[Loading inserts into channels](#) on page 728

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522
[Stage templates](#) on page 730
[Space templates](#) on page 738

Hiding/Showing channels

You can hide/show channels in the Mixer according to their type; for example, you can hide MIDI channels while working on instrument channels.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer toolbar, activate/deactivate each channel type.
-

RESULT

Channels are shown in the Mixer when their type button is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

Scrolling through channels

When many channels are shown in the Mixer, you can scroll through them in order to view channels that do not fit in the view.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, scroll through channels in any of the following ways:
 - Scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel, or swipe upwards/downwards on a touchpad.
 - Click and drag, anywhere outside of channel faders, to the right/left.
-

Changing the height of channels

You can change the vertical space occupied by channels and channel strips in the Mixer; for example, to make channel strips taller when loading inserts or changing EQ settings.

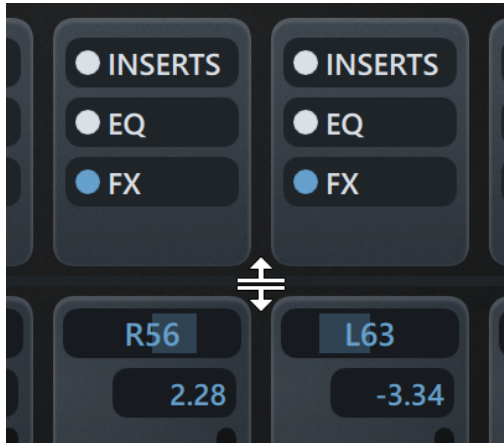
PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, on the line between channel strips and channels, click and drag upwards/downwards.

When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.



RELATED LINKS

- [Mixer panel](#) on page 717
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Mixer window](#) on page 718
- [Hiding/Showing the Mixer window](#) on page 719
- [Mixer channels](#) on page 720
- [Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722

Changing the volume of channels

You can change and reset the volume of individual channels in the Mixer; for example, to balance instruments in an orchestral project.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, change the volume of channels in any of the following ways:
 - To increase their volume, drag their faders upwards.
 - To decrease their volume, drag their faders downwards.
 - **Alt/Opt**-click the fader value, enter a new value, then press **Return**.

TIP

- To set output channels to their maximum value, enter **inf**.
 - To set output channels to their minimum value, enter **-inf** or **-oo**.
-
- To reset their volume to the default value, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click or double-click their fader values.



- To reset the volume of all channels, choose **Play > Apply Default Output Level**.

RESULT

The volume of the corresponding channels is changed.

TIP

You can change the default output level for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**. By default, this is set to **-6 dB** to avoid clipping in projects with large ensembles.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

[Mixer window](#) on page 718

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Panning channels

You can change the pan position of individual channels on the stereo spectrum; for example, if you want the pan positions of instruments in an orchestral project to match their positions on a real-life stage.

TIP

You can use stage templates to set pan positions for all instruments in the project automatically.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, change the pan position of each channel in any of the following ways:
 - In the pan control, click positions directly, or click and drag to the right/left.



- **Alt/Opt** -click the pan value, enter a new value, then press **Return**.
The available pan range is **-100** to **100**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer channels](#) on page 720

[Stage templates](#) on page 730

Adding FX channels

You can add multiple FX channels to the Mixer; for example, if you want to use a different reverb sound for each instrument family.

The Mixer can contain a maximum of eight FX channels.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer toolbar, click **Add Effects Channel** .
-

RESULT

A new FX channel is added. It is positioned to the right of all existing FX channels in the Mixer.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can load inserts into the FX channel and change its EQ using its channel strip.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer panel](#) on page 717

[Mixer window](#) on page 718

[Mixer channels](#) on page 720

[Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722

[Hiding/Showing channels](#) on page 724

[Loading inserts into channels](#) on page 728

[Changing the reverb plug-in](#) on page 729

Removing FX channels

You can delete FX channels from the Mixer; for example, if you no longer need multiple reverb sounds.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer toolbar, click **Remove Effects Channel** .
-

RESULT

The FX channel furthest to the right in the Mixer is removed.

Renaming channels

You can rename channels and reset renamed channels to their default name. For example, to help you identify different FX channels.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, double-click the channel name you want to change to open the channel name text field.
 2. Rename the channel in any of the following ways:
 - Enter a new channel name, or edit the existing name.
 - To reset the channel name, delete the existing name.
 3. Press **Return**.
-

Loading inserts into channels

You can load up to four inserts into each channel, excluding MIDI channels. For example, you can load specific EQ plug-ins instead of using the default EQ channel strips, and apply amp modeling plug-ins to clean guitar channels.

TIP

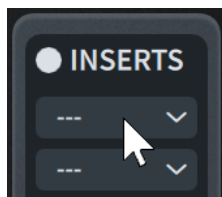
For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.


PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
2. Click an insert slot and select the plug-in you want to load from the menu.



3. Optional: If you want to edit settings for the new plug-in, click **Edit Insert**  to open its plug-in window.
 4. Optional: If you loaded EQ plug-ins, deactivate the EQ channel strip in the corresponding channels.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Mixer panel](#) on page 717
- [Mixer window](#) on page 718
- [Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722

[Changing the sound used for the click](#) on page 533



Enabling/Bypassing inserts

You can enable/bypass individual inserts without affecting their settings; for example, if you want to compare how a channel sounds with and without a specific insert.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
 2. In each insert slot you want to enable/bypass, do one of the following:
 - To enable/bypass individual inserts, click **Enable Insert**  in the corresponding slots.
 - To enable/bypass all inserts for channels, click the **Inserts** indicator  in the corresponding channel strips.
-

RESULT

The corresponding inserts are enabled/bypassed.

- Enabled inserts appear blue.
- Bypassed inserts appear yellow.


Removing inserts

You can remove individual inserts you have loaded into channels.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
 2. In the slot whose insert you want to remove, click the insert menu  and select --- from the menu.
-

Changing the reverb plug-in

You can change the plug-in used for reverb; for example, if you want to use a specific reverb sound. By default, the reverb plug-in REVerence is loaded into the first FX channel.



TIP

For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

PREREQUISITE

- The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.
- The FX channel is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
 2. In the FX channel strip, click the insert menu  in the REVerence insert slot, and select the reverb plug-in you want to use from the menu.
 3. Optional: If you want to edit settings for the new plug-in, click **Edit Insert**  to open its plug-in window.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer window](#) on page 718

[Mixer channel strips](#) on page 722

[Hiding/Showing channels](#) on page 724

[Space templates](#) on page 738

Stage templates

Stage templates allow you to set appropriate stage positions for all instruments in the project simultaneously, using the visual representation of a stage as seen from above to make this process easier. Stage positions determine the panning and reverb settings for instruments in playback.

When you apply stage templates to projects, Dorico Elements changes the panning and reverb settings for all channels in the Mixer simultaneously.

To match instruments in the project to stage positions defined in the stage template, Dorico Elements performs the following sequence of considerations in order of preference, first for instruments in groups, then for ungrouped instruments:

- 1 Soloist instruments are matched with soloist stage positions for the corresponding instrument type, if defined.
- 2 Numbered instruments are matched with numbered stage positions for the corresponding instrument type, if defined.
- 3 Instruments are matched with unnumbered stage positions for the corresponding instrument type, if defined.
- 4 Instruments are matched with instrument family stage positions for the corresponding instrument type, if defined.
- 5 Instruments without a suitable stage position use the fallback position.

Where possible, Dorico Elements uses groups in stage templates for the corresponding player groups in Setup mode.

You can override the stage template applied to the current project in the **Live Stage** dialog, such as by changing the arrangement of some instruments. You can then save your overrides as a new stage template.

You can also export custom stage templates; for example, to share them with other users. Stage templates are saved as `.dorico_stt` files.

NOTE

- Stage templates are available in all projects you open or create on your computer. Any changes you make to stage templates affect new instruments you add to existing projects that use those stage templates.

- In combination with stage templates, you can use space templates to hear your arrangement of instruments in different spaces and with different amounts of reverb.

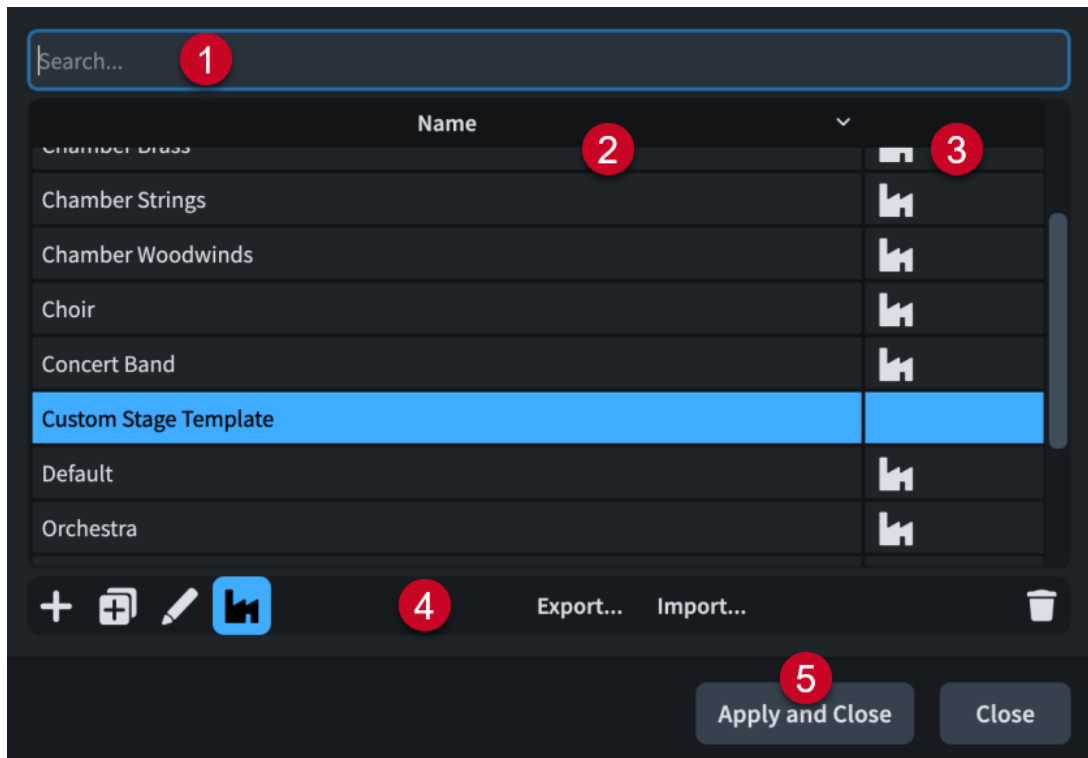
RELATED LINKS

- [Space templates](#) on page 738
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558
- [Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127
- [Player groups](#) on page 167
- [Mixer](#) on page 717

Apply Stage Template dialog




The **Apply Stage Template** dialog allows you to change the stage template applied to the current project and to import/export stage templates. It also allows you to access the **Edit Stage Template** dialog.

- You can open the **Apply Stage Template** dialog by choosing **Play > Stage Template**.





The **Apply Stage Template** dialog comprises the following:

- 1 Search field**
Allows you to filter stage templates in the list according to your entry.
- 2 Name column**
Contains a list of the stage templates available on your computer. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.
- 3 Factory column**
Contains the factory symbol if the stage template in the corresponding row is a factory default stage template. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.
- 4 Action bar**
Contains the following options:

- **Add Stage Template** : Opens the **Edit Stage Template** dialog and allows you to create a new stage template.
- **Duplicate Stage Template** : Opens the **Edit Stage Template** dialog and allows you to create a new stage template that starts as a duplicate of the selected one.
- **Edit Stage Template** : Opens the **Edit Stage Template** dialog and allows you to edit the existing selected stage template.

NOTE

You cannot edit factory default stage templates.

- **Show Factory** : Allows you to hide/show factory default stage templates in the table.
- **Export**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected stage templates as `.dorico_stt` files. You can then import the `.dorico_stt` files into Dorico Elements on other computers and share them with other users.
- **Import**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.dorico_stt` files that you want to import as stage templates.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected stage templates.

NOTE

You cannot delete factory default stage templates.

5 Apply and Close

Applies the selected stage template to the project and closes the dialog.

Live Stage dialog

The **Live Stage** dialog allows you to change the arrangement of instruments in the current project, which affects their panning and reverb settings in the Mixer in real time.

- You can open the **Live Stage** dialog by clicking **Live Stage**  in the Mixer toolbar.



The **Live Stage** dialog provides a visual representation of a stage, as seen from above. The back of the stage is at the top of the dialog, while the front of the stage is at the bottom of the dialog.

The horizontal axis determines pan positions, from left to right. The vertical axis determines the amount of sound sent to FX channels for reverb; typically, from low reverb at the bottom to more reverb at the top.

Each instrument in the project appears as a colored dot, representing its stage position, followed by its full instrument name. Each instrument family uses a different color.

You can click and drag instruments to new stage positions.

The action bar at the bottom of the dialog contains the following options:

Save as New Stage Template

Saves the current arrangement of instruments in the **Live Stage** dialog as a new custom stage template, allowing you to use it in future projects.

Expand



Moves instruments proportionally outwards. Applies to either only selected instruments, or all instruments when no instruments are selected.

Contract



Moves instruments proportionally inwards. Applies to either only selected instruments, or all instruments when no instruments are selected.

NOTE

Instruments do not appear in the **Live Stage** dialog in any of the following circumstances:

- If their expression/map settings prevent them from using space templates.
- If they use MIDI instruments for playback, rather than VST instruments.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719

[Expression maps](#) on page 761

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780




[Playback templates](#) on page 558

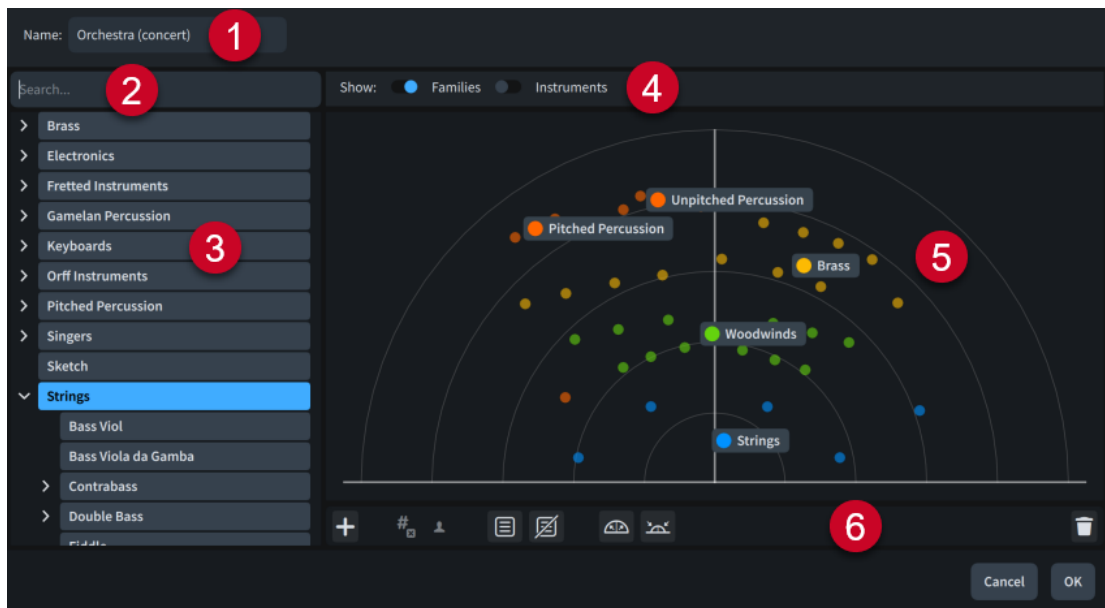
[VST and MIDI panel](#) on page 525

Edit Stage Template dialog

The **Edit Stage Template** dialog allows you to create new stage templates and edit existing ones. You can define the stage positions of instrument families, individual instruments, and soloists, independently of the instruments in the project.

You can open the **Edit Stage Template** dialog in the following ways:

- In the **Live Stage** dialog, click **Save as New Stage Template**.
- In the **Apply Stage Template** dialog, click **Add Stage Template** , **Duplicate Stage Template** , or **Edit Stage Template** .



The **Edit Stage Template** dialog comprises the following:

1 Name

Allows you to set the name of the stage template that appears in the program; for example, in the **Apply Stage Template** dialog.

2 Search field

Allows you to filter instruments in the list according to your entry.

3 Instrument list

Contains all the instruments available on your computer and within your search filter, if applicable.

4 Show

Allows you to hide/show the names of instrument families and individual instruments, independently of each other. Hiding names also disables editing of the corresponding category, and their colored dots appear more transparent.

5 Stage

Provides a visual representation of a stage, as seen from above. The back of the stage is at the top of the dialog, while the front of the stage is at the bottom of the dialog.

The horizontal axis determines pan positions, from left to right. The vertical axis determines the amount of sound sent to FX channels for reverb; typically, from low reverb at the bottom to more reverb at the top.

Each instrument and instrument family appears as a colored dot, representing its stage position, followed by its full instrument name. Instrument family dots are larger than individual instrument dots.

Instrument families are color-coded, meaning instrument families and the instruments within them use the same color.









When you add multiple instruments of the same type to a stage template, Dorico Elements automatically numbers them.

Parenthesized indications for soloists and groups are automatically added to the ends of instrument names.

You can click and drag instruments to new stage positions.

6 Action bar

Contains the following options:

- **Add** : Adds the instrument or instrument family currently selected in the instrument list to the center of the stage. You can also click and drag instruments from the instrument list to specific positions on the stage.
- **Un-numbered** : Includes/Excludes the selected instrument from instrument numbering. Sets the stage position for the corresponding numbered instrument when multiple instruments of the same type exist in the same project.
- **Soloist** : Turns the selected instrument into a soloist. Sets the stage position for instruments of the corresponding type that are designated as soloists.
- **Create Group** : Creates a group containing the instruments selected on the stage.
- **Remove From Group** : Removes the selected instruments from their corresponding group.
- **Expand** : Moves instruments proportionally outwards. Applies to either only selected instruments, or all instruments when no instruments are selected.
- **Contract** : Moves instruments proportionally inwards. Applies to either only selected instruments, or all instruments when no instruments are selected.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected instruments from the stage template.

Applying/Resetting stage templates

You can change the stage template applied to the current project; for example, to use a different arrangement of instruments for panning and reverb. Re-selecting stage templates resets them to their default settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Stage Template** to open the **Apply Stage Template** dialog.
2. Select the stage template that you want to use.
3. Click **Apply and Close**.

RESULT

The stage template applied to the current project is changed. If you re-selected the stage template already in use, the stage template is reset.

TIP

You can change the default stage template used for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the space template applied to the project; for example, to hear your music with the acoustic qualities of a different performance space.

RELATED LINKS

[Applying/Resetting space templates](#) on page 742

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Changing the default space template](#) on page 744




Creating stage templates

You can create new stage templates that you can apply to other projects, including specifying stage positions for soloists and instrument families.










PREREQUISITE

- You have added the instruments that you want to include in your stage template to the current project.
- You have loaded sounds for the instruments in the current project; for example, by applying a playback template.
- The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer toolbar, click **Live Stage**  to open the **Live Stage** dialog.
2. Select the instruments that you want to move to new stage positions.
3. Move the selected instruments in any of the following ways:
 - Click and drag them.
 - To move them proportionally outwards, click **Expand** .
 - To move them proportionally inwards, click **Contract** .

TIP

- You can click and hold **Expand**  and **Contract**  to move instruments smoothly until you release the mouse pointer.
 - When no instruments are selected, **Expand**  and **Contract**  apply to all instruments on the stage.
-
4. Click **Save as New Stage Template** to open the **Edit Stage Template** dialog.
 5. Enter a name for the stage template in the **Name** field.
 6. Optional: Edit the stage template using the available options.
 - To add an instrument to the stage template, click and drag it from the instrument list to the stage.
 - To delete instruments from the stage template, select them, then click **Delete**  in the action bar.
 - To turn an instrument into a soloist, select it, then click **Soloist**  in the action bar.
 - To include/exclude instruments from instrument numbering, select them, then click **Un-numbered**  in the action bar.
 - To add instruments to a new group, select them, then click **Create Group**  in the action bar.
 - To remove instruments from groups, select them, then click **Remove From Group**  in the action bar.
 7. Click **OK** to confirm your settings and close the dialog.

RESULT

Your new stage template is created. It is available to use in the current project and all projects that you create/open on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

- [Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719
- [Applying/Resetting playback templates](#) on page 564
- [Adding players](#) on page 124
- [Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

Importing stage templates

You can import stage templates into projects; for example, if someone you are working with exported their custom stage template for you to use. Stage templates are saved as `.dorico_stt` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Stage Template** to open the **Apply Stage Template** dialog.
2. Click **Import** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the stage template file that you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected stage template is imported. It becomes available in the current project and all projects you create/open on your computer.

TIP

You can also import stage templates by dragging `.dorico_stt` files into a Dorico Elements project window.

Exporting stage templates

You can export stage templates so you can send them to other users or use them on other computers. By default, any stage templates that you create are available in all projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Stage Template** to open the **Apply Stage Template** dialog.
2. Select the stage templates that you want to export.
3. Click **Export** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Specify a name and location for the stage template files.
5. Click **Choose**.

RESULT

The selected stage templates are exported and saved in the selected location as separate `.dorico_stt` files.

Space templates

Space templates allow you to define the panning and reverb settings of a space, such as a room or concert hall, so that you can hear how your project might sound in the corresponding space.

For example, the factory default space templates add more reverb to instruments positioned at the back of the stage to emulate how music sounds when played from a distance.

When you apply space templates to projects, Dorico Elements changes the panning and reverb settings for all channels in the Mixer simultaneously.

Space templates are available in all projects that you open or create on your computer. You can export custom space templates; for example, to share them with other users.

Space templates are saved as `.dorico_spt` files.

TIP

In combination with space templates, you can use stage templates to position instruments in different arrangements for playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Stage templates](#) on page 730

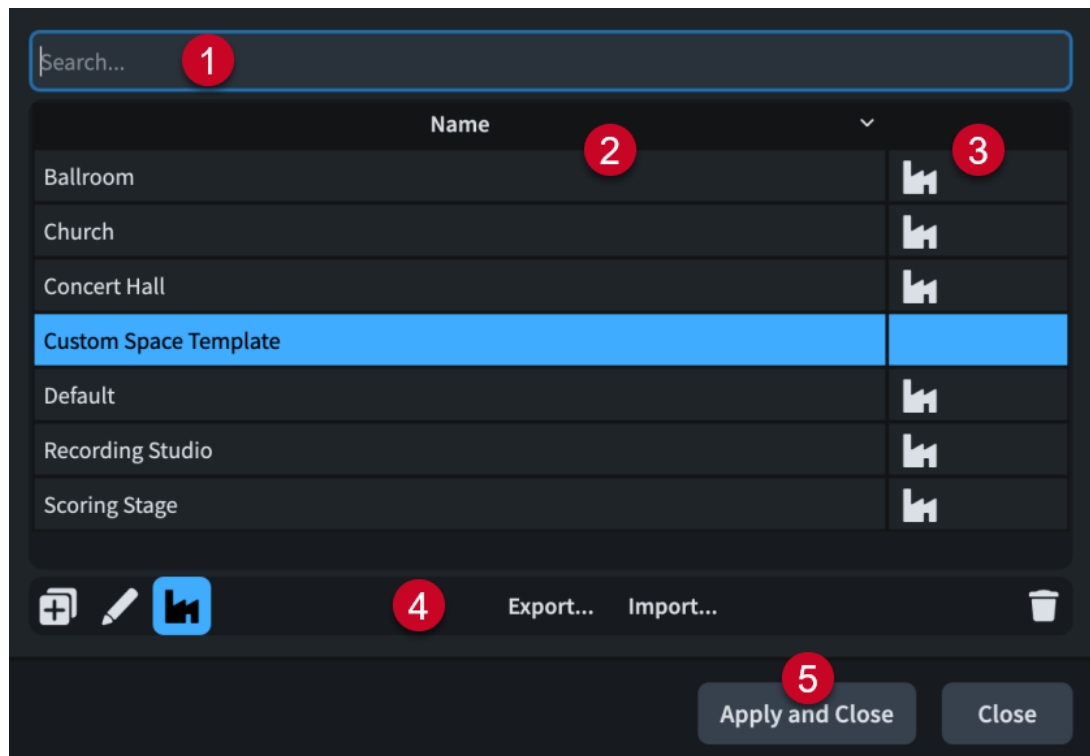
[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Mixer](#) on page 717

Apply Space Template dialog

The **Apply Space Template** dialog allows you to change the space template applied to the current project and to import/export space templates. It also allows you to access the **Edit Space Template** dialog.

- You can open the **Apply Space Template** dialog by choosing **Play > Space Template**.



The **Apply Playback Template** dialog comprises the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to filter space templates in the list according to your entry.

2 Name column



Contains a list of the space templates available on your computer. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.

3 Factory column

Contains the factory symbol if the space template in the corresponding row is a factory default space template. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.



4 Action bar

Contains the following options:

- **Duplicate Space Template** : Opens the **Edit Space Template** dialog and allows you to create a new space template that starts as a duplicate of the selected one.
- **Edit Space Template** : Opens the **Edit Space Template** dialog and allows you to edit the existing selected space template.

NOTE

You cannot edit factory default space templates.

- **Show Factory** : Allows you to hide/show factory default space templates in the table.
- **Export**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected space templates as `.dorico_spt` files. You can then import the `.dorico_spt` files into Dorico Elements on other computers and share them with other users.
- **Import**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.dorico_spt` files that you want to import as space templates.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected space templates.

NOTE

You cannot delete factory default space templates.

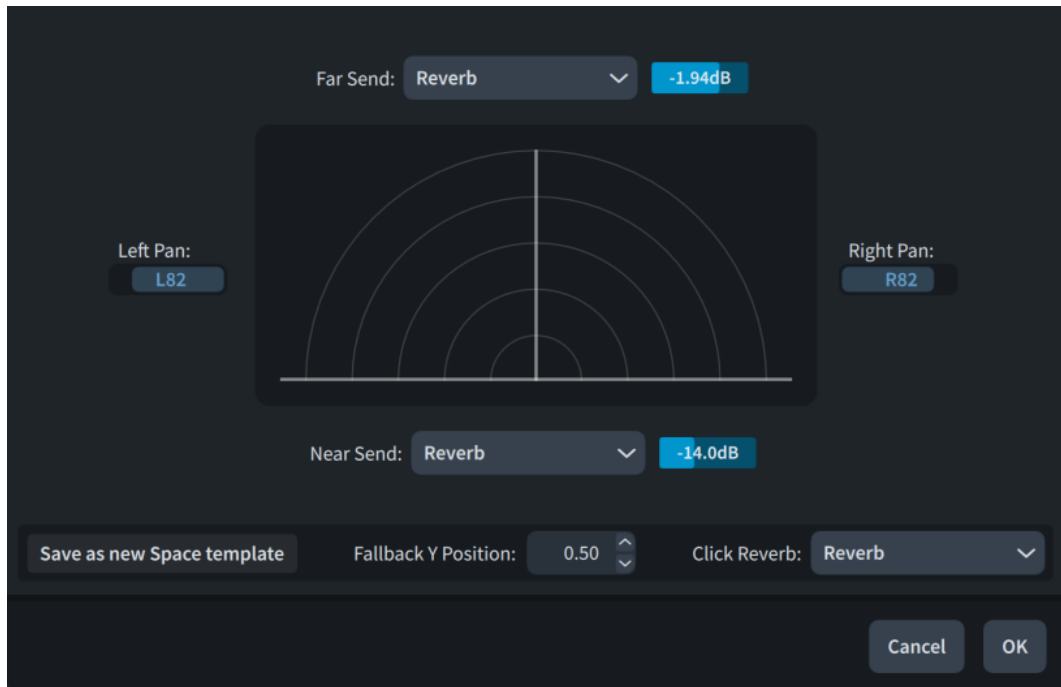
5 Apply and Close

Applies the selected space template to the project and closes the dialog.

Live Space dialog

The **Live Space** dialog allows you to change the maximum pan positions and FX send values for instruments in the current project.

- You can open the **Live Space** dialog by clicking **Live Space**  in the Mixer toolbar.



The **Live Space** dialog contains the following options:

Far Send

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for instruments at the back of the stage. The gain slider sets the amount of sound sent post-fader to the selected FX channel.

Near Send

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for instruments at the front of the stage. The gain slider sets the amount of sound sent post-fader to the selected FX channel.

Left Pan

Sets the maximum left pan position.

Right Pan

Sets the maximum right pan position.

Save as New Space Template

Saves the current settings in the **Live Space** dialog as a new custom space template, allowing you to use it in future projects.

Fallback Y Position

Sets the default near/far position for instruments in the project that are not defined in the stage template applied to the project.

Click Reverb

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for the metronome click.

NOTE

The send value for the metronome click is fixed at a low value.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719



[Types of Mixer channels](#) on page 721

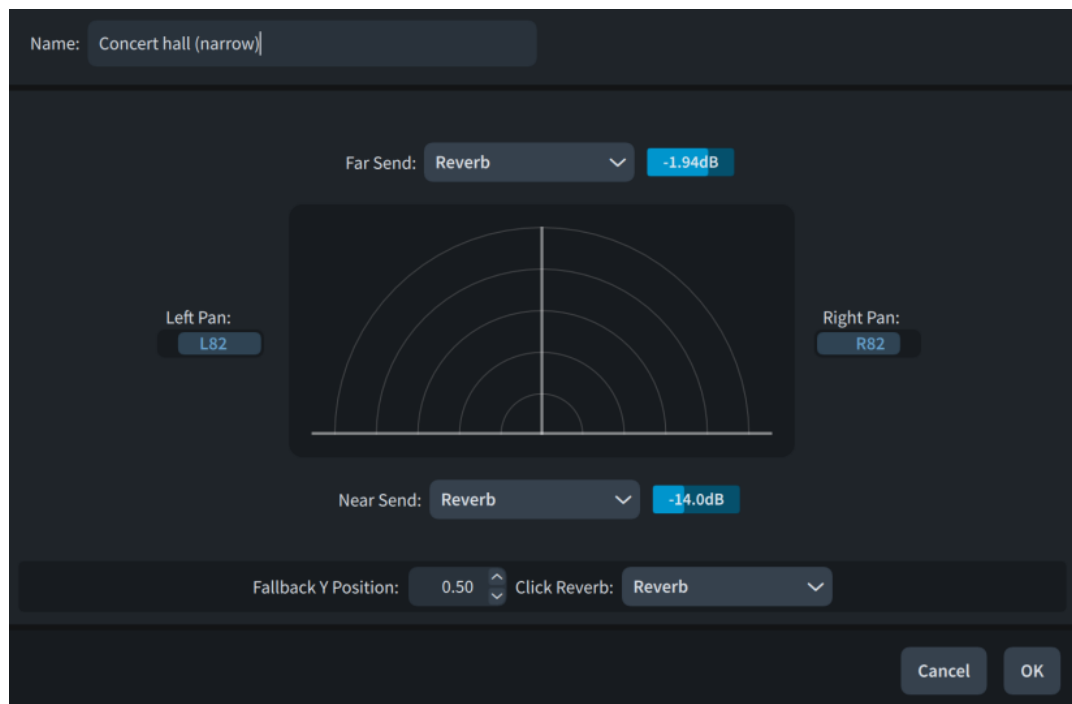
[Changing the reverb plug-in](#) on page 729
[Adding FX channels](#) on page 727
[Live Stage dialog](#) on page 732

Edit Space Template dialog

The **Edit Space Template** dialog allows you to edit the settings of space templates.

You can open the **Edit Space Template** dialog in the following ways:

- In the **Live Space** dialog, click **Save as New Space Template**.
- In the **Apply Space Template** dialog, click **Duplicate Space Template**  or **Edit Space Template** .



The **Edit Space Template** dialog contains the following options:

Name

Allows you to set the name of the space template that appears in the program; for example, in the **Apply Space Template** dialog.

Far Send

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for instruments at the back of the stage. The gain slider sets the amount of sound sent post-fader to the selected FX channel.

Near Send

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for instruments at the front of the stage. The gain slider sets the amount of sound sent post-fader to the selected FX channel.

Left Pan

Sets the maximum left pan position.

Right Pan

Sets the maximum right pan position.

Fallback Y Position

Sets the default near/far position for instruments in the project that are not defined in the stage template applied to the project.

Click Reverb

Allows you to select the FX channel that you want to use for the metronome click.

NOTE

The send value for the metronome click is fixed at a low value.

Applying/Resetting space templates

You can change the space template applied to the current project; for example, to hear your music with the acoustic qualities of a different performance space. Re-selecting space templates resets them to their default settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Space Template** to open the **Apply Space Template** dialog.
 2. Select the space template that you want to use.
 3. Click **Apply and Close**.
-

RESULT

The space template applied to the current project is changed. If you re-selected the space template already in use, the space template is reset.

The panning of the corresponding Mixer channels and the amount of channel output sent to the selected FX channel are changed.

Any required inserts on FX channels are loaded, provided the plug-ins are installed on your computer.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the stage template applied to the project; for example, to try a different arrangement of instruments.

RELATED LINKS

[Mixer channels](#) on page 720

[Panning channels](#) on page 726

[Applying/Resetting stage templates](#) on page 735

Creating space templates

You can create new space templates that you can apply to other projects.

PREREQUISITE

- You have added the FX channels that you want to use for reverb, and loaded the required plug-ins into them.
 - The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer toolbar, click **Live Space**  to open the **Live Space** dialog.

2. From the **Far Send** menu, select the FX channel that you want to use for reverb for instruments positioned at the back of the stage.
 3. From the **Near Send** menu, select the FX channel that you want to use for reverb for instruments positioned at the front of the stage.
 4. To change the amount of sound sent to the **Far Send** and **Near Send** FX channels, click and drag the corresponding gain slider.
 5. To change the maximum pan positions, click and drag the **Left Pan** and **Right Pan** gain sliders.
 6. To change the default near/far position for instruments not defined in the stage template, change the value for **Fallback Y Position**.
 7. From the **Click Reverb** menu, select the FX channel that you want to use for the metronome click.
 8. Click **Save as New Space Template** to open the **Edit Space Template** dialog.
 9. Enter a name for the space template in the **Name** field.
 10. Click **OK** to confirm your settings and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

Your new space template is created. It is available to use in the current project and all projects that you create/open on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

- [Mixer toolbar](#) on page 719
- [Adding FX channels](#) on page 727
- [Loading inserts into channels](#) on page 728
- [Changing the reverb plug-in](#) on page 729

Importing space templates

You can import space templates into projects; for example, if someone you are working with exported their custom space template for you to use. Space templates are saved as `.dorico_spt` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Space Template** to open the **Apply Space Template** dialog.
 2. Click **Import** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 3. Locate and select the space template file that you want to import.
 4. Click **Open**.
-

RESULT

The selected space template is imported. It becomes available in the current project and all projects that you create/open on your computer.

TIP

- You can also import space templates by dragging `.dorico_spt` files into a Dorico Elements project window.
 - Space templates are automatically imported alongside playback templates that use them.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Playback templates](#) on page 558

[Importing playback templates](#) on page 566

Exporting space templates

You can export space templates so you can send them to other users or use them on other computers. By default, any space templates that you create are available in all projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play > Space Template** to open the **Apply Space Template** dialog.
2. Select the space templates that you want to export.
3. Click **Export** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Specify a name and location for the space template files.
5. Click **Choose**.

RESULT

The selected space templates are exported and saved in the selected location as separate `.dorico_spt` files.

Changing the default space template

You can change the default space template used for all future projects; for example, if you want all your projects to use a different reverb sound than Dorico Elements provides by default.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use a custom space template, you have created or imported that space template.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Play**.
3. In the **Playback Template** subsection, select a space template from the **Space template override** menu.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Creating space templates](#) on page 742

[Importing space templates](#) on page 743

Library

In Dorico Elements, the library is the total compilation of visual items and options that are available in all projects on your computer. It combines factory default settings, custom items/options you have saved as default, and items/options only available in the current project.


Layout Options dialog

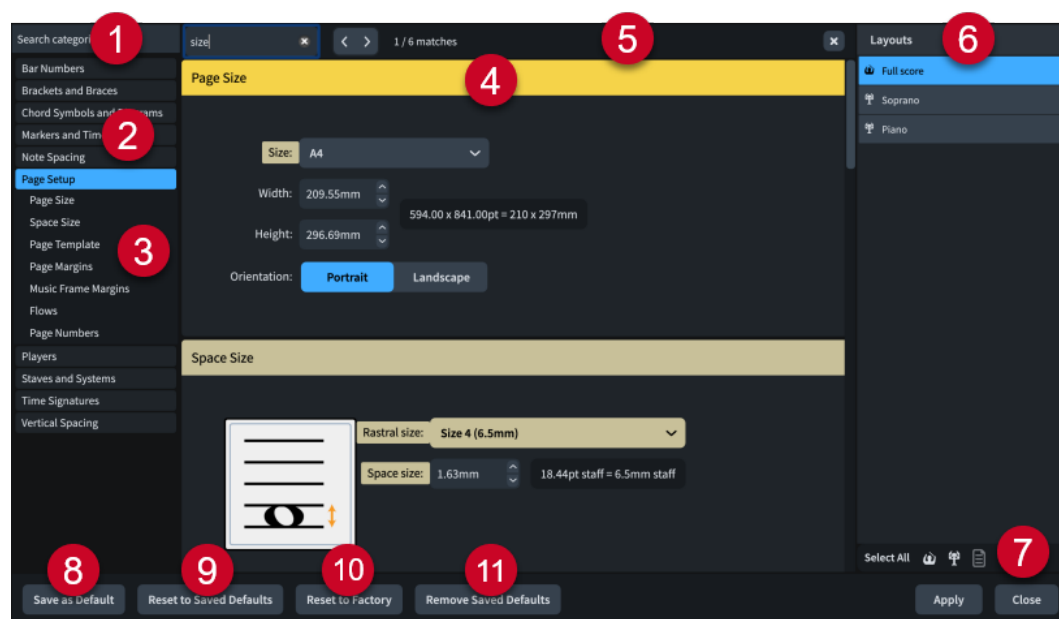
The **Layout Options** dialog allows you to change various aspects of each layout independently. For example, you can change the physical properties of the layout, such as page size, staff size, or margins, and how the music appears and is laid out, such as note spacing or staff labels.

Any changes you make in options dialogs apply to the current project only, unless you save your settings as default.

Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts, but apply to all flows in those layouts.

You can open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L**.
- Choose **Library > Layout Options**.
- In Setup mode, click **Layout Options**  in the **Layouts** panel.



The **Layout Options** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 Category list

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list, and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 Section titles

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 Section




Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

5 Search pages bar

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match** : Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match** : Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close** : Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 Layouts list




Contains all the layouts in your project. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog.

You can select multiple layouts in any of the following ways:

- Click one of the selection options in the action bar.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-click to select multiple layouts.
- **Shift**-click to select multiple adjacent layouts.
- Click and drag across multiple layouts.

7 Action bar

Contains selection options that allow you to select layouts in the **Layouts** list according to their type.

- **Select All**: Selects all layouts, regardless of their type.
- **Select All Full Score Layouts** : Selects all full score layouts only.
- **Select All Part Layouts** : Selects all part layouts only.
- **Select All Custom Score Layouts** : Selects all custom score layouts only.

8 Save as Default

Saves all options currently set and applied in the dialog as the default for the selected layout type in new projects. For example, you can save new default settings for part layouts without affecting the default settings for full score layouts. Only available when a single layout is selected.

9 Reset to Saved Defaults

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected layouts back to your saved defaults, according to their layout type.

10 Reset to Factory

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected layouts back to the default factory settings, according to their layout type. This only affects the current project and does not delete your saved defaults, meaning future projects still start with your saved defaults.

11 Remove Saved Defaults

Deletes your previous saved defaults for the selected layout type without resetting the options in the current project. After removing your saved defaults, all layouts of the selected type in future projects start with the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Staves](#) on page 1322

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Condensing](#) on page 643

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

[Changing values in numeric value fields](#) on page 666

Notation Options dialog

The **Notation Options** dialog allows you to change how music is notated by default in each flow independently. For example, there are options for beam, note, and rest grouping, voices, accidentals, and barlines.


Any changes you make in options dialogs apply to the current project only, unless you save your settings as default.

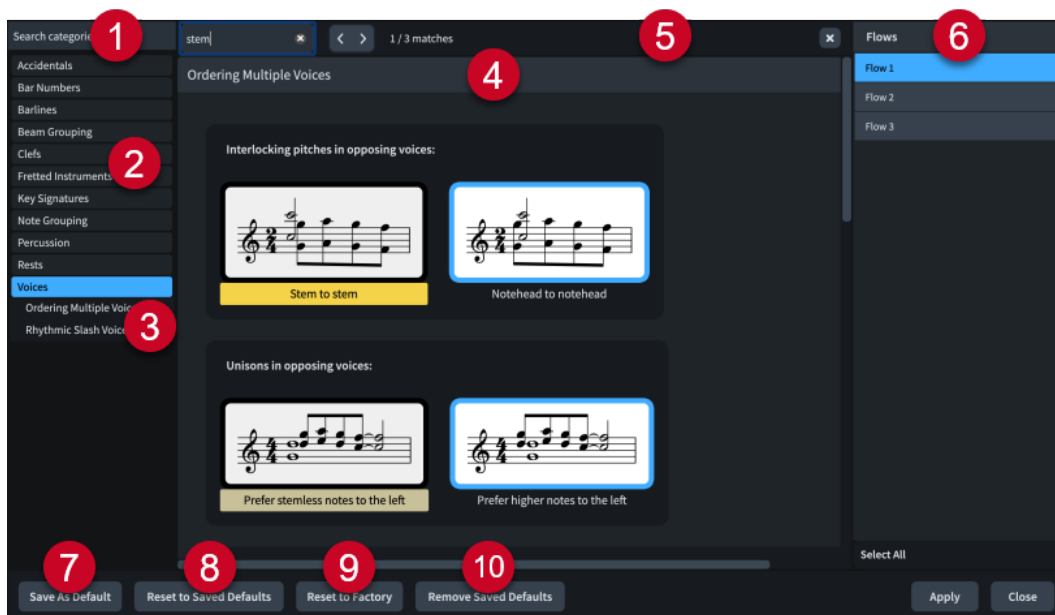
Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows, but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

TIP

If you want to change notes and notations individually, you can use properties in the Properties panel.

You can open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N**.
- Choose **Library > Notation Options**.
- In Setup mode, click **Notation Options**  in the **Flows** panel.



The **Notation Options** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 Category list

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list, and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 Section titles

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 Section


Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.



5 Search pages bar

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field:** Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match** : Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.

- **Next match** : Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close** : Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 Flows list

Contains all the flows in your project. By default, the flow in which you have selected an item in the music area or that is selected in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode is selected when you open the dialog.

You can select multiple flows in any of the following ways:

- Click **Select All** in the action bar to select all flows in the project.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-click to select multiple flows.
- **Shift**-click to select multiple adjacent flows.
- Click and drag across multiple flows.

7 Save as Default

Saves all options currently set and applied in the dialog as the default for new projects. Only available when a single flow is selected.

8 Reset to Saved Defaults

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected flows back to your saved defaults.

9 Reset to Factory

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected flows back to the default factory settings. This only affects the current project and does not delete your saved defaults, meaning future projects still start with your saved defaults.

10 Remove Saved Defaults

Deletes your previous saved defaults without resetting the options in the current project. After removing your saved defaults, all future projects start with the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

[Changing values in numeric value fields](#) on page 666

Playback Options dialog

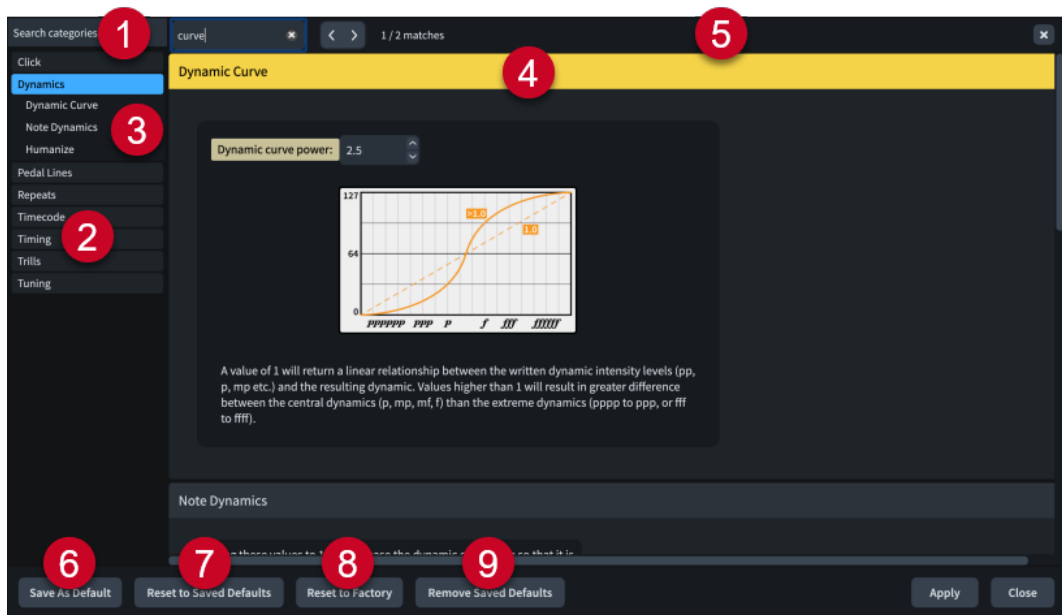
The **Playback Options** dialog allows you to change how the music you have written sounds when played back. These options affect playback regardless of expression maps and patches, such as how dynamics, pedal lines, and different notations are interpreted during playback.

For example, you can change how much louder notes on the first beat in each bar are compared to other notes in the bar, change how long each pedal retake lasts, and how much different articulations, such as staccatissimo and tenuto, affect the duration of notes.

Any changes you make in options dialogs apply to the current project only, unless you save your settings as default.

You can open **Playback Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P**.
- Choose **Library > Playback Options**.



The **Playback Options** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 Category list

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list, and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 Section titles

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 Section


Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.



5 Search pages bar

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field:** Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match** : Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.

- **Next match** : Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close** : Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 Save as Default

Saves all options currently set and applied in the dialog as the default for new projects.

7 Reset to Saved Defaults

Resets all the options in the dialog back to your saved defaults.

8 Reset to Factory

Resets all the options in the dialog back to the default factory settings. This only affects the current project and does not delete your saved defaults, meaning future projects still start with your saved defaults.

9 Remove Saved Defaults

Deletes your previous saved defaults without resetting the options in the current project. After removing your saved defaults, all future projects start with the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Options dialogs in Dorico Elements](#) on page 27

[Expression maps](#) on page 761

[Changing your preferred unit of measurement](#) on page 51

[Changing values in numeric value fields](#) on page 666

Music fonts

Music fonts control the project-wide appearance of notations, glyphs, and other items that are not text, such as clefs, dynamics, and bold tuplet numbers/ratios.

By default, Dorico Elements comes with the following SMuFL-compliant fonts:

Music font design



Music font name

Bravura



Finale Ash



Finale Broadway

Music font design

Music font name



Finale Jazz



Finale Maestro



Golden Age



Leipzig



Leland



Petaluma



Sebastian

You can change the music font used in your project in the **Music Fonts** dialog.

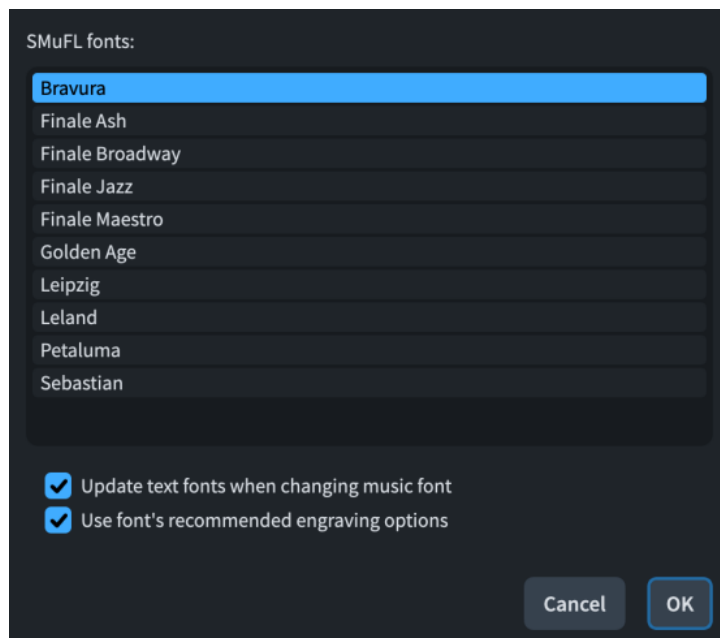
TIP

You can change the appearance of individual fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** and **Paragraph Styles** dialogs.

Music Fonts dialog

The **Music Fonts** dialog allows you to change the font used for notations and glyphs project-wide. Any font you use for notations and glyphs must be SMuFL-compliant.

- You can open the **Music Fonts** dialog by choosing **Library > Music Fonts**.



The **Music Fonts** dialog contains all available SMuFL fonts you have installed on your computer that have the appropriate metadata for Dorico Elements to recognize them.

The **Music Fonts** dialog also contains the following options:

Update text fonts when changing music fonts

Allows you to include/exclude text fonts when changing the music font. For example, deactivating this option allows you to change the appearance of notes and notations without affecting the appearance of flow titles and staff labels.

- For the Bravura music font, the equivalent text font is Academico.
- For the Petaluma music font, the equivalent text font is Petaluma Script.

Use font's recommended engraving options

Allows you to import the default settings that come with the font.

NOTE

Items marked as optional in SMuFL fonts, such as clef changes and non-bold tuplet numbers/ratios, are not affected when you change the music font.

Text formatting

Dorico Elements combines different settings for the appearance of text, meaning that you can format fonts and texts in different places depending on their function.

- Font styles are used in notations that use text but are not generic text, such as tempo marks and dynamics.
- Paragraph styles apply to individual paragraphs in text frames or all text within a single text item. They are also used for text that appears in the music but is not a notation, such as bar

numbers and staff labels. You can use paragraph styles to keep the presentation of different types of text consistent across your project.

- Character styles apply to individual letters or words, meaning you can apply different character styles to each word within the same text frame.

For example, you can change the font family used for all text notations in your project in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog and all other text in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog, where you can also make specific changes for when that font is used for titles.

If you open a project that contains fonts not installed on your computer, the **Missing Fonts** dialog opens and allows you to select replacement fonts as substitutes.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

[Types of text](#) on page 1352

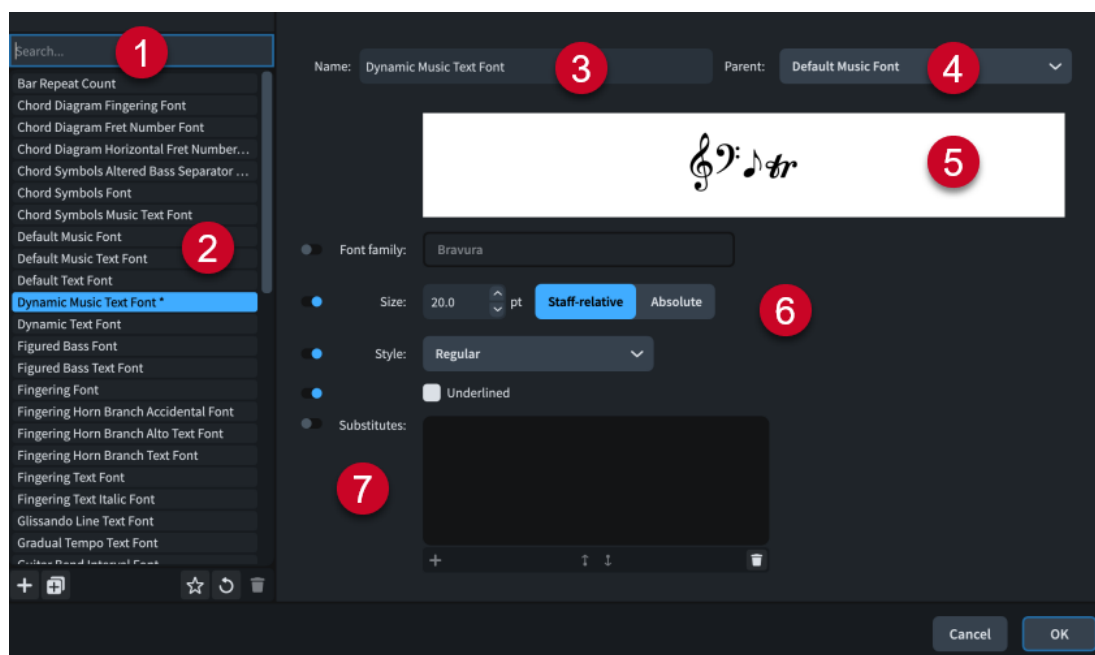
[Text editor options in Write mode](#) on page 389

[Missing Fonts dialog](#) on page 73

Edit Font Styles dialog

The **Edit Font Styles** dialog allows you to edit the formatting of fonts used for items that you cannot edit using the text editor, such as changing the font size of playing techniques, dynamics, or tempo marks.

- You can open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog by choosing **Library > Font Styles**.



The **Edit Font Styles** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 Search field

Allows you to filter font styles according to your entry.







TIP

If you cannot find a particular font style, it might instead be a paragraph style.

2 Font styles list

Contains all the font styles in the project. If you have previously opened the **Edit Font Styles** dialog in the same session, your previously selected font style is remembered.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New** : Creates a new font style with default values.
- **New from Selection** : Creates a copy of an existing font style that you can edit separately from the original. The new font style uses the original as its parent by default.
- **Save as Default** : Saves the selected font style to your user library, allowing you to use it in multiple projects. Appears as  for font styles saved as default.
- **Revert to Factory** : Removes all your changes to the selected font style, returning it to its saved settings.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected font style.

NOTE

You cannot delete predefined font styles or any font style that is currently used in your project.

3 Name

Allows you to enter a name for new font styles or edit the name of existing font styles.

4 Parent

Allows you to choose a parent font style from which the selected font style inherits settings. Activated options override the parent style settings.

5 Font preview

Displays a preview of the selected font style using its current settings.

6 Font appearance options

Allow you to change the following parameters of the selected font style:

- **Font family**: Sets the overall font style.
- **Size**: Sets the size of the font. Allows you to choose whether the size of the font changes according to the staff size or whether it is always the set size. For example, items with staff-relative font sizes appear smaller on smaller staves.

NOTE




If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.



- **Style**: Sets the style of the font, such as bold or italic.
- **Underlined**: Allows you to make the font style underlined.

7 Substitutes

Allows you to manage substitute font styles for music font styles. This can be useful when using music font styles that do not contain all glyphs in the SMuFL range.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Substitute** : Adds a new substitute to the selected font style. You can change the substitute font style by double-clicking substitutes, then either entering the font style you want or clicking the arrow  and selecting a font style from the menu.
- **Move Up** : Moves the selected substitute up the substitutes list, which changes its substitution order.

- **Move Down** : Moves the selected substitute down the substitutes list, which changes its substitution order.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected substitute.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply project-wide, including in part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Types of text](#) on page 1352

[Staff size](#) on page 617

[System objects](#) on page 1326

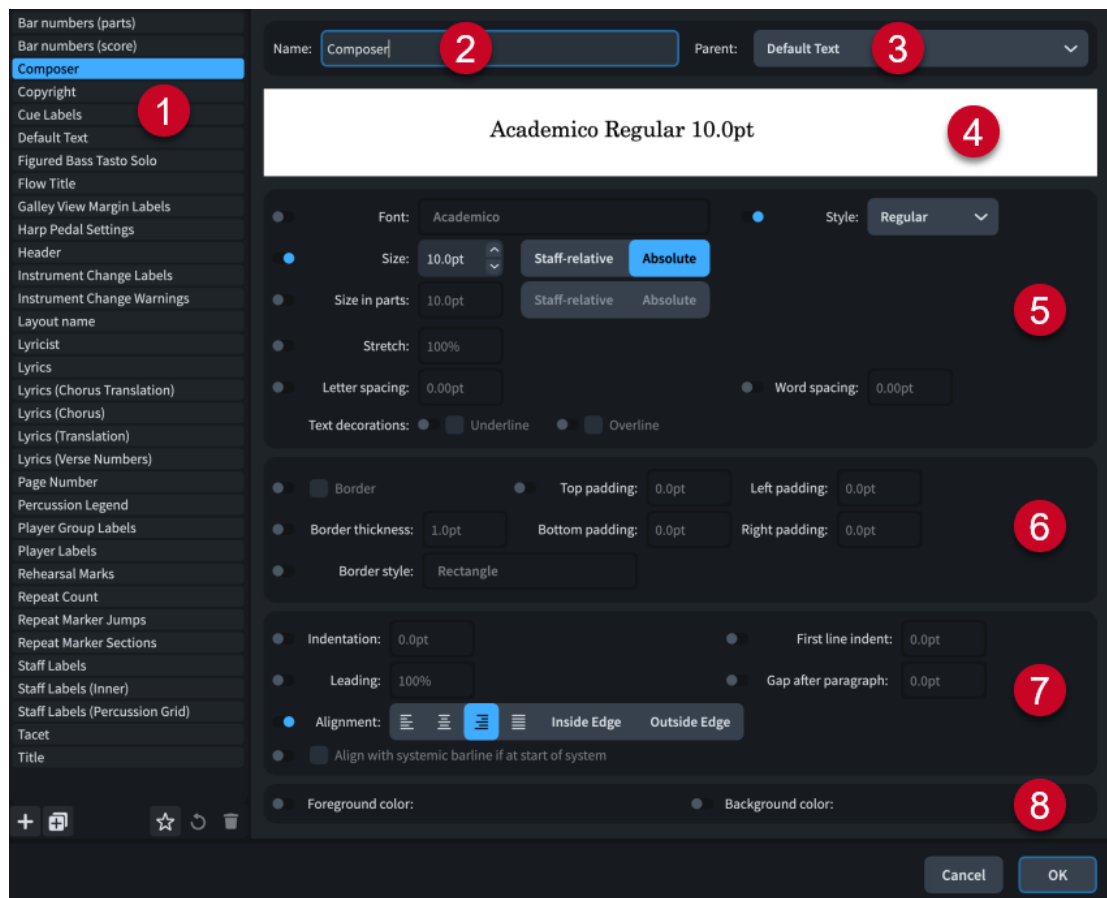
[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

Paragraph Styles dialog

The **Paragraph Styles** dialog allows you to change existing paragraph styles for text and create new styles. You can later apply paragraph styles to individual paragraphs in text frames or all text within a single text item by choosing them in the text editor.

For example, you can customize the paragraph style for layout names and then apply your layout name paragraph style to the layout name token in every applicable text frame. This allows you to keep the presentation of different types of text consistent across your project.

- You can open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog by choosing **Library > Paragraph Styles**.



The **Paragraph Styles** dialog contains the following sections and options:







1 Paragraph styles list

Contains all the paragraph styles in the project. If you had text items selected when you opened the dialog, the corresponding paragraph style of the first selected item is selected in the paragraph styles list by default.

TIP

If you cannot find a particular paragraph style, it might instead be a font style.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New** : Creates a new paragraph style with default values.
- **New from Selection** : Creates a copy of an existing paragraph style that you can edit separately from the original. The new paragraph style uses the original as its parent by default.
- **Save as Default** : Saves the selected paragraph style to your user library, allowing you to use it in multiple projects. Appears as  for paragraph styles saved as default.
- **Revert to Factory** : Removes all your changes to the selected paragraph style, returning it to its saved settings.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected paragraph style.

NOTE

You cannot delete predefined paragraph styles or any paragraph style that is currently used in your project.

2 Name

Allows you to enter a name for new paragraph styles or edit the name of existing paragraph styles.

3 Parent

Allows you to choose a parent paragraph style from which the selected paragraph style inherits settings. Activated options override the parent style settings.

4 Font preview

Displays a preview of the selected paragraph style using its current settings.

5 Font appearance options

Allow you to change parameters of the appearance of the paragraph style font, such as changing the font, making the font bold, changing the size of the font, and changing the letter or word spacing. You can also make the font in paragraph styles appear underlined or overlined.

6 Border options

Allow you to show borders by default on text that uses the paragraph style and to change the border settings, such as thickness, style, and padding between the border and text.

NOTE

- When **Border** is deactivated, text items use the default border and padding values set on the **Text** page in **Engraving Options**.
 - We recommend only using paragraph style borders for text frames that contain a single paragraph. If you want to show some paragraphs with borders but other paragraphs without borders, we recommend using separate text frames.
-

7 Paragraph layout options

Allow you to change the layout of the paragraph style, such as changing the first line indent, line spacing, and text alignment.

8 Color options

Allow you to change the foreground and background colors of the paragraph style.

RELATED LINKS

[Types of text](#) on page 1352

[Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001



[Staff size](#) on page 617

[System objects](#) on page 1326

Creating paragraph styles


You can create new paragraph styles from scratch and you can duplicate existing paragraph styles and edit the settings; for example, to format text consistently in multiple text frames.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Paragraph Styles** to open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.
2. Create a new paragraph style in one of the following ways:
 - To create an entirely new paragraph style, click **New**  in the action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing paragraph style, select it in the paragraph styles list and click **New from Selection**  in the action bar.
3. Enter a name for the style in the **Name** field.
4. Optional: Select one of the available styles from the **Parent** menu.



NOTE

If you select a parent style, your paragraph style inherits its settings automatically for all options with deactivated sliders. If your paragraph style has activated sliders, which override its parent style settings, you can deactivate them to reset those options to follow the parent style.

-
5. Activate and change the options as required.
 6. Optional: To make the paragraph style available in all future projects, click **Save as Default**  in the paragraph styles list action bar.
 7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The new paragraph style is created.

If you clicked **Save as Default**  so that it appears as , the paragraph style is available in all future projects on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

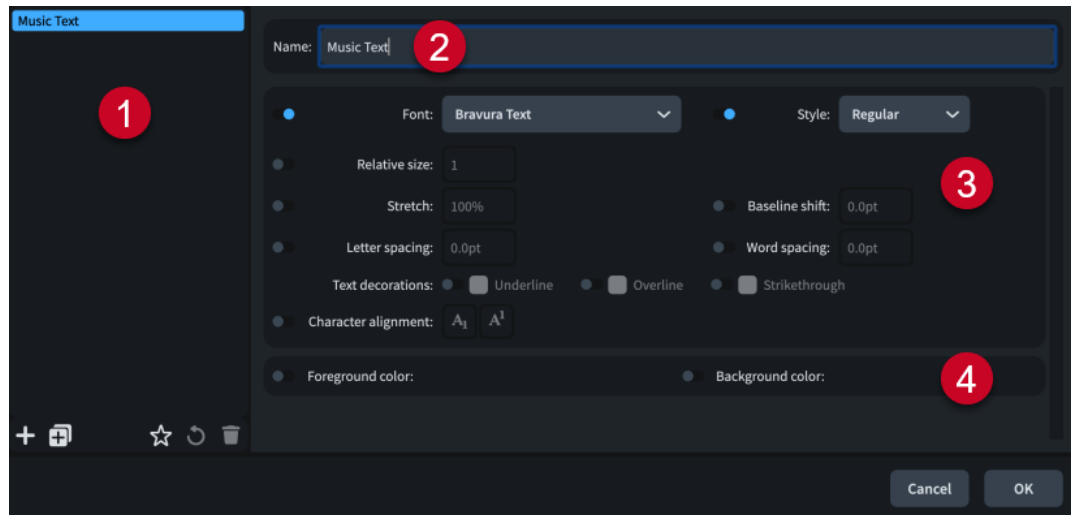
[Inputting text items](#) on page 388

Character Styles dialog

The **Character Styles** dialog allows you to change character styles and create new styles. You can later apply character styles to individual letters or words in different places in your project by choosing them in the text editor.

For example, you can create a custom character style with wide letter spacing for specific words and then apply that character style to selected words. Unlike paragraph styles, character styles do not have to apply to whole text items or paragraphs in text frames.

- You can open the **Character Styles** dialog by choosing **Library > Character Styles**.









The **Character Styles** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 Character styles list

Contains all the character styles in the project.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New** : Creates a new character style with default settings.
- **New from Selection** : Creates a copy of an existing character style that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Save as Default** : Saves the selected character style to your user library, allowing you to use it in multiple projects. Appears as  for character styles saved as default.
- **Revert to Factory** : Removes all your changes to the selected character style, returning it to its saved settings.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected character style.

NOTE

You cannot delete predefined character styles or any character style that is currently used in your project.

2 Name

Allows you to enter a name for new character styles or edit the name of existing paragraph styles.

3 Character style options

Allow you to change parameters of the character style, such as changing the font, making the font bold, changing the size of the font, and changing the letter or word spacing. You

can also make the font in paragraph styles appear underlined or overlined, and change the vertical alignment of characters.

4 Color options

Allow you to change the foreground and background colors of the character style.

RELATED LINKS



[Types of text](#) on page 1352

[Insert Music Text dialog](#) on page 391

Creating character styles


You can create new character styles from scratch and you can duplicate existing character styles and edit the settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Character Styles** to open the **Character Styles** dialog.
2. Create a new character style in one of the following ways:
 - To create an entirely new character style, click **New**  in the action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing character style, select it in the character styles list and click **New From Selection**  in the action bar.
3. Enter a name for the style in the **Name** field.
4. Activate and change the options as required.



IMPORTANT

Only activated options have an effect on the text. If you deactivate options, their settings are reset.

5. Optional: To make the character style available in all future projects, click **Save as Default**  in the character styles list action bar.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The new character style is created.

If you clicked **Save as Default**  so that it appears as , the character style is available in all future projects on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting text items](#) on page 388

Changing the default font family

You can change the font family of the default font and paragraph styles, which affect all other font and paragraph styles in the project whose font family has not been overridden. For example, if you want all text and text-based notations, such as text playing techniques and gradual dynamics, to use your preferred font family.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Font Styles** to open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.
2. In the font styles list, select **Default Text Font**.

3. Select the font family you want from the **Font family** menu.
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
 5. Choose **Library > Paragraph Styles** to open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.
 6. In the paragraph styles list, select **Default Text**.
 7. Select the font family you want from the **Font** menu.
 8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The font family used in the selected default font and paragraph styles is changed. This also affects the font family used by all other font and paragraph styles in the project whose font family has not been overridden.

TIP

You can change the default font family used in all future projects on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58
- [Text items](#) on page 1351

Expression maps

Expression maps tell Dorico Elements how to use appropriately the patches and sounds in the VST instruments that you have loaded into your project.

Expressing a range of dynamics on instruments means changing the volume and attack of notes. Because the strength of attack changes the character of the start of sounds as well as their volume, loud sounds often require stronger attacks and quiet sounds often require softer attacks.

Different patches and instruments have different approaches to changing dynamics and volume in playback. For example, some patches only change the velocity whereas others use a controller in combination with changing the velocity.

Dorico Elements also uses expression maps to specify the playback techniques that are supported by each patch in your project. For example, string instruments such as the violin have different techniques, because they can play *arco*, *pizzicato*, and *col legno*, and their bow position can be anywhere between *sul ponticello* and *sul tasto*.

In addition to expression maps for each sound library, there are the following expression maps in Dorico Elements:

- **CC11 Dynamics:** Uses MIDI controller 11 to play dynamics.

NOTE

This only applies to instruments that can change their dynamic while notes are sounding, such as violin or flute.

- **Default:** Uses note velocity to control dynamic volume.
- **Modulation Wheel Dynamics:** Uses a modulation wheel to control dynamic volume.

- **Transpose down 1 octave:** Used by some instrument patches that sound an octave higher than written so that they can be played without needing a full range keyboard.
- **Transpose up 1 octave:** Allows the bottom octave of keyboards to be used for key switches instead of notes, but is also used by some bass instrument patches that sound an octave lower than written so that they can be played without needing a full range keyboard.

Dorico Elements automatically adds expression maps to projects when you apply playback templates that use those expression maps.

You can edit, create, and import/export expression maps in the **Expression Maps** dialog. Expression maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

NOTE

Although Dorico Elements approaches expression maps in a different way to Cubase, Dorico Elements correctly imports many switches from expression maps you import from Cubase, such as *pizzicato*, harmonics, and flutter tongue.


RELATED LINKS

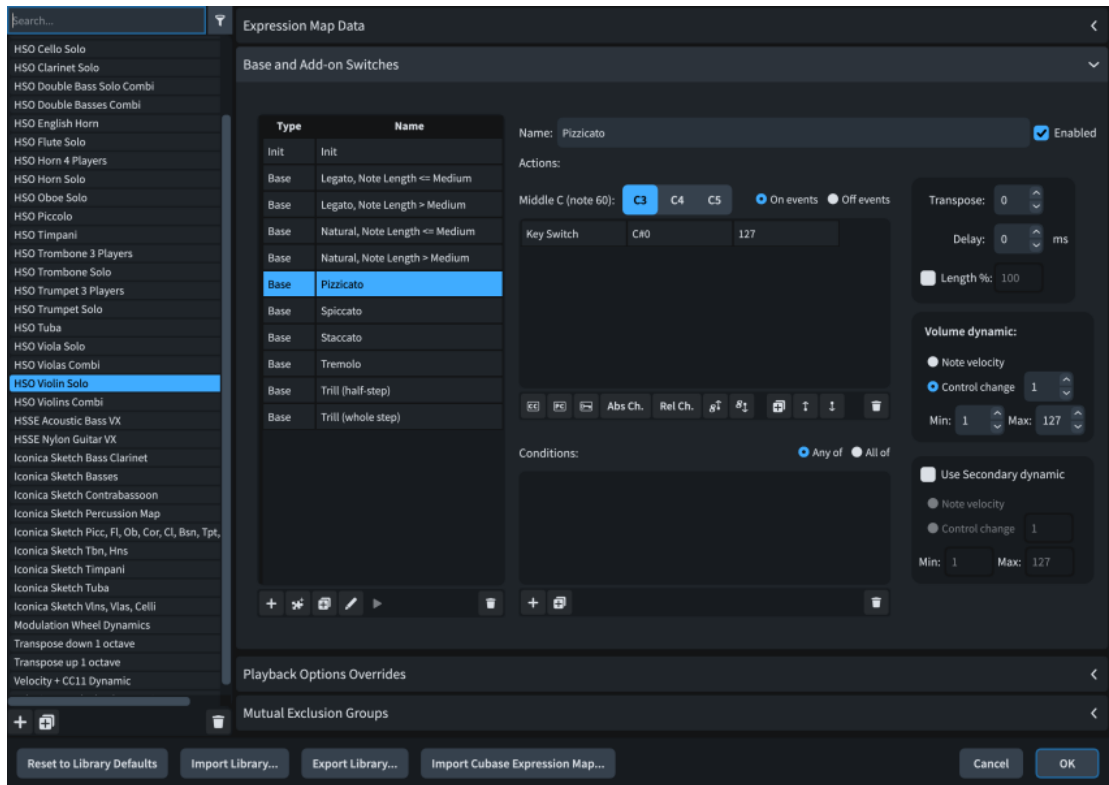
- [Percussion maps](#) on page 780
- [Types of switches](#) on page 774
- [Types of actions](#) on page 775
- [Creating new expression maps](#) on page 776
- [Playback templates](#) on page 558

Expression Maps dialog

The **Expression Maps** dialog allows you to create new expression maps, edit existing expression maps, and import/export expression maps. You can also import expression maps made in Cubase.

You can open the **Expression Maps** dialog in any of the following ways:

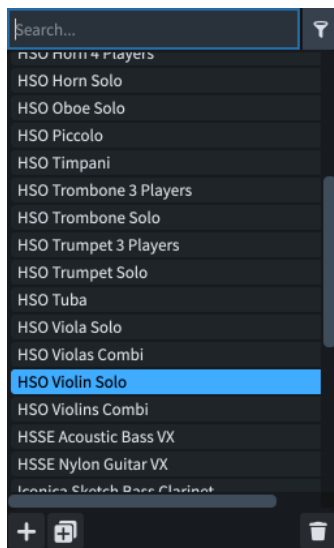
- Choose **Library > Expression Maps**.
- In Play mode, select a track in the track overview, then click **Edit Expression Map**  in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.




The **Expression Maps** dialog contains the following sections and options:

Expression maps list

Contains the expression maps currently available in your project.





At the top of the list, there are the following options:

- **Search field:** Allows you to filter expression maps according to your entry.
- **Show only expression maps used in this project** : Allows you to filter the expression maps list so that it only includes expression maps used in the current project.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Expression Map** : Adds a new expression map that contains no existing settings.

- **Duplicate Expression Map** : Creates a copy of an existing expression map that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Expression Map** : Deletes the selected expression maps.

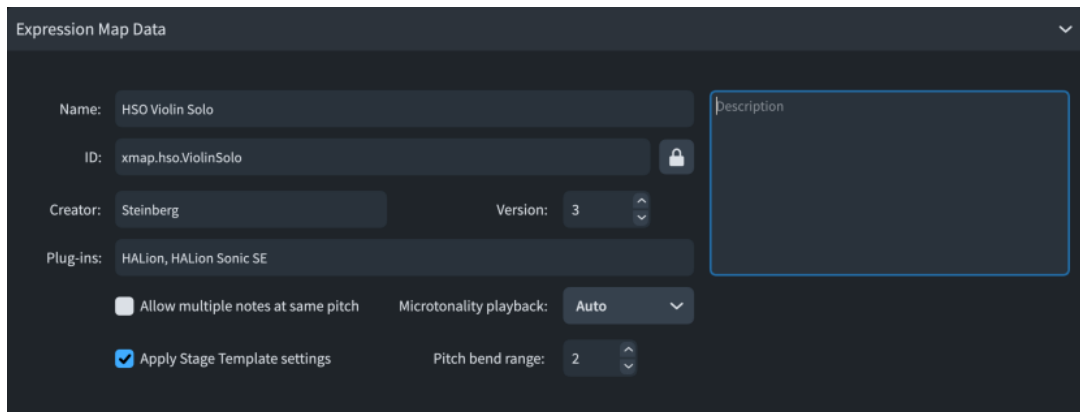
NOTE

You cannot delete factory default expression maps or any expression map that is currently used in your project.

Expression Map Data

This section allows you to specify identifying information for the selected expression map.

You can hide/show the **Expression Map Data** section by clicking the section header.



The **Expression Map Data** section contains the following options:

Name

Allows you to set the name of the expression map that appears in the program; for example, in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.

ID

Allows you to set the unique ID of the expression map. You can enter any content in the ID field.

It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.h50.violinpizz**.

Creator

Allows you to name the creator if you are sharing your expression map with other users.

Version

Allows you to indicate the expression map version, so you can identify the most recent one.

Plug-ins

Allows you to list the names of plug-ins to which the expression map applies, with each name separated by a comma. You can leave this field blank.

Allow multiple notes at same pitch

Allows you to set whether or not the plug-in can treat identical pitches in multiple voices belonging to the same instrument as multiple separate notes when independent voice playback is disabled.

Apply Stage Template settings

Allows you to set whether or not stage templates and space templates apply to endpoints using the expression map. We recommend deactivating this option for sounds whose recordings already have spatial and reverberation characteristics.

Microtonality playback

Allows you to select the microtonal playback method that you want to use for the expression map.



Pitch bend range

Allows you to set the pitch bend range supported by the plug-in, expressed in half-steps. The range is typically either a whole step or an octave.

Description

Allows you to add any other information about the expression map.

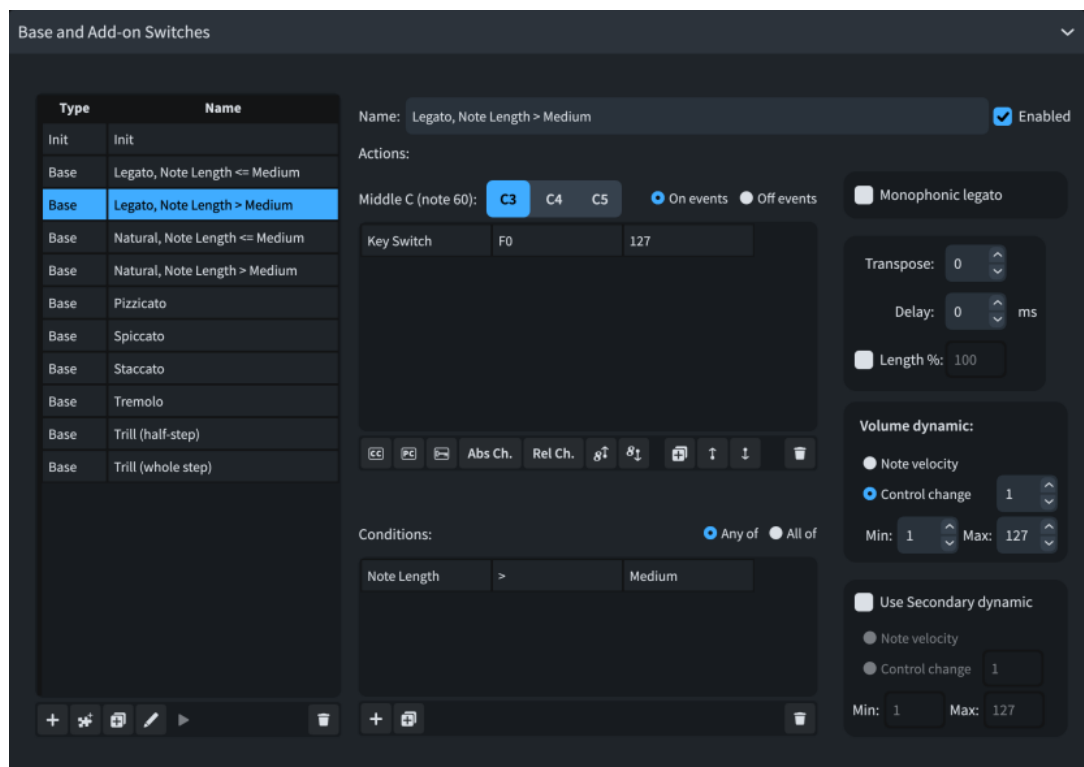
NOTE

Many fields in the **Expression Map Data** section are locked by the **Lock Info**  button. You must click this button to unlock **Lock Info**  in order to change the information in the fields.

Base and Add-on Switches

This section allows you to view, edit, and control the switches for playback techniques in the selected expression map.

You can hide/show the **Base and Add-on Switches** section by clicking the section header.



At the top of the section, there are the following options:

Name

Allows you to change the name that appears for the currently selected switch in the Switches table; for example, so that it appears the same as in your sound library.

TIP

You can still see which playback techniques are triggered by switches with custom names by hovering the mouse pointer over the corresponding row in the Switches table.

Enabled

Allows you to enable/disable the currently selected switch without removing it from the expression map.

The **Base and Add-on Switches** section also contains the following:


Switches table






Contains the switches in the currently selected expression map. Allows you to add new switches and edit existing ones.

Type	Name
Init	Init
Base	Legato, Note Length <= Medium
Base	Legato, Note Length > Medium
Base	Natural, Note Length <= Medium
Base	Natural, Note Length > Medium
Base	Pizzicato
Base	Spiccato
Base	Staccato
Base	Tremolo
Base	Trill (half step)
Base	Trill (whole step)

The Switches table comprises the following:

- 1 Type column:** Displays the switch type. Switches can be any of the following types:
 - **Base**
 - **Add-on**
 - **Init**
- 2 Name column:** Displays the name of the switch. By default, this is the same as the playback technique or playback technique combination it triggers.

In simple cases, each switch triggers an individual playback technique, such as **Staccato** or **Accent**. However, some plug-ins have separate samples for different combinations of playback techniques. For example, **Staccato + Accent** might require a separate set of key switches to **Staccato** and **Accent** individually.
- 3 Switches table action bar:** Contains the following options:
 - **Add Base Switch** : Allows you to add a new base switch to the expression map by selecting the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that opens.

- **Add Technique Add-on Switch** : Allows you to add a new add-on switch to the expression map by selecting the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that opens.
- **Duplicate Technique** : Creates a copy of an existing switch that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Edit Technique** : Opens the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog, which allows you to edit the combination of playback techniques triggered by the selected switch. You can also edit the playback techniques of existing switches by double-clicking them in the Switches table.
- **Audition** : Plays two notes using the currently selected switch and any corresponding actions to demonstrate their effect on playback. Only available for expression maps used in the project.
- **Delete Technique** : Deletes the selected switch.

Selecting a switch in the Switches table allows you to edit its controls and actions. Different options are available in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section depending on the switch type.

NOTE

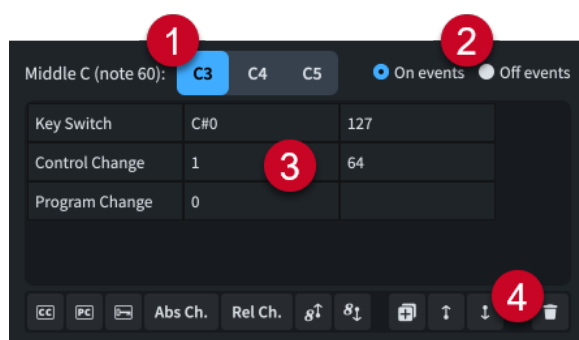
- Most instruments have a “natural” playback technique, which is the most common way of playing the instrument. Dorico Elements requires every instrument to have a defined natural playback technique.
- You can only select one switch at a time in the Switches table.

Actions

Displays in a table any actions required to produce the selected playback technique. Allows you to determine how the switch that triggers each playback technique is controlled, either by adding new actions or editing existing ones.

NOTE

Depending on your plug-in, multiple types of actions can be required for each switch.



The **Actions** subsection comprises the following:

- 1 **Middle C (note 60):** Allows you to choose the pitch for middle C, independently of your middle C numbering convention setting. We recommend that you consult the documentation for your sound libraries to check whether each one considers middle C to be C3, C4, or C5, and change this setting accordingly.
- 2 **On events/Off events:** Allows you to specify whether actions affect the start or end of notes. For example, you might want an event that resets the playback technique back to normal to apply only to the end of notes.

On events affects the start of notes. **Off events** affects the end of notes.










3 Actions table: Contains the following columns:

- First column: Displays the action type. Actions can be a control change, program change, or key switch.
- Second column: Controls the first parameter of the MIDI event. For key switches, this indicates the pitch. For control changes, this indicates the control change number. For program changes, this indicates the program number.
- Third column: Controls the second parameter of the MIDI event. For key switches, this indicates the velocity. For control changes, this indicates the amount of control change within the range 0 to 127. Program changes do not have a second parameter.

NOTE

- You can change the values of cells in the **Actions** table by double-clicking them, or selecting them and pressing **Return**.
- You can only select one action at a time in the **Actions** table.

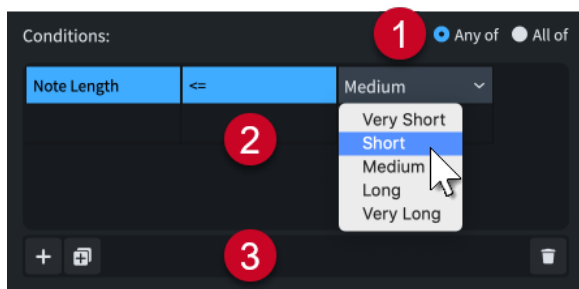
4 Actions table action bar: Contains the following options:

- **Add Control Change Action** : Adds a control change action with default settings.
- **Add Program Change Action** : Adds a program change action with default settings.
- **Add Key Switch Note Action** : Adds a key switch action with default settings.
- **Add Absolute Channel Change Action:** Adds an absolute channel change action with default settings.
- **Add Relative Channel Change Action:** Adds a relative channel change action with default settings.
- **Transpose Up 1 Octave** : Raises the octave of all key switch actions for the selected switch.
- **Transpose Down 1 Octave** : Lowers the octave of all key switch actions for the selected switch.
- **Duplicate Action** : Creates a copy of an existing action that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Move Action Up** : Moves the selected action up the table, which changes its order in the message sequence.
- **Move Action Down** : Moves the selected action down the table, which changes its order in the message sequence.
- **Delete Action** : Deletes the selected action.

Conditions

Displays in a table any conditions that determine the circumstances in which the base switch currently selected in the Switches table is used. Allows you to add new conditions and edit existing ones. Only available for **Base** switches.

For example, you can set conditions instructing the expression map to use a different legato sound with a quicker attack for short notes than for longer notes automatically.



The **Conditions** subsection comprises the following:

1 **Any of/All of:** Allows you to set whether the switch is used when one or more conditions are met or only when all conditions are met.

2 **Conditions table:** Contains the following columns:

First column: Displays the condition type.

Second column: Controls how the condition type in the first column relates to the note length set in the third column using operators. The following operators are available:

- ==: Equal to
- !=: Not equal to
- <: Less than
- <=: Less than or equal to
- >: More than
- >=: More than or equal to




Third column: Controls the note length used by the condition. The following note length values are available:

- **Very short:** A dotted 16th note at 120 bpm, or 0.1875 seconds
- **Short:** A dotted eighth note at 120 bpm, or 0.375 seconds
- **Medium:** A dotted quarter note at 120 bpm, or 0.75 seconds
- **Long:** A dotted half note at 120 bpm, or 1.5 seconds
- **Very long:** Any longer duration

NOTE

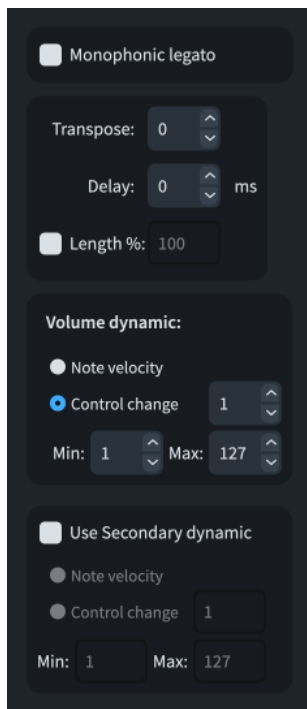
- You can change the values of cells in the **Conditions** table by double-clicking them, or selecting them and pressing **Return**.
- You can only select one condition at a time in the **Conditions** table.

3 **Conditions action bar:** Contains the following options:

- **Add Technique** : Adds a new technique condition with default settings.
- **Duplicate Technique** : Creates a copy of an existing technique condition that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Technique** : Deletes the selected technique condition.

Technique controls

Contains controls that affect the base switch currently selected in the Switches table. Only available for **Base** switches.



The following technique controls are available:

Monophonic legato

Allows you to limit monophonic legato to music without chords; that is, two or more notes simultaneously. Only available for **Base** switches that include the **Legato** playback technique.

When this option is activated, Dorico Elements automatically removes the legato playback technique when chords or multiple voices are played by the same endpoint, but continues to use the default legato note length.

TIP

You can change the default legato note length in **Playback Options > Timing > Note Durations**.

Transpose

Allows you to set the MIDI transposition in half-steps (semitones).

Delay [n] milliseconds

Allows you to set a delay in milliseconds; for example, to compensate for sounds with a slow attack or rise time. Negative values cause notes to sound earlier than written, positive values cause notes to sound later than written.

Length %

Allows you to modify played note durations, which overrides the default value; for example, if you want the selected switch to produce short gaps between notes.

- For notes a quarter note or shorter in duration, the value applies to the entire note.
- For notes longer than a quarter note, the value only applies to the last quarter note of their overall duration.

Volume dynamic

Allows you to choose whether the volume dynamic for the selected switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.

NOTE

If you choose **Control change**, you must specify the controller by number. You can consult the documentation for the VST instrument and/or MIDI controller you are using to find the appropriate controller number.

Volume dynamic Min/Max

Allow you to set the minimum and maximum range for dynamics using either note velocity or MIDI CC, depending on the sound library.

Use Secondary dynamic

Allows you to define an additional volume control for sound libraries that use both note velocity and control changes for volume dynamic.

Secondary dynamic Min/Max

Allow you to set the minimum and maximum range for dynamics using either note velocity or MIDI CC, depending on the sound library.

Playback Options Overrides

Allows you to override specific playback options for the selected expression map only. Activating a playback option overrides it. The available playback options include the default duration of notes with different articulations, unmeasured tremolo notes, and the effect that beat position and articulations have on dynamics. By default, the values set match the current settings in **Playback Options**.

You can hide/show the **Playback Options Overrides** section by clicking the section header.

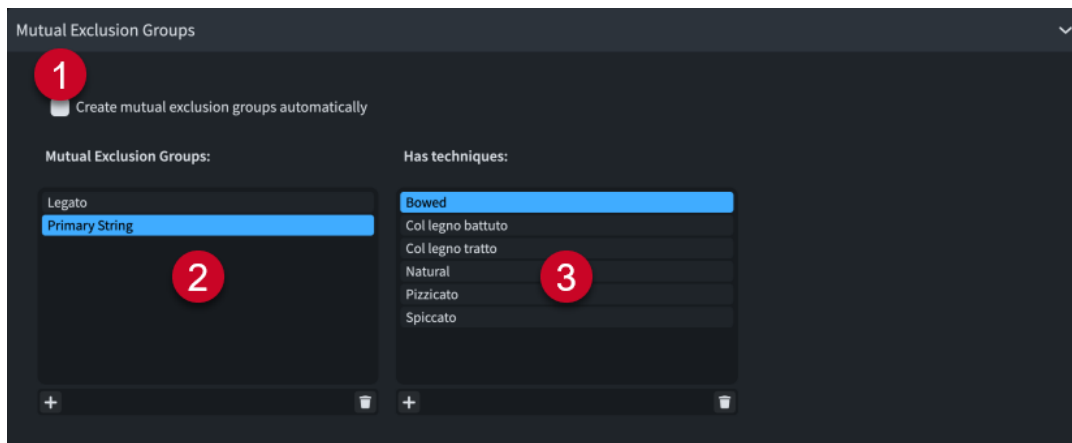
Mutual Exclusion Groups

Allows you to define playback techniques that are mutually exclusive; that is, cannot be in use concurrently. For example, players cannot play vibrato and non-vibrato at the same time. Putting playback techniques into the same exclusion group means only one can be used at a time.

You can allow Dorico Elements to define mutual exclusion groups automatically or define them yourself manually.

Mutual exclusion groups apply only to the selected expression map. This allows you to set different mutual exclusion groups in each expression map; for example, if one of your sound libraries supports a particular playback technique combination for an instrument but another sound library does not.

You can hide/show the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section by clicking the section header.





The **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section contains the following options and columns:

- 1 **Create mutual exclusion groups automatically:** Allows Dorico Elements to define mutual exclusion groups automatically.

NOTE

Activating **Auto** permanently deletes any manual exclusion groups you have created.



- 2 **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column: Allows you to add and delete mutual exclusion groups manually. The action bar at the bottom of the column contains the following options:

- **Add** : Opens a dialog that allows you to create a new mutual exclusion group and enter a name for it.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected mutual exclusion group.

NOTE

You can only select one mutual exclusion group at a time.

- 3 **Has techniques** column: Allows you to change the playback techniques included in the selected mutual exclusion group. The action bar at the bottom of the column contains the following options:

- **Add** : Opens the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that allows you to select playback techniques to add to the selected mutual exclusion group.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected playback technique from the mutual exclusion group.

NOTE

You can only select one playback technique at a time.

Expression map/Library management options

At the bottom of the **Expression Maps** dialog, there are the following expression map and library management options:

Reset to Library Defaults

Allows you to revert any changes you have made to the expression maps from the Default Library.

Import Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricolib` files that you want to import as expression maps.

You can also import Dorico and Cubase expression maps by dragging and dropping them into the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Export Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected expression maps as a `.doricolib` file. You can then import the `.doricolib` file into other projects and share it with other users.

Import Cubase Expression Map

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the Cubase `.expressionmap` files you want to import as expression maps.

NOTE

Cubase expression maps that you have imported often require some editing to function correctly in Dorico Elements. However, switch data is preserved.



RELATED LINKS

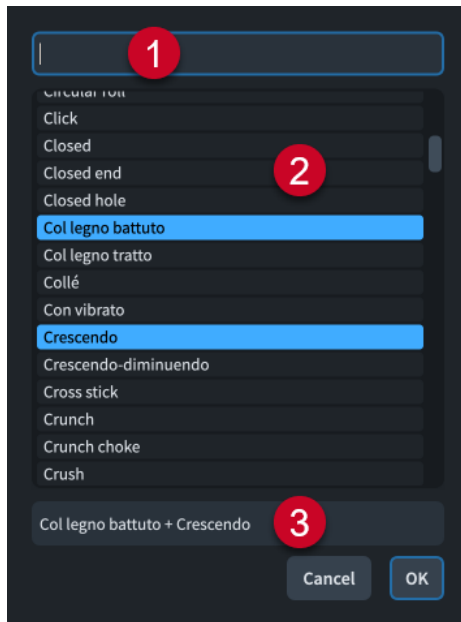
- [Types of switches](#) on page 774
- [Types of actions](#) on page 775
- [Playback techniques](#) on page 787
- [Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567
- [Edit Playback Techniques dialog](#) on page 788
- [Track overview](#) on page 520
- [Track Inspector](#) on page 522
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545
- [Creating new expression maps](#) on page 776
- [Adding/Editing switches in expression maps](#) on page 777
- [Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps](#) on page 779
- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
- [Playback Options for dynamics](#) on page 954
- [Slurs in playback](#) on page 1308
- [Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Playback Technique Combinations dialog

The **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog allows you to create combinations of playback techniques that you want to apply simultaneously. Playback techniques are used by expression maps to assign the correct sounds to the required playing techniques in the music.

You can open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog in the following ways:

- In the **Expression Maps** dialog, click **Add Technique**  in the Switches table action bar.
- In the **Expression Maps** dialog, select an existing playback technique in the Switches table and click **Edit Technique**  in the **Techniques** action bar. You can also double-click the playback technique.



1 Search field

Allows you to search for playback techniques, then navigate to them by selecting them from the menu.

2 Techniques list

Allows you to select playback techniques to include in a new switch or to change the playback techniques in an existing switch.

You can select multiple playback techniques to combine by **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking each playback technique.

3 Name

Displays the name of the selected playback technique. If you select multiple playback techniques, each name is automatically separated by a + symbol.

NOTE

You cannot rename playback techniques or playback technique combinations in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog. You can rename the switches that include them in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section of the **Expression Maps** dialog. You can rename individual playback techniques in the **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Edit Playback Techniques dialog](#) on page 788

Types of switches

Switches are used in expression maps to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques. Dorico Elements supports multiple types of switches.

Base

A fundamental change to the playing technique or articulation, such as changing from *arco* to *pizzicato* or unmuted to muted. Base switches are mutually exclusive, meaning a new base switch replaces the previous one.

Add-on

A switch that applies in addition to the existing base switch. For example, some sound libraries allow you to use the same legato switch in addition to different base switches. Add-on switches do not remove or change base switches. Add-on switches can only trigger simple key switch notes and controller values.

Init

A switch that sends instructions when playback starts, such as ensuring a MIDI controller always starts at a set value. By default, every expression map contains an empty init switch. Init switches can only trigger simple key switch notes and controller values.

RELATED LINKS

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Adding/Editing switches in expression maps](#) on page 777

[Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps](#) on page 779

Types of actions

Actions are used in expression maps to determine how individual switches are controlled in order to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques. Dorico Elements supports multiple types of actions, as different sound libraries require different actions.

Control change actions

Control change actions use MIDI CC events to modulate sounds. They are particularly useful when using sound libraries whose sounds can be manipulated incrementally, such as increasing/decreasing the string vibrato intensity.

Program change actions

Program change actions use MIDI PC events to switch to different sounds. They are particularly useful when using sound libraries, such as General MIDI, that use separate programs for each playback technique or combinations of instrument sounds and effects presets.

Key switch actions

Key switch actions use MIDI note events to switch to different sounds. They are particularly useful when recording MIDI live, as you can press the specified notes on a MIDI keyboard to trigger key switch actions while simultaneously playing the notes you want to record. Usually, key switch actions are mapped to notes in the lowest octave of the MIDI keyboard as they are rarely used for note input.

Key switch actions are also known as “note events”.

Absolute channel change actions

Absolute channel change actions switch to a specific, explicitly numbered channel. They are particularly useful for sound libraries that have separate plug-in instances for each individual instrument. For example, you might use an absolute channel change action to switch from “natural” on channel **1** to “pizzicato” on channel **2** in your viola section plug-in instance.

Relative channel change actions

Relative channel change actions switch to a channel numbered relative to the starting channel. They are particularly useful for sound libraries that have multiple instruments with separate playback technique channels in the same plug-in instance, as they can switch between playback techniques according to their relative channel number rather than an absolute number. For example, if you have four trumpet instruments loaded in the same plug-in instance, each with three channels for different playback techniques,

and want to use the same switches for all four trumpets, you might use a relative channel change action to switch from the “natural” original channel to “muted” on the **+1** relative channel.

Relative channel numbers relate to the original channel number of the endpoint for the corresponding instrument. A **0** relative channel change switches back to the original channel.




TIP

You can add actions to individual switches in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Creating new expression maps

You can create new expression maps from scratch, and you can duplicate existing expression maps and edit the settings; for example, when using third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices that do not provide expression maps.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
 2. Create a new expression map in one of the following ways:
 - To create an empty expression map, click **Add Expression Map**  in the expression maps list action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing expression map, select it in the expression maps list and click **Duplicate Expression Map**  in the action bar.
 3. In the **Expression Map Data** section, click **Lock Info**  to unlock the fields.
 4. In the **Expression Map Data** section, enter information for your expression map in the relevant fields.
 5. Change the other available options as required.
 6. Optional: In the **Base and Add-on Switches** section, add any new switches you require to trigger playback techniques or combinations of playback techniques.
 7. In the Switches table, select a switch whose actions, conditions, and/or controls you want to edit.
 8. Change any settings for the selected switch as required.

For example, you can add actions for all switch types or, for base switches only, choose whether the volume of a selected base switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.
 9. Optional: Repeat steps 7 and 8 for all switches whose settings you want to change.
 10. In the **Playback Options Overrides** section, activate each playback option you want to override for the expression map and change their values.
 11. In the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section, do one of the following:
 - To use automatic exclusion groups defined by Dorico Elements, activate **Create mutual exclusion groups automatically**.
 - To create mutual exclusion groups manually, deactivate **Create mutual exclusion groups automatically**, then add or edit mutual exclusion groups.
 12. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567

[Playback Technique Combinations dialog](#) on page 773





[Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps](#) on page 779

Adding/Editing switches in expression maps

You can create new and edit existing switches that trigger playback techniques or combinations of playback techniques in individual expression maps; for example, to add an add-on switch to an existing base switch, or to create a new base switch with note length conditions.




Playback technique combinations are useful for expression maps that require different sets of key switches for **Staccato + Accent** compared to **Staccato** and **Accent** individually, for example.


PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. In the expression maps list, select the expression map to which you want to add switches or whose existing switches you want to edit.
3. Optional: In the Switches table in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section, add a new switch to trigger a playback technique or playback technique combination or edit an existing one in one of the following ways:
 - To add a new base switch, click **Add Base Switch** .
 - To add a new add-on switch, click **Add Technique Add-on Switch** .
 - To create a copy of an existing switch, select it and click **Duplicate Technique** .
 - To change the playing techniques triggered by an existing switch, select it and click **Edit Technique** .
4. Optional: If you added a new base/add-on switch or edited an existing switch, select the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.


TIP

You can select a single playback technique or combine multiple playback techniques. To select multiple playback techniques, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click each playback technique.

-
5. Optional: Click **OK** to add the selected playback techniques and close the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
 6. In the Switches table, select the switch whose actions, conditions, and/or controls you want to edit.
 7. In the **Actions** subsection, choose the event type from one of the following options:
 - **On events**
 - **Off events**
 8. In the **Actions** table, add an action of the selected event type for the currently selected switch in one of the following ways:
 - Click **Add Control Change Action** .
 - Click **Add Program Change Action** .
 - Click **Add Key Switch Note Action** .
 - Click **Add Absolute Channel Change Action**.

- Click **Add Relative Channel Change Action**.
 - Select an existing action and click **Duplicate Action** .
9. Double-click each cell whose value you want to change and change the value.

TIP



You can change the octave of all key switch actions for the selected switch by clicking **Transpose Up 1 Octave**  and **Transpose Down 1 Octave**  in the action bar.

10. Choose one of the following pitches for **Middle C (note 60)**:

- **C3**
- **C4**
- **C5**

NOTE

Steps 11 to 15 only apply to base switches. For init and add-on switches, you can skip to step 16.

11. Optional: Repeat steps 6 to 10 for each action you require for the currently selected switch.
12. In the **Conditions** table, add a condition for the currently selected base switch in one of the following ways:
- To create a new condition, click **Add Technique**  in the action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing condition, select it and click **Duplicate Technique**  in the action bar.
13. Double-click each cell whose value you want to change and select the required option from the menu.
14. Optional: Repeat steps 12 and 13 for each condition you want to add to the selected base switch.
15. Choose one of the following condition options:
- To use the switch when at least one condition is met, choose **Any of**.
 - To use the switch when all conditions are met, choose **All of**.
16. Change any of the other settings in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section as required. For example, choose whether the volume of the selected base switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.
17. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Expression Maps** dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762




[Playback Technique Combinations dialog](#) on page 773

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps

By default, Dorico Elements automatically defines mutual exclusion groups. You can create new and edit existing mutual exclusion groups in individual expression maps manually.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
 2. In the expression maps list, select the expression map to which you want to add mutual exclusion groups or whose existing mutual exclusion groups you want to edit.
 3. In the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section, deactivate **Create mutual exclusion groups automatically**.
 4. Optional: To add a new mutual exclusion group, click **Add**  in the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column action bar.
 5. Enter a name for the new mutual exclusion group in the dialog that opens.
 6. Click **OK** to add the group and close the dialog.
 7. In the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column, select the mutual exclusion groups whose playback techniques you want to change.
 8. Change the playback techniques in the selected mutual exclusion group in any of the following ways:
 - To add new playback techniques to the mutual exclusion group, click **Add**  in the **Has techniques** column action bar to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog, select the playback techniques you want to add, then click **OK**.
 - To remove playback techniques from the mutual exclusion group, select them in the **Has techniques** column, and click **Delete**  in the action bar.
 9. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Expression Maps** dialog.
-

Importing expression maps

You can import expression maps into projects, including `.expressionmap` files exported from Cubase. Expression maps exported from Dorico are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
 2. Click **Import Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 3. Locate and select the expression map file you want to import.
 4. Click **Open**.
-

RESULT

The selected expression map is imported into your project. It appears in the expression maps list.

NOTE

- You can also import Dorico and Cubase expression maps by dragging and dropping them into the **Expression Maps** dialog.
 - Although Dorico Elements approaches expression maps in a different way to Cubase, Dorico Elements correctly imports many switches from expression maps you import from Cubase, such as *pizzicato*, harmonics, and flutter tongue.
-

Exporting expression maps

You can export expression maps for use in other projects. Expression maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. In the expression maps list, select the expression maps you want to export.
3. Click **Export Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The selected expression maps are exported as a `.doricolib` file and saved in the selected location.

Percussion maps

Unpitched percussion instruments are played back using patches that map unpitched sounds onto different MIDI notes. The pitches required to produce different unpitched sounds vary by device, sound library, manufacturer, and so on, and have no connection to the position of percussion instruments on five-line staves.

The following list contains some examples of unpitched percussion instruments from the General MIDI percussion map.

- Bass drum: C2 (MIDI note 36, two octaves below middle C)
- Kick drum: D2 (MIDI note 38)
- Closed hi-hat: F#2 (MIDI note 42)
- Cowbell: G#3 (MIDI note 56)
- Open triangle: A5 (MIDI note 81)

Dorico Elements uses percussion maps to connect the written representation of notes and playing techniques for percussion instruments to the samples required to play those sounds back.

NOTE

A percussion map describes which unpitched percussion instruments and their playback techniques are present in a particular patch, and how to play them back. For example, it describes which MIDI note to play, and if another MIDI note is needed as a key switch to trigger particular playing techniques.

A set of percussion maps for the unpitched percussion patches that are part of the HALion Symphonic Orchestra and HALion Sonic SE factory libraries is provided with Dorico Elements. They are automatically chosen when you add percussion instruments to your project.

You can define custom percussion maps for third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices in the **Percussion Maps** dialog, in order to obtain correct playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Unpitched percussion](#) on page 1419


[Universal Indian Drum Notation](#) on page 1436

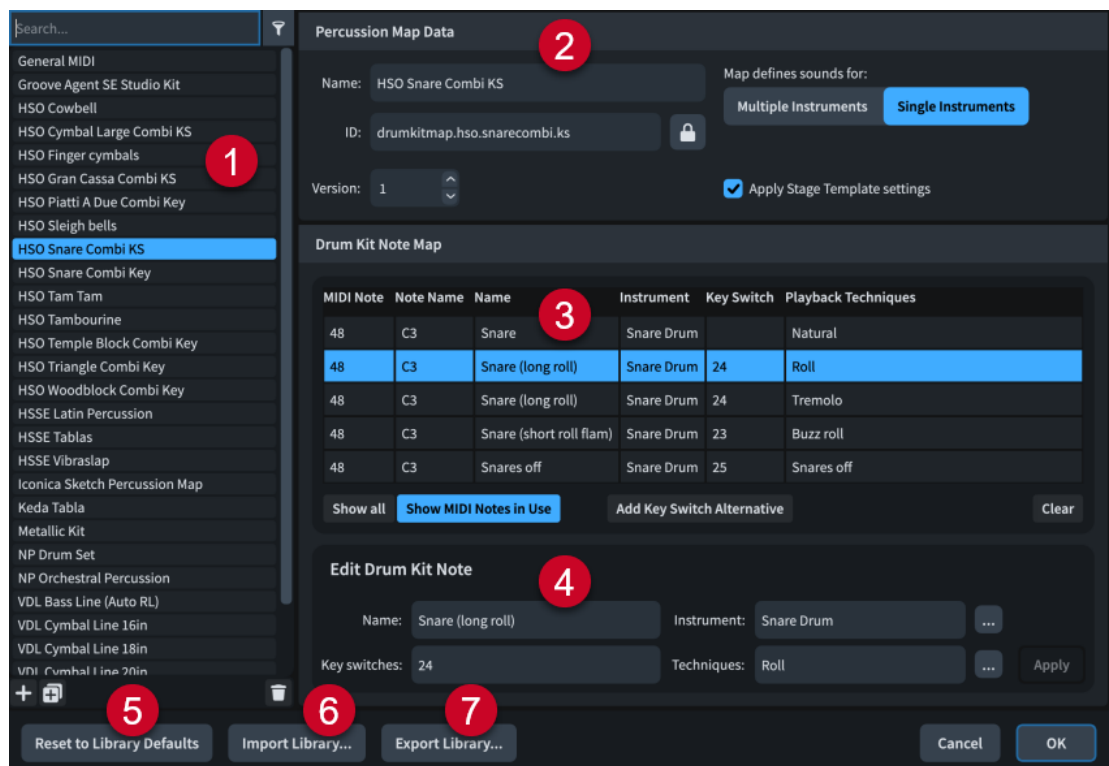
[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Percussion Maps dialog

In the **Percussion Maps** dialog, you can define custom percussion maps for third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices in order to obtain correct playback.

You can open the **Percussion Maps** dialog in any of the following ways:

- Choose **Library > Percussion Maps**.
- In Play mode, select an unpitched percussion instrument track in the track overview, then click **Edit Percussion Map**  in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.




The **Percussion Maps** dialog is divided into the following sections:




1 Percussion maps list

Contains the percussion maps currently available in your project.

At the top of the list, there are the following options:

- **Search field**: Allows you to filter percussion maps according to your entry.
- **Show only expression maps used in this project** : Allows you to filter the percussion maps list so that it only includes percussion maps used in the current project.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Percussion Map** : Adds a new percussion map that contains no existing settings.
- **Duplicate Percussion Map** : Creates a copy of an existing percussion map that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Percussion Map** : Deletes the selected percussion maps.

NOTE

You cannot delete factory default percussion maps or any percussion map that is currently used in your project.

2 Percussion Map Data section

Allows you to specify the following identifying information for the selected percussion map:

- **Name:** Allows you to specify the displayed name for the percussion map that appears in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.

- **ID:** Allows you to set the unique ID of the percussion map. You can enter any content in the ID field.

It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.hso.cowbell**.

- **Version:** Allows you to indicate the percussion map version so you can identify the most recent one.

- **Map defines sounds for:** Allows you to choose one of the following options, as appropriate for the current percussion map:



- **Multiple Instruments:** Choose this if the patch for which you are creating a map contains many different percussion instruments, such as the General MIDI drum map.

- **Single Instruments:** Choose this if the patch for which you are creating a map contains only a single percussion instrument, perhaps with multiple playback techniques for that instrument. For example, a snare drumline patch in Virtual Drumline or another specialist sound library.

This can also be useful when your VST instrument has several patches that have the same playback technique mappings. For example, there are both large and small cymbal patches in HALion Symphonic Orchestra which provide natural strike and roll sounds. Creating a single individual instrument percussion map allows you to use the same mapping for these sounds for multiple patches.

- **Apply Stage Template settings:** Allows you to set whether or not stage templates and space templates apply to endpoints using the percussion map. We recommend deactivating this option for sounds whose recordings already have spatial and reverberation characteristics.

NOTE

- Many fields in the **Percussion Map Data** section are locked by the **Lock Info**  button. You must click this button to unlock **Lock Info**  in order to change the information in the fields.
 - The **Endpoint Setup** dialog is where you set which percussion map Dorico Elements uses for each channel on your VST instrument or MIDI output device.
-

3 Drum Kit Note Map table

By default, the table shows the drum kit notes in use by the selected percussion map in numerical order. The table also contains the following columns, which display the corresponding available data about the selected drum kit note:

- **MIDI Note:** Shows the MIDI note number, such as “48”.
- **Note Name:** Shows the pitch and octave of the note, such as “C3”, according to your middle C numbering convention setting.
- **Name:** Shows the name of the technique, such as Snare “(long roll)”.

- **Instrument:** Shows the unpitched percussion instrument, such as “Snare Drum”.
- **Key Switch:** Shows the number of the key switch that triggers the note, such as “24”.
- **Playback Techniques:** Shows the playback techniques triggered by the note, such as “Roll”.

At the bottom of the table, there are the following options:

- **Show all:** Shows all MIDI notes from 0 to 127.
- **Show MIDI Notes in Use:** Only shows the MIDI notes in use by the selected percussion map.
- **Add Key Switch Alternative:** Duplicates the selected drum kit note.
- **Clear:** Deletes the selected drum kit note.

You can change the data for the currently selected drum kit note in the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection.

4 Edit Drum Kit Note subsection

Allows you to specify data in the following fields for the drum kit note currently selected in the **Drum Kit Note Map** table:

- **Name:** The displayed name for the specific combination of instrument and playback technique. You may choose to input the name used in the manufacturer’s documentation for your VST instrument or MIDI output device.
- **Instrument:** Allows you to select an instrument for the drum kit note selected in the **Drum Kit Note Map** section from a list of all the unpitched percussion instruments you can create in Dorico Elements.
- **Key switches:** Allows you to specify the MIDI note number of the key you want to use as a key switch if this sound requires another MIDI note to be played to trigger this specific combination of instrument and playback techniques.

NOTE

Key switches are not compulsory.

- **Techniques:** Allows you to select playback techniques to apply to the instrument selected in the **Instrument** field from a list of the available playback techniques.

5 Reset to Library Defaults

Allows you to revert any changes you have made to the percussion maps from the Default Library.

6 Import Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricolib` files that you want to import as percussion maps.

7 Export Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected percussion maps as a `.doricolib` file. You can then import the `.doricolib` file into other projects and share it with other users.

RELATED LINKS

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Track Inspector](#) on page 522






[Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints](#) on page 570

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Creating new percussion maps

You can create new percussion maps from scratch and you can duplicate existing percussion maps and edit the settings; for example, to obtain correct playback when using third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.
2. Create a new percussion map in any of the following ways:
 - To create an empty percussion map, click **Add Percussion Map**  in the action bar.
 - To create a copy of an existing percussion map, select it in the percussion maps list and click **Duplicate Percussion Map**  in the action bar.
3. In the **Percussion Map Data** section, click **Lock Info**  to unlock the fields.
4. Enter the display name you want for the percussion map in the **Name** field.
This name appears in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.
5. Enter any unique identification name in the **ID** field.
It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name, in the identification name for percussion maps; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.hso.cowbell**.
6. Choose one of the following options for **Map defines sounds for**, as appropriate for the current percussion map:
 - **Multiple Instruments**
 - **Single Instruments**
7. Activate/Deactivate **Apply Stage Template settings**.
8. In the **Drum Kit Note Map** section, click **Show all** to show unmapped notes.
9. Select the row corresponding to the MIDI note for which you want to create a new mapping.
10. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, click  beside the **Instrument** field to open a dialog containing a list of percussion instruments.
11. Select the instrument that corresponds to the sound produced by the selected MIDI note.
12. Click **OK**.
13. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, click  beside the **Techniques** field to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
14. Select the appropriate playback techniques for the sound produced by the selected MIDI note.
For example, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click **Buzz roll** and **Rim**.
15. Click **OK**.
16. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, enter the display name you want for this combination of instrument and playing technique in the **Name** field.
17. Optional: If the key switch for this sound requires a MIDI note number, specify it in the **Key switches** field.
18. Click **Apply**.
19. Optional: Repeat these steps for each MIDI note until you have created all the required mappings for your project.

20. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The new percussion map is created.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You must assign percussion maps to the same endpoints as the VST instruments or MIDI devices that provide the corresponding patches.
- You can export the percussion map if you want to use it in other projects.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780

[Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints](#) on page 570

[Endpoint Setup dialog](#) on page 567

Importing percussion maps

You can import percussion maps into projects. Percussion maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.
 2. Click **Import Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 3. Locate and select the percussion map file you want to import.
 4. Click **Open**.
-

RESULT

The selected percussion map is imported into your project. It appears in the percussion maps list.

Exporting percussion maps

You can export percussion maps so you can use them in other projects. Percussion maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.
 2. In the percussion maps list, select the percussion maps you want to export.
 3. Click **Export Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
 4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
 5. Click **Save**.
-





RESULT

The selected percussion maps are exported as a `.doricolib` file and saved in the selected location.

Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback

You can define specific playback behaviors for particular combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos in playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in any of the following ways:
 - For an individual percussion instrument: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
 - For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the kit instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.
2. In the list at the top of the dialog, select the playing technique-specific notehead whose playback behaviors you want to define.
3. Click **Add Technique**  in the action bar at the bottom left of the dialog.
4. Click **Choose Playing Techniques**  beside the **Playback playing technique** field to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
5. Select the playback techniques you want.

TIP

You can select a single playback technique or combine multiple playback techniques. To select multiple playback techniques, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click each playback technique.

6. Click **OK** to add the selected playback techniques and close the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
 7. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Replace**: Allows you to use this playing technique instead of the default playing technique defined for this combination of notehead and staff position.
 - **Add**: Allows you to add this playing technique on top of the default playing technique defined for this combination of notehead and staff position.
 8. Choose any articulations and the tremolo stroke that you want from the available options.
 9. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The behavior of the selected playing technique in playback is changed.

RELATED LINKS

- [Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog](#) on page 1421
- [Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425
- [Playback Technique Combinations dialog](#) on page 773

Playback techniques

Playback techniques link together the notations you input into your music and techniques/articulations in sound libraries in order to produce the correct sounds in playback. They are used by expression and percussion maps to trigger the appropriate commands, such as key switches or control changes.

- You can map playback techniques as required for different sound libraries in the **Expression Maps** dialog, including creating new combinations of existing playback techniques, such as **Legato** and **Tremolo**, which allows them to be used simultaneously.
- You can see which playback techniques are in use at any particular rhythmic position in the Playing Techniques editor for the corresponding instrument/voice.

When you input notations, such as playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, or articulations, the corresponding expression maps look for the appropriate playback techniques. For example, inputting *pizz.* playing techniques causes expression maps to use the **Pizzicato** playback technique to switch to the *pizzicato* sound for playback. If the expression map cannot locate the sound, the playback technique applied either remains the same as the previous playback technique or reverts to the natural playback technique.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of playback techniques:

Attribute

Only applies to a single note at the corresponding rhythmic position, such as an up bow playing technique or staccato articulation.

Direction

Applies from the corresponding rhythmic position onwards, until it is replaced by another playback technique, such as *pizzicato* followed by *arco*.

TIP

- Custom playing techniques that use playback techniques which do not already exist in expression maps do not play back automatically. In order for them to play back appropriately, you must add them to the expression maps for each instrument for which you want to use them. You must also assign an action for each custom playing technique that determines how the switch that triggers the technique is controlled.
- If you have input a playing technique but cannot hear a change in the sound, you might be using a combination of playback techniques that the expression map does not expect. For example, if you input a new playing technique without cancelling an existing playing technique, the expression map cannot process the two corresponding playback techniques together if the expression map does not have an entry for those two techniques combined.

To avoid playback technique clashes, you can add playback techniques that cannot be in use concurrently to the same mutual exclusion group in the corresponding expression maps. Alternatively, you can create a combination of those playback techniques in order to use them simultaneously.

- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, or articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

[Expression maps](#) on page 761

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Playback Technique Combinations dialog](#) on page 773

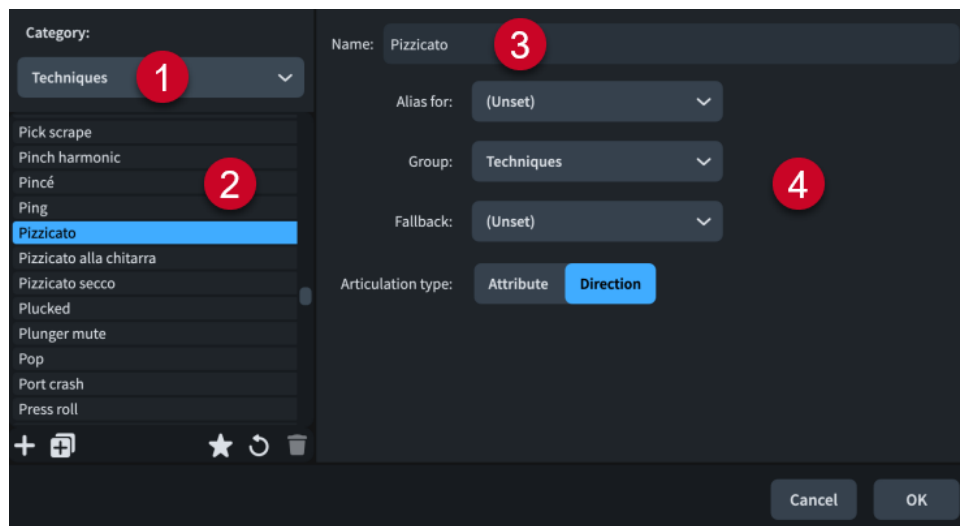
[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

- [Creating new expression maps](#) on page 776
- [Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps](#) on page 779
- [Playing Techniques editor](#) on page 690
- [Playing techniques](#) on page 1180
- [Tremolos](#) on page 1399
- [Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145
- [Articulations](#) on page 804

Edit Playback Techniques dialog

The **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog allows you to define new playback techniques and edit existing ones. Playback techniques are used by expression maps to assign the correct sounds to the required notations in the music, such as playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, and articulations.

- You can open the **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog by choosing **Library > Playback Techniques**.



The **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog contains the following sections and options:







1 Category menu

Allows you to filter the list of playback techniques by selecting a category from the menu, such as **Techniques** or **Dynamics**.

2 Playback techniques list

Contains all the playback techniques in the project within the currently selected category.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- New** : Adds a new blank playback technique.
- New from Selection** : Creates a copy of an existing playback technique that you can edit separately from the original.
- Save as Default** : Saves the selected playback technique to your user library, allowing you to use it in multiple projects. Appears as  for playback techniques saved as default.
- Revert to Factory** : Removes all your changes to the selected playback technique, returning it to its saved settings.
- Delete** : Deletes the selected playback technique.

NOTE

You cannot delete predefined playing techniques or any playing technique that is currently used in your project.

3 Name

Allows you to edit or enter the name of the playback technique. This is the name shown in lists in the **Edit Playing Techniques**, **Expression Maps**, **Playback Technique Combinations**, and **Percussion Maps** dialogs.

4 Playback options

- **Alias for:** Allows you to select another playback technique whose sound mapping you want to apply to the selected playback technique as well.
- **Group:** Sets the group in which this playback technique appears.
- **Fallback:** Allows you to specify another playback technique that can be used if the present one is not available.
- **Articulation type:** Sets the duration over which the playback technique takes effect. **Attribute** applies only to the note at the rhythmic position where the playing technique is found, such as a staccato articulation, while **Direction** applies to all following notes until it is replaced by another playing technique, such as *pizzicato*.

RELATED LINKS

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Playback Technique Combinations dialog](#) on page 773

[Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps](#) on page 779

Notation reference

Introduction

This notation reference contains information about the accepted conventions for presenting different notations and how to change their appearance and placement in Dorico Elements, both for individual items and by changing default settings.

It also contains instructions for inputting more complex notations, such as cross-staff glissando lines, which are described in the corresponding chapter.

Tasks in the notation reference outline the default per-layout changes you can make in **Layout Options**, such as changing the frequency of bar numbers, and the individual changes you can make to items, which often involve using properties in the Properties panel.

More detailed default options, such as precise spacing gaps between different items, are available in Dorico Pro.

You can find basic input methods for notations in the Write mode chapter.

RELATED LINKS

[Write mode](#) on page 195

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Notations input](#) on page 271

Accidentals

Accidentals are shown beside notes to indicate their pitch, both when notated on a staff and written out in text. In music based in Western tonality, they usually show that the pitch of a note has been altered so that it does not conform to the prevailing key signature.

In Dorico Elements, each note has its own fixed pitch that is independent of the prevailing key signature, and accidentals are automatically hidden and shown as appropriate. For example, if you input F#s and then add a D major key signature before them, they do not turn into F#s; they remain F#s and show natural accidentals. However, if you input the D major key signature first, any Fs you then input without stating an accidental are input as F#s.



There are different conventions for accidental duration rules, such as not repeating the same accidental on subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. In music that has no key signatures, some or all notes might require accidentals, depending on the notation convention in use.

You can use accidental duration rules to determine when accidentals are shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Accidental duration rules](#) on page 800

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244

Deleting accidentals


You can delete accidentals according to their type, and you can delete all accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals at the same time. This changes the pitch of the selected notes.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to cautionary accidentals, such as those shown on natural notes that follow the same notes with an accidental but in a different octave. In Dorico Elements, you can hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals in each flow and on individual notes.

PROCEDURE


1. In Write mode, select the notes whose accidentals you want to delete.
2. Delete accidentals in any of the following ways:
 - To delete naturals, press **0**.
 - To delete flats, press **-**.

- To delete sharps, press .
 - In the Notes panel, click the accidentals you want to delete.
-

RESULT

The corresponding accidentals are deleted from the selected notes. This changes their pitch. For example, deleting the sharp from a G# turns it into G.

NOTE

- Depending on the accidental duration rule applied to the flow, deleting accidentals might cause accidentals to appear on subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. When you select single notes or multiple notes in the same voice at the same rhythmic position, their pitches are shown in the status bar and as depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.
 - To delete accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals, we recommend that you revert them all to natural by pressing **0** or clicking **Natural** in the Notes panel. This is because re-inputting an accidental over a selection of notes with different accidentals adds that accidental to every note in the selection. For example, two G#s followed by two Gbs become four G#s if you re-input a sharp. If you click **Sharp** or press  twice, all accidentals are deleted.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting accidentals](#) on page 244

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Notes panel](#) on page 200



[Status bar](#) on page 38

[Keyboard panel](#) on page 206

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals

You can hide/show individual accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, including cautionary accidentals shown by default. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

- **Hide**
 - **Show**
 - **Round brackets**
 - **Square brackets**
-

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected notes are shown, hidden, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If colors for accidentals are shown, accidentals that you have shown manually appear teal.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
 - If you are hiding/showing many accidentals, we recommend that you consider changing the accidental duration rule.
 - You can assign key commands for different accidental hiding, showing, and parenthesizing commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads, independently of the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Accidental duration rules](#) on page 800

[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals](#) on page 801



[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals](#) on page 1084

[Hiding/Showing cautionary key signatures](#) on page 1025

Changing the size of accidentals

You can change the size of accidentals individually without changing the size of the noteheads to which they apply; for example, to show editorial accidentals at a smaller size than normal accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the accidentals whose size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental scale** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The scale size of the selected accidentals is changed. For example, changing the value to 50 scales the selected accidentals to half their normal size. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding/Showing colors for accidentals

You can show cautionary accidentals and accidentals that you have shown manually in different colors, independently of each other.

Colors for accidentals are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
 - To hide/show colors for cautionary accidentals, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Cautionary Accidentals**.
 - To hide/show colors for forced accidentals, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Forced Accidentals**.
-

RESULT

Colors for accidentals are hidden/shown. Cautionary accidentals appear pink, while forced accidentals appear teal.

EXAMPLE



Colors for both cautionary and forced accidentals shown

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals](#) on page 793
- [Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals](#) on page 801
- [Changing music area colors](#) on page 54
- [Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439
- [Annotations](#) on page 597

Stacking of accidentals

If multiple accidentals are required for a chord in a single voice, or for notes in multiple voices at the same rhythmic position, they are stacked to the left of the chord in columns.

For chords with multiple accidentals, accidentals are generally stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column immediately to the left of the notes.

2. The lowest accidental is added to the same column, provided that it does not collide with the first accidental.
3. The remaining highest and lowest accidentals are alternated in successive columns located further left from the chord.

In Dorico Elements, additional rules help to produce a stack of accidentals that uses as few columns as possible. The following list contains some of the rules that are applied:

- Columns closer to the notes contain more accidentals than columns further from the notes.
- Accidentals on notes that are an octave apart are stacked in the same column. This also applies to accidentals that are a sixth or more apart, depending on the combination of accidentals.
- Accidentals in the same column never collide. The minimum interval between accidentals that is required to prevent collisions depends on the types of accidentals.
- Accidentals that are a second apart are arranged in adjacent columns, with the higher accidental in the right-hand column.

These rules minimize the amount of extra space that is required between successive notes or chords and ensure that accidentals appear as close as possible to the noteheads to which they apply. At the same time, they produce a contour that resembles a C-curve on the left-hand side of the chord.

Accidental stacking rules for dense chords

Dorico Elements uses special stacking calculations in dense chords with multiple accidentals to ensure legibility. Chords are considered dense when they have six or more accidentals within the span of an octave.

For dense chords, accidentals are stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column to the left of the notes.
2. The next accidental on a note that is located at least a seventh below the highest note is stacked into the same column. This continues with the remaining notes until no more accidentals fit into the first column.
3. Steps 1 and 2 are repeated for the following columns until all accidentals are stacked.
4. The columns are grouped, interspersed, and re-stacked. This results in a stack with alternating accidentals, reminiscent of the way accidentals are arranged in a key signature.

By default for dense chords, Dorico Elements uses a lattice arrangement of accidentals, rather than the usual zig-zag arrangement. In very dense chords, the lattice arrangement can be wider and require more columns.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the column of accidentals](#) on page 797

[Moving accidentals graphically](#) on page 797

Kerning of accidental columns

Dorico Elements applies kerning to accidental columns to ensure that the columns to the left of a chord occupy as little horizontal space as possible.

In typography, kerning adjusts the space between individual characters to increase legibility. In Dorico Elements, as well as in music engraving in general, kerning allows accidentals to interlock.

EXAMPLE



If a low note is followed by a high note with an accidental, the accidental can be tucked above the low note to prevent the note spacing from being distorted.

Similarly, in the case of multiple columns of accidentals on a chord, the overall width of the stack of accidentals is reduced if, for example, a flat in the second column is kerned underneath a sharp in the first column belonging to a note a third higher. This also reduces the need to distort note spacing to accommodate accidentals.

Changing the column of accidentals

You can change the column of individual accidentals; for example, so they appear closer to the stem than other accidentals in the chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes or accidentals whose accidental column you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental column** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The column of the selected accidentals is changed. Accidentals with lower **Accidental column** values are placed closer to noteheads, while accidentals with higher values are placed further from noteheads. If necessary, Dorico Elements automatically changes the column of other accidentals at the same rhythmic position.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Tucking index properties](#) on page 518



Moving accidentals graphically

You can move individual accidentals graphically to the right or left; for example, to reduce the horizontal spacing required for accidentals in a single dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot move accidentals rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which accidentals apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new accidentals on the new notes or change the pitch of existing notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbar.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the accidentals you want to move. You can also select their noteheads.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental X offset** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
 3. Move the accidentals in one of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, increase the value in the value field.
 - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The selected accidentals are moved graphically. If necessary, Dorico Elements automatically increases note spacing to accommodate the accidentals and avoid collisions.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509

Altered unisons

Altered unisons occur when two or more notes of the same name in the same octave have different accidentals in the same chord, such as D \sharp and D \flat .

In Dorico Elements, this is notated with a split stem by default. Split stems show the main body of a chord with a stem branch coming off the main stem that connects noteheads in altered unisons to the chord. This allows all notes to appear with their corresponding accidental directly beside them. A split stem is also known as a “cherry stalk” or a “tree”.

You can show individual altered unisons with a single stem, meaning noteheads appear directly beside each other, and the two accidentals are shown beside each other to the left of the chord.

You can also change the default appearance of all altered unisons in each flow independently on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

If a chord contains notes a second interval apart and one of those notes has an altered unison, it is always shown with a split stem, regardless of your setting. This is to ensure clarity in clusters.

EXAMPLE



A single stem altered unison



A split stem altered unison

RELATED LINKS



[Inputting chords](#) on page 251

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Changing how altered unisons appear

You can change how individual altered unisons appear, including within chords containing other altered unisons, and independently of your per-flow settings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the altered unison notes whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Split stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected altered unison notes are shown with split stems when the checkbox is activated, and with single stems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- **Split stem** applies to individual notes. You can have altered unisons appear differently within the same chord by setting their properties independently.
- You can change the default appearance of all altered unisons in each flow independently in **Notation Options > Accidentals > Altered Unisons**.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Microtonal accidentals

Microtonal accidentals indicate pitches beyond the standard accepted chromatic scale in Western tonality, such as a quarter sharp or quarter flat. Microtonal accidentals are only shown in Dorico Elements if you open a project that already contains them. They are available for input only where the corresponding key signature and tonality system apply.

Accidental duration rules

Accidental duration rules determine how long accidentals apply, such as within a bar, at a different octave, or just for a single note. Dorico Elements allows you to use different accidental duration rules.

- You can find the available accidental duration rules on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.

Common practice

In common practice, an accidental affects all notes of the same pitch in the same octave within the same bar, unless it is cancelled by another accidental. If it is not cancelled, it is automatically cancelled in the following bar.

It is customary to show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in certain circumstances. For example, in the key of G major, an $F\sharp$ in a bar following an $F\sharp$ shows a cautionary sharp sign, even though the sharp is included in the key signature. Cautionary accidentals are also known as “courtesy accidentals”.

When using the common practice accidental duration rule, you can choose to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals in different circumstances.

In Dorico Elements, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

Second Viennese School

The Second Viennese School accidental duration rule states that each accidental only applies to a single note. All notes show an accidental regardless of key signature, including naturals.

This accidental duration rule was used by Schoenberg and other composers of the Second Viennese School.

You can customize the options within the Second Viennese School accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether immediate repetitions of the same note within the same bar require a restatement of the accidental.

Modernist

The Modernist accidental duration rule states that only notes that have been altered from the key signature show accidentals. Naturals are not shown. However, accidentals that are shown only apply to the notes on which they are written, as with the Second Viennese School.

Charles Ives and Robert Crumb used this variation.

You can customize the options within the Modernist accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether or not the same accidental on the same pitch is restated later in the bar if the subsequent pitches occur immediately and if subsequent pitches occur after other, different notes. Similarly, there are options for accidentals on notes

in different octaves in the same bar and following bar. There is also an option controlling the restatement of accidentals within beam groups.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Changing the accidental duration rule

You can change the accidental duration rule in each flow independently; for example, if the Modernist accidental duration rule is appropriate for certain flows in your project but common practice is appropriate for others. In Dorico Elements, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the accidental duration rule.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Accidental duration rule**:
 - **Common Practice**
 - **Second Viennese School**
 - **Modernist**
5. Optional: Customize the options for your chosen accidental duration rule.

TIP

Options in the **Basic** section can apply to all accidental duration rules.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals

You can hide/show cautionary accidentals, or show them in parentheses, in different circumstances by default in flows that use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PREREQUISITE

The flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.

4. In the **Cautionary Accidentals** section, change each option as required.
For example, you can show cautionary accidentals for notes at different octaves in the same bar, but hide them in the following bar.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Cautionary accidentals are hidden, shown, or parenthesized in the corresponding circumstances in the selected flows.

If colors for accidentals are shown, cautionary accidentals appear pink.

TIP

For flows using the Modernist accidental duration rule, options for cautionary accidentals are available in the **Modernist Options** section of the **Accidentals** page.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing colors for accidentals](#) on page 795

Changing the cancellation of double accidentals

You can change the convention of double accidental cancellation in each flow independently; for example, if some flows in your project require archaic cancellation. You can do this in combination with any accidental duration rule.

By default, Dorico Elements uses modern cancellation.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the double accidental cancellation convention.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
 4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Single accidentals cancelling double accidentals**:
 - To show naturals immediately before single accidentals that come after double accidentals, choose **Use archaic cancellation**.
 - To replace double accidentals with single accidentals without showing naturals, choose **Use modern cancellation**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The double accidental cancellation convention is changed in the selected flows.

EXAMPLE



Archaic cancellation



Modern cancellation

Articulations

Articulations are markings that are drawn above or below notes and chords. Articulations tell a performer how to attack a note or how long to play a note relative to its notated duration.

In Dorico Elements, articulations are defined as something that alters the way a note is played, in a way that is consistent across all instruments. Because instructions like bowing directions, harmonics, or tonguing apply to different instrument groups, in Dorico Elements such directions are defined as playing techniques.



A musical phrase with accent, staccato, and staccatissimo articulations

Articulations are categorized into the following types:

Articulations of force

Indicate a stronger attack at the start of notes, and include articulations such as accent and marcato. Marcato is also sometimes known as a “strong accent”. Dorico Elements shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Articulations of duration

Indicate a shorter duration than notated, and include articulations such as staccatissimo, staccato, tenuto, and staccato-tenuto. Staccato-tenuto is also sometimes known as a “louré”. If a note includes ties, Dorico Elements shows articulations of duration above the last note in the chain by default.

Articulations of stress

Indicate notes that should be emphasized or not emphasized where that contradicts the prevailing meter, using stressed and unstressed marks. Dorico Elements shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Dorico Elements positions articulations automatically on the notehead or stem side of notes and chords, according to the musical context. A note or chord can display one of each type of articulation.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting articulations](#) on page 271

[Articulations in playback](#) on page 809

[Positions of articulations](#) on page 805

[Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains](#) on page 807

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

Copying and pasting articulations

You can copy an existing phrase and paste only its slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations to another phrase, without affecting the pitches of notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, make a selection containing the slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations you want to copy.
2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected phrase.
3. Select the first note to which you want to paste articulations.
4. Choose **Edit > Paste Special > Paste Articulations**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

Slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations included in the selection are pasted to notes from the selected note onwards.

RELATED LINKS

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

[Repitching notes without changing their rhythm](#) on page 472

[Arranging tools](#) on page 455

Deleting articulations

Individual articulation markings cannot be selected and deleted separately from their notehead in Write mode, so articulations must be deleted by selecting the note or notes to which they are attached, and deselecting the articulation.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose articulations you want to delete.
2. Deselect the articulations in any of the following ways:
 - Press the key commands of the articulations you want to delete.
 - In the Notes panel, click the articulations you want to delete.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes panel](#) on page 200

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Key commands for articulations](#) on page 272

Positions of articulations

There are established conventions for the position and placement of articulations relative to notes, the staff, and staff lines, which ensure articulations are always clearly visible. For

the smallest articulations, such as staccato marks, correct placement relative to staff lines in particular is vital.

Placement of articulations

Articulations are placed on the notehead side by default, with the following exceptions:

- In single-voice contexts, marcato is always placed above the staff, regardless of the stem direction of the note or chord on which it is used. In multiple-voice contexts, marcato can also be placed below the staff.
- If multiple voices are active, articulations are placed at the end of the stem side of a note or chord. This clarifies which articulations belong to the up-stemmed notes and which to the down-stemmed notes.
- If a note is placed on the middle staff line or on the space immediately on either side, articulations that are less than a space in height are centered in the next unoccupied space. This normally only applies to staccato and tenuto. If a note in the middle of the staff has a staccato-tenuto articulation, the component parts of the articulation are split up and placed in separate spaces.
- If an articulation cannot fit within a staff space, or if the note is placed high or low on the staff, the articulation is placed outside the staff.
- If a note or chord is tied and the tie is placed above or below the notehead, articulations that are placed on the notehead side of a note or chord are offset by an additional 1/4 space in order to avoid the end of the tie.

Articulations on the notehead side are always centered horizontally on the notehead. This also applies to articulations on the stem side, except if the only articulation is a staccato or staccatissimo. In this case, the articulation is centered on the stem.

Articulations in tie chains

By default, articulations of force and stress are shown on the first note/chord in tie chains, while articulations of duration are shown on the last note/chord.

You can change where in tie chains articulations appear individually.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes](#) on page 808

[Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs](#) on page 808

Order of articulations

If there are multiple articulations on the same notes, their vertical position and proximity to noteheads/stems depends on their type.

Articulations are positioned in the following order:

1. Articulations of duration are positioned closest to notehead/stems.
2. Articulations of force are positioned outside articulations of duration.
3. Articulations of stress are positioned furthest from noteheads/stems.

Order of articulations in relation to slurs

Articulations of duration are positioned as follows:

- Inside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation.
- Inside the curvature of a slur.
- Inside tuplet brackets.

Articulations of force are positioned as follows:

- Outside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation, except if they can be positioned within the staff.
- Inside the curvature of a slur if they fit between the slur and the note or stem, to which they belong, without colliding.
- Outside tuplet brackets.



Force and stress articulations outside the ends of the slur





Duration articulations inside the ends of the slur

Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains

You can change where in tie chains articulations appear individually. By default, articulations of force and stress are shown on the first note/chord in tie chains, while articulations of duration are shown on the last note/chord.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tied notes/chords whose articulation position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the corresponding heading for the articulation whose position you want to change.
For example, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the position of accents.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **First note**
 - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of articulations in the selected tie chains is changed.



RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes

You can change whether individual articulations are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Placement** under the corresponding heading for the articulations whose placement you want to change.
For example, activate **Placement** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the placement of accents.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Notehead side**
 - **Stem side**

RESULT

The articulation is placed on the selected side of the notes or chords. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain. If this creates a collision with other markings, such as playing techniques, Dorico Elements automatically makes adjustments to make sure all markings are clear and legible.



Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs

You can change whether individual articulations of duration are placed inside or outside slur endpoints. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to articulations of duration. They do not apply to articulations of force or stress.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Inside slur endpoint** in the **Articulations** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints when the checkbox is activated, and outside slur endpoints when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Slur endpoints relative to articulations](#) on page 1286

Articulations in playback

Articulations affect how notes sound in playback. Depending on whether your sound library has specific samples for different articulations, Dorico Elements changes playback in different ways to reflect articulations.

- If your sound library includes samples for articulations, Dorico Elements loads the required samples using playback techniques. Additionally, Dorico Elements makes notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.
- If your sound library does not include samples for articulations, Dorico Elements adjusts notes according to the articulation without loading different samples. For example, making notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.

Because articulations apply to whole notes, samples are triggered at the start of notes, including tie chains.

TIP

- You can find options on the **Timing** page in **Playback Options** for the default effect of articulations of duration. You can find options for articulations of force on the **Dynamics** page.
 - You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Playback techniques](#) on page 787
- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
- [Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Bars

Bars indicate a usually regular pattern of beats, determined by the prevailing time signature. Bars are separated from adjacent bars by vertical barlines, and each bar has a unique bar number.

Dorico Elements automatically numbers bars and shows barlines between bars as required for the prevailing time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[Bar numbers](#) on page 826

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Hiding/Showing time signatures](#) on page 1396

Bar length



Bars usually last the same duration and start and end at the same positions for all players. However, some music involves bars of different lengths coinciding, and there are situations where some players may have no bars indicated at all.

You can change the duration of a bar by changing its time signature or, in music in open meter, by inputting barlines where required. You can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music; for example, if you are writing music with an irregular meter and you require barlines only to group material together, but not to imply any sense of meter.

Deleting bars/beats

You can delete whole bars and specific beats of music from your project completely by using the bars and barlines popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
 - The first bar you want to delete, or the first note or rest in that bar.
 - An item at the rhythmic position from which you want to delete beats.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-B**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Bars and Barlines** .
3. Enter - (minus), followed by the number of bars or beats you want to delete into the popover.

For example, enter **-6** to delete six bars, meaning the bar you selected and the subsequent five bars, or **-2q** to delete two quarter note beats, starting from the selected rhythmic position.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is activated, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

- Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.
 - Deleting some, but not all, beats from bars according to the prevailing time signature deletes the contents of those beats only. If you want to shorten a bar's duration, such as at the end of flows that start with a pick-up bar, you must instead either input a time signature with the required number of beats then hide the time signature, or input a barline and delete any excess bars if necessary. You can also use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope and delete notes/rests.
 - You can also delete bars by selecting the bars you want to delete, then choosing **Edit > Delete Bars**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Signposts](#) on page 450


Deleting bars/beats with the system track


You can delete whole bars and selected beats from your project completely using the system track.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track in Write mode, select the region that you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**  in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

The system track changes color when you hover your mouse pointer over **Delete** .

RESULT

The selected region is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is activated, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

- Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.
- Deleting some, but not all, beats from bars according to the prevailing time signature deletes the contents of those beats only. If you want to shorten a bar's duration, such as at the end of flows that start with a pick-up bar, you must instead either input a time signature with the required number of beats then hide the time signature, or input a barline and

delete any excess bars if necessary. You can also use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope and delete notes/rests.

- You can also delete bars by selecting the bars you want to delete, then choosing **Edit > Delete Bars**.
-



RELATED LINKS

[System track](#) on page 425

Deleting empty bars/beats at the end of flows

You can trim flows by deleting any empty bars or beats left at the end.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow you want to trim.
 2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-B**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Bars and Barlines** .
 3. Enter **trim** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

Empty bars/beats at the end of the selected flow are deleted.

TIP

You can also trim flows by choosing **Write > Trim Flow**.

RELATED LINKS

[Bars and barlines popover](#) on page 301

[Splitting flows](#) on page 501

[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

Deleting the contents of bars

You can delete just the contents of bars without deleting barlines or the bars themselves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bars whose contents you want to delete.

TIP

Notes, rests, and other objects are highlighted orange when selected.

2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Large selections](#) on page 424

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

Changing the width of empty bars

You can change the width of empty bars individually in Engrave mode.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a square note spacing handle at the rhythmic position of the barline at the end of each empty bar whose width you want to change.



2. Adjust the spacing in any of the following ways:
 - To increase the space to the left of the selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To decrease the space to the left of the selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

- To move handles by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by moderate increments, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.
-

RESULT

The width of the selected empty bars is changed. For example, if you select the handle of the barline on the right of a bar and nudge the handle to the left, the bar appears narrower. If you select the barline on the right of a bar and nudge the handle to the right, the bar appears wider.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars](#) on page 1277

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

Splits in bars

You can split bars rhythmically by changing the number of beats in each bar. You can split bars visually across system or frame breaks, which might be required in music with an irregular meter or in passages of polymeter.

Splitting bars by inputting new time signatures

You can split bars into two or more bars by changing the time signature at any rhythmic position. New time signatures apply until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

NOTE

If you change the time signature in the middle of an existing bar, we recommend inputting another time signature at the start of the preceding bar reflecting its new rhythmic duration to avoid confusion.

Splitting bars by inputting new barlines

You can also split bars by inputting new barlines that are not normal (single) barlines anywhere within a bar without affecting the time signature. However, inputting a normal (single) barline anywhere within an existing bar resets the prevailing time signature from that point onwards.

For example, selecting the third quarter note (crotchet) in a 4/4 bar and inserting a new barline causes a new 4/4 bar to start from the added barline. This leaves the equivalent of a 2/4 bar without a time signature to the left of the barline, but the bars to the right of the added barline are in 4/4 and continue to be in 4/4 until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Signposts are shown at the position of each barline that you add manually within bars.

The image shows two musical staves. The left staff has two 4/4 bars, each containing four quarter notes. The right staff has a 4/4 bar split by a normal barline halfway through. A signpost above the barline reads '4/4 (q, 1+1+1+1)'. The first part of the bar contains two quarter notes, and the second part contains two quarter notes.

Two 4/4 bars with quarter notes

Adding a normal barline halfway through the first 4/4 bar restarts the time signature from that point.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634

[Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

Barlines

Barlines are vertical lines that cross staves in order to show how music is divided into bars, according to the time signature. The most commonly used barline is the single barline between adjacent bars, but there are different types, such as double or repeat barlines.



The final system in a piece in 12/8 containing a key change with double barline, three normal barlines, and a final barline at the end

Dorico Elements automatically shows barlines as required for the prevailing time signature. For example, Dorico Elements automatically shows dashed barlines between the different meters in aggregate time signatures. If you change the time signature, Dorico Elements moves the barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

By default, Dorico Elements uses single barlines in flows and final barlines at the end of flows. You can change the default barline used in and at the end of each flow independently.

Barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace.

NOTE

Because of their intrinsic connection, barlines are considered part of time signatures in Dorico Elements. Therefore, explicit barlines that you have input directly are treated as hidden time signatures and break multi-bar rests.

Explicit single barlines appear with time signature signposts.

RELATED LINKS

- [Types of barlines](#) on page 816
- [Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300
- [Barlines across staff groups](#) on page 822
- [Changing the default barline type in flows](#) on page 817
- [Changing the default barline at the end of flows](#) on page 818
- [Repeats in playback](#) on page 549
- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [Bars](#) on page 810
- [Bar numbers](#) on page 826
- [Multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279
- [Signposts](#) on page 450
- [Time signatures](#) on page 1381
- [Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

Per-flow notation options for barlines

You can find options for the per-flow the appearance of barlines on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change the type of barline used in and shown at the end of each flow by default, whether single barlines between staves only appear between staves or extend across staves, and whether barlines join all staves at the end of each system and at the end of the final system in a flow.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

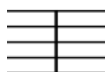
Types of barlines

There are multiple types of barlines in Dorico Elements, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Normal (Single)

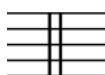
A standard single barline that spans the entire height of the staff. For single-line staves, the barline extends one space above and below the staff line by default.

Explicit single barlines appear with time signature signposts.



Double

A double barline consists of two lines, both the width of a single barline, positioned half a space apart by default. It is often used to denote significant changes in the music, or to mark the placement of rehearsal marks, key signature changes, and tempo changes.



Final

A final barline consists of two lines: one of normal width, the other thick. It marks where the music ends.

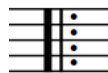


Start repeat

A start repeat line consists of a thick barline, followed by a normal barline, followed by one of the following arrangements of dots:

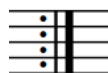
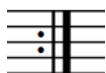
- Two dots, one each in the middle two spaces of a five-line staff
- Four dots, one each in all four spaces of a five-line staff

It shows the start of a repeated section. It is used alongside end repeat lines, which show the end of a repeated section.



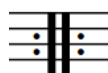
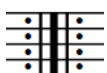
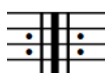
End repeat

An end repeat line is the mirror of a start repeat line, so it consists of either two or four dots, followed by a normal barline, followed by a thick barline. It shows the end of a repeated section. It is used alongside start repeat lines, which show the start of a repeated section.



End/Start repeat

This line combines the start repeat and end repeat barlines, with either two single barlines with a single shared thick barline in the middle, or two thick barlines and no single barlines. On either side, there are either two or four repeat dots. It is used when a repeated section is immediately followed by another, separate repeated section.



RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Repeat counts](#) on page 1242

[Barlines across staff groups](#) on page 822

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Changing the default barline type in flows

By default, Dorico Elements uses single barlines to separate bars in flows. You can change which type of barline automatically separates bars in each flow independently. For example, short or tick barlines are frequently used for most barlines in chant notation.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default barline type you want to change.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Default barline type**:
 - **Normal**
 - **Double**
 - **Dashed**
 - **Final**

- **Tick (Top)**
- **Tick (Bottom)**
- **Short (Center)**
- **Short (Top)**
- **Thick**
- **Start Repeat**
- **End Repeat**
- **End and Start Repeat**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default barline type in the selected flows is changed. This does not override any explicit barlines you have input, such as repeat barlines in repeat endings, or the final barlines in the selected flows.

RELATED LINKS

[Types of barlines](#) on page 816

[Repeat endings](#) on page 1230

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

Changing the default barline at the end of flows

By default, Dorico Elements uses final barlines at the end of flows. You can choose which type of barline is placed automatically at the end of each flow independently; for example, you might show double barlines at the end of flows to indicate there should be no gap before the following flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default end barline you want to change.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Automatic barline at end of flow**:
 - **Final barline**
 - **Double barline**
 - **Normal barline**
 - **Dashed barline**
 - **Thick barline**
 - **No barline**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The default final barline at the end of the selected flows is changed.

NOTE



You can override individual final barlines by inputting a barline of a different type, but you cannot delete individual final barlines.

Changing the barline shown before repeat barlines

You can change the barline shown at the end of individual systems that are followed by start repeat barlines at the beginning of the next system. For example, if you want to show normal barlines at the end of some systems following by start repeat barlines but double barlines at the end of others.

These steps can also apply to barlines shown before key signature changes that coincide with start repeat barlines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the barlines at the end of systems followed by start repeat barlines whose barline type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline at end of system** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Normal**
 - **Double**
 - **Final**
 - **Dashed**
 - **Tick (top)**
 - **Short (center)**
 - **Thick**
 - **Triple**
 - **Short (top)**
 - **Tick (bottom)**
 - **None**

RESULT

The barline type shown at the selected barlines is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[System breaks](#) on page 633

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines and brackets/braces

You can hide/show systemic barlines and brackets/braces at individual system/frame breaks and codas; for example, when formatting music with incipits.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks or codas at the positions where you want to hide/show systemic barlines.
- Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the system/frame break signposts or codas at the positions where you want to hide/show systemic barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only system/frame signposts or only codas.

2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide systemic barline** in either the **Format** or **Repeat Markers** group.

RESULT

Systemic barlines and brackets/braces are hidden/shown on the corresponding systems to the selected system/frame breaks or codas.

EXAMPLE



Systemic barline shown



Systemic barline hidden

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405
- [Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634
- [Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450
- [Changing the gap before codas](#) on page 1242

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems

By default, systemic barlines are shown at the start of systems containing two or more staves and hidden on single-staff systems. You can hide/show systemic barlines on single-staff systems on the first system and after the first system in each flow independently.

Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding clefs and key signatures from the second system onwards.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show systemic barlines after the first system.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
 4. In the **Systemic Barline** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Barline at start of first system**:
 - **Show for one or more staves**
 - **Show for two or more staves**
 5. Choose one of the following options for **Barline at start of systems following first system**:
 - **Show for one or more staves**
 - **Show for two or more staves**
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898

[Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems](#) on page 911

[Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems](#) on page 1022

Moving barlines graphically

You can adjust the spacing between barlines and neighboring notes, time signatures, key signatures, or rests.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a square note spacing handle at the rhythmic position of each barline you want to move.



2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:

- To increase the space to the left of selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To decrease the space to the left of selected handles, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

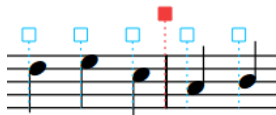
NOTE

- To move handles by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by moderate increments, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.
-

RESULT

The spacing to the right/left of the selected barlines is increased/decreased.

EXAMPLE



The new position of the barline after decreasing the space to its left

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Barlines across staff groups

In order to make it easier to find a particular instrument within a score, barlines can extend across instrumental and staff groups.

Barlines across default staff groups

When a barline only appears on individual staves, it is much harder to locate individual lines at a glance. However, when barlines continue across instrumental groups in the score, instrument families are shown as blocks, which makes finding an instrument much easier.

Barlines on individual staves

Barlines across instrumental groups

By default, barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace, except for vocal staves, across which barlines never automatically extend. Which staves are included in a bracket depends on the instrumentation and context, but usually staves for instruments from the same family, such as woodwind or strings, are bracketed together.

Dorico Elements automatically brackets staves according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Barlines across grand staff instruments

Dorico Elements automatically joins barlines across grand staff instrument staves as they are braced. Because staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously, grand staff instruments are excluded from brackets and therefore are not joined with barlines to any other staves.

Barline joins between staves

You can change whether single barlines only appear between staves or extend across the staves as well in each flow independently on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**. Barline joins only between staves are known as “Mensurstriche”. They are commonly used when typesetting early music to aid readability for modern performers while minimizing the visual impact on the originally unmetred notation.

Barlines drawn between staves

Custom barline groups

You can create custom barline joins and bracket groups by manually arranging your players into groups. Player groups are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

RELATED LINKS

- [Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866
- [Showing barlines across all staves at time signature changes](#) on page 824
- [Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127
- [Player groups](#) on page 167
- [Player group labels](#) on page 1317
- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Changing the default barline joins

You can change whether barline joins automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace, or break between each instrument, in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default barline joins. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
 4. In the **Bracketing** section, choose one of the following options for **Barline joins**:
 - **Follow primary brackets**
 - **Separate at each instrument**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Brackets and braces](#) on page 864
- [Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

Showing barlines across all staves at time signature changes

You can join all staves with a barline at time signature changes in individual layouts, regardless of your bracketing style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signature changes where you want to join all staves with a barline. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline joins all staves** in the **Time Signatures** group.
-

RESULT

All staves in the layout currently open in the music area are joined by a barline at the selected time signature changes.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

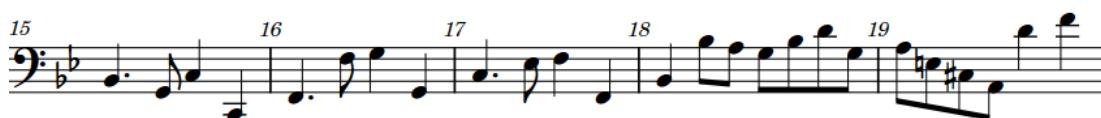
Bar numbers

Bar numbers provide crucial reference points in music and make the chronological sequence of music clear. By providing a unique number for each bar, they enable accurate references to specific parts of pieces and allow players to co-ordinate themselves easily in rehearsals and concerts.

In Dorico Elements, bar numbers appear automatically, following the most common practice of showing a bar number at the start of each system in all layouts by default. You can hide and show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at a specified regular interval or in every bar, which is frequently used in film music scores.

TIP

The majority of options relating to bar numbers are on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**. This is because it is very common to display bar numbers differently in different layouts, such as in every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.



Bar numbers shown every bar in a part layout

RELATED LINKS

[Bar number paragraph styles](#) on page 829

[Positions of bar numbers](#) on page 831

[Bar number changes](#) on page 835

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Barlines](#) on page 815

[Track overview](#) on page 520

Hiding/Showing bar numbers

You can hide/show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at different frequencies. For example, you can show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar numbers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.

4. In the **Frequency** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show bar numbers**:
 - **Every system**
 - **Every n bars**
 - **Every bar**
 - **None**
 5. Optional: If you chose **Every n bars**, set a custom frequency for bar numbers by changing the value for **Interval**.
 6. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate each option as required.
For example, you can hide the first bar number when bar numbers are shown every bar, and show standard bar numbers in addition to bar number ranges on multi-bar rests.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Bar numbers are hidden in the selected layouts when you choose **None**, and shown at the corresponding frequency when you choose any other option.

Changing the **Interval** value changes how frequently bar numbers are shown. For example, setting an interval value of **10** means that bar numbers are shown every tenth bar.

TIP

You can also hide individual bar numbers in layouts where bar numbers are shown by selecting them and activating **Hide bar number** in the **Time Signatures** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the distance between bar numbers and the staff/other objects](#) on page 832

[Changing the horizontal position of bar numbers](#) on page 832

[Showing bar numbers above specific staves](#) on page 831

[Changing the system-relative placement of bar numbers](#) on page 834

[Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828

[Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers](#) on page 829

[Bar number paragraph styles](#) on page 829

[Positions of bar numbers](#) on page 831

[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

Hiding/Showing bar number enclosures

You can optionally show bar numbers in either a rectangular or circular enclosure in each layout independently; for example, if you want bar numbers to appear with rectangle enclosures in the full score layout, so the conductor can easily see them, but with no enclosures in part layouts, where pages tend to be less busy.

Bar numbers in enclosures automatically erase their backgrounds.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number enclosure type.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Appearance** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Enclosure type**:
 - **None**
 - **Rectangle**
 - **Circle**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The enclosure type of all bar numbers in the selected layouts is changed.

EXAMPLE

10

Bar number with no enclosure

10

Bar number with a rectangle enclosure

10

Bar number with a circle enclosure

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Bar number paragraph styles](#) on page 829

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests

You can hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests; for example, so it is clear in part layouts which bars the player does not play. Multi-bar rests can include bar repeat regions, if you have chosen to consolidate bar repeat regions as well as empty bars into multi-bar rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show ranges of bar numbers under multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Bar number ranges are shown beneath multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats in the selected layouts when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing bar numbers](#) on page 826
- [Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279
- [Bar number paragraph styles](#) on page 829
- [Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers

You can hide/show guide bar numbers on every bar and above every system in page view and galley view independently; for example, to make it easier to check the bar number in scores with many staves. Guide bar numbers are not printed.

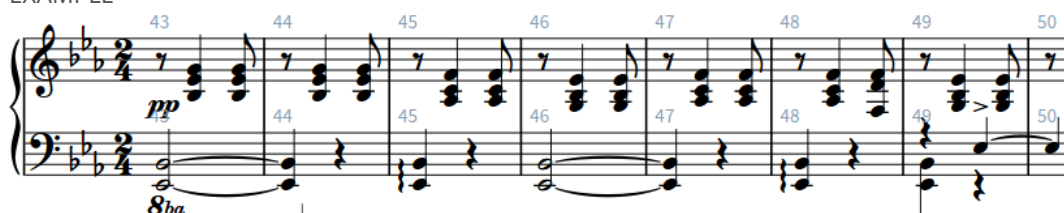
PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show guide bar numbers in any of the following ways:
 - To hide/show guide bar numbers in page view, choose **View > Bar Numbers > Page View**.
 - To hide/show guide bar numbers in galley view, choose **View > Bar Numbers > Galley View**.

RESULT

Guide bar numbers are hidden/shown for every bar and above every staff in the corresponding view type.

EXAMPLE



The image shows a musical score in page view. The score is in 2/4 time and features a piano (pp) dynamic. The key signature has two flats. The score consists of two staves: a treble clef staff and a bass clef staff. The treble staff contains a series of chords, each with a guide bar number above it: 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, and 50. The bass staff contains a multi-measure rest for 8 bars, indicated by a bracket and the number '8ba' below it. The guide bar numbers are clearly visible above the treble staff.

Guide bar numbers shown in page view

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing guide page numbers](#) on page 1152
- [Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

Bar number paragraph styles

In Dorico Elements, bar numbers use paragraph styles so that you can use different paragraph styles in different layouts. In particular, part layouts often require differently formatted bar numbers compared to full score layouts.

By default, there are the following paragraph styles for bar numbers:

- **Bar numbers (parts):** Used in part layouts
- **Bar numbers (score):** Used in full score and custom score layouts

Initially, both paragraph styles have the same settings, but you can change the settings of each paragraph style independently. For example, you might want to use a bold italic font for bar numbers in part layouts but use a plain font with a much larger font size in full score layouts.

You can then change which paragraph style is used in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Editing the bar number paragraph styles

You can edit the formatting of the paragraph styles used for bar numbers; for example, if you want to increase their font size. By default, there is a paragraph style for bar numbers in full score layouts and another paragraph style for bar numbers in part layouts.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use additional bar number paragraph styles to the ones provided by default, you have created new paragraph styles.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Paragraph Styles** to open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.
2. In the paragraph styles list, select one of the following bar number paragraph styles:
 - **Bar numbers (parts)**
 - **Bar numbers (score)**
3. Optional: Select one of the available styles from the **Parent** menu.
If you select a parent style, an activated switch is shown beside all the options that are different in the selected paragraph style, compared to its parent style.
4. Activate and change the options you want for the selected paragraph style.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected bar number paragraph style is changed. This affects the appearance of bar numbers in all layouts that use the selected style.

TIP

You can also make additional bar number paragraph styles, as each layout can use a different paragraph style for bar numbers.

RELATED LINKS

[Creating paragraph styles](#) on page 758

Changing the bar number paragraph style used in layouts

You can choose which paragraph style is used for bar numbers in each layout independently. By default, full score layouts and part layouts use different paragraph styles for bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the paragraph style used for bar numbers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Appearance** subsection, select a paragraph style from the **Paragraph style** menu.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The selected paragraph style is used for all bar numbers in the selected layouts.

Positions of bar numbers

Bar numbers are typically shown at the start of each system, above the staff, and aligned with the initial barline.

You can change the default positions and frequency of bar numbers in each layout independently on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**, and you can move individual bar numbers in Engrave mode. For example, you might want to show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

Showing bar numbers above specific staves

You can change the staves above which bar numbers appear, which allows you to show bar numbers at multiple vertical positions in each system. For example, in large orchestral scores, you might show bar numbers both at the top of the system and above the string section.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical positions of bar numbers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Placement** subsection, activate the checkbox for each player in the **Show above specific players** list above whose top staff you want to show bar numbers.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The vertical positions of bar numbers are changed in the selected layouts. For players holding multiple instruments, bar numbers appear above their top instrument staff.

NOTE

You can change the distances between bar numbers and the staff/other objects and your vertical spacing settings for the gaps between staves in order to accommodate bar numbers shown between staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the default staff/system spacing](#) on page 603

[Per-layout vertical spacing options](#) on page 621

[Moving instruments](#) on page 135

Changing the horizontal position of bar numbers

You can change the horizontal position of bar numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can have bar numbers centered in the middle of bars in full score layouts but centered on barlines in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the horizontal position of bar numbers.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Horizontal Position** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Horizontal position**:
 - To show barlines left-aligned on barlines at the start of bars, choose **Left-aligned on barline**.
 - To show bar numbers centered on barlines at the start of bars, choose **Centered on barline**.
 - To show bar numbers in the middle of bars, choose **Centered on bar**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The horizontal position of bar numbers is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Showing bar numbers above specific staves](#) on page 831

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Changing the distance between bar numbers and the staff/other objects

You can change the minimum distance between bar numbers and the staff, and set a separate value for the distance between bar numbers and other objects, in each layout independently. For

example, you can position bar numbers further from the staff/other objects in full score layouts than in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the minimum distance of bar numbers from the staff.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Placement** subsection, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
 - **Minimum distance from staff**
 - **Minimum distance from other objects**
5. Activate/Deactivate **Align bar numbers across width of system**.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Avoid collisions**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Increasing the values positions bar numbers further away from the staff and/or other objects, either above or below the staff depending on your setting for **Placement relative to staff**.

Decreasing the values positions bar numbers closer to the staff and/or other objects.

When **Align bar numbers across width of system** is activated, bar numbers automatically vertically align within systems, with their position determined by the bar number furthest from the staff.

When **Avoid collisions** is deactivated, bar numbers do not automatically avoid collisions with other items, and are instead positioned using the minimum distance values you set. This allows bar numbers to appear directly above/below the staff, regardless of the pitch of notes or presence of other notations, such as ties and slurs.

NOTE

- Bar numbers can be positioned further from the staff than your minimum distance values when **Avoid collisions** is activated.
- If you want bar numbers within systems to appear closer to the staff than bar numbers at the start of systems, such as in part layouts with treble clefs, we recommend deactivating **Align bar numbers across width of system**.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing bar numbers](#) on page 826

Changing the system-relative placement of bar numbers

You can show bar numbers either above or below each system in each layout independently. For example, bar numbers can appear below the system in full score layouts but above the system in individual part layouts.

NOTE

This does not affect the placement of bar numbers shown above specific staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number placement.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Placement** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Placement relative to system**:
 - **Show above top staff of system**
 - **Show below bottom staff of system**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The placement of bar numbers relative to the system is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions

You can choose to hide bar numbers at the same rhythmic position as time signatures shown at system object positions, as the resulting collision can be difficult to resolve in a visually clear way when bar numbers are centered on barlines.

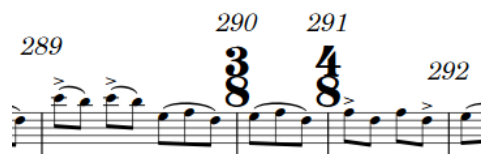
PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
 4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show bar numbers at time signatures at system object positions**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Bar numbers are shown at time signatures shown at system object positions when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Bar numbers shown at time signatures at system object positions



Bar numbers hidden at time signatures at system object positions

RELATED LINKS

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Large time signatures](#) on page 1387

Bar number changes

Bar numbers follow a continuous sequence, with each bar having a unique bar number that continues from the previous bar number. However, you can make manual changes to the bar number sequence, including changing to a subordinate sequence.

In Dorico Elements, you can make the following types of changes to bar number sequences using the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog:

Primary

Adds a change to the main bar number sequence, which the bars in your project follow in a continuous sequence in each flow separately by default.

Subordinate

Adds a secondary bar number sequence that uses letters rather than numbers to indicate the sequence. This can be useful in situations where a new version of a piece has been created with more bars inserted, but the original bar numbers are required.

Don't Include

Excludes the selected bar from the current bar number sequence. If bar numbers are shown every bar, no bar number is shown in bars in which you have chosen **Don't Include**.

Continue Primary

Returns the bar number sequence to the **Primary** sequence without counting intervening bars; for example, after a section of bars following the **Subordinate** bar number sequence.

RELATED LINKS

[Subordinate bar numbers](#) on page 837

Adding bar number changes

You can manually add bar number changes to bar number sequences; for example, if you want bar numbers in the second flow in your project to appear to continue the sequence from the first flow, rather than start again from bar one.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
 - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to change the bar number sequence.
 - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to change the bar number sequence.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Bar Numbers > Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose one of the following options for **Type**:
 - **Primary**
 - **Subordinate**
 - **Don't Include**
 - **Continue Primary**
4. Optional: If you chose **Primary** or **Subordinate**, change the bar number where you want the bar number sequence change to start by changing the value in the corresponding value field.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The bar number sequence changes, starting from the beginning of the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

This affects the corresponding bar number sequence from the changed bar number until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Deleting bar number changes

You can delete any bar number changes you have added.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bar number changes you want to delete.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The bar number changes are deleted. Subsequent bars follow the previous bar number sequence until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Subordinate bar numbers

Subordinate bar numbers are useful for numbering repeat endings, and for situations when the music is being altered, but the original bar numbers cannot be changed.

For example, you can use subordinate bar numbers to show where music has been added if a previous, shorter version has already been rehearsed. In this situation, players have likely started to associate certain parts of the piece with particular bar numbers, so if four bars need to be added after bar **10**, they would be numbered **10a** to **10d**. The bar number of the following bar then continues from **11** exactly as it did before the new bars were added.

They might also be useful if you want different bar numbers for a repeat ending.

Subordinate bar numbers are shown with lowercase letters.

You can show both primary bar numbers and subordinate letters or only subordinate alphabetical letters in subordinate bar number sequences.

4a

Lowercase subordinate bar number

Adding subordinate bar numbers

You can create a subordinate bar number sequence that is independent of your primary bar number sequence. This can be useful if you want to insert new bars without changing the bar numbers of existing subsequent bars.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
 - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.
 - An existing bar number or barline from which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Bar Numbers > Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose **Subordinate** for **Type** to activate the **Subordinate** value field.
4. Optional: If you want to change the primary bar number that accompanies subordinate bar numbers, activate **Primary** and change the value in the value field.
For example, if you want the bar number sequence **6, 7a, 7b** rather than **6, 7, 7a**.
5. Change the first letter in the subordinate bar number sequence by changing the value in the **Subordinate** value field.
The corresponding alphabetical letter is shown to the right of the value field. For example, entering **1** into the value field is shown as **a**, **2** appears as **b**, and so on.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Hide primary bar numbers**.
7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The subordinate bar number sequence starts from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

- If you activated **Primary** and changed the value, the primary bar number shown alongside subordinate bar numbers is changed.
- If you deactivated **Hide primary bar numbers**, bar numbers in the subordinate sequence show both a number and an alphabetical letter. If you activated **Hide primary bar numbers**, they appear only with alphabetical letters.

For example, if you start a subordinate bar number sequence from what was originally bar 5 without changing the **Primary** value, the sequence starts from 4a and continues until the next specified bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Returning to the primary bar number sequence

You can specify the point where you want to return to the primary bar number sequence after a section of subordinate bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
 - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
 - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Bar Numbers > Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose **Continue Primary** for **Type**.
Text indicating the new bar number appears below the value fields for **Primary** and **Subordinate**. For example, **Primary sequence will continue from bar 5**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The primary bar number sequence resumes from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

TIP

You do not have to add subordinate bar number changes in chronological order. You can enter a return to the primary bar number sequence first, before adding the subordinate bar number sequence.

Bar numbers and repeats

By default in Dorico Elements, repeats are not included in the bar number count. For example, if the first ending ends in bar 10, the second ending starts in bar 11, even though the first section is repeated and therefore more than ten bars have been played.

Including repeats in the bar number count, so that bar numbers reflect the total number of bars played rather than the number of bars written on the page, can make music with multiple playthroughs clearer, as you can refer to a specific bar number for each playthrough instead of, for example, "bar eight the third time round".

2 (12)



Bar number for subsequent repeat shown in parentheses beside the initial bar number

In Dorico Elements, you cannot automatically include repeats in the bar number count. However, you can add bar number changes manually if you want bar numbers to reflect the total number of bars played.

RELATED LINKS

[Adding bar number changes](#) on page 836

Beaming

A beam is a line that connects notes with tails to show rhythmic grouping, which varies according to the metrical structure of the prevailing time signature.

This way of grouping notes helps performers calculate quickly exactly how to play their given rhythm and helps them follow both their part and, if applicable, the conductor.

If appropriate for the current meter and position in the bar, beams are automatically formed in Dorico Elements when you input two or more adjacent notes or chords that are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.



Multiple beam groups in a 6/8 time signature

Dorico Elements has sophisticated underlying rules for producing beam groupings that follow the accepted conventions of music theory, including crossing the half-bar in time signatures like 4/4, beaming all eighth notes together in 3/4, beam groups that include tuplets, and many other situations.

You can control how notes are beamed in multiple ways in Dorico Elements.

- You can set beam grouping defaults in each flow in your project independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.
- You can set beam groups by controlling subdivisions of time signatures.
- You can beam notes together and split beams manually.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Secondary beams](#) on page 855

[Tuplets within beams](#) on page 858

[Rests within beams](#) on page 858

Per-flow notation options for beam grouping

You can find options to control the default beam grouping rules in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

The available options include beams crossing the half-bar in time signatures like 4/4, beaming all eighth notes together in 3/4, how to handle secondary beam groups, stemlets, and beams over rests.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Beam slants](#) on page 847

Beam grouping according to meters

According to accepted conventions, notes are beamed differently in different time signatures to make the meter clear and easily readable. In Dorico Elements, default beam groupings are determined by time signatures.

Dorico Elements has default beaming settings for common time signatures, based on general conventions and your chosen settings. For example, although the time signatures of 3/4 and 6/8 contain the same number of beats, they imply different meters and so are beamed differently. In 3/4, phrases of eighth notes are beamed together within each bar and phrases of other durations are beamed in quarter notes (crotchets) by default, but in 6/8, phrases are beamed in dotted quarter notes.



Default eighth note beam grouping in 3/4



Default eighth note beam grouping in 6/8

Dorico Elements groups and beams notes in irregular time signatures, such as 5/8 or 7/8, according to the most common practices for those time signatures.



Default beam grouping in 5/8



Default beam grouping in 7/8

For situations where you want to control the beat grouping in more detail, you can input a custom time signature with an explicit rhythmic subdivision. Dorico Elements then automatically beams phrases according to this subdivision. For example, entering **[7]/8** into the time signatures popover means all seven eighth notes (quavers) are beamed together, whereas entering **[2+2+3]/8** subdivides the seven eighth notes into two, then two, then three.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico Elements depends on the beat grouping in the prevailing time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287

Beaming notes together manually

You can beam notes in the same voice together manually, including notes across barlines as well as system/frame breaks. For example, if you want to beam a phrase differently to how it is usually beamed in the prevailing time signature.

Beams by default stay within bars and systems, so to have beams cross barlines, system breaks, and frame breaks, you must force the phrase to beam together.

TIP

- If you want a single beam to span multiple staves, you can create cross-staff beams.
 - Inputting time signatures with custom beat groupings is often the quickest and most consistent way to control beam grouping.
 - You can find options to control the default beam grouping rules in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.
-

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to beam together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Beam Together**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

Selected notes in the same voice are beamed together, even if they cross barlines or system/frame breaks.

If there are notes either side of the new beam group that were previously beamed to part or all of your selection, they either beam together as separate beams, or appear unbeamed. This depends on how many notes are left either side in the bar, and on the beam grouping settings for the flow.

NOTE

- Even if part of the beamed group previously had a centered beam, the new beam is not centered.
 - You can assign a key command for **Beam Together** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



Notes in each bar beamed together

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines](#) on page 1411
- [Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466
- [Centered beams](#) on page 848
- [Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851
- [Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841
- [Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Unbeaming notes

You can separate all notes in a beamed group so that each note shows its own tail; for example, if you are engraving vocal music that requires syllabic beaming.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to make unbeamed. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Make Unbeamed**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The selected notes are unbeamed and show their own tails.

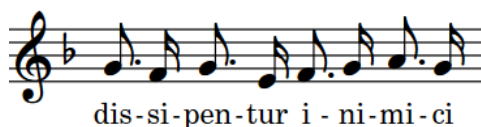
TIP

You can assign a key command for **Make Unbeamed** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



All notes unbeamed

Splitting beam groups

You can split beams into two beam groups at specific rhythmic positions. You can also split secondary beams within beamed groups.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads to the right of where you want to split beams. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Split the beam or secondary beam in one of the following ways:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Split Beam**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Split Secondary Beam**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

Beams/Secondary beams are split to the left of each selected note, but the notes either side of the split remain grouped if there are at least two beamed notes on each side that can be in a beam group.

TIP

- To unbeam the entire selection and give all notes in the group individual tails, you can make all notes unbeamed.
 - You can change how beams and secondary beams are split by default in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**
 - You can assign key commands for **Split Beam** and **Split Secondary Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



Two beams split at the second 16th note

RELATED LINKS

[Per-flow notation options for beam grouping](#) on page 840

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Resetting beam grouping

You can remove all changes made to the beam grouping of notes and chords. This can also be useful if, for example, MusicXML files you have imported have incorrect beaming, such as beam lines appearing instead of stem flags.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose beaming you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Reset Beaming**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

Beam grouping is reset to your default settings in **Notation Options** for the current flow and time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Importing MusicXML files](#) on page 82

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747



[Per-flow notation options for beam grouping](#) on page 840

[Resetting stem directions](#) on page 1078

Changing the thickness of beams

You can change the thickness of individual beams, which can be useful in certain engraving situations. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select all the noteheads in the beams whose thickness you want to change.

NOTE

For the best results, we recommend selecting all notes in each beam.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Thickness** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of all beam lines in the selected beams is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the gaps between beam lines](#) on page 857

Beam placement relative to the staff

The default staff-relative placement of beams is determined by the staff positions of the notes within the beamed group and their resulting stem directions.

This means that the note furthest from the middle line of the staff determines the placement of the beam, although there are exceptions to this rule and other considerations that can influence the staff-relative placement of beams.

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams involves changing the direction of the stems in the beam. Therefore, Dorico Elements categorizes changing the staff-relative placement of beams as a stem change.

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams

You can change the side of the staff on which beams appear by forcing the stem direction to change. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Force the stem direction of notes in the selected beams in any of the following ways:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Force Stem Up**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Force Stem Down**.

TIP

- You can also choose these options from the context menu.
- You can also change the staff-relative placement of selected beams by pressing **F**.

RESULT

The beam appears on the side of the staff that corresponds to its forced stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Removing beam placement changes

You can undo changes to the staff-relative placement of beams in order to remove the stem direction change. This reverts selected beams to their default placement.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement change you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Remove Forced Stem**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected beams revert to their default staff-relative placement.

Beam slants

The slant of a beam controls how steeply the beam deviates from horizontal, according to the pitches of the notes within the beamed group.

- When the last note of the phrase is higher than the first, the beam slants upwards.
- When the last note of the phrase is lower than the first, the beam slants downwards.
- If the group makes a concave shape, where inner notes are closer to the beam than the outer ones at either end of the beam, then the beaming is horizontal by default.

Beams are also horizontal if all the pitches are the same, or for certain patterns of repeated pitches.

When a beam is drawn inside the staff, each end of the beam, meaning the end of the stem of the note at either end of the beam, must be snapped to a staff line position. A beam line may sit on a staff line, be centered on a staff line, or hang from a staff line. Ted Ross describes these three positions as “sit”, “straddle”, and “hang” respectively in “Teach Yourself the Art and Practice of Music Engraving”.



A phrase containing multiple different beam slants and directions

The amount by which a beam slants is typically determined by the interval between the first and last note in the beamed group, provided the pattern of notes in the beam does not dictate a horizontal beam instead. Smaller intervals require a shallower slant and larger intervals require a steeper one.

However, the desired amount of slant is not the only factor that must be considered. The innermost beam line should not come too close to the innermost notehead, and the beam itself, if possible, should be positioned relative to the staff lines such that it does not form a wedge. A wedge is a tiny triangle formed by the horizontal staff line, the vertical stem, and the angled line of the slanted beam, which can be visually confusing.

Determination of the amount of slant for a beam is therefore a balancing act that must weigh up several factors: the desired amount of slant, valid snapping positions for each end of the beam, ensuring a minimum distance between the note closest to the beam and the innermost beam line, and avoiding wedges where possible.

In Dorico Elements, you can change the beam slants of individual beams.


RELATED LINKS


[Rests within beams](#) on page 858

Changing beam slants

You can change the slants, or angles, of individual beams. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square handles on the beam corners of the beams whose slants you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move beam handles upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move them upwards by 1/4 space per press.
 - To move beam handles a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move beam handles a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move beam handles a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.
3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 to move the other end of the selected beams.

RESULT

The slants of the selected beams are changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can also use **Beam direction** in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel to change the slant of beams. The property is available when you select noteheads within the beam group, and its options all ensure that beam ends are positioned correctly relative to staff lines.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Centered beams

Centered beams are beams that are vertically positioned between notes within the same beamed group, with stems for notes above the beam pointing downwards and stems for notes below the beam pointing upwards.

Centered beams are also known as “kneel” or “elbowed” beams due to their often angular shape.



When a beamed phrase spans a large pitch range, normal beams are often positioned very close to some notes in the phrase but very far from other notes in the phrase, making some stems very long. Having a centered beam in a phrase that spans a large pitch range can reduce the maximum distance between noteheads and the beam, but can also place the beam within the staff, which can obscure staff lines.

By default, Dorico Elements allows beams that include notes on both sides of the middle staff line to appear centered. You can also create custom centered beams for beams that include notes only on one side of the middle staff line.



A phrase with high and low notes with default beaming



The same phrase with high and low notes, but with a centered beam

TIP

To center beams between multiple staves, you can create cross-staff beams.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the staff-relative placement of beams](#) on page 846

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

Creating centered beams

You can center beams between the notes in the beamed group. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to beams on a single staff. To center beams between multiple staves, you can create cross-staff beams.

PREREQUISITE

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beams you want to center. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Create a centered beam in one of the following ways:
 - If the selected beams include notes on both sides of the middle staff line, choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Force Centered Beam**.
 - If the selected beams include notes only on one side of the middle staff line, choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Custom Centered Beam** to open the **Custom Centered Beam** dialog.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

3. Optional: If you created a custom centered beam, change the stem direction of each note in the selected beams as required in the **Custom Centered Beam** dialog, then click **OK**.

RESULT

Beams are centered between the notes in the selected beam groups. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you select notes in multiple beams, each beam is centered separately. If you want to create a single centered beam, you can beam the notes in those beam groups together. You can do this both before and after centering the beams.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements automatically angles the beam based on the shape of the phrase, but you can change the angles or slants of beams manually.
- You can assign a key command for **Force Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Beaming notes together manually](#) on page 841

[Changing beam slants](#) on page 847

[Resetting stem directions](#) on page 1078

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Removing centered beams

You can remove centered beams and revert beams to their default placements either above or below the phrase.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each centered beam that you want to revert to the default placement. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Remove Centered Beam**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The centered beams are removed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Remove Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos

Cross-staff beams and cross-staff tremolos work in a similar way to normal beams and tremolos, but allow a phrase that covers a wide pitch range to be shown on multiple staves. You can create cross-staff beams/tremolos by inputting all notes in the phrase on one staff and crossing some notes to appear on another staff.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input a phrase on one staff.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to cross to another staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only cross notes to other staves held by the same player.

2. Cross the notes to other staves in any of the following ways:
 - To cross notes to the staff above, press **N**.
 - To cross notes to the staff below, press **M**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Cross Staff > Cross to Staff Above**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Cross Staff > Cross to Staff Below**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected notes are shown on a different staff, with a cross-staff beam shown if the notes are part of a beam group. This does not change the staff to which the notes belong.

NOTE

- When crossing notes to a staff that already contains notes, the stem direction of the existing notes on the staff can change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled. Therefore, you may have to change the stem direction of notes manually.
 - If you want notes to belong to a different staff, you can move them to another staff.
-

EXAMPLE



Notes shown on their original staves



Cross-staff beams created by crossing some notes to the other staff

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If your cross-staff beams/tremolos have incorrect stem directions, you can reset or change stem directions.

RELATED LINKS

- [Resetting stem directions](#) on page 1078
- [Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076
- [Resetting notes crossed to other staves](#) on page 854
- [Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices](#) on page 1444
- [Note positions in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1440
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Stem direction](#) on page 1074
- [Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439
- [Tremolos](#) on page 1399
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing

You can make the stems in cross-staff beams, rather than the noteheads, evenly spaced in each layout independently. This can make it easier to perceive the evenness of rhythmic spacing in cross-staff beams than when noteheads are evenly spaced.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts that you want to change to optical cross-staff beam spacing.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
 4. Activate **Use optical spacing for beams between staves**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Optical cross-staff beam spacing is enabled in the selected layouts.

EXAMPLE



Default spacing: The distance between noteheads is even.



Optical spacing for cross-staff beaming: The distance between stems is even.

RELATED LINKS

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Cross-staff beam placement in multiple staves

When instruments have three or more staves, cross-staff beams can be placed in multiple ways. For example, the beam can be placed between the top and the middle staves, and also between the middle and bottom staves.

If a beam only crosses two staves, the cross-staff beam goes between those two staves.

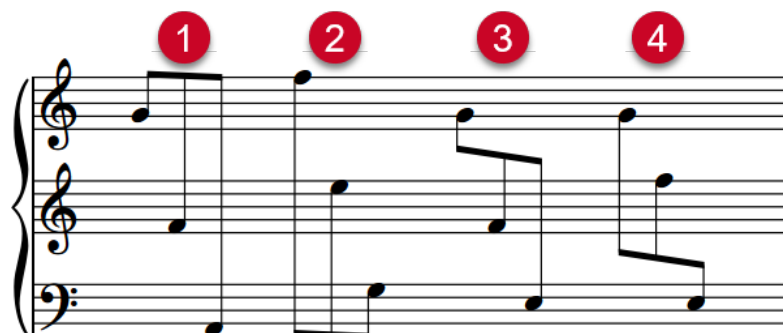


A cross-staff beam across the upper two staves on an instrument with three staves



A cross-staff beam across the lower two staves on an instrument with three staves

If a beam group contains notes on all three staves, the placement of the beam depends on the stem directions of the notes in each staff.



- 1 If all notes in the beam group are stem-up, the beam is placed above the top staff.
- 2 If all notes in the beam group are stem-down, the beam is placed below the bottom staff.
- 3 If notes are stem-down on the top staff and stem-up on the bottom two staves, the beam is placed between the top and middle staves.
- 4 If notes are stem-down on the top two staves and stem-up on the bottom staff, the beam is placed between the bottom and middle staves.

NOTE

If you have not specified stem directions, Dorico Elements might place the beam above/below the staff into which the notes were originally input, even if the stem directions mean it should be placed between other staves.

If you want the beam to be placed between specific staves, you can change the stem directions of notes in the beam group.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076

Resetting notes crossed to other staves

You can reset notes that have been crossed to other staves so that they appear on their default staff. We recommend resetting cross-staff notes before copying and pasting them to other staves to avoid unexpected beaming.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the cross-staff notes you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Cross Staff > Reset to Original Staff**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The selected cross-staff notes are reset and appear on their default staff.

TIP

You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Beam corners

Beam corners can occur when a change of stem direction within a beam is combined with a break in the secondary beam group. This can be at the end of a subdivision or at a change in rhythmic speed.

Beam corners do not follow accepted rules regarding the order and rhythmic meaning of secondary beams, and can be confusing for the reader.



Dorico Elements avoids beam corners by analyzing the pitches and stems within a phrase, and implementing stem directions that avoid a beam corner.

Secondary beams

Secondary beams are the lines that are added between the primary beam and the notehead as the rhythmic division gets smaller.

The primary beam is the outermost beam line that joins all of the notes in the beamed group. Depending on the durations of the notes in the beamed group, the primary beam may in fact be two or more lines; that is, for notes of a 16th or shorter in duration.

Secondary beams are additional beam lines that join only some of the notes in the group, creating subdivisions of the beam in order to make the metrical groupings of the beam clearer.



A phrase of 64th notes, with secondary beams subdivided to show 16th and eighth note groups

You can set per-flow options for splitting secondary beams and their appearance on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Rests within beams](#) on page 858


[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Changing the gaps between beam lines](#) on page 857

Changing the direction of partial beams

Dorico Elements automatically inputs a partial beam if one is required. You can change on which side of stems individual partial beams appear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose partial beam direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial beam direction** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Left**
 - **Right**

RESULT

The partial beam appears on the corresponding side of the stem.

EXAMPLE



Partial beam direction **Left**





Partial beam direction **Right**

Changing the number of beam lines in secondary beams

You can change the number of beam lines shown in secondary beams individually, independently of your default setting for the current flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes to the right of where you want to change the number of secondary beaming lines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Optional: If any of the notes you selected do not immediately follow existing splits in the secondary beam, split the secondary beams in any of the following ways:
 - In the Properties panel, activate **Split secondary beam** in the **Beaming** group.
- NOTE
- The **Beaming** group is only shown in the Properties panel if your selection only contains notes.
-
- Choose **Edit > Notations > Beaming > Split Secondary Beam**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. In the Properties panel, select the note value that corresponds to the number of beam lines you want shown from the **Split secondary beam** menu.
-

RESULT

The number of beam lines shown immediately to the left of each selected note is changed.

NOTE

- Deactivating the property returns the selected notes to showing their default number of beam lines.
 - The number of beam lines shown at a split in the secondary beam cannot be the same or greater than the number of beam lines in the secondary beam. For example, if you split a secondary beam containing 64th notes, the maximum number of beam lines shown at the split in that beam is three, the equivalent of 32nd notes.
 - You can change the default number of secondary beam lines shown in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Resetting beam grouping](#) on page 844

Changing the gaps between beam lines

You can change the gaps that separate beam lines in individual beams, which can be useful in certain engraving situations. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select all the noteheads in the beams whose beam line gaps you want to change.

NOTE

For the best results, we recommend selecting all notes in each beam.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Separation** in the **Beaming** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The gaps that separate beam lines in the selected beams are changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Changing the thickness of beams](#) on page 845

Tuplets within beams

Tuplets that contain notes that produce beams, such as eighth notes, are beamed together. However, special beam grouping rules apply to tuplets within beams that also contain non-tuplet notes.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with secondary beams is to split the secondary beam and to show the tuplet with a bracket. The primary beam is not split. If necessary, you can hide/show tuplet brackets individually.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with only a primary beam is to separate the tuplet entirely. However, you can change this setting on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.



16th note triplet beamed together with non-tuplet 16th notes



Eighth note (quaver) triplet beamed separately from non-tuplet eighth notes

RELATED LINKS

[Tuplets](#) on page 1408

[Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

[Tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416

Rests within beams

There are different conventions for how beams interact with rests, including whether beams should extend over rests or split at rests.

You can change how primary and secondary beams interact with rests in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Beam slants](#) on page 847

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Changing the direction of partial beams](#) on page 855

Stemlets

Stemlets are short stems that extend from beams to rests within beam groups. They can help make music easier to read, as they help to maintain a regular pattern of stems within beams.

In the examples, beaming all notes and rests together to show the boundaries of quarter note (crotchet) beats makes the syncopation of the notes easier to read. The stemlets on the rests help make clear where within the quarter note beats each note occurs.



A syncopated phrase without stemlets



The same phrase with stemlets

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add stemlets or change where they are shown. However, stemlets are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

Fanned beams

Fanned beams show either an *accelerando* or *rallentando* by having multiple beam lines either converging on, or diverging from, a single beam line at the other end. Fanned beams are also known as “feathered beams”.

A single fanned beam can have multiple changes of direction within it.

The grouping can use either two or three beams, with three beams indicating a greater change of speed than two beams. The slowest part of the phrase is where the beams converge, and the fastest is where the beams are the most spread out.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot create fanned beams or change their direction. However, fanned beams are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

EXAMPLE



Fanned beam accelerando with three lines



Fanned beam accelerando with two lines



Fanned beam rallentando with three lines

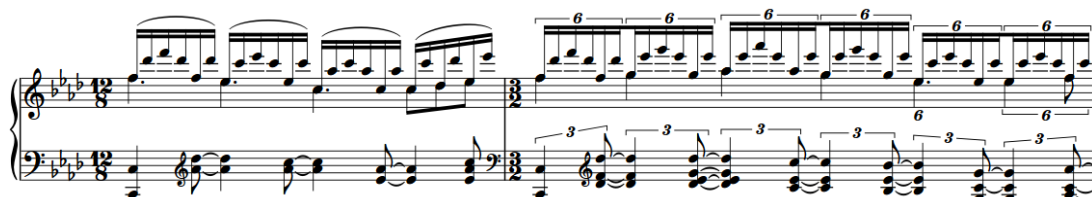


Fanned beam rallentando with two lines

Note and rest grouping

There are generally accepted conventions for how notes and rests of different durations are notated and grouped in different contexts and meters. In Dorico Elements, notes are automatically notated to fit within bars and are grouped according to your per-flow settings.

Depending on the prevailing time signature, there can be many different ways to beam notes together. For example, you might want to beam all notes in the bar together in time signatures that cannot be divided in half and are often not divided at all, such as 3/4.



A passage containing different meters. Notes are grouped and beamed differently in the different meters, and notes that cross beats and barlines are automatically shown as tied notes.

Tied notes are affected by your note and rest grouping settings, as there are different conventions for how notes within tie chains should be divided to indicate significant beat boundaries within bars, and in which contexts they can cross beat boundaries.

Similar options apply to dotted notes, which are often notated as a single dotted note if they start at the beginning of bars, but as a tie chain that shows significant beat boundaries in the bar if they start part-way through bars.

TIP

- You can change the default note grouping and beam grouping settings for each flow independently on the **Note Grouping** and **Beam Grouping** pages in **Notation Options**.
Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.
- You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Note grouping in slash regions](#) on page 1262

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

[Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap](#) on page 1440

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries

You can change whether notes that span beat boundaries are notated as tie chains or single notes in each flow independently; for example, to show half notes over half-bars, instead of two tied quarter notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show ties across beat boundaries.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Note Grouping**.
4. Change the settings as required.
There are separate options for ties across beat boundaries in time signatures with and without a half-bar, for notes followed by rests, and for ties in syncopated rhythm patterns.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Notes are notated as either tie chains or single notes in the corresponding contexts in the selected flows.

TIP

You can also force the duration of individual notes/rests to specify their notation.

EXAMPLE

- **Notes starting at the start of the bar or the half-bar of multiple beats in duration** affects the dotted half note in the first bar.
- **Notes starting on a beat followed by a rest in the middle of the beat** affects the dotted quarter note in the second bar.



Notes split at half-bar/beat boundaries



Notes notated as single notes

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262

Creating custom beat groupings for meters




If your music requires a different beat grouping for a particular meter than the default setting for that time signature, you can specify your preferred beat grouping within the time signature.

You can choose whether or not the time signature shows this custom beat grouping. You can also input time signatures only on specific staves.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico Elements depends on the beat grouping in the prevailing time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**. For example, entering **[1+1+1+1]/4** into the time signatures popover inputs a time signature with four quarter note (crotchet) groups. Because this creates a time signature with a half-bar, beam grouping options for time signatures with a half-bar apply.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
 - Start note input.
 - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping. If you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
 2. Optional: If you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
 3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
 - Press **I**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert** .
 4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-M**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**  then **Time Signatures (Meter)** .
 5. Enter the division you want in square brackets into the popover.
For example, to divide a 7/8 time signature into 2+3+2, enter **[2+3+2]/8** into the popover. To divide a 5/4 time signature into 2+3 rather than 3+2, enter **[2+3]/4** into the popover.
 6. Input the time signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To input a time signature on all staves, press **Return**.
 - To input a time signature only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
-

RESULT

The time signature specified is input and beam and beat grouping in subsequent bars follows the division you specified.

TIP

You can change the appearance of numerators in individual time signatures so that they show a single number or beat groups.

RELATED LINKS



[Time signatures popover](#) on page 283

[Time signature styles](#) on page 1389

Changing the beat grouping for cut common time signatures

You can change the beat grouping of individual cut common time signatures, independently of your per-flow setting. For example, if you want some cut common time signatures, such as 2/2, to group notes and rests in the same ways as common time signatures, such as 4/4.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the cut common time signatures whose beat grouping you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Use common time note grouping** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

The selected cut common time signatures use common time beat grouping when **Use common time note grouping** is activated, and cut common time beat grouping when it is deactivated.

TIP

You can change the beat grouping for all cut common time signatures in each flow independently in **Notation Options > Note Grouping > Time Signatures With Half-bars**.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Changing the appearance of common/cut common time signatures](#) on page 1393

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Brackets and braces

Brackets and braces are thick straight and curved lines in the left-hand margin that show instrument groupings.

Brackets

A bracket is a thick black line, the width of a beam, that groups staves together, most commonly according to instrument family. It often has winged ends that point inwards towards the score.

It is always positioned directly to the left of a systemic barline. If secondary brackets are used in addition to a bracket, they are positioned further away from the start of the system to allow space for the bracket.



An example of a bracket, connecting instruments in the string family. A sub-bracket connects the two violin lines.

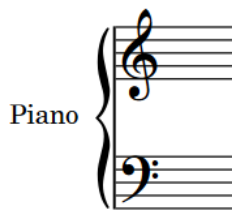
By default in Dorico Elements, barlines join the same staves that are joined by brackets and braces, meaning that bracketed groups of staves and braced pairs of staves appear with barlines extending across the group.

Braces

A brace is a wavy or curly line that joins multiple staves belonging to the same instrument, usually a grand staff instrument such as the piano or harp. If necessary, a brace can extend to three or more staves, although two is most common.

The brace is also sometimes used instead of a sub-bracket to show groupings of identical instruments within a family whose staves are joined by a bracket.

It is positioned outside the systemic barline, and if used in place of a sub-bracket, outside of the bracket as well.



A brace connecting two piano staves

NOTE

- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves are excluded from bracketed groups. They also cannot show sub-brackets or sub-sub-brackets.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.
- Blank staves can only show brackets/braces when they are shown after final flows. You cannot show brackets/braces on blank staves in music frames.

RELATED LINKS

[Barlines across staff groups](#) on page 822

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Secondary brackets](#) on page 868

[Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866

[Changing the default barline joins](#) on page 824

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

[Player group labels](#) on page 1317

Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type

You can change which staves are included in brackets by changing the ensemble type for each layout independently; for example, if a part layout containing all percussion players requires different bracketing than used for percussion staves in the full score layout.

The default setting is **Orchestral**. We recommend that you change this setting for projects containing small ensembles.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the ensemble type for bracket grouping.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Ensemble type**:
 - **No brackets**
 - **Orchestral**
 - **Small ensemble**

- **Wind band**
- **Big band**
- **British brass band**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default bracket grouping is changed in the selected layouts.

TIP

- There are further options for bracketing on the **Brackets and Braces** page, such as hiding/showing brackets when there is only a single instrument in the bracket group and hiding/showing braces when only a single staff is shown.
 - Player groups and soloists also influence which staves are bracketed together.
 - You can also input custom bracket/brace grouping for specific staves, independently of the bracket grouping setting in the layout. However, you cannot change brackets/braces on blank staves.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Barlines across staff groups](#) on page 822

[Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows](#) on page 608

[Player groups](#) on page 167

[Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

[Player group labels](#) on page 1317

Brackets according to ensemble type

In Dorico Elements, default staff grouping is determined by the ensemble type chosen for each layout. This affects which staves are bracketed together and joined by barlines.

The following ensemble types are available on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**:

No brackets

All staves appear separately, with no brackets. Grand staff instruments are still shown with braces.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Solo** and small **Jazz** project templates.

Orchestral

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family. For example, adjacent string instruments are bracketed together separately from adjacent woodwind instruments. However, vocal staves are not joined by barlines.

This is the default setting for all layouts in new projects and projects started from **Orchestral**, **Choral and Vocal**, and **Concert band** project templates, and for custom score and part layouts in projects started from all other project templates.

Small ensemble

All staves in the project are bracketed together, regardless of their instrument family, excluding braced staves.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Chamber** and **Pit band** project templates.

Wind band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument type. For example, Flute 1 and Flute 2 are bracketed together, but separately from the other woodwind instruments.

Big band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family, except for brass instruments, which are all bracketed according to their instrument type.

Rhythm section instruments are bracketed together.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed together.

British brass band

Brass instruments are bracketed according to their instrument type, except for horns and trumpets, which are bracketed together.

Any other instruments in the score are bracketed according to their instrument family.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed separately.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from the **Big band** project template.

NOTE

- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves, such as the piano and other grand staff instruments, are excluded from brackets. They also split brackets if they are placed within a bracketed group.
- By default, there must be at least two adjacent instruments to show a bracket. You can choose to show brackets on single instruments in each layout independently on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**.
- Player groups and soloists also influence which staves are bracketed together.
- Vocal staves are never joined by barlines, even when bracketed together.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Project templates](#) on page 77

[System objects](#) on page 1326

Hiding/Showing braces on single staves

You can hide/show braces on single staves in each layout independently. For example, if you only want to show braces for the piano when both staves are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show braces on single staves.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **When only one staff of braced group is shown**:
 - **Draw brace**
 - **Do not draw brace**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

Secondary brackets

Secondary brackets are a second level of staff grouping. They are positioned to the left of brackets and allow you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. In Dorico Elements, secondary brackets can appear as a brace or as a sub-bracket.

By default, secondary brackets appear as sub-brackets: thin lines with square corners that extend beyond the bracket. You can change the appearance of secondary brackets and hide/show them for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently.



Secondary bracket as a sub-bracket



Secondary bracket as a brace

NOTE

You cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, you can only show sub-sub-brackets in addition to sub-brackets.

Hiding/Showing secondary brackets

You can hide/show secondary brackets for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently. You can also choose only to show secondary brackets when sub-bracketed groups contain at least two staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show secondary brackets.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.

4. Choose one of the following options for **Instruments of the same kind within a bracketed group**:
 - **Use secondary brackets**
 - **No secondary brackets**
 5. Choose one of the following options for **When only one staff of sub-bracketed group is shown**:
 - **Draw sub-bracket**
 - **Do not draw sub-bracket**
 6. Choose one of the following options for **When sub-bracket matches primary bracket**:
 - **Draw sub-bracket**
 - **Do not draw sub-bracket**
 7. Choose one of the following options for **Sub-brackets for adjacent violin players**:
 - To show a single sub-bracket across all violin staves, choose **Single**.
 - To show a separate sub-bracket for each violin player, choose **Separate**.
 - To show a single sub-bracket when each violin player uses a single staff, but show a separate sub-bracket for each violin player when at least one player uses multiple staves, such as in a divisi section, choose **Separate for multiple staves**.
 8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Secondary brackets are shown in the selected layouts when you choose **Use secondary brackets**, and hidden when you choose **No secondary brackets**.

If you chose **Use secondary brackets** and **Do not draw sub-bracket**, secondary brackets are only shown when sub-bracketed groups contain at least two staves.

Showing secondary brackets as sub-brackets/braces

Secondary brackets extend beyond brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. You can show secondary brackets as either braces positioned outside the bracket or as sub-brackets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the appearance of secondary brackets.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Secondary bracket appearance**:
 - **Brace**
 - **Sub-bracket**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The appearance of all secondary brackets in the selected layouts is changed.

NOTE

Because you cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, sub-sub-brackets are not shown in layouts where sub-brackets appear as braces.

Sub-sub-brackets

Sub-sub-brackets are a tertiary level of staff grouping with the same design as sub-brackets. They are positioned outside of both brackets and sub-brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within bracketed and sub-bracketed groups. Sub-sub-brackets can only appear as brackets in Dorico Elements.

Sub-sub-brackets cannot extend beyond their sub-bracket and cannot be shown on staves with a brace as either the primary or secondary group.



Chord symbols

Chord symbols describe the vertical harmony of the music at a specific moment. They are frequently used in jazz and pop music, where players often improvise around chord progressions.

The image displays a musical score in 4/4 time, featuring a Clarinet melody and a Piano accompaniment. The Clarinet staff (top) contains a melodic line with various rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and triplet markings. The Piano staff (bottom) shows a harmonic accompaniment with chords and single notes. Above the Clarinet staff, chord symbols are placed above slashes: C7, G7/D, C7, F, G#dim7 Gm7, F, C7, F, C7. Above the Piano staff, the same chord symbols are placed above slashes: C7, G7/D, C7, F, G#dim7 Gm7, F, C7, F, C7. The key signature has one flat (Bb), and the time signature is 4/4.

Chord symbols shown above slashes on the Clarinet and Piano staves to help the players improvise around the notated Cornet melody.

You can input chord symbols using the chord symbols popover and you can automatically generate chord symbols based on existing music.

In Dorico Elements, chord symbols exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default. This means that you only have to input chord symbols once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to show different chord symbols for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local chord symbols.

Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate chord symbols for transposing instruments in transposing layouts, including for fretted instruments whose transposition you have changed to reflect a capo. You can also define capos for chord symbols and show only main chord symbols, only capo chord symbols, or both.

You can hide/show chord symbols project-wide above specific instrument staves, including if multiple instruments belong to the same player, and in different layouts. You can also show chord symbols only within chord symbol/slash regions and hide/show individual chord symbols.

If you have input chord symbols but no players in the current layout are set to show them, they are indicated by signposts.

Depending on the style of music, there are different conventions regarding how to present chord names.

Dorico Elements provides a comprehensive set of chord symbol appearance presets that you can choose from.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

[Chord symbol font styles](#) on page 877

[Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
[Chord diagrams](#) on page 894
[Capos](#) on page 157
[Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158
[Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450
[Chords track](#) on page 535
[Enabling chord symbol playback](#) on page 535

Chord components

Chord symbols consist of a root and a quality, with intervals, alterations, and an altered bass note included if required.

Root

The root note of the chord, expressed either as a note name or as a specific degree of a scale.

Quality

Defines the type of chord, such as major, minor, diminished, augmented, half-diminished, or with added note, such as six or nine.

Interval

Chord symbols can include one or more added intervals, such as a major seventh or ninth. Intervals in chord symbols are also known as “extensions”.

Alterations

Define notes in chords that are different to what is normally expected of that chord. For example, a sharpened fifth, flattened ninth, suspensions, or omissions.

Altered bass note

A chord symbol has an altered bass note if the lowest pitch of a chord is not its root note, such as Cm7^b5/E^b.

Chord symbol appearance presets

There are many conventions for the appearance of chord symbols, so Dorico Elements provides a choice of preset conventions that you can use and edit.

For example, you can edit default preset chord symbols, you can edit individual chord symbols without changing the default appearance for that chord symbol, and you can edit individual components within chord symbols.

- You can access chord symbol presets in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog by choosing **Library > Chord Symbols**.

Chord symbol preset example	Chord symbol preset name
B ^b maj7([#] 11) _([#]9) /F	Default
B ^b maj7([#] 9 [#] 11)/F	Boston

Chord symbol preset example	Chord symbol preset name
$B^bMA7(\sharp_{11})_{\sharp_9}/F$	Brandt-Roemer
$B^b\Delta^{+11}_{+9}/F$	Indiana
$B^bMaj7^{+11}_{+9}/F$	New York
$\frac{b7\Delta^{\sharp_{11}}_{\sharp_9}}{4}$	Nashville
$B^bMA7(\sharp_{11})_{\sharp_9}/F$	Jazz Standards
$\frac{B^bmaj7^{+11}_{+9}}{F}$	Ross
$B^bM7(\sharp_{11})_{\sharp_9}onF$	Japanese

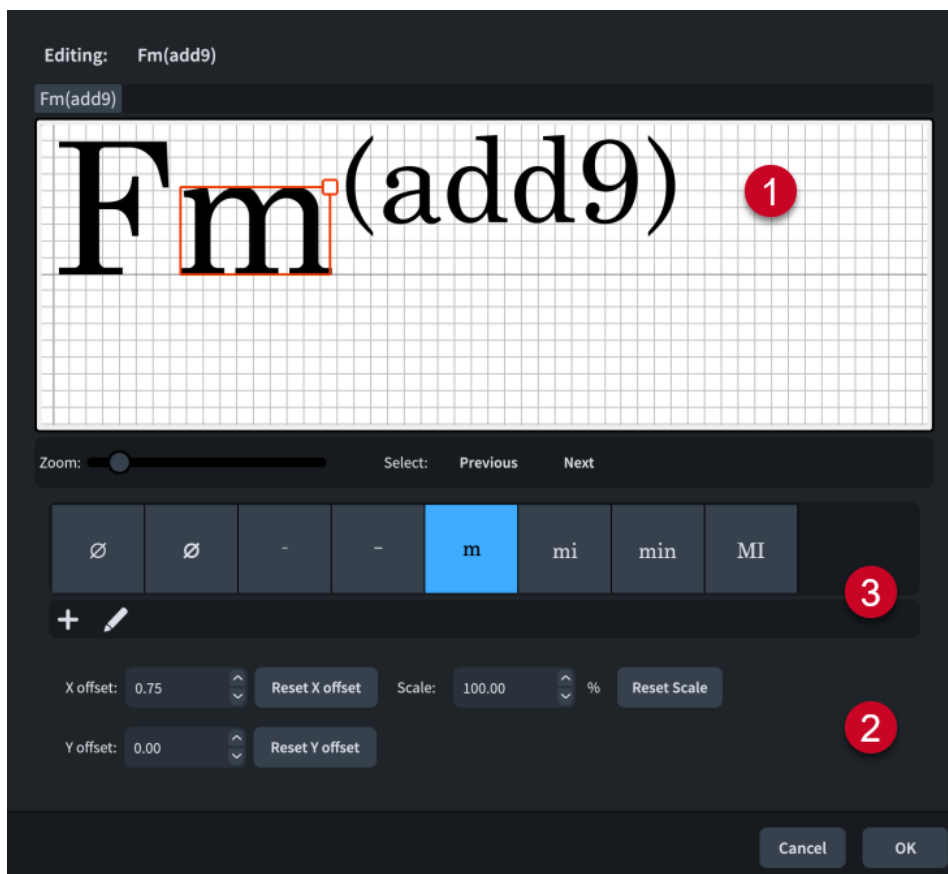
These presets use specific combinations of the options in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog. You can also adjust these options individually to suit your requirements.

- **Default** uses a set of symbols intended to be as unambiguous as possible. For example, **Default** avoids the use of symbols for major seventh, augmented, diminished, and half-diminished. This is the default preset for new projects.
- **Custom** is automatically selected when you change any of the preset options.

Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog

The **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog allows you to edit the appearance and arrangement of single chord symbol instances, without changing the project default appearance of that chord symbol. For example, if you want the first Gmaj7 chord symbol to appear differently than all subsequent Gmaj7 chord symbols.

- You can open the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog in Engrave mode by selecting the chord symbol you want to customize and pressing **Return**, or double-clicking a chord symbol.



The **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Editor

Allows you to arrange and edit the components that make up the chord symbol.

As well as using the controls at the bottom of the dialog, you can move individual components in any of the following ways after selecting them in the editor:

- Press the standard key commands for moving items. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** to move components to the right, or press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** to move components to the right by larger increments.
- Click and drag each component.

NOTE

You cannot move the first component in chord symbols.

In addition to using **Scale**, you can also change the size of components by clicking and dragging the square handle in the top right corner after selecting a component in the editor.

2 Controls



Allow you to move individual components and change their size. You can also reset their position and size.

- **X offset** moves components horizontally. Increasing the value moves components to the right, decreasing the value moves components to the left.
- **Y offset** moves components vertically. Increasing the value moves components upwards, decreasing the value moves components downwards.

- **Scale** changes the size of components. Increasing the value increases the size of components proportionally, decreasing the value decreases the size of components proportionally.
- **Reset X offset** resets the horizontal position of the selected component.
- **Reset Y offset** resets the vertical position of the selected component.
- **Reset Scale** resets the size of the selected component.

3 Components list

You can create new components and edit existing components by clicking the respective button in the action bar.

- **Add Component** 
- **Edit Component** 

Clicking either button opens the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog, in which you can create new components and edit existing components. Editing components from inside the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog only affects the selected chord symbol.


RELATED LINKS

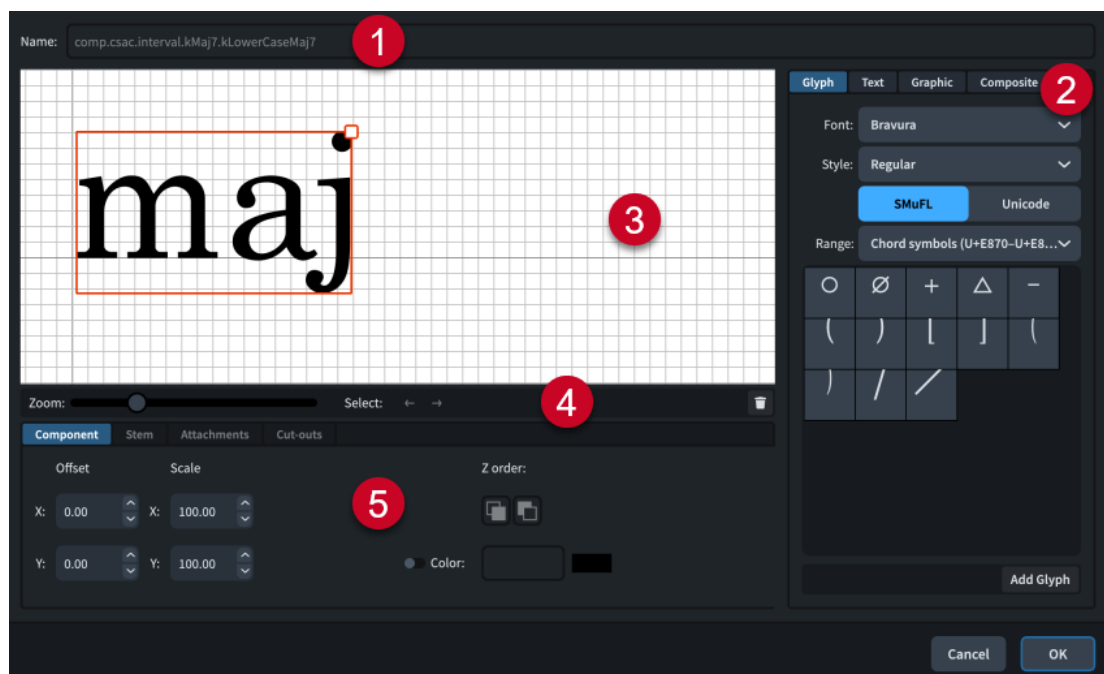
[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Edit Chord Symbol Component dialog

The **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog allows you to create custom chord symbol components and edit existing components for single instances of chord symbols.

- You can open the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog from inside the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog by selecting the component you want to duplicate in the components list, and clicking **Add Component**  in the components list action bar.



The **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Name

Contains an automatically generated name for the chord symbol component. You cannot change this name.

2 Component selector

Allows you to choose components to add to your chord symbol component. You can add different types of components by clicking the respective tab titles.

- **Glyph**, for example, ♯ or ♮. You can use different styles of glyphs by selecting different fonts and font styles/weights from the menus. You can search using **SMuFL** or **Unicode** ranges. Click **Add Glyph** to add the selected glyph to the chord symbol component.

NOTE

A full list of the different ranges of glyphs is available on the SMuFL website.


- **Text**, including numbers and other text. You can use numbers and text from the available **Preset text** list or select any font available from the menu and enter your preferred text into the text box at the bottom. Click **Add Text** to add the selected or input text to the chord symbol component.
- **Graphic**: Allows you to load a new graphics file or select an existing graphic from the **Select existing** list in SVG, PNG, or JPG format. You can see a preview of the graphic in the **Preview** box. Click **Add Graphic** to add the selected graphic to the chord symbol component.
- **Composite**: Allows you to select a composite from the list. Click **Add Composite** to add the selected composite to the chord symbol component.

3 Editor

Allows you to arrange and edit the components that make up your chord symbol component. You can arrange and edit components using the controls at the bottom of the dialog.

4 Editor action bar

Contains selection and view options for the editor.

- **Zoom**: Allows you to change the zoom level in the editor.
- **Select**: Allows you to select the next/previous component.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected component.

5 Controls

Contains controls that allow you to edit individual components. Controls are divided into tabs according to the aspect of the selected component they affect. For chord symbols, the **Component** and **Attachments** tabs are available.

The **Component** tab contains the following options:

- **Offset**: Controls the position of the selected component. **X** moves it horizontally, **Y** moves it vertically.
- **Scale**: Controls the size of the selected component. For graphics, **X** controls its width, **Y** controls its height.

NOTE

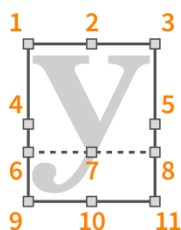
Although some components scale their height and width independently, others retain their aspect ratio, meaning only one value affects their overall size.

- **Z order**: Allows you to **Bring Forward** or **Send Backward** the selected component in relation to other components when they overlap.
- **Color**: Allows you to change the color of the selected component.

The **Attachments** tab is only available if the chord symbol component comprises at least two separate components. It contains the following options:

- **Attachment from:** Sets the attachment point on the component to the left of the selected component to which the selected component attaches. We recommend that you select a right edge attachment point for **Attachment from**.
- **Attachment to:** Sets the attachment point on the selected component which attaches to the component to its left. We recommend that you select a left edge attachment point for **Attachment to**.

There are eight attachment points for glyphs and graphics, and eleven for text, due to the extra space required for letters that extend below the baseline. The example diagram helps you visualize how these points relate to components.



The attachment points have the following names in the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog:

- 1 **Top Left**
- 2 **Top Center**
- 3 **Top Right**
- 4 **Middle Left**
- 5 **Middle Right**
- 6 **Baseline Left** (text only)
- 7 **Baseline Center** (text only)
- 8 **Baseline Right** (text only)
- 9 **Bottom Left**
- 10 **Bottom Center**
- 11 **Bottom Right**

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

[Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog](#) on page 873

Chord symbol font styles

There are different font styles for different chord symbol components. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make accidentals in chord symbols appear larger.



- 1 **Chord Symbols Font:** Used for note names in chord symbols, such as “B” or “F”.

- 2 Chord Symbols Music Text Font:** Used for accidentals in chord symbols, such as ♭ and ♯. Must be SMuFL-compliant.
- 3 Chord Symbols Altered Bass Separator Font:** Used for text altered bass separators.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Positions of chord symbols

In layouts where chord symbols are shown, they are positioned either above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system.

By default, chord symbols are left-aligned with noteheads and vertically aligned across the width of each system.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514


[Chord symbol regions](#) on page 882

Hiding/Showing chord symbols

You can hide/show chord symbols above particular staves or only within chord symbol/slash regions project-wide on a per-player basis. By default, chord symbols appear above rhythm section instrument staves, such as keyboards, guitars, and bass guitars.

Any player on whose staff you input chord symbols is automatically set to show chord symbols for all instruments and in the current layout type.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show chord symbols.
- In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose one of the following options:
 - To show chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols > Show for All Instruments**.
 - To show chord symbols only above rhythm section instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols > Show for Rhythm Section Instruments**.
 - To show chord symbols only in chord symbol/slash regions on instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols > Show in Chord Symbol and Slash Regions**.
 - To hide chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols > Hide for All Instruments**.

RESULT

Chord symbols are hidden/shown above the corresponding instrument staves held by the selected player, depending on the layouts in which chord symbols are shown for that player in your project.

TIP

- You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.
- You can choose to show chord symbols only once at the top of each system in each layout independently.
- You can also hide/show individual chord symbols in layouts where chord symbols are shown by selecting them and activating **Hidden** in the **Chord Symbols** group of the Properties panel. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden chord symbol. However, signposts are not printed by default.

You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

[Chord symbol regions](#) on page 882

[Inputting chord symbol regions](#) on page 326

[Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding/Showing chord diagrams](#) on page 895

[Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams](#) on page 897

[Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves](#) on page 880

[Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols](#) on page 882

[Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872


Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts

You can hide/show chord symbols in different types of layouts. By default, chord symbols appear in all applicable layouts for rhythm section instruments.

NOTE

If chord symbols are hidden for all instruments in the current layout, signposts are shown above the top staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose one of the following options:
 - To show chord symbols for the selected player in all layouts, choose **Chord Symbols > Show in Full Score and Parts**.
 - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in full score/custom score layouts and not in part layouts, choose **Chord Symbols > Show in Full Score Only**.
 - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in part layouts and not in full score/custom score layouts, choose **Chord Symbols > Show in Parts Only**.

TIP

You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.

Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves

You can choose to show chord symbols above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of chord symbols.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
 4. In the **Chord Symbols** section, choose one of the following options for **Show chord symbols**:
 - **Above specific players' staves**
 - **Above top staff of system**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318
- [Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams](#) on page 897
- [Capo vs. main chords](#) on page 158
- [Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes

You can change the horizontal alignment of individual chord symbols relative to notes, independently of your project-wide setting. For example, you might center-align wide chord symbols to avoid collisions with barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose alignment you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Alignment** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

3. Select one of the following alignment options from the menu:

- **Left**
 - **Center**
 - **Right**
-

RESULT

The alignment of the selected chord symbols is changed. Note spacing is automatically adjusted to avoid collisions with adjacent chord symbols.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default horizontal alignment of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Position** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

EXAMPLE

Left-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3 Center-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3 Right-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3

Changing the vertical alignment of chord symbols

You can change whether chord symbols are aligned at the same vertical position across the width of each system. You can also change how multi-line chord symbols, such as polychord chord symbols, are vertically aligned relative to single-line chord symbols.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Chord Symbols** to open the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.
 2. In the **Position** section, activate/deactivate **Align chord symbols across width of system**.
 3. Choose one of the following options for **Alignment of multi-line chord symbols relative to single-line chord symbols**:
 - **Top**
 - **Middle**
 - **Bottom**
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872



[Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols](#) on page 887

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols

You can show individual chord symbols either above or below the staff, independently of your project-wide setting. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected chord symbols is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- You can choose to show chord symbols between the staves of grand staff instruments in each layout independently in **Layout Options > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Chord Symbols**.
- You can change the default placement of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Position** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

Chord symbol regions

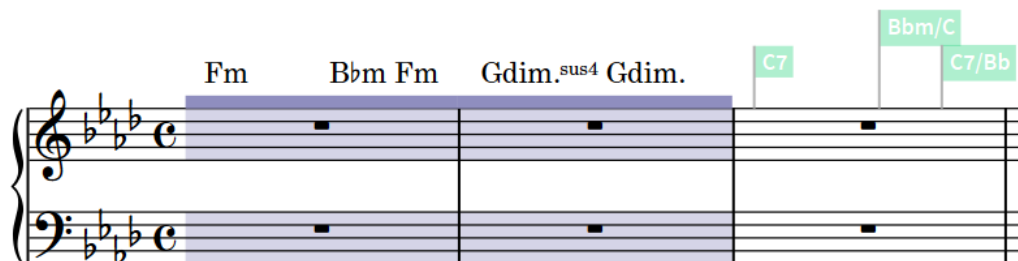
Chord symbol regions specify passages where you want to show chord symbols. They are particularly useful for players and layouts that do not need chord symbols for most of the project but have improvisation sections that require chord symbols to be shown.

Chord symbol regions allow you to show chord symbols only where players require them, instead of showing chord symbols throughout the project and manually hiding the ones you do not want to show.

When you input, copy, or move chord symbol regions in Dorico Elements, the corresponding players are automatically set to show chord symbols in chord symbol/slash regions. This is

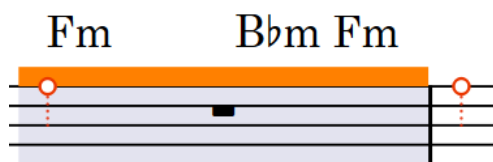
because it is common to use both slashes and chord symbols to aid players in improvisation sections. Any chord symbols outside chord symbol/slash regions are automatically hidden and are indicated by signposts.

By default, chord symbol regions are highlighted with a solid colored line above the top staff line and a colored background. As you zoom out, the colored backgrounds become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.



Chord symbol region followed by chord symbol signposts after the end of the chord symbol region

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



Handles on a selected chord symbol region

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting chord symbol regions](#) on page 326
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450
- [Annotations](#) on page 597

Hiding/Showing chord symbol region highlights

You can hide/show colored highlights for chord symbol regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Highlight Chord Symbol Regions**.
-

Transposing chord symbols

You can transpose chord symbols after you have input them, independently of any notes.

TIP

- Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate chord symbols for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

- If you want to transpose chord symbols to reflect a capo, you can instead show capo chord symbols.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbols you want to transpose.
2. Choose **Write > Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

TIP

- We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings; for example, if you want to transpose from G \flat major to G major.
 - Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.
-

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are transposed.

RELATED LINKS

[Transpose dialog](#) on page 470

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Capos](#) on page 157

Respelling chord symbols

You can change the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols for transposing instruments; for example, to choose a simpler enharmonic equivalent spelling. This changes the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols in all transposing layouts and for all instruments with the same transposition.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open a layout with the transposition for which you want to respell chord symbols.
For example, to respell a chord symbol for all instruments in B \flat , open the part layout for an instrument in B \flat .
 2. Select the chord symbol you want to respell.
 3. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol.
The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.
 4. Change the root name of the chord, but leave other details as they were, such as quality, interval, or alterations.
For example, change just the root of D \flat maj13 from **D \flat** to **C#**.
 5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-

RESULT

The spelling of the chord symbol is changed in transposing layouts for all instruments with the same transposition. For example, changing the spelling of a chord symbol for a Clarinet in B \flat also changes the spelling of that chord symbol in the part layout for a Trumpet in B \flat .

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbols popover](#) on page 320

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153



[Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams](#) on page 163

[Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols](#) on page 163

Showing chord symbols as modes

You can show individual chord symbols as their modal equivalent if one exists for that chord symbol.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols you want to show as a mode. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show as mode** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select the mode you want from the menu.

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are respelled according to the selected mode. This does not affect the notes included in the chord symbols.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Resetting the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols

You can remove enharmonic spelling overrides for chord symbols you have respelled and return them to their default spelling. You can remove overrides for instruments with a single transposition only, such as instruments in B \flat , or for all instrument transpositions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbol whose spelling you want to reset.
 - If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for a single instrument transposition only, select the chord symbol on a staff belonging to an instrument with that transposition. For example, select it on the staff of any instrument in B \flat to reset the chord symbol for all instruments in B \flat .

- If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, select the chord symbol on any staff that belongs to a transposing instrument.
2. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol. The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.
 3. Reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol in any of the following ways:
 - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for instruments only with the selected transposition, enter **Alt/Opt-S** into the chord symbols popover.
 - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, enter **Shift-Alt/Opt-S** into the popover.
 4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
-



RESULT

The enharmonic spelling of the selected chord symbol in transposing layouts is reset, either just for instruments with the specified transposition or for all transposing instruments.

Hiding/Showing the root and quality of chord symbols

You can hide the root and quality of chord symbols if they follow another chord symbol with the same root and quality, but have a different altered bass note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose root and quality you want to hide. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide root and quality** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The root and quality of the selected chord symbols are hidden when the checkbox is activated, and shown when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, chord symbols follow your project-wide setting.

TIP

You can choose to show the root and quality of chord symbols always, even if successive chord symbols have the same root and quality, in the **Altered Bass Notes** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872
- [Large selections](#) on page 424

Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols

You can change the arrangement of individual polychord and altered bass note chord symbols, independently of your project-wide settings. For example, if you want to show some polychord chord symbols stacked vertically but others in a horizontal row. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the compound chord symbols whose arrangement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Compound chord arrangement** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Diagonal arrangement**
 - **Stacked arrangement**
 - **Linear arrangement**

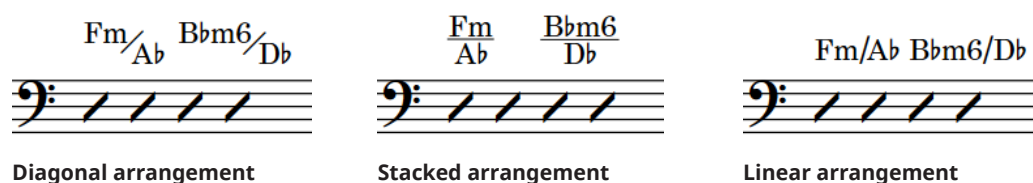
RESULT

The arrangement of the selected compound chord symbols is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default arrangement of all polychord and altered bass note chord symbols project-wide and independently of each other in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS



- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Chord components](#) on page 872
- [Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872
- [Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

[Changing the vertical alignment of chord symbols on page 881](#)

Erasing the background of chord symbols

You can erase the background of individual chord symbols; for example, to ensure chord symbols remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

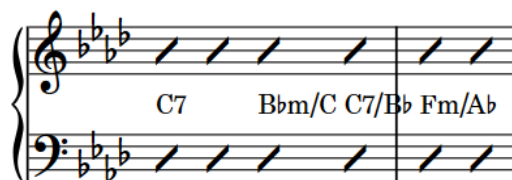
1. In Engrave mode, select the chord symbols whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

RESULT

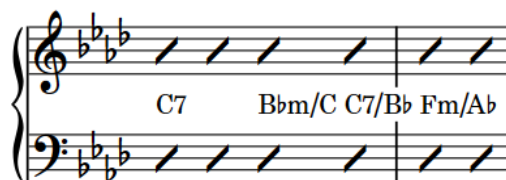
The backgrounds of the selected chord symbols are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected chord symbols to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbol with non-erased background



Chord symbol with erased background

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox on page 503](#)


[Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes on page 880](#)


[Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols on page 882](#)

Changing the erasure padding of chord symbols

You can change the erasure padding of individual chord symbols, including changing the padding between chord symbols and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the chord symbols whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Chord Symbols** group.
 - **L** changes the padding between chord symbols and their left edge.
 - **R** changes the padding between chord symbols and their right edge.
 - **T** changes the padding between chord symbols and their top edge.
 - **B** changes the padding between chord symbols and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

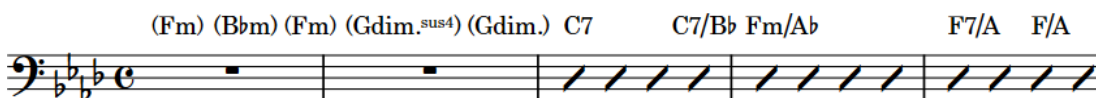
Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default erasure padding of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Design** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog. However, this does not allow you to change the padding of each edge independently.

Parenthesized chord symbols

Parentheses around chord symbols are often used to indicate an alternative set of chord changes or that chords are optional. In Dorico Elements, you can show parentheses around any chord symbol that uses appearance presets.



A phrase containing parenthesized chord symbols

You can add chord symbol parentheses both when inputting chord symbols and by parenthesizing existing chord symbols.

By default, parenthesized chord symbols show parentheses on both sides. You can show only a single left or right parenthesis on individual parenthesized chord symbols.

NOTE

- You cannot show parentheses on custom chord symbols; that is, chord symbols whose appearance you have overridden.
 - You can change the default appearance of chord symbol parentheses project-wide, including suppressing parentheses around alterations inside parenthesized chord symbols in different circumstances, in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318

[Chord symbol appearance presets](#) on page 872

[Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

[Showing single brackets on figured bass](#) on page 960



Parenthesizing chord symbols

You can show individual chord symbols in parentheses; for example, to indicate optional chords. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot show parentheses on custom chord symbols; that is, chord symbols whose appearance you have overridden.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

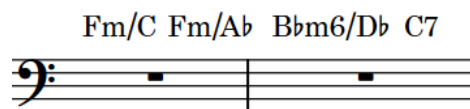
1. Select the chord symbols you want to parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
-

RESULT

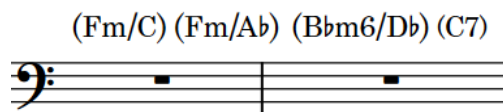
Parentheses are shown around each selected chord symbol. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Parenthesized** removes parentheses from the selected chord symbols.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols without parentheses





Chord symbols with parentheses

Showing single parentheses on chord symbols

You can show only a single left or right parenthesis on individual parenthesized chord symbols; for example, to indicate that all chord symbols between two parenthesized chord symbols are optional. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.



PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols on which you want to show a single parenthesis. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis to show** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Start**
 - **End**

RESULT

Parentheses are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected chord symbols, leaving a single parenthesis on the other side. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE

<p>(Fm/C) (Fm/Ab) (Bbm6/Db) (C7)</p> 	<p>(Fm/C Fm/Ab Bbm6/Db C7)</p> 
Parentheses around all chord symbols	Parentheses at the start of the first chord and end of the last chord



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains](#) on page 1069

Changing the style of chord symbol parentheses

You can change the parenthesis style for individual chord symbols. For example, you might show stacked chord symbols with slender/tall parentheses due to their height.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parenthesis style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis style** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

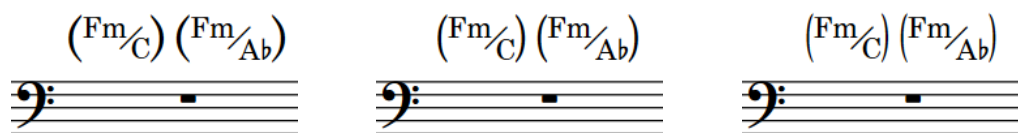
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

- **Thick**
 - **Slender**
 - **Slender/tall**
-

RESULT

The parenthesis style of the selected parenthesized chord symbols is changed.

EXAMPLE





The image shows three examples of parenthesized chord symbols, (Fm/C) (Fm/Ab), on a bass clef staff. Each example is labeled below: Thick, Slender, and Slender/tall. The 'Thick' style has large, bold parentheses. The 'Slender' style has medium-sized, regular parentheses. The 'Slender/tall' style has tall, narrow parentheses.

Changing the size of chord symbol parentheses

You can change the size of chord symbol parentheses without changing the size of the chord symbols to which they apply; for example, to ensure that parentheses appear the same size on adjacent chord symbols with different heights. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parenthesis size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis scale %** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

The scale size is expressed as a percentage of the parenthesis glyph rather than the chord symbol, allowing you to create a consistent parenthesis size regardless of the chord symbol height.

RESULT

The size of parentheses around the selected chord symbols is changed.

TIP

You can change the default height of all chord symbol parentheses project-wide in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS



[Chord symbol font styles](#) on page 877

[Large selections](#) on page 424

Moving chord symbol parentheses graphically

You can move individual chord symbol parentheses graphically to the right or left. For example, to increase the space between particular chord symbols and their parentheses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parentheses you want to move.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Chord Symbols** group:
 - **Open parenthesis offset**
 - **Closed parenthesis offset**
3. Move the corresponding parentheses in one of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, increase the value in the value field.
 - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the value field.

RESULT

The corresponding parentheses for the selected parenthesized chord symbols are moved graphically. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default gap between all chord symbols and parentheses project-wide in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

Chord symbols imported from MusicXML

Chord symbols are imported from MusicXML files. However, chords that specify Neapolitan, Italian, French, German, Pedal, Tristan, and Other values for the kind of element are ignored during import, as there is no information to specify what notes these chord symbols are meant to describe.

RELATED LINKS

[Generating chord symbols from notes](#) on page 326

Chord diagrams

Chord diagrams represent the pattern of strings and frets on fretted instruments and use dots to indicate the stopped finger positions required to produce the corresponding chord. This demonstrates the specific shape of chords in a compact way and is useful if a particular voicing is required.

In Dorico Elements, chord diagrams are part of chord symbols, meaning you can show them below chord symbols wherever they are shown. For players set to show chord diagrams, you can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols.

You can show chord diagram shapes for any fretted instrument, including different tunings and string arrangements, such as guitar DADGAD tuning. This can be different to the instrument above which they appear; for example, if you want to show chord diagram shapes for standard guitar tuning above the bass staff.

You can also show chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in a flow in a grid at the start of the flow, as is common in lead sheets for pop and rock music. You can show used chord diagrams grids independently of showing them alongside chord symbols in the music.

The image shows a sequence of chord symbols with their corresponding chord diagrams for banjo. The symbols are G7/D, C7, F, G#dim7, Gm7, F, C7, F, and C7. Each symbol is accompanied by a chord diagram showing the fret positions on a six-string instrument. The diagrams are arranged above a musical staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The staff contains a sequence of notes corresponding to the chords: G4, B4, D5, G4, F4, G4, A4, B4, C5, G4, F4, G4, A4, B4, C5, G4, F4, G4, A4, B4, C5.

A sequence of chord symbols with chord diagrams for banjo

The positions of stopped frets relative to each other are known as “shapes” in Dorico Elements. Any playable shape can be re-used for other chords whose pitches match the shape, including any new chord diagram shapes you have created. This includes shapes being available for other instruments, other tunings, and other positions along the fretboard, so long as any open strings included in the shape can be played with a barré at other fret positions.

A single chord can appear with different chord diagram shapes for different instruments and tunings, as their open string pitches and the number of strings they have varies.

RELATED LINKS

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

[Hiding/Showing chord diagrams](#) on page 895

[Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams](#) on page 897

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

[Used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898

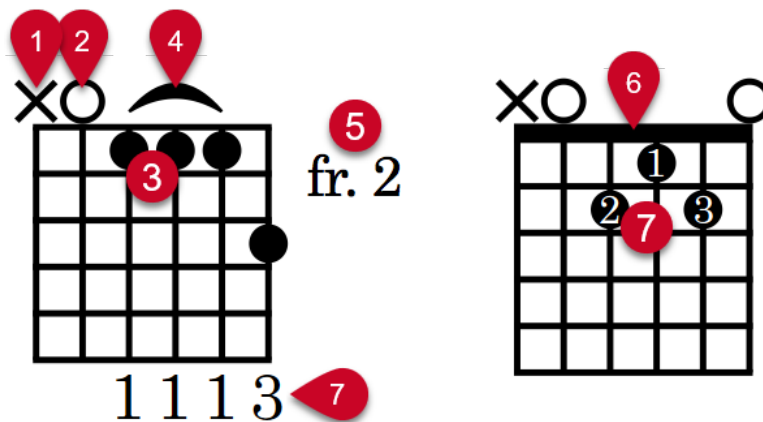
[Changing the chord diagram shape](#) on page 902

[Creating new chord diagram shapes](#) on page 903

[Capos](#) on page 157

Chord diagram components

Chord diagrams use a combination of symbols, dots, and lines to convey the information about strings, fret positions, and finger positions that performers require to play the corresponding chord.



- 1 Omitted string**
Indicates a string that must not sound.
- 2 Open string**
Indicates a string that must sound but must be left open; that is, not stopped.
- 3 Dots**
Indicate the fret positions where strings should be stopped, usually with left-hand fingers.
- 4 Barré**
Indicates that multiple strings must be stopped with the same finger, usually pressed flat against the fretboard.
- 5 Starting fret number**
Indicates the number of the highest fret in the chord diagram when this is not the first fret.
- 6 Nut**
Represents the top of the fretboard, or “nut”, and appears in chord diagrams whose highest fret is the first fret.
- 7 Fingerings**
Indicate the finger used to stop the string. Fingerings can be positioned inside dots or at the ends of strings.

RELATED LINKS

[Chord diagram font styles](#) on page 906

Hiding/Showing chord diagrams

You can hide/show chord diagrams for any type of fretted instrument alongside all chord symbols on a per-player basis. You can also change the fretted instrument or tuning for which chord diagrams are shown.


NOTE

You cannot show chord diagrams when chord symbols are hidden entirely. However, you can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the chord symbols for which you want to show chord diagrams.
- Chord symbols are shown above the staves where you want to show chord diagrams.
- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select a player for whom you want to hide/show chord diagrams.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings**  and choose one of the following options:
 - To show chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams > [Fretted instrument and tuning]**. For example, to show chord diagrams for a guitar in DADGAD tuning, choose **Chord Diagrams > DADGAD guitar tuning**.
 - To hide chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams > No Chord Diagrams**.

RESULT

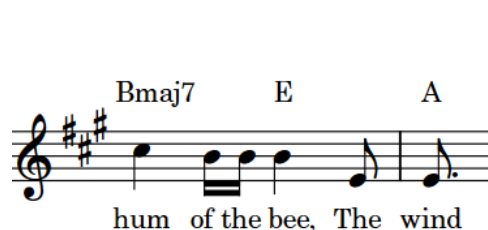
Chord diagrams are shown alongside all chord symbols for the selected player, as appropriate for the selected fretted instrument and tuning. Dorico Elements shows the simplest shape available for each chord; that is, shapes with the most open strings, easy barré positions, or finger positions closest to the nut.

If no chord diagram is available for a chord symbol, an empty chord diagram is shown.

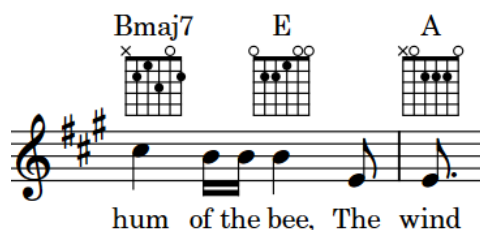
TIP

- You can also hide/show chord diagrams by right-clicking players and choosing these options from the context menu.
- You can edit empty chord diagrams to save a new chord diagram shape.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols shown but chord diagrams hidden



Chord diagrams shown (standard guitar tuning)



RELATED LINKS

- [Players panel](#) on page 110
- [Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
- [Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams

You can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols on staves set to show chord diagrams. For example, if you want to show both the symbol and diagram for the first time each chord appears but only show chord symbols for subsequent instances. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have shown chord diagrams for the players on whose staves you want to show only chord symbols or chord diagrams.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

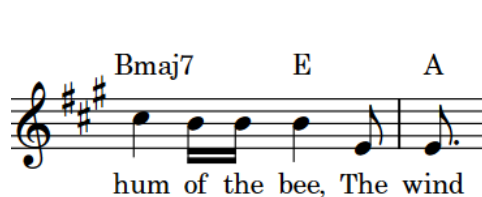
1. Select the chord symbols whose shown symbols/diagrams you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show only** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Chord Symbol**
 - **Chord Diagram**

RESULT

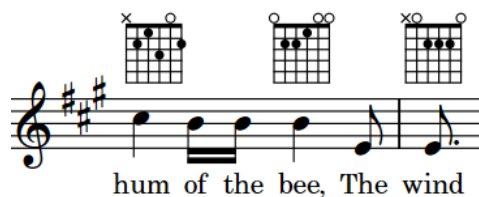
The selected chord symbols show only symbols or diagrams. In systems containing both chord symbols and chord diagrams, chord symbols are aligned further from the staff than chord diagrams.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols shown



Chord diagrams shown (standard guitar tuning)

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Used chord diagrams grids

Used chord diagrams grids are commonly used in lead sheets for pop and rock music. They are typically shown instead of chord diagrams alongside chord symbols in the music to save vertical space, and so they can appear at a larger scale size, making the details of each chord diagram easier to read.

By default, all chord diagrams in each flow are included in the corresponding used chord diagrams grid.

The order of chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids is determined by the order in which they first appear in the flow. Each different voicing appears as a separate chord diagram, but each voicing appears only once in the grid.

If you input more chord symbols or change the voicing of existing chord diagrams, the used chord diagrams grids update automatically to include them.

Used chord diagrams grid frame at the start of a flow

In Engrave mode, used chord diagrams grids appear inside frames.

You can hide/show used chord diagrams grids in each layout independently. You can also include/exclude individual chord diagrams.

NOTE

- You cannot select or edit used chord diagrams grid frames.
- You cannot select or edit individual chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids.

Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids

You can hide/show grids that contain all chord diagrams used in each flow in each layout independently. By default, used chord diagrams grids display standard guitar tuning chord diagrams, but you can change this to show chord diagrams for any fretted instrument or tuning.

PREREQUISITE

- You have removed page template overrides from all pages on which you want to show used chord diagrams grids.
- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.

- We recommend that you have input chord symbols and changed the shape of any chord symbols you want to appear with a specific voicing.

NOTE

It is customary not to show chord diagrams alongside chord symbols when showing a used chord diagrams grid, and you cannot change the chord diagram shape when chord diagrams are hidden.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show used chord diagrams grids at the start of flows.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
 4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, activate/deactivate **Show chord diagrams used at start of flow**.
 5. Optional: Change the settings for used chord diagrams grids as required.
For example, you can change the fretted instrument tuning for chord diagrams in the grid, their scale size, and the distance between chord diagrams and/or rows of chord diagrams.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in the flow are shown in a grid above the start of each flow in the selected layouts, and are positioned according to the settings for the selected layouts. If flow headings are shown, the used chord diagrams grid appears below them.

NOTE

Even if no chord symbols exist in a flow, vertical space for the used chord diagrams grid is added at the start of the flow.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the margins of pages, music frames, and/or flow headings if required to accommodate used chord diagrams grids.

RELATED LINKS



- [Inputting chord symbols](#) on page 318
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
- [Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 165
- [Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153
- [Creating new chord diagram shapes](#) on page 903
- [Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems](#) on page 821
- [Margins](#) on page 614
- [Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651

Including/Excluding chord diagrams from used chord diagrams grids

You can include/exclude individual chord diagram shapes from used chord diagrams grids. This allows you to control how many shapes appear for the same chord.

By default, all chord diagrams in each flow are included in the corresponding used chord diagrams grid.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose diagram shape you want to include/exclude from used chord diagrams grids. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

To exclude a chord diagram that occurs multiple times in the flow, you must select all occurrences.

2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Exclude from chords used at start of flow** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

RESULT

The selected chord diagrams are excluded from used chord diagrams grids when the property is activated for all occurrences of the corresponding shape in the flow.

The selected chord diagrams are included in used chord diagrams grids when the property is deactivated for at least one occurrence of the corresponding shape.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing chord diagrams](#) on page 895
- [Changing the chord diagram shape](#) on page 902

Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams

You can hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams shown alongside chord symbols and in used chord diagrams grids independently of each other and in each layout independently. You can choose whether fingerings appear inside dots or at the ends of strings.

PROCEDURE

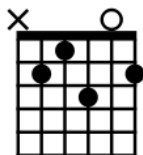
1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
 4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, activate/deactivate the following options, individually or together:
 - To hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams shown alongside chord symbols, activate/deactivate **Show fingerings in chord diagrams**.
 - To hide/show fingerings in used chord diagrams grids, activate/deactivate **Show fingerings in chord diagrams at start of flow**.
 5. Choose one of the following options for **Fingerings position**:
 - **Inside dot**
 - **At end of string**
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

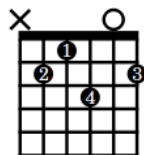
RESULT

Fingerings are shown in the corresponding position in chord diagrams in the selected layouts when the options are activated, and hidden when they are deactivated. This also affects whether fingerings appear in the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog.

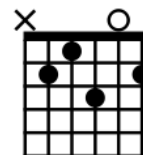
EXAMPLE



Fingerings hidden



Fingerings shown inside dots



Fingerings shown at the ends of strings

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the fingerings shown in chord diagrams when editing their shape.

RELATED LINKS

- [Used chord diagrams grids](#) on page 898
- [Creating new chord diagram shapes](#) on page 903
- [Edit Chord Diagram dialog](#) on page 904
- [Chord diagram font styles](#) on page 906
- [Fingering](#) on page 971
- [Hiding/Showing fingering](#) on page 978

Resetting chord diagram fingerings

You can reset changes you have made to fingerings in individual chord diagrams without resetting other changes to the shape.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord diagrams whose fingerings you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Reset Chord Diagram Finger Numbering**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

Changing the chord diagram shape

You can change the chord diagram shape shown at individual rhythmic positions; for example, if you require a shape with a different voicing. Many chords have multiple playable shapes.

You can also apply your changes to all other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord diagram whose shape you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only change the shape of a single chord diagram at a time.

2. Change the shape in any of the following ways:
 - To cycle through all the available shapes for the selected chord, press **Alt/Opt-Q**.
 - To open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog and see all the available shapes for the selected chord at once, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q**.
3. Optional: In the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, select the shape you want to use.

TIP

If the shape you require is not available, you can click **Edit**, which allows you to create a new shape.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
 5. Optional: To apply the new shape to other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings, choose **Edit > Notations > Chord Symbols and Diagrams > Copy Shape to Matching Chord Symbols**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

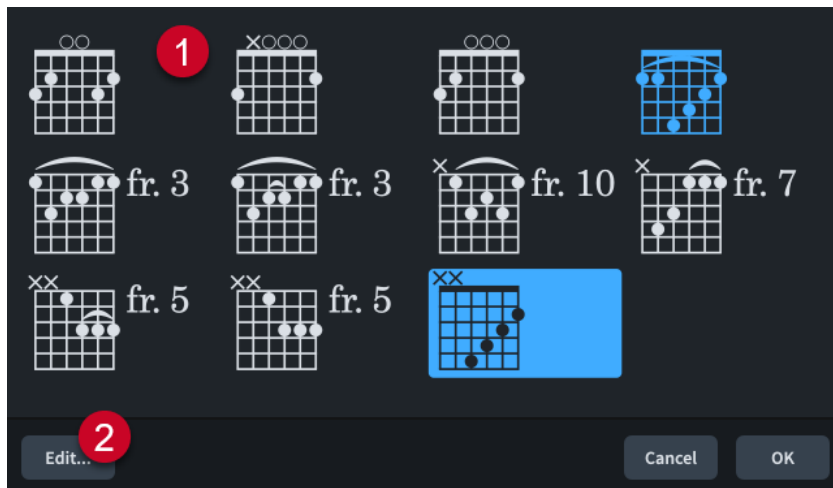
The shape shown for the selected chord diagram is changed. This also updates all other chord diagrams using the same fretted instrument tuning at the same rhythmic position.

Your most recently selected chord diagram shapes are automatically shown when you subsequently input the same chord symbols at other rhythmic positions in the flow.

Choose Chord Diagram dialog

The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to view all available chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and select the one you want to use.

- You can open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog in Write mode by selecting a chord diagram and pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q**.



The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog comprises the following:

1 Available chord diagrams

Displays all the valid chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and allows you to select a different shape to show at the selected rhythmic position. Shapes you have created yourself appear in a different color.

2 Edit

Opens the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog, which allows you to edit the shape of chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

Creating new chord diagram shapes

You can create new chord diagram shapes by editing an existing one; for example, if you want an alternative voicing for a chord or to show a barré. Your changes to existing chord diagram shapes are saved as a new shape, they do not overwrite the existing one.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot start new chord diagram shapes from scratch.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, select the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit.
- Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q** to open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog.
- Click **Edit** to open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog.
- Edit the shape and settings of the chord diagram as required.

For example, you can change open strings to omitted strings, change the stopped fret position on strings to change the corresponding string pitch, or change the fingering of individual stopped fret positions.

- Optional: If you want the shape to be available for chords with different start fret positions, activate **Chord may be moved along the neck**.
- Click **Save**, then **Close**.

RESULT

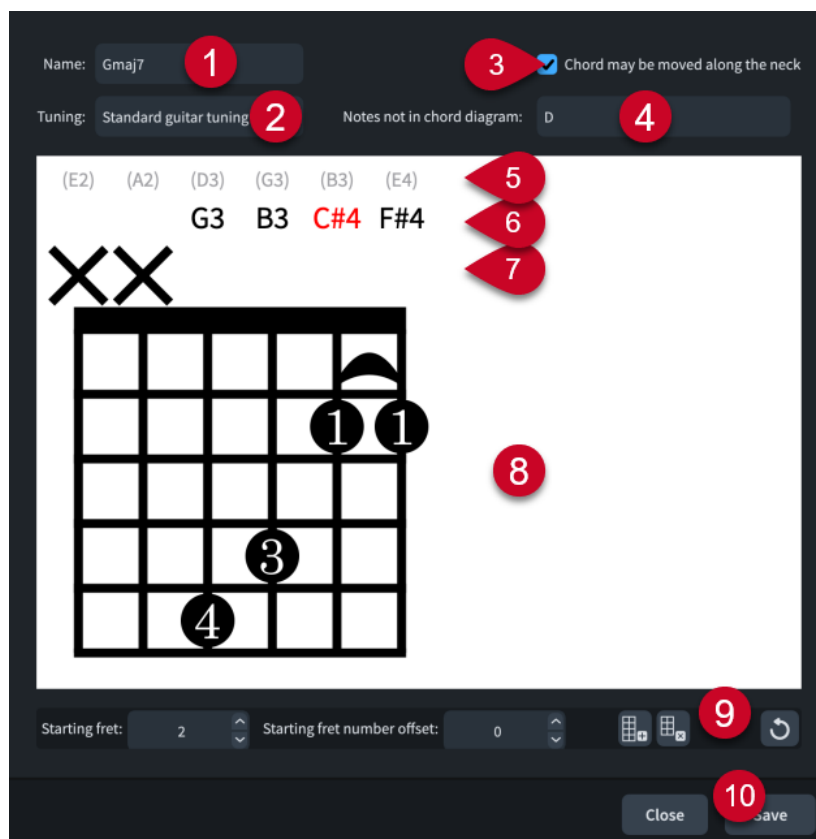
The new shape is saved and is used for the selected chord diagram. The new shape also becomes available for any other chord for which it is valid.

Edit Chord Diagram dialog

The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to edit the shape of individual chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

You can open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog in any of the following ways:

- In Write mode by opening the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, selecting the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit, and clicking **Edit**.
- In Engrave mode by double-clicking a chord diagram, or selecting it and pressing **Return**.



The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog contains the following options and sections:

- Name**
Displays the name of the chord whose chord diagram you are editing in the dialog. You cannot change this name.
- Tuning**
Displays the fretted instrument and tuning for the current chord diagram.
- Chord may be moved along the neck**

Allows you to specify whether or not the shape of the chord diagram can be reused at other fret positions; for example, by playing open strings with a barré at higher fret positions.

4 Notes not in chord diagram

Displays any pitches that are part of the chord but not currently included in the chord diagram.

5 Open string pitch

Displays the open pitch of the corresponding string for reference.

6 Current string pitch

Displays the current pitch of the corresponding string if it is open or stopped. If the pitch of a string is not part of the chord, the string pitch appears red.

7 String status

Displays the current usage status of the corresponding string and allows you to switch the status of individual strings between open and omitted by clicking in this row.

- **O**: Open string
- **X**: Omitted string
- **No symbol**: Stopped string

8 Chord diagram shape editor




Displays the current arrangement of stopped frets using dots and allows you to change the chord diagram shape. You can move stopped frets by clicking at the required positions. Each string can only have a single stopped fret position.

If two or more strings are stopped at the same fret, you can hide/show a barré by clicking any of the dots at that fret position.

You can change fingerings by double-clicking them and entering a new number, including **0** to show no fingering or **T** for thumb fingerings on the lowest string.

9 Action bar

Contains options that allow you to edit and change the number of frets.

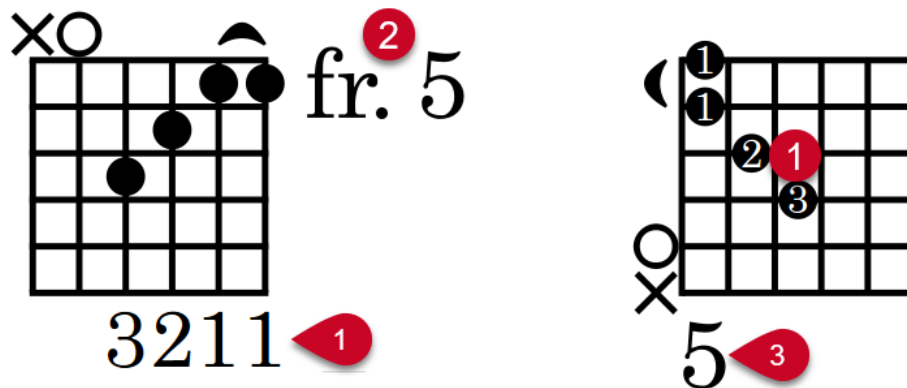
- **Starting fret**: Changes the fret number of the highest fret in the chord diagram.
- **Starting fret number offset**: Changes the offset of the starting fret number. For example, if you want the starting fret label to appear beside the second fret down the chord diagram in order to include a barré.
- **Add fret** : Adds a fret to the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Remove fret** : Removes a fret from the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Reset Chord Diagram** : Removes your changes to the chord diagram and resets it to its default shape.

10 Save

Saves the chord diagram shape and updates the selected chord diagram in the music area. The shape also becomes available as an alternative shape for other compatible chords.

Chord diagram font styles

There are different font styles for fingerings and starting fret numbers in chord diagrams. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make chord diagram fingerings appear smaller.



The following font styles are used for chord diagrams:

- 1 Chord Diagram Fingering Font:** Used for fingerings in chord diagrams, both inside dots and at the ends of strings. However, fingerings inside dots never appear larger than dots, regardless of the font size.
- 2 Chord Diagram Fret Number Font:** Used for starting fret numbers in vertical chord diagrams.
- 3 Chord Diagram Horizontal Fret Number Font:** Used for starting fret numbers in horizontal chord diagrams.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

[Changing the chord diagram shape](#) on page 902

Clefs

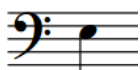
Clefs are the symbol at the start of every system that give the notes on the staff context; that is, the clef tells you which note of the scale applies to each line or space of the staff. To minimize the number of ledger lines required for notes, different clefs are typically used according to the register of instruments.

The common clefs are:

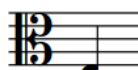
- Treble clef, or G clef, whose spiral shape centers around G, normally the G above middle C.
- The bass clef, or F clef, in which two dots are shown either side of the line corresponding to F, normally the F below middle C.
- The C clef, in which the center of the bracket to the right of the clef's thick vertical line is positioned on the line that corresponds to C, normally middle C. When positioned on the middle line of the staff, the C clef is known as the alto clef. When positioned on the second staff line from the top, the C clef is known as the tenor clef.



The E below middle C shown in a treble clef



The E below middle C shown in a bass clef



The E below middle C shown in a C (alto) clef



The E below middle C shown in a C (tenor) clef

In Dorico Elements, notes are automatically positioned on staves according to the prevailing clef.

Initial clefs at the start of flows and systems appear full size, while mid-system clef changes are automatically scaled down.



Many instruments in Dorico Elements have variants that show alternative clefs according to the layout transposition by default. You can select the appropriate instrument variant from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

NOTE

- You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
- You can hide/show clefs in individual layouts, according to the layout transposition, and at the start of single-staff systems.
- If clef changes occur at the start of a new system or page, a cautionary clef is shown at the end of the previous system. In Dorico Elements, the clefs shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You cannot hide cautionary clefs.

RELATED LINKS

- [Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329
- [Clefs with octave indicators](#) on page 913
- [Instrument picker](#) on page 112
- [Hiding/Showing clefs](#) on page 910
- [Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions](#) on page 910
- [Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems](#) on page 911
- [Cautionary key signatures](#) on page 1024
- [Cautionary time signatures](#) on page 1384

Showing clefs after grace notes

According to convention, clefs are positioned before grace notes so this is the default in Dorico Elements. However, in some circumstances you might want to position clefs between grace notes and normal notes.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs you want to show after grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Clef > After Grace Notes**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected clefs are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

NOTE

You can reset the position of clefs relative to grace notes by selecting the clefs whose position you want to reset and choosing **Edit > Notations > Clef > Reset Clef Position**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

EXAMPLE



Treble clef before grace notes



Treble clef after grace notes to align with bass clef

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Moving clefs graphically

You can move individual clefs graphically without affecting the positions of any other items.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square note spacing handle above the clef you want to move.



A circular handle appears beside the clef.

2. Press **Tab** to select the circular handle.



3. Move the handle in any of the following ways:

- To move it a standard amount to the right or left, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left.
- To move it a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move it a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move it a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE


You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

The clef is moved graphically to the right/left without affecting other items at the same rhythmic position.

TIP

You can also change **Spacing offset** in the **Clefs** group of the Properties panel to move clefs horizontally. However, this also affects global note spacing around the rhythmic position of the clef.

The **Spacing offset** property in the **Clefs** group of the Properties panel is not available when **Note Spacing**  is activated.



RELATED LINKS

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Hiding/Showing clefs

You can hide/show individual clefs in layouts of any transposition; for example, if some clef changes are only necessary in full scores to avoid ledger lines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs you want to hide, or the signposts of clefs you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Clefs** group.

RESULT

The selected clefs are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden clef. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show clef signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Clefs**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Signposts](#) on page 450

Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions



You can show individual clefs only in layouts that are either concert or transposed pitch. For example, due to their transpositions, some instruments require clef changes in concert pitch scores to avoid excess ledger lines, but do not require those clef changes in their transposed pitch parts.

By default, all clefs appear in all layouts.

TIP

Many instruments in Dorico Elements have variants that show alternative clefs according to the layout transposition by default. You can select the appropriate instrument variant from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs or signposts of clefs you want to hide/show according to the layout transposition. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show for transposition** in the **Clefs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Concert Pitch**
 - **Transposing Pitch**

RESULT

The selected clefs only appear in layouts with the corresponding transposition. In layouts where clefs are hidden, they are indicated by signposts.

Hidden clefs have no effect on note and staff spacing.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems

By default, clefs are shown at the start of all systems. You can hide/show clefs at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in each flow independently.

Hiding clefs on single-staff systems after the first system is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding key signatures and showing systemic barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show clefs after the first system.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Clefs**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Clefs at start of systems following first system**:
 - **Show clefs**
 - **Hide clefs**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Clefs are hidden or shown at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in the selected flows.

NOTE

Clefs are always shown at the start of systems that contain more than one staff.

RELATED LINKS



[Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems](#) on page 821

[Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems](#) on page 1022

Changing the octave of clefs

You can change the octave shift of individual clefs. For example, to accommodate different horn and bass clarinet transposition conventions. You can change the octaves of clefs in concert pitch and transposed pitch layouts independently.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have opened a layout with the required transposition in the music area. For example, if you want to change the octave of clefs in concert pitch, you have opened a concert pitch layout.
- If you want to change the octave of initial clefs, you have input clefs at the start of each flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs whose octave you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Octave shift** in the **Clefs** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The octave of the selected clefs is changed in all layouts with the same transposition. For example, **1** shifts clefs up one octave, and **-1** shifts clefs down one octave.

The pitches of notes on the staves of the selected clefs are adjusted automatically. For example, if you shift a clef up one octave, notes after the clef appear an octave lower than they do without the octave shift.

TIP

- You can specify octave shifts when inputting clefs using the clefs and octave lines popover.
 - You can also change whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores octave indicators on clefs, such as treble G clef, octave above.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Clefs and octave lines popover](#) on page 329

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

Clefs with octave indicators

Clefs with octave indicators indicate that notes are played in a different register to the one notated. An octave indicator above the clef indicates that notes are played higher than notated, while an octave indicator below the clef indicates that notes are played lower than notated.

Of these clefs, only the treble clef 8 below is still commonly used for tenor vocal parts.



Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. Therefore, Dorico Elements ignores clef octave indicators by default. However, transposing instruments are always transposed correctly automatically. For example, notes belonging to piccolo instruments are automatically notated an octave lower than their pitch in playback, regardless of whether they have a clef with an octave indicator. You can change whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators](#) on page 913

[Changing the octave of clefs](#) on page 912

[Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329

Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators

Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. You can change whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to respect/ignore clef octave indicators.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Clefs**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Clefs with octave indicators**:
 - **Ignore octave indicator**
 - **Respect octave indicator**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The handling of clefs with octave indicators is changed in the selected flows. When clef octave indicators are respected, the pitches of notes on staves with clefs with octave indicators are adjusted automatically. For example, notes with treble G clefs, octave above, appear an octave lower than they do when clef octave indicators are ignored.

RELATED LINKS

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Changing the octave of clefs](#) on page 912

[Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions](#) on page 910

Octave lines

Octave lines indicate where notes are played higher/lower than they appear in the score or part. They are dashed or dotted horizontal lines with an italic numeral at the start. The numeral indicates the number of pitches by which the phrase is changed, such as 8 for one octave and 15 for two octaves.

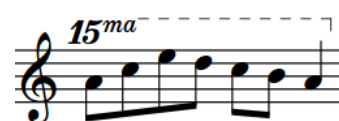
Octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than notated are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than notated are placed below the staff.



A treble clef phrase notated at pitch



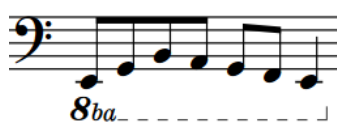
The treble clef phrase with an octave above line



The treble clef phrase with a two octaves above line



A bass clef phrase notated at pitch



The bass clef phrase with an octave below line



The bass clef phrase with a two octaves below line

In Dorico Elements, pitches are adjusted automatically when an octave line is present. You do not have to change the register of the notes within octave lines.

Octave lines should be horizontal, meaning they can take up significant vertical space, as octave lines are usually placed outside all other notations. However, they can be placed within slurs and tuplet brackets if the slur or tuplet bracket is longer than the octave line.

Octave lines can continue across system and page breaks. It is customary to show the numeral again at the start of each system as a reminder. Cautionary octave line numerals are usually parenthesized and the suffix is optional.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329

[Clefs with octave indicators](#) on page 913

[Lines](#) on page 1194

Positions of octave lines

By default, octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than written are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than written are placed below the staff.

You can move octave lines to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move octave lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for clefs and octave lines](#) on page 329

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Tucking index properties](#) on page 518

Changing the alignment of octave line numerals relative to notes

You can change whether the left edge, center, or right edge of individual octave line numerals is aligned with the first note to which each octave line applies. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L alignment** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Left**
 - **Center**
 - **Right**

RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you select **Right**, the right edge of the selected octave line numerals is aligned with the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the position of octave line numerals relative to accidentals

You can change whether the numerals at the start of individual octave lines are positioned on noteheads or accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to accidentals you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L position** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Notehead**
 - **Accidental**



RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you choose **Accidental**, the octave line numerals are aligned with the accidental on the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding/Showing octave lines

You can hide/show individual octave lines in layouts of any transposition; for example, if some octave lines are only necessary in full scores to avoid ledger lines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines you want to hide, or the signposts of octave lines you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Octave Lines** group.

RESULT

The selected octave lines are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden octave line. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show octave line signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Octave Lines**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Clefs on page 907](#)

[Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 178](#)

[Signposts on page 450](#)

[Engrave toolbox on page 503](#)

[Hiding/Showing zones on page 44](#)

[Changing the property scope on page 665](#)

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 646](#)

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 60](#)

[Annotations on page 597](#)

Octave lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each octave line has three square handles. You can use these handles to move the start/end of octave lines graphically, and to lengthen/shorten octave line hooks.



An octave line in Engrave mode

- The start handle moves the start of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left. When using the keyboard, you can also move this handle upwards/downwards to move the whole octave line.
- The top end handle moves the end of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The bottom end handle changes the length of the hook. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.

If octave lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically on page 514](#)

[Lengthening/Shortening items on page 430](#)



[Tucking index properties on page 518](#)

Changing the vertical stacking order of octave lines

You can change the placement of individual octave lines relative to other objects in the vertical stack by changing their tucking index value. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to general convention, octave lines are placed outside all other objects, but there are some instances where they can go inside other objects; for example, inside a slur if that slur is longer than the octave line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the octave lines whose placement in the vertical stack you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.
0 positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

RESULT

The placement of the selected octave lines in the vertical stacking order is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

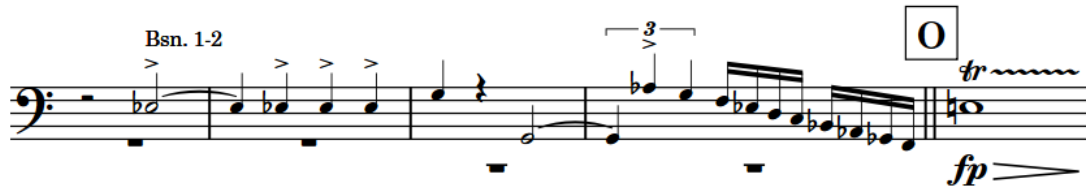
[Changing the vertical order of playing techniques](#) on page 1185

[Tucking index properties](#) on page 518

Cues

Cues are passages of music shown in instrumental parts that are played by a different player, usually to help orientate players before entries or solos following a significant passage of rests.

Cues can also be used to assist with co-ordination or tuning between players, or to indicate material that the player might be asked to double.



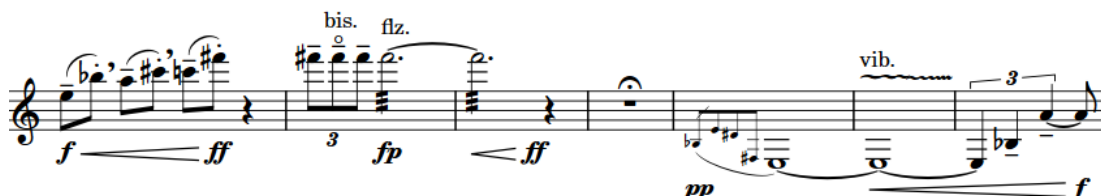
A cue in a timpani part showing music from the bassoons

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot input or edit cues. However, cues are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

Dynamics

Dynamics indicate the loudness of the music and can be combined with expressive text to give further clarification about how to perform the music. Dynamics can indicate an immediate change in volume or a gradual change over a specified duration.



A phrase with multiple different dynamics

You can add modifiers to dynamics that can give stylistic direction context alongside the volume level, such as *f* *espressivo*, which indicates that a passage is played loudly but also with expressive feeling.

While almost all expressive text is written in italics, dynamics such as *ff* and *pp* use a bold italic font.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Positions of dynamics](#) on page 922

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Voice-specific dynamics](#) on page 931

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Types of dynamics

Dorico Elements categorizes dynamics into different groups according to their function.

Immediate dynamics

Immediate dynamics apply to the note to which they are attached until the next dynamic marking, and indicate an immediate change from any previous dynamic. Immediate dynamics include dynamic symbols, such as *pp* or *f*, and dynamic modifiers, such as *subito* or *molto*.

Gradual dynamics and hairpins

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

Gradual dynamics can also have dynamic modifiers that qualify the change in volume, such as *poco*, *molto*, *poco a poco*, and *niente*.

In Dorico Elements, a hairpin can be shown as *messa di voce*, which shows a pair of hairpins. In some cases, this is easier than having separate lines for each half of the pair.

Force/Intensity of attack

These dynamics, such as *fz* and *sffz*, indicate that a note has a stronger attack than is usually expected for the dynamic, similar to an accent articulation.

Combined dynamics

Combined dynamics, such as *fp* or *p-mf*, specify a sudden change of dynamic.

You can create custom combined dynamics in Dorico Elements, and control the intensity of each dynamic in the pair, in the **Combined Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel. For example, you can make dynamics such as *pppf*, *fff-mp*, and *fffpppp*.

NOTE

Combined dynamics must include one *f* level and one *p* level.

RELATED LINKS

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics](#) on page 927

[Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers](#) on page 934

[Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics](#) on page 929

[Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators](#) on page 928

Positions of dynamics

By default, dynamics are placed below instrumental staves, where they can be read alongside the notes, and above vocal staves. This way, they do not clash with lyrics placed below the staff, and are still close enough to the notes to be read simultaneously.

Immediate dynamics, such as *pp* or *f*, are centered on the notehead to which they apply.

The beginnings of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead from which they begin, or immediately after an immediate dynamic at the same position. The ends of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead at which they end, or immediately before an immediate dynamic at the same position.

The staff-relative placement of dynamics varies, depending on their function and the type of player. For example, dynamics are placed below instrumental staves and above vocal staves by default. This ensures dynamics are kept as close to the staff as possible for legibility but are not placed between noteheads and lyrics on vocal staves. For grand staff instruments, such as piano or harp, dynamics are usually placed between the two staves, but can be placed both above and below when each staff requires separate dynamics.

In general, dynamics are not placed within the staff, as hairpins in particular become very hard to read. They are also not usually placed within tuplet brackets. Dynamics are placed outside of notations such as slurs, which must be kept close to noteheads, but inside pedal lines, which can be placed further from noteheads and still be clearly understood.

You can move dynamics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you can only move and lengthen/shorten dynamics to noteheads. When using the keyboard, you can move and lengthen/shorten dynamics according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

You can move dynamics graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS

[General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines](#) on page 925

[Changing the alignment of dynamics relative to noteheads](#) on page 924

[Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938

[Gradual dynamics](#) on page 937



[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

Changing the horizontal beat-relative position of dynamics

You can position individual dynamics before or after the beat. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose position relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Beat-relative position** in the **Dynamics** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Before**
 - **After**
-

RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



A dynamic positioned before the beat



A dynamic positioned after the beat

RELATED LINKS

[Erasing the background of dynamics](#) on page 930

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646




Changing the alignment of dynamics relative to noteheads

Immediate dynamics, such as *ff* and *mp*, are usually horizontally aligned with the optical center of noteheads. However, you can change the horizontal alignment of immediate dynamics individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose alignment relative to noteheads you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text alignment** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Align optical center with notehead** 
 - **Left-align with notehead** 
 - **Align optical center with left of notehead** 

RESULT


The alignment of the selected immediate dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Aligning dynamics

You can graphically align individually selected dynamics in a row without grouping/ungrouping them; for example, if system breaks in part layouts are different to the full score layout and so

require parts of different groups of dynamics to be aligned. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics you want to align.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Align Dynamics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are aligned in a row with the dynamic within the selection that was furthest from the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Resetting the position of items](#) on page 436

General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines

In Dorico Elements, the ends of hairpins align with the left edge of the note to their right. This can include hairpins extending across barlines.

Hairpins that end on the first note of a bar extend across the preceding barline in the following cases:

- If there is no immediate dynamic on the first note in the next bar.
- If there is a time signature or key signature change at the barline that increases the gap between the end of the current bar and the first note in the new bar.

Dorico Elements avoids hairpins overlapping barlines by a small amount, as this is less visually clear. However, this means that the same dynamic phrase on different staves can appear differently if one of the staves does not have a barline join extending below it.



The image shows a musical score with three staves. The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of three flats and a common time signature. The middle and bottom staves are bass clefs with the same key signature. The score is divided into three measures. In the second measure, there is a hairpin crescendo that starts in the first measure and ends on the first note of the second measure. The hairpin ends are aligned with the left edge of the first note in the second measure. The dynamic marking *ff* is placed below the first note of the second measure. The hairpin ends are not aligned because the barline does not extend beyond the bottom staff.



The hairpin ends are not aligned because the barline does not extend beyond the bottom staff

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines if the hairpin ends on the first note in the next bar. Disallowing hairpins across barlines ensures hairpins appear the same length on all staves.

Allowing/Disallowing hairpins across barlines

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines when they end on the first note in the next bar; for example, so all hairpins appear the same length across multiple staves that do not all have barline joins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins you want to allow/disallow across barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Stop before**
 - **Continue**

RESULT

The selected hairpins are allowed across barlines when you choose **Continue**, and disallowed when you choose **Stop before**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing dynamic levels

You can change the levels of dynamics without reopening the dynamics popover and for multiple different dynamics simultaneously; for example, if you want to increase the dynamic level of all dynamics in a phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics whose dynamic level you want to change.
2. Change the dynamic level in one of the following ways:
 - To increase the dynamic level, choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Increase Dynamic Intensity**.
 - To decrease the dynamic level, choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Decrease Dynamic Intensity**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The dynamic level of the selected dynamics is increased/decreased. For example, increasing the dynamic level of a *mf* dynamic changes it to *f*.

TIP

You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Changing existing items](#) on page 432



[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics

You can hide/show individual immediate dynamics such as *f* and *pp*; for example, if you only want to show the dynamic modifier, such as “sim.”, without its accompanying immediate dynamic. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the immediate dynamics you want to hide, or the signposts of immediate dynamics you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide intensity marking** in the **Dynamics** group.
-

RESULT

The selected immediate dynamics are hidden when **Hide intensity marking** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If no other dynamic exists at their rhythmic position, they are indicated by signposts. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Annotations](#) on page 597



[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators

You can hide/show different separators in combined dynamics individually. For example, if you want to separate some *fp* dynamics with slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, only combined dynamics with at least one *mezzo* dynamic in the pair, such as *mf-p*, show a separator.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the combined dynamics whose separator you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Separator shown** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
4. Optional: If you showed separators, activate **Separator** and select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Hyphen**
 - **Colon**
 - **Space**
 - **Slash**

RESULT

Separators are shown when the **Separator shown** checkbox is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. The separator shown follows your selection for **Separator**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS



[Types of dynamics](#) on page 921

[Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers](#) on page 934

Parenthesizing dynamics

You can show individual dynamics in parentheses; for example, to indicate editorial dynamics that were not in the original manuscript. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics you want to parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

Parentheses are shown around each selected dynamic. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Parenthesized** removes parentheses from the selected dynamics.



Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual *rfz* and *sfz* dynamics. For example, if you want some *sfz* dynamics to appear as *sf*. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to force/intensity of attack dynamics with other intensities, such as *sffz*.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **rfz/sfz style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - *sf rf*
 - *sfz rfz*

RESULT

The appearance of the selected *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Types of dynamics](#) on page 921



[Abbreviating gradual dynamics](#) on page 943

[Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers](#) on page 934

Erasing the background of dynamics

You can erase the background of individual dynamics; for example, to ensure dynamics remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected dynamics are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected dynamics to the default non-erased background.

NOTE

This does not affect hairpins, including stems crossed by hairpins.

EXAMPLE



Dynamic with non-erased background



Dynamic with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

[Positions of dynamics](#) on page 922

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

Changing the erasure padding of dynamics

You can change the erasure padding of individual dynamics, including changing the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Erasure padding considers the prefix/suffix separately from immediate dynamics and also takes into account ascenders/descenders in the text. This can cause the erasure padding to appear larger below the dynamic than above, such as for “espressivo” due to the “p”. In such cases, you can change the padding on the affected edge to make the padding appear symmetrical.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group.
 - **L** changes the padding between dynamics and their left edge.
 - **R** changes the padding between dynamics and their right edge.
 - **T** changes the padding between dynamics and their top edge.
 - **B** changes the padding between dynamics and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. This also affects the area considered for collision avoidance. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Voice-specific dynamics

Voice-specific dynamics only apply to a single voice on a staff, which allows you to specify different dynamics for each voice in multiple-voice contexts or for the separate staves of grand

staff instruments. By default, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments.

Inputting voice-specific dynamics allows you to show different dynamics for multiple voices on a staff, or to highlight an inner melody voice in a piano part. Voice-specific dynamics change the dynamics of each voice in playback independently.

NOTE

- You can only input voice-specific dynamics when the caret is active, such as during note input. Voice-specific dynamics apply to the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.
- Voice-specific dynamics only affect playback automatically for sounds that use velocity to control dynamics. When using playback devices that control dynamics in other ways, such as with CC, you must enable independent voice playback to hear different dynamics in different voices for the same instrument.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Caret](#) on page 218

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Extra staves](#) on page 1323

Dynamic modifiers

Modifiers add further detail to dynamics than simply their volume level, and can help guide how a player performs a note or phrase. Modifiers include *poco a poco*, *molto* and *subito*. They are also known as “expressive text”.



Modifiers accompanying immediate and gradual dynamics

In Dorico Elements, modifiers must accompany either a dynamic level, such as *p* or *f*, or a gradual dynamic.

You can input dynamic modifiers by entering them into the dynamics popover alongside an immediate dynamic or by clicking available options in the Dynamics panel. You can also add dynamic modifiers to existing dynamics.

You can add modifiers both before and after immediate dynamics. Modifiers can also appear either inside hairpins or above/below the start of hairpins.

TIP

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics](#) on page 927

[Abbreviating dynamic modifiers](#) on page 934

[Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics](#) on page 942

[Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics](#) on page 929



[Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Adding modifiers to existing dynamics

You can add modifiers both before and after dynamics after they have been input; for example, if you want to add “sim.” instead of repeating dynamics across multiple phrases.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics to which you want to add modifiers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group:
 - To add modifiers before dynamics, activate **Prefix**.
 - To add modifiers after dynamics, activate **Suffix**.
3. Enter the text you want to add into the corresponding value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected dynamics as a modifier. Text entered into the **Prefix** field appears before immediate dynamics, while text entered into the **Suffix** field appears after immediate dynamics.

Modifiers appear below hairpins placed below the staff and above hairpins placed above the staff, and are aligned with the start of the hairpin.

Deactivating the properties removes the corresponding modifiers from the selected dynamics.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you added modifiers to hairpins, you can show them centered inside the hairpins.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309



[Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins](#) on page 935

[Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics](#) on page 942

Abbreviating dynamic modifiers

You can show individual *subito/possibile* dynamic modifiers with either abbreviated or full text, such as *sub.* or *subito*. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose *subito/possibile* modifiers you want to abbreviate. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group:
 - **Subito style**
 - **Possibile style**
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - *subito* or *possibile*
 - *sub.* or *possib.*

RESULT

The length of the corresponding dynamic modifiers is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Abbreviating gradual dynamics](#) on page 943

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44



[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers

You can change the appearance and/or position of individual *subito* modifiers. For example, if you want to show *subito* modifiers as *sub.* on the left of dynamics, or *fp sub.* dynamics as *sfp.* You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose *subito* modifier appearance and/or position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Subito position** and choose one of the following options:
 - **Left**
 - **Right**
3. Optional: If you selected dynamics that include at least one *f*, activate **Subito forte style** and choose one of the following options:
 - *sub.f*
 - *sf*

RESULT

The appearance and/or position of the selected *subito* modifiers is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics](#) on page 929
- [Abbreviating dynamic modifiers](#) on page 934
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins

You can show modifiers you have added to hairpins, such as *poco a poco* or *molto*, centered both horizontally and vertically inside hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, modifiers appear at the start of and either above or below hairpins.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose modifiers you want to show centered inside hairpins. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Modifier position** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above or Below**
 - **Inside**

RESULT

Modifiers on the selected hairpins appear centered inside the hairpins. They automatically erase their background so the text does not collide with the hairpin lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Modifier (molto) below a hairpin



Modifier (molto) centered inside hairpin

RELATED LINKS

[Adding modifiers to existing dynamics](#) on page 933

[Changing the erasure padding of dynamics](#) on page 931

[Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Moving gradual dynamic modifiers graphically

You can move individual dynamic modifiers graphically, independently of the gradual dynamics to which they apply. For example, if you want specific modifiers to appear further from hairpins than other modifiers. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual dynamics whose modifiers you want to move graphically.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Modifier offset** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Change the values in the value fields.
X moves modifiers horizontally, **Y** moves modifiers vertically.

RESULT

The selected gradual dynamic modifiers are moved graphically. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Gradual dynamics

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

The change in volume indicated by individual hairpins is shown in the distance between the two diverging lines at their apertures.

Hairpins typically have a closed end and an open end. If the hairpin crosses a system or frame break, the closed end appears with a small gap so that the hairpin is not misread as two separate hairpins.

A pair of hairpins without an immediate dynamic in the middle is known as a *messa di voce*.



A phrase containing multiple gradual dynamics

In Dorico Elements, gradual dynamics appear as hairpins by default. You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics. For example, if you want to show a particularly long crescendo using *cresc.* text rather than a hairpin.

You can show gradual dynamic text in the following ways:

- *cresc.* or *dim.*: Abbreviated text with no continuation line
- *cresc...* or *dim...*: Abbreviated text with a dotted continuation line
- *cre-scen-do* or *di-mi-nuen-do*: The full word spread out across the duration of the gradual dynamic

In Write mode, ungrouped gradual dynamics each have start and end handles that show their duration.



NOTE

Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Types of dynamics](#) on page 921

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

- [Groups of dynamics on page 949](#)
- [Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 938](#)
- [Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 939](#)
- [Abbreviating gradual dynamics on page 943](#)
- [Moving items graphically on page 514](#)
- [General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines on page 925](#)
- [Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 940](#)
- [Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins on page 945](#)
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 461](#)
- [Lengthening/Shortening items on page 430](#)

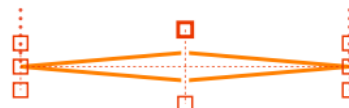
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each hairpin has multiple handles that you can move to adjust their graphical position, length, angle, and aperture.

- The middle handles at the start/end of hairpins change their start/end offset positions. Moving one middle handle changes the angle of the hairpin.
- The pair of outer handles at the start/end of hairpins, and in the center of *messa di voce* hairpins, adjusts the corresponding aperture. These handles are linked and mirror each other: moving one handle also moves the other handle by the same amount, but in the opposite direction. This ensures that hairpins remain symmetrical.



A hairpin with the start middle handle selected in Engrave mode



A *messa di voce* hairpin with a center aperture handle selected in Engrave mode

NOTE

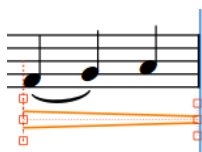
- You can also change the aperture of individual hairpins by activating **Hairpin open aperture** and/or **Hairpin closed aperture** in the **Dynamics** group of the Properties panel.

Increasing the value makes the corresponding aperture wider. Decreasing the value makes the corresponding aperture narrower.

- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

You can move separate hairpins independently; for example, if you want to adjust the graphical peak of a pair of hairpins. You can move the graphical peak of *messa di voce* hairpins by moving their center.

EXAMPLE



A diminuendo that goes across a system break: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed. It appears slightly open to indicate the diminuendo continues after the system break.



The diminuendo continues onto a new system: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Niente markings](#) on page 947

[Messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430



[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509

Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics; for example, to show a particularly long crescendo using “cresc.” text rather than a hairpin. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

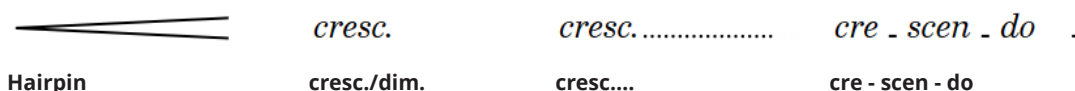
1. Select the gradual dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Hairpin**
 - **cresc./dim.**
 - **cresc...**
 - **cre - scen - do**
4. Optional: Customize the appearance of the selected gradual dynamics in one of the following ways, depending on their **Gradual style**:

- If you selected **Hairpin**, activate **Hairpin line style** and choose one of the available options.
 - If you selected **cresc./dim.**, **cresc....**, or **cre - scen - do**, activate **Diminuendo style** and select one of the available options from the menu.
 - If you selected **cresc....**, activate **Continuation line style** and choose one of the available options.
 - If you selected **cre - scen - do**, activate **Final syllable at end of line**, then activate/deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The appearance of the selected gradual dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE





RELATED LINKS

- [Abbreviating gradual dynamics](#) on page 943
- [Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins](#) on page 935
- [Turning existing gradual dynamics into messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 946
- [Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics](#) on page 948

Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous

You can show two or more consecutive hairpins of the same direction that are separated by immediate dynamics as a single hairpin that continues through any immediate dynamics; for example, to indicate that you want a single smooth change in dynamic rather than multiple separate ones. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The hairpins are grouped together.
 - The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one of the hairpins in each group that you want to show as continuous.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hairpin shown as continuation** in the **Dynamics** group.
 3. Activate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Consecutive hairpins of the same direction in the selected groups appear as a single continuous hairpin. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Hairpin not shown as continuation



Hairpin shown as continuation

RELATED LINKS

[Grouping dynamics together](#) on page 950

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



Hiding/Showing flared ends on hairpins

Flared ends are usually shown at the end of crescendo hairpins and indicate a sudden burst in volume at the end of the crescendo. You can hide/show flared ends on any hairpin.

NOTE

You can only show flared ends on hairpins with solid lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins on which you want to hide/show flared ends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Flared end** in the **Dynamics** group.
-

RESULT

A flared end is shown on the selected dynamics when **Flared end** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Crescendo hairpin with flared end hidden





Crescendo hairpin with flared end shown

Changing the size of flared ends on hairpins

You can change the height and width of flared ends on individual hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the flared hairpins whose flare size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Flare size** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Change the flare size of the selected hairpins in any of the following ways:
 - To change the width of the flared ends, change the value for **W**.
 - To change the height of the flared ends, change the value for **H**.

RESULT

The size of the flared ends on the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- Increasing the **W** value makes the selected flared ends wider by starting their angle earlier in the hairpin, decreasing the value makes the selected flared ends narrower.
- Increasing the **H** value makes the selected flared ends taller, decreasing the value makes them shorter.
- Changing the values independently of each other changes the angle of the flared ends. For example, increasing the **W** value without changing the **H** value makes the angle shallower.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665


[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics

You can add *poco a poco* text to individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

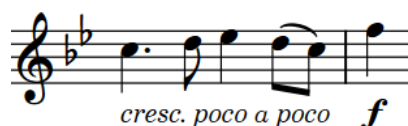
1. Select the gradual dynamics to which you want to add *poco a poco*. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco (little by little)** in the **Dynamics** group.
-

RESULT

Poco a poco is shown immediately after gradual dynamic text, below hairpins placed below the staff, and above hairpins placed above the staff.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual dynamics.

EXAMPLE



Text gradual dynamic with poco a poco



Hairpin gradual dynamic with poco a poco

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can show *poco a poco* text centered inside hairpins.



RELATED LINKS

- [Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932
- [Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins](#) on page 935
- [Abbreviating gradual dynamics](#) on page 943
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Abbreviating gradual dynamics

You can show individual gradual dynamics with either abbreviated or full text, such as *cresc.* or *crescendo*. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual dynamics that you want to abbreviate. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Abbreviate** in the **Dynamics** group.

3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The selected gradual dynamics appear with abbreviated text when the checkbox is activated, and full text when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics](#) on page 939
- [Abbreviating dynamic modifiers](#) on page 934
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Gradual dynamic spacing

Dorico Elements ensures that hairpins can always be clearly distinguished by giving hairpins a minimum default length. However, this can affect note spacing.

The default minimum hairpin length is three spaces. When hairpins are shorter than this, they can sometimes be confused with the accent articulation mark. Therefore, if you add a hairpin to a note which would make the hairpin less than three spaces long, the spacing of the note is changed to ensure the hairpin meets the minimum length.

RELATED LINKS

- [Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938
- [Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins](#) on page 945

Gradual dynamics truncated by immediate dynamics

A hairpin is automatically truncated if an immediate dynamic is positioned within its range, either before or after the hairpin is input.

The hairpin remains tied to its originally designated rhythmic positions, even if graphically it appears shorter. This means that if the immediate dynamic that truncated it is ever deleted, the hairpin extends up to its end or the next immediate dynamic within its range.

The examples demonstrate a crescendo hairpin that is truncated by two dynamics, but the hairpin extends to its total length as they are deleted. The dotted attachment line shows the link between the hairpin and the rhythmic position to which its end is attached.



A long hairpin truncated by a *p*

After deleting the *p*, the hairpin is now truncated by the *f*

Deleting both immediate dynamics allows the hairpin to extend to its full length

RELATED LINKS

- [Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

Messa di voce hairpins

Messa di voce hairpins are single gradual dynamic items that appear as a pair of hairpins without an immediate dynamic in the middle. They indicate that within their duration, the volume either increases then decreases, or decreases then increases.



A phrase containing two *messa di voce* hairpins

In Write mode, *messa di voce* hairpins have three handles: one at the start, one at the end, and one in the center. This is different to separate, ungrouped hairpins, which each have a handle at the start and end.



You can move the graphical peak of *messa di voce* hairpins by moving their center. In Engrave mode, you can use *messa di voce* center handles to control their center aperture.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949



[Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins

You can move the center of individual *messa di voce* hairpins rhythmically; for example, if you want them to peak on different notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *messa di voce* hairpins whose center you want to move. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Messa di voce inflection** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Move the center of the selected *messa di voce* hairpins in any of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, increase the value in the left value field.
 - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the left value field.
 - To move them to the left to grace notes at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

TIP

1 represents a quarter note.

RESULT

The centers of the selected *messa di voce* hairpins are moved rhythmically.

TIP

In Write mode, you can also click and drag *messa di voce* hairpin center handles to noteheads to the right/left.

EXAMPLE

For example, entering **1 1/2** into the left value field and **-1/2** into the right value field moves *messa di voce* hairpin centers a dotted quarter note to the right of their start position, and to the first of two sixteenth grace notes at that rhythmic position.



RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

[Showing grace notes before/after barlines](#) on page 1005

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

Turning existing gradual dynamics into messa di voce hairpins

You can turn existing gradual dynamics into *messa di voce* hairpins; for example, if you change your mind about the dynamic phrasing in some bars.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual dynamics that you want to turn into *messa di voce* hairpins. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, choose **Messa di voce** for **Type** in the **Dynamics** group.
-

RESULT

The selected gradual dynamics are turned into *messa di voce* hairpins. The first direction follows the previous overall direction of the selected gradual dynamics.

TIP

You can also turn existing gradual dynamics into *messa di voce* hairpins by selecting them and clicking the corresponding buttons in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel.

You can also press **Shift-Alt/Opt-**, for a crescendo/diminuendo *messa di voce* hairpin, or **Shift-Alt/Opt-** for a diminuendo/crescendo *messa di voce* hairpin.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Dynamics panel](#) on page 312

[Inputting dynamics with the popover](#) on page 313

[Inputting dynamics with the panel](#) on page 315

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

Niente markings

Niente markings at the start/end of gradual dynamics indicate that the dynamic either increases from, or decreases to, silence.

This effect works very well on strings and singers with vowels, but it cannot always be played literally. For example, singers with words beginning with consonants cannot begin from silence, nor can reed and brass instruments, as they have to achieve a certain air pressure before a note sounds.



Niente markings can be shown in the following ways, depending on the gradual dynamic style:

- For hairpins, *niente* markings can be shown as either a circle, or the letter “n”.
- For text gradual dynamics, *niente* markings appear as “dal niente” for crescendos, and as “al niente” for diminuendos.

You can input gradual dynamics with *niente* markings in the same ways as inputting other dynamics. You can also add *niente* markings to existing gradual dynamics.

EXAMPLE



Circle *niente* marking



Letter *niente* marking

dim. al niente

Niente marking alongside a text gradual dynamic

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

[Changing the appearance of niente hairpins](#) on page 948

[Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode](#) on page 938



[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous](#) on page 940

Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics

You can add *niente* markings to, and remove them from, existing gradual dynamics; for example, if you change your mind about which diminuendos should decrease to silence.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual dynamics to which you want to add *niente* markings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Niente** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

Niente markings are added to the selected gradual dynamics.

TIP

- Deactivating the property removes *niente* markings from the selected gradual dynamics.
- You can also add *niente* markings to, and remove them from, existing gradual dynamics by selecting them and clicking **niente** in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the appearance of individual *niente* hairpins; for example, if you want to show some *niente* hairpins with a circle but others with text.



RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Dynamics panel](#) on page 312

Changing the appearance of niente hairpins

You can show *niente* hairpins in two ways in Dorico Elements, and you can change how they appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose *niente* style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Niente style** in the **Dynamics** group.

3. Choose one of the following options:

- **Circle on hairpin** 
 - **Text** 
-

RESULT

The *niente* style of the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



A *niente* shown as **Circle on hairpin**



A *niente* shown as **Text**

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Groups of dynamics

Groups of dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move immediate dynamics within a group, the length of the hairpins on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of dynamics



The same group of dynamics adjusts to compensate when the middle dynamic moves rhythmically.

A single dynamic, either immediate or gradual, is considered a group on its own.

Two or more dynamics are automatically grouped together if they immediately follow each other horizontally on the staff, were input together or in sequence, and have gradual dynamics between the immediate dynamics.

All of the dynamics in a group are highlighted when any of the dynamics in the group are selected.



NOTE

- Groups of dynamics apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can graphically align selected dynamics independently of their groups.
- As well as horizontal groups of dynamics, you can also link groups of dynamics vertically if you want the same dynamics to appear on multiple staves. This can be useful when multiple instruments play the same dynamics simultaneously and you want to make the same change in all staves; for example, moving the peak of a crescendo to a later beat, or changing a *f* to a *fff*.

RELATED LINKS

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Aligning dynamics](#) on page 924

[Inputting dynamics with the popover](#) on page 313

Grouping dynamics together

You can manually group dynamics together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to group together.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Group Dynamics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are grouped together. If the first dynamic in the group is linked to other staves, all dynamics in the group are added to those staves. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

Ungrouping dynamics and removing dynamics from groups

You can ungroup dynamics so that all dynamics in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected dynamics from groups while leaving other dynamics in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To ungroup all dynamics in the selected groups, choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Ungroup Dynamics**.
 - To remove only the selected dynamics from their groups, choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Remove from Group**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Linked dynamics

Identical dynamics at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste dynamics between staves.

If you select one dynamic in a linked group, all other dynamics in the linked group appear highlighted. If one linked dynamic is moved to a new rhythmic position, all linked dynamics move.



Two linked dynamics with only the top dynamic selected



Moving just the top dynamic of the linked group automatically moves the other to match its new position.

Similarly, if you change one linked dynamic, for example, from *p* to *mf*, all dynamics linked to the changed dynamic are also changed. If you group other dynamics to one of the linked dynamics, such as a hairpin, the hairpin is added at the same position in all linked staves.

If one staff has another immediate dynamic before the end of a hairpin, the hairpin is truncated automatically. If you delete such a dynamic, the hairpin extends automatically up to the next immediate dynamic or to its full length, whichever comes first.



Two staves with linked dynamics, but the lower staff has another immediate dynamic that truncates the hairpin.



Deleting the *mf* at the end of the first bar in the second staff causes the hairpin to extend to match the range of the top staff.

NOTE

- If you delete only some dynamics from a group that is linked to other staves, those dynamics are also deleted from the linked staves. If you delete a whole dynamic group from one staff, this does not affect linked dynamics on other staves.

- As well as vertically linked dynamics, you can also group dynamics horizontally. This automatically aligns the dynamics in a row and allows them to be moved and edited as a group.
 - Linking or unlinking dynamics applies project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics linked one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Linked slurs](#) on page 1297

[Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting](#) on page 460

Linking dynamics together

When you copy and paste identical dynamics to the same rhythmic position on other staves, those dynamics are linked together automatically. You can also manually link dynamics and groups of dynamics together that are not automatically linked to allow simultaneous editing.

NOTE

Groups of dynamics must be the same in order to link them together. For example, you can link two *p* dynamics together if neither is part of a group, but you cannot link them together if one is grouped with a hairpin.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to link together.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Link**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The selected dynamics are linked together. If you later change one of the linked dynamics, all linked dynamics are changed to match. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS

[Groups of dynamics](#) on page 949

[Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

Unlinking dynamics

You can unlink dynamics, including dynamics that were linked automatically. For example, if you want to lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a dynamic in each linked group that you want to unlink.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Dynamics > Unlink**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

All dynamics in the linked groups are unlinked. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS

[Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting](#) on page 460

Dynamics font styles

There are different font styles for different types of dynamics. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make dynamics appear larger.



The following font styles are used for dynamics:

- 1 **Dynamic Music Text Font:** Used for dynamic glyphs, such as *pf* and *mp*. Must be SMuFL-compliant.
- 2 **Dynamic Text Font:** Used for dynamic modifiers, such as *poco a poco* and *molto*, and gradual dynamics shown as text.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply to the entire project, including part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Types of dynamics](#) on page 921

[Dynamic modifiers](#) on page 932

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Dynamics in playback

The volume settings for sustaining instruments and non-sustaining instruments vary in terms of their control of gradual dynamics.

Sustaining instruments

Sustaining instruments include string, wind, and brass instruments, because they can hold a note while being in control of its volume throughout.

Dorico Elements applies gradual dynamics to these instruments in playback.

Non-sustaining instruments

Non-sustaining instruments, such as piano, harp, marimba, and most percussion instruments, have no further control of the dynamic of notes after they have been struck. For this reason, non-sustaining software instruments often use note velocity for dynamics, because this is set at the start of the note.

TIP

You can control settings for each software instrument in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701

Playback Options for dynamics

You can change how the dynamics of all instruments project-wide are interpreted in playback on the **Dynamics** page in **Playback Options**.

Dynamic Curve

The graph at the top of the **Dynamics** page in **Playback Options** maps a continuous curve. This curve determines how the volume of dynamics increases across the default range *pppppp* to *fffff*.

A dynamic curve power of 1 creates a straight line, producing a steady dynamic increase. The difference between *pppp* and *pp* is the same as between *p* and *mf*.

A dynamic curve power higher than 2 creates a curved line, producing a faster dynamic increase in the middle of the range. The difference between *pppp* and *pp* is much smaller than the difference between *p* and *mf*.

The higher the dynamic curve power, the greater the contrast between dynamics in the middle of the range, and the smaller the contrast between dynamics at the ends of the range.

TIP

If your project uses a wide range of dynamics, including dynamics such as *pppp* and *fff*, you might want a lower curve power with larger differences between the extremes of the range.

If your project has a smaller range of dynamics, such as a minimum of *pp* to a maximum of *ff*, you might prefer a higher curve power, so the differences between the dynamics in the middle of the range are more discernible. You might also prefer a smaller dynamic level range, such as -2 to 2 for this example.

Humanize

Humanize allows dynamics to vary randomly, to mimic the natural fluctuations in a live performance.

For sound libraries that use MIDI CC 1 to control dynamics, you can see the effect humanization has on dynamics in the MIDI CC 1 editor.

Polyphonic Instruments

In the **Polyphonic Instruments** section, you can enable/disable polyphonic voice balancing and rules for contrapuntal music, which automatically adjust dynamic levels between voices belonging to the same instrument.

These options are most useful for instruments that can play multiple musical lines simultaneously, such as piano, harp, guitar, and pitched percussion.

Note Dynamics

In the **Note Dynamics** section of the **Dynamics** page, you can set how much the volume of notes in playback is affected by stresses and articulation marks.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
- [MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701
- [Dynamics editor](#) on page 694
- [Changing dynamic levels](#) on page 926
- [Playback techniques](#) on page 787
- [Expression maps](#) on page 761

VST Expression Maps for volume types

If you are using a third-party sound library, you may need to change or edit the expression map to make instruments respond to gradual dynamics. Otherwise, the sound library uses velocity by default.

The setup of the expression map for dynamics depends on how the instrument is configured. Consult the documentation for the sound library for further information.

Dorico Elements provides the following default expression maps:

- **CC11 Dynamics** for dynamics produced by changing MIDI channel expression
- **Modulation Wheel Dynamics** for dynamics produced by changing MIDI controller 1

TIP

You can edit expression maps in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Enabling/Disabling pitch contour emphasis

Pitch contour emphasis emulates the subtle dynamic changes produced by performers, allowing melodies to play back more expressively. You can enable/disable pitch contour emphasis project-wide, and change how much it affects the dynamic level.

In general, performers increase dynamics when melodies rise in pitch, and decrease dynamics when melodies fall in pitch.

Pitch contour emphasis considers the pitch of notes, as well as their duration and position relative to other notes, on each staff independently to calculate changes to dynamic levels.

NOTE

- Pitch contour emphasis does not affect unpitched percussion instruments.
 - In order to produce smooth transitions between phrases, pitch contour emphasis can reduce dynamic levels as well as increasing them.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
2. In the category list, click **Dynamics**.
3. In the **Humanize** section, activate/deactivate **Use pitch contour emphasis**.
4. Optional: If you activated **Use pitch contour emphasis**, change its effect on the default dynamic level by changing the values for the following options:
 - **Scale effect by**
 - **Maximum change to written dynamic**

NOTE

Scale effect by never exceeds the **Maximum change to written dynamic** value.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Dynamics editor](#) on page 694

[Velocity editor](#) on page 691

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Enabling/Disabling polyphonic voice balancing

Dorico Elements can identify melodies and bass notes in polyphonic music, and emphasize them by different amounts relative to any remaining accompanying notes. You can enable/disable rules for contrapuntal music project-wide, and change how much they affect the dynamic level.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Dynamics**.
 3. In the **Polyphonic Instruments** section, activate/deactivate **Use automatic polyphonic instrument voice balancing**.
 4. Optional: If you activated **Use automatic polyphonic instrument voice balancing**, change the values of the available options.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Enabling/Disabling dynamic rules for contrapuntal music

In addition to polyphonic voice balancing, Dorico Elements can identify contrapuntal themes specifically, and emphasize them and bass notes by different amounts, relative to any remaining accompanying notes. You can enable/disable rules for contrapuntal music project-wide, and change how much they affect the dynamic level.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Dynamics**.
 3. In the **Polyphonic Instruments** section, activate/deactivate **Use rules for contrapuntal music**.
 4. Optional: If you activated **Use rules for contrapuntal music**, change the values of the available options.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Enabling/Disabling polyphonic voice balancing](#) on page 956

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Figured bass

Figured bass is a shorthand that uses figures to specify the harmony above the notated bass notes. It is particularly common in Baroque and early Classical music and in the parts of accompanying instruments, such as harpsichords and viols.

Figured bass informs performers about the intended harmony but allows room for interpretation, such as improvised arpeggiated phrases using notes from the chord.

Figures use a combination of Arabic numbers, accidentals, and horizontal hold lines to specify both the intervals above the bass note that make up the chord and its duration. For example, they show where suspensions resolve or when the bass note changes but the chord remains the same.

Tasto solo indications inform performers that sections should be played without harmony.



A basso continuo part with figured bass below the staff

In Dorico Elements, figured bass exists globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default because most music that includes figured bass is tonal, meaning players perform notes from the same chord. Therefore, you only have to input figures once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required and the figures automatically update according to the notes on each staff. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to specify different chords for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local figured bass.

Dorico Elements calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico Elements to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

When you transpose music that includes figured bass, Dorico Elements also transposes the figures accordingly.

Figured bass in Dorico Elements uses a bold roman font by default. You can edit the formatting of figured bass font styles. You can also edit the **Figured Bass Tasto Solo** paragraph style, which is used for *tasto solo* indications.

You can hide or show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. You can also change whether figured bass appears above or below staves by default in each layout independently. Figures appear as signposts if Dorico Elements either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

NOTE

Figured bass does not yet include notations commonly used for harmonic analysis, such as Roman numerals. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395
- [Figured bass hold lines](#) on page 961
- [Showing figured bass on rests](#) on page 959
- [Showing single brackets on figured bass](#) on page 960
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass](#) on page 965
- [Appearance of figured bass](#) on page 967

Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts

You can hide/show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. For example, you can show figured bass in the full score and bass part layouts but hide figured bass in the other part layouts.

Any player on whose staff you input figured bass is automatically set to show figured bass in the current layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show figured bass.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, activate/deactivate each player above/below which you want to show figured bass.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Figured bass is shown above/below all instruments belonging to the corresponding players in the selected layouts when their checkboxes are activated, and hidden when their checkboxes are deactivated. Figured bass is hidden completely when no checkboxes are activated.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.
- You can hide figured bass figures individually in layouts where figured bass is shown.

RELATED LINKS



- [Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass](#) on page 965
- [Figured bass hold lines](#) on page 961

Hiding/Showing figured bass figures individually

You can hide/show individual figured bass figures in layouts in which figured bass is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot show individual figures in layouts where figured bass is hidden.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to hide, or the signposts of figures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden figure. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show figured bass signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Figured Bass**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665



[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Showing figured bass on rests

By default, figured bass is hidden on rests because figures typically indicate harmony in relation to a bass note. You can show figured bass on individual rests; for example, if the harmony changes while the bass is resting. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input figured bass at the positions of the rests.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests on which you want to show figured bass. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show figured bass** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
-

RESULT



Figured bass is shown on the selected rests. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Show figured bass** hides figured bass on selected rests again.

Showing single brackets on figured bass

You can show only a single left or right bracket on individual bracketed figured bass figures. For example, if you want to indicate that all figures between two bracketed figures are optional. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input figured bass figures with brackets.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

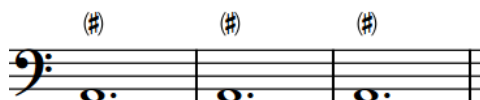
PROCEDURE

1. Select the bracketed figures on which you want to show a single bracket. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide single bracket** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Start**
 - **End**

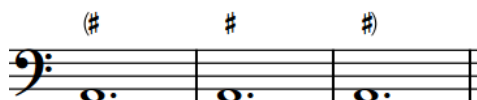
RESULT

Brackets are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected figures, leaving a single bracket on the other side. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Brackets shown on both sides of all figures



Brackets shown at the start of the first figure and the end of the last figure only

RELATED LINKS

[Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines](#) on page 963

[Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Figured bass hold lines

Figured bass hold lines indicate that chords remain the same over changing notes in the bass.

By default, Dorico Elements shows hold lines for figures that have duration, but hides lines between suspensions and resolutions or after resolutions. You can hide/show hold and suspension lines for individual suspension figures.



Figure (selected) with no duration

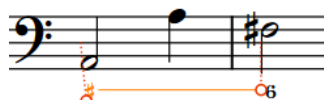


Figure (selected) with duration and hold line

TIP

You can move figures graphically in Engrave mode, including changing the graphical length of hold lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Figured bass in Engrave mode](#) on page 965



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines

You can hide/show suspension lines between suspension and resolution figures and hold lines after resolution figures, independently of each other.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass suspensions whose hold/suspension lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Figured Bass** group:
 - **Line between susp. and resolution**
 - **Continue line after resolution**
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkboxes.

RESULT

Hold lines are shown between suspension and resolution figures and/or after resolutions in the selected figured bass suspensions when the corresponding checkboxes are activated, and hidden when the checkboxes are deactivated.

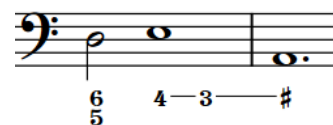
EXAMPLE



Suspension and hold lines both hidden



Suspension line between suspension and resolution shown



Suspension line between suspension and resolution and hold line after resolution both shown

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663



[Showing figured bass on rests](#) on page 959

[Moving figured bass resolutions](#) on page 966

Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines

You can change the duration of figured bass figures after they have been input, which changes the length of their hold lines. Lengthening a figure that was input without duration gives it duration and shows a hold line. You can also change the end positions of figured bass hold lines relative to notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to lengthen/shorten. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Duration** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Lengthen/Shorten the selected figured bass figures in any of the following ways:
 - To lengthen them, increase the value in the left value field.
 - To shorten them, decrease the value in the left value field.
 - To move their end to the left to a grace note at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

TIP

1 represents a quarter note.

4. Do one of the following:
 - To position the end of hold lines to the right of noteheads and across grace notes, activate **Draw line through figures at end**.

- To position the ends of hold lines to the left of noteheads and before grace notes, deactivate **Draw line through figures at end**.
-

RESULT

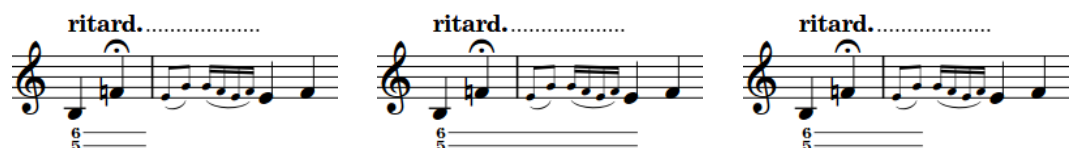
The duration of the selected figured bass figures, and the length of their hold lines, is changed.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten figured bass figures in the same ways as for other items.

EXAMPLE

These examples all have an overall duration of a half note; that is, **2** entered into the left value field.



Draw line through figures at end deactivated **Draw line through figures at end** activated **-1 1/4** entered into the right value field and **Draw line through figures at end** activated



RELATED LINKS

[Figured bass in Engrave mode](#) on page 965
[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines

You can show brackets on individual figured bass hold and suspension lines; for example, to indicate editorial hold lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

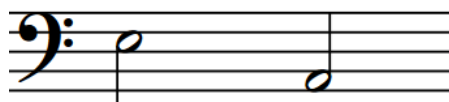
1. Select the figured bass hold/suspension lines on which you want to show brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together as appropriate for your selection, in the **Figured Bass** group:
 - **Bracket sus. lines**
 - **Bracket hold lines**
3. Select one of the following options from each menu:
 - **Both ends**
 - **Start**

- **End**

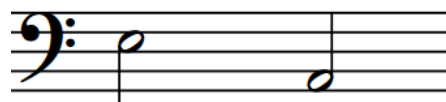
RESULT

Brackets are shown at the corresponding ends of the selected figured bass hold/suspension lines.

EXAMPLE



Both ends brackets on hold lines



Start bracket on suspension lines and **End** bracket on hold lines

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395

Positions of figured bass

Figured bass is automatically organized into rows according to the number of rows required in each system independently. By default, rows are aligned at the top when below the staff and at the bottom when above the staff to minimize the gap between figured bass and the staff.

The vertical position of figured bass is determined by the staves above which they are set to appear and your per-layout setting for their staff-relative placement.

You can move individual figured bass figures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. This includes Dorico Elements's kerning, which applies across whole systems to ensure all figures and alterations are legible.

You can move figures and hold lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

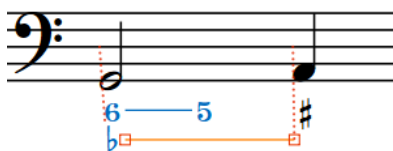
RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts](#) on page 958
- [Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines](#) on page 961
- [Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines](#) on page 962
- [Moving figured bass resolutions](#) on page 966
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Figured bass in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each figured bass hold line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of figured bass hold lines.

You can also move whole figured bass hold lines graphically.



Handles on a hold line in Engrave mode

Moving figures with hold lines moves them both together. Moving hold lines or hold line handles moves the hold lines independently of the figure. Dorico Elements automatically lengthens hold lines between suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

NOTE

- A single figure includes all numbers at that position. For example, you cannot select and move the **6** in a **6,4** figure independently of the **4**.
- If you want to move handles at the start/end of figured bass hold lines because you want to change their length, we recommend that you lengthen/shorten them rhythmically first before refining their graphical length.
- Multiple different properties in the **Figured Bass** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding figure, hold line, or hold line handle.
 - **Main figure offset** moves figures. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Resolution offset** moves the resolution figure in suspensions. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Line [n] offset** moves the start and end handles of hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row horizontally. **L** moves start (left) handles, **R** moves end (right) handles.
 - **Line [n] Y offset** moves whole hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row vertically.

Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass

You can change the default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement**:

- **Above staff**
- **Below staff**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in the selected layouts is changed.

TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of individual figured bass figures by selecting them and pressing **F**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Figured bass below the staff



Figured bass above the staff



RELATED LINKS

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Moving figured bass resolutions

You can move resolution figures rhythmically, without affecting the position of the suspension figure or the overall duration of the figured bass suspension; for example, if you want a suspension to resolve on a different note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the resolution figures you want to move. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Resolution pos.** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Move the selected resolution figures in any of the following ways:
 - To move them to the right, increase the value in the left value field.
 - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the left value field.
 - To move them to the left to grace notes at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

TIP

1 represents a quarter note.

RESULT

The selected resolution figures are moved rhythmically.

TIP

In Write mode, you can also click and drag resolution figure handles to the right/left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

EXAMPLE

For example, entering 1 into the left value field and -1/2 into the right value field moves resolution figures a quarter note to the right of suspension figures, and to the first of two sixteenth grace notes at that rhythmic position.



The image shows a musical score with two staves. The top staff is in treble clef and the bottom staff is in bass clef. Both are in the key of D major (two sharps). The top staff contains a melodic line with a suspension figure (a note tied to the next) and a resolution figure. The bottom staff contains a figured bass line with figures '7-6' and '6/4-3'. The resolution figures are positioned to the right of the suspension figures, and the first of two sixteenth grace notes at that rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

- [Figured bass hold lines](#) on page 961
- [Figured bass in Engrave mode](#) on page 965
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Changing the rhythmic grid resolution](#) on page 217
- [Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395

Appearance of figured bass

The appearance of individual figures is determined either by the default settings in Dorico Elements or your popover entry, depending on whether you instructed Dorico Elements to follow your entry literally when you input each figure.

When inputting figured bass, by default Dorico Elements interprets your entries and applies its default settings for the appearance of figured bass to them. You can specify that you want Dorico Elements to follow your entries exactly for individual figures; for example, if you are reproducing a piece of music and know in advance exactly how you want figures to appear.

You can reset individual figures that you input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally** so they follow the default settings, and you can fix the current appearance of individual figures.

Figured bass in Dorico Elements uses a bold roman font by default. You can edit the formatting of figured bass font styles. You can also edit the **Figured Bass Tasto Solo** paragraph style, which is used for *tasto solo* indications.

Figures appear as signposts if Dorico Elements either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395
- [Figured bass hold lines](#) on page 961
- [Showing figured bass on rests](#) on page 959
- [Showing single brackets on figured bass](#) on page 960

Editing the figured bass font styles

You can edit the formatting of the font styles used for all figured bass figures project-wide; for example, if you want them to appear larger by default.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to *tasto solo* indications, which use the **Figured Bass Tasto Solo** paragraph style.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Font Styles** to open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.
2. In the font styles list, select one of the following font styles:
 - **Figured Bass Font**: Used for bold figured bass figures
 - **Figured Bass Text Font**: Used for plain figured bass figures
3. Activate the following options, individually or together, to change the corresponding aspect of the font:
 - **Font family**
 - **Size**
 - **Style**
 - **Underlined**

NOTE

You must choose a SMuFL-compliant font family for the **Figured Bass Font** font style.

4. Optional: If you selected **Figured Bass Font**, activate **Substitutes** and change its substitute fonts as required.
 5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The formatting of the selected figured bass font style is changed project-wide.



RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Simplifying figured bass compound intervals

You can simplify compound intervals in individual figured bass figures; that is, figures 9 and above. Some editions prefer to simplify compound intervals so figures reflect the first octave and appear out of order in the stack.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the compound figured bass figures you want to simplify. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show compound intervals as simple** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected compound figures are simplified. Deactivating the property returns the selected figures to their default octave.

EXAMPLE

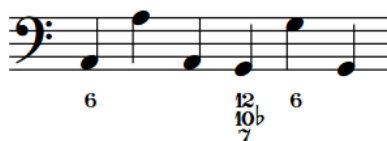


Figure with compound intervals



Figure with simplified compound intervals

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663

Fixing the current appearance of figured bass

You can fix the current appearance of individual figured bass figures; for example, if you input them with the input setting **Follow Engraving Options** but want to keep their current appearance, regardless of future changes you make to figured bass engraving options.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures whose current appearance you want to fix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Figured Bass > Force Current Appearance**.

RESULT

The current appearance of the selected figures is fixed, meaning they are not affected by any future changes to figured bass engraving options.

NOTE

- You cannot access the **Engraving Options** dialog in Dorico Elements, as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, fixing figures maintains their appearance if you share the project with other users who later change figured bass engraving options.
 - You can assign a key command for **Force Current Appearance** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

Resetting figured bass

You can reset individual figured bass figures; for example, if they were input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally**. Reset figures follow the default settings in Dorico Elements.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Figured Bass > Reset Figured Bass**.
-

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are reset to follow the default settings. This can affect their appearance and suspension duration.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Reset Figured Bass** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Inputting figured bass](#) on page 395

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

Fingering

Fingerings use numbers and letters to recommend which fingers players should use for notes. This can be useful for music aimed at players learning the instrument and for difficult musical passages where certain fingering patterns make the notes much easier to play.

Fingerings are often used in keyboard music, as players can use all ten fingers to play notes, and in guitar music, where fingerings are often used alongside fret positions. However, fingerings can also be useful for other instruments; for example, to indicate that string players should change the finger used to stop the string while holding the note, or to instruct wind players to use uncommon fingerings for particular notes in order to create a special sonic effect.

Piano music containing multiple fingerings, including a substitution fingering and alternative fingerings

Dorico Elements also provides fingerings for brass and fretted instruments. For example, you can specify which valves players should depress for instruments such as trumpet and horn, and you can specify the horn branch you want players to use for double horns. For fretted instruments, you can input fingerings for both hands.

Fingerings in Dorico Elements use a bold roman font by default, following accepted conventions for the appearance of fingerings.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274

[Fingerings popover](#) on page 276

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[Fingerings for valved brass instruments](#) on page 989

[Fingering slides](#) on page 986

[Fingering font styles](#) on page 979

[Hiding/Showing fingering](#) on page 978

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

General placement conventions for fingering

Fingerings are placed as close as possible to the notes to which they apply, so the performer can read them easily and clearly.

In music for grand staff instruments, such as the piano and harp, it is accepted to place fingerings for the right hand above the top staff, and fingerings for the left hand below the

bottom staff. However, in dense contrapuntal music for these instruments, fingerings can be placed between the staves to follow the direction of the voices to which they apply.

Different conventions apply to fingerings for fretted instruments, as they require fingerings for both the right and left hands.

Right-hand fingering placement

By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff and on the notehead side of notes, which can be above or below the staff depending on the stem direction. When shown beside notes inside the staff, Dorico Elements automatically joins adjacent notes with the same right-hand fingering with a bracket.

Left-hand fingering placement

Left-hand fingerings are usually positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply. However, they also must not collide with other items, such as accidentals and rhythm dots. Dorico Elements automatically calculates the most appropriate positions for left-hand fingerings and erases their backgrounds by default, which improves their readability when placed on staff lines.



RELATED LINKS

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

Changing fingerings to substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings indicate where players should change the finger used for the note. You can change existing fingerings to substitution fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change to substitution fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Substitution** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want for the substitution into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are now shown as substitution fingerings. The deferred position of the substitution is the same as the original fingering by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274

[Fingerings popover](#) on page 276

Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings are shown as immediate by default, meaning that the substitution takes place on the same note, but you can change the rhythmic position at which individual substitutions take place.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the substitution fingering whose deferred rhythmic position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Change the rhythmic position of the substitution fingering in any of the following ways:
 - In Write mode, click and drag the circular handle to the right/left.
 - In Write mode and Engrave mode, activate **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

Change the rhythmic position of substitutions as fractions of a quarter note (crotchet) by entering a value into the left value field, or by clicking the arrows beside the value field. Increasing the value moves substitutions to later positions, decreasing the value moves them to earlier positions.

NOTE

The right value field is for the grace note position at which substitutions occur, if applicable.

RESULT

The rhythmic position of the substitution fingering is changed.

Dorico Elements automatically arranges deferred substitutions so they are ordered appropriately alongside any fingerings that coincide with the substitution.

NOTE



You can only change the position of single substitution fingerings when dragging their handles with the mouse. However, you can change the positions of multiple substitution fingerings with **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

Deferred substitutions are always shown with horizontal lines.

Changing existing fingerings

You can change fingerings after you have input them; for example, if you decide a different fingering would be better.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, enter the new fingering you want into the **Finger or position** value field in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are changed.

TIP

You can also change existing fingerings in Write mode by opening the fingerings popover. Any existing fingerings on the selected note are shown in the popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274

[Fingerings popover](#) on page 276

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings



Dorico Elements automatically follows conventions for fingering placement, but you can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to convention, keyboard instrument fingering is positioned above the right-hand staff, and below the left-hand staff. String and brass instrument fingering is always positioned above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**
-

RESULT

The selected fingerings appear above/below the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of fingerings by selecting them in Engrave mode and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



Showing fingerings inside the staff

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments beside noteheads inside the staff.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. Left-hand fingerings for fretted instruments are shown inside the staff by default.
 - These steps do not apply to substitution fingerings.
-

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Do one of the following:
 - In Write mode, select the notes whose fingerings you want to show inside the staff.
 - In Engrave mode, select the fingerings you want to show inside the staff.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Position left of notehead** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
-

RESULT

Fingerings belonging to the selected notes are shown inside the staff, directly beside the noteheads. By default, if they belong to a note on a staff line, they erase part of the staff line to ensure legibility.



EXAMPLE



Changing the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets

By default, fingerings are positioned inside the arcs of slurs, but outside the start/end of slurs. You can change the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose position relative to slurs you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Inside**
 - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of the selected fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

If fingerings also coincide with the first note or last note of slurs, fingerings are positioned outside all of these notations.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the size of fingerings

You can change the size of fingerings individually without changing the size of the noteheads to which they apply. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose size you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Scale** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The scale size of the selected fingerings is changed. For example, changing the value to **50** scales the selected fingerings to half their normal size. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default size of all fingerings project-wide by changing the size of the **Fingering Font** in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Fingering font styles](#) on page 979



Showing enclosures/underlines on fingerings

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments with either a circle enclosure or an underline.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. For fretted instruments, you can instead show string indicators inside the staff, which are shown in a circle enclosure.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings on which you want to show an enclosure/underline.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Decoration** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Circle**
 - **Underline**
-

RESULT

The selected fingerings are shown with the chosen decoration.

EXAMPLE



Fingering with circle



Fingering with underline

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[String indicators](#) on page 993

Hiding/Showing fingering

You can hide/show fingering in each layout independently. For example, you can show fingering in part layouts but hide fingering in full score layouts as conductors rarely require fingering information.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show fingering.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Fingering** section, activate/deactivate **Show fingering**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

All fingerings are shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings](#) on page 981

[Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams](#) on page 900

Deleting fingerings

You can remove fingerings from notes after you have input them. However, because fingerings are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Fingering > Reset Fingering**.
-

RESULT

All fingerings are removed from the selected notes.

TIP

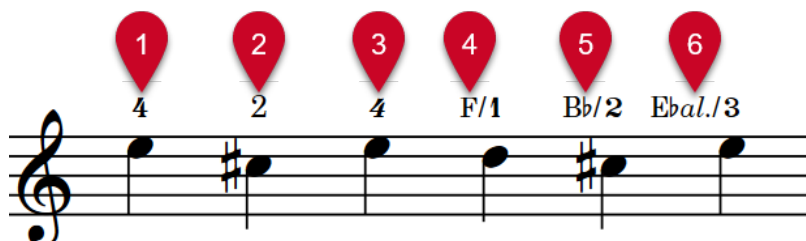
You can assign a key command for **Reset Fingering** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Assigning key commands](#) on page 63
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Fingering font styles

There are different font styles for different types of fingerings. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make fingerings appear larger.



The following font styles are used for fingering:

- 1 **Fingering Font:** Used for bold fingerings, including bold italic fingerings. Must be SMuFL-compliant.
- 2 **Fingering Text Font:** Used for plain fingerings.
- 3 **Fingering Text Italic Font:** Used for italic fingerings.
- 4 **Fingering Horn Branch Text Font:** Used for note names in horn branch indicators.
- 5 **Fingering Horn Branch Accidental Font:** Used for accidentals in horn branch indicators. Must be SMuFL-compliant.
- 6 **Fingering Horn Branch Alto Text Font:** Used for the alto abbreviation in triple horn branch indicators.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply to the entire project, including part layouts.

RELATED LINKS



- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Changing the size of fingerings](#) on page 976

[String indicators](#) on page 993
[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Showing individual fingerings in italics

Fingerings are normally shown in a bold, non-italic font, but you can show individual fingerings in italics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings you want to show in italics.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Italic** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are shown in a bold italic font if your project-wide setting for fingerings is a bold font, and in a plain italic font if your project-wide setting for fingerings is a plain font.

NOTE

Bold italic fingerings look very similar to tuplet numbers, which can be confusing.

Cautionary fingerings

Cautionary fingerings remind players that fingerings specified at previous rhythmic positions continue to apply to notes that are still sounding. Dorico Elements automatically shows cautionary fingerings when you add other fingerings at rhythmic positions where notes with existing fingerings are still sounding.

By default, cautionary fingerings are shown enclosed in parentheses. You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually; for example, if you want to show cautionary fingerings manually on tied notes that cross system or frame breaks.



Cautionary fingering shown in parentheses (default)

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274
[Fingerings popover](#) on page 276



Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings

You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually; for example, if you want particular fingerings to appear without parentheses or to hide specific cautionary fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to cautionary fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose cautionary fingering appearance you want to change.

NOTE

You must select the specific noteheads to which the cautionary fingerings apply, not the fingerings themselves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Cautionary** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Default**
 - **With parentheses**
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **Suppress**
-

RESULT

The appearance of cautionary fingerings on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

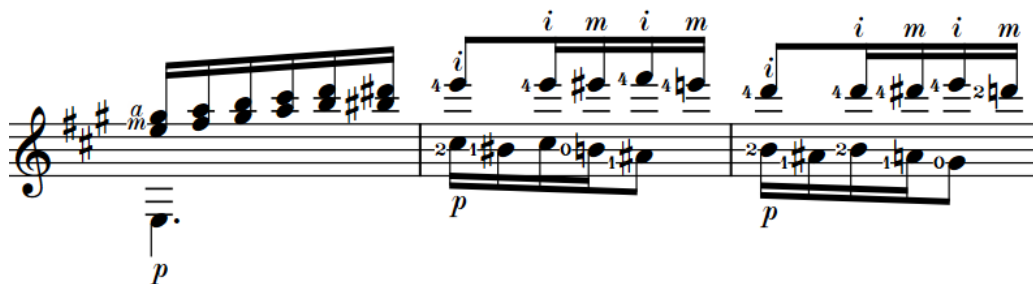
[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals](#) on page 801

Fingerings for fretted instruments

Fretted instruments, such as the classical guitar, require additional fingering instructions for both hands due to the complex nature of the music.

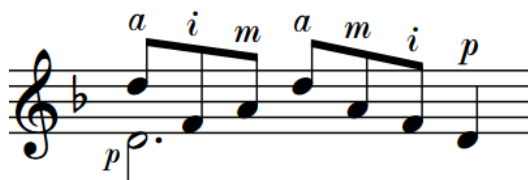
Fingerings for fretted instruments use the same fonts as normal fingerings.



A passage for guitar with right-hand and left-hand fingerings

Right-hand fingering

Right-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to pluck the string, which is usually the right hand. By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff, on the notehead side of notes, and follow the stem directions of voices in multiple-voice contexts. When the same finger plays multiple notes in a chord, you can show a single fingering with a bracket for the notes plucked by that finger.



Dorico Elements shows “p” for right-hand thumb fingerings and “e” for right-hand fingerings for the pinky finger.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, we use “pinky” to refer to the smallest finger, but it can also be called “little” or “fifth digit”.

Left-hand fingering

Left-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to stop the string, which is usually the left hand. In Dorico Elements, left-hand fingerings are placed inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.



When shown inside the staff next to notes, left-hand fingering appears smaller than fingering shown outside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274
- [Fingerings popover](#) on page 276
- [Fingering font styles](#) on page 979
- [Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs](#) on page 985
- [Fingering slides](#) on page 986
- [String indicators](#) on page 993
- [Tapping](#) on page 1138
- [Hammer-ons and pull-offs](#) on page 1139



Hiding/Showing brackets for right-hand fingerings

When multiple notes in the same chord are plucked by the same right-hand finger, you can show the same fingering multiple times, once for each note, or show a single fingering for all notes with a bracket spanning the notes plucked by that finger. When showing a separate fingering for each note, you can also choose to place each fingering either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to right-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select all the notes for which you want to hide/show brackets for right-hand fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Vertical position** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - To hide brackets and show a separate fingering for each selected note, select **Above staff** or **Below staff**.
 - To show brackets and a single fingering for all notes in each bracket, select **Next to note**.
-

RESULT

Brackets on the selected right-hand fingerings are hidden/shown. If you selected **Above staff** or **Below staff**, their staff-relative placement is changed accordingly. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Right-hand fingerings shown next to notes with a bracket



Right-hand fingerings shown above the staff



Right-hand fingerings shown below the staff

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



Changing the position of left-hand fingerings

You can change the position of individual left-hand fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, they are positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.

NOTE

These steps only apply to left-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the left-hand fingerings whose position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Stopping finger position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Outside staff**
 - **Left of note**
 - **Right of note**
-

RESULT

The position of the selected left-hand fingerings is changed. When shown outside the staff, they are placed above the staff by default. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Outside staff



Left of note



Right of note

RELATED LINKS

[General placement conventions for fingering](#) on page 971

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274



Erasing the background of left-hand fingerings inside the staff

By default in Dorico Elements, left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds because they are often placed in the staff on staff lines. You can change whether individual left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds or not. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to left-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments positioned inside the staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

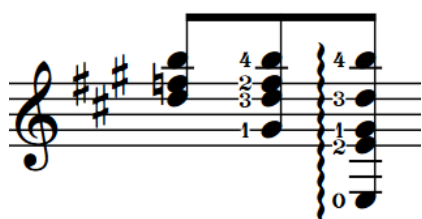
1. In Engrave mode, select the left-hand fingerings whose background erasure you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

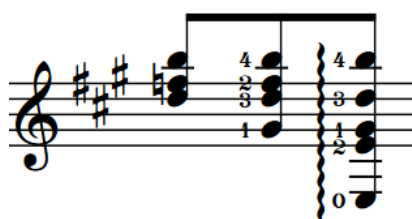
The backgrounds of the selected left-hand fingerings are erased when the checkbox is activated, and not erased when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds by default.

EXAMPLE



Left-hand fingerings with erased backgrounds



Left-hand fingerings without erased backgrounds



Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs

You can add fingerings to arpeggio signs to indicate which right-hand finger should be used to strum a chord. By default, fingerings are placed at the bottom of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

These steps only apply to arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the arpeggio signs to which you want to add fingerings.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

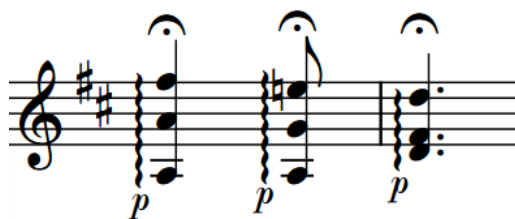
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments to which you to add fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Finger** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want into the value field.
For example, for the thumb, enter **p**.

RESULT

The specified fingering is added to the selected arpeggio signs. It is positioned at the bottom of the arpeggio signs by default.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio signs played with the thumb

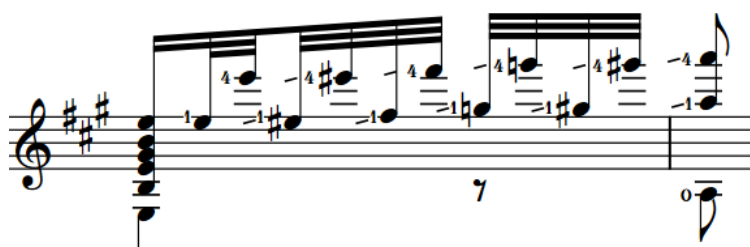
RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Fingering slides

Fingering slides indicate that the performer should slide their finger up/down the neck of the instrument. They are notated as an angled line between fingerings.

The note at the start of a fingering slide is known as a source note. The note at the end of a fingering slide is known as the destination note.



A passage with fingering slides

When the source and destination notes are sufficiently close horizontally, fingering slides are shown between the fingerings, joining them directly in their existing positions without moving them. When the source and destination notes are far apart horizontally, fingering slides appear with a fixed length to the left of the destination note. You can change the length of individual fingering slides.

Fingering slides automatically avoid obstructions, such as noteheads, accidentals, and other fingerings.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- In Dorico Elements, you can only show fingering slides on staves belonging to fretted instruments, and between notes up to three noteheads apart by default. You can show string fingering shift indicators on staves belonging to other string instruments.

RELATED LINKS

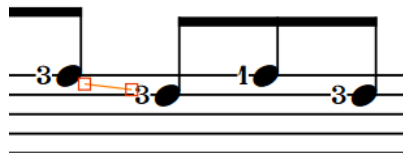
[Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators](#) on page 990

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145

Fingering slides in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each join fingering slide has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of join fingering slides.



Handles on a slide joining two notes in Engrave mode

NOTE

- If you want to change the length of fingering slides, we recommend that you do so by first changing their **Slide type** property or by moving the fingerings. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- You cannot move fingering slides rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which fingering slides apply, you must hide them between their original notes and show new fingering slides between the new notes.
- Fingering slides shown only before the destination note have a fixed length, and so do not have handles at the start/end.
- You cannot move whole fingering slides that join notes. You can only move their handles.



Hiding/Showing fingering slides

You can hide/show slides between notes played by the same left-hand finger on the same string on fretted instruments.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments, and on notes up to three noteheads apart by default.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the same left-hand fingering for the notes at the start and end of the slides.
 - You have specified the same string for the notes at the start and end of the slides.
 - The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the destination notes before which you want to hide/show fingering slides. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Slide in** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
-

RESULT

Fingering slides are shown before the selected notes when **Slide in** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

- If the gap between the source and destination notes is small enough, fingering slides appear as an angled line joining the fingerings.
- If the gap is large, fingering slides appear as a fixed length angled line to the left of the destination notes.

TIP

If you want to adjust the placement or angle of the slide, you can move either the fingerings or the slide itself graphically in Engrave mode. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274
- [Changing existing fingerings](#) on page 973
- [Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514



Changing the length of fingering slides

You can change the length of individual fingering slides and show them either joining the source and destination fingerings or with a fixed length before the destination note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

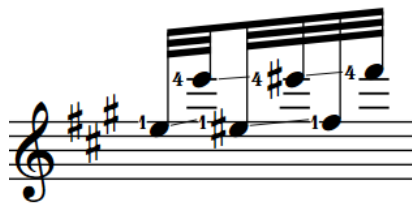
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingering slides whose length you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slide type** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - To show fingering slides between the fingerings at the start/end, choose **Join**.
 - To show fixed length fingering slides before the destination fingerings, choose **Destination only**.
-

RESULT

The length of the selected fingering slides is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Join



Destination only

RELATED LINKS

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Fingerings for valved brass instruments

For instruments like trumpet and horn, fingering is used to show which valves must be depressed to produce a specific note.

You can enter fingerings for valved brass instruments into the fingerings popover as numbers without any separation. For example, enter **12** for a C# on a trumpet to indicate that the first two valves must be depressed.

By default, Dorico Elements automatically stacks fingerings added to notes on brass instrument staves vertically. They are shown with no separator by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Fingering font styles](#) on page 979

[Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274

[Fingerings popover](#) on page 276



Showing horn branch indicators

You can indicate the branch on which notes are played for double horns and triple horns by adding branch indicators as prefixes to horn fingerings. Some publications simply indicate “T” for thumb, while others more explicitly indicate which branch is to be used by specifying its pitch.

NOTE

You can only add branch indicators to notes belonging to horns in F.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horn fingerings to which you want to add branch indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horn branch** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
 3. Select one of the following horn branches from the menu:
 - **F**
 - **B flat**
 - **F alto**
 - **E flat alto**
 - **Thumb trigger**
-

RESULT

Branch indicators are added to the selected fingerings.

Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators



You can hide/show shift indicators after individual fingerings belonging to string instruments. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Shift indicators are angled lines that indicate the direction of movement when string players must shift their finger position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments, which can show fingering slides instead.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes or fingerings on string instrument staves from which you want to indicate a fingering shift. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Indicate shift to next note** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
-

RESULT

Shift indicators are shown when the property is activated, even if neither of the notes at each end have explicit fingerings, and hidden when the property is deactivated. They are positioned between the selected notes and the notes that immediately follow them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can specify that fingerings should show shift indicators when inputting fingerings for string instruments.

EXAMPLE




RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting fingerings](#) on page 274
- [Fingering slides](#) on page 986
- [Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators

You can change the direction of individual string fingering shift indicators if they do not point in the direction required.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the shift indicators whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Shift direction** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Up**
 - **Down**

RESULT

The selected shift indicators are angled up/down.

NOTE

You can also affect the direction of string shift indicators by specifying the strings on which notes are played.

Fingerings imported from MusicXML files

Dorico Elements imports fingerings that are specified using the fingering element in MusicXML files.

MusicXML files exported from Finale typically represent fingerings in the correct way. However, because Sibelius does not use the fingering element, Dorico Elements cannot import fingerings from MusicXML files exported by Sibelius.

String indicators

String indicators are commonly used in guitar music to tell performers the string on which they should play a note, particularly for pitches that are possible on multiple strings.

String indicators show the string number inside a circle enclosure, optionally with a dashed line to indicate they apply to a range of notes. Open pitches commonly appear as a zero without an enclosure.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators for stopped pitches appear in a plain font while string indicators for open strings use the fingering font.



A phrase with string indicators and left-hand fingerings

There are two types of string indicators in Dorico Elements, which you input in different ways.

String indicators outside the staff

String indicators outside the staff always appear inside circle enclosures. They automatically show dashed duration lines when they have duration to indicate that multiple notes are played on that string.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators outside the staff are considered playing techniques. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



String indicator outside the staff with duration line

String indicators inside the staff

String indicators inside the staff appear inside circle enclosures, except when they show open strings, which appear as a bold number zero without an enclosure. They automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present.

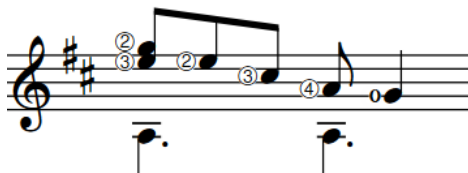
The string number shown in string indicators inside the staff is calculated automatically, but you can also specify the string manually.

String indicators inside the staff for stopped pitches are scaled-down versions of string indicators outside the staff.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators inside the staff are considered properties of the corresponding notes. You can only select them independently of their corresponding notes in Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only show string indicators inside the staff on notes belonging to fretted instruments.



String indicators inside the staff, with the last one for an open string

RELATED LINKS

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Fingering font styles](#) on page 979

[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059



Deleting string indicators

You can remove string indicators inside the staff from notes after you have input them. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, because string indicators inside the staff are properties of notes rather than separate items, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

NOTE

These steps only apply to string indicators inside the staff. You can delete string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for other items.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove string indicators inside the staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.
-

RESULT

String indicators inside the staff are removed from the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Inputting string indicators inside the staff](#) on page 383

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Positions of string indicators

String indicators outside the staff are placed above it by default. In multiple-voice contexts, string indicators for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff and string indicators for the down-stem voices are placed below the staff.

String indicators inside the staff automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present. You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators individually.

You can move string indicators outside the staff to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. You can also change the staff-relative placement of string indicators outside the staff individually, in the same ways as for playing techniques.

You can move string indicators graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators

By default, string indicators inside the staff appear to the left of noteheads when there are no left-hand fingerings and to the right of noteheads when there are left-hand fingerings. You can change the side of noteheads on which string indicators inside the staff appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

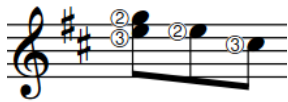
1. Select the string indicators inside the staff whose notehead-relative position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Notehead-relative pos.** in the **String Indicators** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Left**
 - **Right**
-

RESULT

The notehead-relative position of the selected string indicators is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



String indicators to the left of noteheads



String indicators to the right of noteheads

Front matter

Front matter in Dorico Elements is a broad term that covers all information included before the first bar of music in scores.

Front matter includes musical information often added on pages before the first pages of scores, such as a title page, instrumentation list, program note, and performance instructions.

Front matter also includes information above the music on the first page of scores and parts, such as the dedication, title, subtitle, composer, and lyricist.

TIP

An efficient way of keeping information consistent across all layouts is to use tokens that refer to fields in the **Project Info** dialog. The default page templates display different information according to their type.

You can use paragraph styles to keep the formatting and appearance of text consistent throughout your project; for example, if you want your title to use a specific font style wherever it appears.

RELATED LINKS

[Project Info dialog](#) on page 75

[Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Page templates](#) on page 647

[Page template sets](#) on page 647

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Frames](#) on page 654

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Hiding/Showing flow headings](#) on page 611

[Editing layout transposition text](#) on page 1000

Adding titles


You can enter a title for the project and for each flow, independently of each other. For example, you might add the title “Sechs Lieder” for the project, then “Schwanenlied” for the first flow, “Wanderlied” for the second flow, and so on.

Dorico Elements displays titles on pages automatically using tokens on page templates.

In projects that only contain a single flow, you can enter information for either the project or flow. However, you must then ensure that you use the appropriate tokens.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
2. In the list on the left, select **Project**.
3. On the right, enter the title for the whole project in the **Title** field.
4. In the list on the left, select a flow for which you want to add a title.

5. In the action bar at the bottom of the list, click **Rename Flow** .
6. Enter the title into the flow name field.
7. Press **Return**.
8. At the bottom right of the dialog, click **Apply**.

TIP

- This updates the flow title in the **Title** field to match the flow name. Flow names and flow titles can be different and are used in different places. Titles can be referenced using tokens, whereas flow names are used when exporting audio, for example.
- You can also enter flow titles directly into their **Title** fields; however, this removes the link between flow titles and flow names.

9. Optional: Repeat steps 4 to 8 for other flows in the project.

TIP

You can copy project information that you have already entered by selecting the source from the **Copy info from** menu at the bottom of the dialog, then clicking **Copy**.

10. Click **Close**.

RESULT

Titles for the project and each flow are updated. They automatically appear on pages that use the corresponding tokens, such as the first page and in flow headings.

By default, project titles on first pages use the **Title** paragraph style and flow headings use the **Flow Title** paragraph style for text formatting and alignment.

RELATED LINKS

- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Flow names and flow titles](#) on page 187
- [Flow headings](#) on page 651
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Adding composers

You can enter a composer name for the project and for each flow, independently of each other; for example, when compiling songbooks with different composers.

In projects that only contain a single flow, you can enter information for either the project or flow. However, you must then ensure that you use the appropriate tokens.

Dorico Elements displays the project composer on first pages automatically, using a token on the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
2. In the list on the left, select **Project**.
3. On the right, enter the composer for the whole project in the **Composer** field.
4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 3 for each flow in the project.

TIP

You can copy project information that you have already entered by selecting the source from the **Copy info from** menu at the bottom of the dialog, then clicking **Copy**.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Composer names for the project and each flow are updated. They automatically appear on pages that use the corresponding tokens, such as the first page.

By default, composer names on first pages use the **Composer** paragraph style for text formatting and alignment.

Adding lyricists

You can enter a lyricist for the project and for each flow, independently of each other; for example, when compiling songbooks with different lyricists.

In projects that only contain a single flow, you can enter information for either the project or flow. However, you must then ensure that you use the appropriate tokens.

Dorico Elements displays the project lyricist on first pages automatically, using a token on the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
2. In the list on the left, select **Project**.
3. On the right, enter the lyricist for the whole project in the **Composer** field.
4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 3 for each flow in the project.

TIP

You can copy project information that you have already entered by selecting the source from the **Copy info from** menu at the bottom of the dialog, then clicking **Copy**.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Lyricist names for the project and each flow are updated. They automatically appear on pages that use the corresponding tokens, such as the first page.

By default, lyricist names on first pages use the **Lyricist** paragraph style for text formatting and alignment.

Adding copyright information

You can enter copyright information for the project and for each flow, independently of each other; for example, when compiling books of songs composed at different times.

In projects that only contain a single flow, you can enter information for either the project or flow. However, you must then ensure that you use the appropriate tokens.

Dorico Elements displays the project copyright on first pages automatically, using a token on the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
2. In the list on the left, select **Project**.
3. On the right, enter copyright information for the whole project in the **Composer** field.
4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 3 for each flow in the project.

TIP

You can copy project information that you have already entered by selecting the source from the **Copy info from** menu at the bottom of the dialog, then clicking **Copy**.

-
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Copyright information for the project and each flow is updated. It automatically appears on pages that use the corresponding tokens, such as the first page.

By default, copyright information on first pages uses the **Copyright** paragraph style for text formatting and alignment.

RELATED LINKS

- [Project Info dialog](#) on page 75
- [Types of page templates](#) on page 648
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Editing layout transposition text

You can override layout transposition token text in each layout independently; for example, if you want some layouts to display “Concert Pitch” but others to display “Full Score in C”.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose layout transposition text you want to edit.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Text Tokens** section, activate the following options, individually or together:
 - **Custom text for concert layout**
 - **Custom text for transposed layout**
 5. Enter the text you want into the corresponding value fields.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Layouts](#) on page 174

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Making layouts transposed/concert pitch](#) on page 178

Hiding/Showing borders on layout names

You can hide/show borders on all layout names project-wide. By default, layout names appear with borders at the top of pages in part layouts that use the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Paragraph Styles** to open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.
 2. In the paragraph styles list, select **Layout name**.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the checkbox for **Border**.
 4. Optional: If you activated the checkbox, activate and change the available border options as required.
For example, you can change the border style and border thickness.
 5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Renaming layouts](#) on page 183

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Adding borders to text items](#) on page 1358

[Changing the style of text item borders](#) on page 1359

Grace notes

Grace notes are notes without a fixed duration, which are intended to be played quickly. They are scaled-down versions of normal notes, and are commonly shown with a slash through their stem.

Grace notes with slashed stems are known as “acciaccaturas” and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as “appoggiaturas” and are often played slower than acciaccaturas. In Baroque music, appoggiaturas are often understood to last for a specific duration, based on the prevailing meter and the rhythmic value of the notehead to which they are attached. Therefore in Dorico Elements, slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Grace notes do not take up space rhythmically, as they are intended to be fitted into the space before the note to which they are attached, which is the note immediately to their right.

There can be multiple grace notes before a notehead. If there are two or more grace notes attached to the same notehead, and they have a rhythmic value that shows a flag on the stem, such as eighth notes (quavers) and 16th notes (semiquavers), they are automatically beamed together.



Multiple grace notes before notes

In Dorico Elements, grace notes are scaled to 3/5 the size of a normal notehead by default and are affected by your note spacing settings. There is a separate option specifically for grace note spacing.

You can add notations, such as slurs and articulations, to grace notes in the same ways as to normal notes, and you can transpose grace notes after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249

[Slur placement relative to grace notes](#) on page 1285

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Inputting articulations](#) on page 271

[Inputting slurs](#) on page 273

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

General placement conventions for grace notes

Grace notes function like normal notes in many ways, but there are some specific conventions about their stem direction, position relative to noteheads, and the placement of stem slashes.

Grace notes are always positioned before a notehead, even if they are intended to be played on the beat rather than before the beat. They are normally placed after a barline, so they can be

positioned directly before the notehead to which they are attached. You can show grace notes before barlines instead; for example, if you have a group of three or more grace notes and want to reduce the gap between the barline and the first beat in the bar.

Grace note stem slashes appear at the beginning of grace note beams. If there is a single grace note, the slash appears across its stem and flag, if applicable, and extends either side of the stem.



Adding accidentals causes their spacing to readjust so that the accidentals are clearly legible, similar to normal notes.

Articulations can be added to grace notes wherever they are most clearly legible, which is most likely outside the staff. Dorico Elements automatically places articulations on the stem-side of grace notes, and outside the staff if the stem or beam is within the staff.

Grace notes in multiple-voice contexts

According to accepted notation convention, grace notes appear stem up by default when there is only one voice on a staff, even if the notehead to which they are attached is stem down.

However, when there are multiple voices on the staff, all notes in the upper voices appear stem up and all notes in the lower voices appear stem down, including grace notes. This also affects the curvature direction of slurs.

This adjustment happens automatically in Dorico Elements, but you can also change the stem direction of grace notes manually.



Slurs relative to grace notes

By default, slurs starting on grace notes and ending on tie chains end on the first note of the tie chain. You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including those starting from grace notes.

TIP

You can change the note spacing scale factor for grace notes in each layout independently on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Slur placement relative to grace notes](#) on page 1285

[Slur position relative to tie chains](#) on page 1284





[Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

Turning existing notes into grace notes

You can turn any existing notes into grace notes; for example, if you want to edit music you input using MIDI recording.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes that you want to turn into grace notes.
2. Optional: Change the grace note type to slashed/unslashed in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Alt/Opt-/**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Grace Notes** , then click **Unslashed Grace Notes**  or **Slashed Grace Notes** .
3. Do one of the following:
 - Press **/**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes** .

RESULT

The selected notes are turned into grace notes with the same notated duration. However, any rhythm dots are removed.

By default, slashed grace notes attach to the rhythmic position following the last selected note in each range, while unslashed grace notes attach to the rhythmic position of the first selected note in each range.

TIP

You can change the default direction when turning existing notes into grace notes in **Preferences > Note Input and Editing > Editing**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the duration of grace notes.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249
- [Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259
- [Changing the type of grace notes](#) on page 1006
- [Turning existing notes into tuplets](#) on page 1410
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58


Turning grace notes into normal notes

You can turn any existing grace notes into normal notes starting from their original rhythmic position; for example, if you want to turn a run of grace notes at the start of a flow into standard notes in a pick-up bar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the grace notes you want to turn into normal notes.
2. Optional: If you want the selected grace notes to push subsequent notes to later rhythmic positions if required, press **I** to activate Insert mode.
3. Optional: If you activated Insert mode, choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.

4. Do one of the following:

- Press **/**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes** .
-

RESULT

The selected grace notes are turned into normal notes with the same notated duration. For example, an eighth grace note becomes a standard eighth note.

If Insert mode was activated, subsequent existing notes are pushed to later rhythmic positions to accommodate the extra rhythmic durations if required. If Insert mode was deactivated, the grace notes expand and overwrite subsequent notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Turning tuplets into normal notes](#) on page 1410



[Pick-up bars](#) on page 1386

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

Showing grace notes before/after barlines

By default, grace notes are positioned after barlines and directly before the notehead to which they apply, including for the first note in a bar. You can position individual grace notes before barlines; for example, so the first normal note in the bar is not pushed too far from the barline, or to indicate that grace notes are played before the beat.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose position relative to barlines you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Grace note before barline** in the **Grace Notes** group.
-

RESULT

Grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions are positioned before barlines when the property is activated, and after barlines when the property is deactivated.

NOTE

This affects all grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Barlines](#) on page 815

Grace note size

Grace notes are smaller versions of normal notes, and are scaled down by a ratio that is set by default to 3/5 of a normal note.

You can change the size of grace notes individually in the same way as for normal notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the size of notes/items](#) on page 433

[Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249

Grace note slashes



Slashes shown diagonally across grace note stems are often used to distinguish different types of grace notes. Grace notes with slashed stems are known as acciaccaturas and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as appoggiaturas and are often played slower than acciaccaturas.

In Dorico Elements, grace notes appear with slashed stems by default. You can change whether grace notes are slashed or unslashed during note input as well as by changing the type of existing grace notes.



Changing the type of grace notes

You can change the type of individual grace notes after they have been input. Grace notes have slashed stems by default, but you can change them to have unslashed stems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.




PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Grace note type** in the **Grace Notes** group:
 - **Slashed stem** 
 - **Unslashed stem** 

RESULT

The selected grace notes are shown with slashed/unslashed stems.



TIP

You can also change the type of selected grace notes by pressing **Alt/Opt-/** or clicking and holding **Grace Notes**  in the Notes toolbox, then clicking **Unslashed Grace Notes**  or **Slashed Grace Notes** .

Moving slashes on grace note stems

You can change the vertical position of individual grace note slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash positions you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
 - **Slash inset from stem tip**
 - **Slash offset to right**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Slash inset from stem tip** moves grace note slashes further from the tips of stems and closer to the noteheads. Decreasing the value moves them closer to the tips of stems and further from the noteheads.

Increasing **Slash offset to right** moves grace note slashes to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Inputting grace notes](#) on page 249

Changing the length of grace note slashes

You can change the length of slashes on grace note stems individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash length you want to change.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
 - **Slash length**
 - **Slash protrusion from beam** (beamed grace notes only)

NOTE

Grace note slashes seem to disappear when you activate **Slash length** because activating the property resets the value to **0**.

3. Change the length and/or protrusion of the selected slashes by changing the values in the corresponding value fields.
-

RESULT

Increasing **Slash length** lengthens grace note slashes on both single grace notes and grace note beams, decreasing the value shortens grace note slashes.

Increasing **Slash protrusion from beam** increases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams, decreasing the value decreases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Grace note stems

Grace notes are scaled-down notes, so the length of grace note stems is determined by the default settings for the stem length of all notes.

Following accepted conventions, grace notes in Dorico Elements are stem up by default in any clef, regardless of the stem direction of the note to which they apply. The stem directions of grace notes are changed automatically when there are multiple voices on a staff, but you can change the stem direction of individual grace notes manually. You can also lengthen/shorten grace note stems in the same ways as for normal stems.

RELATED LINKS

[Stems](#) on page 1074

Grace note beams

Dorico Elements automatically beams multiple adjacent grace notes together if they are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.

Like all beams, grace note beams ideally follow the accepted standards for beam placement relative to staff lines, in order to avoid wedges. However, because grace notes are smaller than normal notes, this can lead to extreme slants in grace note beams.

You can adjust the slants of individual grace note beams in the same ways as for normal beams.

RELATED LINKS

[Beaming](#) on page 840

Grace notes in playback

Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Slashed grace notes of any note duration, and unslashed grace notes a 16th note or shorter, play back before the beat with a single default sounding duration.

Unslashed grace notes an eighth note or longer play back on the beat. Their sounding duration is half the note duration of the note to which they are attached. For example, if an unslashed eighth note grace note is attached to a quarter note, both notes play back as if they were eighth notes.

You can change whether single unslashed grace notes play on or before the beat, the maximum note duration for unslashed grace notes to play back as short appoggiaturas, and the default sounding duration of grace notes in **Playback Options > Timing > Grace Notes**.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

[Grace note slashes](#) on page 1006

Holds and pauses

Different notations are used to show where the established rhythmic flow of the music is interrupted, either with a moment of repose or a short silence, before continuing. The most subtle effect is produced by a tenuto mark, with more significant effects denoted with holds and pauses.

The duration of the break in the music intended by the hold or pause does not need to be specified. This leaves significant room for interpretation, even though the different styles of holds and pauses normally indicate larger or smaller breaks.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of holds and pauses:

Fermatas

Fermatas indicate that a note is held for longer than its notated length, which applies to the whole ensemble. In Dorico Elements, fermatas exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions, meaning they are automatically shown on all staves and voices.

They are also known as “pauses” and informally sometimes called “birds’ eyes”.



Breath marks

Breath marks show suitable places for players to breathe, or suggest how the music is phrased to create a similar effect. Breath marks apply to single staves only.



Caesuras

Caesuras indicate that a note is sustained for its full value and is followed by a break in sound before continuing. In Dorico Elements, caesuras exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions, meaning they are automatically shown on all staves.



RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for holds and pauses](#) on page 336

[Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011

[Types of breath marks](#) on page 1012

[Types of caesuras](#) on page 1012









[Positions of holds and pauses](#) on page 1012

[Holds and pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

Types of fermatas

There are different types of fermatas available in Dorico Elements. Each fermata indicates a suggested pause duration whilst leaving room for interpretation.

In Dorico Elements, the different types of fermatas affect playback according to their intended duration. For example, long fermatas produce longer held notes and gaps than short fermatas.

Fermata	Description
Very short fermata 	Indicates that a note is held only a fraction longer than the rhythm indicates.
Short fermata 	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates.
Short fermata (Henze) 	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Fermata 	Indicates that a note is held for longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata 	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata (Henze) 	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Very long fermata 	Indicates that a note is held for much longer than the rhythm indicates.
Curlew (Britten) 	Indicates that a note or rest is held until the next synchronization point in asynchronous music, as used by Benjamin Britten.

Fermatas can be divided into two styles. Because their meanings overlap, it can be confusing for players if both styles are used in a single project.

Style	Very short fermata	Short fermata	Fermata	Long fermata	Very long fermata
Standard					
Henze	N/A				N/A

RELATED LINKS

[Holds and pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Input methods for holds and pauses](#) on page 336

Types of breath marks

There are different types of breath marks available in Dorico Elements. Breath marks indicate a suitable place for a player to take a breath, or create a musical effect like a breath.

Comma-like	Tick-like	Upbow-like	Salzedo

Types of caesuras

There are different types of caesuras available in Dorico Elements. All caesuras indicate a break in sound, but different types are often needed for different styles of musical scores.

Caesura	Thick caesura	Short caesura	Curved caesura	Single-stroke caesura
Two diagonal slashes	Two thick diagonal slashes	Two straight, vertical slashes	Two curved diagonal slashes	One straight, vertical slash

If you intend to communicate a specific length of hold or gap with each type of caesura, we recommend that you consider adding a legend, as different players may interpret these symbols differently.

Positions of holds and pauses

Holds and pauses are placed above the staff by default in single-voice contexts, and are shown on all staves at the closest rhythmic position available; for example, if a single staff has a fermata on the last beat in the bar, it is shown above the bar rests on the other empty staves. For staves with multiple voices, fermatas are also shown inverted below the staff.

You can move holds and pauses to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move holds and pauses graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Fermatas

Fermatas are positioned horizontally so that they are centered on front noteheads in the first voice column, regardless of the stem direction of notes.

The image shows a musical score with a vocal line and piano accompaniment. The vocal line is in treble clef with a key signature of three flats (B-flat, E-flat, A-flat) and a 4/4 time signature. The lyrics are: "one, 'You're love - ly neigh - bor, But I'm". There are fermatas placed over the notes for "love", "ly", and "But". The piano accompaniment consists of a right hand in treble clef and a left hand in bass clef. The right hand has a triplet of eighth notes over "love" and another triplet over "ly". The left hand has a fermata over the first measure and another over the second measure. The fermatas are positioned horizontally, centered on the front noteheads of the notes they affect.

Fermatas affect the overall tempo of the piece, so all players must be able to see where they occur. Therefore, fermatas are shown on all staves at the same rhythmic position, or the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata, including over a bar rest if a staff has no notes in that bar.

Breath marks

Breath marks are placed above the top line of the staff by default, at the end of the note to which they apply; that is, they appear just before the following note.

Breath marks apply only to the staff to which they were added, as they do not affect the overall tempo, but instead only indicate to a single player or group of players a suitable place to break their line in order to breathe.

Caesuras

Caesuras are positioned at the top of the staff, with the top staff line passing through the middle of the caesura and the bottom of the caesura resting on the second staff line. They are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before the barline.

Caesuras are automatically added to all staves at the same rhythmic position, immediately to the left of the notehead or barline to which they were input. They are not linked to noteheads, and adjust note spacing to create a clear gap.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for holds and pauses](#) on page 336

[Holds and pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Combinations of holds and pauses

Some types of holds and pauses cannot appear at the same rhythmic position as other holds and pauses.

At a single rhythmic position, Dorico Elements can show the following:

- A single type of fermata or caesura on all staves. For example, you cannot have a short fermata on one staff and a long fermata at the same rhythmic position on another staff. Changing the type of fermata or caesura on one staff automatically changes the type on all staves at that rhythmic position, as a pause at one particular rhythmic position can only be of one duration.
- A single type of breath mark or a Curlew mark on each staff independently. For example, each staff can show a different type of breath mark, but you cannot show two different breath marks at the same rhythmic position on the same staff.

You can combine holds and pauses in the following ways:

- Fermatas cannot exist at the same rhythmic position as any other hold or pause. Breath/Curlew marks override fermatas, causing them not to appear on the corresponding staves. Caesuras and fermatas permanently replace each other.
- Caesuras can exist at the same rhythmic position as breath/Curlew marks, but not fermatas.
- Breath marks cannot exist at the same rhythmic position as Curlew marks. They permanently replace each other.

EXAMPLE

To show a fermata and breath mark on the same note, ensure that the breath mark exists at a different rhythmic position, as indicated by its attachment line. For example, move it rhythmically from an adjacent note, or input it when the caret is at the required position.





RELATED LINKS

- [Input methods for holds and pauses](#) on page 336
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Rhythmic position](#) on page 24
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Hiding/Showing attachment lines](#) on page 437

Changing the number of fermatas per staff

You can change the maximum number of fermatas that appear on each staff at individual positions when there are multiple voices on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas whose maximum number per staff you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Max. fermatas per staff** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

- **One per voice**
 - **One per each side of staff**
 - **One per staff**
-

RESULT

The number of fermatas shown at the selected positions is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



Positioning fermatas on barlines

You can position individual fermatas over a barline instead of over a note to indicate a gap before the start of the following bar.

NOTE

Fermatas cannot be positioned on barlines if **Max. fermatas per staff** is also activated.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas you want to position over barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Attach to barline** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.
-

RESULT

The selected fermatas are positioned above the barline at the end of the bars they were in originally, appearing only above staves that are not joined by the barline. Depending on the instrumentation, this may mean they only appear at the top of the system.

Deactivating **Attach to barline** returns the selected fermatas to their default positions.

EXAMPLE



Fermata input on last quarter note in the bar



Fermata positioned on barline

Holds and pauses in playback

Dorico Elements uses a combination of changing note durations and inserting gaps to reflect all types of fermatas, breath marks, and caesuras in playback.

Fermatas in playback

Fermatas both lengthen the duration of notes at their positions, and insert gaps after them. The durations of holds and gaps depends on the type of fermata, with long fermatas producing longer held notes and gaps than short fermatas.

Breath marks in playback

Breath marks shorten the duration of the notes that precede them. By default, they shorten notes by 50% of a quarter note at 120 bpm, up to a maximum of half the duration of affected notes.

Breath marks do not insert time in playback.

Caesuras in playback

Caesuras insert gaps after notes at their positions, before notes at the next rhythmic position. By default, they insert gaps equivalent to 50% of the beat duration at their positions.

Caesuras do not extend the duration of notes at their positions.

You can change the gap/hold durations of individual fermatas and caesuras, including editing them in the Tempo editor.

You can also change the default gap/hold durations of all holds and pauses project-wide in **Playback Options > Timing > Pauses**.

NOTE

Fermatas and caesuras do not affect playback if they overlap with gradual tempo changes. We recommend that you position gradual tempo changes to end rhythmically before fermatas/caesuras. You can lengthen gradual tempo changes graphically in Engrave mode if you want to show them extending beyond fermatas/caesuras.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Changing the played duration of notes](#) on page 689
- [Gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1345
- [Tempo editor](#) on page 706

Including/Excluding pauses in playback

By default, Dorico Elements plays back all holds and pauses. You can include/exclude all holds and pauses project-wide in playback; for example, to hear your music at a consistent speed and without gaps.

NOTE

Fermatas and caesuras never affect playback in fixed tempo mode.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
2. In the category list, click **Timing**.

3. In the **Pauses** section, activate/deactivate **Play back pauses**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Playing back music](#) on page 540
- [Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543
- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749
- [Including/Excluding slash voices in playback](#) on page 1260
- [Including/Excluding repeats in playback](#) on page 550
- [Input methods for holds and pauses](#) on page 336

Changing the gap/hold durations of fermatas in playback

You can change the gap and hold durations of individual fermatas in playback, independently of your project-wide settings. For example, to make a single fermata last longer without changing its notated type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas whose playback gap/hold durations you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Holds and Pauses** group:
 - **Hold duration %**
 - **Gap duration %**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
 4. Optional: To make the selected fermatas play back without gaps, activate **Hold only**.
-

RESULT

The gap and/or hold durations of the selected fermatas in playback are changed.

TIP

- You can also edit the playback of individual fermatas in the Tempo editor.
 - You can change the default playback gap/hold durations of all fermatas project-wide, including setting different values for each type of fermata, in **Playback Options > Timing > Pauses**.
-



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011
- [Tempo editor](#) on page 706

Changing the gap duration of caesuras in playback

You can change the gap duration of individual caesuras in playback, independently of your project-wide settings. For example, if your music requires some caesuras to have larger gaps than others.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the caesuras whose playback gap duration you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Gap duration %** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The gap duration of the selected caesuras in playback is changed.

TIP

- You can also edit the playback of individual caesuras in the Tempo editor.
 - You can change the default playback gap duration of all caesuras project-wide in **Playback Options > Timing > Pauses**.
-

Key signatures

Key signatures are the markings that show the current key of music by indicating which notes in the scale for that key are sharpened or flattened. They are shown at the start of each system on every applicable staff.

Traditionally, accidentals are organized following the pattern of the circle of fifths, which is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

Using key signatures saves space, as by indicating which notes are generally going to be sharp or flat in the music in one group at the start of each system, these notes do not need an accidental beside them every time they occur.



Once you have input a key signature, all notes you subsequently input follow the key signature; for example, if you input an **F** after inputting a G major key signature, an F# is input automatically.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

Instruments that do not usually have key signatures, such as timpani or horn, have a **No key sig** variant in Dorico Elements which never show key signatures. You can select the appropriate instrument variant from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

By default, key signatures apply to all staves. However, there are certain situations, such as in polytonal music, where some parts require their own key signature, independently of the rest of the ensemble. You can input key signatures that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

In Dorico Elements, key signatures exist within the overarching tonality system for your project. The only tonality system that comes as standard in Dorico Elements is 12-EDO.

NOTE

- You cannot hide key signatures, as they provide crucial information about the pitch of notes. If you do not want to see a key signature, you can input an open key signature or delete all key signatures from the flow or project.
- You do not have to input multiple simultaneous key signatures if you have transposing instruments in your score. Dorico Elements handles instrument transpositions automatically.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for key signatures](#) on page 278

- [Types of key signatures](#) on page 1021
- [Tonality systems](#) on page 1028
- [Instrument picker](#) on page 112
- [Note input](#) on page 223
- [Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455
- [Transposing instruments](#) on page 132
- [Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178
- [MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

Key signature arrangements

Dorico Elements automatically follows conventions for the placement and appearance of key signatures, such as showing accidentals in the accepted circle of fifths order and positioning key signatures between clefs and time signatures.

The order in which accidentals are shown in key signatures is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

- For sharps: F#, C#, G#, D#, A#, E#, B#
- For flats: Bb, Eb, Ab, Db, Gb, Cb, Fb

Accidentals are arranged automatically in these orders in Dorico Elements for all standard Western key signatures. There is an accepted pattern for the placement of accidentals in a key signature, so that they fit inside the staff according to the current clef. The pattern of accidentals is the same in all clefs, apart from the tenor clef, which requires sharp key signatures to follow a different, ascending pattern to ensure the accidentals fit on the staff.

Clef	Arrangement of sharps	Arrangement of flats
Treble		
Bass		
Alto		
Tenor		

RELATED LINKS

[Positions of key signatures](#) on page 1022

Types of key signatures

There are multiple types of key signatures in Dorico Elements, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Major and minor key signatures

The key signature for a major key appears the same as the key signature for its relative minor, and vice versa. For example, B \flat major has two flats in its key signature. This is the same number of flats as for G minor, which is the relative minor key to B \flat major. The difference is that music in G minor usually has sharpened Fs, as the seventh degree of the scale is raised in minor keys. Therefore, if you input an F \sharp /G \flat after a G minor key signature, Dorico Elements prefers to spell it as F \sharp in most cases, in order to follow the convention of harmonic minor keys.



A B flat major scale following a B flat major key signature



A G minor scale following a G minor key signature

Open key signature

Although open, or atonal, key signatures appear the same as C major or A minor key signatures because none shows any accidentals, open key signatures behave differently.

In an open key signature, the spelling of accidentals is based on the current direction of the music. If the music is rising, sharps are preferred, whereas if the music is falling, flats are preferred. There is no hierarchy of pitches in an open key signature, so the same pitch might be spelled differently each time it appears depending on its context, even within a few bars.

In a C major or A minor key signature, accidentals are spelled based on the context of the major or minor tonality implied. For example, in C major, sharps in general are preferred, whether the music is going up or going down. Similarly, in A minor, G \sharp in particular is preferred, whether the music is going up or going down, as G \sharp is the leading note in A minor.

No key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp.

If you have added the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

Any pitch can be input into these instruments, and they show accidentals if needed.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for key signatures](#) on page 278

[Instrument picker](#) on page 112

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems

By default, key signatures are shown at the start of all systems. You can hide/show key signatures at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in each flow independently.

Hiding key signatures on single-staff systems after the first system is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding clefs and showing systemic barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show key signatures after the first system.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Key Signatures**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Key signatures at start of systems following first system**:
 - **Show key signatures**
 - **Hide key signatures**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Key signatures are hidden or shown at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in the selected flows.

NOTE

- Key signature changes that occur at system breaks after the first system are always shown.
- Key signatures are always shown at the start of systems that contain more than one staff.

RELATED LINKS

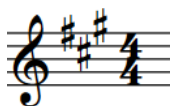
[Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems](#) on page 821

[Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems](#) on page 911

Positions of key signatures

Key signatures are positioned between clefs and time signatures by default, and are shown on every staff that requires a key signature. They are not shown on staves for unpitched instruments.

Key signatures are shown at the start of a piece and at the start of subsequent movements, even if the music carries straight on and in the same key. Unlike time signatures, key signatures appear at the start of every system, even if the key signature has not changed. They apply until the end of the flow or until the next key signature change, whichever comes first.



The correct position for key signatures is between clefs and time signatures.

If a key signature change occurs during a piece or movement, it should be placed immediately after a barline. It is customary to have a double barline where a key signature change takes place, which is the default setting in Dorico Elements.



Examples of key signatures positioned after double barlines

You can move key signatures to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned correctly.

RELATED LINKS

[Cautionary key signatures](#) on page 1024

[Key signature arrangements](#) on page 1020

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving key signatures graphically](#) on page 1023

Moving key signatures graphically

You can make individual changes to the graphical position of key signatures without affecting the positions of any other items.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square note spacing handle above the key signature you want to move.



A smaller circular handle appears beside the key signature.

2. Press **Tab** to select the circular handle.



3. Move the handle in any of the following ways:

- To move it a standard amount to the right or left, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left.
- To move it a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

- To move it a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To move it a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.


NOTE

You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

The key signature is moved graphically to the right/left.

TIP

When **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox, you can also change **Spacing offset** in the **Key Signatures** group of the Properties panel to move key signatures horizontally. However, this also affects global note spacing at the rhythmic position of the key signature, including moving cancellation naturals.

You can also move cancellation naturals graphically, independently of the subsequent key signature and without affecting the spacing of any other item using the **Cancellation naturals X offset** property.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Cautionary key signatures

When a key signature change occurs at a system break, either in the score or in a part, the new key signature is shown at the end of the first system as well as at the start of the new system.

This is sometimes considered a “cautionary key signature”, as players become used to seeing the key signature at the start of the system and therefore may miss a change of key signature if it is not conspicuously shown at the end of systems. It is also known as a “courtesy key signature”.

In Dorico Elements, the key signatures shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You can hide cautionary key signatures, either individually or by default in each flow.

TIP

We recommend using flows for separate spans of music. Dorico Elements does not show cautionary key signatures or time signatures between flows.

RELATED LINKS

[Flows](#) on page 171

[Splitting flows](#) on page 501

[Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems](#) on page 1022

[System breaks](#) on page 633

[Cautionary time signatures](#) on page 1384



[Repeat markers](#) on page 1236

[Clefs](#) on page 907

Hiding/Showing cautionary key signatures

You can hide/show individual cautionary key signatures shown at the ends of systems when key signature changes occur at system breaks, independently of your per-flow setting. For example, to save horizontal space when using key signatures with many accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the cautionary key signatures that you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Cautionary at end of system** in the **Key Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Hide**
 - **Show**

RESULT

The selected cautionary key signatures are hidden/shown at the ends of systems. This does not affect key signatures shown at the start of systems.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can hide/show cautionary key signatures by default in each flow independently on the **Key Signatures** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Cautionary key signatures](#) on page 1024
- [Cautionary time signatures](#) on page 1384
- [Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems](#) on page 1022
- [System breaks](#) on page 633
- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures are keys with different names that include the same pitches, such as C# major and D \flat major. Dorico Elements follows the convention for transposing

to keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key, except where the enharmonic equivalent key signature has fewer accidentals.

When transposing selections of notes, Dorico Elements prefers keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key signature. When choosing key signatures for transposing instruments, Dorico Elements prefers key signatures with the same type of accidental as the current concert pitch key.

However, there are some instances where you might prefer to transpose to a key with a different type of accidental as it has fewer accidentals than the enharmonic equivalent key. For example, C# major has seven sharps, whereas the enharmonic equivalent key of D \flat major only has five flats. This means the player has to remember the accidentals for fewer notes.

Transposing to an enharmonic equivalent key with fewer accidentals can have the added benefit of improving readability by avoiding double sharps or double flats. For example, transposing music from F# to G# requires the leading note to be spelled as an F $\sharp\sharp$, but transposing to A \flat instead means the leading note is G \flat .



G# major requires a double sharp leading note



A# major, the enharmonic equivalent to G#, does not require a double sharp leading note

By default, Dorico Elements selects an enharmonic equivalent key signature if it has fewer accidentals. You can change this setting in each flow independently.

How key signatures affect transposing instruments

If there is a key signature in the full score, it is transposed for a transposing instrument by the same degree as the transposing interval for the instrument. For example, in a project in E major, a B \flat clarinet part has a key of F# major, as a B \flat clarinet sounds a whole step (tone) below its notated pitch.

Instruments that do not show a key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp. If you have input the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

You can still transpose music in the staves of these instruments, but they show accidentals as necessary, instead of showing a key signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Transpose dialog](#) on page 470

[Transposing selections](#) on page 469

[Respelling notes](#) on page 473

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

[Concert vs. transposed pitch](#) on page 178

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

Allowing/Disallowing enharmonic equivalent key signatures

By default, Dorico Elements selects enharmonic equivalent key signatures if they have fewer accidentals when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts. You can change this setting in each flow independently; for example, if you want all layouts to have flats in their key signatures, regardless of the number of accidentals.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to allow/disallow enharmonic equivalent key signatures.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Transposition** section, activate/deactivate **Prefer enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals are allowed when the option is activated, and disallowed when the option is deactivated. This affects resulting key signatures when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts.

Tonality systems

The term “tonality system” is used in Dorico Elements to encompass three crucial elements that together make up the concept of tonality.

The three elements that make up tonality systems are:

- A number of equal divisions of the octave, or EDO. For example, standard Western scales with half-step (semitone) steps have 12-EDO.
- A set of accidentals. This allows you to notate how much a note is raised or lowered.
- A key signature. In Dorico Elements, you can use any traditional Western key signature.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot change the tonality system; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

Equal Division of the Octave (EDO)

EDO stands for Equal Division of the Octave: the number of equal pieces, or intervals, into which an octave is divided.

Traditional Western harmony is based on equal temperament, another method used to describe tonality systems, or 12-EDO, as the traditional scale from C-C is made up of twelve steps spread across the seven notes in the scale.

For example, between the notes A and B there are two steps, but between B and C there is one step. This is because in 12-EDO, each step represents a half-step (semitone), and there are two half-steps between A and B according to standard equal temperament, but only one half-step between B and C.

Other tonality systems can have different equal divisions of the octave; for example, in 24-EDO each octave division is a quarter tone. However, the only tonality system in Dorico Elements is 12-EDO.

Lyrics

In Dorico Elements, the term “lyrics” is used for all text that is sung by singers.



Lyrics for a soprano duet with basso continuo accompaniment

Lyrics are organized into lyric lines to ensure consistent horizontal alignment and to make showing verse numbers simple and accurate. There are different types of lyric lines for lyrics with different purposes, and the appearance of lyrics changes depending on their line type. For example, lyrics in chorus and translation lines are shown in an italic font by default.

In Dorico Elements, lyrics were designed so that it is simple to make changes to existing lyrics without having to re-input new lyrics each time. For example, you can change the syllable type of lyrics so that they are either followed or not followed by a hyphen.

When inputting lyrics, you can use key commands to switch between lyric lines, to change on which side of the staff lyrics are input, and to switch the lyric style between normal lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translation lyrics. You can also change the type of lyrics after they have been input.

You can input multiple lines of lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translations, both above or below staves. You can filter existing lyrics according to their type and lyric line.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392

[Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047

[Filters for lyrics](#) on page 1034

[Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045

[Lyrics paragraph styles](#) on page 1041

[Exporting lyrics](#) on page 1034

Types of lyrics

Lyrics are divided into different lyric types in Dorico Elements.

Lyric lines

Lyric lines contain normal lyrics and can be shown with verse numbers. They can be both below and above the staff.

Chorus lines

Chorus lines contain lyrics in an italic font and are placed between lyric lines. For example, if there are two lyric lines, the chorus line appears between Line 1 and Line 2. Chorus lines do not have verse numbers.

Lyric line translations

Lyric line translations show the text in lyric lines or chorus lines in different languages. They are placed directly below the lyric line or chorus line of which they are a translation. They are shown in an italic font.

Each lyric line can have its own lyric line translation, including chorus lines.

Lyric line translations do not have verse numbers, as they are part of the line of which they are a translation.

You can input all types of lyrics using the lyrics popover. The icon shown on the left-hand side of the popover indicates the type of lyric currently being input.

RELATED LINKS



[Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047

[Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392

Changing the type of individual lyrics

You can change the type of individual lyrics after they have been input. For example, you can change lyrics into chorus lyrics or translation lyrics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Lyrics** group:
 - **Chorus**
 - **Is translation**

RESULT

- Activating **Chorus** changes the selected individual lyrics to chorus lyrics.
- Activating **Is translation** changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the same lyric line number. For example, selecting lyrics in Line 2 and activating **Is translation** turns them into translation lyrics for Line 2.
- Activating both properties changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the chorus.
- Deactivating both properties changes the selected lyrics to normal lyrics. Their line number is indicated by the number in **Line number** in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

NOTE

If other chorus lines exist at the same position on the side of the staff where you want to change your current selection to chorus lines, the two lines collide. To avoid this, change the type of the whole lyric line, which automatically avoids collisions.

RELATED LINKS

[Showing lyrics in italics](#) on page 1041

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Types of syllables in lyrics

There are different types of syllables in lyrics, depending on their position in words. The key you press to advance the popover indicates the syllable type for each lyric.

Dorico Elements defines lyrics as different syllables depending on how you advance the popover when inputting lyrics.

Whole word

Lyrics are considered a whole word if the lyric comes after a gap and is followed by a gap or a period.

No hyphens are shown either side of whole word lyrics. Extender lines can be shown after lyrics.

Start

Lyrics are considered the start syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a gap, but is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after start lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

Middle

Lyrics are considered the middle syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen, and is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after middle lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

End

Lyrics are considered the end syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen but is followed by a gap or a period.

Extender lines can be shown after end lyrics.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392

[Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045

[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035

[Changing the alignment of lyrics relative to notes](#) on page 1037

Changing the syllable type of existing lyrics



You can change the syllable type of lyrics after they have been input.

For example, if you advanced the lyrics popover to the next note by pressing **Space** but you later want it to be followed by a hyphen, you can change its syllable type.

NOTE

Changing the syllable type changes whether a hyphen is shown after the selected lyrics, not before them. Therefore, if you want to show a hyphen before lyrics, you must change the syllable type of the lyrics immediately preceding them.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose syllable type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Syllable type** menu in the **Lyrics** group:
 - **Whole word**
 - **Start**
 - **Middle**
 - **End**
-

RESULT

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Whole word** or **End** are followed by a space.

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Start** or **Middle** are followed by a hyphen.

Copying and pasting lyrics

You can copy and paste lyrics from both existing lyric lines in Dorico Elements and from external text editors; for example, if you want to copy a lyric line to a player who has different rhythms to the source but uses the same lyrics.

When copying text from outside Dorico Elements, you must format the text so it is suitably separated into syllables; for example, by adding hyphens in multi-syllabic words. This ensures Dorico Elements can correctly identify the characters required for each word/syllable and therefore format the resulting lyrics appropriately. There are automatic hyphenation tools that you can use, but results from these are not always reliable. Dorico Elements checks text you have copied to your clipboard to make sure it contains only single spaces and single hyphens for correct syllable input.

NOTE



You cannot currently copy and paste lyrics containing Chinese, Japanese, or Korean characters. This is planned for future versions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics/text you want to copy. You can do this within Dorico Elements or externally.

NOTE

- If you are copying existing lyrics/text in Dorico Elements, you must be in Write mode.

- If you want to select many existing lyrics in Dorico Elements, you can use filters for lyric lines or you can select a single lyric and press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** multiple times to select the rest of the lyrics in the lyric line.
-
2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected lyrics/text.
 3. In Write mode, select the first note in the voice to which you want to copy lyrics.
 4. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-L**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Lyrics** .
 5. Optional: Change the lyric type into which you will paste lyrics in one of the following ways:
 - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
 - To change to a lyric line above the staff, press **Shift - Up Arrow**.
 - To change to a chorus line, press **Up Arrow**.
 - To change to a translation lyric line, press **Alt/Opt - Down Arrow**.
 6. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the first word/syllable of the copied lyrics/text.
The lyrics popover automatically advances to the next note in the selected voice according to the source text. For example, for syllables followed by hyphens in the source, the popover advances as if you had pressed **-** (hyphen), which automatically shows hyphens after those syllables.
 7. Optional: For words/syllables that you want to apply to two or more notes, you must advance the popover manually in one of the following ways:
 - After complete words or the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **Space**.
 - After syllables that are not the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **-** (hyphen).
 - After syllables that you do not want to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.
 8. Continue pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-V** for each word/syllable you want to paste.
-

RESULT

The selected lyrics/text is pasted into the selected lyric line belonging to the voice in which you selected a note.

NOTE

Words/syllables are removed from your clipboard as you paste them. If you want to paste the same lyrics/text into another lyric line or staff, you must copy the source again.

RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Lyrics dialog](#) on page 1043
- [Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Lyrics popover](#) on page 394
- [Copying and pasting notes/items](#) on page 457

Exporting lyrics

You can export all lyrics from all flows in the project to a plain text file; for example, if you want to create a libretto of all the text sung in a project.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File > Export > Lyrics** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Specify a name and location for the text file.
3. Click **Save**.

RESULT

All lyrics from all flows in the project are exported to a plain text file, which opens automatically in your default text editor.

Dorico Elements automatically removes hyphens between syllables, and adds contextual information for lyrics, such as their line number and the instrument to which they belong.

RELATED LINKS

- [File import and export](#) on page 78
- [Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045
- [Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029
- [Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035
- [Exporting comments](#) on page 500
- [Exporting text](#) on page 102

Filters for lyrics

In Dorico Elements, lyrics filters allow you to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

The following lyrics filters are available:

All Lyrics

Selects all types of lyrics in the current selection, with any lyric line number and placement above/below the staff.

Line 1

Selects only Line 1 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 1 in the current selection, including Line 1 below the staff and Line 1 above the staff.

Line 2

Selects only Line 2 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 2 in the current selection, including Line 2 below the staff and Line 2 above the staff.

Line 3

Selects only Line 3 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 3 in the current selection, including Line 3 below the staff and Line 3 above the staff.

Line 4

Selects only Line 4 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 4 in the current selection, including Line 4 below the staff and Line 4 above the staff.

Line 5

Selects only Line 5 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 5 in the current selection, including Line 5 below the staff and Line 5 above the staff.

Above Staff

Selects all lyrics above the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Below Staff

Selects all lyrics below the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Chorus

Selects all chorus lyrics in the current selection.

Translations

Selects all translation lyrics in the current selection.

RELATED LINKS

[Filters](#) on page 429

[Large selections](#) on page 424

Selecting lyrics using filters

You can use lyric filters to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

PREREQUISITE

You filter setting is set to **Select Only**.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, make a selection that includes all the lyrics you want to select.
For example, press **Ctrl/Cmd-A** to select the whole flow.
2. Choose **Edit > Filter > Lyrics > [Lyrics type]**.

RESULT

All lyrics of the selected type in your selection are selected. For example, if you choose **Edit > Filter > Lyrics > Chorus**, all chorus lyrics in your selection are selected.

Positions of lyrics

Dorico Elements automatically positions lyrics and makes adjustments to accommodate variations in the length of lyrics, including adjusting the horizontal alignment of lyrics in melismatic music. However, you can also move lyrics manually.

You can move lyrics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move individual lyrics graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

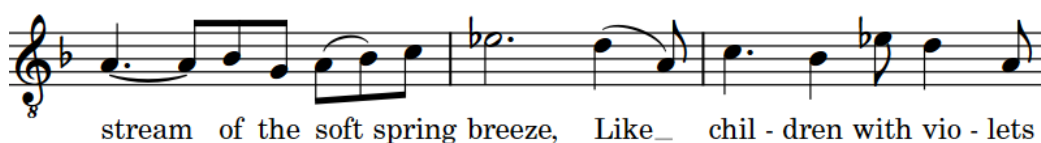
Positions of syllables

Lyrics typically coincide with notes. The number of notes sung on syllables or words determines the alignment of lyrics relative to notes:

- Single syllables, which are whole words or parts of longer words that are sung on only one note, are centered on their corresponding note, provided it is notated using a single notehead. Single syllables on tie chains are left-aligned with the left side of the first note in the tie chain.
- Melismata, which are syllables or words that are sung on more than one note, are left-aligned with the left side of the first note to which they apply.

The horizontal spacing of lyrics must be wide enough so that words or syllables do not overlap with the words or syllables on either side. For this reason, note spacing must sometimes be adjusted to accommodate lyrics.

To reduce how severely the note spacing is changed to accommodate lyrics, which can distort the appearance of rhythms, Dorico Elements allows the alignment of some lyrics to be adjusted relative to their corresponding notes. For example, if a long, single-syllable word on a long note follows another long, single-syllable word on a short note, the second word is moved a little to the right to give both words enough space.



In this musical phrase, the lyric "breeze" has been moved to the right to accommodate the lyric "spring" on the previous note.

NOTE

Moving lyrics graphically in Engrave mode overrides the automatic spacing for the selected lyrics. If you move a lyric whose position was automatically readjusted, the note spacing at that rhythmic position might change.

You can prevent Dorico Elements from considering lyrics in note spacing calculations using the **Make space for lyrics** option on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**; however, we recommend using this option with caution.

Placement of lyric lines

Lyrics are generally placed below the staff to which they apply and relative to other lyric lines according to their line number. For example, lyrics in Line 1 are placed at the top, including when there are multiple lyric lines above the staff.

If a line of lyrics is missing across the width of a whole system, no additional gap is left between the remaining lines of lyrics.

You can also move individual lyric lines vertically. In Engrave mode, when you select any lyric in a lyric line, a square handle appears on the bottom left of the first lyric in the line on that system. This allows you to adjust the vertical position of lyric lines independently of other lyric lines.



Square handle selected at the start of a lyric line in Engrave mode

EXAMPLE

You have three lines of lyrics, but one system does not have a second line of lyrics. On this system, the third line of lyrics is moved upwards, closer to the first line of lyrics.

If a subsequent system does not have a first line, but does have the second and third lines, then the second and third lines of lyrics are moved upwards. The second line of lyrics takes the place of the first line.

RELATED LINKS

[Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045

[Changing the gaps between lyrics/hyphens](#) on page 1046

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Moving lyric lines vertically](#) on page 1039

[Changing the line number and type of lyric lines](#) on page 1048

[Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines](#) on page 1038

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Per-layout note spacing options](#) on page 508

Changing the alignment of lyrics relative to notes



You can change the horizontal alignment of individual lyrics relative to notes; for example, if you want to force lyrics at the same position on multiple staves with different default alignments to have the same alignment. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

There is no default setting for the alignment of lyrics relative to notes, as Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the horizontal position of lyrics to minimize note spacing changes. By default, lyrics on single noteheads are center-aligned, and lyrics spanning multiple noteheads are left-aligned.

NOTE

Changing the alignment of lyrics manually overrides Dorico Elements's automatic spacing for the selected lyrics, meaning that note spacing at the affected rhythmic positions might change.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

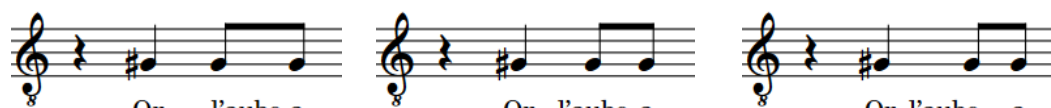
1. Select the lyrics whose alignment you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Lyric text alignment** in the **Lyrics** group.
 3. Select one of the following alignment options from the menu:
 - **Left**
 - **Center**
 - **Right**
-

RESULT

The alignment of the selected lyrics is changed. Note spacing is automatically adjusted to avoid collisions with adjacent lyrics.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Left-aligned lyric "l'aube" Center-aligned lyric "l'aube" Right-aligned lyric "l'aube"

RELATED LINKS

[Types of syllables in lyrics](#) on page 1031

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines

You can show whole lyric lines either above or below the staff after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in each line whose staff-relative placement you want to change.

TIP

You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers and staff-relative placement.

2. Choose one of the following staff-relative placements:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Placement > Above**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Placement > Below**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the whole lyric lines in which you selected lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number exist at the same position on the side of the staff to which you want to change your current selection, the two lines switch sides. For example, if there is already a Line 2 above the staff at the position where you want to change the placement of Line 2 below the staff, then the existing Line 2 above the staff is placed below the staff to accommodate your most recent preference.

RELATED LINKS



[Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047

[Filters for lyrics](#) on page 1034

Changing the staff-relative placement of individual lyrics

You can show individual lyrics either above or below the staff, independently of the staff-relative placement of their lyric line. For example, to clarify the lyrics for each part when two voices on the same staff have different rhythms.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Line placement** in the **Lyrics** group:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number already exist at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines collide. To avoid this, you can change the lyric line number of one of the lyric lines, for example.

Moving lyric lines vertically

You can move lyric lines graphically upwards/downwards on a per-system basis, independently of other layouts and your project-wide settings. For example, if the shapes of phrases on certain systems make lyric lines appear unevenly centered between staves.

NOTE

- You cannot move individual lyrics upwards/downwards; instead, you can change their lyric line number or staff-relative placement.
- We recommend that you add extra pages and finish laying out your pages before moving individual lyric lines vertically, as lyric line offsets are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes. For example, if you move lyric lines individually and then add a blank page at the start of the layout, all of the individual lyric line offsets in the layout are deleted.

PREREQUISITE

Graphic Editing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following in each system where you want to move lyric lines vertically:

- Any lyric in each lyric line you want to move vertically.
- The handles on the bottom left of the first lyric on each lyric line you want to move vertically.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you must only select handles at the start of each lyric line.

2. Move the selected lyric lines upwards/downwards in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow / Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/4 space per press.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow / Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1 space per press.
 - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow / Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow / Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag the handles upwards/downwards.
-

RESULT

The selected lyric lines are moved upwards/downwards on the selected systems. This does not affect the vertical offset of any other lyric lines on those systems or the same lyric lines in other layouts.

EXAMPLE

Because of the shape of the music in this example, the default vertical alignment of the chorus in the middle of the three lyric lines for the verses in the previous bar causes the chorus to appear much closer to notes on the top staff than the bottom staff. Moving the chorus line downwards makes it appear more evenly distributed between the staves.

The image shows two staves of musical notation. The top staff has a treble clef and contains a melody with notes and rests. The bottom staff has a bass clef and contains a bass line with notes and rests. Below the staves, the lyrics "Lau - rie I'd_ lay_ me doon" are written. The word "Lau" is on the first line, "rie" on the second, "I'd_" on the third, "lay_" on the fourth, and "me doon" on the fifth. The lyrics are aligned with the notes on the staves.

Default chorus placement

The image shows two staves of musical notation, identical to the first system. The top staff has a treble clef and contains a melody with notes and rests. The bottom staff has a bass clef and contains a bass line with notes and rests. Below the staves, the lyrics "Lau - rie I'd_ lay_ me doon" are written. The word "Lau" is on the first line, "rie" on the second, "I'd_" on the third, "lay_" on the fourth, and "me doon" on the fifth. The lyrics are aligned with the notes on the staves.

Chorus line moved downwards

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the line number of individual lyrics](#) on page 1049

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the type of individual lyrics on page 1030](#)

Lyrics paragraph styles

There are different paragraph styles for different types of lyrics. You can change different aspects of these paragraph styles in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make lyrics appear larger.

The image shows a musical staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. Below the staff, there are two lines of lyrics. The first line is: "1. Fa - ther toils, a - mid the din, Le père la - boure dans le bruit, at Ba - by sleeps at home, — Ba". The second line is: "2. Sis - ter goes to seek the cows, Mais bé - bé dort tran - quille. — Ma". There are four numbered callouts: a red circle with '1' pointing to the first line number, a blue circle with '2' pointing to the first line of French lyrics, a yellow circle with '3' pointing to the first line of English lyrics, and a green circle with '4' pointing to the second line of French lyrics.

The following paragraph styles are used for lyrics:

- 1 **Lyrics:** Used for lyric lines and verse numbers
- 2 **Lyrics (Translation):** Used for lyric line translations
- 3 **Lyrics (Chorus):** Used for chorus lines
- 4 **Lyrics (Chorus Translation):** Used for chorus line translations

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029

[Verse numbers](#) on page 1049



Showing lyrics in italics

You can show individual lyrics in an italic font without changing their paragraph style, lyric type, or staff-relative placement. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

TIP

- If you want to show lyrics in an italic font because they are intended to be either chorus lyrics or translation lyrics, you can change their lyric type instead.
- You can use the **Edit Lyric** dialog to show individual characters in lyrics in italics.
- If you want all normal lyric lines to appear in an italic font project-wide, you can change the **Lyrics** paragraph style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics you want to show in an italic font. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Italic** in the **Lyrics** group.
-

RESULT

The selected lyrics are shown in an italic font. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

- [Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029
- [Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047
- [Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines](#) on page 1045
- [Edit Lyric dialog](#) on page 1044
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics

You can change the paragraph style used for individual lyrics; for example, if you want to use narrower paragraph styles for lyrics on tightly spaced systems. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose paragraph style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Paragraph style** in the **Lyrics** group.
 3. Select a paragraph style from the menu.
-

RESULT

The paragraph style used for the selected lyrics is changed. This also affects hyphens shown after and verse numbers shown before selected lyrics.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can edit the formatting of the paragraph styles used for lyrics in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029
- [Lyric line numbers](#) on page 1047

Lyric text editing

Proofreading lyrics can be challenging, because lyrics are spaced more widely than regular text and individual words are often split up over large horizontal distances. In Dorico Elements, you can change the text and formatting of individual lyrics, including viewing entire lyric lines in a single dialog.

Changing the text of existing lyrics

You can change the text of lyrics after they have been input; for example, to correct misspellings.

NOTE

- You can only change one lyric at a time when following these steps. To edit multiple lyrics at once, you can use the **Edit Lyrics** dialog.
- If you want to edit the formatting of individual lyrics, you can use the **Edit Lyric** dialog. However, any edits you have made to the formatting of individual lyrics are removed when you change their text using the popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the lyric whose text you want to change.
2. Press **Return** or **Shift-L** to open the lyrics popover.
3. Change the existing text in the lyrics popover.
4. Optional: If you want to change other existing lyrics, advance the popover in one of the following ways:
 - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.
Existing lyrics are automatically selected in the popover when you press **Space**.
 - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word, press **-**.
 - To move the cursor one character to the right, press **Right Arrow**.
 - To move the cursor one character to the left, press **Left Arrow**.
The cursor automatically moves to the next/previous lyric/note if you keep pressing the arrow keys.
5. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover when you have finished changing lyrics.
The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.

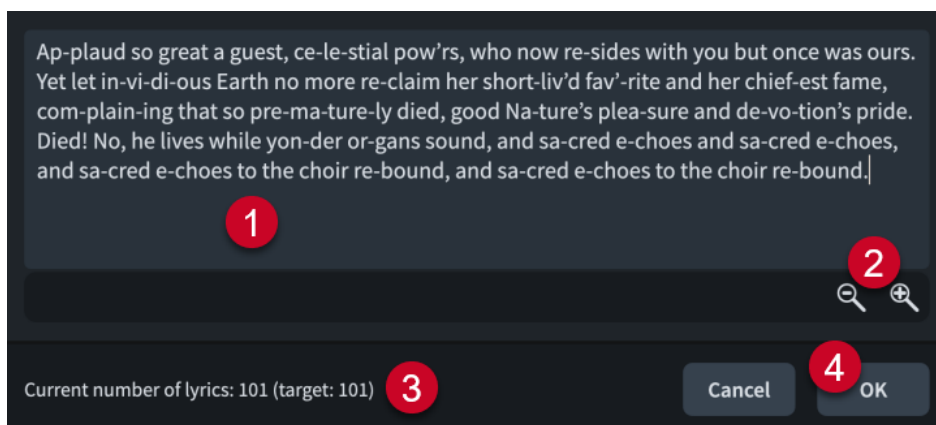
Edit Lyrics dialog

The **Edit Lyrics** dialog allows you to view and edit entire lyric lines in one place and with the text displayed with consistent spacing. This is more convenient than changing each word/syllable individually alongside the music, where lyrics can be split up over large horizontal distances.

- You can open the **Edit Lyrics** dialog by selecting at least one lyric and choosing **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Edit Line of Lyrics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

The dialog shows all lyrics in the same lyric line as the selected lyric and allows you to edit the lyrics, such as fixing misspellings, adding commas, or changing where in a word the hyphen is

placed. If you selected multiple lyrics to open the dialog, Dorico Elements populates the dialog with the lyric line of the earliest lyric on the highest staff you selected.



The **Edit Lyrics** dialog comprises the following:

1 Text editor

Allows you to edit all the lyrics in the selected lyric line in the current flow, with hyphens and spaces as appropriate. For example, you can add a comma after the final syllable in a line for a poem setting or replace a hyphen with a space.

Non-breaking spaces appear as mid-dot characters. You can enter non-breaking spaces by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-Space**.

NOTE

You cannot add, delete, or change the duration/rhythmic position of lyrics, such as the number of notes to which each lyric applies.

2 Zoom controls

Allow you to increase/decrease the size of text in the dialog.

3 Current number of lyrics

Displays the number of lyrics currently shown in the text editor and the target number of lyrics in the lyric line. The target number is the number of lyrics that already exists in the selected lyric line in the flow.

The current number of lyrics updates automatically as you work in the dialog. Dorico Elements requires the current number and target number of lyrics to match before you can confirm the dialog.

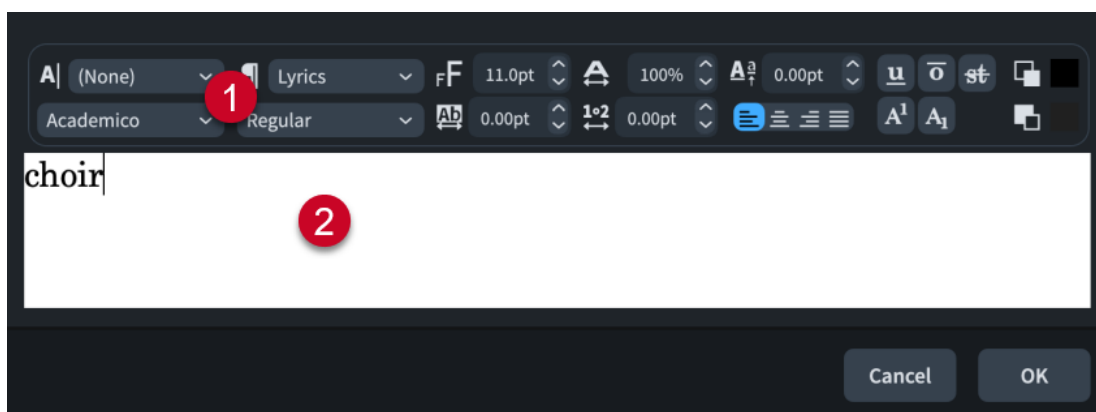
4 OK button

Allows you to confirm your changes and close the dialog. You can only confirm the dialog when the current number and target number of lyrics match.

Edit Lyric dialog

The **Edit Lyric** dialog allows you to edit the formatting of individual lyrics, such as making single characters underlined.

- You can open the **Edit Lyric** dialog by selecting a lyric and choosing **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Edit Single Lyric**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.



The **Edit Lyric** dialog comprises the following:

1 Text editor options

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the lyric.

2 Text editing area

Shows the current text for the lyric. You can select any part of the lyric and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want some characters to appear underlined.

RELATED LINKS

[Lyrics paragraph styles](#) on page 1041

[Text editor options in Write mode](#) on page 389

[Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics](#) on page 1042

[Resetting the appearance of items](#) on page 436

Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines

Lyric hyphens indicate that individual lyrics are syllables within multi-syllabic words; for example, “Hal-le-lu-jah”. Lyric extender lines indicate that individual lyrics, either whole words or the last syllables in multi-syllabic words, extend across multiple notes.



A phrase containing hyphens and an extender line

Dorico Elements automatically shows lyric hyphens when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **-** between syllables. Lyric hyphens use the paragraph style of the preceding lyric.

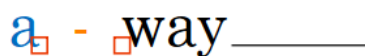
Dorico Elements automatically shows lyric extender lines when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **Space**, either once for tied notes or multiple times for multiple separate notes, provided there is sufficient horizontal space between the end of the lyric and the end position of the extender line. Lyric extender lines end at the right edge of the last notehead to which they apply.

In Engrave mode, lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines have two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move whole lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines, and you can also move their handles independently of each other. This allows you to lengthen/shorten lyric hyphens and extender lines.

For lyric hyphens, this increases/decreases the space in which lyric hyphens are shown and can result in more/fewer hyphens appearing. You can change the gaps between lyrics/hyphens to control how many hyphens appear.



Lyric extender line with handles shown



Lyric hyphen with handles shown

The start handles of lyric extender lines are attached to the lyrics from which they extend, and the start handles and end handles of lyric hyphens are attached to the lyrics on each side. If you move either of those lyrics, the corresponding lyric extender line or hyphen handles also move.

NOTE

You cannot move lyric extender lines or hyphens upwards/downwards, as their vertical position is determined by their lyric line number and the vertical position of their lyric line.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392

[Navigation during lyric input](#) on page 395

[Changing the gaps between lyrics/hyphens](#) on page 1046

[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035



[Moving lyric lines vertically](#) on page 1039

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Changing the gaps between lyrics/hyphens

You can change the gaps between hyphens, and between lyrics and hyphens, independently of each other. For example, to show more or fewer hyphens in specific bars.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lyrics whose lyric/hyphen gaps you want to change.

TIP

You only need to select one lyric before/after each hyphen, as hyphens are always centered between lyrics.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Lyrics** group:
 - **Gap between lyrics and hyphens**
 - **Gap between hyphens**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

The gaps between hyphens and/or between lyrics and hyphens for the selected lyrics are changed.

EXAMPLE



Two hyphens shown between "plan" and "tes"



Increasing both gaps results in one hyphen

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Per-layout note spacing options](#) on page 508

Lyric line numbers

Lyric line numbers are used to organize lyrics when a single musical passage can have different lyrics sung to it, such as music that contains multiple verses. In Dorico Elements, you can specify the line number of lyrics as you input them and by changing the line number of existing lyrics.

For example, if you input lyrics in Line 3 but later want to change those lyrics to Line 4 because you want to input different lyrics as Line 3, you can change your current Line 3 into Line 4, and then input a new line of lyrics as Line 3. The spacing is automatically adjusted to show lyric lines in the correct order.

Andante

S.
A.

1. Max - well - ton's braes are bon - nie,
2. Her__ brow__ is like the snow - drift,
3. Like__ dew on the gow - an ly - ing,

T.
B.

The start of a choral piece with three lyric lines for its three verses

In Dorico Elements, you can have multiple lines of lyrics both above and below the same staff. Turning lyric lines into chorus lyric lines or lyric line translations changes both their placement and appearance as chorus lyrics generally use an italic font.

RELATED LINKS

[Verse numbers](#) on page 1049

[Positions of lyrics](#) on page 1035

[Showing lyrics in italics](#) on page 1041

Changing the line number and type of lyric lines

You can change the lyric line number of whole lyric lines after they have been input. You can also change whole lyric lines to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

For example, you can change the existing Line 1 into a lyric translation of Line 4, or change Line 2 into a chorus line.

TIP

To identify which line you are working on, select a syllable in the line of lyrics and check the number in the **Line number** value field in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in the line whose lyric line type you want to change. The lyric line can be above or below the staff.

TIP

You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers.

2. Change the line number and/or type of the selected lyric line in one of the following ways:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Line > [Line number]**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Line > Chorus**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Translations > [Line number Translation]**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Lyrics > Translations > Chorus Translation**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The line number or type of the whole lyric line of the selected lyric is changed.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyric line relative to other lyric lines at the same position might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed Line 1 to Line 3, it now appears below Line 2.

If a lyric line with the same number already exists at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines switch. For example, if there is already a Line 1 at the rhythmic position where you want to change Line 2 to Line 1, then the existing Line 1 becomes Line 2 to accommodate your most recent preference. The same applies to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

RELATED LINKS



[Types of lyrics](#) on page 1029

[Filters for lyrics](#) on page 1034

Changing the line number of individual lyrics

You can change the lyric line number of individually selected lyrics after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose line number you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Lyric number** in the **Lyrics** group.

RESULT

The line number of the selected lyrics is changed to match the value in the value field.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyrics relative to other lyric lines might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed lyrics in Line 1 to Line 3, they now appear below Line 2.

Verse numbers

Verse numbers indicate the order in which lyrics are sung when multiple lines of lyrics share the same musical passage. They are commonly used in hymns and song sheets.

Depending on the type of music you are writing, verse numbers might not be appropriate. Therefore, hiding/showing verse numbers in Dorico Elements is optional. By default, verse numbers are not shown. You can hide/show verse numbers on individually selected lyrics.

Verse numbers use the same paragraph style as the following lyric.

NOTE

Lyric line translations are part of the lyric line of which they are a translation, so they do not have their own verse number.



RELATED LINKS

[Lyrics paragraph styles](#) on page 1041

Hiding/Showing verse numbers

You can hide/show verse numbers on individual lyrics; for example, if you want to show the verse number at the start of every system.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics before which you want to hide/show verse numbers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show verse number** in the **Lyrics** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

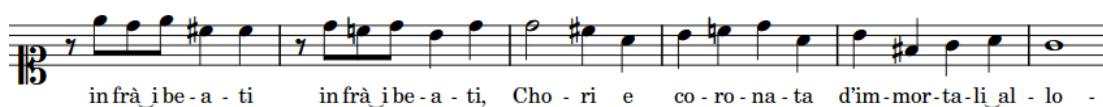
Verse numbers are shown before the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Elision slurs

Elision slurs are used to show that two or more syllables or characters are part of the same lyric. Elision slurs are also sometimes used to tell singers not to breathe between the joined lyrics.



A soprano part containing multiple elision slurs

Dorico Elements automatically shows elision slurs in lyrics that contain the underscore character.



RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392
- [Slurs](#) on page 1283

Hiding/Showing East Asian elision slurs

You can hide/show East Asian elision slurs for individual lyrics. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics on which you want to show East Asian elision slurs. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show East Asian elision slur** in the **Lyrics** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

East Asian elision slurs are shown on the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



East Asian elision slur shown



East Asian elision slur hidden

Notes

Notes are shapes that are positioned on staves to indicate musical pitches. Notes are most commonly shown with oval-shaped, round noteheads that are either filled or void depending on their duration, but there are many different designs of noteheads that you can use.

Depending on their duration, notes can have stems that help indicate their duration.

In Dorico Elements, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties is considered a single note of the total duration of the tie chain, rather than separate notes. Note grouping is automatically adjusted according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Stems](#) on page 1074

[Notehead sets](#) on page 1052

[Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads](#) on page 1058

[Note tools popover](#) on page 487

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

[Ties](#) on page 1364

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

Notehead sets

A notehead set is a collection of related noteheads that together allow you to represent all the different noteheads required for the different durations used in music notation.

A typical notehead set contains at least four noteheads:

- A black notehead for quarter notes (crotchets) and shorter
- A white notehead for half notes (minims)
- A wider white notehead for whole notes (semibreves)
- A wider white notehead with one or two vertical strokes on either side, or a square white notehead, for double whole notes (breves)

Pitch-dependent notehead sets contain noteheads that vary according to the pitch of notes rather than their duration.

- In *pitched* notehead sets, there are different noteheads for different pitches.
For example, the Pitch Names notehead set shows the letter name and any applicable accidental of each note within its notehead.
- In *scale degree* notehead sets, there is a different notehead for each scale degree, relative to the current key signature.
For example, the Aikin 7-shape notehead set uses a different notehead shape for each pitch.

NOTE

- A single notehead can appear in multiple notehead sets. If you edit a notehead within one notehead set, your changes affect the appearance of that notehead in all notehead sets that contain it.
 - Notehead sets can only contain noteheads of the same type. For example, you cannot use a normal notehead in a pitched notehead set.
 - You cannot change the type of an existing notehead set or an existing notehead.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Pitch-dependent notehead set designs](#) on page 1057

Notehead set designs

There are a number of different notehead set designs that you can use for individual noteheads in Dorico Elements.

- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note and choosing **Edit > Notations > Notehead > [Notehead type or design] > [Notehead design]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

NOTE

Dorico Elements does not offer stemless noteheads. Instead, you can hide the stems of notes with any notehead design.

General noteheads

Notehead set design

Notehead set name



Larger Noteheads



Default Noteheads



Large Circled Noteheads



Circled Noteheads



Slashed Noteheads (Bottom Left to Top Right)

Notehead set design



Notehead set name

Slashed Noteheads (Top Left to Bottom Right)

Cross noteheads

Notehead set design



Notehead set name

Circle X Noteheads



Large X and Diamond Noteheads



Ornate X Noteheads



Plus Noteheads



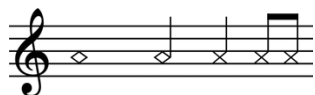
With X Noteheads



X Noteheads



X and Circle X Noteheads



X and Diamond Noteheads

Triangular noteheads

Notehead set design



Notehead set name

Large Arrow Down Noteheads



Large Arrow Up Noteheads



Triangle Down Noteheads



Triangle Left Noteheads



Triangle Right Noteheads



Triangle Up Noteheads

Diamond noteheads

Notehead set design



Notehead set name

Diamond Noteheads



Old-Style Diamond Noteheads



White Diamond Noteheads



Wide Diamond Noteheads

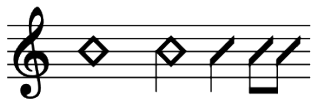
Slash noteheads

Notehead set design



Notehead set name

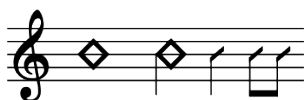
Muted Slash Noteheads



Oversized Slash Noteheads



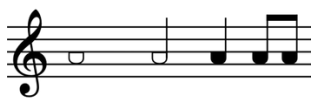
Slash Noteheads



Small Slash Noteheads

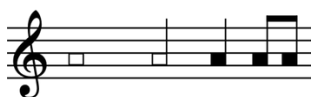
Round and square noteheads

Notehead set design

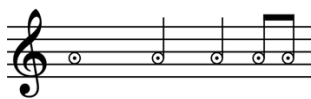


Notehead set name

Moon Noteheads



Rectangular Noteheads



Round White with Dot Noteheads

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads](#) on page 1058

[Resetting notehead designs](#) on page 1059

[Hiding/Showing stems](#) on page 1079

[Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060

Pitch-dependent notehead set designs

Pitch-dependent notehead sets use different notehead designs or different notehead colors depending on the pitch of notes. There are a number of different pitch-dependent notehead sets available in Dorico Elements.

- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note and choosing **Edit > Notations > Notehead > [Notehead type or design] > [Notehead design]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Scale degree noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
---------------------	-------------------



Aikin 7-shape Noteheads



Funk 7-shape Noteheads



Walker 4-shape Noteheads



Walker 7-shape Noteheads

Pitched noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
---------------------	-------------------



Figurenotes© Noteheads



Pitch Name Noteheads

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing stems](#) on page 1079

[Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060

Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads

You can change the notehead design of individual noteheads, including trill auxiliary notes. For example, cross noteheads might be used to indicate where players should produce pitchless sounds, such as air sounds on wind instruments.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to notes in slash voices.
- To represent different playing techniques for notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments, you can instead change their playing technique.
- To represent harmonics or rhythm slashes, you can instead turn notes into harmonics or change them to a slash voice. You can also input slash regions.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads whose design you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Notehead > [Notehead type] > [Notehead design]**.
For example, to change the notehead design of the selected notes to X noteheads, choose **Edit > Notations > Notehead > Crosses > X Noteheads**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The notehead design of the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for each factory default notehead design on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421
- [Rhythm slashes](#) on page 1258
- [Slash voices](#) on page 1258
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466
- [Harmonics](#) on page 1081
- [Turning notes into harmonics](#) on page 1082
- [Playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1421
- [Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424
- [Hiding/Showing stems](#) on page 1079
- [Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Changing the size of accidentals](#) on page 794

Resetting notehead designs

You can reset the notehead design of individual notes and return them to using the default notehead design.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads whose design you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Notehead > Reset to Default Notehead**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Selecting notes/items](#) on page 421

Assigning notes to strings



You can change the string on which individual notes belonging to string instruments are played; for example, to allow you to specify the correct harmonic. Many notes can be played on multiple strings, depending on where along its length the string is stopped.

Assigning notes to strings can be useful for glissando lines or fingering shifts, as the string and finger position required to play the note affects the direction of these changes. However, the string number is not shown in the music. You can instead input string indicators and/or fingerings, which can help string players understand the string on which they should play.

NOTE

You can only change the assigned string of notes belonging to string instruments, such as violin, cello, or guitar.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose assigned string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

If selecting multiple notes at once, select notes only in staves of the same instrument type. For example, select multiple Cs in Violin 1 and Violin 2 staves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **String** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select the string you want from the menu.

The string number for the instrument is shown, followed by the fundamental pitch and the octave number of that string in parentheses. For example, the lowest cello string is expressed as **4 (C2)**.

NOTE

The options available in the menu depend on the selected pitches and the instrument type.

RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are assigned is changed.

NOTE

If you subsequently change the pitches of notes, **String** is automatically deactivated for all notes that can no longer be played on their assigned string.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

[Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators](#) on page 991

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Inputting string indicators inside the staff](#) on page 383

[Turning notes into harmonics](#) on page 1082



[Changing the harmonic partial](#) on page 1083

[Changing the middle C numbering convention](#) on page 51

Hiding/Showing noteheads

You can hide/show the noteheads of individual notes with any notehead design; for example, if you want to indicate the exact durations of glissando lines using stems without noteheads.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose noteheads you want to hide.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide notehead** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
-

RESULT

The selected noteheads are hidden when **Hide notehead** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

This also hides rhythm dots, provided all noteheads represented by consolidated rhythm dots are hidden, but does not affect the visibility of accidentals or ledger lines.

Hidden noteheads are included in note spacing calculations as if they were shown.

EXAMPLE



Noteheads shown



Middle noteheads hidden



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Hiding/Showing hidden noteheads](#) on page 1065
- [Hiding/Showing ledger lines](#) on page 1062
- [Hiding/Showing stems](#) on page 1079
- [Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals](#) on page 793
- [Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots](#) on page 1062
- [Note spacing](#) on page 507
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574

Changing the width of ledger lines

You can change the width of ledger lines on individual notes; for example, to allow notes with short durations to be spaced more tightly and still be legible. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger line width you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Ledger line** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the values for **L** and **R**.

RESULT

Increasing **Ledger line L** makes the left side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the left side of ledger lines shorter.

Increasing **Ledger line R** makes the right side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the right side of ledger lines shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS



- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Hiding/Showing ledger lines

You can hide/show ledger lines on individual notes; for example, if you want to indicate approximate pitches using the relative vertical positions of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger lines you want to hide/show.

NOTE

If you want to hide ledger lines, you must also select all other noteheads in the same voice and voice column index.

2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide ledger lines** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Ledger lines are hidden/shown for the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you deactivated **Hide ledger lines** for only some notes in a chord, ledger lines are also shown on all notes between the selected notes and the staff in the same voice and voice column index.



RELATED LINKS

[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots

You can change how rhythm dots in multiple voices are consolidated at individual rhythmic positions. For example, if you want to show fewer rhythm dots for a very dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose rhythm dot consolidation you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot consolidation** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Rhythm dots for notes of any duration are consolidated when the checkbox is activated, and no rhythm dots are consolidated when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Notes of any duration have rhythm dots consolidated



No rhythm dot consolidation

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Note positions in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1440



[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

[Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap](#) on page 1440

Moving rhythm dots

You can move rhythm dots horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot move an individual rhythm dot independently of other rhythm dots at the same rhythmic position.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a notehead at each rhythmic position where you want to move rhythm dots.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot X** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

Increasing the **Rhythm dot X** value moves all rhythm dots at the selected rhythmic positions to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

View options for notes and rests

You can show notes and rests in different colors in various contexts, which can help you identify them more easily as you are working. For example, showing voice colors makes notes and rests appear in different colors according to their voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Color setup](#) on page 52

[Hiding/Showing rest colors](#) on page 1275

[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

[Hiding/Showing colors for muted notes/items](#) on page 549

Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range

You can show colors for notes that are considered out of range, such as notes too high/low for the instrument to play or the voice type to sing, or pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedal settings. When colors for notes out of range are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Colors for notes out of range are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

NOTE

You cannot show colors for voices and notes out of range simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
 - To show colors for notes out of range, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Notes Out Of Range**.
 - To hide colors for notes out of range, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > None**.
-

RESULT

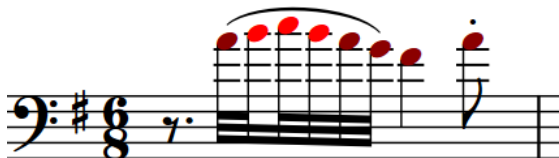
Colors for notes out of range are hidden/shown.

Notes that are considered challenging are shown in a darker red, while notes that are impossible or virtually impossible are shown in a bright red.

NOTE

Notes out of the fret range of the corresponding string on tablature are always shown as question marks, even if you do not show colors for notes out of range.

EXAMPLE



Colors for notes out of range shown. Three notes in the middle of the phrase are bright red, while the rest are the darker red.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing colors for notes out of range reveals some notes do not fit with the current harp pedal settings, you can input a new pedal diagram for that passage or calculate a suitable harp pedal diagram.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the panel](#) on page 380

[Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music](#) on page 381

[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Hiding/Showing hidden noteheads

You can show hidden noteheads in translucent gray, so you can identify and select them more easily.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Hidden Noteheads**.

RESULT

Hidden noteheads are hidden/shown.

EXAMPLE



Hidden noteheads shown



Hidden noteheads hidden

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060

Bracketed noteheads

Bracketed noteheads are often used to indicate that notes are optional, editorial, not played in all playthroughs in music with repeats, or pressed down but not fully struck on the piano. In Dorico Elements, you can show brackets on any notehead.

Notehead brackets extend slightly above and below noteheads so it is clear which notes are included in each bracket.



A phrase containing round and square notehead brackets

You can also show brackets on noteheads on notation staves and tablature independently of each other.

By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

The following types of notehead brackets are available in Dorico Elements:

Round notehead brackets

Round notehead brackets have a similar appearance to slurs, but vertical.

By default, round brackets on single noteheads use the font glyph on notation staves and the drawn curve on tablature. In Engrave mode, round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have handles that allow you to change their shape. Round notehead brackets that use the font glyph do not have handles in Engrave mode.

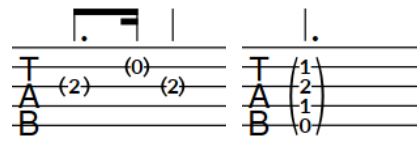
NOTE

On tablature, round brackets are automatically shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains. If you show brackets around all noteheads in tie chains on tablature, these automatic notehead brackets are included.



Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff

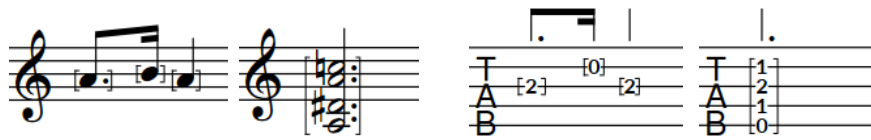


Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature

Round bracket on a chord on tablature

Square notehead brackets

Square notehead brackets comprise a straight vertical line with horizontal hooks at the top and bottom. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of square brackets to ensure they do not end on staff lines and their hooks remain visible.



Square brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

Square brackets on a chord on a notation staff

Square brackets on single noteheads on tablature

Square brackets on a chord on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains](#) on page 1069

[Notehead brackets in Engrave mode](#) on page 1072

[Showing notes as dead notes](#) on page 1141

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Ties](#) on page 1364

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives](#) on page 1124

[Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127

[Parenthesized chord symbols](#) on page 889



Showing brackets on noteheads

You can show round or square brackets on individual noteheads, on single notes within chords, and on whole chords. For example, if you want to indicate that specific notes are optional or an editorial change, or to show notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments as ghost notes.

NOTE

If you want to show brackets on noteheads to represent dead notes, you can instead show notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads on which you want to show brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

- If you want to show brackets on individual noteheads in tie chains that are not the first notehead, you must select them in Engrave mode.
- If you want to show brackets on whole chords, you must select all notes in those chords.

- If you want to show brackets on both notation staves and tablature, you must select notes on both.
-
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket style** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Round**
 - **Square**
-

RESULT

The corresponding type of notehead brackets is shown on the selected notes. If you only selected notes on tablature, brackets are not shown on the corresponding notes on the notation staff, and vice versa.

In Write mode, only the first noteheads in tie chains are bracketed. In Engrave mode, only the selected noteheads are bracketed, including in tie chains.

If you selected all notes in chords, Dorico Elements shows a single bracket for each chord unless they contain very large gaps, in which case Dorico Elements automatically splits brackets. If you selected individual notes within chords, they are each shown with separate brackets.

By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

TIP

- Deactivating **Bracket style** hides brackets on the selected notes.
- You can also hide/show brackets on noteheads by choosing **Edit > Notations > Notehead > Toggle Round Brackets** or **Edit > Notations > Notehead > Toggle Square Brackets**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

- You can change the volume reduction of bracketed unpitched percussion notes in playback in **Playback Options > Dynamics > Note Dynamics**.
-

EXAMPLE



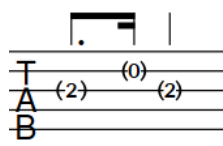
Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff



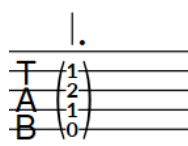
Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



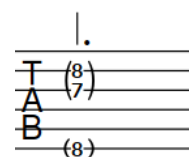
Split round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature



Round bracket on a chord on tablature



Split round bracket on a chord on tablature



RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Showing notes as dead notes](#) on page 1141
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Velocity editor](#) on page 691
- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains

You can change whether brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains or span the entire duration of the tie chain; that is, with the left bracket on the first notehead and the right bracket on the last notehead in the tie chain. By default, brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have shown brackets on the required notes.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose notehead bracket positions relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Bracket until end of tie chain** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

RESULT

Brackets appear at the start and end of the selected tie chains when **Bracket until end of tie chain** is activated, and only around the first note/chord when it is deactivated.

If you activated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord, the bracket on the first chord is not split but an additional bracket appears at the end of the tie chain for the selected note only. If you deactivated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord whose other notes are bracketed to the end of the tie chain, the bracket at the end of the tie chain is split.

If you selected notes on tablature, the automatic brackets shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains are updated to follow your property setting.

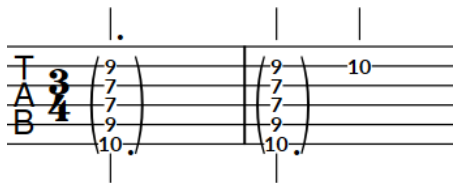
EXAMPLE



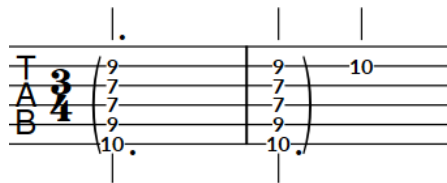
Brackets around only the first chords in tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets at the start and end of whole tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets around only the first chord in a tie chain, with automatic brackets shown on the second chord on tablature



Brackets around the start and end of the whole tie chain on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Ties](#) on page 1364



[Showing single brackets on figured bass](#) on page 960

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Splitting brackets on chords

You can split brackets on any notehead within a chord. By default, Dorico Elements automatically shows a single bracket for all notes in a chord unless it contains very large gaps, in which case Dorico Elements automatically splits brackets.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual notes in chords immediately above where you want to split brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Break bracket** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

RESULT

Brackets are split immediately below the selected notes.

EXAMPLE



Chord with single round bracket



Chord with split round bracket

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting chords](#) on page 251

[Parenthesized chord symbols](#) on page 889


Changing the shape of round notehead brackets

You can change the shape of individual round notehead brackets; for example, if you want some notehead brackets to appear wider or to change their curvature, so that their endpoints approach noteheads at a sharper angle. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the shape of round notehead brackets on single noteheads if they use the drawn curve, rather than the font glyph.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the middle handles of each round notehead bracket whose shape you want to change.
2. Change the shape of the selected round notehead brackets in any of the following ways:
 - To widen right notehead brackets or narrow left notehead brackets, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To narrow right notehead brackets or widen left notehead brackets, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To increase the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To decrease the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

TIP

- To move handles by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by moderate increments, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move handles by small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - You can also click and drag middle handles in the corresponding directions.
-

RESULT

The shape of the selected notehead brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

TIP

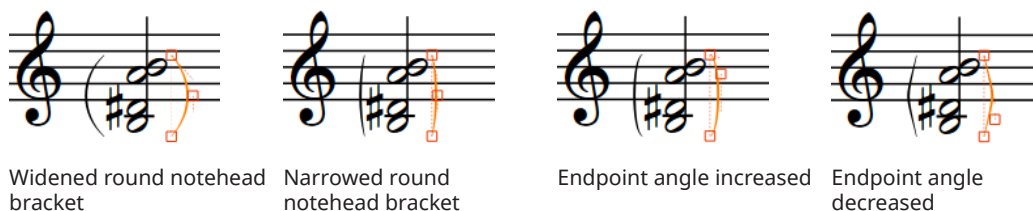
The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the middle handle of notehead brackets.

- **L round br. middle** moves left notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.
- **R round br. middle** moves right notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.

You can also use these properties to change the width and shape of round notehead brackets by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected notehead brackets to their default shape.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS

- [Showing brackets on noteheads](#) on page 1067
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Slur shoulder offset](#) on page 1306

Notehead brackets in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each round notehead bracket has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position, length, and shape.

Round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the top/bottom handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

NOTE

Round brackets on single noteheads that use the font glyph do not show handles in Engrave mode, meaning you cannot lengthen/shorten them or change their shape/width.

Square notehead brackets have two handles, one at the top and one at the bottom.



Round notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode



Square notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode

- Top and bottom handles move the corresponding end of the notehead bracket, controlling its graphical length.
- Middle handles control the shape of round notehead brackets. Moving them vertically adjusts their curve by changing the angle at which notehead bracket endpoints approach noteheads, while moving them horizontally changes the width of round notehead brackets.

You can move these handles to change the graphical length of notehead brackets and the shape of round notehead brackets. If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions.

TIP

The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding notehead bracket or handle:

- **L bracket body** moves left notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **R bracket body** moves right notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **L bracket extents** controls the height of left notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.
 - **R bracket extents** controls the height of right notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.
-

Stems

Stems are vertical lines that extend from noteheads that are a half note or shorter in duration. In combination with notehead design, they allow the duration of each note to be clearly identified.

For example, quarter notes (crotchets) and eighth notes (quavers) both have solid black noteheads and stems, but eighth notes also have flags on their stems. 16th notes have two flags, 32nd notes have three flags, and so on. The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico Elements, so stems automatically adjust their length to accommodate more/fewer flags.



The stems of notes and chords can point upwards/downwards, depending on the conventions of music engraving and the context of the music. For example, in choral music on two staves, stems in the soprano and tenor lines point up, and stems in the alto and bass lines point down.

RELATED LINKS

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Altered unisons](#) on page 798

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Resetting beam grouping](#) on page 844

Stem direction

In Dorico Elements, the stem direction of notes and chords follows rules that are based on the conventions of music engraving.

Stem direction is determined automatically, but you can manually change the stem direction of individual notes, chords, or of an entire voice. The rules that are applied depend on the following:

- How many voices are active on the staff.
- Whether notes, chords, or beamed groups of notes are affected.
- Whether notes in the same chord or notes in the same beamed group are split between staves.

Single notes in single voices

On a five-line staff with only a single voice active, the default stem direction of a single note is determined by its staff position.

- If the note is above the middle line, its stem points downwards.
- If the note is below the middle line, its stem points upwards.
- If the note is on the middle line of the staff, its stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the note matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have

different stem directions, or if there are no adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords, the note follows the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.



Notes on the middle line are stem up because the fourth note is stem up



Notes on the middle line are stem down because the fourth note is stem down

By default, notes are first input into an up-stem voice, and Dorico Elements treats notes as the only voice on the staff until you input more voices.

Single notes in multiple voices

When there are multiple voices on a staff and all voices contain notes, the stem direction of notes is determined by the stem direction of their voice. Notes in up-stem voices have up stems, and notes in down-stem voices have down stems. This applies even when the stems of notes would normally point in the other direction, based on their position on the staff.

NOTE

The order in which notes appear between different up-stem voices and different down-stem voices depends on their pitch and your settings on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**. You can also change the voice column index of notes individually.

When there are only notes in one voice for at least a whole bar, Dorico Elements automatically changes the directions of stems so they point in the default direction for their pitch. For example, if a staff contains a single up-stem voice and a single down-stem voice but only the down-stem voice contains notes or rests, then the stems of notes in the down-stem voice may point upwards, depending on the position of the notes on the staff. However, showing rests or implicit rests in empty voices forces the stem direction of notes to follow the stem direction of their voice.



Notes in an up-stem voice shown in blue.



Notes in a down-stem voice shown in orange.



When notes in up-stem and down-stem voices are in the same bar, the stem direction is automatically changed.

Chords in single voices

The stem direction for a chord in a single voice is determined by the balance of notes above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the note furthest from the middle line is above the middle line, the stem of the chord points downwards.
- If the note furthest from the middle line is below the middle line, the stem of the chord points upwards.

- If the chord is equally balanced on either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the chord matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced chords follow the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

Beam groups in single voices

The stem direction within beam groups is determined by the balance of notes within the beam group that are above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the majority of notes in the beam group are above the middle line, stems in the beam group point downwards.
- If the majority of notes in the beam group are below the middle line, stems in the beam group point upwards.
- If the beam group contains an equal number of notes either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the beam group matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced beam groups follow the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

RELATED LINKS

[Per-flow notation options for voices](#) on page 1439

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273


[Hiding/Showing voice colors](#) on page 1439

[Altered unisons](#) on page 798

Changing the stem direction of notes

You can manually change the stem direction of any note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes within tie chains.

2. Change the stem direction in one of the following ways:

- Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Force Stem Up**.
- Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Force Stem Down**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The stem direction of the selected notes is changed. The selected notes follow this stem direction, even if you later change their pitch to one that usually requires a different stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- This does not change the voice to which notes belong.
 - You can also change the stem direction of notes by selecting them and pressing **F**.
-

EXAMPLE



Stems pointing in the same direction but in different voices



Stems in the same direction and in the same voice

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the default stem direction of voices

You can change the default stem direction of voices after they have been input, including slash voices.

NOTE

This changes the implicit stem direction of the voice, but may not change the stem direction of all notes in single-voice contexts. Stem directions are automatically changed in Dorico Elements when only one voice contains notes.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or chord in the voice whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Change the default stem direction of the selected voice in one of the following ways:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Default Stems Up**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Default Stems Down**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Resetting stem directions

You can remove changes to the directions of stems and revert stems to their default directions.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction changes you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Stem > Remove Forced Stem**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

All stem direction changes are removed from the selected notes. The stems of the selected notes revert to their default directions.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can change the stem direction to the opposite direction. However, notes with forced stems do not change automatically if, for example, you later change their pitch.

RELATED LINKS

[Resetting beam grouping](#) on page 844

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

[Importing MusicXML files](#) on page 82

Stem length


The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico Elements, according to accepted standards for the appearance of stems of notes at different positions on staves.

You can lengthen/shorten individual stems in Engrave mode.

Lengthening/Shortening stems

You can lengthen/shorten the stems of individual notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the stems you want to lengthen/shorten.
2. Lengthen/Shorten the stems by moving the selected stem handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected stems are lengthened/shortened. For example, moving the end of downwards-pointing stem upwards shortens the stem. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

Stem adj. in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated when you lengthen/shorten stems.

You can also use this property to lengthen/shorten stems by changing the value in the value field. However, the **Notes and Rests** group is only available when the notehead is selected rather than the stem.

Deactivating the property resets the selected stems to their default length.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665



[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Hiding/Showing stems

You can hide/show the stems on notes with any notehead design. For example, you might hide stems if you do not want to show exact rhythms in an unmeasured passage.

Dorico Elements allows you to hide stems rather than using a stemless notehead design as this allows you to hide the stem of any notehead design.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose stems you want to hide.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

The stems and any applicable flags of the selected notes are hidden when **Hide stem** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

NOTE

- Beams are only hidden when you hide the stems of all notes in beamed groups.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Hide Stem** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Stems shown



Stems hidden

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Notehead set designs](#) on page 1053
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

Harmonics

Harmonics are pitches produced by touching resonating strings at specific positions along their length, allowing the corresponding harmonic partial to sound. Harmonics often have a high pitch with a glassy, purer sound than stopped pitches. There are two different types of harmonics: natural and artificial.

Harmonic partials are numbered according to their order in the harmonic series, which also correlates to the node on the string which produces them. For example, the second partial in the harmonic series is produced by the node halfway along a string; that is, the node that divides the string into two equal parts. The third partial is produced by the node that divides the string into thirds, and so on.

Natural harmonics

Natural harmonics are produced by touching an open string at one of its nodes and then bowing or plucking the string. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node halfway along a string produces the second partial, which sounds an octave above the open string pitch.

Artificial harmonics

Artificial harmonics are produced by stopping a string fully (as if playing a normal note) and then touching the string at one of the nodes of its stopped length. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node that is the equivalent of a fourth higher than the stopped pitch produces the fourth partial, which sounds two octaves above the stopped pitch.

To produce artificial harmonics, players must both fully stop the string and touch the string at the correct node. This can be more difficult to produce than natural harmonics.

The image contains two musical staves. The left staff is in treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). It shows a sequence of notes on the A string, alternating between natural harmonics (represented by diamond-shaped noteheads) and artificial harmonics (represented by normal noteheads). The right staff is also in treble clef with a key signature of one sharp. It shows the sounding pitches of the same passage. A dashed line above the staff indicates an octave (8va) above the natural harmonics.

A passage for violin alternating between artificial and natural harmonics on the A string



The sounding pitches of the same passage

Dorico Elements supports multiple conventions for the notation of harmonics on stringed and fretted instruments, including for both natural and artificial harmonics. For artificial harmonics shown using two noteheads, one normal and one diamond, Dorico Elements automatically calculates the correct pitch for the touched pitch diamond notehead for the second to sixth harmonic partials. These pitches are reflected in playback, using dedicated sounds for harmonics if the corresponding playback device includes them.

Turning notes into harmonics

You can turn existing notes into artificial and natural harmonics. Harmonics can represent the sounding, touched, or stopped pitch.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the notes you want to turn into harmonics. However, the pitch you should input depends on the harmonic type you want to use.
 - For natural harmonics, we recommend that you input the desired sounding pitch.
 - For artificial harmonics, we recommend that you input the stopped pitch.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to turn into harmonics. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Artificial**
 - **Natural**

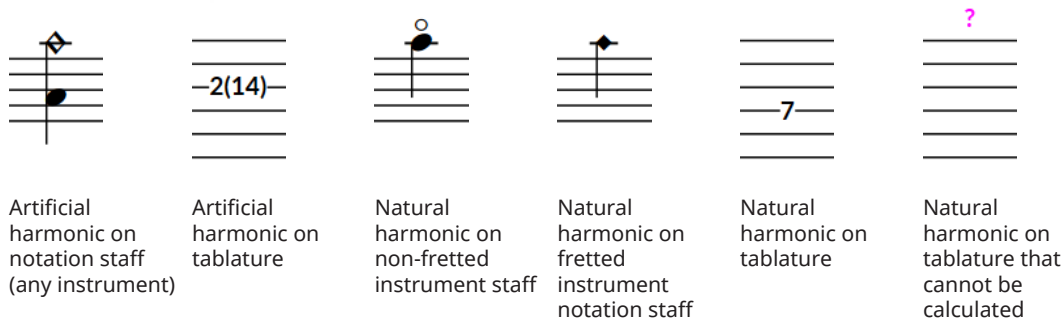
RESULT

The selected notes are turned into harmonics of the corresponding type. If the corresponding playback device has dedicated sounds for harmonics, the selected notes automatically use those sounds. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

- Artificial harmonics represent the second partial by default. They are shown with a diamond notehead indicating the touched pitch an octave above the selected notes. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.
- Natural harmonics represent the sounding pitch by default. They are shown with a circle symbol above the selected notes. On fretted instrument notation staves, natural harmonics appear as black diamond noteheads. On tablature, the fret of the touched pitch is shown, if it can be calculated; if it cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown.

EXAMPLE

The following examples show the default appearances of natural and artificial harmonics on different staves.



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the partial for harmonics. You can also change the appearance of natural harmonics and the style of artificial harmonics.

If you want to turn harmonics back into normal notes, deactivate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Appearances/Styles of harmonics](#) on page 1085

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

[Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059

[Tablature](#) on page 1330



Changing the harmonic partial

By default, harmonics indicate the second partial in the harmonic series, which is an octave above the fundamental. You can change the partial for individual harmonics; for example, if you want a higher partial instead.

NOTE

Dorico Elements can only correctly calculate artificial harmonic partials for nodes two to six.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

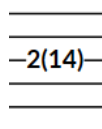
1. Select the harmonics whose partial you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial** in the **Harmonics** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field to the node at which the string should be touched to produce the partial you want.
-

RESULT

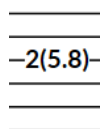
The partial of the selected harmonics is changed. For artificial harmonics using the **Normal** type, the pitch of the white diamond notehead/parenthesized fret number is updated automatically. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

EXAMPLE

**Artificial harmonic with default partial
(notation and tablature)**





**Partial changed to the fifth
(notation and tablature)**



Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals

You can hide/show individual harmonic accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, independently of hiding/showing or parenthesizing accidentals of stopped pitch notes. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harmonics whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Hide**
 - **Show**
 - **Round brackets**

- **Square brackets**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected harmonics are hidden, shown, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
 - If you are hiding/showing many accidentals, we recommend that you consider changing the accidental duration rule.
 - You can assign key commands for **Hide Accidental**, **Show Accidental**, **Show Accidental in Round Brackets**, and **Show Accidental in Square Brackets** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch for artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals](#) on page 793

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Accidental duration rules](#) on page 800

[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals](#) on page 801

Appearances/Styles of harmonics

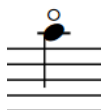
Both artificial and natural harmonics can be notated in different ways. In Dorico Elements, it is possible to indicate the desired sounding pitch, either the stopped or touched pitch, or both stopped and touched pitches for individual harmonics.

In this documentation we refer to “styles” of artificial harmonics, because one artificial harmonic style indicates the use of a different performance technique, and “appearances” of natural harmonics, as their different appearances do not indicate different performance techniques.

Natural harmonics

Circle above

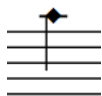
Shows a harmonic circle symbol on the notehead side of notes. Usually indicates the desired sounding pitch of the harmonic. Used for natural harmonics on staves that do not belong to fretted instruments by default, such as violin.



Diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead. The diamond notehead appears black/filled when the note is a quarter note or shorter, and white/unfilled

when the note is a half note or longer. Usually indicates the touched pitch required. Used for natural harmonics on fretted instrument notation staves by default.

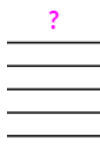


White diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead that is always unfilled, regardless of the duration of notes. Usually indicates the touched pitch required.



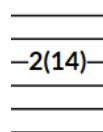
On tablature, the touched fret is always shown for natural harmonics, regardless of the selected appearance. If the touched fret cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown.



Artificial harmonics

Normal

Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the touched pitch. The touched pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses. This is the default appearance of artificial harmonics on all staves.



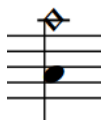
Normal artificial harmonic on notation staff **Normal** artificial harmonic on tablature

Pinch

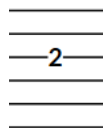
Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the sounding pitch. The sounding pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, only the stopped fret is shown.

NOTE

Intended for fretted instruments only. A pinch is produced by the performer catching a resonating string at a node near the pick-ups, producing a high-pitched squeal. Also known as a "false harmonic" or "squeal".



Pinch harmonic on notation staff



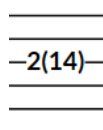
Pinch harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (sounding)

Shows a single notehead indicating the sounding pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the sounding pitch is shown on the right in parentheses.



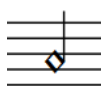
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on notation staff



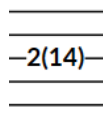
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (stopped)

Shows a single notehead indicating the stopped pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on notation staff



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

Changing the appearance of natural harmonics



By default, natural harmonics appear as normal noteheads with a circle shown above, which indicates the desired sounding pitch. You can change the appearance of natural harmonics

individually; for example, to show them as a white diamond notehead to indicate the touched pitch.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Natural** type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the natural harmonics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Circle above**
 - **Diamond notehead**
 - **White diamond notehead**
-

RESULT

The appearance of the selected natural harmonics is changed, including on fretted instrument notation staves. The touched pitch shown on tablature is not changed automatically.

NOTE

- Changing the appearance of natural harmonics does not automatically change their notated pitch. For example, if you want to change a sounding pitch **Circle above** harmonic to a touched pitch **White diamond notehead** harmonic, you must also change the pitch of the note.
 - Dorico Elements automatically assigns natural harmonics with the **White diamond notehead** style to the lowest possible string for that harmonic. You can specify different strings if necessary.
 - You can change the staff-relative placement of harmonic circle symbols by activating **Placement** in the **Harmonics** group of the Properties panel and choosing the option you want.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Turning notes into harmonics](#) on page 1082
- [Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468
- [Assigning notes to strings](#) on page 1059
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Tablature](#) on page 1330



Changing the style of artificial harmonics

By default, artificial harmonics appear as two noteheads: one normal, which indicates the stopped pitch, and one diamond, which indicates the touched pitch. You can change the style of artificial harmonics individually; for example, to indicate pinch harmonics.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Artificial** type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the artificial harmonics whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Normal**
 - **Pinch**
 - **Single notehead (sounding)**
 - **Single notehead (stopped)**
-

RESULT

The style of the selected artificial harmonics is changed.

NOTE

Pinch indicates the use of a different technique to produce the harmonic.

Ornaments

Ornaments are markings that indicate multiple notes are played in addition to the notated pitch. They are used to decorate music, such as in Baroque music, which is highly decorated with trills and other ornaments.

Over time, specific ways of notating how performers should play notes have developed and different ornament symbols indicate different patterns of decorative notes. Nonetheless, ornaments give some freedom to performers to embellish music in their own way.

In Dorico Elements, the term “ornaments” refers to ornament symbols, including mordents and turns, and trill marks.



A phrase containing a turn, short trills, and a trill with extension line

NOTE

Only trills are currently reflected in playback. Playback of other ornaments is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Grace notes](#) on page 1002

[Positions of ornaments](#) on page 1091

[Trills](#) on page 1094

[Trills in playback](#) on page 1104

Changing ornament intervals



You can change the intervals of ornaments, both above and below the notated pitch, to indicate which pitches are played in the ornament. The intervals of ornaments are indicated by accidentals.

For some ornaments, you can only change the interval in one direction. For example, you can only change the interval above short trills and below mordents.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to trills.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ornaments whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Ornaments** group, as appropriate for the selected ornaments:
 - **Interval above**
 - **Interval below**
3. Change the values in the value fields to the intervals you want.
 - **0** or **4** and above shows no accidental.
 - **1** shows a flat.
 - **2** shows a natural.
 - **3** shows a sharp.

RESULT

The intervals of the selected ornaments are changed.

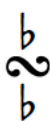
NOTE

Some ornaments do not show accidentals either above or below, depending on their type.

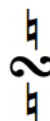
EXAMPLE



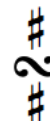
No accidentals



Flats above and below



Naturals above and below



Sharps above and below

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Trill intervals](#) on page 1097

[Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142

Positions of ornaments

Ornaments, including trills, are placed above the notes to which they apply. They are only placed below the staff for down-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.

Ornaments and trills are positioned outside of slurs by default. Similarly, they are positioned further from noteheads than articulations.

The center of ornaments aligns with the center of the notehead to which they apply. Trills are aligned differently, as the left side of trill marks aligns with the left edge of the notehead to which the trill applies.

Dorico Elements automatically positions ornaments correctly according to their type, and attaches them to their notehead.

You can move ornaments to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move ornaments graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS

[Trills](#) on page 1094

[Hiding/Showing trill marks](#) on page 1094



[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Changing the position of ornaments relative to slurs

Ornaments are positioned outside of slurs by default. You can change the position of ornaments relative to slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the ornaments whose slur-relative position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the corresponding group for the selected ornaments:
 - **Ornaments**
 - **Trills**
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Inside**
 - **Outside**



RESULT

The selected ornaments are positioned either inside or outside of slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the start position of trills

You can change whether the start position of individual trills is aligned with the notehead or with its accidental. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose start position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start position** in the **Trills** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Notehead**
 - **Accidental**

RESULT

The start position of the selected trills is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Hiding/Showing trill extension lines](#) on page 1096

Trills

Trills are fast alternations between two notes, similar to a tremolo, that were a common decoration in Baroque, Classical, and Romantic music. Trill marks are usually added to a single note, to indicate the performed notes are the notated pitch and the note either a half-step or whole step above, and can have extension lines to show the duration of the trill.



A phrase containing multiple trills with extension lines

Because of their legacy as an ornament, many performers interpret trills differently to tremolos: some players add more emphasis to the notated pitch in a trill and less on the trilled-to note but play both notes equally in tremolos.

The most common trills are to notes a major or minor second above, but it is also possible to specify other trill intervals.

In Dorico Elements, you can specify any trill interval, change their appearance on notation staves, and hear them in playback.

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.



Trills on a notation staff and tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Trill intervals](#) on page 1097

[Changing the start position of trills](#) on page 1092

[Trills in playback](#) on page 1104

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

Hiding/Showing trill marks

You can hide/show trill marks at the start of individual trills. This also hides/shows trill marks on all systems on which the trills extend.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill marks you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show trill mark** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Trill marks are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, trill marks are shown by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Trill interval appearance](#) on page 1102

[Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals](#) on page 1098

[Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines](#) on page 1096



[Hiding/Showing trill extension lines](#) on page 1096

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the speed of trills

You can indicate different speeds for trills, including indicating a change of speed within a single trill, by changing the height and frequency of wiggles in their extension lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Trills** group:
 - **Start speed**
 - **End speed**
3. Select one of the following options from each property menu:
 - **Slow**
 - **Normal**
 - **Fast**

RESULT

The speed of the selected trills is changed. This affects both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed.

If only **Start speed** is activated, the speed of the whole trill extension line is changed. If only **End speed** is activated, the speed of the end half of the trill extension line is changed.

EXAMPLE



A trill extension line starting slow and ending fast



Trill with normal speed throughout

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can customize the playback speed of trills individually.

RELATED LINKS



[Changing the playback speeds of trills](#) on page 1106

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines

You can hide/show speed changes in the extension lines for individual trills; for example, if you want to hear different speeds in playback but show extension lines with consistent wiggles.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed changes you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Suppress drawing speed changes** in the **Trills** group.
-



RESULT

Speed changes are hidden when the property is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Hiding/Showing trill extension lines

You can hide/show the extension lines of individual trills. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose extension lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Has trill line** in the **Trills** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Trill extension lines are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, trill extension lines are only shown on tied notes by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the start position of trills](#) on page 1092

[Changing the speed of trills](#) on page 1095

[Changing the playback speeds of trills](#) on page 1106

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Trill intervals

Trill intervals tell performers which notes to play and also affect the pitches used in playback in Dorico Elements. For example, a trill with a sharp accidental on an E indicates that the performer trills between E and F \sharp , rather than between E and F.



The different accidentals on these trills indicate changes in the trilled-to note.

If you do not specify an interval when inputting a trill, Dorico Elements calculates an appropriate interval based on the top note in the voice to which the trill belongs, the current key signature, and any accidentals earlier in the bar. For example, inputting a trill on an E \sharp in C major produces a half-step/minor second trill interval to F \sharp . If there were a sharp accidental on the F earlier in the bar, the trill interval produced is a whole step/major second between the E \sharp and F \sharp .

In open/atonal key signatures, Dorico Elements produces whole step/major second trill intervals by default.

You can specify trill intervals when inputting them with the popover, including at different noteheads in the same trill, and you can change individual trill intervals after they have been input. In 12-EDO, you can describe trill intervals based on their quality, such as major or minor.

When trill intervals do not require a trill interval indicator, they are indicated by signposts. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

Trills and accidentals

If required, Dorico Elements shows accidentals to clarify trill intervals. Dorico Elements also automatically shows accidentals on other notes in the bar if they have different accidentals to any upper notes of trills.

By default, trill marks themselves show intervals, unless the upper note is modified by an accidental in the key signature. If the upper note has been modified by an accidental earlier in the bar, trills always show the interval. If trills modify pitches modified by an accidental in the key signature, any subsequent notes of that pitch show the appropriate accidental automatically. Any cautionary accidentals required in the current and following bars are also shown automatically.

Microtonal trill intervals

When using other tonality systems than 12-EDO, such as 24-EDO, you must specify trill intervals as an interval degree, expressed as the number of staff position steps, and total number of octave divisions from the notated pitch. This is because specifying only the interval quality is insufficient in such cases.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Trill interval appearance](#) on page 1102

[Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover](#) on page 346

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Changing ornament intervals](#) on page 1090

[Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142



Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals

You can hide/show accidentals for individual trill intervals; for example, if you want to show the accidental for the first note of a trill but hide the accidentals for subsequent notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- In order to show trill interval accidentals, trills must have intervals that require accidentals.
- These steps only hide the accidentals shown in trill intervals, they do not hide auxiliary notes or Hollywood-style markings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple trill interval accidentals, you must select each accidental or signpost individually. If you select the whole trill, only the first trill interval accidental is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Trills** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Hide**
 - **Show**
-

RESULT

Accidentals in the selected trill intervals are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden trill interval accidental. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.



RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the appearance of trill intervals](#) on page 1103
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646
- [Annotations](#) on page 597
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450

Changing trill intervals

The default trill interval is a second, either major or minor depending on the context. In addition to specifying the interval when inputting trills with the ornaments popover, you can change the intervals of trills and existing trill intervals within their duration individually after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode, but in Engrave mode you must select the trill intervals/trill interval signposts.

NOTE

For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to change individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.

3. Change the interval degree, expressed as the number of staff position steps, by changing the value in the value field.
4. Change the interval quality or total number of octave divisions from the trilled note in one of the following ways:
 - For trills in 12-EDO, select an interval quality from the menu.
 - For trills in other tonality systems, select a total number of octave divisions from the menu.

Together, the interval degree and either interval quality or total number of octave divisions specify the desired note name and accidental for the trilled-to note.

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is changed. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is changed for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS


[Resetting trill intervals](#) on page 1101

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341

Changing trill intervals partway through trills



You can change the intervals of existing trills at any notehead within their duration; for example, if you want a trill to change seamlessly from a minor second in one bar to a major second in the next.


PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
 - The note whose trill interval you want to change.
 - An item or rest on the staff where you want to specify trill intervals.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-N**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
 - Double-click the staff.
3. Press **Right Arrow / Left Arrow** to move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution to the notehead where you want to change the trill interval.

NOTE

You can only change trill intervals at noteheads.

4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Shift-O**.
 - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers** , then **Ornaments** .
5. Enter the trill interval you want into the popover. For example, enter **m3** for a minor third.

6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
 7. Optional: Repeat steps 3 to 6 to change the trill interval at other noteheads in the trill.
 8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

The trill interval is changed at the corresponding noteheads. By default, all trill intervals in the trill appear as accidentals when the intervals are all seconds and as auxiliary notes when the trill contains at least one trill interval with a different interval.

Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

EXAMPLE



Trill with interval changes shown as accidentals



Trill with interval changes shown as auxiliary notes



RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the appearance of trill intervals](#) on page 1103
- [Ornaments popover](#) on page 341
- [Signposts](#) on page 450
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

Resetting trill intervals

You can reset trill intervals to the default trill interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context, including resetting individual trill intervals within a single trill independently.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode, but in Engrave mode you must select the trill intervals/trill interval signposts.

NOTE

For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to reset individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval change is reset.

2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.
-

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is reset. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is reset for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Signposts](#) on page 450

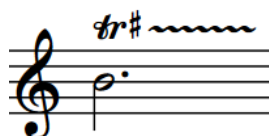
Trill interval appearance

There are different accepted ways to present trill intervals on notation staves, including accidental symbols and the Hollywood convention of showing "H.T." for a half-step (semitone) and "W.T." for a whole step (tone).

In Dorico Elements, trill intervals can appear in the following ways on notation staves:

Accidental

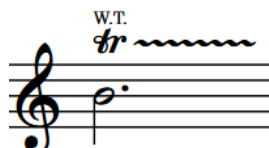
Indicates the trill interval using accidentals positioned above, below, or beside the **tr** mark. This is the default trill interval appearance in Dorico Elements for major or minor second trills.



Hollywood-style

Indicates the trill interval using text.

- **H.T.** for half-step/minor second trills
- **W.T.** for whole step/major second trills



Auxiliary note

Indicates the trill interval using a small, parenthesized, stemless notehead shown in the staff immediately to the right of the first note to which the trill applies, and at the correct staff position for the trilled-to pitch.

Auxiliary notes are used for all trill intervals that are not a major or minor second, but are automatically hidden for unison trills if the notehead design of the auxiliary note has not been overridden.



NOTE

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340



Changing the appearance of trill intervals

You can change the appearance of trills with a second interval on notation staves individually; for example, if you want to show auxiliary notes on some trills to clarify a change in the trilled-to pitch.

NOTE

You can only change the trill interval appearance of trills with a major/minor second interval.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill interval appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Trills** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Accidental**
 - **Hollywood style**
 - **Auxiliary note**
-

RESULT

The appearance of the selected trill intervals on notation staves is changed. This does not affect their appearance on tablature.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the notehead design of individual auxiliary notes; for example, to show that the trilled-to note is a harmonic.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads](#) on page 1058



Changing the position of trill interval indicators

You can change where trill interval indicators, such as an accidental or W.T. marking, are positioned relative to individual trill marks. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

This does not affect the position of trill interval accidentals on subsequent notes over which trills extend.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

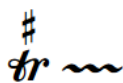
PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose interval indicator position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval position** in the **Trills** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**
 - **On the right**
 - **Superscript**
-

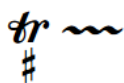
RESULT

The position of interval indicators relative to the selected trill marks is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

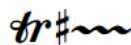
EXAMPLE



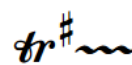
Above



Below



On the right



Superscript

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Trills in playback

Dorico Elements plays back trills by using a combination of sampled trills, when available, and triggering multiple notes.

- You can find options for trill playback on the **Trills** page in **Playback Options**.

Dorico Elements can play back sampled half-step (semitone) and whole step (tone) trills automatically if these playing techniques are defined in the VST expression map, which is the case for a number of instruments in HALion Symphonic Orchestra. For sound libraries that do not provide sampled trills, or for intervals beyond a whole step, Dorico Elements generates trills. If your project contains some trill intervals that can only be generated, you can disable sampled trills and use generated trills throughout to produce a more consistent result.

When playing generated trills, Dorico Elements incorporates grace notes immediately before and after trills. A single unslashed grace note on the initial trill note produces an appoggiatura, while multiple grace notes on the initial trill note are included in the trill pattern. Grace notes on the note immediately following a trill are also included in the trill pattern.



A trill with grace notes at both the start and end

Variable speeds within trills are included in playback. You can determine the default playback speeds of slow, normal, and fast trills on the **Trills** page in **Playback Options**, and you can change the playback speed of individual trills. Additionally, you can hide trill speed changes in trill extension lines whilst retaining the speed changes in playback.

In contemporary performance practice, trills are usually performed starting on the written note, while in the historical performance practice of the Baroque and Classical eras, trills are usually performed starting on the upper (trilled-to) note. You can change the default starting pitch for trills individually and by changing the default setting.

Another common performance practice, in particular for Romantic piano music, is to perform all trills with an acceleration, starting slowly and getting faster during the trill. You can choose this setting on the **Trills** page in **Playback Options**. It applies to all trills whose speed has not been changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

[Changing the speed of trills](#) on page 1095

[Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines](#) on page 1096

[Changing the starting pitch of trills](#) on page 1107

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

Sampled vs. generated trills

Sampled trills are recorded, looped samples, whereas generated trills are produced by manually triggering separate notes.

Because they use fixed sounds, sampled trills typically offer no parameters that allow any kind of variation in the trill interpretation, such as different trill speeds or incorporating grace notes and termination notes into the pattern of trilled notes. By contrast, generated trills can provide greater flexibility but produce a less natural and realistic sound.

If your project contains some trill intervals that can only be generated, you can disable sampled trills and use generated trills throughout to produce a more consistent result.

Enabling/Disabling trill samples in playback

You can enable/disable the use of sampled trills in your project. This can be useful if your project contains some trill intervals that can only be generated and you want to use only generated trills throughout, or if you want to incorporate grace notes immediately before/after trills.

NOTE

If you are using NotePerformer for playback, we recommend that you disable sampled trills to allow Dorico Elements to send the correct notes and controllers for NotePerformer to produce its most realistic trill playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Trills**.
 3. Choose one of the following options for **Playback approach for trills**:
 - **Generated trills only**
 - **Use samples if possible**
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-



RESULT

Sampled trills are enabled when you choose **Use samples if possible**, and disabled when you choose **Generated trills only**.

Changing the playback speeds of trills

In addition to changing the speed of trills, which changes both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed, you can also change the playback speed of each speed variant in individual trills; for example, if you want to make the fastest part of an individual trill faster than your default setting.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose playback speeds you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties, as appropriate for your selected trills:
 - **Slow trill speed**
 - **Normal trill speed**
 - **Fast trill speed**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

The playback speed of the selected trills is changed. The values in the value fields correspond to the number of notes sounding per second.

TIP

You can change the default speeds for each level on the **Trills** page in **Playback Options**.

You can also change whether the speed of generated trills follows tempo changes or remains constant.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the speed of trills](#) on page 1095

[Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines](#) on page 1096



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

Changing the starting pitch of trills

By default in Dorico Elements, trills start on the lower note, which is usually the written note. However, the accepted practice in Baroque and Classical music is to start trills on the upper note. You can change the starting pitch of trills individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose starting note you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start on upper note** in the **Trills** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The selected trills start on the upper note when the checkbox is activated, and on the lower note when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, trills follow your project-wide setting for the starting pitch of trills.

TIP

You can change the default starting pitch of all trills project-wide on the **Trills** page in **Playback Options**.

Arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are vertical lines that indicate chords are to be played arpeggiated, or “spread”, so that the notes in the chord are played very quickly one after another. Arpeggio signs are normally shown as vertical wavy lines.



Arpeggiated chords can be played in two directions:

- Upwards, starting from the bottom note in the chord.
- Downwards, starting from the top note in the chord.

It is most common for up arpeggio signs to have nothing at the top end, because chords are usually arpeggiated upwards, and for down arpeggio signs to have an arrow at the bottom, so these are the defaults in Dorico Elements. However, it is also accepted practice to show up arpeggio signs with an arrow at the top if down arpeggio signs are also used in the same piece of music.

Arpeggio signs in Dorico Elements automatically span the range of all notes in the voices/staves to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115

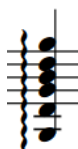
[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145

[Lines](#) on page 1194

Types of arpeggio signs

There are different types of arpeggio signs to convey the different arpeggiation directions and techniques.

Up arpeggio



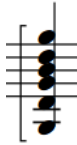
A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the bottom note upwards.

Down arpeggio



A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the top note downwards.

Non arpeggio



A bracket with straight lines that indicates all notes in the chord are to be played together, not arpeggiated.

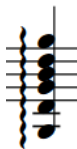
Curved arpeggio



A curved line, similar to a slur but vertical, that some composers use to indicate gentle or partial arpeggiation.

You can show both up and down arpeggio signs with one of the following ends in Dorico Elements:

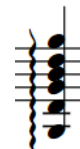
- Nothing
- Arrow
- Swash



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end





Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Changing the type of arpeggio signs

You can change the type of arpeggio signs after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Arpeggio type** menu in the **Arpeggios** group:
 - **Non arpeggio**
 - **Up arpeggio**
 - **Down arpeggio**
 - **Up arpeggio (curve)**
-

RESULT

The type of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

TIP

You can also change the arpeggio type by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.



Changing the end appearance of arpeggio signs

Down arpeggio signs have an arrowhead at the bottom of the line by default, but up arpeggio signs have no arrowhead by default. You can change the appearance of the ends of arpeggio signs individually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to up and down arpeggio signs. They do not apply to curved or non arpeggio signs.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

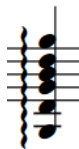
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs of any direction whose ends you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign end** in the **Arpeggios** group.
 3. Select the end you want from the menu:
 - **Nothing**
 - **Arrow**
 - **Swash**
-

RESULT

The appearance of the ends of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

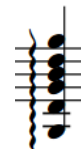
EXAMPLE



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end



Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Length of arpeggio signs

The length of arpeggio signs is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the arpeggio sign applies. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of arpeggio signs if pitches change or you add notes to, or delete notes from, chords.

In Engrave mode, each arpeggio sign has two square handles, one at the top and one at the bottom. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of arpeggio signs. For example, you might lengthen an arpeggio sign on a chord with a small pitch range so the arpeggio sign is more clearly visible.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

General placement conventions for arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are positioned to the left of the notes, including any applicable accidentals, to which they apply, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. They should appear within the same bar as the notes to which they apply, and not on the other side of the barline.

Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to note spacing and staff spacing to accommodate arpeggio signs and ensure they are positioned correctly.

Arpeggio signs should cover the whole vertical range of all notes in the chord to which they apply, and protrude slightly at each end. However, they do not need to cover the stems of notes. Dorico Elements automatically creates the lengths of arpeggio signs to cover the notes in chords, and adjusts their lengths if the notes in chords change or are deleted.

If an arpeggiated chord spans two staves, such as in a piano part, its arpeggio sign can extend across both staves.

You can move arpeggio signs to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.



You can move arpeggio signs graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Showing arpeggio signs before/after grace notes

You can show arpeggio signs before/after grace notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, arpeggio

signs are positioned immediately to the left of the notes to which they apply, and so are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Arpeggio before grace notes** in the **Arpeggios** group.

RESULT

The selected arpeggio signs are shown before grace notes when the property is activated, and after grace notes when the property is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Arpeggios in playback

You can find options to control the playback of all arpeggios project-wide in the **Arpeggio Signs** section of the **Timing** page in **Playback Options**.

For example, you can control the speed of arpeggiation and whether arpeggiation starts on the beat or ends on the beat.

You can set a default arpeggio length for wiggly arpeggio signs and curved arpeggio signs separately, expressed as a fraction of a quarter note (crotchet) at 120 bpm. It can be helpful to set arpeggio lengths using this measurement instead of defining arpeggios as a fraction of their notated rhythm, as otherwise arpeggios in very slow music would play back much slower than most people intend.

As well as setting a default length for arpeggios, you can also set minimum and maximum values for the length of arpeggios, expressed as a fraction of the notated value of the arpeggio. This is to ensure all notes with arpeggio signs can be heard within their notated duration.



TIP

You can also use properties in the **Arpeggios Playback** group of the Properties panel to override the default playback options for individual arpeggio signs.

Changing arpeggio playback relative to the beat

You can change whether individual arpeggios are played before their notated position or after their notated position, independently of your project-wide settings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Playback position** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Start on beat**
 - **End on beat**

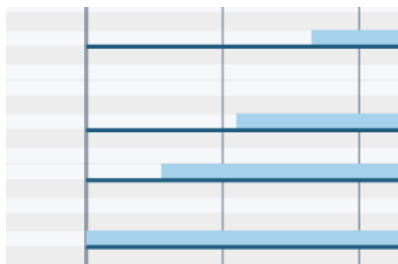
RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected arpeggios in playback is changed.

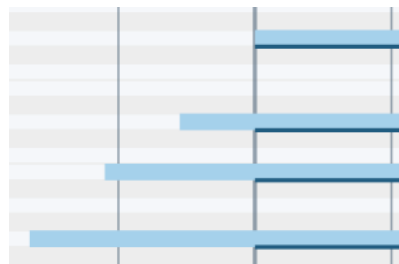
TIP

You can change the playback of all arpeggios relative to the beat project-wide on the **Timing** page in **Playback Options**.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio starting on the beat



Arpeggio ending on the beat

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749



Changing the playback duration of arpeggios

You can change the duration of individual arpeggios in playback, independently of your project-wide settings.

The duration of arpeggios is expressed as a fraction of the notated rhythm of chords. For example, an arpeggio on a quarter note (crotchet) chord with a note offset value of 1/2 lasts an eighth note (quaver), whereas with a note offset value of 1/8 it lasts a 32nd note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

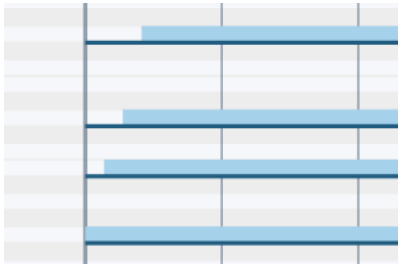
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback duration you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Note offset** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.
3. Change the playback duration of the selected arpeggio signs by changing the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

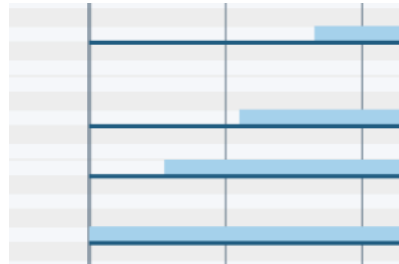
RESULT

The playback duration of the selected arpeggios is changed. This overrides your project-wide settings for the duration of arpeggios for the selected arpeggios.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/8



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/2

Glissando lines

Glissando lines indicate a continuous transition between two notes, which can be smooth or in chromatic steps. They can have straight lines or wiggly lines, and can be shown with a text indication or as a line without text.

Because glissando lines are positioned between noteheads, the steepness of their angle reflects the interval between the notes: the steeper the angle, the greater the interval.

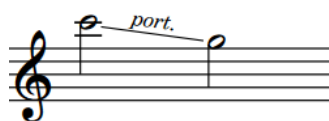
There are different conventions regarding the playing techniques for glissando and portamento. Some people understand glissando lines to indicate a chromatic scale between the two notes, either rising or falling in a series of half-steps (semitones), and portamento lines to indicate a smooth, continuous glide between the two notes. However, the terms glissando and portamento can be used interchangeably in other cases.

You can input both glissando lines and portamento lines in Dorico Elements, and you can easily change their style after they have been input.

Glissando lines in Dorico Elements automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note, the glissando line end positions move accordingly. Dorico Elements automatically positions glissando lines so they do not collide with accidentals.



An example glissando line with text shown and a wiggly line



An example portamento line with text shown and a straight line

Glissando lines can cross system breaks and page breaks. If text is shown for glissando lines that span system or page breaks, then that text is shown on every glissando line segment. By default, the start and end positions of each segment match the original start and end points of the whole glissando line.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Changing the style of glissando lines](#) on page 1116

[Glissando lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 1119

[Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108

[Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145

[Fingering slides](#) on page 986

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

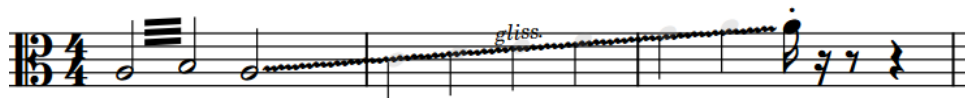
Glissando lines across empty bars

In Dorico Elements, you can input glissando lines between any two notes, even if there are rests or other notes between them, and including between notes in different voices and notes on different staves.

For very long glissando lines that extend across multiple bars, you might not want to show pitches at the start of each bar; for example, to indicate that performers do not emphasize pitches during the course of the glissando, or that performers can play the glissando at their own speed. By default, Dorico Elements shows notes or rests in every bar.

To avoid note spacing issues caused by removing rests, we recommend inputting notes in the intervening bars, then hiding their noteheads and/or stems.

EXAMPLE



A glissando line across multiple bars with hidden notes between the start/end notes

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars](#) on page 1277



[Hiding/Showing noteheads](#) on page 1060

[Hiding/Showing stems](#) on page 1079



Changing the style of glissando lines

Glissando lines can be shown as straight lines or wiggly lines. You can change the glissando line style of glissando lines individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando style** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Straight line** 
 - **Wiggly line** 

RESULT

The glissando line style is changed for the selected glissando lines.

TIP

- Deactivating **Glissando style** returns the selected glissando lines to the default style.

- You can also change the glissando style by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Ornaments popover](#) on page 341



[Changing existing items](#) on page 432

Changing glissando line text

You can show individual glissando lines with “gliss.” text, “port.” text, or without text. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Glissando line text is automatically hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments.

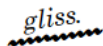
PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

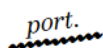
PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

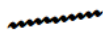
- **Gliss.**



- **Port.**



- **No text**



RESULT

The text shown on the selected glissando lines is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

Changing when glissando line text is shown

By default, glissando text is not shown when glissando lines are too short to accommodate the text. You can choose to show text on individual glissando lines always, or only if there is sufficient space. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Glissando line text is automatically hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose setting for when text is shown you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text shown** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Show if sufficient space**
 - **Always show**

RESULT

When **Show if sufficient space** is chosen, glissando line text is not shown if the glissando line is too short.

When **Always show** is chosen, glissando line text is always shown, even if the glissando line is short. However, this can cause the glissando line text to collide with other items, such as noteheads and stems.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can increase the default gaps between noteheads by changing the default note spacing, and between individual noteheads by adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Changing the default note spacing](#) on page 507

[Adjusting note spacing at individual rhythmic positions](#) on page 509

Glissando lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each glissando line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of glissando lines.

You can also move whole individual glissando lines graphically. If glissando lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the glissando line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a glissando line in Engrave mode

NOTE

You cannot move glissando lines rhythmically. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of glissando lines, you must delete them from their original positions and input new glissando lines at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Glissando lines in playback

Glissando lines are reflected in playback using either a sequence of notes or a continuous pitch bend between the start and end notes for each glissando.

Glissando playback type

In Dorico Elements, there are the following glissando playback types:

Continuous

Glissandos sound as a smooth slide between the start and end pitches for each glissando line, using MIDI pitch bend.

The following instrument families use continuous glissando playback by default: brass, singers, electronics, and strings.

NOTE

Continuous glissando playback requires the support of the sound library, consecutive notes only, and an appropriate pitch range set for the corresponding expression map. For example, HALion Symphonic Orchestra only supports a continuous glissando range of one whole step (two semitones).

Glissandos use chromatic glissando playback as a fallback if their pitch range is wider than is supported, or if the instrument ever plays chords; that is, two or more notes simultaneously.

Chromatic

Glissandos sound as a sequence of notes, usually a half-step (semitone) apart, between the start and end pitches for each glissando line.

- Harp pedal diagrams affect the pitches used in harp glissando playback.
- All other instruments use the 12-EDO chromatic scale, regardless of the current tonality system.

Chromatic glissando playback is the default for all instruments that do not use either continuous or white notes glissando playback.

White notes

Glissandos sound as a sequence of notes, only comprising natural pitches; that is, the pitches represented by white keys on keyboards.

White notes glissando playback is the default for keyboard and pitched percussion instruments.

Glissando playback duration

When glissando lines start or end on tie chains, their playback starts from the last notehead and ends at the first notehead.

By default, glissandos start sounding halfway through their duration; for tied notes, this is the duration of the last notehead in the tie chain. You can change the delay at the start of glissando lines in playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Harp pedaling](#) on page 1153

[Equal Division of the Octave \(EDO\)](#) on page 1028



[Inputting glissando lines with the popover](#) on page 349

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

Changing the glissando playback type

You can change the playback type of individual glissando lines; for example, if you want some glissando lines to play back using white notes instead of chromatic notes. By default, Dorico Elements automatically selects the glissando playback type according to the instrument family.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE



1. Select the glissando lines whose playback type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Playback type** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Auto**
 - **Continuous**
 - **Chromatic**
 - **White notes**

- **None**
-

Delaying the start of glissandos in playback

You can change the delay at the start of glissandos in playback. By default, glissandos start sounding halfway through their duration; for tied notes, this is the duration of the last notehead in the tie chain.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose playback start you want to delay. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Delayed start** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
4. Optional: If you want to specify exactly how far through the glissando lines playback starts, activate **Delay** and change the value in the value field.

The value represents fractions of a quarter note. For example, **1/2** delays the start of glissandos by an eighth note.

RESULT

When the **Delayed start** checkbox is activated, the selected glissando lines start playing back halfway through the duration of the last notehead to which they apply.

When the **Delayed start** checkbox is deactivated, the selected glissando lines start playing back from the beginning of the last notehead to which they apply.

If you also activated **Delay**, playback of the selected glissando lines follows your set value.

When **Delayed start** is deactivated, glissando lines follow your project-wide setting for glissando line playback.

NOTE

You can change whether all glissando lines project-wide have delayed starts on the **Glissando Lines** page in **Playback Options**.

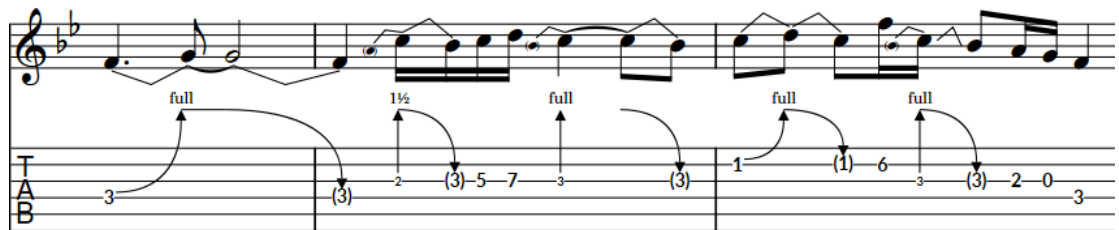
RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44
- [Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

Guitar bends

The guitar bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation.

Performing a guitar bend often also involves sustaining the bent pitch before allowing the string to return to its natural position and un-bent pitch. In Dorico Elements, these actions are called a “guitar bend hold” and “release” respectively.



The image shows a musical staff in G minor (one flat) with a treble clef. The melody consists of several notes, some of which are bent. The bends are indicated by angled lines between noteheads. The tablature below the staff shows the corresponding fret numbers: 3, (3), 2, (3), 5, 7, 3, (3), 1, (1), 6, 3, (3), 2, 0, 3. Arrows labeled 'full' point to the bends on the notes at frets 3, 3, 1, 3, and 3. A '1½' interval is indicated above the bend on the note at fret 2.

A phrase containing guitar bends, a guitar bend hold, guitar pre-bends, and releases, shown on both a notation staff and tablature

Guitar bends and releases with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

Guitar bends

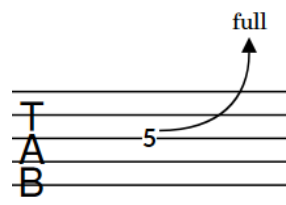
Guitar bends indicate that the performer should bend the string after playing a note, so that the pitch increases while the note sounds. In Dorico Elements, each guitar bend joins two notes: the start pitch and the pitch at the peak of the bend.

On notation staves, guitar bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, guitar bends are notated using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead. The fret number of the end note is hidden automatically.



The image shows a musical staff in G minor with a treble clef. A single note is shown with a bend, indicated by an angled line between the notehead and the stem.

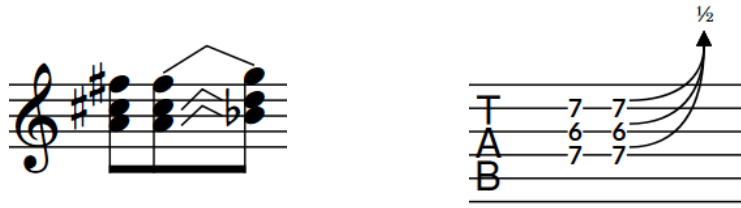
Guitar bend on notation staff



The image shows a guitar tablature staff with five lines. A note is shown on the fifth fret. A curved arrow points upwards from the note, with the word 'full' written above it. The fret number '5' is visible on the staff.

Guitar bend on tablature

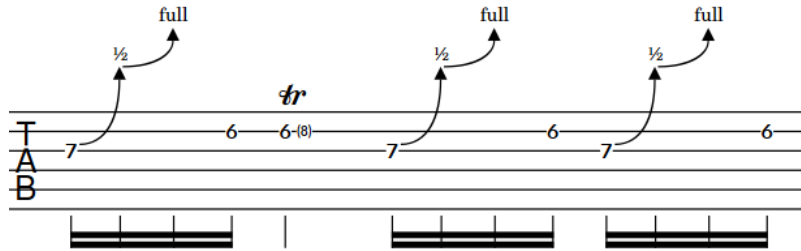
If you input guitar bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned on tablature.



Guitar bends on chord on notation staff

Guitar bends on chord on tablature

Sequences of consecutive guitar bends are notated as bend runs on tablature. In Engrave mode, guitar bend runs function as a group.

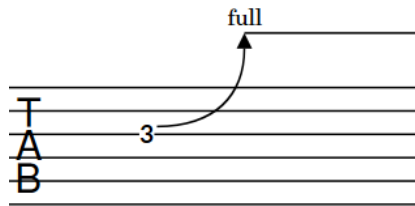


Guitar bend runs on tablature

Guitar bend holds

Guitar bend holds indicate that the performer should maintain the pitch at the peak of a guitar bend. They are usually shown on tied notes.

On tablature, guitar bend holds are notated using a horizontal line. They are not notated on notation staves.



Guitar bend hold on tablature

Releases

Releases indicate that the performer should allow a bent string to return to its natural position, which decreases the pitch. In Dorico Elements, each release joins two notes: the pitch at the peak of the bend and the end pitch.

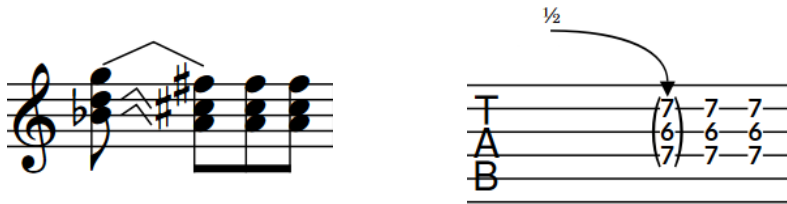
On notation staves, releases are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, releases are notated using a downwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the bottom and parenthesized fret numbers below the arrowhead to indicate the end pitches. The fret number of the start note is hidden automatically.



Release on notation staff

Release on tablature

If you input releases on multiple notes in chords, they are notated with a single downwards-pointing curved line on tablature. If the bend intervals are the same for all notes, the end pitches are parenthesized together.



Releases on chord on notation staff

Releases on chord on tablature

NOTE

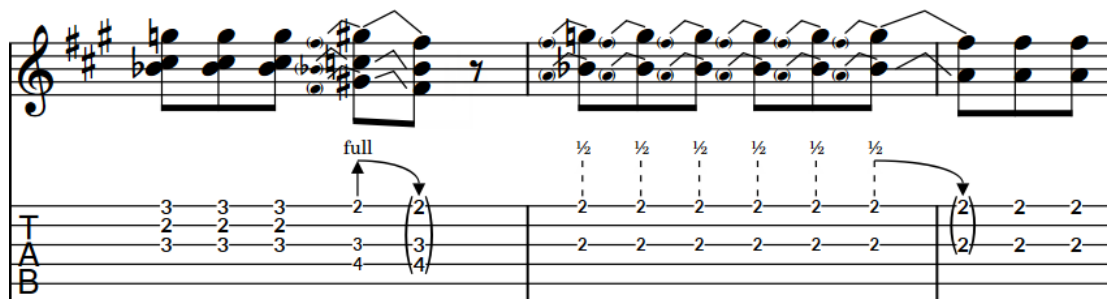
- In addition to guitar bends, Dorico Elements supports guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, guitar post-bends, vibrato bar dives and returns, and other guitar techniques.
- Because you input releases in the same way as you input guitar bends, in this documentation, “guitar bends” refers to both guitar bend and release items in projects.
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS

- [Bend intervals on page 1128](#)
- [Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 1131](#)
- [Guitar techniques on page 1137](#)
- [Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 353](#)
- [Tablature on page 1330](#)
- [Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1331](#)
- [Bracketed noteheads on page 1066](#)
- [String indicators on page 993](#)
- [Lines on page 1194](#)

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are techniques commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer changes the initial sounding pitch of strings before playing notes, either by bending strings to tighten them or using the vibrato bar to loosen them.



A phrase containing a guitar pre-bend with release and multiple guitar pre-dives with release

In Dorico Elements, guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes.

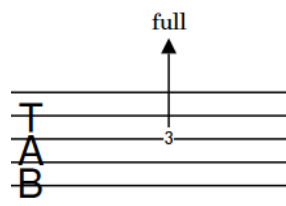
Guitar pre-bends

Guitar pre-bends indicate that the performer should bend the string before playing the note to raise the pitch; for example, to repeat a note that was at the end of a previous guitar bend. The pitch can then be lowered after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. However, unlike guitar bends, the parenthesized auxiliary notehead at the start is shown automatically as part of the pre-bend. On tablature, guitar pre-bends are notated using a solid vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-bend on notation staff



Guitar pre-bend on tablature

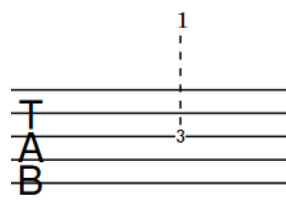
Guitar pre-dives

Guitar pre-dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch before playing the note. The pitch can then be raised after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-dives appear the same as guitar pre-bends. On tablature, guitar pre-dives are notated using a dashed vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-dive on notation staff



Guitar pre-dive on tablature

NOTE

Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS

[Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode](#) on page 1133

[Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 355

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

Guitar post-bends

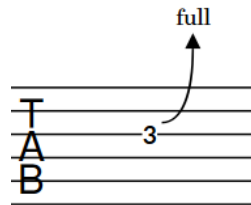
The guitar post-bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending

strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation. Microtonal post-bends are particularly idiomatic in Blues music.

In Dorico Elements, guitar post-bends are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes. They are notated the same on notation staves and tablature, using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead.



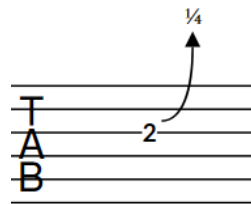
Guitar post-bend on notation staff



Guitar post-bend on tablature

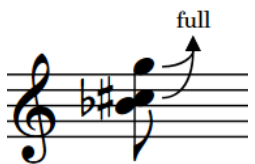


Microtonal post-bend on notation staff

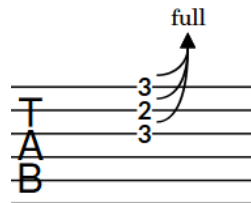


Microtonal post-bend on tablature

If you input guitar post-bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned. On notation staves, the appropriate number of curved lines is shown according to the staff positions of notes in chords.



Guitar post-bends on chord on notation staff



Guitar post-bends on chord on tablature

NOTE

Guitar post-bends are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

[Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode](#) on page 1134

[Inputting guitar post-bends](#) on page 356

Vibrato bar dives and returns

The vibrato bar dive and return is a technique performed on electric guitars with a vibrato bar, where the performer uses the vibrato bar to loosen then tighten strings after notes start to sound. This produces the characteristic downwards-then-upwards pitch fluctuation.

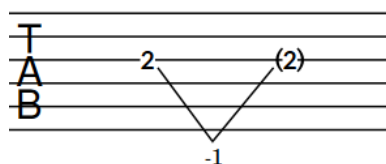
In Dorico Elements, each vibrato bar dive and return comprises two vibrato bar bend items, where the first vibrato bar bend ends on the same note that the second vibrato bar bend starts on. Vibrato bar bends each join two notes.

Vibrato bar dives and returns with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

On notation staves, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end, meaning they appear the same as guitar bends. On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using two straight lines that form a V and a bend interval shown at the point. The fret number of the middle note is hidden and the fret number of the end note is parenthesized automatically.



Vibrato bar dive and return on notation staff

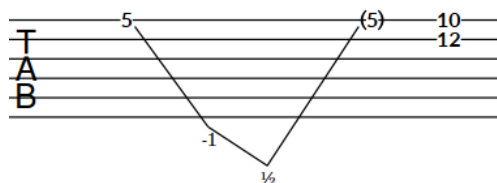


Vibrato bar dive and return on tablature

Sequences of consecutive vibrato bar bends on notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar bend.



Consecutive vibrato bar bends on notation staff

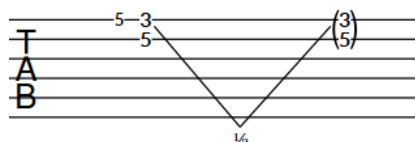


Consecutive vibrato bar bends on tablature

If you input vibrato bar dives and returns on multiple notes in chords, a single V appears on tablature as long as the bend intervals are the same for all notes.



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on notation staff



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover](#) on page 358

[Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel](#) on page 359

[Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode](#) on page 1135

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

Bend intervals

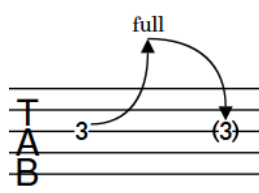
Bend intervals indicate the amount guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, post-dives, and dives and returns change the pitch, expressed in relation to whole steps using text or numbers/fractions. Bend intervals appear only on tablature for most types of bends, except for guitar post-bends, whose bend intervals also appear on notation staves.

For example, **full** indicates a whole step guitar bend, pre-bend, or post-bend, **1/2** a half-step, and **1 1/2** a minor third.

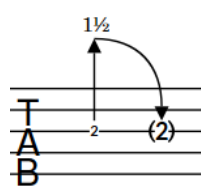
Bend intervals for guitar pre-dives and vibrato bar dives and returns always appear as numbers/fractions, such as **1** for a whole step vibrato bar dive and return.

Microtonal bend intervals appear as fractions according to the prevailing tonality system, such as **3/4**. Bend intervals for microtonal post-bends appear as **1/4**.

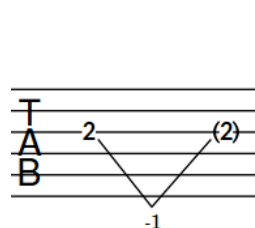
EXAMPLE



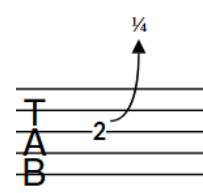
Guitar bend with whole step interval, displayed as **full**



Guitar pre-bend with minor third interval, displayed as **1 1/2**



Vibrato bar dive and return with whole step interval, displayed as **-1**



Guitar post-bend with microtonal interval, displayed as **1/4**

Bend intervals for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-dives are positioned above the arrowhead/line for the corresponding notation. For dives and returns, bend intervals appear at the point of the V, either above or below the staff according to the pitch direction of notes in the dive and return.

Bend intervals appear only on tablature for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and dives and returns. They appear on both notation staves and tablature for guitar post-bends.

RELATED LINKS

[Tablature](#) on page 1330

[Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142

[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353



Hiding/Showing guitar bend hold lines

Guitar bend hold lines indicate that the bend should be held for the duration of the note, which is usually a tied note. You can hide/show hold lines on guitar bends on tablature.

NOTE

These steps only apply to guitar bends. You cannot show hold lines on pre-bends or releases.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

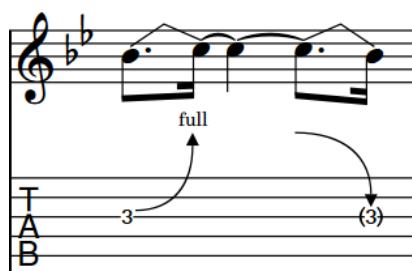
PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar bends on which you want to hide/show hold lines. You can do this on notation staves and tablature in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show hold** in the **Guitar Bends** group.
-

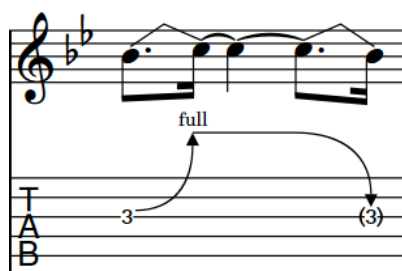
RESULT

Hold lines are shown on the selected bends on tablature when **Show hold** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Hold line hidden





Hold line shown

Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can change the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives are positioned on the notehead-side of notes in single-voice contexts. In multiple-voice contexts, they are positioned on the stem-side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend direction** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Up**
 - **Down**
-

RESULT

The direction of the selected guitar pre-bends/pre-dives is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the direction of guitar bends on notation staves by selecting them and pressing **F**. However, you cannot use this key command for guitar pre-bends/pre-dives.



RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434
- [Changing vibrato bar dip intervals](#) on page 1142
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Hiding/Showing accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can hide/show accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually; for example, to save horizontal space in a layout that also shows the interval clearly on tablature. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend accidental** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Hide**
 - **Show**
-

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected guitar pre-bends are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. This does not affect the interval shown for the selected guitar pre-bends on tablature. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deleting guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends

You can remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends from notes after you have input them. However, because guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To remove guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, deactivate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel.
 - To remove guitar post-bends, deactivate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends are removed from the selected notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 355

[Inputting guitar post-bends](#) on page 356

Guitar bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar bend, release, and hold has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

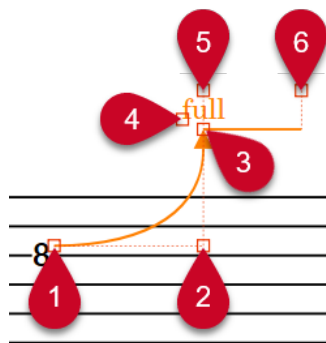
On notation staves, guitar bends and releases have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Guitar bend handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

Guitar bends and holds

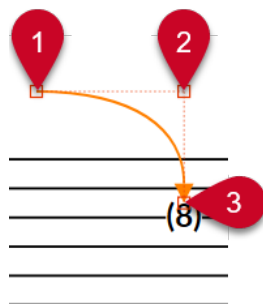
On tablature, guitar bends and holds have the following handles:



- 1 Guitar bend start handle
- 2 Guitar bend middle handle
- 3 Guitar bend end handle
- 4 Bend interval handle
- 5 Hold start handle
- 6 Hold end handle

Releases

On tablature, releases have the following handles:



- 1 Release start handle
- 2 Release middle handle
- 3 Release end handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar bends and releases, change the graphical length and angle of guitar bend holds, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If guitar bends cross system and frame breaks, you can move the guitar bend segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

- Adjoining guitar bends, such as guitar bend runs or a guitar bend that ends on the same note that a return starts on, function as a group. When using the mouse, moving any guitar bend in the group upwards/downwards moves all the others. When you move individual handles within the group using the mouse, adjacent guitar bends automatically adjust to compensate.

When you move individual guitar bends in a group or individual handles using the keyboard, this does not affect adjacent guitar bends.

- You cannot move whole holds, you must move their handles.
 - The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar bend handle:
 - **Start offset** moves start guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Mid offset** moves middle guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **End offset** moves end guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Interval offset** moves guitar bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Hold start offset** moves start guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Hold end offset** moves end guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Bend intervals](#) on page 1128

[System breaks](#) on page 633

[Frame breaks](#) on page 636

[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353

Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode

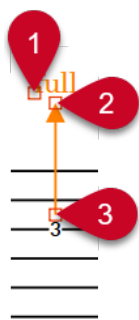
In Engrave mode, each guitar pre-bend/pre-dive has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

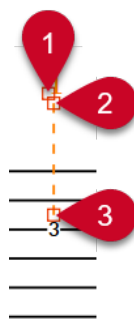


Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have the following handles:



Guitar pre-bend handles



Guitar pre-dive handles

- 1 Bend interval handle
- 2 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handle
- 3 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on notation staves, change the graphical length and angle of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on tablature, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

- You cannot move whole guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, you must move their handles.
- The following properties in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handle:
 - **Start offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Mid offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **End offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Interval offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 355

Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar post-bend has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On both notation staves and tablature, guitar post-bends have the following handles:



- 1 Guitar post-bend start handle
- 2 Guitar post-bend middle handle
- 3 Guitar post-bend end handle
- 4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar post-bends and move bend intervals. When you move guitar post-bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar post-bend handle:

- **Start offset** moves guitar post-bend start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves guitar post-bend middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves guitar post-bend end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Interval offset** moves guitar post-bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

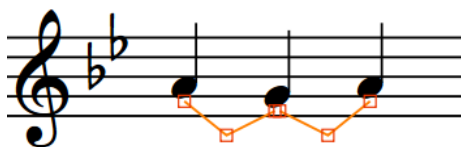
[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Inputting guitar post-bends](#) on page 356

Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode

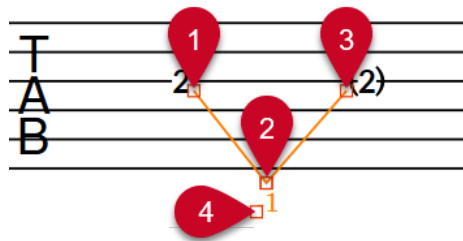
In Engrave mode, each vibrato bar dive and return has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape.

On notation staves, each vibrato bar dive and vibrato bar return has three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Vibrato bar dive and return handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns have the following handles:



- 1 Vibrato bar dive start handle
- 2 Vibrato bar dive end handle/Vibrato bar return start handle
- 3 Vibrato bar return end handle
- 4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape or angle of vibrato bar dives and returns and move bend intervals. When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle/vibrato bar return start handle with the mouse, both handles move together. When you move the handle using the keyboard, by default only the vibrato bar dive end handle moves. The same is true for consecutive vibrato bar bends with the same pitch direction.

When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If vibrato bar dives and returns cross system and frame breaks, you can move the vibrato bar dive and return segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding vibrato bar dive/return handle:

- **Start offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Interval offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353

[System breaks](#) on page 633

[Frame breaks](#) on page 636

Guitar techniques

The term “guitar techniques” covers a range of techniques typically associated with guitar music, such as hammer-ons, pull-offs, and pitch alterations that use the vibrato bar on electric guitars.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives](#) on page 1124

[Guitar post-bends](#) on page 1125

[Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127

[Bend intervals](#) on page 1128

Vibrato bar techniques

There are a number of different techniques that can be performed using the vibrato bar on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars. In Dorico Elements, the available vibrato bar techniques are categorized differently.

Vibrato bar dives

Vibrato bar dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch after playing the note, so that the pitch falls after starting to sound. This technique is also known as a “dive bomb”.

In Dorico Elements, you can notate vibrato bar dives using jazz articulations to show falling lines to the right of noteheads in combination with a vibrato bar indication.



Vibrato bar scoops

Vibrato bar scoops indicate that the performer should depress the vibrato bar just before playing the note and then release the vibrato bar quickly, so that the pitch rises after starting to sound.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar scoops are properties of notes, meaning they only apply to single notes. By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves and are placed to the left of noteheads on the staff.



Vibrato bar dips

Vibrato bar dips indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower and then raise the pitch by the specified interval after playing the note.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar dips are considered ornaments. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. Vibrato bar dips appear

on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual vibrato bar dips.



Vibrato bar indications/lines

Vibrato bar indications are text instructions that indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar. When they apply to a range of notes, they typically show dashed lines.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar indications/lines are considered playing techniques. They show lines when they have duration. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of vibrato bar lines in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



NOTE

Vibrato bar techniques are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

- [Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques](#) on page 353
- [Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 355
- [Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives](#) on page 1124
- [Vibrato bar dives and returns](#) on page 1127
- [Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145
- [Ornaments](#) on page 1090
- [Playing techniques](#) on page 1180
- [Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186
- [Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1190
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434
- [Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142

Tapping

Tapping involves performers pressing the strings of fretted instruments strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking. Tapping indications can specify whether the performer should use their right or left hand for individual notes. They typically appear as the letter T, a plus sign, or a dot.

According to convention, tapping indications for the same hand and for consecutive notes on the same string with different pitches are notated alongside slurs that span the tapped phrase. This is similar to hammer-ons and pull-offs, except tapping indications appear on every note whereas hammer-on and pull-off indications typically appear centered on slurs.



A phrase containing right-hand and left-hand tapping

By default, tapping indications only appear on notation staves and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual tapping indications.

In Dorico Elements, tapping indications are considered properties of notes. There are the following types of tapping indications:

Right-hand tapping

Right-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their right hand. In Dorico Elements, right-hand tapping indications appear as the letter T.



Right-hand tapping on notation staff

Left-hand tapping

Left-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand. In Dorico Elements, left-hand tapping indications appear as a dot.



Left-hand tapping on notation staff

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting tapping](#) on page 366

[Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142

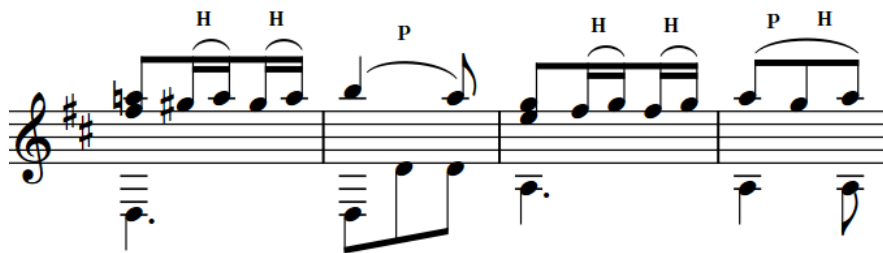
[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

Hammer-ons and pull-offs

Hammer-ons and pull-offs involve performers tapping or plucking the strings of fretted instruments with their left hand strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking, producing a legato effect. Ligados are a combination of at least one hammer-on and one pull-off in a single phrase.

Hammer-ons and pull-offs are notated as the letters H or P, respectively, combined with a slur spanning the corresponding notes. Dorico Elements automatically centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on slurs. For ligados, each hammer-on/pull-off indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.



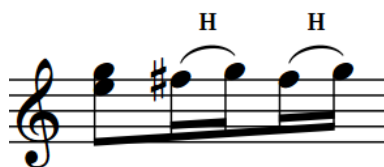
A phrase containing hammer-ons, a pull-off, and a ligado

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual hammer-on/pull-off indications.

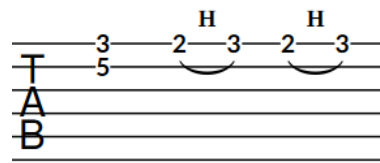
In Dorico Elements, hammer-on/pull-off indications are considered properties of notes.

Hammer-ons

Hammer-ons specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Hammer-ons require at least two notes on the same string with an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D. In Dorico Elements, hammer-ons appear as a letter H.



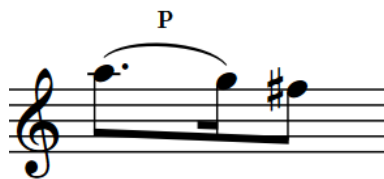
Hammer-ons on notation staff



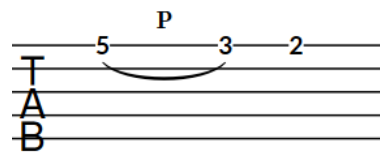
Hammer-ons on tablature

Pull-offs

Pull-offs specify that the performer should pluck the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Pull-offs require at least two notes on the same string with a descending pitch direction, such as D-C. In Dorico Elements, pull-offs appear as a letter P.



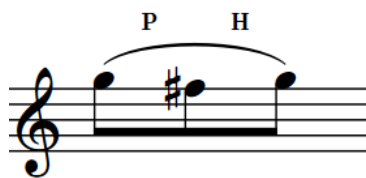
Pull-off on notation staff



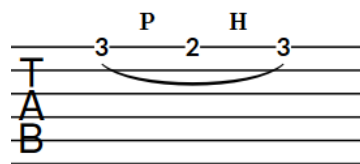
Pull-off on tablature

Ligados

Ligados specify that the performer should both hammer on and pull off notes within a single phrase. Ligados require at least three notes on the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C. In Dorico Elements, ligados comprise at least one hammer-on and pull-off.



Ligado on notation staff



Ligado on tablature

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs](#) on page 364

[Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques](#) on page 1142



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Fingerings for fretted instruments](#) on page 981

Showing notes as dead notes

You can show individual notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes. Dead notes are notated with cross noteheads on notation staves and with an X on tablature.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments that you want to show as dead notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dead note** in the **Guitar Techniques** group.

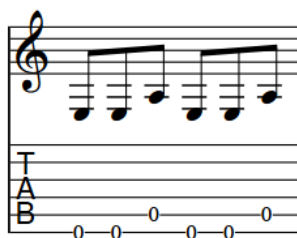
RESULT

The selected notes are shown as dead notes.

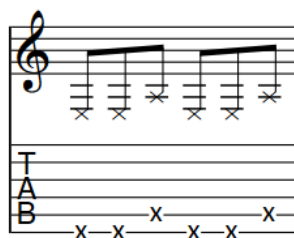
NOTE

This does not currently affect their sound in playback; this is planned for future versions.

EXAMPLE



Normal notes



Dead notes



RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Inputting notes on tablature](#) on page 242
- [Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066
- [Tablature](#) on page 1330

Changing vibrato bar dip intervals

You can change the intervals of individual vibrato bar dips. By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

- Select the vibrato bar dips whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
- In the Properties panel, change the value for **Interval above** in the **Ornaments** group.
For example, enter **1** for a half step interval, **2** for a whole step interval, or **3** for a minor third interval.

RESULT

The interval of the selected vibrato bar dips is changed.

EXAMPLE



Vibrato bar dip with half step interval



Vibrato bar dip with whole step interval



Vibrato bar dip with minor third interval



RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover](#) on page 362
- [Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel](#) on page 362
- [Changing ornament intervals](#) on page 1090
- [Trill intervals](#) on page 1097

Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques

You can show individual tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose guitar technique staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Technique placement** in the **Guitar Techniques** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the staff-relative placement of vibrato bar dips and lines by selecting them and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives](#) on page 1129

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Deleting guitar techniques

You can remove vibrato bar scoops and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications from notes after you have input them. However, because these guitar techniques are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar techniques.
 2. Remove guitar techniques in any of the following ways:
 - To remove tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications, deactivate **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.
 - To remove guitar vibrato bar scoops, deactivate **Vibrato bar scoop** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.
-

RESULT

Tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications and/or vibrato bar scoops are removed from the selected notes.

Jazz articulations

Jazz articulations in Dorico Elements cover a range of note ornamentations that are idiomatic to jazz music, and brass instruments in particular.

Although they are often known as jazz “articulations”, these techniques function more like ornaments than articulations because they change the pitch rather than the duration or attack of notes. For this reason, they are considered ornaments in Dorico Elements. They are found in the Ornaments panel, and you can also input them using the ornaments popover.

Jazz articulations can be shown as a curved line similar to a slur, which is called a “bend” in Dorico Elements, and as a straight line, which can be solid, dashed, or wiggly, which is called “smooth” in Dorico Elements.

Each note can have a single jazz articulation on each side of it, one before the note and one after. Jazz articulations after notes can have different lengths.

The following jazz articulations can be shown before notes:

Plop

An approach into the note from above.



Plop (bend)



Plop (smooth)

Scoop/Lift

An approach into the note from below. A bend approach is a scoop, a smooth approach is a lift.



Scoop



Lift (straight)

The following jazz articulations can be shown after notes:

Doit

A rise in pitch after the note.



Doit (bend)



Doit (smooth)

Fall

A lowering of pitch after the note.



Fall (bend)



Fall (smooth)

Additionally, there are other jazz ornaments commonly used by brass instruments that you can add to notes in the same ways as inputting jazz articulations.

If your sound library includes samples for jazz articulations, Dorico Elements loads the required samples using playback techniques.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340
[Playback techniques](#) on page 787
[Glissando lines](#) on page 1115
[Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108
[Fingering slides](#) on page 986
[Lines](#) on page 1194

Jazz ornaments

Jazz ornaments are notations that are commonly used in jazz music and by brass instruments, such as flips and smears, that are positioned outside of the staff rather than beside noteheads like jazz articulations.

Jazz ornaments behave more like other ornaments than jazz articulations, in that they are items separate from notes, and so can be selected independently of notes in Write mode and added to notes in addition to jazz articulations. Because they are so commonly used alongside jazz articulations, in Dorico Elements they are also included in the **Jazz** section of the Ornaments panel.

You can input jazz ornaments in the same ways as inputting other ornaments rather than jazz articulations.

The following ornaments are considered jazz ornaments in Dorico Elements:

Flip



Smear



Jazz turn/Shake



Bend



NOTE

Jazz articulations are not currently reflected in playback.

RELATED LINKS

[Ornaments](#) on page 1090

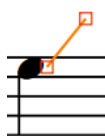
[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

Positions of jazz articulations

In Dorico Elements, jazz articulations are automatically positioned relative to the noteheads to which they apply, with any other notations on those notes, such as rhythm dots, accidentals, and back notes, automatically considered.

When multiple notes in a chord have a jazz articulation, Dorico Elements considers the best way to align them based on how close to the noteheads they can be positioned and how many jazz articulations to show in total. Dorico Elements allows a maximum of one jazz articulation per space, meaning fewer jazz articulations than noteheads are sometimes shown on cluster chords.

In Engrave mode, each smooth jazz articulation has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of jazz articulations. You can also move whole individual jazz articulations graphically.



Handles on a smooth do it in Engrave mode

NOTE

- You cannot move jazz articulations rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which jazz articulations apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new jazz articulations on the new notes.
- The following properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding smooth jazz articulation handle:
 - **In far offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown before notes; that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **In offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown before notes; that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Out offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown after notes; that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
 - **Out far offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown after notes; that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations](#) on page 340

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Deleting jazz articulations](#) on page 1149

Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations

You can change the type and length of jazz articulations after you have input them; for example, if you want to change a smooth do it to a long bend do it. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose jazz articulation you want to change.

2. In the Ornaments panel, click the jazz articulation you want in the **Jazz** section.
-

RESULT

The jazz articulation shown on the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can also change the type/duration of jazz articulations using the **In** and **Out** properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel.

EXAMPLE



Short bend doit



Medium bend doit





Long bend doit

Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations

You can change the line style of smooth jazz articulations individually. For example, if you want selected smooth falls to have straight lines instead of wavy lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes with smooth jazz articulations whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select notes with smooth jazz articulations on the same side; for example, only select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them.

2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following line styles from the **In line style** menu and/or **Out line style** menu in the **Jazz Articulations** group:
 - **Straight**
 - **Wavy**
 - **Dashed**

NOTE

In line style is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them, and **Out line style** is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations after them. Both are available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations on both sides.

RESULT

The line style of the selected smooth jazz articulations is changed.

TIP

You can reset jazz articulations back to their default line style by selecting them and choosing **Edit > Reset Appearance**.

EXAMPLE



Doit smooth with straight line



Doit smooth with wavy line



Doit smooth with dashed line

Deleting jazz articulations

You can remove jazz articulations from notes after you have input them. However, because jazz articulations are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove jazz articulations.
 2. In the Ornaments panel, click **Remove** in the **Jazz** section.
-

RESULT

All jazz articulations are removed from the selected notes.

Page numbers

Page numbers are used to give each page a unique number, and indicate its position relative to other pages. Just as in newspapers and books, musical scores and parts use page numbers to make sure the music stays in the correct order.

Because you can have multiple flows in a single project in Dorico Elements, you do not need to change page numbers manually in most cases. However, if you have separate files that together make up a single piece, page number changes are necessary to make sure the page numbers continue seamlessly from movement to movement.

In such cases, you can change the default page numbers. For example, if you want to have four pages of front matter before the first page of music in the score, but you want the first page of music in the score to be shown as page 1, you can insert a page number change on the first page of music.

Page numbers are layout-specific in Dorico Elements, meaning you can change the page numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can change the page numbers in the score but show the default page numbers in the parts.

Page numbers in Dorico Elements use a token to ensure the number is correct.

NOTE

You must have a text frame containing the page number token on every page on which you want page numbers to be shown.

Default page templates contain text frames with page number tokens. You can change the position of page number text frames in the page template editor, which changes the position of page numbers on all pages that use that page template. You can also move page number text frames on individual pages.

You can also change the type of number used to show page numbers in each layout. For example, if you want the front matter to use Roman numerals but the music pages to use Arabic numerals, you can change the type of number together with the page number.

RELATED LINKS

[Page templates](#) on page 647

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

[Tokens](#) on page 655

Page number paragraph styles

The paragraph style for page numbers controls all aspects of their appearance, including their font, size, and horizontal alignment. You can edit the existing page number paragraph style, and create additional page number paragraph styles, in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

- You can open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog by choosing **Library > Paragraph Styles**.

Dorico Elements offers a single paragraph style for page numbers by default, but you can create other paragraph styles for page numbers. For example, if you want page numbers to appear bold and centered at the tops of pages in full score layouts but appear italic and on the outer

edges of pages in part layouts, you can create a new paragraph style based on the existing **Page Number** paragraph style, but rename it and change the settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Creating paragraph styles](#) on page 758

Changing the page number numeral style

Page numbers can appear as Arabic or Roman numerals. You can change the numeral style of page numbers in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose page number numeral style you want to change. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Use** menu:
 - **Number**
 - **Roman numeral**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The page number numeral style is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding/Showing page numbers

You can hide/show page numbers in each layout independently, including specifying whether to hide/show a page number on the first page. For example, you can show page numbers on every page in the score but hide page numbers on the first page in the parts.

NOTE

To show page numbers, there must be a text frame containing the page number token on the page. The **First** page templates in the default page template sets do not contain text frames containing page number tokens, so you must add these if you want to show page numbers on pages that use these page templates.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show page numbers. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
 4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Visibility** menu:
 - **Always shown**
 - **Always hidden**
 - **Not on first page**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

- If you select **Always shown**, page numbers are shown on all pages that have a text frame containing the page number token in the selected layouts.
- If you select **Always hidden**, page numbers are hidden on all pages in the selected layouts, including on pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.
- If you select **Not on first page**, page numbers are hidden on the first page in the selected layouts, but shown on all other pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.

NOTE

Your per-layout setting for whether page numbers are hidden/shown above flow headings affects whether page numbers are shown on pages where they are higher on the page than flow headings.

RELATED LINKS

[Tokens](#) on page 655

[Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Hiding/Showing information above flow headings](#) on page 611

Hiding/Showing guide page numbers

You can hide/show guide page numbers at the top of every page in page view; for example, to make it easier to check the page number of pages that use the **First** page template. Guide page numbers are not printed.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Page Numbers**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Switching to galley/page view](#) on page 50

[Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers](#) on page 829

[Types of page templates](#) on page 648

Harp pedaling

Harp pedaling is a broad term that covers the specific requirements for notating music for harps. This primarily involves harp pedal diagrams, which are often necessary due to the way in which modern concert harps change their tuning.



A passage with a full harp pedal diagram at the start and two subsequent partial pedal changes

Harps have seven strings in each octave, one for each diatonic pitch C-B, unlike pianos, which have twelve keys in each octave, one for each half-step (semitone) degree between C-B. Therefore, harps have a mechanical action to change their tuning that includes seven pedals, with each pedal controlling the pitch of the corresponding note in all octaves. These pedals are organized into two groups, one for each foot: three pedals for the left foot and four pedals for the right foot.

Each harp pedal has three possible positions:

1. Flat or highest position: lowers the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step
2. Natural or middle position
3. Sharp or lowest position: raises the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step

NOTE

The lowest two harp strings, C and D, are not affected by the C and D pedal positions.

There are different ways to notate the pedal settings required for a piece of music or a passage within a piece. In Dorico Elements, you can show harp pedaling in the following ways:

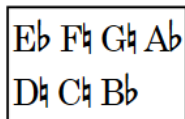
Diagram



Indicates the physical positions of the seven pedals. The vertical line represents the split between left-foot and right-foot pedals and the horizontal line represents the natural position.

- Pedals below the horizontal line indicate sharpened notes.
- Pedals above the horizontal line indicate flattened notes.

Note Names



Indicates the required accidentals for the seven diatonic pitches, arranged in two lines. Right-foot pedals are shown on top and left-foot pedals are shown below.

Any pitches that you input that do not fit with the current harp pedal diagram are considered out of range, and appear red when colors are shown for notes that are out of range. If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major.

In Dorico Elements, you can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover and you can automatically generate accurate harp pedal diagrams based on an entire flow or a specific passage of music. However, you can only input and show harp pedal diagrams on staves belonging to harp instruments; if you copy material from harp staves to other instruments, harp pedaling is automatically removed.

By default, harp pedaling is hidden in full score/custom score layouts and shown in part layouts. In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently and hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown. You can also determine when to show partial harp pedaling, such as when only a single pedal must be changed at one time.

Harp pedal diagrams in Dorico Elements affect the pitches played back in glissando lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the popover](#) on page 379

[Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the panel](#) on page 380

[Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music](#) on page 381



[Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064

[Glissando lines in playback](#) on page 1119

Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams

Harp pedaling can be shown as a diagram or using note names. You can change the appearance of harp pedal diagrams individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harp pedal diagrams whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:

- **Diagram**
 - **Note Names**
-

RESULT

The appearance of the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed in the current layout. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

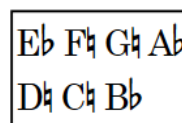
TIP

You can change the default appearance of harp pedaling in each layout independently in **Layout Options > Players > Harp Pedaling**.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedaling shown as a diagram



Harp pedaling shown using note names

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts

You can input and calculate harp pedaling in any layout, but by default harp pedaling is not shown in full score layouts, as they are usually only useful for the performer. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show harp pedaling.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Harp Pedaling** section, activate/deactivate **Show harp pedaling**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Harp pedaling is shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts.



NOTE

- You can hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown, but you cannot show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is hidden.
 - You can hide/show harp pedaling signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Harp Pedals**.
-

Hiding/Showing harp pedal diagrams individually

You can hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts in which harp pedaling is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
 - The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Select the harp pedal diagrams you want to hide, or the signposts of harp pedal diagrams you want to show.
 3. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
-

RESULT

The selected harp pedal diagrams are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden harp pedal diagram. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Signposts](#) on page 450
- [Annotations](#) on page 597



Hiding/Showing borders on harp pedal diagrams

You can hide/show borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams. For example, on systems with very tight vertical spacing, hiding borders on harp pedal diagrams can give you a little extra space.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams on which you want to hide/show borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Borders are shown on the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Note name harp pedal diagram with border hidden

Note name harp pedal diagram with border shown



Changing the thickness of harp pedal diagram borders

You can change the thickness of borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the note name harp pedal diagrams whose border thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Harp Pedals** group.

3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The thickness of borders on the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed.



RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Changing the padding around harp pedal diagrams

You can change the padding around harp pedal diagrams individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between harp pedal diagrams and erased backgrounds and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
 - The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the harp pedal diagrams whose padding you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Harp Pedals** group:
 - **Left padding**
 - **Right padding**
 - **Top padding**
 - **Bottom padding**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

The padding around the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Positions of harp pedal diagrams

By default, harp pedal diagrams are centered vertically between the two staves usually shown for harps.

You can move harp pedal diagrams to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move harp pedal diagrams graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

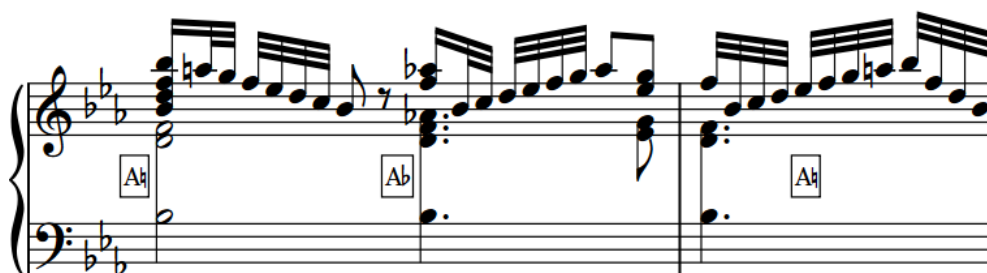
RELATED LINKS

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Partial harp pedaling

Partial harp pedal diagrams only show the notes whose pedal setting must change at that position, rather than showing the required settings for all pedals. This can make those changes immediately clear to the performer, as they have fewer pedals to read.



Partial pedal diagrams for a sequence containing several quick pedal changes

You can allow partial harp pedaling for individual harp pedal diagrams and you can set a maximum threshold of pedal changes at a single position, above which all harp pedal diagrams must show all pedals. This is because performers are used to the pattern of note names in complete harp pedal diagrams, and if there are many changes in a partial harp pedal diagram, this can be harder to read than a complete one.

By default, Dorico Elements shows notes in partial harp pedal diagrams on two lines with right-foot pedals on top and left-foot pedals below.

NOTE

Only harp pedal diagrams using note names can be shown as partial.


Allowing/Disallowing partial harp pedaling


You can allow/disallow partial harp pedaling for individual note name harp pedal diagrams. The default setting in Dorico Elements is to allow partial harp pedaling for up to three pedal changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.
 - Harp pedal diagrams positioned at the very beginning of a flow can only appear as full harp pedal diagrams.
-

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams for which you want to allow/disallow partial harp pedaling. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial pedaling** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

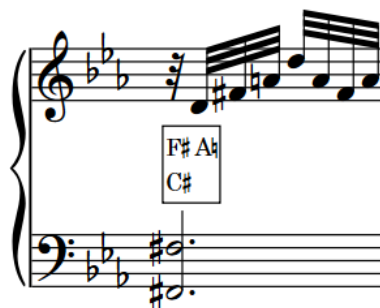
RESULT

Partial harp pedaling is allowed for the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and disallowed when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedal diagram showing all pedals



Partial harp pedal diagram

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts](#) on page 1155
- [Inputting harp pedal diagrams with the popover](#) on page 379
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Pedal lines

Pedal lines indicate to performers which piano pedals to use, and can also give performance instructions, such as how far down to depress the pedals and when to lift the pedal to clear the resonance.



Most pianos have either two or three pedals. These pedals are:

Sustain pedal

The sustain pedal controls the dampers on the piano strings, which is why it is also known as the “damper pedal”. It is also the most commonly used pedal. Depressing the sustain pedal removes the dampers, allowing the strings to resonate longer. Sustain pedals are usually on the right.



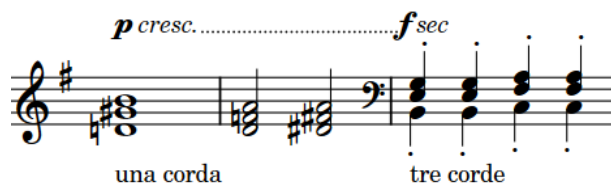
Sostenuto pedal

The *sostenuto* pedal only allows the strings of the notes currently depressed on the keyboard to resonate. It is also known as the “middle pedal” as it is usually in the middle of the other pedals.



Una corda pedal

The *una corda* pedal shifts the action inside the piano so that the hammers hit fewer strings than normal. Historically, this caused hammers only to hit one string, not the usual three, which is where the name comes from. Because this reduces the volume and impact of the sound, it is also known as the “soft pedal”.



Dorico Elements offers comprehensive notational and playback support for piano pedal lines. You can create pedaling for the sustain, *sostenuto*, and *una corda* pedals, with support for modern sustain pedaling techniques, including changing the pedal level over the course of a single pedal instruction.

You can change the appearance of pedal lines, including changing their start sign and continuation type. For example, if you want to show some pedal lines with a continuation line and some only with a sign at the end.

In Dorico Elements, pedal lines are considered playing techniques because they alter the sound produced by the instrument. Therefore, pedal lines are included in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode and you can input them using the playing techniques popover. However, pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, pedal level changes, start signs, end signs, and continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171

[Text pedal line signs](#) on page 1176

[Pedal lines in playback](#) on page 1178

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes

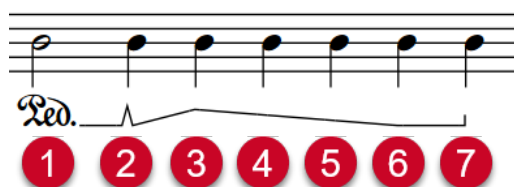
Pedal retakes indicate where a player should lift the sustain pedal, which dampens the piano's strings and clears the resonance, before depressing the pedal again. Pedal level changes indicate a change to how far the pedal is depressed.

Dorico Elements provides clear representations of pedal retakes and level changes for pedal lines with the line continuation type.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot input pedal level changes. However, pedal level changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them, and you can remove them in the same way as removing retakes.
- You can only add pedal retakes to sustain pedal lines.

EXAMPLE



- 1 Ped. glyph
- 2 Retake
- 3 One quarter depressed
- 4 Half depressed
- 5 Three quarters depressed

- 6 Fully depressed
 - 7 Line end hook
-

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173

[Positions of pedal lines](#) on page 1167

[Removing retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1167

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode

When you select sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode, handles appear at the start/end of each pedal line, and on any retakes or pedal level changes on the line. These handles allow you to move each part of the pedal line independently, and to change the pedal levels at the start, end, and at each retake or pedal level change.



A sustain pedal with a retake in Engrave mode

There are two handles for the start of the pedal line, three for retakes and pedal level changes, and three for the end of the pedal line.

NOTE

- Pedal levels cannot be lower than **0** or higher than **1**, as shown in properties in either the **Pedal Lines** group or the **Pedal Line Retakes** group of the Properties panel.
 - **1** is fully depressed.
 - **0** is not depressed.
- *Sostenuto* and *una corda* pedal lines only have a single handle at their start/end, which allows you to move their start/end positions graphically, but only horizontally.

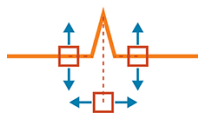
Start of sustain pedal lines

There are two handles at the start of pedal lines.



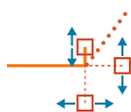
- The left handle moves the start point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The right handle changes the start pedal level of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards. This changes the angle of the pedal continuation line in relation to the next retake or pedal level change, or the end of the pedal line.

Pedal level changes and retakes



- The left handle changes the pedal level before the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level after the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle corresponds to the position of the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle to the right/left.

End of sustain pedal lines



- The top handle changes the hook length. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level at the end of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle moves the end point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS

[Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Changing the type of pedal line retakes

You can change existing retakes on sustain pedal lines to pedal level changes and vice versa.

For example, if you do not want the pedal to be released completely between the old and new levels, change the type to **Change Level** instead of **Retake**.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the retake or pedal level change whose type you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Retake type** in the **Pedal Line Retakes** group.
3. Choose the type you want from the following options:
 - **Retake**
 - **Change Level**

RESULT

The type of pedal line retake is changed.

NOTE



The appearance of the new type of pedal line retake depends on the pedal levels already set on each side. For example, a retake notch is only shown on one side of the retake if the pedal level on the other side is set to **0**.

Changing the global level for pedal lines

You can change the global level for individual sustain pedal lines and show the level as a prefix before the pedal line start sign, such as “1/2 Ped.”. For example, to indicate a pianist should only half depress the sustain pedal throughout a piece.

By default, the global level of sustain pedal lines is fully depressed.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose global level you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Global level** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **1/8**
 - **1/4**
 - **1/2**
 - **3/4**
-

RESULT

The global level for the selected pedal lines is changed and the selected level appears as a prefix before their start signs.

NOTE

Level prefixes do not appear for pedal lines with hook start signs.

EXAMPLE



Pedal line with default fully depressed pedal level



Pedal line with half depressed pedal level

RELATED LINKS

[Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171

[Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines](#) on page 1171

Changing pedal line levels

You can change the level at the start and end of individual sustain pedal lines, and at each retake or pedal level change. For example, if you want to specify how far to depress the pedal at specific rhythmic positions.

NOTE

You can only change the level of pedal lines with the line continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

Graphic Editing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following handles on each pedal line whose pedal line levels you want to change:
 - To change the start pedal level, select the right handles on start signs.
 - To change the pedal level immediately before retakes/level changes, select the left handle of retakes/level changes.
 - To change the pedal level immediately after retakes/level changes, select the right handle of retakes/level changes.
 - To change the end pedal level, select the right handles on end hooks.
 2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To move them downwards, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - To snap the level to 0 (not depressed), press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To snap the level to 1 (fully depressed), press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
 - Click and drag the handles upwards/downwards to the level you want.
-

RESULT

The pedal levels at the selected positions on the corresponding pedal lines are changed.

TIP

The following properties in the **Pedal Lines** group of the Properties panel are activated when you change the corresponding pedal line level:

- **Start level**
- **Start level at retake**
- **End level at retake**
- **End level**

You can also use these properties to change the pedal line level at the corresponding positions by changing the values in the value fields. For example, **1** is fully depressed and **0** is not depressed.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected pedal lines to their default pedal line levels.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173

Removing retakes and pedal level changes

You can remove pedal retakes and level changes without deleting the sustain pedal line or changing its rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to remove retakes or pedal level changes.
2. Remove the retakes or pedal level changes in any of the following ways:
 - Open the playing techniques popover, enter **nonotch** into the popover, then press **Return**.

NOTE

nonotch must be spelled as one word, without a space.

- Choose **Edit > Notations > Pedal Lines > Remove Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The retakes or pedal level changes at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff are removed. The corresponding sustain pedal lines return to their previous levels as set by either the start of the pedal line, or the retake or pedal level change immediately preceding the ones you removed.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing techniques popover](#) on page 367

[Adding retakes with the popover](#) on page 377

[Adding retakes with the panel](#) on page 378

[Merging pedal lines](#) on page 1170

Positions of pedal lines

The default placement of pedal lines is below the bottom staff, even if there are only notes in the upper staff for the right hand. They are placed outside all other notations, including octave lines, slurs, and articulations.

If one pedal is used, it is placed as close to the bottom of the staff as possible, while remaining outside of all other notations.

If multiple pedals are used simultaneously, they are organized below the bottom of the staff as follows:

1. Sustain pedal: closest to the staff
2. *Sostenuto* pedal: below the sustain pedal line
3. *Una corda* pedal: furthest from the staff

The beginning of the glyph/text that indicates the start position of pedal lines aligns with the note to which it applies. If you are using a line end hook to indicate the end of pedal lines, the hook aligns with the note or rhythmic position to which it applies.

You can move pedal lines to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

NOTE

You cannot move retakes rhythmically. You must remove them and input a new retake at the position you want.

You can move pedal lines graphically in Engrave mode. However, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached. You can move multiple pedal lines together, but only upwards/downwards. Similarly, you can move handles on multiple pedal lines together, but only to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS

[Text pedal line signs](#) on page 1176

[Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171

[Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Changing the position of pedal lines relative to grace notes

You can change the start/end positions of individual pedal lines relative to grace notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose position relative to grace notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Pedal Lines** group:
 - **Starts before grace notes**
 - **Ends before grace notes**
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkboxes.
-

RESULT

When the checkboxes are activated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned before grace notes.

When the checkboxes are deactivated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned after grace notes.

TIP

You can adjust the precise position of pedal lines in further detail in Engrave mode.

EXAMPLE



Pedal line starting/ending before grace notes



Pedal line starting/ending after grace notes

Splitting pedal lines

You can split sustain pedal lines at any rhythmic position with an existing item along their length into two separate pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to split the sustain pedal line. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only split pedal lines on one staff at a time.

2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Pedal Lines > Split Pedal Line**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The pedal line on the selected staff is split at the selected rhythmic position.

EXAMPLE



A single pedal line



The pedal line after being split into two

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move, lengthen/shorten, and edit both pedal lines independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually](#) on page 421

[Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines](#) on page 1171

[Changing the pedal line continuation type](#) on page 1173

[Text pedal line signs](#) on page 1176

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Merging pedal lines

You can merge existing sustain pedal lines together; for example, if you want to fill in a gap between two sustain pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the sustain pedal lines on the same staff that you want to merge together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only merge pedal lines on one staff at a time.

2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Pedal Lines > Merge Pedal Lines**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The selected pedal lines are merged together into a single pedal line.

For sustain pedal lines with line continuation types, retakes are added at the start position of each merged pedal line.

Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines

Pedal lines normally comprise a start sign, a continuation line, and an end hook. This indicates clearly to performers where to depress each type of pedal, how long to keep it depressed, and where to lift it.



- 1 Start sign
- 2 Continuation line
- 3 End hook

In Dorico Elements, you can change the appearance of each part of pedal lines individually; for example, if you want the start sign of an individual pedal line to show text instead of a glyph.

You can select whole pedal lines in Write mode and change most aspects of their appearance according to the type of pedal line, such as their continuation line or start sign.

For sustain pedals only, you can select each segment of a sustain pedal independently in Engrave mode, and set different properties for each segment. Sustain pedal lines have independent segments on each separate system on which they appear.

RELATED LINKS



[Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode](#) on page 1163

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines

You can change the appearance of the start of pedal lines individually. Pedal line start signs can be shown as variations of the traditional pedal line glyph, other symbols, or text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

The pedal lines you select must be the same type; for example, only sustain pedal lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign appearance** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
 3. Select one of the options from the menu.
The options are different according to the type of pedal line selected.
-






RESULT

The start sign appearance of the selected pedal lines is changed.

TIP

- The end signs of una corda pedal lines automatically match their start signs.
 - Deactivating **Sign appearance** returns the selected pedal lines to your default setting for start sign appearance.
-

EXAMPLE

Sustain pedal lines					Ped.	
	Ped. Glyph	Ped Glyph	P Glyph	Symbol	Ped. Text	Hook
Sostenuto pedal lines				Sost.	Sostenuto	
	Sost. Glyph	S Glyph	Symbol	Sost. text	Sostenuto text	
Una corda pedal lines		u.c.	una corda			
	Symbol	u. c.	una corda			

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you selected a text sign appearance, you can edit the text shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Editing pedal line start text](#) on page 1176



Changing the type of hook at the start/end of pedal lines

You can change the type of hook shown at the start/end of pedal lines individually.

NOTE

You can only change the start hook type of pedal lines that have a hook as their start sign, and you can only change the end hook type of pedal lines that have a continuation line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose hook type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:

- **Line start hook**
 - **Line end hook**
3. Select one of the following options from each menu:
- **No Hook**
 - **Vertical Hook**
 - **Slant Hook**
 - **Inverse Hook**

RESULT

The hook type at the start/end of the selected pedal lines is changed.

EXAMPLE


No Hook line end



Vertical Hook line end



Slant Hook line end





Inverse Hook line end

Changing the pedal line continuation type

You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines. For example, if you want some pedal lines to show a dashed line and a sign at the end, but others to show a line and end hook.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following continuation types from the menu:
 - **Line**
 - **Sign at End**
 - **Sign at End and Dashed Line**
 - **None**

RESULT

The continuation type of the selected pedal lines is changed.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS

- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes](#) on page 1162
- [Inputting pedal lines with the popover](#) on page 375
- [Editing una corda pedal line restorative text](#) on page 1178



Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in pedal continuation lines

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual dashed pedal continuation lines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines with dashed continuation lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose dashes you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:
 - **Dash length**
 - **Dash gap length**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

Increasing **Dash length** makes dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Dash gap length** makes gaps between dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the line width of pedal lines

You can change the thickness of continuation lines individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose continuation line thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line width** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
The value resets to **0** automatically when you first activate the property.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT



Increasing **Line width** makes pedal continuation lines thicker, decreasing the value makes pedal continuation lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Parenthesizing pedal line continuation signs

You can show individual pedal line continuation signs with/without parentheses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Pedal line continuation signs are shown by default at the start of new systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show continuation sign in parentheses** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Continuation signs are shown with parentheses when the checkbox is activated, and without parentheses when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Text pedal line signs

All types of pedal lines can have text as their start signs, instead of glyphs or hooks. You can override the text shown at the start of pedal lines that have text start signs, you can change the continuation text shown at the start of new systems, and you can override the restorative text shown at the end of *una corda* pedal lines.

Pedal lines that use a text indication rather than a symbol

For pedal lines such as *una corda* or sustain that have text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**, rather than the more ornate symbol, you can override the text shown at the start of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Continuation sign/text

When pedal lines continue onto subsequent systems, a continuation sign/text is shown in parentheses by default. If the pedal line is using text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**, rather than a symbol, you can change the text shown at the start of a new system and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Una corda pedal lines

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for the *una corda* pedal marking is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can override the *tre corde* text shown at the end of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

RELATED LINKS



[Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines](#) on page 1171

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Editing pedal line start text

You can change the text shown at the start of individual pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.

4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text shown at the start of the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Text** restores the default start text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



Editing pedal line continuation text

You can change the text shown at the start of subsequent systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The continuation text shown at the start of subsequent systems for the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Continuation text** restores the default continuation text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.



Editing una corda pedal line restorative text

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for *una corda* pedal lines is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can change the *tre corde* text shown at the end of individual *una corda* pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to *una corda* pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *una corda* pedal lines whose restorative text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Restorative text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The restorative text shown at the ends of the selected *una corda* pedal lines is changed. Deactivating **Restorative text** restores the default restorative text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Pedal lines in playback

Pedal lines are automatically played back in Dorico Elements.

The three piano pedals send MIDI controllers as follows:

- Sustain pedal lines send MIDI controller 64 (Sustain).
- *Sostenuto* pedal lines send MIDI controller 66 (Sostenuto).
- *Una corda* pedal lines send MIDI controller 67 (Soft Pedal).

Some piano VST instruments, such as Pianoteq and Garritan CFX Concert Grand, support partial depression of the sustain pedal. Consult the manufacturer's documentation for more information.

Playback Options

You can find options for how Dorico Elements plays back pedaling on the **Pedal Lines** page in **Playback Options**.

You can control the following parameters of pedal line playback:

- The length of the initial pedal depression
- The length of a retake in the middle of a pedal line

- The length of the final pedal release
- Whether initial depressions and retakes are played before or after the onset of the notes or chords at their rhythmic positions

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

[MIDI CC editor](#) on page 701

Pedal lines imported from MusicXML files

Sustain pedal lines can be imported from MusicXML files. MusicXML can only describe the sustain pedal, and it cannot describe changes in pedal depression level.

Playing techniques

The term “playing techniques” covers a wide range of instructions intended to tell performers to modify the sound of the notes they are playing; for example, by changing their embouchure or changing the position of their bow, or by modifying their instrument, such as adding a mute or depressing a pedal.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of playing techniques:

Glyph playing techniques

Playing techniques that display symbols, such as up bow ∇ or down bow \blacksquare markings.

Text playing techniques

Playing techniques that display text, such as *pizz.* or *con sordino*.

You can find all available playing techniques in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode, organized by instrument family. For example, you can find pedal lines in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

Because pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, start signs, and continuation lines, they are documented separately. Pedal lines also have their own group of the Properties panel that is separate from the **Playing Techniques** group.



Musical phrase with glyph and text playing techniques, including grouped text playing techniques with a continuation line

Playing techniques can change how instruments play back. For example, inputting a *pizz.* playing technique on a violin staff activates a key switch that changes the sound produced by the VST instrument. Dorico Elements uses playback techniques to produce the required sounds in playback for the playing techniques you input, provided your sound library includes the corresponding samples.

Many playing techniques that only appear once in the music nonetheless imply that the playing technique continues. For example, *pizzicato* usually appears once but applies until the next playing technique, such as *arco*. In Dorico Elements, you can show continuation lines after and between playing techniques to convey clearly to performers the notes to which you want them to apply. You can also group multiple playing techniques together.

Playing technique texts use a plain font, neither bold nor italic, so they are not confused with dynamics and expressive text.

TIP

You can change different aspects of the **Playing Technique Font** font style in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog. Pedal lines use a separate font style to other playing techniques.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Pedal lines](#) on page 1161

[String indicators](#) on page 993

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

[Exporting text](#) on page 102



Adding text to playing techniques

You can add text to playing techniques after they have been input; for example, to clarify the intention of the playing technique. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

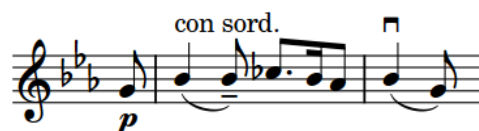
PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Suffix** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected playing techniques and appears after them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Playing techniques without suffixes



Suffixes added to playing techniques



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Text pedal line signs](#) on page 1176

Erasing the background of playing techniques

You can erase the background of individual playing techniques; for example, to ensure they remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

- In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose backgrounds you want to erase.
- In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected playing techniques are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected playing techniques to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Text playing technique with non-erased background



Text playing technique with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas.



RELATED LINKS

- [Erasing the background of text items](#) on page 1361

Changing the erasure padding of text playing techniques

You can change the erasure padding of individual playing techniques, including changing the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text playing techniques whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group.
 - **L** changes the padding between playing techniques and their left edge.
 - **R** changes the padding between playing techniques and their right edge.
 - **T** changes the padding between playing techniques and their top edge.
 - **B** changes the padding between playing techniques and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.



RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding/Showing playing techniques

You can hide/show playing techniques individually; for example, if your expression map requires you to input a playing technique to trigger the correct playback but you do not want that technique to appear in the music. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques you want to hide, or the signposts of playing techniques you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
-

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden playing technique. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show playing technique signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Playing Techniques**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- You can input hidden playing techniques when using the playing techniques popover.

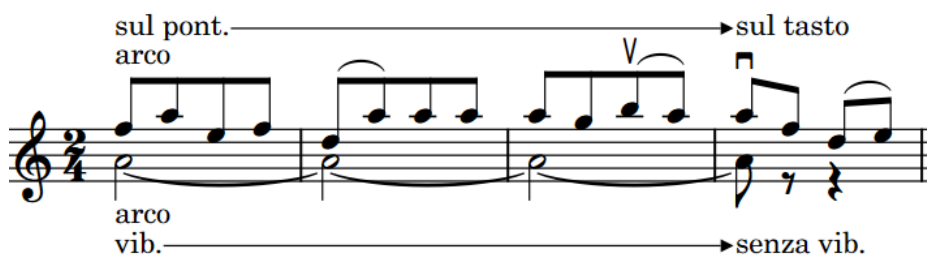
RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Expression maps](#) on page 761
- [Signposts](#) on page 450
- [Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60
- [Annotations](#) on page 597
- [Inputting playing techniques with the popover](#) on page 372

Positions of playing techniques

Playing techniques, both as text and symbols, are placed above the staff by default. On vocal staves, they are placed above the staff and below dynamics. In multiple-voice contexts, playing techniques for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff, and playing techniques for the down-stem voices are automatically placed below the staff.

Glyph playing techniques are center-aligned on noteheads. Text playing techniques are left-aligned with noteheads.



Placement of playing techniques with two voices on the same staff

You can move playing techniques to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move playing techniques graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

You can change the vertical order of playing techniques, but only within their stacking category.

RELATED LINKS

- [Playing technique continuation line components](#) on page 1188

[Groups of playing techniques](#) on page 1191

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

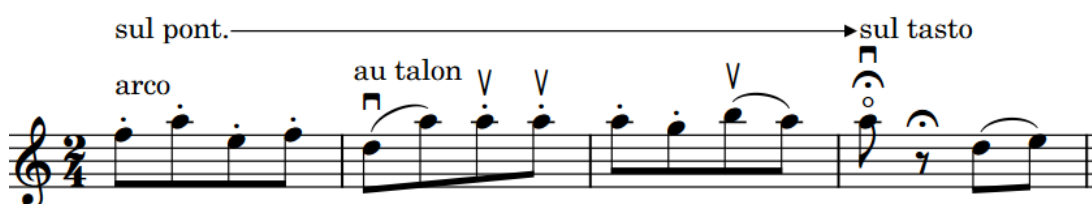
[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Changing the vertical order of playing techniques

You can change the vertical order of playing techniques within each stacking order category when multiple playing techniques exist at the same rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.



In Dorico Elements, there are the following vertical stacking categories for playing techniques:

1. Text/Grouped playing techniques, including playing techniques with continuation lines: furthest from the staff
2. Bowing marks: inside text/grouped playing techniques by default, but outside fermatas
3. Glyph playing techniques: closest to the staff, and inside fermatas



Musical passage containing all vertical stacking categories for playing techniques

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose vertical order you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The order of the selected playing techniques relative to other playing techniques in the same stacking category, either at the same rhythmic position or along their duration, is changed. This also affects other playing techniques in the same groups.

Playing techniques with higher **Tucking index** values are placed further from the staff, while playing techniques with lower values are placed closer.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Tucking index properties](#) on page 518

[Types of fermatas](#) on page 1011

Playing technique continuation lines

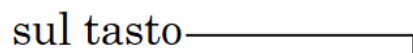
Playing technique continuation lines convey exactly the notes to which playing techniques apply, and can also indicate a gradual transition between playing techniques.



A phrase with multiple playing technique continuation lines

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of playing technique continuation lines:

Duration line

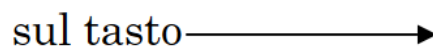


Indicates a specific duration to which the playing technique applies. The duration line for most playing techniques is a solid line with a hook cap at the end.

Playing techniques show duration lines when the following conditions are met:

- The playing technique has duration.
- The continuation type for the playing technique is set to show lines.
- The playing technique is ungrouped or is the final playing technique in a group.

Transition line



Indicates that the playing technique at the start must gradually turn into the playing technique at the end over the duration specified by the line. The transition line for most playing techniques is a solid line with an arrow cap at the end.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups.

NOTE

Playing technique continuation lines do not affect playback. The sounds produced in playback rely on the playback technique associated with the playing technique, the expression map settings, and the sound libraries loaded in the project.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Lines](#) on page 1194

[Line components](#) on page 1196

Playing technique duration

In Dorico Elements, playing techniques have an explicit duration when they apply to a specific range, rather than from a single rhythmic position onwards. Playing techniques with duration only affect playback within their duration and can show continuation lines.

In Write mode, playing techniques with duration have start and end handles that show their duration.



Start and end handles on a playing technique with duration

You can give duration to any playing technique in any of the following ways:

- Group playing techniques together
- Input playing techniques with an open end during note input and extend them
- Add playing techniques to a range of notes
- Lengthen playing techniques



String indicator (selected) with no duration



String indicator (selected) with duration and duration line

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

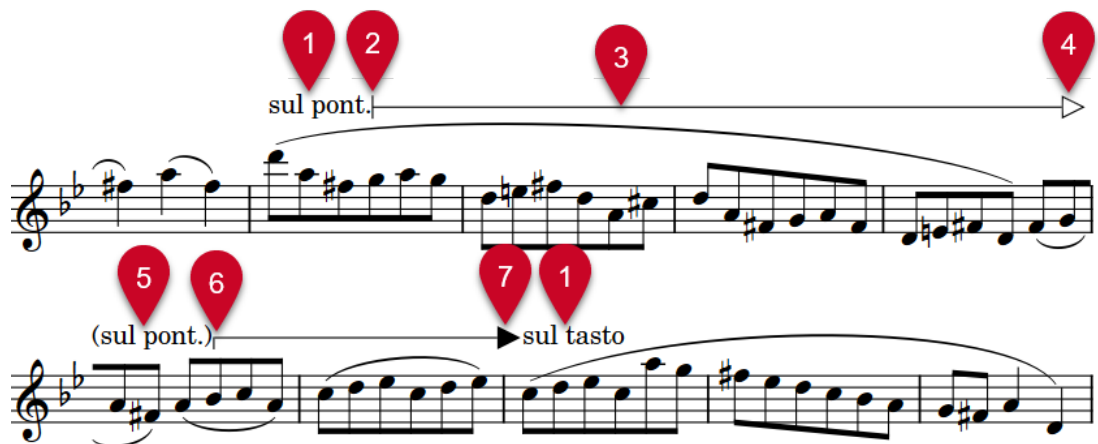
[Grouping playing techniques together](#) on page 1192

[Vibrato bar techniques](#) on page 1137

[String indicators](#) on page 993

Playing technique continuation line components

In Dorico Elements, playing technique continuation lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item. The duration line and transition line for the same playing technique can have different default components.



1 Playing technique

Controls the default appearance of the following line.

2 Start cap

Symbol shown at the start of playing technique continuation lines.

3 Line body

Horizontal line, pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a playing technique continuation line and extends across its entire length.

4 Continuation end cap

Symbol shown at the end of segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

5 Playing technique continuation sign

Parenthesized reminder of the current playing technique shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems. You cannot hide playing technique continuation signs independently of the playing technique.

6 Continuation cap

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

7 End cap

Symbol shown at the end of playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Lines](#) on page 1194

Playing technique continuation lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each playing technique continuation line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of playing technique continuation lines.

If playing technique continuation lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.



Moving playing techniques with continuation lines moves them both together, including any adjacent playing techniques and continuation lines in the same group. Moving continuation lines or continuation line handles moves the continuation lines independently of the playing technique.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514


Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines

You can hide/show duration lines for individual playing techniques. When hiding duration lines, you can show nothing or *sim.*. When showing duration lines, you can show a line or repeat the signs of glyph playing techniques. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to playing technique duration lines. They do not apply to playing technique transition lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show have duration.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **None**
 - **sim.**
 - **Line**
 - **Repeat the signs** (glyph playing techniques only)

RESULT


Duration lines are hidden after the selected playing techniques when you select **None**. When you select **sim.**, duration lines are hidden and *sim.* is shown once after each selected playing technique.

Duration lines are shown after the selected playing techniques when you select **Line**.

For glyph playing techniques, the playing technique is repeated for each note within the duration automatically when you select **Repeat the signs**.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Duration line shown Duration line hidden Duration line hidden but
sim. shown Signs repeated on each
note

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the style of the duration lines.

RELATED LINKS



[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the style of individual playing technique duration lines and transition lines; for example, if you want to show a single duration line as a wiggly line. You can change the whole line style, including the caps, or only the body style, which does not affect the caps.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose style you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Playing Techniques** group:
 - To change the whole line style, including caps, activate **Line style**.
 - To change only the body style, excluding caps, activate **Line body style**.
 3. Select the style you want from the menu.
-

RESULT

The corresponding style of the selected playing technique continuation lines is changed.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the body style of lines](#) on page 1206

Changing the caps of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines independently of their line body styles. You can also change the caps of individual segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose caps you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group:
 - To change the cap at the start of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
 - To change the cap at the end of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.
 - To change the cap at the start of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
 - To change the cap at the end of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation end cap**.
3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected playing technique continuation lines are changed.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the style of individual playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the caps of lines](#) on page 1207

Groups of playing techniques

Groups of playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move individual playing techniques within a group, the lengths of any continuation lines on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of playing techniques



The same group of playing techniques with adjusted transition lines after the middle playing technique moved rhythmically

Two or more playing techniques are automatically grouped together if they are adjoining with duration between them and were added to existing music together or input in sequence during note input.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups. The final playing technique in playing technique groups can show a duration line if it has duration.

All of the playing techniques in a group are highlighted when any of the playing techniques in the group are selected.



In Engrave mode, you can move each playing technique and continuation line within a group individually. Playing techniques in groups are attached to continuation lines, meaning that if you move a playing technique, any adjacent continuation lines automatically move with it. Groups of playing techniques have a handle at the start of the group, which controls the vertical position of the whole group.



NOTE

- You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.
- Groups of playing techniques apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have playing techniques grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can move playing techniques graphically in each layout independently and independently of their groups.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Playing technique duration](#) on page 1187

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Grouping playing techniques together

You can manually group playing techniques together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row, show transition lines between them, and can be moved and edited as a group.

NOTE

You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.

If you want to group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you must first ungroup them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to group together.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Playing Techniques > Group Playing Techniques**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are grouped together. Their durations are extended to reach the next playing technique in the group, and transition lines are shown between playing techniques in the group.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

Ungrouping playing techniques and removing playing techniques from groups

You can ungroup playing techniques so that all playing techniques in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected playing techniques from groups while leaving other playing techniques in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the playing techniques appear.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To ungroup all playing techniques in the selected groups, choose **Edit > Notations > Playing Techniques > Ungroup Playing Techniques**.
 - To remove only the selected playing techniques from their groups, choose **Edit > Notations > Playing Techniques > Remove Playing Technique from Group**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques or all playing techniques are removed from the selected groups. Playing techniques that previously had transition lines now appear with duration lines.

Lines

Lines can convey a variety of meanings in music, such as indicating which hand to use in piano music or a gradual change in bow pressure. In Dorico Elements, lines can be vertical, horizontal, or angled between notes and have different styles and appearances.



A phrase containing horizontal and vertical lines that convey a range of meanings

NOTE

Due to their generic designs, such as a dashed line with arrow end cap, lines in Dorico Elements have no definitive musical meaning and function primarily graphically, meaning they do not affect playback. Dorico Elements includes dedicated features for specific notations that affect playback if applicable, such as dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills.

The following types of lines are available in Dorico Elements:

Horizontal lines

Horizontal lines span a specified duration; that is, they start at one rhythmic position and end at a later rhythmic position. They might indicate a change over time, such as a wedge that represents bow pressure, or suggest a link between notes, such as a bracket spanning the theme in a fugue or a straight line between notes showing where a melody moves to a different staff.

By default, horizontal lines only apply to single staves. However, there are certain situations where you require a horizontal line to appear in all part layouts but only at system object positions in the full score layout. You can input horizontal lines that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

Attachment types control the positions of horizontal lines and certain aspects of their functionality. Horizontal lines can have different attachment types at their start and end. For example, a line can be attached to a notehead at the start, but attached to a barline at the end.

NOTE

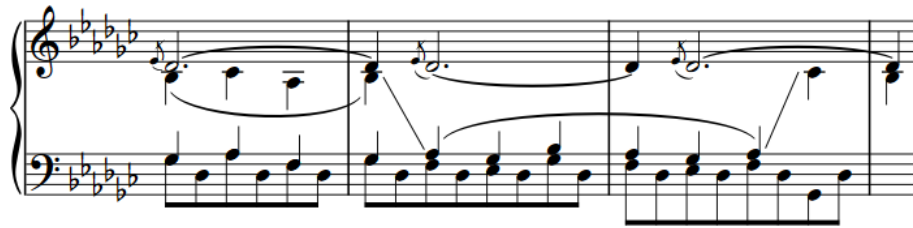
You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.

In Dorico Elements, each end of horizontal lines can have the following attachment types:

- **Notehead-attached**

Attached to an individual note independently of its rhythmic position, meaning that the ends of notehead-attached lines move with notes if you change their

pitch or move them rhythmically. Notehead-attached lines can be both angled or horizontal, as their end positions and resulting angles are determined by the interval between the start and end notes.



A phrase containing two notehead-attached lines, showing where the melody moves between piano staves

- **Barline-attached**

Attached to a rhythmic position and aligned with barlines, if their rhythmic positions coincide with barline positions. Barline-attached lines are always horizontal.



A barline-attached line spanning two full bars

- **Rhythmic position-attached**

Attached to a rhythmic position and positioned relative to notes, chords, or rests at those rhythmic positions.

Rhythmic position-attached lines are horizontal and placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.



A rhythmic position-attached line spanning two full bars

Vertical lines

Vertical lines exist at a single rhythmic position and are positioned relative to notes or chords at that position. They might convey details about a specific moment, such as indicating which hand to use for specific notes in piano music.



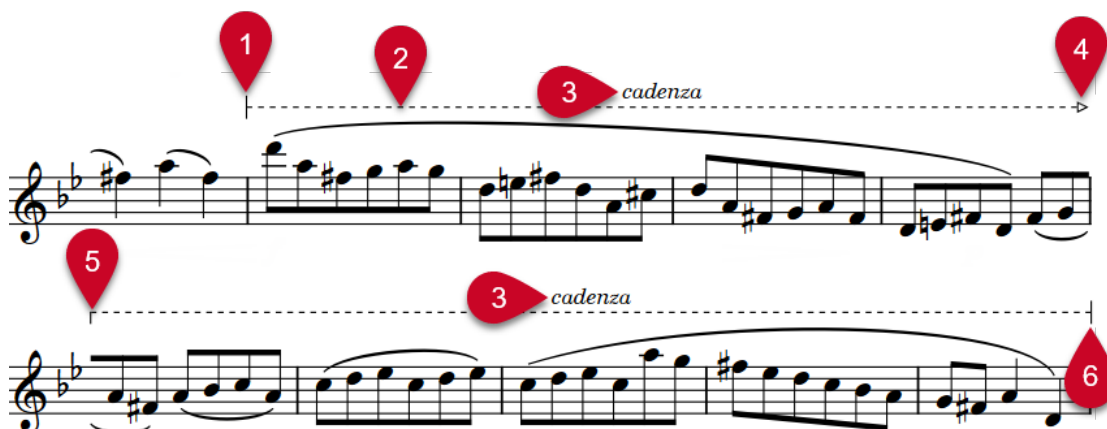
Vertical lines indicating which notes to play with the right hand

RELATED LINKS

- [Input methods for lines](#) on page 385
- [Lines panel](#) on page 385
- [Adding text to lines](#) on page 1208
- [Changing the placement of horizontal lines](#) on page 1201
- [Arpeggio signs](#) on page 1108
- [Glissando lines](#) on page 1115
- [Jazz articulations](#) on page 1145
- [Octave lines](#) on page 915
- [Trills](#) on page 1094
- [Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186
- [Pedal lines](#) on page 1161
- [Repeat endings](#) on page 1230
- [Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
- [Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

Line components

In Dorico Elements, lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item.



1 Start cap

Symbol shown at the start of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

2 Line body

Horizontal or vertical line, repeating symbols, dash/dot pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a line and extends across its entire length or height.

3 Text

Text shown in addition to caps, either centered in the middle of each line segment or only at the start or end of lines. On vertical lines, text reads upwards by default.

4 Continuation end cap

Symbol shown at the end of segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

5 Continuation cap

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

6 End cap

Symbol shown at the end of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

NOTE

Dorico Pro provides further options for customizing lines and line components, such as using text for caps and music symbols for annotations in the center of lines. You might encounter lines with different components than are available in Dorico Elements if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for lines](#) on page 385

[Changing the body style of lines](#) on page 1206

[Changing the caps of lines](#) on page 1207

[Adding text to lines](#) on page 1208

[Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines](#) on page 1210

[Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines](#) on page 1210

[Playing technique continuation lines](#) on page 1186

Positions of lines

The position of lines relative to notes and staves depends on the line type and, for horizontal lines, their attachment type.

Notehead-attached horizontal lines

Notehead-attached lines are positioned in relation to the corresponding noteheads; that is, starting to the right of the start note and ending to the left of the end note. They automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note or move them rhythmically, the line end positions move accordingly. Because their positions depend on the pitches of notes, they can appear both inside and outside the staff. If they are only attached to noteheads at one end, they remain horizontal but follow the staff position of the note to which they are attached.

Barline-attached horizontal lines

Barline-attached horizontal lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints align with barlines if their duration coincides with barline positions. If their endpoints do not coincide with barlines, they are positioned like rhythmic position-attached lines.

Rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines

Rhythmic position-attached lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.

Vertical lines

Vertical lines are positioned to the left of the notes to which they apply, including any applicable accidentals, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. If multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position, the most recent line is positioned furthest to the right; that is, directly to the left of notes or chords.

You can change the position/placement of lines in a variety of ways, such as showing vertical lines on the right of notes or changing the placement of horizontal lines to show them inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines](#) on page 1199

[Showing vertical lines before grace notes](#) on page 1200

[Changing the placement of horizontal lines](#) on page 1201



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Input methods for lines](#) on page 385

Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes

You can change the side of notes on which vertical lines appear; for example, to show selected vertical lines on the right side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Side** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Left**
 - **Right**

RESULT

The selected lines appear on the corresponding side of notes.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line on the left of notes



Vertical line on the right of notes



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines

You can change the horizontal order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Column** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT



The order of the selected vertical lines relative to any other vertical lines at the same rhythmic positions is changed.

Lines with higher **Column** values are placed further to the left, while lines with lower values are placed further to the right.

Enabling/Disabling vertical line collision avoidance

You can change whether individual vertical lines avoid collisions, which can affect horizontal spacing. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the vertical lines whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Avoid collisions** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected vertical lines avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Collision avoidance enabled

Collision avoidance disabled

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode; for example, to accommodate accidentals.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Note spacing](#) on page 507
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Showing vertical lines before grace notes

You can position individual vertical lines so they appear to the left of grace notes. By default, vertical lines are positioned after grace notes; that is, between grace notes and normal notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line before grace notes** in the **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

The selected vertical lines are positioned before grace notes.

Deactivating **Line before grace notes** shows the selected vertical lines after grace notes again.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line after grace notes



Vertical line before grace notes



Changing the placement of horizontal lines

You can show individual horizontal lines above, below, or inside the staff. By default, horizontal lines are placed above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**
 - **Inside staff**
-

RESULT

The placement of the selected horizontal lines is changed. Horizontal lines inside the staff are centered on the middle staff line by default.

TIP

You can also cycle through the different placement options for selected horizontal lines by pressing **F**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff position of lines shown inside the staff.
- You can erase the background of text on lines shown inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff

You can change the staff position of horizontal lines shown inside the staff, including changing the staff position of the start/end of lines independently of each other; for example, if you want lines to appear angled.

PREREQUISITE

- The horizontal lines whose staff position you want to change are placed inside the staff and have at least one barline-/rhythmic position-attached end.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

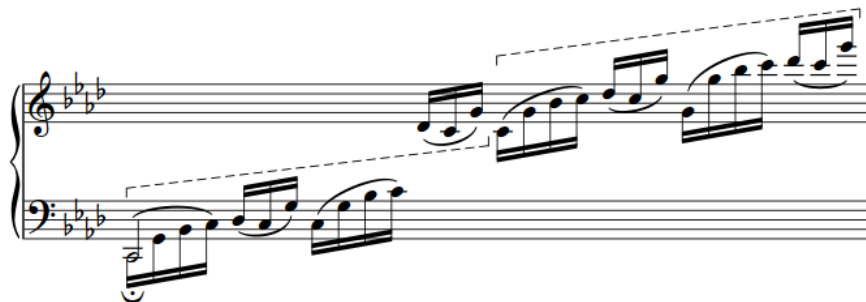
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines placed inside the staff whose staff position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Horizontal Lines** group:
 - **Start position**
 - **End position**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

The staff positions of the corresponding ends of the selected lines are changed according to the new values. For example, **0** is the middle line of the staff, **4** is the top line of the staff, and **-4** is the bottom line of the staff.

EXAMPLE



Horizontal lines inside the staff with different staff positions at their start/end

Length of lines

Dorico Elements automatically calculates the appropriate length for both horizontal and vertical lines.

- The length of horizontal lines is determined by the rhythmic duration of the line. Horizontal lines with different attachment types are positioned differently, which can affect their graphical length. For example, barline-attached lines can appear longer than rhythmic position-attached lines with the same duration.
- The length of vertical lines is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the line applies. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of vertical lines if pitches change or you add notes to, or delete notes from, chords.

You can lengthen/shorten both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, if you want an individual vertical line to extend above the top note in a chord.

Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines

You can lengthen/shorten horizontal lines rhythmically after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines. You cannot lengthen/shorten notehead-attached horizontal lines, except by lengthening/shortening the notes to which they are attached.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the horizontal lines you want to lengthen/shorten.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten one line at a time.

2. Lengthen/Shorten the lines in any of the following ways:
 - To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

- To snap the end of a single line to the next notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To snap the end of a single line to the previous notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

- When multiple lines are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.
 - When using the keyboard, lengthening/shortening lines only moves their end. You can move the start of lines by moving lines rhythmically, or by clicking and dragging the start handle of a single line.
-
- Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

RESULT

Single lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer.

Multiple lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting horizontal lines](#) on page 386

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines

You can lengthen/shorten individual vertical lines to different staff positions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, vertical lines automatically span the pitch range of notes in the voices to which they apply.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines you want to lengthen/shorten. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Vertical Lines** group:
 - **Top position**
 - **Bottom position**

3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

The vertical length of the selected lines is changed. Increasing the values moves the corresponding end up by staff positions, decreasing the values moves the corresponding end down by staff positions. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Inputting vertical lines](#) on page 387

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



Changing the start/end positions of horizontal lines

By default, rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines start before notes/accidentals and end immediately after the last note, chord, or rest at their end rhythmic position. You can change the start and end positions of individual rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines independently; for example, if you want them to start before noteheads rather than accidentals and end immediately before the following note, chord, or rest.

NOTE

These steps only apply to rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

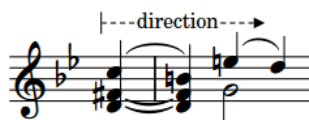
1. Select the rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines whose start and/or end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horizontal start position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Notehead**
 - **Notehead center**
 - **Accidental**
4. Activate **Horizontal end position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
5. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **End at right-hand side of final note**
 - **End on center of final note**

- **End immediately before following note**
-

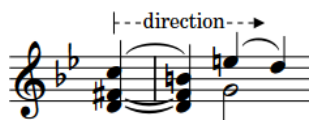
RESULT

The start and/or end position of the selected rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines is changed.

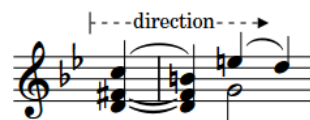
EXAMPLE



Horizontal line starting before the notehead



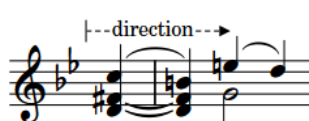
Horizontal line starting centered on the notehead



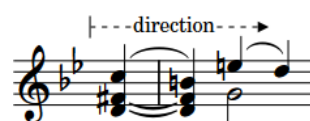
Horizontal line starting before the accidental



Horizontal line ending after final note



Horizontal line ending centered on the final notehead





Horizontal line ending before following note

Changing the body style of lines

You can change the body style of individual lines without changing their caps.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose body style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line body style** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
 3. Select the style you want from the menu.
-

RESULT

The body style of the selected lines is changed.

NOTE

This does not affect the caps of the selected lines.



RELATED LINKS

- [Line components](#) on page 1196
- [Lines panel](#) on page 385
- [Input methods for lines](#) on page 385
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the caps of lines

You can change the caps of individual lines without changing their body style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose caps you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group:
 - To change the cap at the start/bottom of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
 - To change the cap at the end/top of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.
 - To change the segment start cap of the selected horizontal lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
 - To change the segment end cap of the selected horizontal lines on previous systems to where the lines end, activate **Continuation end cap**.
3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected lines are changed.


NOTE

This does not affect the body style of the selected lines.

Changing the direction of lines

You can change the direction of both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, to make a horizontal line with an arrow end cap point to the left, or to make a vertical line with text appear upside-down with its text reading downwards.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Reverse** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

The direction of the selected lines is change. Text on vertical lines now reads downwards. Deactivating **Reverse** returns the selected lines to their default direction.

EXAMPLE





Horizontal and vertical lines with default directions

Reversed horizontal and vertical lines

Adding text to lines

You can add text to both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, to clarify the intention of the line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

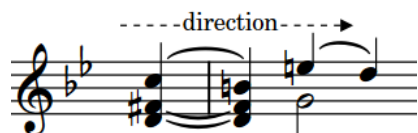
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.

4. Press **Return**.

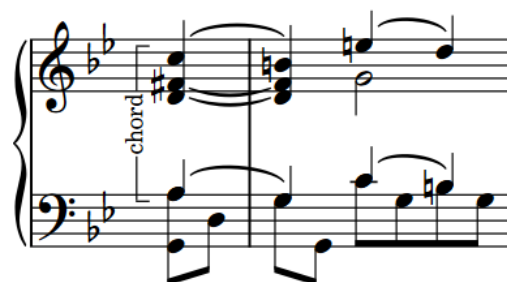
RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is shown centered in the middle of the selected lines. On vertical lines, it reads upwards.

EXAMPLE



Text on a horizontal line



Text on a vertical line

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you want text on vertical lines to read downwards, you can reverse the lines.
- You can erase the backgrounds of text on lines.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Line components](#) on page 1196

[Input methods for lines](#) on page 385

Line text font styles

There are different font styles for line text according to the line type. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing the font size to make line text appear larger.

The following font styles are used for line text:

- **Horizontal Line Font:** Used for text on horizontal lines.
- **Vertical Line Font:** Used for text on vertical lines.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply to the entire project, including part layouts.

RELATED LINKS



[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines

You can change the position of text relative to horizontal lines individually; for example, to show text above horizontal lines. By default, text is centered on horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

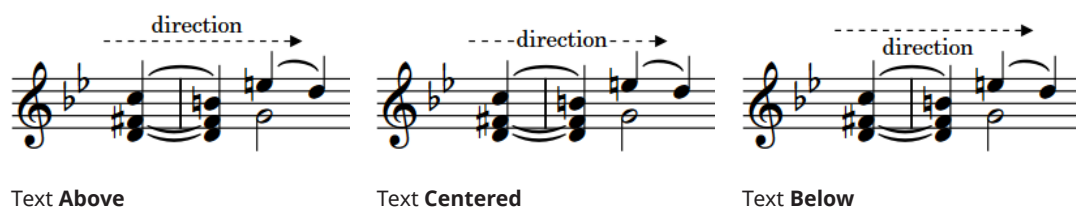
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Above**
 - **Centered**
 - **Below**
 - **Inside**
 - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected horizontal lines is changed. When annotations are positioned **Inside** or **Outside**, their position relative to the line changes according to the staff-relative placement of the line.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS


[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the placement of text relative to lines](#) on page 1211

Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines

You can change the position of text relative to vertical lines individually; for example, to show text on the left of vertical lines. By default, text is centered on vertical lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

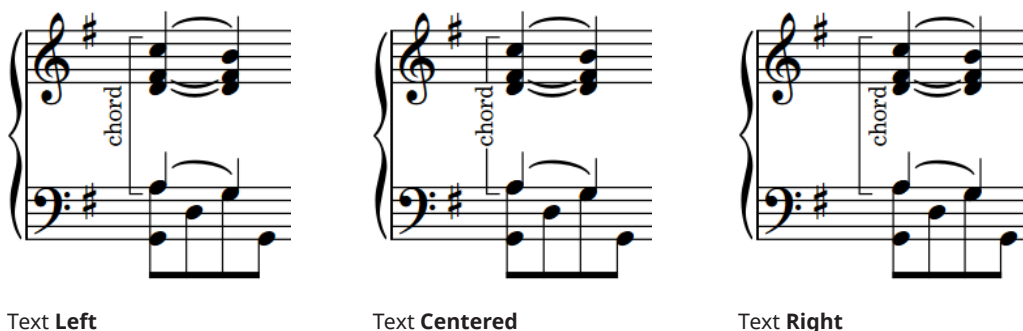
PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Left**
 - **Centered**
 - **Right**
-

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected vertical lines is changed.



EXAMPLE



Changing the placement of text relative to lines

You can change the placement of text relative to lines individually; for example, to show text at the start of horizontal lines or the top of vertical lines. By default, text appears in the center of lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text placement** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Start**
 - **Center**
 - **End**
 4. Optional: If you chose **Start** or **End** and want to change the offset from the corresponding end of the line, activate **Start/end gap** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group and change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The placement of text relative to the selected lines is changed. For vertical lines, **Start** places text at the bottom of the line, **End** places text at the top.

If you also activated **Start/end gap**, the gap between text on the selected lines and the corresponding end is changed.

RELATED LINKS



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the direction of lines](#) on page 1207

Forcing line text to be horizontal

You can force the text of individual lines always to appear horizontal; for example, to make text on vertical lines easier to read.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text you want to keep horizontal. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Keep text horizontal** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
-

RESULT



Text on the selected lines always appears horizontal, even if the line is angled or vertical.

Adding borders to line text

You can add borders to text shown on individual lines and change the border thickness; for example, if you want to make the boundary of the text relative to the line clear. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text you want to add borders to.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Borders with the corresponding thickness are added to text on the selected lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the placement of text relative to lines](#) on page 1211

[Adding borders to text items](#) on page 1358

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Erasing the background of line text

You can erase the background of text shown on individual lines; for example, to ensure they remain legible if they appear inside the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text backgrounds you want to erase.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of text on the selected lines are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns text on the selected lines to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Line text with non-erased background





Line text with erased background

Changing the erasure padding of line text

You can change the erasure padding of text on individual lines, including changing the padding between line text and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text erasure padding you want to change.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erase padding** properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
 - **L** changes the padding between line text and their left edge.
 - **R** changes the padding between line text and their right edge.
 - **T** changes the padding between line text and their top edge.
 - **B** changes the padding between line text and their bottom edge.
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end of horizontal lines, and one at the top and one at the bottom of vertical lines. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of lines.

You can also move whole individual lines graphically. If horizontal lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a vertical line and horizontal line in Engrave mode

RELATED LINKS

[Line components](#) on page 1196

[Positions of lines](#) on page 1197

[Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines](#) on page 1203

[Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines](#) on page 1204

[Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes](#) on page 1198

[Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines](#) on page 1199

[Enabling/Disabling vertical line collision avoidance](#) on page 1199

[Changing the placement of horizontal lines](#) on page 1201

[Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff](#) on page 1202

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are ordered sequences of letters or numbers that provide useful reference points, such as indicating significant changes in the music. They allow performers to co-ordinate easily in rehearsals and make the chronological sequence of the music clear.

In Dorico Elements, rehearsal marks follow an automatic sequence where each rehearsal mark has a unique index, ensuring there are never duplicate rehearsal marks.



A rehearsal mark, showing the letter G

By default, rehearsal marks in Dorico Elements appear as letters, but you can change the sequence type to show letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously.

In order to ensure they are easily noticeable, and cannot be confused with bar numbers when using numbers for rehearsal marks, rehearsal marks are shown in a rectangular enclosure.

In Dorico Elements, rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, rehearsal marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting rehearsal marks](#) on page 400
- [Changing the index of rehearsal marks](#) on page 1217
- [Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type](#) on page 1218
- [Going to rehearsal marks](#) on page 442
- [Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745
- [System objects](#) on page 1326
- [Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327
- [Exporting text](#) on page 102
- [Tempo marks](#) on page 1335
- [Bar numbers](#) on page 826

Positions of rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are placed outside the music, above the staff, and at the same positions as other system objects so they can be seen easily.

By default, rehearsal marks are positioned above barlines and to the right of clefs or key signatures at the start of systems. Although you can input rehearsal marks at rhythmic positions within a bar in Dorico Elements, this is not common practice.

When rehearsal marks coincide with tempo changes, Dorico Elements automatically positions tempo marks to the right of rehearsal marks. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts staff spacing to ensure rehearsal marks are correctly positioned.

You can move rehearsal marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.



The vertical spacing between the top two staves is increased to allow room for the rehearsal mark and the tempo marks.

You can move rehearsal marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want rehearsal marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting rehearsal marks](#) on page 400
- [Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514
- [Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

Changing the index of rehearsal marks

By default, the rehearsal mark sequence resets at the start of each flow. If you want the rehearsal mark sequence to continue across flows, for example, to avoid having multiple rehearsal marks with the same letter in the same project, you can change the index position of individual rehearsal marks.



Changing the index position changes the shown number or letter. For example, index position 1 appears as rehearsal mark A or 1, position 2 appears as B or 2, and so on.

You can also change the index position of a rehearsal mark to avoid showing a letter that could easily be confused with another letter or another number, such as I or O.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose index position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Index** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark changes according to the **Index** value and its sequence type. Any subsequent rehearsal marks without index changes in the same sequence follow the new index automatically. For example, if you changed a rehearsal mark from A to P, the next rehearsal mark changes from B to Q.

TIP



You can also change the sequence type of rehearsal marks; for example, if you want rehearsal mark C to appear as rehearsal mark 3.

Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type

Rehearsal marks can be letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can change the sequence type of individual rehearsal marks, and create secondary rehearsal mark sequences.

In Dorico Elements, you can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously. For example, you can have the main sequence of rehearsal marks showing letters, but also have a secondary sequence of numbers to mark different moments, perhaps entry points for a solo line, and also highlight prominent bar numbers within those sections.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose sequence type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sequence type** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Letters**
 - **Numbers**
 - **Bar numbers**

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark now displays a letter, a number, or the current bar number. If it is the first rehearsal mark in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows either A or 1. If there are already rehearsal marks in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows the next letter or number according to the index.

NOTE

You can change the index of a rehearsal mark sequence independently of other rehearsal mark sequences. However, you cannot change the index of rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.



RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting rehearsal marks](#) on page 400
- [Adding bar number changes](#) on page 836
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks

You can add both prefixes and suffixes to individual rehearsal marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

- Select the rehearsal marks to which you want to add a prefix or suffix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 - In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Rehearsal Marks** group:
 - Prefix**
 - Suffix**
 - Enter the text you want into the value field.
 - Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is added to the selected rehearsal marks as a prefix or a suffix.

Editing the rehearsal mark paragraph style

You can edit the formatting of the paragraph style used for rehearsal marks; for example, if you want to change the size of rehearsal marks in full score layouts without affecting their size in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **Library > Paragraph Styles** to open the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.
- In the paragraph styles list, select **Rehearsal Marks**.
- Optional: Select one of the available styles from the **Parent** menu.
If you select a parent style, an activated switch is shown beside all the options that are different in the selected paragraph style, compared to its parent style.
- Activate and change the available options as required.

5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

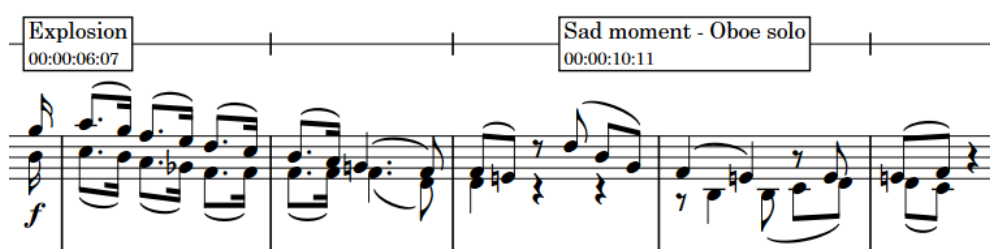
The formatting of the rehearsal mark paragraph style is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Markers

Markers are labels locked to a particular position in time, most commonly in relation to a video. They typically indicate an important moment that requires musical prominence, and composers often use them to help shape the writing process.



Markers on a timecode staff showing custom text and timecodes

By default, markers in Dorico Elements show the default text “Marker” and also include the timecode of their fixed position in time.

In Dorico Elements, you can use markers in any project. However, because they are most commonly used in conjunction with video, markers are included in the Video panel in Write mode. There is also a Markers track in Play mode that displays markers, and allows you to input new ones.

You can use markers to help find suitable tempos for your project, as Dorico Elements can calculate possible tempos between important markers so that the markers occur on strong beats in the time signature.

You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Any markers you input are automatically included when you export MIDI.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting markers/timecodes](#) on page 401

[Editing marker text](#) on page 1223

[Video panel](#) on page 402

[Changing the timecodes of markers](#) on page 1224

[Defining markers as important](#) on page 1225

[Timecodes](#) on page 1226

[Markers track](#) on page 534

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Hiding/Showing markers

By default, markers are shown in full score layouts and hidden in part layouts. You can hide and show markers in each layout independently; for example, if markers are helpful for the conductor to see but not for the players.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show markers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
 4. Activate/Deactivate **Show markers**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Markers are hidden/shown in the selected layouts.

Changing the vertical position of markers

You can show markers above the system, below the system, or on a separate single-line timecode staff above a selected bracketed instrument family group, which can make them clearer in the score. When markers are shown on a timecode staff, timecodes are also automatically shown below the timecode staff.

NOTE

You cannot show multiple timecode staves in a system.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of markers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
 4. In the **Markers** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Vertical position**:
 - **Above system**
 - **Below system**
 - **Timecode staff**
 5. Optional: If you chose **Timecode staff**, select the bracketed instrument family above which you want to show the timecode staff from the **Position timecode staff above bracket** menu.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The vertical position of markers is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

- If you show markers on a timecode staff, timecodes are also shown on the staff by default. If you only want to show markers on a separate staff and exclude timecodes, you must then change **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** to **Never**.

You can also change the vertical position of timecodes so they appear above/below the start of systems rather than on the timecode staff.
 - You can change the default distance between the timecode staff and other staves on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.
-

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the frequency of timecodes on the timecode staff.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the vertical position of timecodes](#) on page 1227

[Changing the timecode frequency](#) on page 1228



[Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type](#) on page 865

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

Editing marker text

The default text shown in new markers is "Marker". You can change the text shown in each marker individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Marker text** in the **Markers** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text shown in the selected markers is changed. It uses the **Marker Text Font** font style.

TIP

You can also enter custom text for markers when inputting them using the **Add Marker** dialog, and change marker text in the **Markers** section of the Video panel in Write mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Add Marker dialog](#) on page 402

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Editing the marker/timecode font styles

You can edit the formatting of the font styles used for all markers and timecodes project-wide; for example, if you want markers to appear bold and italic. Markers and timecodes use different fonts, meaning you can change them independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Font Styles** to open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.
2. In the font styles list, select one of the following font styles:
 - **Marker Text Font:** Used for markers
 - **Marker Timecode Font:** Used for timecodes shown in markers
 - **Timecode Font:** Used for timecodes shown on a timecode staff
3. Activate the following options, individually or together, to change the corresponding aspect of the font:
 - **Font family**
 - **Size**
 - **Style**
 - **Underlined**
4. Optional: If required, repeat steps 2 and 3 to change the other font.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The formatting of the selected font styles is changed project-wide.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754



Changing the timecodes of markers

You can change the timecodes of individual markers after they have been input; for example, if the video has been edited and the marker now occurs ten seconds later.

NOTE

Because this changes where markers occur in the project, this also moves markers relative to the notated music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow containing the markers whose timecodes you want to change.
 2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Video**  to show the Video panel.
 3. In the **Markers** section, double-click the timecode you want to change.
 4. Enter the new timecode you want into the value field.
 5. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The timecode of the marker is changed. The marker automatically moves relative to the music to reflect its new time position.

RELATED LINKS

[Video panel](#) on page 402

[Changing the initial timecode value](#) on page 1227

Defining markers as important

You can define individual markers as important, which allows them to be considered when finding suitable tempos in the **Find Tempo** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, click **Video** in the Notations toolbox to show the Video panel.
 2. In the **Markers** section, activate the checkbox in the **Imp.** column for each marker you want to define as important.
-

RESULT

Markers with activated checkboxes are defined as important. The **Find Tempo** button at the bottom of the **Markers** section becomes available.

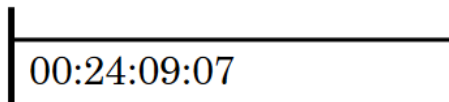
RELATED LINKS

[Find Tempo dialog](#) on page 403

Timecodes

Timecodes indicate an exact position in time, usually in the context of a video. They allow precise synchronization between multiple elements, such as music and moving images, and can be used as a reference tool.

Timecodes are displayed in the format hh:mm:ss:ff, which is two-digit hours, minutes, seconds, and frames.



A timecode on a timecode staff

In Dorico Elements, you can specify the type of timecode from the following types:

Non-drop frame timecodes

Each frame is numbered sequentially from the preceding one without skipping any frame numbers.

Non-drop frame timecodes are shown with the suffix **fps** and use a colon separator between seconds and frames; for example, 00:00:01:05.

Drop frame timecodes

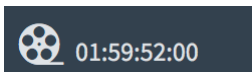
Some frame numbers are skipped in order to accommodate the difference in frame rate between 29.97 fps and 30 fps. In every minute except every tenth minute, two timecode numbers are dropped from the frame count.

Drop frame timecodes are shown with the suffix **dfps** and use a semicolon separator between the seconds and frames; for example, 00:00:01;05.

Timecodes in Dorico Elements are flow-specific, meaning you can set timecodes for each flow that are completely independent of the timecodes for other flows. You can set timecodes in the **Video Properties** dialog, including for flows without a video.

NOTE

The timecodes shown in flow cards in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode reflect the timecode at the start of the flow, which can be different to the timecode you set in the **Video Properties** dialog. For example, if you set the **Timecode start** to **02:00:00:00** but also set the **Flow attachment position** to **8** quarter note beats, and the tempo is 60 bpm, the timecode shown in the flow card is 01:59:52:00.



By default, timecodes appear in markers. You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Additionally, you can change the time displayed in the **Transport** window to be the timecode rather than elapsed time, which is shown by default.



RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting markers/timecodes](#) on page 401
- [Frame rates](#) on page 193
- [Video Properties dialog](#) on page 190
- [Editing the marker/timecode font styles](#) on page 1224
- [Changing the content shown in the transport display](#) on page 558
- [Markers](#) on page 1221
- [Changing the timecodes of markers](#) on page 1224

Changing the initial timecode value

You can change the timecode at which each flow in your project starts; for example, if you are using a separate project for the second reel of a film. You can also change the initial timecode in projects without videos.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow whose initial timecode value you want to change.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Video**  to show the Video panel.
3. In the Video panel, click **Properties** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.
4. Change the value for **Timecode start**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The initial timecode for the flow in which you selected an item is changed.

RELATED LINKS

- [Video panel](#) on page 402
- [Changing the start position of videos](#) on page 191
- [Changing the timecodes of markers](#) on page 1224

Changing the vertical position of timecodes

You can show timecodes either above/below the start of systems or on a separate single-line staff in each layout independently. For example, you can show timecodes and markers on a separate timecode staff in full score layouts but show only timecodes above the start of systems in part layouts.

NOTE

You cannot show timecodes on multiple staves in a system.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to show timecodes on a separate staff, you have changed the vertical position of markers so they appear on a separate staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of timecodes.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
 4. In the **Timecode** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show timecode**:
 - **Above or below start of system**
 - **Below timecode staff**
 5. Optional: If you chose **Above or below start of system**, choose one of the following options for **Timecode position relative to system**:
 - **Above system**
 - **Below system**
 6. Optional: If you chose **Above or below start of system** and want to change the gap between timecodes and the staff, change the values in the **Offset at start of system** value fields.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The vertical position of timecodes is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Your setting for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** also applies when timecodes are shown above/below the start of systems.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the vertical position of markers](#) on page 1222

Changing the timecode frequency

You can show timecodes at different intervals in layouts in which timecodes are shown on a separate staff. For example, you can show timecodes every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

NOTE

We do not recommend that you show timecodes every bar in layouts with multi-bar rests, as the result is illegible overlapping timecodes. If you want to show timecodes in part layouts with multi-bar rests, we recommend either showing timecodes only at the start of each system or not showing multi-bar rests in the layout.

PREREQUISITE

Markers are shown in the selected layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the timecode frequency.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
 4. Optional: If the selected layouts do not show timecodes on a separate staff, choose **Timecode staff** for **Vertical position**.
 5. Choose one of the following options for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff**:
 - **Start of system**
 - **Every bar**
 - **Never**
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing markers](#) on page 1221

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

Repeat endings

For music with repeated passages, repeat endings show which bars are played at the end of each repetition, with different endings each time if required. They are also known as “volta lines”, or as “first and second endings”, but in this documentation, we refer to them as “repeat endings”.

Repeat endings comprise two or more segments, where each segment contains a different possible ending. When you input repeat endings, Dorico Elements automatically inputs an end repeat barline at the end of the first segment. Segments in repeat endings are clearly marked with solid lines above and numbers that indicate the playthroughs in which the segment is used.



A repeat ending with three playthroughs divided across two endings

Dorico Elements allows you to create repeat endings containing any number of segments, and allows you to control which segments are used for each playthrough. For example, you might want a repeat ending with two segments but four total playthroughs, where the first two playthroughs use the first repeat ending segment and the final two playthroughs use the second repeat ending segment.

In Dorico Elements, repeat endings are categorized as system objects. Therefore, repeat endings follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551



[Types of barlines](#) on page 816

[Lines](#) on page 1194

Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings

By default, each segment in repeat endings is played once, so each segment shows a single digit that indicates the playthrough for which it is used. You can increase the total number of playthroughs for repeat endings individually so that segments are played more than once.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat endings whose total number of playthroughs you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **No. times played** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

NOTE

You cannot have fewer playthroughs than the number of segments.

RESULT

The total number of playthroughs in the selected repeat endings is changed. Dorico Elements adds additional playthroughs to the last closed segment in the repeat ending.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

Once you have set the total number of playthroughs, you can then change which segment is used for each playthrough.

RELATED LINKS

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551

[Muting notes/items individually](#) on page 548



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments

You can control how the total number of playthroughs is divided across the different segments in individual repeat endings. For example, if in a repeat ending with six playthroughs, you want to include playthroughs 1 to 3 in the first ending and playthroughs 4 to 6 in the second ending.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

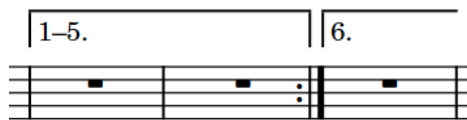
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an individual segment in the repeat ending structure whose included playthroughs you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Times played for segment** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
 3. Enter the number of each playthrough that you want to include in the selected segment, with each playthrough separated by a comma.
For example, for a repeat ending with six playthroughs, enter **4,5,6** to include the 4th, 5th, and 6th playthroughs in the second segment.
-

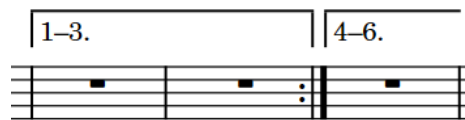
RESULT

The playthroughs included in the selected segment are changed.

EXAMPLE



Default distribution of playthroughs



Customized distribution of playthroughs

Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings

You can increase/decrease the number of bars included in each segment of repeat endings by lengthening/shortening each segment independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the repeat ending you want to lengthen/shorten.

NOTE

You can only lengthen/shorten one repeat ending segment at a time.

2. Select the circular handle at the end of the segment you want to lengthen/shorten.



The selected handle in the middle has a thicker line.

3. Click and drag the handle to the right/left to snap it to the next/previous barline.

NOTE

Segments must contain at least one bar.

4. Optional: Repeat steps 1 to 3 for each segment in the repeat ending.

RESULT

The selected segment is lengthened/shortened.

NOTE

- This does not automatically input or move repeat barlines. You must input and delete repeat barlines as appropriate manually.
- You can also lengthen/shorten the final segment in a single repeat ending by selecting the repeat ending and using the following key commands:
 - To lengthen the final segment, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To shorten the final segment, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[Deleting notes/items](#) on page 455

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Changing the appearance of repeat ending segments](#) on page 1234

Positions of repeat endings

Repeat endings are placed above the staff at the same positions as other system objects, and their hooks align with barlines. They are commonly positioned outside of other notations, but some long items, such as gradual tempo changes, can be placed above repeat endings.

You can move repeat endings to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move each repeat ending segment graphically in Engrave mode and independently of other segments in the repeat ending; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each repeat ending segment has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end.

If repeat ending segments cross system and frame breaks, you can move the segments on each side of the break independently.



Repeat endings are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want repeat endings to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514



[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

Editing repeat ending text

You can replace the text shown in individual segments in repeat endings with custom text. By default, it shows the playthrough numbers for the segment.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat ending segments whose text you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text shown in the selected segments is changed.

Deactivating **Custom text** restores the default text for the selected repeat ending segments.

NOTE

- Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.
- You can edit the formatting of the **Repeat Endings Font** in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog. For example, if you want all repeat ending text project-wide to appear in italics.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754



[Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings](#) on page 1230

[Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments](#) on page 1231

Changing the appearance of repeat ending segments

You can change the appearance and length of individual repeat ending segments, independently of other segments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat ending segments whose appearance you want to change.

NOTE

You must select either only final segments or only preceding segments.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **End of line** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Open, short**
 - **Open, full length**
 - **Closed**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected repeat ending segments is changed.



Lengthening/Shortening repeat ending hooks

You can lengthen/shorten the hooks in repeat endings individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot change the hook length of an individual segment in a repeat ending. Changing the hook length affects the whole repeat ending.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat endings whose hooks you want to lengthen/shorten.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hook length** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

Increasing the value makes repeat ending hooks longer. Decreasing the value makes repeat ending hooks shorter. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Repeat endings in MusicXML files

All aspects of repeat endings can be imported from and exported in MusicXML files.

However, while MusicXML can represent this, segments in the middle of sets of endings cannot have an open right-hand end in Dorico Elements.

Repeat markers

Repeat markers show that musical material is to be repeated, but unlike repeat endings, repeat markers often involve jumping to different positions and sections in the music instead of moving through the music consecutively.

The image displays two systems of musical notation. The first system shows a vocal line with lyrics: 'sah. sah. 2. Und im - mer 3. Es quoll und'. The piano accompaniment is shown below. The second system shows a vocal line with lyrics: 'nun wußt' ich wohl wie mir ge - schah'. Above the vocal line, there are two 'Coda' symbols (a circle with a cross) indicating the end of the section. The piano accompaniment continues below.

A mid-system coda section

In Dorico Elements, repeat markers are divided into the following types:

Repeat jumps

Specify the position from which players or playback must jump, such as *D.C. al Coda* or *D.S. al Fine*.

Repeat jumps are right-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol ends at that rhythmic position and extends to the left.

D.C. al Coda

D.S. al Fine

Repeat sections

Specify the destinations for jumps, such as *segno* or *coda*, or where the music should end, such as *Fine*. In Dorico Elements, coda sections that start mid-system are automatically separated from the preceding music with a gap. Coda sections at the start of systems are indented by the same amount.

Repeat markers are left-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol starts at that rhythmic position and extends to the right.



Fine

By default, repeat markers are shown on a single line, but you can show them on two lines individually to reduce their horizontal length if necessary. You can also customize their paragraph styles, including changing their font size, in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Showing repeat markers on one/two lines](#) on page 1239

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
[Changing the gap before codas](#) on page 1242
[Types of barlines](#) on page 816

Repeat marker paragraph styles

Repeat markers use paragraph styles to format their fonts, including their size, spacing, alignment, and other formatting options. Because the different types of repeat markers require different formatting, they each have a separate paragraph style by default.

Dorico Elements provides the following default paragraph styles for repeat markers:

- **Repeat Marker Jumps:** The default paragraph style used for repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Coda* or *D.S. al Fine*.
- **Repeat Marker Sections:** The default paragraph style used for repeat sections, such as *coda* or *Fine*.

By default, the formatting of these paragraph styles is the same but you can edit paragraph styles independently of each other in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog; for example, if you want to decrease the size of repeat jumps but leave repeat sections with their default size.

NOTE

The **Repeat Marker Jumps** paragraph style inherits settings from the **Repeat Marker Sections** style. If you change the **Repeat Marker Sections** paragraph style, this also affects any corresponding options for the **Repeat Marker Jumps** paragraph style that have not been overridden.

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
[Editing repeat marker text](#) on page 1238
[Showing repeat markers on one/two lines](#) on page 1239

Changing the index for repeat markers



You can change the index of individual repeat markers; for example, if a flow requires two different codas with different symbols so players can tell them apart.

By default, all repeat markers of the same type have the same appearance, even when there are multiple repeat markers in the flow.

NOTE

You cannot change the index of *Fine* or *D.C.* repeat markers.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat marker whose index you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together as appropriate for your selection, in the **Repeat Markers** group:
 - **Marker index**
 - **'Jump to' index**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

NOTE

You can only enter values between 1 and 3.

RESULT

Marker index changes the order of the selected repeat marker relative to other repeat markers of the same type.

'Jump to' index changes the destination of the selected repeat marker.

EXAMPLE

If you have two codas in a flow with two different D.S. al Coda markers, you might set **Marker index** to **1** for the first coda and **2** for the second, then set **'Jump to' index** to **1** for the first D.S. al Coda marker and **2** for the second.

D.S. % al \oplus

D.S. al Coda marker with default indexes

D.S. %% al \oplus 2

D.S. al Coda marker with both indexes set to 2

RELATED LINKS

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

Editing repeat marker text

You can change the text shown in individual repeat markers; for example, if you are typesetting a score with an unusual repeat marker instruction.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text shown in the selected repeat markers is changed. Segno symbols and coda symbols in *D.C./D.S.* repeat jumps are removed and replaced with your custom text.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503


Showing repeat markers on one/two lines

You can show individual repeat markers either on a single line or spread across two lines, independently of your per-layout settings; for example, if a single long repeat marker extends beyond the page margins in one part layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the word wrapping of repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Fine* and *D.S. al Coda*, that do not have custom text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat markers whose word wrapping you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Word wrap** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

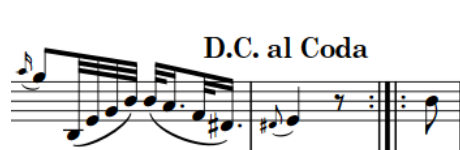
The selected repeat markers are shown on two lines when the checkbox is activated, and on one line when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, repeat markers follow your per-layout setting for word wrapping.

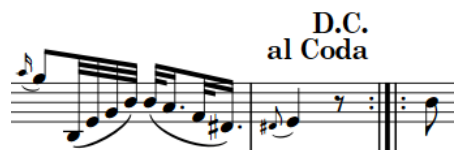
TIP

You can show all repeat markers on two lines in each layout independently in **Layout Options > Staves and Systems > Repeat Markers**. For example, you can show them on one line in the full score but on two lines in part layouts.

EXAMPLE



Repeat marker without word wrapping



Repeat marker with word wrapping

RELATED LINKS

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Hiding/Showing repeat markers

You can hide/show repeat markers individually; for example, if you want a separated coda section without showing the coda symbol and text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat markers you want to hide, or the signposts of repeat markers you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Repeat Markers** group.

RESULT

The selected repeat markers are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden repeat marker. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

You can hide/show repeat marker signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Repeat Markers**.

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Annotations](#) on page 597

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

Positions of repeat markers

Repeat markers are placed above the staff by default, and at the same positions as other system objects. Coda sections are separated from the preceding music by a gap in the system.

You can move repeat markers to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move repeat markers graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

You can change the default staff-relative placement of repeat markers in each layout independently.

Repeat markers are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want repeat markers to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

Changing the staff-relative placement of repeat markers

You can show repeat markers either above, below, or both above and below the staff in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-placement of repeat markers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Repeat Markers** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement for repeat jumps and 'Fine'**:
 - **Above staff**
 - **Below staff**
 - **Above and below bottom staff**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.



RESULT

The staff-relative placement of all repeat markers is changed in the selected layouts.

Changing the gap before codas

You can change the gap preceding individual coda sections.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the codas whose gap you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Coda gap width** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The gap preceding the selected coda sections is changed.

RELATED LINKS

- [Moving the start/end of systems on page 513](#)
- [Changing the first system indent on page 1328](#)
- [Hiding/Showing systemic barlines and brackets/braces on page 820](#)
- [Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 405](#)

Repeat counts

Repeat counts at end repeat barlines tell performers how many times to play through sections of music. This is particularly helpful for sections played through three or more times, as end repeat barlines typically indicate that the preceding music is played through twice.

By default, Dorico Elements shows repeat counts at system object positions for end repeat barlines set to have three or more playthroughs, when repeats are included in playback.



The image shows a musical score snippet in G major (one sharp) and 4/4 time. The top staff is a vocal line with lyrics "Ter-ry Mc-Leare." and a fermata over the final note. The bottom staff is a piano accompaniment. The section ends with a double bar line and a repeat sign. Above the repeat sign, the text "Play 4 times" is written. The repeat sign is right-aligned with the end of the section.

Repeat count at the end of a section, indicating it should be played four times

Repeat counts are right-aligned with their end repeat barline by default. You can change the location of repeat counts; for example, if you want to show repeat counts at both the start and end of repeated sections, or hide repeat counts entirely. Repeat counts shown at the start of repeated sections are left-aligned with start repeat barlines.

TIP

Repeat counts use the **Repeat Counts** paragraph style, which you can edit in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Including/Excluding repeats in playback](#) on page 550

[Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Changing the application language](#) on page 57

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Bar repeat counts](#) on page 1247



[Slash region counts](#) on page 1265

[Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254

Changing the location of repeat counts

You can change the location of individual repeat counts relative to the repeated section. For example, if you want to show some repeat counts at the start of repeated sections or hide some repeat counts entirely. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Repeats are included in playback.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the end repeat barlines or repeat counts whose count location you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count location** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Start**
 - **End**
 - **Neither**
 - **Both**

RESULT

The location of the selected repeat counts is changed. Repeat counts shown at the start of repeated sections are left-aligned with the start repeat barlines that correspond to the selected end repeat barlines.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE

Both **Neither**

RELATED LINKS

[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

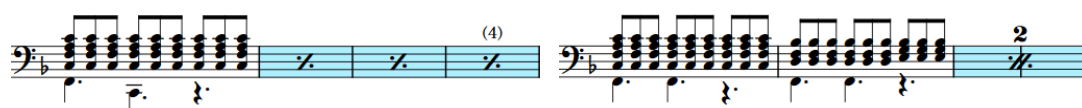
[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Bar repeats

Bar repeats indicate that the musical material in preceding bars must be repeated exactly, but without notating that material again. Bar repeats can comprise groups of one, two, or four bars.

For example, a one-bar repeat indicates that the material in one bar is repeated, meaning every bar in the region repeats the same material. A four-bar repeat indicates that the material in the previous four bars is repeated.



One-bar repeat region

Two-bar repeat region

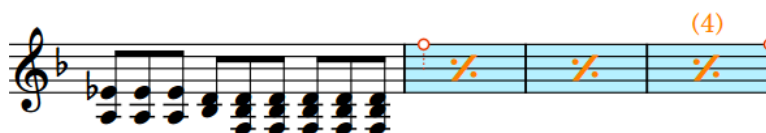


Four-bar repeat region

This notation short-hand can make repetitive music easier to read, as performers must only read the repeated phrase once and then simply count how many times they repeat it. Bar repeats can also save horizontal space, as bar repeat symbols are usually narrower than the equivalent fully written-out bars.

In Dorico Elements, bar repeat regions are used to display bar repeats, meaning as many bar repeat symbols as necessary to fill the region are shown automatically.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



By default, bar repeat regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

You can also show adjacent bar repeat regions; for example, if you want to use a two-bar repeat in the first iteration of a phrase, and then a four-bar repeat to indicate the whole phrase is repeated. When two different bar repeat regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Phrase containing two adjacent bar repeat regions

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting bar repeats](#) on page 418
- [Repeats popover](#) on page 406
- [Bar repeat counts](#) on page 1247
- [Bar repeat grouping](#) on page 1251
- [Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279
- [Types of barlines](#) on page 816
- [Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines](#) on page 551
- [Annotations](#) on page 597



Changing the length of the repeated phrase in bar repeat regions

You can change the number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in individual bar repeats after you have input them; for example, if you want the region to repeat the previous two bars rather than the previous four bars.

NOTE

You cannot repeat more bars than exist before the bar repeat region. For example, if a bar repeat region follows the first notated bar in a flow, you cannot increase the number of bars in the repeated phrase.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose phrase length you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **No. bars** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
 - **One bar**
 - **Two bars**
 - **Four bars**

RESULT

The number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. This is also reflected in playback.

TIP

- Any dynamics you add within bar repeat regions affect the playback of the repeated music.

- You can also change the length of the repeated phrase by opening the repeats popover and changing the entry.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

Hiding/Showing region highlights

You can hide/show colored highlights for bar repeat and numbered bar regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Highlight Bar Repeat Regions**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

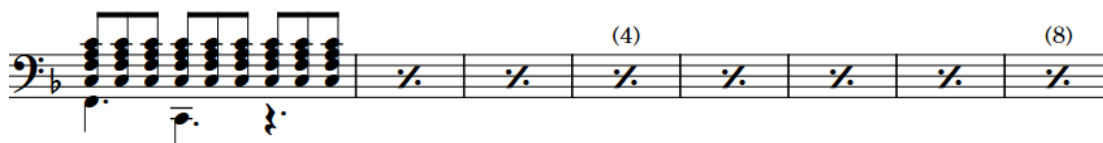
Bar repeat counts

Bar repeat counts are numbers shown at regular intervals either above or below bar repeats, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

Because bar repeats must start with a fully notated phrase of at least one bar, the bar repeat count starts from the notated bar rather than the first bar in the bar repeat region. For example, the third bar in a bar repeat region shows the count number 4, as that bar is the fourth time the original notated bar is played. Each bar repeat region has its own separate count.



Bar repeat region with counts shown every four bars

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each bar repeat region, how frequently counts are shown, and whether counts are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. You can also customize the count font style.

NOTE

Bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar region counts use the same font style.

RELATED LINKS

[Editing the count font style](#) on page 1250

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

[Inputting bar repeats](#) on page 418

[Bar repeat grouping](#) on page 1251

[Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

[Repeat counts](#) on page 1242

[Slash region counts](#) on page 1265

[Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254



Changing the start count of bar repeats

You can change the number from which individual bar repeats start; for example, if you want to notate the first bar in a repeated phrase at the start of each system, but show a continuous count across multiple bar repeats.

NOTE

- The start count applies to the first bar in the bar repeat, which is the notated bar. For example, changing the start count of a one-bar repeat region lasting three bars to **5**, with bar repeat counts shown every four bars, causes the count at the end of the bar repeat region to show the number 8.
- Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

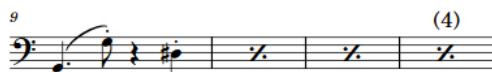
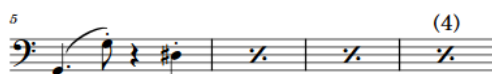
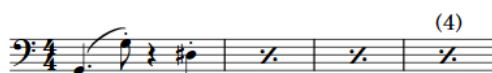
PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeat regions whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

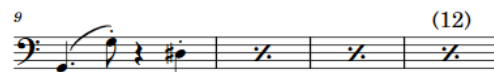
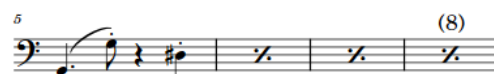
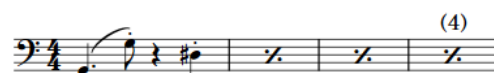
RESULT

The start count of the selected bar repeat regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the second bar in the bar repeat region instead of the third.

EXAMPLE



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with the default count



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with their counts changed to imply a continuous region



Changing the bar repeat count frequency

You can change how often counts are shown on individual one-bar repeat regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single bar repeat region.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected bar repeat regions.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828



Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing bar repeat counts

You can hide counts or show counts with or without parentheses for individual bar repeat regions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **With parentheses**
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **Do not show**
-

RESULT

Counts in the selected bar repeat regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

Editing the count font style

You can edit the formatting of the font style used for all bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar region counts project-wide; for example, if you want counts to appear bold and italic.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Font Styles** to open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.
 2. In the font styles list, select **Bar Repeat Count**.
 3. Activate the following options, individually or together, to change the corresponding aspect of the font:
 - **Font family**
 - **Size**
 - **Style**
 - **Underlined**
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The formatting of the font style used for counts in bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar regions is changed project-wide.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Slash region counts](#) on page 1265

[Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254

Bar repeat grouping

Bar repeat grouping allows you to consolidate longer bar repeat regions, which can be helpful in very regular music as it can simplify the overall phrasing.

The symbols shown on the staff are different for the different groupings, and two-bar and four-bar repeats also show a number to indicate how many bars are included in the group.



One-bar repeat symbol

Two-bar repeat symbol

Three-bar repeat symbol

Four-bar repeat symbol

You can specify the grouping when inputting bar repeats, and you can change the grouping of bar repeats after they have been input. Depending on where the bar repeat region starts and ends relative to the written material, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the displayed symbols to achieve an accurate result. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.



Eight-bar phrase with seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars

TIP

When showing multi-bar rests, you can also choose to consolidate one-bar repeat regions.

RELATED LINKS


[Inputting bar repeats](#) on page 418

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

Changing bar repeat grouping

You can change how bar repeats are grouped after they have been input; for example, if you want to group a region of one-bar repeats every two bars.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose grouping you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Group every** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
 - **One bar**
 - **Two bars**
 - **Four bars**

NOTE

The options available depend on the minimum length of the selected bar repeat regions. For example, if you select bar repeat regions that last three bars, only **One bar** and **Two bars** are available in the menu.

RESULT

The grouping in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. Dorico Elements automatically calculates the clearest way to group the region. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.

Numbered bar regions

Numbered bar regions allow you to show bar counts in specific regions without additional notations. This can help performers keep track of how many bars have passed when playing repetitive music.



Numbered bar region spanning six bars

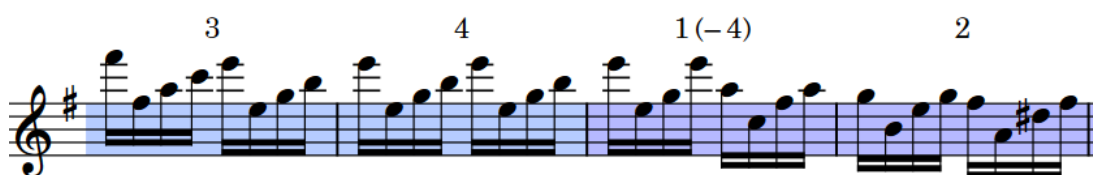
By default, numbered bar regions are hidden in full score/custom score layouts and shown in part layouts. You can hide/show numbered bar regions in each layout independently.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



By default, numbered bar regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

When two different numbered bar regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Phrase containing two adjacent numbered bar regions

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting numbered bar regions](#) on page 419
- [Hiding/Showing region highlights](#) on page 1247
- [Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430
- [Bar repeats](#) on page 1245
- [Slash regions](#) on page 1261
- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [Bar numbers](#) on page 826

Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions

You can input numbered bar regions in any layout, but by default they do not appear in full score layouts, as they are normally most useful in part layouts. You can hide/show numbered bar regions in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show numbered bar regions. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Numbered Bar Regions** section, activate/deactivate **Show bar count in numbered bar regions**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Numbered bar regions are shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

Numbered bar region counts

Numbered bar region counts are numbers shown at regular intervals either above or below the staff, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed.

By default, bar counts are shown on every bar in numbered bar regions. They are also shown on the last bar in each system and on the first and last bars in each region, regardless of the count frequency.

When numbered bar regions last four or more bars, Dorico Elements adds the total range in parentheses to the count on the first bar, such as showing "1 (-8)" on the first bar in a numbered bar region lasting eight bars.



Numbered bar region with counts shown every three bars, count and range shown at the start, and parenthesized count shown at the end of the system

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each numbered bar region, how frequently counts are shown, their staff-relative placement, and whether counts and ranges are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. You can also customize the count font style.

NOTE

Bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar region counts use the same font style.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting numbered bar regions](#) on page 419

[Editing the count font style](#) on page 1250

[Repeat counts](#) on page 1242



[Bar repeat counts](#) on page 1247

[Slash region counts](#) on page 1265

Changing the start count of numbered bar regions

You can change the number from which individual numbered bar regions start; for example, if you want to show a continuous count across multiple numbered bar regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.



RESULT

The start count of the selected numbered bar regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the third bar in the region instead of the fourth.

Changing the numbered bar region count frequency

You can change how frequently counts are shown in individual numbered bar regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars in a single numbered bar region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected numbered bar regions.

RELATED LINKS



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing numbered bar region counts

You can show counts with or without parentheses for individual numbered bar regions. You can also hide/show or parenthesize counts at the ends of systems and on the first and last bars in each region independently of each other. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **With parentheses**
4. Activate **Range appearance** and select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **With parentheses**
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **No range**
5. Activate the following properties, individually or together, to change the appearance of the corresponding count:
 - **Show in first bar**
 - **Show in final bar**
 - **Show at ends of systems**
6. Select one of the following options from each menu:
 - **With parentheses**
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **Do not show**

RESULT

The corresponding counts and ranges in the selected numbered bar regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Counts and range shown without parentheses Range hidden and counts shown with parentheses

RELATED LINKS

[Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254

[Inputting numbered bar regions](#) on page 419

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



Changing the staff-relative placement of numbered bar region counts

You can show the counts in individual numbered bar regions either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Changing the staff-relative placement of counts affects all counts in the region. You cannot change the placement of a single count independently of other counts in the region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose count staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff-relative position** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**
-

RESULT

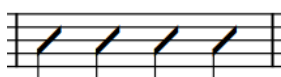
The staff-relative placement of all counts in the selected numbered bar regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Rhythm slashes

Rhythm slashes are diagonal lines positioned on staves that are used to indicate that performers should play something, but without specifying the exact rhythms and pitches. They are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use.

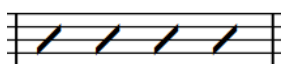
There are two different types of rhythm slashes:

Slashes with stems



Slashes with stems usually indicate the rhythm to be played, but not the pitches. Also known as “rhythmic notation”.

Slashes without stems



Slashes without stems do not usually indicate either rhythms or pitches. Also known as “slash notation”

In Dorico Elements, you can present both types of rhythm slashes simultaneously by using a combination of slash regions and slash voices.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417

[Inputting notes into slash voices](#) on page 233

[Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions](#) on page 1263

[Including/Excluding slash voices in playback](#) on page 1260

[Chord symbols](#) on page 871

Slash voices

Slash voices allow you to notate specific rhythms for rhythm slashes. They behave similarly to normal voices as you must input notes and rhythms manually, but all notes in slash voices are positioned by default on the middle line of the staff, regardless of the pitches you input.

If you later change the time signature, such as from 3/4 to 6/8, Dorico Elements only changes the note grouping to fit the meter just like for other notes; it does not change the presentation of rhythm in slash voices like it does for slash regions.

NOTE

- Because you can change notes in slash voices to normal voices and vice versa, the pitches you input are retained.
- By default, notes in slash voices are not played back. However, if you include slash voices in playback, notes in slash voices play back with their input pitch.

You can have multiple slash voices active at the same time. To accommodate all slash voices in multiple-voice contexts, Dorico Elements changes their staff position automatically. However, you can also change the staff position of rhythm slashes manually.

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions; for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

RELATED LINKS

[Slashes in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1268

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Inputting notes into slash voices](#) on page 233

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

Changing the slash voice type

You can change the voice type of slash voices; for example, if you want to change a slash voice from having stems to being stemless. You can also change the type to normal notes, which restores the original pitches you input, and change normal notes to rhythm slashes.

NOTE

This affects all notes in the same voice. If you only want to change the slash voice type of some notes, you must change the voice of those notes instead.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note in the voice whose slash type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Rhythmic Slashes > [Voice type]**.
For example, to change a whole normal voice to a stemless slash voice, choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Rhythmic Slashes > Slashes without Stems**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The slash voice type of all notes in the same voice and flow as the selected note is changed.

If you change normal notes to a slash voice, they are all automatically positioned on a single staff line. By default in single-voice contexts, this is the middle line of the staff.

If you change rhythm slashes to normal notes, their original pitches are restored, meaning their staff positions reflect their pitches.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503




Adding slash voices to percussion kits

You can add slash voices to percussion kits; for example, to show the desired rhythm for a passage without specifying the instruments to be played. You can add multiple slash voices to the same kit, including slash voices with and without stems.

NOTE

Rhythm slashes in percussion kits only appear when the five-line staff presentation is used. They do not appear in grid or single-line instrument presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the percussion kit to which you want to add slash voices.
 2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
 3. In the action bar below the five-line staff editor, click the button that corresponds to the type of slash voice you want to add.
 - Slashes with stems 
 - Slashes without stems 
-

RESULT

The corresponding type of slash voice is added to the kit. It is positioned on the middle line of the staff by default.

During note input, you can move the caret to slash voices just like moving it to other instruments in the kit, and input notes into slash voices just like inputting notes in percussion kit instruments.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the staff position of slash voices in the kit.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Moving instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 149

Including/Excluding slash voices in playback

By default, notes in slash voices are not played back. You can include/exclude all notes in slash voices project-wide in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Repeats**.
 3. In the **Rhythm Slashes** section, activate/deactivate **Play slash voices**.
 4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

All notes in slash voices project-wide are included in playback when **Play slash voices** is activated, and excluded when it is deactivated.

When slash voices are included in playback, notes in slash voices play back with their input pitch.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

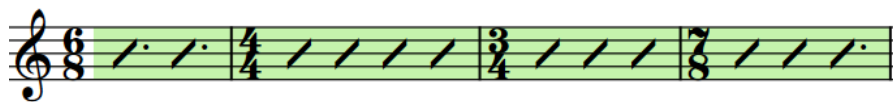
[Repeats in playback](#) on page 549

[Including/Excluding pauses in playback](#) on page 1016

[Inputting notes into slash voices](#) on page 233

Slash regions

Slash regions automatically display rhythm slashes as appropriate for the meter throughout their duration; for example, they show four slashes per bar in 4/4 and two slashes per bar in 6/8 by default. A single slash region can extend across multiple different meters.



A single slash region covering multiple different meters

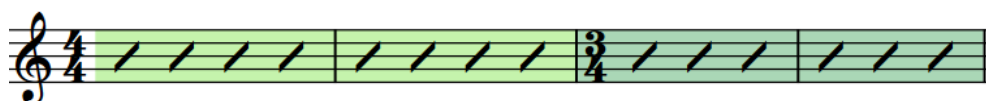
Multiple slash regions can exist at the same rhythmic position. When slash regions overlap, Dorico Elements treats this as a multiple-voice context and changes the staff position of slashes automatically.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



By default, slash regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

When two different slash regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Two adjacent slash regions with different highlight colors

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions; for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

By default, Dorico Elements hides notes at the same rhythmic positions as slash regions, but you can show notes alongside individual slash regions.

TIP

Because rhythm slashes are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use, you can show chord symbols in slash/chord symbol regions but hide them elsewhere.

RELATED LINKS

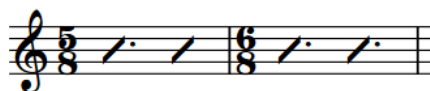
- [Inputting slash regions](#) on page 417
- [Hiding/Showing chord symbols](#) on page 878
- [Chord symbol regions](#) on page 882
- [Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253
- [Bar repeats](#) on page 1245
- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [MIDI trigger regions](#) on page 574
- [Annotations](#) on page 597

Note grouping in slash regions

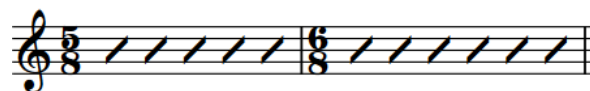
You can find options to control the grouping and duration of rhythm slashes in slash regions in each flow independently in **Notation Options > Note Grouping > Rhythmic Slashes**.

The available options include changing whether rhythm slashes follow the beat grouping or the time signature denominator, and set the duration for rhythm slashes in open meter. For example, you can show six slashes in 6/8 instead of two dotted slashes.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.



Rhythm slashes following beat grouping



Rhythm slashes following time signature denominator


RELATED LINKS

- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Time signatures](#) on page 1381

Splitting slash regions

You can split slash regions after they have been input; for example, if you later want to input more precise notation in the middle of an existing slash region.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slash in each slash region you want to split, immediately to the right of where you want to split them.
 2. Split the slash regions in any of the following ways:
 - Press **U**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors** .
-

RESULT

The slash regions are split immediately to the left of the selected slashes. Each part now has its own start/end handles, which you can use to lengthen/shorten each part independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Changing the slash region count frequency](#) on page 1266



[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

Hiding/Showing stems in slash regions

You can hide/show stems and beams, where applicable, on slashes in individual slash regions. By default, slashes in slash regions are shown without stems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region in which you want to hide/show stems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash type** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **With stems**
 - **Without stems**

RESULT

Stems are hidden in the selected slash regions when you choose **Without stems**, and shown when you choose **With stems**.

If appropriate for the prevailing meter, such as 3/8, beams are shown in addition to stems.

RELATED LINKS



[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions

You can hide/show notes at the same rhythmic positions as slash regions; for example, if you want to input notes to hear in playback but only want to show the slash region, or if you want to notate suggested notes in addition to the slash region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

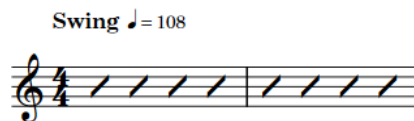
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region alongside which you want to hide/show other notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show other voices** in the **Slash Regions** group.
-

RESULT

All notes in other voices present alongside the selected slash regions are shown when **Show other voices** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notes hidden alongside a slash region





Notes shown alongside a slash region

Hiding/Showing padding rests before/after slash regions

You can hide/show padding rests before/after slash regions that start partway through bars individually; for example, if you have other notes at those positions and the rests would be misleading. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit padding rests around slash regions that start/end partway through bars, so that the full duration of each bar is clear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose padding rests you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slash Regions** group:
 - **Hide rests before start**
 - **Hide rests after end**
-

RESULT

Padding rests are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected slash regions. For example, activating both properties hides padding rests both before and after the selected slash regions.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272

Hiding/Showing slash region highlights

You can hide/show the colored highlights for slash regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

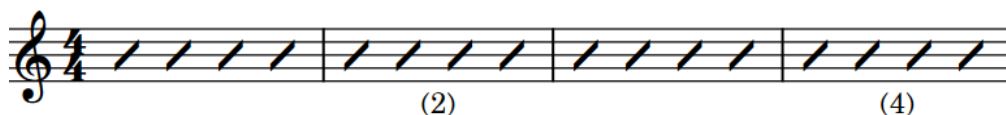
PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Highlight Slash Regions**.
-

Slash region counts

Slash region counts are numbers shown at regular intervals, either above or below slash regions, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

By default, slash region counts are shown in parentheses every four bars and are placed below the staff. Each slash region has its own separate count.



Slash region with counts shown every two bars

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each slash region, how frequently counts are shown, their staff-relative placement, and whether counts are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. You can also customize the count font style.

NOTE

Bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar region counts use the same font style.



RELATED LINKS

- [Editing the count font style](#) on page 1250
- [Repeat counts](#) on page 1242
- [Bar repeat counts](#) on page 1247
- [Numbered bar region counts](#) on page 1254

Changing the start count of slash regions

You can change the number from which individual slash region counts start; for example, if you want to input more precise notation between two slash regions but want the count to appear to continue across the regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

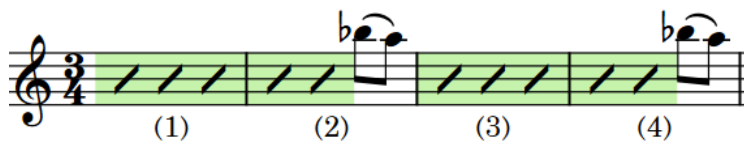
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Slash Regions** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The start count of the selected slash regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the third bar in the region instead of the fourth.

EXAMPLE





Two separate slash regions, where the start count in the second region has been changed so it appears to continue on from the first region.

Changing the slash region count frequency

You can change how frequently counts are shown on individual slash regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single slash region. By default, slash region counts are shown every four bars.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Slash Regions** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected slash regions.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Splitting slash regions](#) on page 1262
- [Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing slash region counts

You can hide counts or show counts with or without parentheses for individual slash regions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **With parentheses**
 - **Without parentheses**
 - **Do not show**

RESULT

Counts in the selected slash regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



Changing the staff-relative placement of slash region counts

You can show the counts in individual slash regions either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Changing the staff-relative placement of counts affects all counts in the region. You cannot change the placement of a single count independently of other counts in the region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

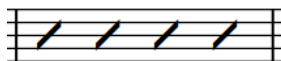
1. Select any part of each slash region whose count staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count position** in the **Slash Regions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above**
 - **Below**
-

RESULT

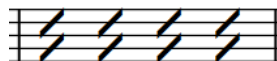
The staff-relative placement of all counts in the selected slash regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Slashes in multiple-voice contexts

Multiple slash regions and slash voices can exist at the same rhythmic positions. In multiple-voice contexts for slash voices and when slash regions overlap, Dorico Elements automatically changes their staff position and offset to accommodate all slashes as legibly as possible.



Single slash region



Two slash regions, one up-stem and one down-stem

You can set default per-flow settings for the position and offset of slashes relative to other slashes at the same rhythmic positions on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

These options affect all rhythm slashes, including notes in slash voices as well as slash regions.

You can also control the positions of rhythm slashes relative to each other manually by changing their stem/voice direction and by changing their staff position.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747



[Note positions in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1440

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

Changing the voice direction of slash regions

You can change the voice direction of slash regions individually. When multiple slash regions overlap, this affects their stem directions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose voice direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice direction** in the **Slash Regions** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Up**
 - **Down**
-

RESULT

The voice direction, and therefore stem direction, of the selected slash regions is changed.



NOTE

This only affects the direction of stems in slash regions on the middle line of the staff and when multiple slash regions exist at the same rhythmic position. For example, if you change the voice direction of a slash region on the bottom line of the staff to **Down**, its stem direction does not change if it does not overlap with another slash region.

Changing the staff position of rhythm slashes

You can change the staff position of rhythm slashes in both slash voices and slash regions; for example, to accommodate other notes at the same rhythmic positions better. By default, rhythm slashes are positioned on the middle line of the staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rhythm slashes whose staff position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 - For notes in slash voices, you must select every note whose staff position you want to change.
 - For slash regions, you can select any part of each region whose staff position you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash pos.** in the corresponding group for the type of rhythm slash whose staff position you want to change:
 - **Notes and Rests** for notes in slash voices
 - **Slash Regions** for slash regions
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The staff position of the selected rhythm slashes is changed. For example, changing the **Slash pos.** value to **4** positions rhythm slashes on the top line of a five-line staff, while **-4** positions them on the bottom line.

If any of the rhythm slashes have stems, their stem direction is adjusted automatically.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074









[Adding slash voices to percussion kits](#) on page 1260

Rests

Rests are markings with a rhythmic value that indicate no note is played for that duration. Each note duration has an equivalent rest; for example, a quarter note rest is different to a sixteenth note rest.

All notes and rests within a bar must add up to the duration of the bar, according to the prevailing time signature. Dorico Elements automatically fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration. Therefore, it is usually not necessary to input rests in Dorico Elements.

The table shows some examples of notes and the rests with the equivalent rhythmic value.

Duration	Note	Rest
Half		
Quarter		
Eighth		
Sixteenth		

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting rests](#) on page 245

[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Rests within beams](#) on page 858

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Showing figured bass on rests](#) on page 959

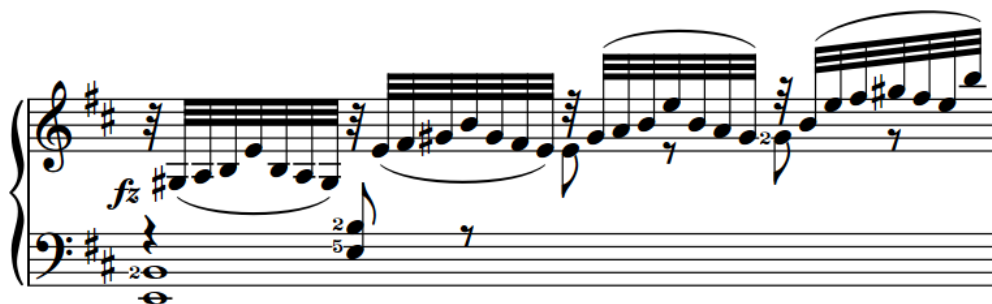
General placement conventions for rests

Rests are positioned at the rhythmic position at the start of their duration, and not in the middle of beats as this can cause confusion over when the rest begins and ends. Rests are aligned with other items at the same rhythmic position.

The only exception is whole bar rests, which are positioned at the visual center of bars. This way, they are clearly distinguishable from half note and whole note rests that are followed by notes in the same bar.

Rests stay within the staff wherever possible. They do not move above or below the staff when the notes around them are very high or very low.

However, on staves with multiple voices, rests are placed higher on the staff, or above the staff, for up-stem voices and lower on the staff, or below the staff, for down-stem voices.



Example rest positions in a multiple-voice context

Rests in multiple voices must not overlap. You can consolidate rests so that only one is shown when multiple voices have a rest of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

The precise vertical positioning of rests is limited, as their detailed shapes require specific positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces.

RELATED LINKS

[Voices](#) on page 1438

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

[Moving rests vertically](#) on page 1275

Implicit vs. explicit rests

Implicit rests are automatically shown between the notes you input, and their duration automatically follows the time signature and their position in the bar. Explicit rests are rests that are explicitly entered during note input by forcing their duration, or rests that were imported from a MusicXML file.

Dorico Elements notates implicit rests according to the prevailing time signature; for example, different implicit rests are shown in 6/8 compared to 4/4. This also applies if you later change the time signature for existing notes and rests.

Therefore, it is not necessary to input rests in Dorico Elements, as implicit rests are automatically shown around the notes that you input. You can turn implicit rests into explicit rests by forcing their duration to be fixed.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 6/8 time signature has a dotted quarter implicit rest at the start of the bar.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 4/4 time signature has two implicit rests, a quarter and an eighth, at the start of the bar.

Explicit rests cannot be suppressed when using the **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** properties to hide rests before the first note in voices and after the last note in voices.

You can show rest colors to see which rests are implicit and which are explicit in your project.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting rests](#) on page 245

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

[Forcing the duration of notes/rests](#) on page 262

[Turning explicit rests into implicit rests](#) on page 1274

[Hiding/Showing rest colors](#) on page 1275

Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts

In Dorico Elements, implicit rests are shown automatically to fill in rhythmic positions around notes, including when there are multiple voices on the staff. However, in these contexts you might want more control over when and where rests are shown.

Usually, rests or notes are shown for whole bars when voices contain at least one note in the bar. This helps make the rhythmic position of every note in all voices in the bar immediately clear.

When there are multiple voices on a staff, implicit rests are shown in every bar in which there are notes of any duration in more than one voice. Bar rests are always shown for the first voice on a staff, including in bars that only contain notes in a slash voice.

However, there might be circumstances in which you do not want to show rests either before the first note in a voice or after the last note in a voice when there are multiple voices on the staff. For example, it can be useful to hide rests when a voice is being used to show passing notes within a bar that otherwise contains a single melodic line.



A second voice used to notate passing notes

You can choose when rests are shown in a number of different multiple-voice contexts in each flow independently on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

You can also delete rests from selected passages.

TIP

By default, Dorico Elements consolidates rests when multiple voices have rests of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

You can show multiple rests at individual rhythmic positions by changing the vertical position of rests. You can also change your per-flow settings for the consolidation of rests in multiple-voice contexts on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests. The same phrase without implicit rests.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
- [Per-flow notation options for rests](#) on page 1274
- [Moving rests vertically](#) on page 1275
- [Deleting rests](#) on page 1276
- [Slash voices](#) on page 1258

Turning explicit rests into implicit rests

Implicit rests and explicit rests behave differently. For example, the notation of explicit rests does not update automatically if their position in the bar of the time signature changes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the explicit rests you want to turn into implicit rests.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The selected explicit rests are now implicit rests. You can check this by showing rest colors.

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing rest colors](#) on page 1275
- [Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

Per-flow notation options for rests

You can find per-flow options controlling how rests are positioned and notated, and when rests are shown, on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change whether bar rests are shown in additional voices, when dotted rests are permitted, and the default positions of rests in different contexts. You can also change whether rests of the same duration and at the same rhythmic position in different voices are consolidated into a single rest.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
- [Voices](#) on page 1438
- [Per-flow notation options for voices](#) on page 1439
- [Stem direction](#) on page 1074

Hiding/Showing rest colors

You can hide/show rest colors, which causes implicit rests and explicit rests to appear with different colors.

When rest colors are shown, implicit rests appear gray and explicit rests appear black. For example, this can help diagnose why rests do not disappear when you activate **Starts voice** and **Ends voice**, as these properties only hide implicit rests.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Implicit Rests**.

RESULT

Rest colors are hidden/shown.

EXAMPLE



Rest colors hidden



Rest colors shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK



You can delete rests that you have identified as explicit rests. The implicit rests that replace them now respect the **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** properties.

Moving rests vertically

You can change the vertical position of rests individually; for example, if you want to change the staff line from which a whole bar rest hangs, or you want to show rests for all voices at a particular rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Moving rests vertically shows multiple rests at that rhythmic position if more than one voice on the staff has a rest of the same duration. By default, Dorico Elements consolidates coincident rests of the same duration in multiple-voice contexts and automatically positions rests in multiple-voice contexts to avoid collisions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests whose vertical positions you want to change, or rests at the rhythmic positions where you want to see rests for every voice. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rest pos.** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

3. Change the value in the value field.
-


RESULT

Increasing the value moves rests upwards, decreasing the value moves rests downwards.

Position 0 is the middle line of the staff. If there are multiple voices on the staff with rests of the same duration at the same rhythmic position, multiple rests are now shown.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Rest pos.** returns the selected rests to their default positions.
 - You can choose to show coincident rests of the same duration in every voice or only show one rest for all voices in **Notation Options > Rests > Rest Positioning**.
 - You can choose to align rests in the same voice vertically in **Notation Options > Rests > Rest Positioning**.
 - You can change the horizontal position of rests, and the spacing around them, in Engrave mode when **Note Spacing**  is activated, in the same ways as changing the position of notes.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Deleting rests

You can delete both implicit rests and explicit rests; for example, if you want to hide rests before/after notes in another voice used to show passing notes.

TIP

- If you want to delete rests because you want to remove the corresponding duration from the flow, you can instead delete bars/beats.
 - If you want to delete rests because you do not want to show bar rests in empty bars, you can instead hide bar rests.
 - If you want to delete rests because multiple rests of the same duration appear at the same position in multiple-voice contexts, you can choose to consolidate these rests in **Notation Options > Rests > Rest Positioning**.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the rests you want to delete.

TIP

You can select rests individually, or make a larger selection that contains the rests you want to delete.

2. Choose **Edit > Remove Rests**.
-

RESULT

All rests in the selection are deleted. This is done by automatically activating **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel on the notes or rests immediately to the right/left of deleted rests, so that no rests are shown in the selected regions.

NOTE

- You can show rests again later by selecting the notes or rests immediately to the right/left of deleted rests, then deactivating the corresponding **Starts voice** or **Ends voice** properties in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.
- You can assign a key command for **Remove Rests** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- In layouts where no other notes, rests, or items with duration exist at rhythmic positions where you have deleted rests, Dorico Elements has nothing to use to calculate horizontal spacing. Therefore, such empty bars/beats can appear narrower.

EXAMPLE



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests. The same phrase after deleting the rests.

RELATED LINKS

- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747
- [Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272
- [Large selections](#) on page 424
- [Deleting bars/beats](#) on page 810
- [Changing the width of empty bars](#) on page 813
- [Note spacing](#) on page 507
- [Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars

You can hide/show bar rests in empty bars in each layout independently. For example, you can hide bar rests in full score layouts but show bar rests in part layouts.

Bar rests are usually shown in empty bars in music to indicate to performers that they have nothing to play. However, there are contexts in which it is preferable to hide bar rests in empty bars, and instead leave the bar completely empty.

For example, hiding bar rests in empty bars is sometimes the preferred visual aesthetic in large scores, so that it is quicker to identify bars containing music. You can also hide bar rests in layouts where you want to include other instructions, such as verbal indications for performers to do something other than play notated pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar rests in empty bars.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar Rests** section, activate/deactivate **Show bar rests in empty bars**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

All bar rests in empty bars in the selected layouts are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices

You can hide/show bar rests between notes or explicit rests in additional voices on a per-flow basis; for example, you might show bar rests in contrapuntal music to ensure each voice can be easily followed.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show bar rests in additional voices.
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
 3. In the category list, click **Rests**.
 4. In the **Rests in Additional Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Bar rests in additional voices**:
 - **Show bar rests**
 - **Omit bar rests**
 5. Optional: To show bar rests for each voice in empty bars, in the **Rest Positioning** section, choose **Show every rest in each voice** for **Coincident rests of the same duration in opposing voices**.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Bar rests are shown between notes and explicit rests in additional voices in the selected flows when you choose **Show bar rests**, and hidden when you choose **Omit bar rests**.

NOTE

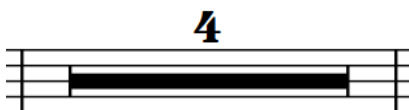
- **Show bar rests** does not automatically show bar rests in empty bars before the first note or explicit rest in additional voices. For additional voices that do not start in the first bar, you must input a bar rest in the first bar manually.
 - **Omit bar rests** does not hide bar rests in the primary voice on each staff.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Per-flow notation options for rests](#) on page 1274
- [Implicit vs. explicit rests](#) on page 1272
- [Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232
- [Inputting bar rests into specific voices](#) on page 246

Multi-bar rests

Multi-bar rests group two or more consecutive empty bars together into a single unit, commonly shown with a thick horizontal line positioned on the middle staff line, known as an “H-bar”. They can reduce the horizontal space required by multiple empty bars and make it easier for players to find their place in the music.



A multi-bar rest representing four empty bars

NOTE

Multi-bar rests are automatically split by items positioned within their range, such as system-attached text, rehearsal marks, and holds and pauses. However, if items are positioned at the start of the first bar in a multi-bar rest, that bar remains part of the subsequent multi-bar rest.

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently in Dorico Elements, and you can hide/show bar number ranges below them.

By default, the multi-bar rest bar counts only appear once between the staves of grand staff instruments.

RELATED LINKS

- [Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828
- [Splitting multi-bar rests](#) on page 1281

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently, and choose whether or not to consolidate one-bar repeats. For example, you can hide multi-bar rests in full score layouts but show multi-bar rests in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show multi-bar rests.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
 4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar rests** section, choose one of the following options for **Consolidate**:
 - **None**
 - **Multi-bar Rests**
 - **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

- When you choose **None**, no multi-bar rests are shown in the selected layouts. Each empty bar is shown separately.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests**, any adjacent empty bars are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. However, bar repeats prevent the consolidation of multi-bar rests, even if there are no other notes in those bars.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**, any adjacent empty bars or bars that only contain one-bar repeats are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. Multi-bar rest counts are also shown above consolidated one-bar repeats.

RELATED LINKS



[Bar repeats](#) on page 1245

[Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests](#) on page 828

Changing the width of multi-bar rest H-bars

You can change the width of individual multi-bar rest H-bars. This allows you to control the exact positions of multi-bar rests; for example, when there are clef changes at the end of multi-bar rests.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the multi-bar rests whose width you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **H-bar width delta** in the **Multi-bar Rests** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The width of the selected H-bars is changed. Increasing the value increases their width, decreasing the value decreases their width.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Casting off](#) on page 629

Moving multi-bar rest H-bars

You can move individual multi-bar rest H-bars horizontally. This allows you to control the exact positions of multi-bar rests; for example, when there are clef changes at the end of multi-bar rests.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the multi-bar rests you want to move.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **H-bar X offset** in the **Multi-bar Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected H-bars are moved horizontally. Increasing the value moves H-bars to the right, decreasing the value moves H-bars to the left.


Splitting multi-bar rests

You can manually split multi-bar rests without showing any extra notation in the music. Splitting multi-bar rests affects all layouts in the project, including full scores and parts.

NOTE

Multi-bar rests are automatically split by items positioned within their range, such as system-attached text, rehearsal marks, and holds and pauses.

PREREQUISITE

- You have opened a layout in the music area that either has items in the bars where you want to split multi-bar rests or in which multi-bar rests are hidden. You cannot select rhythmic positions within multi-bar rests.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to split multi-bar rests.
2. Choose **Engrave > Split Multi-bar Rest**.

RESULT

All multi-bar rests in all layouts are split at the selected position. A signpost is shown at the position of the multi-bar rest split.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests](#) on page 1279

[Switching between layouts](#) on page 43

Slurs

Slurs are tapered, curved lines that join notes to indicate legato articulation and phrasing.

Depending on the context and the instrument to which they apply, slurs can have additional meanings to simply marking phrases. For example, for wind players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played in the same breath and without re-tonguing or re-articulating any notes. For string players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played legato and under one bow. For singers, slurs indicate that more than one note is sung to the same syllable.



Slurs both above and below the staff, including a cross-staff slur

Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate endpoint position and curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change this manually.

You can input any number of nested slurs.

NOTE

Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting slurs](#) on page 273
- [Inputting nested slurs](#) on page 1295
- [Ties vs. slurs](#) on page 1365
- [Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294
- [Elision slurs](#) on page 1050
- [Slurs in playback](#) on page 1308
- [Slur endpoint positions](#) on page 1286
- [Slur curvature direction](#) on page 1292
- [Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains](#) on page 1284
- [MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

General placement conventions for slurs

There are different conventions for the placement, endpoint position, shape, and curvature direction of slurs in various contexts.

RELATED LINKS

- [Slur endpoint positions](#) on page 1286

[Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges](#) on page 1288

[Slurs over system and frame breaks](#) on page 1287

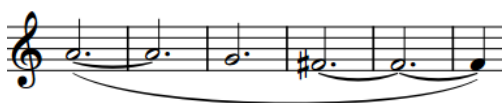
[Slur curvature direction](#) on page 1292

Slur position relative to tie chains

There are different conventions for the position of slurs relative to tie chains in music for modern use and historical editions.

Modern practice is for slurs to start on the first note in tie chains, and end on the last note in tie chains. This makes the full length of the phrase visually clear to the performer, which helps their performance, and is the default in Dorico Elements.

However, in historical editions, slurs might end on the first note in a tie chain, and start on the last note in a tie chain. Both of these changes save vertical space, as shorter slurs do not extend as far above or below a staff.



Slur starting on the first note and ending on the last note in tie chains





Slur starting on the last note and ending on the first note in tie chains

Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains

You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including slurs starting on grace notes. For example, slurs that start on the last note in tie chains and end on the first note in tie chains are shorter and require less vertical space.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose position relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
 - **Start pos. in tie chain**
 - **End pos. in tie chain**
3. Choose one of the following options for each property:
 - **First note**
 - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of the selected slurs relative to tie chains is changed.

Slur placement relative to grace notes

There are specific placement rules that affect slurs when they start from a grace note and end on a normal note immediately following the grace note.

These rules are:

- Slurs connect noteheads rather than stems.
- Slurs are scaled to match the proportions of grace notes.
- Slurs must not obscure ledger lines.
- Slurs are placed above notes if they would collide with the accidental of a standard note when placed below the notes.

Due to the general placement conventions of grace notes, slurs in Dorico Elements appear below grace notes and curve downwards by default. Slurs starting from grace notes only appear above notes and curve upwards in up-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a single-voice context



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a multiple-voice context

You can change the automatic placement of grace note slurs by changing the stem direction of a grace note, changing the direction of a slur, and using the slur handles in Engrave mode to adjust the position of a slur in finer detail.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the curvature direction of slurs](#) on page 1293

[Changing the stem direction of notes](#) on page 1076

[General placement conventions for grace notes](#) on page 1002

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

Slur position relative to staff lines

Slur endpoints must not touch staff lines, and the high point of the arcs of slurs should not stop on staff lines.

This is the convention because a slur whose arc peaks on a staff line can create the appearance of a triangular wedge between the staff line and the curve of the slur. If a slur peaks on a staff line, you can adjust its height so that it peaks either above/below the staff.

NOTE

Although Dorico Elements automatically ensures slur endpoints do not touch staff lines, manual adjustments might be necessary to position the arcs of slurs correctly.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the height of slurs](#) on page 1305

Slur endpoint positions

In order to avoid collisions, the default positions of slur endpoints vary depending on whether slurs are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes, their position relative to staff lines, and whether articulations, ties, and other slurs exist at the same rhythmic position.

Slur endpoints relative to noteheads and stems

The default position of slur endpoints relative to noteheads is 1/2 space above a notehead in a space on the staff, and 1/4 space above a notehead on a line on the staff.

Slurs appear between the stems of unbeamed notes when placed on their stem side, and the default setting is for their endpoints to attach a short distance from the end of the stem.



Slurs between the stems of unbeamed notes

Slur endpoints relative to notes with different stem directions

For slurs between notes with different stem directions, Dorico Elements positions their endpoints close to the notehead by default so that the shape and curvature direction of slurs reflects the rising or descending pitch contour of phrases, including when they span multiple staves.



Slur endpoints near noteheads



Slur endpoints near stem ends

Slur endpoints relative to articulations

By default, articulations of force and stress are placed outside slur endpoints, and articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints, which automatically raises the endpoints. For example, accents and stress marks are placed outside the ends of slurs but staccato and tenuto marks are placed inside the ends of slurs.

Slurs are placed outside articulations on notes in the middle of slurs.

Slur endpoints relative to ties and other slurs

The default position of slur endpoints is 1/4 space above an existing slur that starts/ends on the same note.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

[Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294

[Nested slurs](#) on page 1295

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Articulations](#) on page 804

[Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs](#) on page 808

Slurs over system and frame breaks

Slurs automatically cross system breaks and frame breaks, appearing in two parts on either side of the break.

By default, the endpoints of slurs that cross system/frame breaks are positioned at least 1/2 space outside the outer staff line and at a suitable position based on the pitch contour of the phrase before/after the break; that is, indicating whether the phrase rises or falls after the break.

If multiple slurs cross the same system break or frame break, such as if a phrase split by a break contains nested slurs, the ends of the slurs are stacked automatically and spaced a minimum of 1/2 space apart vertically.



The end of a system showing the first slur part; the end on the right indicates a continuation to the next system.



The start of the next system showing the second slur part; the end on the left indicates a continuation from the previous system.

In Engrave mode, you can move and edit each slur part separately. This allows you to adjust the start/end height of each slur part independently on each system.

Slur collision avoidance

By default, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the shape and position of slurs to avoid collisions with items under their arc.

This means that if a notehead under a slur is either higher than the others under a slur curving upwards, or lower than the others under a slur curving downwards, the curvature of the slur is adjusted to avoid the collision and keep the notehead under the slur. You can manually disable collision avoidance for individual slurs.



Slur with collision avoidance activated (default)



Slur with collision avoidance deactivated

RELATED LINKS


[Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294


[Accidentals](#) on page 792

Enabling/Disabling slur collision avoidance

You can allow or prevent individual slurs from automatically adjusting to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Avoid collisions** in the **Slurs** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The selected slurs avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges

When short slurs span large pitch ranges, they are significantly rotated to compensate. This can make the ends of short slurs appear too angular.

You can move the control point handles of slurs to improve their curves.

Of the three examples, the middle slur has the smoothest curve. The handles on the slur on the right have been moved poorly, making the curve far too angular.

In the bottom row, the positions of the handles are shown to indicate how each curve above was created.



Short slur spanning a large pitch range, without adjustment



The same slur with some shape adjustment, making the curve smoother



The same slur again with poor adjustment, making the curve too angular



Default slur handle placement



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur

TIP

When adjusting slur ends, you can achieve the best results using the following guidelines:

- The control point at the lower end of the slur does not extend outside the width of the slur, as marked by its neighboring endpoint.

- The control point at the higher end of the slur does not form an angle greater than 90 degrees relative to the endpoints. You can use the dashed lines to help you judge this.

You can adjust the shape of short slur ends in different ways:

- Individually, by activating **Start handle offset** and **End handle offset** in the Properties panel in Engrave mode, and changing their **X** values.
- Individually, by moving the handles of slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

[Slur shoulder offset](#) on page 1306

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

Slur styles

There are different styles of slurs available in Dorico Elements, which indicate different meanings and have different use cases.

Solid

This is the default style for slurs. Slurs appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.



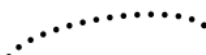
Dashed

Slurs appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to indicate an optional slur; for example, to recommend breathing/bowing patterns.



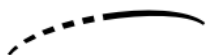
Dotted

Slurs appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the slur.



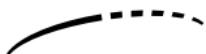
Half-dashed start

The first halves of slurs appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



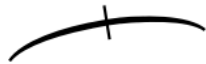
Half-dashed end

The first halves of slurs appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



Editorial



Slurs appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length, perpendicular to the curve of the slur. Used to show that a slur was added by the editor and was not present in the original source.



Changing the style of slurs

You can change the style of individual slurs after they have been input. For example, to indicate editorial slurs, or to make specific slurs appear dashed. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Solid**
 - **Dashed**
 - **Dotted**
 - **Half-dashed start**
 - **Half-dashed end**
 - **Editorial**

RESULT

The style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646


Changing the size of dashes/dots in slurs


You can change the length of dashes and the size of dots in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted slurs.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose dash length/dot size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
 - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash length**.
 - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot size**.
3. Change the value in the value field.



RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes longer and dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter and dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs

You can change the length of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose gap length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
 - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash gap length**.
 - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot gap length**.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing individual slurs to flat slurs



Although they are not often used as standard, some publishers use flat slurs in order to reduce the vertical space occupied by slurs. You can change individual slurs to flat slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Short slurs, that is, slurs between only a few notes, can look odd as flat slurs, so it may not be appropriate to select the flat curvature style project-wide. However, it would also be unusual only to use flat slurs once or twice in a project. Therefore, we recommend that you avoid changing the curvature style for only one or two slurs in a project.

It can be more effective to modify them rather than changing their curvature style; for example, by making an individual slur thicker/thinner, adjusting the shoulder offset of slurs, or adjusting their height using their slur height handles in Engrave mode.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Curvature type** in the **Slurs** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Normal (curved)**
 - **Flat**
-

RESULT

The curvature style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Changing the thickness of slurs](#) on page 1304
- [Changing the height of slurs](#) on page 1305
- [Changing the shoulder offset of slurs](#) on page 1306
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Slur curvature direction

Slurs can curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change the curvature direction of slurs manually.

A slur on a single staff always curves upwards and is placed above the notes, unless all of the notes under the slur are up-stem, in which case it curves downwards and is placed below the

notes. If a slur applies to a mixture of up-stem and down-stem notes, it is placed above the staff and curves upwards.



Examples of the slur direction changing according to the stem direction

The following options for slur curvature direction are available when you activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel:

Up



Forces slurs to curve upwards, and appear above notes.

Down



Forces slurs to curve downwards, and appear below notes.

Up/Down



Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves upwards, the second curves downwards to create a mirrored S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the lower staff and end in the upper staff; for example, in piano parts.

Down/Up



Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves downwards, the second curves upwards to create an S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the upper staff and end in the lower staff; for example, in piano parts.

TIP

- You can adjust the precise shapes of individual slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the square handles on each slur.
- In jazz scores, slurs are sometimes treated as an articulation, so positioning all slurs above the staff is preferred.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs over system and frame breaks](#) on page 1287

[Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs](#) on page 1294

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300



[Slur styles](#) on page 1289

Changing the curvature direction of slurs





You can change the curvature direction of individual slurs so that they curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Up** 
 - **Down** 
 - **Up/Down**  (mirrored S-shape)
 - **Down/Up**  (S-shape)

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can adjust the precise shapes of slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the handles on each slur.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs

Cross-staff slurs start on one staff and end on another staff, and cross-voice slurs start in one voice and end in another voice.



The image shows a musical score for piano with two staves. The top staff is the right hand and the bottom staff is the left hand. The music is in G major and 3/4 time. The first staff has a slur that starts on the right hand and ends on the left hand. The second staff has a slur that starts on the left hand and ends on the right hand. There are dynamic markings 'sf' and 'p'.

Cross-staff slurs between two piano staves

Dorico Elements positions cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same way as it positions standard slurs. This includes adjusting cross-staff slurs to avoid collisions.

You can move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same ways as standard slurs; however, they do not behave in the same way. For example, you cannot move cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices, and you cannot lengthen cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices. You also cannot lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in different voices to those in which the slur started/ended.

You can only move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint. For example, if a cross-staff slur covers a phrase that starts on the bottom staff and ends on the upper staff, you can only shorten the cross-staff slur to the first note on the upper staff, you cannot shorten it to any notes on the bottom staff.

The different voices can be on the same staff, or on different staves.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting slurs](#) on page 273

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Slur collision avoidance](#) on page 1287

[Slur endpoint positions](#) on page 1286

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

Nested slurs

Nested slurs are two or more slurs used simultaneously, where the overarching slur shows the structure of the phrase and the inner slurs show the articulation within the phrase. They are also known as “slurs within slurs”.

Depending on the stem directions within the overarching outer slur, inner slurs may appear on the opposite side of the staff to the outer slur.



A phrase with nested slurs

You can input nested slurs in the same ways as inputting standard slurs. By default, Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to their positioning to avoid collisions.

RELATED LINKS

[Slur collision avoidance](#) on page 1287

Inputting nested slurs

You can input nested slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add nested slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time and to notes

in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument; for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:



- Start note input.
- Select the notes you want to include in the outer slur.

TIP




- If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must select both notes; for example, by selecting the first note then **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking the second note.
 - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.
 - You can select notes on multiple staves to input slurs on those staves simultaneously.
-

2. Optional: If you want to input slurs onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.

3. Input or start the outer slur in any of the following ways:

- Press **S**.
- In the Notes panel, click **Slur** .
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur** .

4. Input the inner slur in one of the following ways:

- When adding nested slurs to existing notes: Select the notes within the outer slur that you want to place under an inner slur and press **S** or click **Slur**  in the Notes panel.
- To start the inner slur on the same note as the outer slur during note input, press **S** or click **Slur**  in the Notes panel.
- To start the inner slur on a later note during note input, input notes or advance the caret manually to where you want the inner slur to start, then press **S** or click **Slur**  in the Notes panel.


NOTE

If you added nested slurs to existing notes, stop here.

5. During note input, input the notes you want to include in the inner slur.

The slurs extend automatically as you continue inputting notes, even if there are rests between the notes you input.

6. End the inner slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-S**.
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur** .

7. Continue inputting notes.

8. Optional: Start/End other inner slurs.

9. End the outer slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-S**.
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur** .

RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection. Inner slurs can have different curvature directions to outer slurs. By default, Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to their positioning to avoid collisions.

TIP

You can input the outer slur and inner slurs in any order as Dorico Elements automatically adjusts slurs so that shorter slurs are positioned within longer slurs, and ensures they do not collide.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting slurs on page 273](#)

[Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 1293](#)

Linked slurs

Slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously.

If slurs are linked, moving one slur in the linked group moves any slurs linked to it in the same way. Similarly, lengthening or shortening a slur in a linked group lengthens or shortens any slurs linked to it in the same way. However, deleting one slur in a linked group only deletes the slur selected, not the whole group.

Linked slurs appear highlighted when any slur in the linked group is selected.



'Cause 'twas my la - dy's birth - day, There - fore we kept ho - li - day, And

'Cause 'twas my la - dy's birth - day, There - fore we kept ho - li - day, And

'Cause 'twas my la - dy's birth - day, There - fore we kept ho - li - day, And

Linked slurs with the top slurs selected

You can also manually link and unlink slurs.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting slurs](#) on page 273

[Linked dynamics](#) on page 951

[Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting](#) on page 460

Linking slurs together

Dorico Elements automatically links slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic positions together when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously. However, you can also link slurs together manually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the slurs you want to link together.

NOTE

Only slurs that have the same duration and start at the same position can be linked together.

2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Slurs > Link**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected slurs are linked together.

Unlinking slurs

You can unlink slurs, including slurs that were linked automatically. For example, if you want to lengthen/shorten slurs independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slur in each linked group that you want to unlink.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Slurs > Unlink**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

All slurs in the linked groups are unlinked. This applies to all layouts in which the slurs appear.

Slur segments

A standard slur consists of one segment. You can make more elaborate shapes with slurs with multiple segments; for example, to allow you to create more complex slur shapes than are possible with a single curved segment.

Adding more segments to a slur by default creates evenly spaced waves within its length. Therefore, having more segments makes each wave shorter.



Slur with eight segments

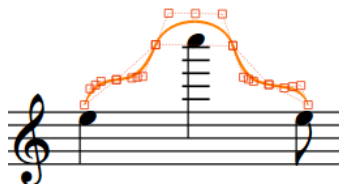
In Engrave mode, you can move each segment graphically as each segment has its own set of five square handles. These allow you to form slurs into unusual and complicated shapes.

NOTE

- You may find that you need more segments than there are curves in your planned shape, as in many cases you need a segment for each significant change of angle. In Dorico Elements, you can increase/decrease the number of segments in existing slurs.
- Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction.



An unusual slur shape created using five segments.





The same slur, showing the positions of the handles of all five segments.

Changing the number of segments in individual slurs

You can change the number of segments in individual slurs; for example, to allow you to create slurs with unusual shapes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose number of segments you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number of segments** in the **Slurs** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

Increasing the value increases the number of slur segments. Decreasing the value decreases the number of slur segments. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can adjust the shape of slur segments in more detail using their handles.

NOTE

Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected to the corresponding type of handle on adjacent segments. Moving handles causes any connected handles to move the same amount in the opposite direction.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

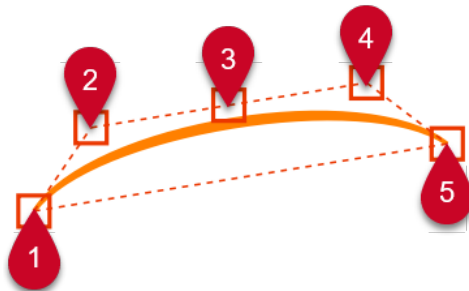
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each slur has five square handles that you can move independently. Some handles are connected to others, meaning moving one can affect the position of neighboring handles.



Slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:

- 1 Left endpoint
- 2 Left control point
- 3 Slur height
- 4 Right control point
- 5 Right endpoint

For example, moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a slur and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. However, moving the right control point only causes the slur height handle to move as well. This gives you fine control over the shape of slurs, while ensuring the end result remains curved and smooth.

NOTE

Multi-segment slurs have additional links between control point handles that affect how they move in relation to other handles moving.

You can move these handles to change the shape of slurs with the keyboard, with the mouse, and by using properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel. You can also change the angle of slurs without changing their overall shape.

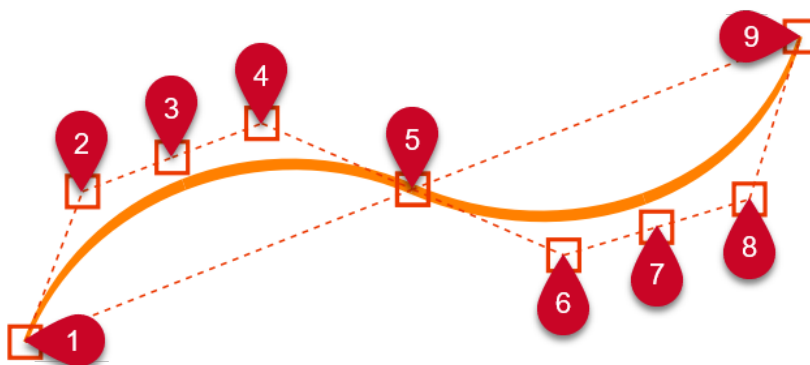
RELATED LINKS

[Slur height](#) on page 1304

[Slur shoulder offset](#) on page 1306

Multi-segment slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each segment in multi-segment slurs, such as S-shaped slurs, has handles just like standard slurs. This allows you to edit each segment of multi-segment slurs independently as if they were separate slurs, but in order to maintain a consistent shape, moving certain handles causes other handles to move simultaneously.



Multi-segment slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:

- 1 Left endpoint
- 2 Left control point
- 3 Slur height
- 4 Right control point
- 5 Center control point
- 6 Left control point
- 7 Slur height
- 8 Right control point
- 9 Right endpoint

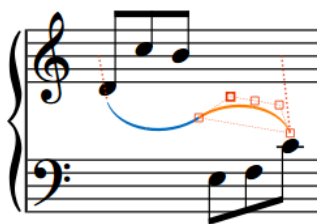
You can select and move each handle in the same ways as for standard slurs; however, handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction. This avoids tight corners, ensuring that multi-segment slurs are always as smoothly and symmetrically curved as possible.

In multi-segment slurs, right control points are connected to the left control point in the adjacent segment. If there is no adjacent segment, the right/left control points next to the right/left endpoints can be moved independently. For example, in the labeled diagram, control point 4 is connected to control point 6, but control points 2 and 8 are not connected to another control point.

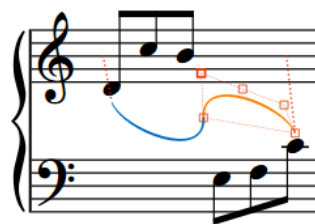
Similarly, moving the slur height handle causes the slur height handle on any adjacent segments to move the same amount in the opposite direction. For example, if you move the slur height

handle on the middle segment of a slur with three segments, all three slur height handles are moved.

EXAMPLE



The left control point is selected.




Moving the selected left control point upwards and to the left causes the right control point on the adjacent segment to move downwards and to the right.

Changing the shape/angle of slurs

You can move slurs and slur handles graphically, allowing you to change the shape and/or angle of individual slurs; for example, to adjust an endpoint relative to an individual notehead. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Changing the angle of slurs is useful, for example, if you want one end of a slur to start higher after a system break than its default position, as you can change the rotation of the slur while keeping all slur handles on the slur in the same positions relative to each other.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the whole slurs or individual slur handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click multiple slurs.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple slurs.
 - Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
 - Click the handle you want to move.

NOTE

- To change the angle of slurs, select slur endpoints only.
-
2. Move the slurs or handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move slurs/handles to the left. This moves slurs/handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1 space per press.

- To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them in any direction.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

RESULT

The selected slurs or slur handles are moved. Depending on the handles you selected and the directions in which you moved them, this can change the shape, angle, and/or proportional size of the corresponding slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

For example, if you move a whole slur upwards and to the right, all of its handles are moved so all properties are activated. You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

EXAMPLE



Slur with default angle and right endpoint selected



Slur with changed angle after moving the right endpoint downwards

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting slurs](#) on page 273

[Slur shoulder offset](#) on page 1306

[Slurs over system and frame breaks](#) on page 1287

[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the thickness of slurs

You can change the thickness of individual slurs, including changing the thickness of the middle of slurs independently of the ends of slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
 - **End thickness**
 - **Middle thickness**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thicker, decreasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the properties returns the corresponding part of the selected slurs to their default thickness.

Slur height

The height of slurs determines how far above/below notes slurs extend vertically.

Increasing the height of slurs makes them extend further from the staff. This gives them a rounder shape, which takes up more vertical space. Where vertical space is limited, there should be a balance between how curved slurs are, which can help readability for players, and ensuring staves do not overlap.



A long slur with default height



A long slur with increased height



A long flat slur with default height



A long flat slur with increased height

TIP

You can change the height of individual slurs in Engrave mode.


RELATED LINKS

[Slurs over system and frame breaks](#) on page 1287

Changing the height of slurs

You can change the height of individual slurs; for example, to reduce the height of a particularly long slur. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slur height (middle) handle of the slurs whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

RESULT

The height of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of slurs manually, you may need to move slur height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.
 - Moving slur height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole slur.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the shape/angle of slurs](#) on page 1302

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Slur shoulder offset

Slur shoulders affect the angles of the curves of slurs as they taper towards an endpoint, because the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a slur's arch.

Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper. The shoulder offset must therefore be balanced with the height of the slur in order to achieve the ideal curved shape.



A long slur with default shoulder offset of 1/3



A long slur with increased shoulder offset of 1.5




A long slur with decreased shoulder offset of -1/2

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs in Engrave mode.

Changing the shoulder offset of slurs

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs by moving their control point handles. You can move each control point independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:
 - Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
 - Click the handle you want to move.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple slurs.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them in any direction.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust.

RESULT

The shoulder offset of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

Slurs in playback

Slurs trigger the legato playback technique. By default, this increases the length of the MIDI notes without affecting the notation of the music.

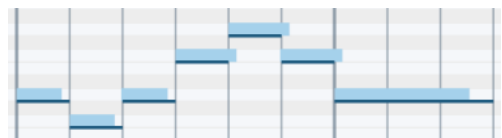
Slurred notes sound for 105% of the length indicated by their notated rhythm, as opposed to non-slurred notes which sound for 95% of their notated rhythm.

The final note of a slur sounds for 95% of its notated rhythm, as there is no slur after it and the legato technique is no longer required.

The example shows how MIDI note length, indicated by the filled, light-colored rectangles, is increased when slurs are used. The thin, darker rod shows the notated duration of each note. The first three notes are non-slurred, so the MIDI length rectangle is shorter than the line of the notated rhythm. The last four notes are slurred together, so the MIDI length is longer than the notated length in order to create the legato, slurred sound. However, the last note of the slurred group is not longer, as the last note of a slurred phrase is treated like a normal, non-slurred note.



A phrase in an instrument staff



The same phrase in the piano roll editor

TIP

- You can change the default values for the sounding duration of slurred notes on the **Timing** page in **Playback Options**.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.
- To ensure correct handling in playback, you can limit monophonic legato to music without chords in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Played vs. notated note durations](#) on page 687

[Piano roll editor](#) on page 678

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

[Expression Maps dialog](#) on page 762

Staff labels

Staff labels are used to identify the instruments playing the music on the corresponding staves, and are positioned to the left of systems, before the initial barline of each system. Staff labels are typically used in music containing multiple players.

It is usual to show instrument names in full in the staff labels for the first systems in each flow, and abbreviated instrument names in the staff labels of subsequent systems. Using abbreviated instrument names saves horizontal space, allowing you to include more music in each system.



Examples of staff labels on the first system in a flow

By default in Dorico Elements, staff labels show the instrument names set for each instrument. You can show player names in staff labels instead for each player in each layout independently; for example, for percussionists who play multiple instruments.

For players holding multiple instruments and showing instrument names in staff labels, the staff label shows the instrument they are currently playing. If the player changes instrument partway through a system, the name of the new instrument is shown above the staff at its first note and the staff label is updated at the start of the next system.

Dorico Elements includes the instrument transposition, or instrument pitch, in staff labels for transposing instruments by default. Transposing instruments are instruments whose sounding pitch is different to the notated pitch.

Part layouts by default do not show staff labels, as most parts only contain a single staff whose identity is clear from the context and the layout name. The layout name is shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts by default.

You can change when instrument transpositions, or instrument pitches, are shown in staff labels. You can also change whether the instrument transposition is shown before or after the instrument name in staff labels.

NOTE

- You do not need to number instruments in staff labels manually, as Dorico Elements automatically numbers instruments when there are multiple players of the same type holding instruments with identical names.
- Layout names are different to the instrument names used for staff labels.

- Staff labels do not show all instruments held by players; for example, in the staff label for the first system. You should include a comprehensive instrumentation list that shows any doubling at the front of your score.
-

Staff labels imported from MusicXML files

When exporting MusicXML files from Cubase and importing them into Dorico Elements, you can improve the accuracy of the automatic instrument selection by changing the instrument names in the Cubase **Score Editor** to the same English instrument names that Dorico Elements uses before exporting the file.

RELATED LINKS

- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Transposing instruments](#) on page 132
- [Instrument numbering](#) on page 131
- [Changing instrument names](#) on page 183
- [Renaming players](#) on page 182
- [Staff label paragraph styles](#) on page 1318

Hiding/Showing staff labels

You can show full or abbreviated instrument/player names in staff labels, or hide all staff labels entirely, in each layout independently. The first system in each flow and all subsequent systems can have different staff label lengths.

By default, full staff labels are shown on the first system of each flow and abbreviated staff labels are shown on subsequent systems in full score layouts. In part layouts, staff labels are not shown on any systems.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show staff labels.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on first system**:
 - **Full**
 - **Abbreviated**
 - **None**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on subsequent systems**:
 - **Full**
 - **Abbreviated**
 - **None**
6. In the **Flows** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show staff labels**:
 - **On all flows**

- **On first flow only**

7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding staves and flows in the selected layouts.

- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument/player name length.

TIP

We recommend choosing settings that are appropriate for most flows in the layout, then changing the length of staff labels at other positions if required. For example, if you want to show full staff labels only on the first system of the first flow, with abbreviated staff labels on all other systems.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the full and short names for each instrument.
- You can change whether staff labels show instrument or player names for each player in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks](#) on page 1312

[Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows](#) on page 141

[Changing the first system indent](#) on page 1328

[Changing instrument names](#) on page 183

[Staff labels on condensed staves](#) on page 1320

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels

You can change the minimum indent for all systems that show staff labels to optimize horizontal space in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose minimum indent for systems with staff labels you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Minimum indent for systems with staff labels**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The minimum indent on all systems that show staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS



[Changing the first system indent](#) on page 1328

[Moving the start/end of systems](#) on page 513

Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks

You can change whether staff labels at individual system/frame breaks show full, abbreviated, or no instrument/player names, independently of your per-layout settings. For example, if you want full staff labels at the start of the first flow but abbreviated staff labels at the start of subsequent flows, or if you want to show staff labels in choral music only on systems that contain more complicated parts, solo lines, or divisi lines.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks at the positions where you want to hide/show staff labels.
- Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system/frame break signposts at the positions where you want to hide/show staff labels.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff labels** in the **Format** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Full**
 - **Abbreviated**
 - **None**


RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding systems to the selected system/frame breaks. Horizontal spacing is automatically adjusted so the system fills the width of the music frame.

- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument/player name length.

Deactivating the property returns any selected system break signposts to your per-layout settings.

EXAMPLE



Full staff labels shown

No staff labels shown

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Inserting system breaks](#) on page 634
- [Inserting frame breaks](#) on page 637
- [Hiding/Showing signposts](#) on page 450

Staff label contents

Staff labels can show the instrument names set for each instrument or the player name of the corresponding player. Staff labels can show full or short names.

Instrument numbers are automatically shown in both full and abbreviated staff labels that use instrument names.

- **Full** staff labels use full instrument/player names.
- **Abbreviated** staff labels use short instrument/player names.
- **None** shows no staff labels.

NOTE

- You can change the full and short names for each instrument and player.
 - Renaming instruments and players does not change the name shown at the top of each part layout if you have already renamed the layout. You can rename layouts separately.
-

RELATED LINKS

- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Instrument numbering](#) on page 131
- [Instrument changes](#) on page 136
- [Staff label paragraph styles](#) on page 1318

Showing instrument/player names in staff labels

You can change whether staff labels show instrument or player names for each player in each layout independently, and on either all systems or only the first system in each flow. For example, you can show the player names for percussionists in full score layouts and instrument names in percussion part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the contents of staff labels.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **Staff Labels** section, in the **Show player name instead of instrument names** list, activate the checkbox for each player whose player name you want to show in staff labels.
 5. Choose one of the following options for **Show player names**:
 - **On all systems**
 - **On first system only**
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Player names are shown for players when their checkbox is activated. Instrument names are shown for players when their checkbox is deactivated.

Full and short player names are used according to your staff label settings.

If you chose **On first system only**, activated player names are only shown on the first system in each flow, with instrument names shown on all other systems.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the full and short names for each instrument and player.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits](#) on page 151

[Staff label paragraph styles](#) on page 1318

Instrument transpositions in staff labels

Instrument transpositions indicate the interval between the note an instrument plays and the sounding note produced. Transposing instruments, such as Horn in F and Clarinet in B \flat , are commonly shown with their transposition, also known as their “instrument pitch”, as part of their instrument name or layout name.

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

Dorico Elements sets common transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B \flat and Trumpet in B \flat , to follow your per-layout settings for hiding/showing instrument transpositions in staff labels.

To reduce the risk of confusion, uncommon transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in A or Trumpet in E, are set to show their transposition in staff labels always, even if you have hidden instrument transpositions in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

[Transposing instruments](#) on page 132

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57

Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels

You can hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels in each layout independently. For example, you can hide instrument transpositions in staff labels in full score layouts but show them in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, activate/deactivate the following options for **Instrument pitch or transposition**:
 - **Show in full staff labels**
 - **Show in abbreviated staff labels**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Instrument transpositions are shown in staff labels of the corresponding length in the selected layouts when the corresponding checkbox is activated, and hidden when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

NOTE

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

Changing the appearance/position of instrument transpositions in staff labels

You can change the appearance and position of instrument transpositions in staff labels in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show instrument transpositions on a separate line in part layouts, but on the same line and parenthesized in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE


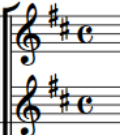

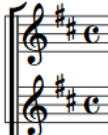
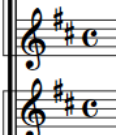
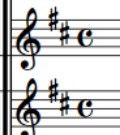

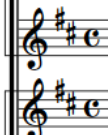
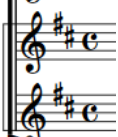
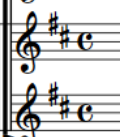

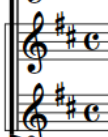

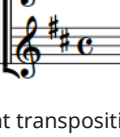

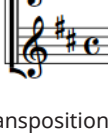
1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose instrument transposition appearance/position you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.

4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Position of instrument pitch in full staff labels**:
 - **Start**
 - **End**
 5. Optional: If you chose **Start**, enter the characters you want to appear as separators into the **Separator between instrument pitch at start and name** field.
 6. Optional: If you chose **End**, activate/deactivate the following options:
 - **Show on separate line**
 - **Show in parentheses**
 - **Show instrument number before transposition**
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The appearance and position of instrument transpositions in staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

EXAMPLE

D-Horn 1		Horn 1 in D		Horn (D) 1		Horn 1 in D	
D-Horn 2		Horn 2 in D		Horn (D) 2		Horn 2 in D	
Bb-Trumpet 1		Trumpet 1 in Bb		Trumpet (Bb) 1		Trumpet 1 in Bb	
Bb-Trumpet 2		Trumpet 2 in Bb		Trumpet (Bb) 2		Trumpet 2 in Bb	
Instrument transposition shown at start, with hyphen separator		Instrument transposition shown at end, on separate line		Instrument transposition shown at end, in parentheses		Instrument transposition shown at end, after instrument number	

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the language for instrument names](#) on page 57
[Instrument numbering](#) on page 131

Player group labels

Player group labels show the names of player groups as vertical text on vertical brackets to the left of staff labels. They allow you to identify groups of staves and are typically used in large-scale works, such as for orchestra and double choir.

The image displays a musical score for three groups: WOODWINDS, BRASS, and CHOIR. Each group's staves are grouped by a vertical bracket on the left. The label 'WOODWINDS' is positioned vertically to the left of the first group's bracket, 'BRASS' to the left of the second group's bracket, and 'CHOIR' to the left of the third group's bracket. The score includes tempo markings such as 'E Un peu animé J = 80' and 'Rit.', and time signature changes from 3/4 to 4/4. The lyrics 'Que les é-rit re-stant et les ve-ant ac-croître de son pré-ri' are visible at the bottom of the page.

Player group labels to the left of staff labels, showing sections in an orchestra

Player group labels show full player group names by default. Short player group names are used when the full player group name is longer than the bracket.

You can show player group labels in each layout independently.

TIP

Player group labels use the **Player Group Labels** paragraph style, which you can edit in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Player groups](#) on page 167
- [Renaming player groups](#) on page 169
- [Brackets and braces](#) on page 864
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Hiding/Showing player group labels

You can hide/show player group labels in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show player group labels for choirs in the full score layout but hide them in the vocal score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show player group labels. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **Staff Labels** section, activate/deactivate **Show player group names**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Player group labels are shown for player groups in the selected layouts when **Show player group names** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

Staff label paragraph styles

Staff labels use paragraph styles to format their fonts, including their size, spacing, alignment, and other formatting options. When staff labels contain multiple separate parts, such as when the instrument name and instrument number have different vertical positions, you can format each part separately.

The image shows a musical score snippet with three staves. The first two staves are for Violins, and the third is for Wood Blocks. Red circles with numbers 1 through 4 highlight specific elements of the staff labels:

- 1: The word "VIOLINS" in a large, bold, serif font, positioned to the left of the staves.
- 2: The word "Violin" in a smaller, regular serif font, positioned to the left of the first staff.
- 3: The number "1" in a smaller, regular serif font, positioned to the left of the first staff.
- 4: The number "4" in a smaller, regular serif font, positioned to the left of the Wood Block staves.

The following paragraph styles are used for staff labels:

- 1 **Player Group Labels:** Used for player group labels.
- 2 **Staff Labels:** The default style used for staff labels that have the instrument/player name and number aligned and next to each other. It is also used for the group labels on divisi staves, groups in grid presentation percussion kits, and for instrument/player names grouped between multiple identical instruments or between player numbers in staff labels on condensed staves.
- 3 **Staff Labels (Inner):** Used for individual staves within divisi groups, instrument numbers when instrument names are aligned between multiple identical instruments, and player numbers in staff labels on condensed staves.
- 4 **Staff Labels (Percussion Grid):** Used for individual instruments in grid presentation percussion kits.

You can edit each paragraph style independently of each other in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog; for example, if you want outer staff labels to be left-aligned but inner staff labels to be right-aligned.

TIP

You can make further changes to the appearance and alignment of staff labels on divisi staves at each individual divisi change.

RELATED LINKS

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Player group labels](#) on page 1317

[Instrument change label paragraph styles](#) on page 142

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

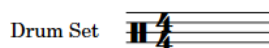
Staff labels for percussion kits

The staff labels shown for percussion kit staves depend on their percussion kit presentation type.

The following staff labels are shown for the corresponding percussion kit presentation type:

5-line staff

Single instrument name using the instrument name of the percussion kit.

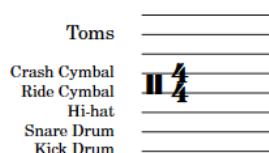


Grid

Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned at the staff position of the corresponding instrument.

Group names are centered between instruments in each group.

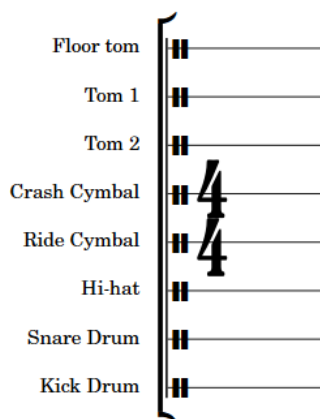
Staff labels for individual instruments in grids use a smaller font and a different paragraph style than used for standard instrument staff labels. Groups in grids use the standard staff label paragraph style.



Single-line instruments

Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned beside the corresponding single-line staff.

Staff labels for single-line instruments use the same font and paragraph style as used for standard instrument staff labels.



You can change the player names, layout names, and instrument names of percussion kits in the same ways as for other players and instruments. However, to change the staff labels for percussion kits, you must change kit instrument names in different ways for percussion kits, depending on your percussion kit presentation type:

- 5-line staff: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from the **Players** panel in Setup mode, or use the **Name** field in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog, to change the name of the kit.
- Grid/Single-line instruments: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from inside the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in Setup mode to change the names of individual instruments.

The same instrument name fields and options are available for kit instruments as for standard pitched instruments.

NOTE

Smaller staff labels for each line in grid presentations use the **Staff Labels (Percussion Grid)** paragraph style. You can edit this paragraph style in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

- [Edit Instrument Names dialog](#) on page 184
- [Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181
- [Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits](#) on page 151
- [Creating groups of instruments within grid presentation percussion kits](#) on page 150
- [Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143
- [Unpitched percussion](#) on page 1419
- [Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

Staff labels on condensed staves

Staff labels on condensed staves must reflect all the players included on the staff. Dorico Elements automatically consolidates identical instrument names in staff labels on condensed staves but always shows all the required player numbers.

On condensed staves containing different types of instruments or instruments with different names, all required instrument names are shown.

The image displays a musical score for a brass section, consisting of five staves. The staves are labeled as follows: Horn in F (1 and 2), Horn in F (3 and 4), Trumpet in C (1 and 2), Trombone (1 and 2), and Bass Trombone/Tuba. The score is written in a condensed format, with notes grouped together. The key signature is two flats (B-flat and E-flat), and the time signature is 4/4. The music features a variety of note values, including quarter notes, eighth notes, and half notes, with some notes beamed together. Dynamics markings include *fp* (fortissimo piano) and accents (>). The staff labels are placed to the left of the staves, and the instrument names are written in a standard font. The score is presented in a clear, professional layout, typical of a music manuscript.

Staff labels on condensed brass staves

Because condensing can change frequently, staff labels on condensed staves can vary from one system to another. The staff labels for condensed divisi staves reflect the divisions at the start of the system and show instrument names.

Dorico Elements also shows player labels above/below condensed staves to identify the players to which notes on condensed staves belong, as condensing can change within a single system. For condensed divisi staves, Dorico Elements shows the player labels "div.", with any required qualifications, and your set unison indication where each division starts and ends respectively.

RELATED LINKS

[Condensing](#) on page 643

[Player, layout, and instrument names](#) on page 181

Staves

A staff is a line or group of lines on which musical notes are notated to indicate the pitch and rhythm of music. Pitched instruments use the traditional five-line staff and unpitched instruments often use a single-line staff.

Notes are positioned on the lines and in the spaces on five-line staves, and can also use ledger lines above/below the staff to represent pitches that cannot fit on the staff.



A phrase on a five-line staff



The same phrase on a single-line staff

The pitch and register of notes on five-line staves are determined by clefs, which can also be combined with octave lines to indicate what pitches performers play.

On five-line staves for unpitched percussion instruments, the different staff positions correspond to different percussion instruments.



Because it is often necessary to have different staff sizes in different layouts depending on their type, such as having smaller staves in full score layouts than in part layouts, in Dorico Elements you can change various aspects of staves in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS

[Page formatting](#) on page 598

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

[Staff size](#) on page 617

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Brackets and braces](#) on page 864

[Staff labels](#) on page 1309

[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605

[Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows](#) on page 608

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

[Condensing](#) on page 643

[Divisi](#) on page 1329

[System dividers](#) on page 1324

[System indents](#) on page 1327

[Clefs](#) on page 907

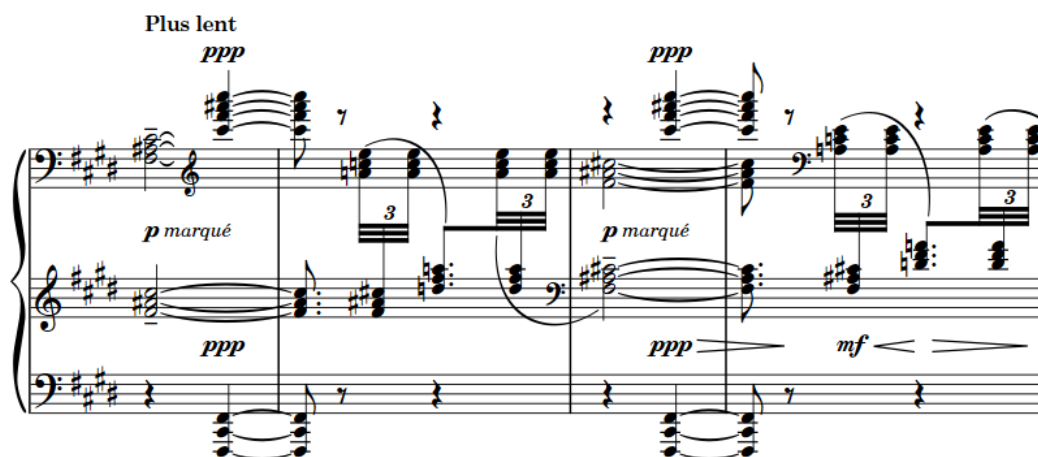
[Octave lines](#) on page 915

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

Extra staves

It is sometimes necessary to add extra staves to instruments; for example, to make complex contrapuntal music easier to read because it is spread out across more staves than usual for that instrument.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add extra staves. However, extra staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.



The image shows a musical score for Debussy's piano prelude "Feuilles mortes". It consists of three staves. The top staff is a grand staff (treble and bass clefs) with a tempo marking "Plus lent" and a dynamic marking "ppp". The middle staff is a grand staff with a dynamic marking "p marqué" and contains triplets. The bottom staff is a grand staff with dynamic markings "ppp" and "mf". The score includes various musical notations such as slurs, ties, and dynamic hairpins.

An extract of Debussy's piano prelude "Feuilles mortes" with three staves

RELATED LINKS

[Ossia staves](#) on page 1323

[Divisi](#) on page 1329

[Voice-specific dynamics](#) on page 931

[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Ossia staves

Ossia staves are smaller staves shown above/below the main staff of an instrument. They are used to show alternative phrases that can be played instead of the original phrase, such as suggestions for ornaments, alternative notations from other sources, or an easier version.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add ossia staves. However, ossia staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

The image shows a musical score for a piano piece. It features three staves: a grand staff for the right hand (treble and bass clefs) and a single staff for the left hand. The right hand part is marked 'p' (piano) and consists of two systems of music. The left hand part is marked 'Più facile' (easier) and also consists of two systems. A system divider, represented by two thick parallel lines, separates the first and second systems of both hands. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and fingerings (e.g., '2 1 2' and '2 1 2 1').

An ossia staff below the left-hand piano staff shows an easier alternative

RELATED LINKS

[Extra staves on page 1323](#)

System dividers

System dividers are used to clarify the separation of different systems when they appear on the same page. They are usually shown as two thick, parallel angled lines positioned to the left of initial barlines.

In Dorico Elements, the outer edges of system dividers are aligned with the corresponding edges of music frames.

The image shows a musical score for a string quartet. It features two staves: Violoncello (Vc.) and Violin 1 (Vln. 1). The Vc. staff is in the upper system, and the Vln. 1 staff is in the lower system. A system divider, represented by two thick parallel lines, separates the two systems. The Vc. staff has a treble clef and a bass clef. The Vln. 1 staff has a treble clef and a 4/4 time signature. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and fingerings (e.g., '7').

A system divider between two systems in a string quartet score

You can show system dividers in different circumstances and change their appearance in each layout independently.

Hiding/Showing system dividers

You can change the circumstances in which system dividers are shown, including specifying the minimum number of players required to show them, in each layout independently. For example, if you only want to show system dividers between systems that contain different numbers of staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show system dividers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **System Dividers** section, activate/deactivate **Show system dividers**.
 5. If you activated **Show system dividers**, choose one of the following options:
 - To show system dividers only between systems containing more than a set number of staves, choose **When min. staves exceeded**.
 - To show system dividers between all systems in flows that contain more than a set number of players, choose **When min. players exceeded**.
 - To show system dividers only between systems containing different numbers of staves, **When number of staves differs**.
 6. Optional: Do one of the following:
 - If you chose **When min. staves exceeded**, change the value for **Minimum number of staves in system**.
 - If you chose **When min. players exceeded**, change the value for **Minimum number of players**.
 7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

- If you deactivated **Show system dividers**, system dividers are hidden in the selected layouts.
- If you activated **Show system dividers**, system dividers are shown in the corresponding circumstances in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605

Changing the length of system dividers

You can change the length of system dividers in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show longer system dividers in layouts that show full staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to show system dividers.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **System Dividers** section, choose one of the following options for **Appearance**:
 - **Default**
 - **Long**
 - **Extra long**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

System objects

System objects are items that apply to all staves in the system and appear in all layouts, but are not necessary to show on every staff in full score layouts. For example, tempo marks and rehearsal marks are important for all players to see in their parts, but would cause an orchestral full score to appear very cluttered if they were shown on every staff.

In Dorico Elements, the following items are considered system objects:

- Rehearsal marks
- Repeat endings
- Repeat markers
- System-attached text
- Tempo marks
- Time signatures shown above the staff
- Horizontal lines that apply to all staves

System objects automatically appear at least once in all layouts. You can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families. For example, you might show them above the woodwind, brass, percussion, and string families. In an orchestral full score, this would ensure system objects are spread out evenly across the page, meaning no staff is very far from these important markings. You can also show rehearsal marks and repeat endings additionally below the bottom staff.

NOTE

- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.
- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

RELATED LINKS

- [Brackets according to ensemble type](#) on page 866
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754
- [Brackets and braces](#) on page 864
- [Rehearsal marks](#) on page 1216
- [Tempo marks](#) on page 1335
- [Repeat endings](#) on page 1230
- [Large time signatures](#) on page 1387
- [Inputting text items](#) on page 388

Changing the positions of system objects

You can show system objects above different instrument families in each layout independently. Multiple items are categorized as system objects, including system-attached text, rehearsal marks, tempo marks, repeat markers, and repeat endings.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the instrument families above which system objects appear.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **System Objects** section, activate the checkboxes for the instrument families above which you want system objects to appear.
5. Activate/Deactivate **Show system objects above first soloist**.
6. Activate/Deactivate the following options for **Also show below bottom staff**:
 - **Repeat endings**
 - **Rehearsal marks**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

System objects appear above the top staff in each bracketed group you select, provided a bracketed group for that instrument family is included in the selected layouts.

If you activated options for **Also show below bottom staff**, the corresponding notations additionally appear below the bottom staff.

NOTE

System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

[System objects](#) on page 1326

[Designating players as soloists](#) on page 127

System indents

System indents control the distance between the left page margin and the start of systems of music. According to tradition, the first system in part layouts is indented, but in modern use this is not always necessary.

According to convention, coda sections at the start of new systems are also indented. Dorico Elements uses the same gap size before the start of codas whether they occur partway through systems or at the start of a new system.



A violin part with the first system indented

In Dorico Elements, system indents automatically adjust to accommodate staff labels. For example, if a system contains a staff label that is significantly longer than the minimum system indent, Dorico Elements increases the indent on that system to ensure the staff label remains legible and is not cut off on the left edge or collides with the music.

You can change both the minimum indent on systems with staff labels and the first system indent in each layout independently. You can also adjust the system indent at both the start and end of individual systems, independently of your per-layout settings.

Changing the first system indent

By default in Dorico Elements, the first system of each flow is indented in part layouts. You can change the indent for the first system of all flows in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose first system indent you want to change.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
 4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Indent first system of flow by**.
 5. Activate/Deactivate **Apply indent when staff labels are shown**.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The indent of the first system of all flows is changed in the selected layouts.

If you deactivated **Apply indent when staff labels are shown**, first systems with staff labels are only indented by the space required for their staff labels.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels](#) on page 1311

[Changing the gap before codas](#) on page 1242

[Hiding/Showing staff labels](#) on page 1310

[Moving the start/end of systems](#) on page 513

[Changing the horizontal justification of final systems](#) on page 612

Divisi

Divisi is when players split, or “divide”, in order to play multiple lines of music, commonly for a limited passage, before returning to play together, or “tutti”. Divisi passages can be notated with all lines on a single staff or across multiple staves.

Divisi is a technique most commonly used in orchestral string writing, as the string section typically contains a large number of players compared to the number of staves. For example, large orchestras commonly have twelve first violins all playing the same part most of the time. Dividing those players into multiple parts allows composers to write more complex contrapuntal music.

An example divisi change in a Violin I part, splitting it into two sections and a solo line

If the division is relatively simple, it is possible to write all parts on the same staff and label the section, with an indication of how many players are required for each line if necessary. If the parts have different rhythms at times, you can input them into separate voices on the same staff.

However, when a section is divided into multiple parts that are too different to be clearly written on a single staff, it is necessary to divide them onto multiple staves. In Dorico Pro, divisi changes allow you not only to divide sections into any number of parts with any number of staves, but also to include solo lines and group staves as required.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot input divisi changes. However, divisi changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS

[Extra staves](#) on page 1323

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Condensing](#) on page 643

Tablature

Tablature is an alternative notation to the five-line staff, and is used for fretted instruments. On tablature, pitches are indicated by fret numbers positioned on lines, each of which represents a string on the instrument. As tablature is commonly used for guitars, it usually shows six lines.

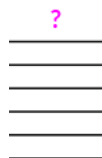
The image shows a musical score for guitar. The top part is a standard notation staff in 3/8 time with a key signature of two sharps (F# and C#). The bottom part is a tablature with three strings labeled T, A, and B. The tablature shows fret numbers for each string. The notation includes a 7th fret barre and a 7th fret bend.

An extract of guitar music shown on both a notation staff and tablature

In Dorico Elements, you can show music for fretted instruments, such as the guitar or bass, on a regular notation staff and tablature together or only show one or the other. Notes and notations are linked between both presentations, meaning any changes you make to one, including inputting notes, automatically update the other.

On tablature, ties are automatically notated as round brackets around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains.

Any notes beyond the range of the instrument or impossible to calculate, such as below the nut on the lowest string or a natural harmonic without a suitable node, are shown on tablature as pink question marks. If two notes are allocated to the same string at the same rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.



Note on tablature that cannot be calculated

The appropriate tablature is automatically shown for instruments according to their strings and tuning settings. There are default tunings stored for each instrument type in Dorico Elements, which you can customize in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature](#) on page 1331

[Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153

[Inputting notes on tablature](#) on page 242

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

[Harmonics](#) on page 1081

[Guitar bends](#) on page 1122

[Guitar techniques](#) on page 1137

[Ties](#) on page 1364

[Trills](#) on page 1094

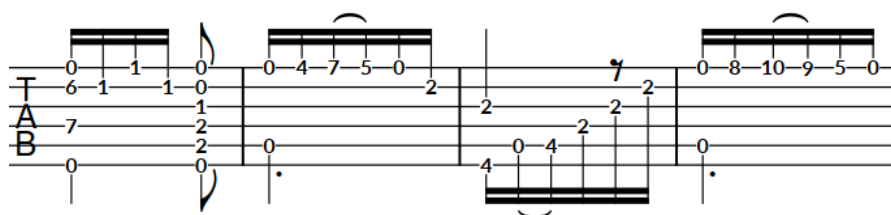
[Capos on page 157](#)

Rhythms on tablature

When notation staves and tablature are both shown, it is customary only to notate rhythms on the notation staff. However, when only tablature is shown, it is necessary to show rhythms on tablature.

The following items are shown to indicate rhythms on tablature:

- Time signatures
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming
- Rhythm dots



Rhythms shown on tablature

NOTE

Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes on tablature on page 242](#)

Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature

You can show notation staves only, tablature only, or both in each layout independently and for each player holding at least one fretted instrument independently. For example, you can show only notation staves in the full score layout, but the notation staff and tablature in a guitar part layout.

When tablature is shown, it can appear with or without rhythms.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tablature.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Fretted Instruments** section, choose one of the following options for each player holding at least one fretted instrument in your project:
 - To show only notation staves and hide tablature, choose **Notation only**.
 - To show both notation staves and tablature, choose **Notation and tablature**.

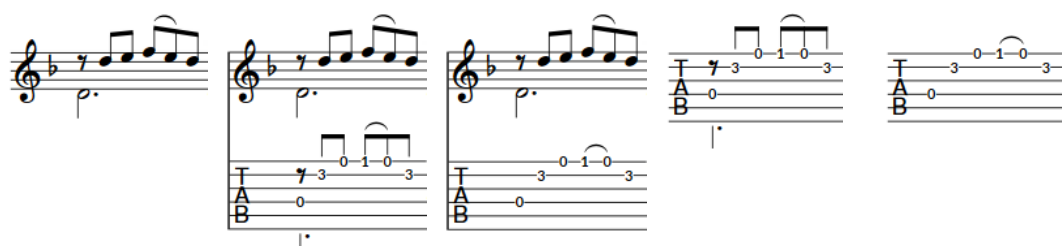
- To show only tablature and hide notation staves, choose **Tablature only**.
5. Optional: If you chose **Notation and tablature** or **Tablature only**, activate/deactivate **Show rhythms in tablature**.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

Notation staves and tablature are hidden/shown for the corresponding players in the selected layouts.

If tablature is shown, it appears with rhythms when **Show rhythms in tablature** is activated, and without rhythms when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notation only **Notation and tablature with rhythms** **Notation and tablature without rhythms** **Tablature only with rhythms** **Tablature only without rhythms**

RELATED LINKS

- [Players](#) on page 123
- [Fretted instrument tuning](#) on page 153
- [Inputting notes on tablature](#) on page 242
- [Guitar bends](#) on page 1122
- [Guitar techniques](#) on page 1137
- [Hiding/Showing empty staves](#) on page 605
- [Changing instruments](#) on page 134



Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature

You can change the string to which individual notes are allocated on tablature manually; for example, if you input the notes on the notation staff and want to change their default string allocation.

NOTE

You cannot allocate notes to a string on which they are impossible, such as if the note is lower than the open pitch of the string.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. On tablature, select the fret numbers of notes whose allocated string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You must select fret numbers on tablature, you cannot select the notes on notation staves.

2. Change their allocated string in any of the following ways:
 - To move them up a string, press **N**.
 - To move them down a string, press **M**.
 - In the Properties panel, select a string from the **String** menu in the **Notes and Rests** group.
-

RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are allocated is changed. Using the key commands changes the string of the selected notes proportionally, whereas selecting a string from the **String** menu allocates all selected notes to the selected string.

NOTE

- If they are now allocated to the same string as another note at that rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.
 - Deactivating the property resets the selected notes to their default string.
-

EXAMPLE

The image shows a musical staff with a treble clef and a key signature of two sharps (F# and C#). The staff contains a sequence of notes: a quarter note on the second line (F#), a quarter note on the second space (C#), a quarter note on the second line (F#), and a quarter note on the second space (C#). Below the staff is a tablature with three strings labeled T, A, and B. The fret numbers for the notes are 3, 15, 4, and 16. The final note has a fret number of 517, which is highlighted in green.

Notes allocated to the same string

The image shows the same musical staff and key signature as the previous example. The notes are: a quarter note on the second line (F#), a quarter note on the second space (C#), a quarter note on the second line (F#), and a quarter note on the second space (C#). Below the staff is a tablature with three strings labeled T, A, and B. The fret numbers for the notes are 15, 16, 12, and 13. The final note has a fret number of 14.

After changing the strings for some notes to reduce the distance between frets

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes on tablature](#) on page 242

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Editing the tablature numbers font style

You can edit the formatting of the font used for all numbers on tablature project-wide; for example, if you want them to appear larger by default.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library > Font Styles** to open the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.
 2. In the font styles list, select **Tablature Numbers Font**.
 3. Activate the following options, individually or together, to change the corresponding aspect of the font:
 - **Font family**
 - **Size**
 - **Style**
 - **Underlined**
 4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The formatting of the font used for numbers on tablature is changed project-wide.

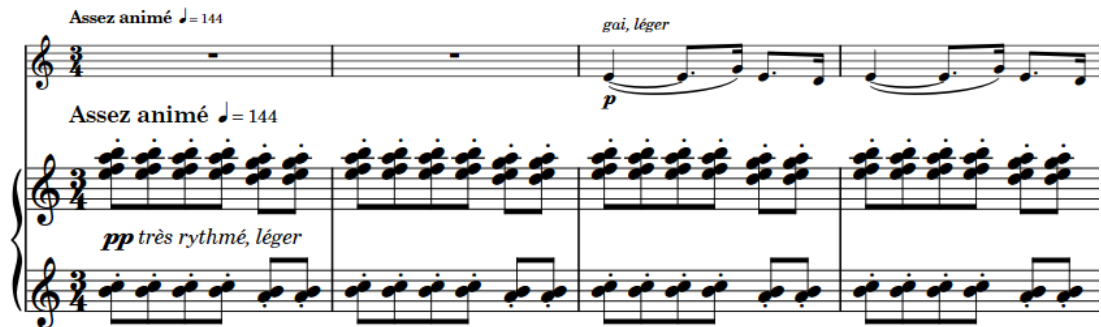
RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

Tempo marks

Tempo marks indicate how fast music is played, often with a combination of text instructions and metronome marks. They are also known as “tempo changes”, “tempo indications”, and “tempo markings”.

A tempo mark can show text instructions, a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.



The image shows a musical score snippet in 3/4 time. The top staff (treble clef) has a tempo mark **Assez animé** with a metronome mark $\text{♩} = 144$. The bottom staff (bass clef) has a tempo mark **pp très rythmé, léger** with a metronome mark $\text{♩} = 144$. The music consists of a melody in the treble clef and a rhythmic accompaniment in the bass clef. The tempo mark **gai, léger** is placed above the melody, and a dynamic marking **p** is placed below it.

Tempo mark containing text instruction in French and metronome mark

Text instructions are traditionally expressed in Italian, such as *largo* or *allegretto*, but other languages, such as English, French, and German, have become widely accepted. The text instruction can express simply how fast the music is played, but can also suggest its character. For example, *grave* means slow but also solemn and sad, and *vivo* means fast but also lively and sprightly.

Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. Metronome marks can show a fixed bpm or indicate a range of possible or acceptable values.

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time. They can appear differently; for example, with/without a continuation line or with the text split into syllables and spread across their duration.

Tempo marks use a bold font with a large point size, so they are clearly noticeable on the page. They do not usually use an italic font.

In Dorico Elements, tempo marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, tempo marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

By default, the tempo marks you input set the tempo for playback and MIDI recording, but you can change the tempo mode if, for example, you want to use a single fixed tempo when recording MIDI. Gradual tempo changes also affect the playback tempo, and you can change the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes; for example, if you want to reach a specific bpm at the end. If you do not input any tempo marks into your project, the default playback tempo is 120 bpm.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Tempo mark font styles](#) on page 1339

[Tempo track](#) on page 532

[Tempo editor](#) on page 706

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Types of tempo marks

Dorico Elements groups tempo marks into different types according to their function and effect on the music.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of tempo marks:

Absolute Tempo Change

Indicates a defined change in tempo, and is often shown with a metronome mark. For example, "Adagio $\text{♩}=76$ ".

Absolute tempo changes can show tempo text and metronome marks, both individually and together.

Gradual Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* (slowing down) or *accelerando* (speeding up).

Relative Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement).

Relative tempo changes often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark. You can, however, set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark that updates automatically if the previous metronome mark changes.

Reset Tempo

Returns the tempo to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo* (return to the first tempo of the piece).

Tempo Equation

Indicates a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. For example, if the time signature changes from 3/4 to 6/8, a tempo equation of $\text{♩}=\text{♩}$ indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4 now applies to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8.

RELATED LINKS

[Metronome marks](#) on page 1341

[Gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1345

[Tempo equations](#) on page 1349

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Changing the relative tempo mark value](#) on page 1344

[Tempo mark font styles](#) on page 1339

Positions of tempo marks

Tempo marks are placed above the staff and at the same positions as other system objects, because they usually apply to all staves. They are placed above notations such as slurs, ties, and octave lines, and are often aligned with rehearsal marks to ensure clear readability.

By default in Dorico Elements, tempo marks align with either a time signature or the notehead/rest at the rhythmic position to which they apply. For example, if there is a notehead with an

accidental at the rhythmic position of a tempo mark, it is convention to align the tempo mark with the accidental.

If a repeat mark occurs mid-system and is not treated as a barline, tempo marks are aligned with the repeat mark.

When a tempo mark includes both text and a metronome mark, the text appears first, followed by the metronome mark.

You can move tempo marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move tempo marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each gradual tempo change has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of gradual tempo changes. You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

If gradual tempo changes cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

Tempo marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want tempo marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514



Changing the end position of gradual tempo changes relative to barlines

You can change how the ends of individual gradual tempo change continuations are positioned relative to barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose end position relative to barlines you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:

- **Stop before**
 - **Continue**
-

RESULT

The end position of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the style of gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1347
- [Changing the order of metronome marks](#) on page 1345

Changing tempo text

You can change the text of existing tempo marks individually. For example, if you want to add “al fine” to a *ritardando* at the end of a flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks whose tempo text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, enter the tempo text you want into the **Text** field in the **Tempo** group.
 3. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The tempo text for the selected tempo marks is changed.

TIP

You can also change the tempo text by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing existing items](#) on page 432
- [Changing the order of metronome marks](#) on page 1345

Showing abbreviated tempo text

You can show individual tempo marks with custom abbreviated text in some layouts; for example, if a long tempo mark extends beyond the page boundary in some part layouts but the abbreviated version fits within the boundary.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to show abbreviated tempo text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Select the tempo marks you want to show with abbreviated text.
3. In the Properties panel, activate **Abbreviation** in the **Tempo** group.
4. Enter the text you want into the value field.
5. Activate **Abbreviate** in the **Tempo** group.
6. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected tempo marks appear with abbreviated text when **Abbreviation** is activated and **Abbreviate** is deactivated, or when **Abbreviation** and both **Abbreviate** and its corresponding checkbox are all activated.

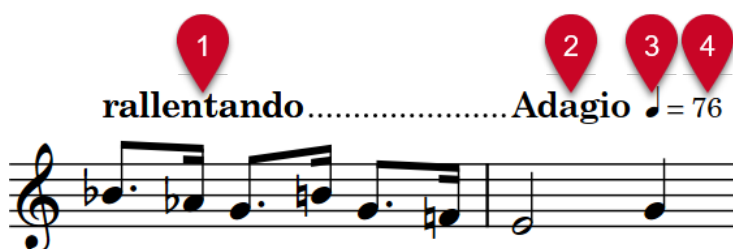
This allows you to switch between showing abbreviated/full text in different layouts without deleting your abbreviated text from the **Abbreviation** value field.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Tempo mark font styles

There are different font styles for different types of tempo marks and tempo mark components. You can change different aspects of these fonts in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog, such as changing their font size to make tempo marks appear larger.



The following font styles are used for tempo marks:

- 1 **Gradual Tempo Text Font:** Used for gradual tempo changes, such as "*rallentando*".

- 2 **Immediate Tempo Text Font:** Used for absolute tempo changes, such as “Adagio”.
- 3 **Metronome Music Text Font:** Used for note value glyphs in metronome marks, such as “♩”. Must be SMuFL-compliant.
- 4 **Metronome Text Font:** Used for equal signs and numbers in metronome marks, such as “=76”.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply to the entire project, including part layouts.

RELATED LINKS



[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Hiding/Showing tempo marks

You can hide/show the different components in individual tempo marks without changing the speed of playback. This affects their appearance in all layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks you want to hide, or the signposts of tempo marks you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties in the **Tempo** group:
 - **Text shown**
 - **Metronome mark shown**

RESULT

When at least one of the properties is activated, the selected tempo marks are shown. They display components according to the properties that are activated.

When neither property is activated, the selected tempo marks are hidden. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tempo mark as they still affect the speed of playback.

TIP

You can input hidden tempo marks when using the tempo popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Signposts](#) on page 450



[Changing the tempo mode](#) on page 543

[Muting notes/items individually](#) on page 548

Parenthesizing tempo marks

You can show individual absolute tempo marks in parentheses; for example, to indicate metronome marks that are suggestions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks you want to parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Tempo** group.


RESULT

The selected tempo marks are shown in parentheses.



- When only either tempo text or metronome marks are shown, the visible component is parenthesized.
- When both tempo text and metronome marks are shown, metronome marks are parenthesized.

Metronome marks

Tempo marks often include a metronome mark value. Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. For example, a bpm of 60 means one beat per second. The more beats per minute, the faster the music.

 = 176–184

A metronome mark shown as a range

Metronome marks can be precise, such as  = 176, or can indicate an acceptable range, such as  = 152-176. They can also be shown in parentheses, which is useful if the metronome mark is intended as a guide rather than a fixed value.

By default, metronome marks appear as integers and do not show decimal places. If you input a metronome mark with a decimal place, it is rounded to the nearest integer. Metronome marks that you input in the Tempo editor appear as signposts by default.

The beat unit used in metronome marks commonly relates to the meter; for example, the metronome mark beat unit is often a quarter note in 4/4 but a dotted quarter note in 6/8.

In Dorico Elements, metronome marks can appear as an individual value or as a range. Depending on the type and appearance of metronome marks, the bpm value can indicate a fixed tempo or an approximate tempo.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Tempo mark font styles](#) on page 1339

[Tempo equations](#) on page 1349

[Tempo track](#) on page 532
[Tempo editor](#) on page 706



Changing the metronome mark value

You can change the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks after they have been input, including changing the beat unit.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Tempo (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
 3. Press **Return**.
 4. Choose the appropriate note duration and rhythm dot, if applicable, for **Beat unit**.
-

RESULT

The metronome mark value and beat unit is changed for the selected absolute tempo marks. This affects the tempo of playback, even if no metronome mark component is shown for those tempo marks.

NOTE

- By default, any decimals you enter are hidden and the displayed metronome mark value appears as the nearest integer. However, metronome marks always reflect their exact values in playback.
 - You can also change the metronome mark value by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
[Changing existing items](#) on page 432



Showing the metronome mark value as a range

You can show the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks as a range. For example, you can use this to indicate that any speed within the given range is musically appropriate for the piece.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to show as a range. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tempo range (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The tempo range, expressed as beats per minute, is changed for the selected tempo marks. By default, metronome mark ranges use a dash separator.



NOTE

Depending on the values set for each property, both **Tempo (bpm)** and **Tempo range (bpm)** can be the minimum/maximum tempo in the range, as Dorico Elements automatically arranges metronome mark ranges with the lower value first. However, the metronome mark used for playback is always **Tempo (bpm)**, regardless of whether that is the higher/lower value in the range.

Showing metronome marks as approximate

You can show individual metronome marks as approximate, and change the appearance of the approximate indication.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the metronome marks that you want to show as approximate. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Is approximate** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Optional: Change the appearance of the approximate indication in any of the following ways:
 - Activate **Approximate appearance**, then select the approximate appearance you want from the menu.
 - Activate **Show equals sign**, then activate/deactivate the corresponding checkbox.



RESULT

The selected metronome marks are shown as approximate.

Changing the relative tempo mark value

You can change the tempo of individual relative tempo marks, expressed as a percentage of the previous tempo mark.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the relative tempo marks whose value you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Relative %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The tempo at the relative tempo mark is changed. For example, if the previous tempo was 100 bpm, and you change a relative tempo mark to 90, the new tempo is 90% of 100 bpm, which is 90 bpm.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes

You can change how significantly gradual tempo changes affect the tempo in playback, expressed as a percentage of the tempo at the start of the gradual tempo change.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose final tempo you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Final tempo %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT



The final tempo at the end of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

For example, if you change the value to 20 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 20% of 100 bpm, which is 20 bpm. If you change the value to 120 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 120% of 100 bpm, which is 120 bpm.

Changing the order of metronome marks

You can change the order of metronome marks relative to tempo text for individual tempo marks. For example, if you want to show metronome marks before tempo text in some tempo marks but after tempo text in others.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks whose metronome mark order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Metronome mark order** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Before**
 - **After**

RESULT

The order of metronome marks relative to tempo text in the selected tempo marks is changed.

EXAMPLE



Metronome mark before tempo text



Metronome mark after tempo text

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

Gradual tempo changes

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando*, which indicates slowing down, and *accelerando*, which indicates speeding up.



Rallentando with dashed line

Gradual tempo changes are considered a type of tempo mark in Dorico Elements, meaning you can input them in the same ways as for tempo marks.

Because gradual tempo changes have a different metronome mark value at the start/end, you can change the final tempo at the end of individual gradual tempo changes.

In Dorico Elements, you can show gradual tempo changes with different styles, such as with a continuation line or with syllables spread across their duration. You can also show gradual tempo changes with different line styles, such as dotted or dashed.

NOTE

You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

[Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes](#) on page 1344

[Tempo mark font styles](#) on page 1339



[Lengthening/Shortening items](#) on page 430

[Exporting text](#) on page 102

Adding poco a poco text to gradual tempo changes

You can add *poco a poco* text immediately after individual gradual tempo changes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

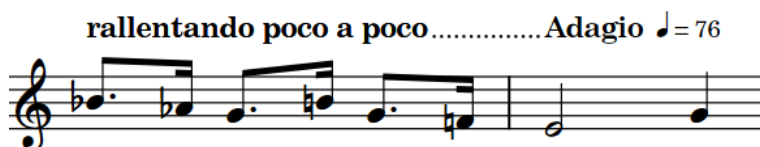
1. Select the gradual tempo changes to which you want to add *poco a poco* text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco** in the **Tempo** group.

RESULT

Poco a poco text is shown immediately after the text in the selected gradual tempo changes.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual tempo changes.

EXAMPLE





Rallentando with *poco a poco* text

Changing the style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the style of individual gradual tempo changes. Gradual tempo changes can appear as text only with no continuation line, text with a continuation line, or with the word spread across their duration.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **rit.**
 - **rit...**
 - **rit - ar - dan - do**

RESULT

The style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

NOTE

Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables; for example, *ritenuto* or *accelerando*. Gradual tempo changes automatically have valid full text when you input them using the panel or select a suggested entry from the menu when using the popover. You can also change the text of existing gradual tempo changes, including adding hyphens manually to control how they are separated into syllables.

EXAMPLE

rallentando

rit.: Text only

rallentando.....

rit...: Text with a continuation line

ral . len . tan . do .

rit - ar - dan - do: Syllables in the text spread across the duration of the gradual tempo change

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293
- [Changing tempo text](#) on page 1338



Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the line style of individual gradual tempo changes whose style includes a continuation line.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line style** in the **Tempo** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Solid**
 - **Dotted**
 - **Dashed**
-

RESULT

The line style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.



Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in gradual tempo changes

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes with dashed lines whose dash length you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Tempo** group:
 - **Line dash length**
 - **Line dash gap**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

Increasing **Line dash length** makes dashes in gradual tempo changes longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Line dash gap** makes gaps between dashes in gradual tempo change lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



Changing the line thickness of gradual tempo changes

You can change the thickness of dashed and solid lines in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed and solid lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line thickness** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thicker, decreasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tempo equations

Tempo equations indicate a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. They are often used to maintain a consistent pulse across multiple different meters.

For example, if the time signature changes from 6/8 to 3/4, a tempo equation of $\text{♩}=\text{♩}$ indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8 now applies to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4.



Tempo equations are considered a type of tempo mark in Dorico Elements, meaning you can input them in the same ways as for tempo marks.

NOTE

Tempo equations do not yet include tuplet durations. This is planned for future versions.

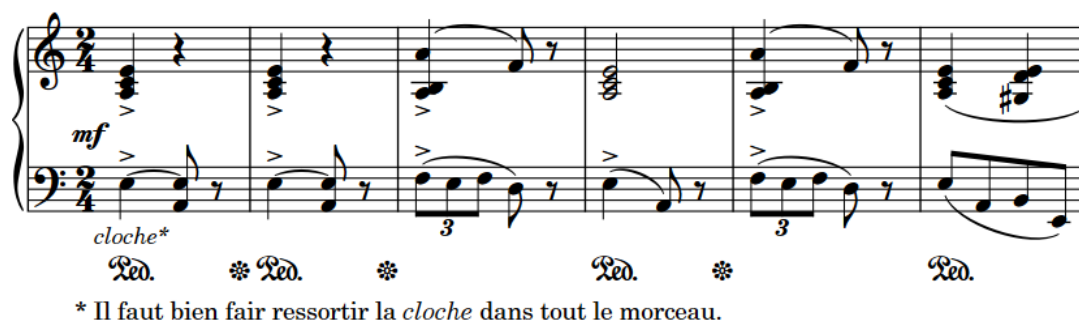
RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for tempo marks](#) on page 293

Text items

Text items exist at rhythmic positions within flows and allow you to display generic text in the music.

You can customize the formatting of text in text items using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.



The image shows a musical score snippet in 2/4 time. The piano staff has a dynamic marking of *mf*. Below the staff, there are text items: *cloche** followed by *Led.*, an asterisk, *Led.*, an asterisk, *Led.*, an asterisk, and *Led.*. Below this, a line of text reads: ** Il faut bien fair ressortir la cloche dans tout le morceau.*

A text item below a piano staff

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of text items:

Staff-attached text

Text items that apply to individual staves and only appear on those staves.

System-attached text

Text items that apply to all staves and appear in all applicable layouts. In Dorico Elements, system-attached text is categorized as a system object. Therefore, system-attached text follows your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

NOTE

- You can only use tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in text items. Full text frame functionality is only available in Dorico Pro.
- There are dedicated features for other types of text that often appear in musical scores, such as tempo marks and dynamics.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting text items](#) on page 388
- [Text editor options in Write mode](#) on page 389
- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [System objects](#) on page 1326
- [Changing the default font family](#) on page 760
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
- [Exporting text](#) on page 102

Types of text

Generic text in Dorico Elements can exist as text items, either staff-attached or system-attached, or in text frames, which are fixed to the page rather than the music. There are dedicated features for other types of text that often appear in musical scores, such as tempo marks and dynamics.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of text:

Text items

Text items exist at rhythmic positions within flows. They can display any text you enter, apart from tokens. You can customize the formatting of text in text items using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.

Text items can apply either to individual staves, which is known as “staff-attached text”, or to all staves, which is known as “system-attached text”.



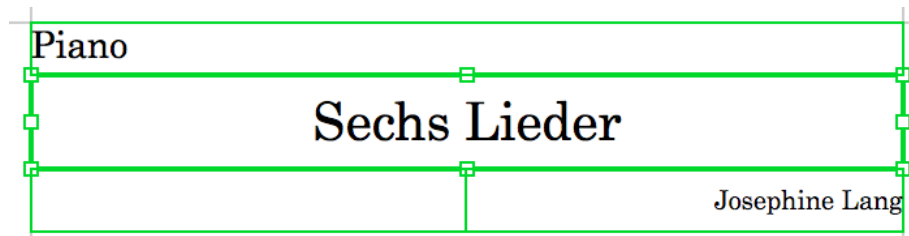
The image shows a musical score snippet in 2/4 time. The piano staff (bottom) has a dynamic marking 'mf' and several text items: 'cloche*' (with an asterisk), 'Led.', and 'Led.' (with a treble clef symbol). The treble staff (top) has a dynamic marking '>' and several text items: 'Led.', 'Led.', and 'Led.' (with a treble clef symbol). There are also some musical notations like triplets and slurs.

* Il faut bien faire ressortir la *cloche* dans tout le morceau.

A text item below a piano staff

Text in text frames

Text frames exist on pages independently of rhythmic positions within flows. They can display any text you enter, including tokens. You can customize the formatting of text in text frames using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.



The diagram shows a page layout for a piano part. It features three text frames: 'Piano' at the top left, 'Sechs Lieder' in the center, and 'Josephine Lang' at the bottom right. The frames are outlined in green, and the 'Sechs Lieder' frame is selected, indicated by a green border and small square handles at the corners.

Text frames on the first page in a piano part layout, with the project title frame selected

NOTE

The project title, page numbers, and running headers that are automatically shown in layouts exist in text frames. Their contents and formatting come from page templates, which you cannot edit or create in Dorico Elements. Editing text frames in layouts is considered a page template override. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides. The default page templates display different information according to their type.

Tempo marks

Tempo marks indicate how fast music is played, often with a combination of text instructions and metronome marks.

For example, *Allegro*, *Larghetto*, *ritardando*, and *accelerando* are all tempo marks.

The image shows a musical score for a piece in 3/4 time. The top staff is for the vocal line, and the bottom two staves are for the piano accompaniment. The tempo mark is "Assez animé" with a metronome mark of a quarter note equal to 144 (♩ = 144). The tempo instruction is in French: "gai, léger" (cheerful, light) and "pp très rythmé, léger" (pianissimo, very rhythmic, light). The dynamics include a piano (*p*) marking in the vocal line.

Tempo mark containing text instruction in French and metronome mark

Rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are ordered sequences of letters or numbers that provide useful reference points. They are often shown in a rectangular enclosure.

The image shows a musical score in 3/4 time with a rehearsal mark "G" enclosed in a box. The tempo mark is "Poco meno mosso" with a metronome mark of a quarter note equal to approximately 100 (♩ = c. 100). The dynamics include a mezzo-piano (*mp*) marking. The score features various musical techniques such as triplets (3), sextuplets (6), and a 7-measure rest.

A rehearsal mark, showing the letter G

Playing techniques

The term "playing techniques" covers a wide range of instructions intended to tell performers to modify the sound of the notes they are playing; for example, by changing their embouchure or changing the position of their bow, or by modifying their instrument, such as adding a mute or depressing a pedal.

For example, *pizzicato*, *flutter-tongue*, *con sordino*, and "snares on" are all playing techniques.

The image shows a musical score in G major, 2/4 time. It illustrates several playing techniques: "pizz. con sord." (pizzicato with mutes), "arco" (arco), "détaché sul tasto" (detached on the strings), and "sul pont." (sul ponticello). The score includes various note values and rests.

Dynamics

Dynamics indicate the loudness of the music and can be combined with expressive text to give further clarification about how to perform the music. Dynamics can indicate an immediate change in volume or a gradual change over a specified duration.

For example, *pp*, *f*, and "crescendo" are all dynamics.

The image shows a musical score in G major, 2/4 time, illustrating various dynamics. It includes markings for *f* (forte), *ff* (fortissimo), *fp* (fortissimo piano), *ff* (fortissimo), *pp* (pianissimo), and *f* (forte). It also features expressive markings like "bis. flz." (bis. flautando) and "vib." (vibrato). The score includes a triplet and a 3-measure rest.

A phrase with multiple different dynamics

Lyrics

In Dorico Elements, the term “lyrics” is used for all text that is sung by singers. Lyrics are organized into lyric lines, with different types of lyric lines available for lyrics with different purposes. For example, lyrics in a chorus line are shown in an italic font by default.

Lyrics for a soprano duet with basso continuo accompaniment

Fingering

Fingerings use numbers and letters to recommend which fingers players should use for notes.

Piano music containing multiple fingerings, including a substitution fingering and alternative fingerings

Figured bass

Figured bass is a shorthand that uses figures to specify the harmony above the notated bass notes. Figures use a combination of Arabic numbers, accidentals, and horizontal hold lines to specify both the intervals above the bass note that make up the chord and its duration.

A basso continuo part with figured bass below the staff

Chord symbols

Chord symbols describe the vertical harmony of the music at a specific moment. They are frequently used in jazz and pop music, where players often improvise around chord progressions.

For example, “Gm7”, “Dsus4”, and “C6/9” are all chord symbols.

A musical score in 4/4 time, featuring a Clarinet melody on the top staff and piano accompaniment on the bottom staff. The Clarinet staff has a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The piano accompaniment has a grand staff with treble and bass clefs. Above the Clarinet staff, a series of chord symbols are placed above slashes: C7, G7/D, C7, F, G#dim7 Gm7, F, C7, F, C7. Above the piano staff, the same sequence of chord symbols is placed above slashes: C7, G7/D, C7, F, G#dim7 Gm7, F, C7, F, C7. The Clarinet melody consists of eighth and quarter notes, with some triplets. The piano accompaniment consists of chords and moving lines in both hands.

Chord symbols shown above slashes on the Clarinet and Piano staves to help the players improvise around the notated Cornet melody.

Repeat markers

Repeat markers show that musical material is to be repeated. They often involve jumping to different positions and sections in the music instead of moving through the music consecutively.

For example, *D.C. al Coda*, *D.S.*, and *Fine* are all repeat markers.

A musical score in 4/4 time with lyrics. The top staff is the vocal line, and the bottom staff is the piano accompaniment. The lyrics are: "sah. sah. 2. Und im - mer 3. Es quoll und nun wußt' ich wohl wie mir ge - schah". There are two Coda symbols (⊕ Coda) above the vocal line, indicating repeat markers. The piano accompaniment features a rhythmic pattern of eighth notes in the right hand and quarter notes in the left hand.

A mid-system coda section

Comments

Comments are notes or instructions added at precise positions in a project without affecting the music. They are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.

A musical score in 4/4 time with dynamics and comments. The top staff is the vocal line, and the bottom staff is the piano accompaniment. The dynamics are *f* and *fz*. There are several comments (U1, U2) in purple boxes above the vocal line, indicating annotations. The piano accompaniment features a rhythmic pattern of eighth notes in the right hand and quarter notes in the left hand.

A passage with comments and replies

RELATED LINKS

- [Tokens](#) on page 655
- [Text formatting](#) on page 753
- [Changing the default font family](#) on page 760
- [Editing text in text items](#) on page 392
- [Exporting text](#) on page 102
- [Flow headings](#) on page 651

[Page numbers](#) on page 1150
[Tacets](#) on page 640
[Tempo marks](#) on page 1335
[Rehearsal marks](#) on page 1216
[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180
[Dynamics](#) on page 921
[Lyrics](#) on page 1029
[Fingering](#) on page 971
[Figured bass](#) on page 957
[Chord symbols](#) on page 871
[Repeat markers](#) on page 1236
[Comments](#) on page 494
[Staff labels](#) on page 1309
[Instrument changes](#) on page 136
[Player group labels](#) on page 1317

Changing the paragraph style of text items

You can change the paragraph style that is applied to individual text items; for example, if you want to use different paragraph styles according to the information included in different text items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the text items whose paragraph style you want to change.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Text > Change Paragraph Style** to open the **Change Paragraph Style** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Select a paragraph style from the **Paragraph style** menu.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The paragraph style applied to the selected text items is changed. The formatting of the selected text items now follows the paragraph style, such as its font size, font style, or horizontal alignment.

NOTE

If you override the paragraph style of text in an individual text item or text frame, such as by making text bold, any changes you later make to corresponding parameters of the paragraph style are not applied to the overridden text. However, font size overrides are combined with the font size in the paragraph style.

RELATED LINKS



[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756
[Types of page templates](#) on page 648
[Removing page template overrides](#) on page 651
[Selecting more items of the same type](#) on page 423

Aligning text items with the start of systems

You can align individual text items whose rhythmic position is at the start of systems with the systemic barline rather than the first note/rest, independently of the system alignment setting

for their paragraph style. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items you want to align with the start of systems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Align with system start** in the **Text** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected text items are aligned with the start of systems when the checkbox is activated, and aligned with the first note/rest in systems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.


When the property is deactivated, text items follow the system alignment setting of their paragraph style.

TIP

You can change the default alignment of each paragraph style relative to the start of systems in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

EXAMPLE

E \flat minor (harmonic)



The image shows a musical score for E-flat minor (harmonic) in two staves. The text 'E \flat minor (harmonic)' is positioned above the first staff. The text 'Text aligned with the first note in the system' is positioned below the first staff. The text is aligned with the first note of the first staff.

Text aligned with the first note in the system

E \flat minor (harmonic)



The image shows a musical score for E-flat minor (harmonic) in two staves. The text 'E \flat minor (harmonic)' is positioned above the first staff. The text 'Text aligned with the start of the system' is positioned below the first staff. The text is aligned with the start of the first staff.

Text aligned with the start of the system

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Inputting text items](#) on page 388
- [Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance



You can change whether individual text items automatically move to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Text items with collision avoidance disabled do not contribute to automatic staff spacing calculations.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Avoid collisions** in the **Text** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

The selected text items avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



RELATED LINKS

[Staff spacing](#) on page 620

Adding borders to text items

You can add borders to individual text items; for example, if you want to make the boundaries of text items clear. You can show borders on text items in addition to erasing their backgrounds.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items to which you want to add borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Text** group.
-

RESULT

Borders are added to the selected text items.

TIP


- Deactivating **Border** removes borders from the selected text items.

- You can show borders on text items automatically by using paragraph styles set to show borders by default.

EXAMPLE

Text

Text with no border



Text with border shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the style and thickness of text item borders.
- You can change the padding between text items and each edge of their borders.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756



[Hiding/Showing borders on layout names](#) on page 1001

[Instrument change label paragraph styles](#) on page 142

Changing the style of text item borders

You can change the style of borders shown on individual text items; for example, if you want to show rectangle borders on some text items but capsule borders on others. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items whose border style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border style** in the **Text** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Rectangle**
 - **Rounded rectangle**
 - **Capsule**
 - **Angled ends rectangle**

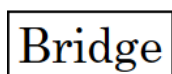
RESULT

The border style of the selected text items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

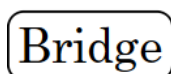
TIP

You can change the border style used by each paragraph style by default in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

EXAMPLE



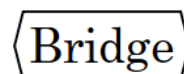
Rectangle



Rounded rectangle



Capsule





Angled ends rectangle

Changing the thickness of text item borders

You can change the thickness of borders around individual text items.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose border thickness you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Text** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-



RESULT

The thickness of borders around the selected text items is changed.

Changing the padding around text items

You can change the padding around text items individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between text and erased backgrounds and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Text** group.

- **L** changes the padding between text items and their left edge.
- **R** changes the padding between text items and their right edge.
- **T** changes the padding between text items and their top edge.
- **B** changes the padding between text items and their bottom edge.

3. Change the values in the value fields for the edges whose padding you want to change.
-

RESULT

The padding around the selected text items is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default padding between text and each border edge for individual paragraph styles in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog. However, paragraph style border padding settings are only used when **Border** is activated for the corresponding paragraph style.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

Erasing the background of text items

You can erase the background of individual text items; for example, to ensure the text remains legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose backgrounds you want to erase.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Text** group.
-

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected text items are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

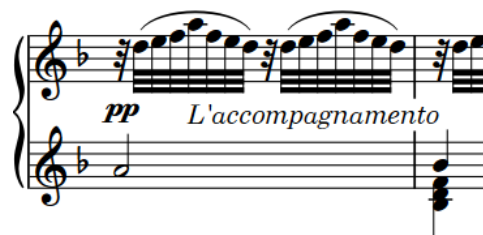
TIP

- You can show borders on text items in addition to erasing their backgrounds.
 - Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected text items to the default non-erased background.
-

EXAMPLE



Text with non-erased background



Text with erased background



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between text items and each edge of their erased areas.

Hiding/Showing text items

You can hide/show individual text items. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. For example, you can show specific text items in part layouts but hide them in full score layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items you want to hide, or the signposts of text items you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Text** group.

RESULT

The selected text items are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden text item. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show text signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Text**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog](#) on page 60

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Ties

A tie is a curved line that joins two notes of the same pitch. When notes are longer than the maximum duration of a bar in the prevailing time signature, they automatically appear in Dorico Elements as tie chains; that is, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties.

Each sequence of ties, whether they join two notes or ten notes together, represents a single note with the duration of all the tied notes combined. A performer plays the notes as one note, without re-striking, re-blowing, or re-bowing the note at any point within the rhythmic duration of the tie chain.



A tie chain across several bars on the bottom piano staff

On tablature, tied notes appear as parenthesized fret numbers at the start of subsequent bars by default. When tablature is shown with rhythms, ties within the same bar are indicated with stems rather than bracketed noteheads.



A phrase on tablature with some ties within bars and a chord tied across two bars

In Dorico Elements, most ties are created automatically. Rhythms are notated according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature. Therefore, notes that cannot be notated using a single duration are automatically drawn as tie chains. For example, if you input a dotted whole note at the start of a bar in a 4/4 time signature, it is automatically notated as a whole note tied to a half note in the next bar. If the time signature changes, tie chains are automatically adjusted to remain correct in the new meter.

Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate endpoint position and curvature direction for ties to avoid collisions, according to the context.

NOTE

- Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.
- In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains because Dorico Elements considers each tie chain to be a single note. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics, in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes and ties within tie chains and edit them independently.

- When you tie existing notes together, they might be consolidated into fewer or more notes within a tie chain, depending on the musical context, the time signature, and the position of the start of the note in the bar.
 - Articulations can only appear once on each tie chain, either at the start or the end, depending on the type of articulation. For example, staccato marks appear at the end whereas accents appear at the start. You can change the positions of articulations relative to individual tie chains.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting ties](#) on page 247

[Time signatures](#) on page 1381

[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861

[Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains](#) on page 807

[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals](#) on page 793

[Bracketed noteheads](#) on page 1066

[Numbered bar regions](#) on page 1253

[Caret](#) on page 218

Ties vs. slurs

Ties and slurs look superficially similar but differ in meaning.

Ties indicate that a note should not be re-struck. They are used to join notes of the same pitch together. For example, ties can be used to extend notes across multiple bars. Although multiple notes can be included in a single tie chain, each tie in the chain only joins one notehead to the next notehead on the staff.

Articulations on tied notes only affect the attack at the start of the tie chain and the release at the end of the tie chain.



Two long notes tied together



Two phrases with slurs

Slurs indicate articulation, such as bowing or breathing, and normally group notes of different pitches together. Slurs can join two noteheads together with any number of pitches in between. They often indicate the shaping of phrases.

Slurs can also be used in conjunction with articulation. Unlike ties, articulation within slurs can affect the sound throughout the phrase. For example, staccato articulations on repeated notes of the same pitch within a slur indicate that notes should be played on a stringed instrument using the same bow direction, but stopping the bow between each note.

RELATED LINKS

[Slurs](#) on page 1283

Tie styles

There are different styles of ties available in Dorico Elements, which you can use to indicate different meanings.

Solid

This is the default style for ties. Ties appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.



Dashed

Ties appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to denote optional or suggested ties; for example, in vocal music where some verses have more syllables than others and therefore require more notes.



Dotted

Ties appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the tie. Can also be used to denote optional or suggested ties.



Half-dashed start

The first halves of ties appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



Half-dashed end

The first halves of ties appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



Editorial



Ties appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length. Used to show that ties were added by the editor and were not present in the source.



Changing the style of ties

You can change the style of individual ties. For example, to show dashed ties for notes with different lyrics in some verses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, all ties are solid.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Ties** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **Solid**
 - **Dashed**
 - **Dotted**
 - **Half-dashed start**
 - **Half-dashed end**
 - **Editorial**
-

RESULT

The style of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



Changing the size of dashes/dots in ties

You can change the size of the dashes/dots in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted ties.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dashed/dotted ties whose dash/dot size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dash/dot** in the **Ties** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-



RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes/dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted ties

You can change the size of the gaps in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the individual dashed/dotted ties whose gap size you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gap** in the **Ties** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

Increasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Tie curvature direction

The direction of tie curvatures is determined by the stem direction of the notes/chords at each end of the tie, the number of notes in chords at each end, and the number of voices on the staff.

Tied single notes in single-voice contexts

If a single voice is active and a tie joins two single notes, tie curvature direction is determined by the stem directions of the notes at either end of the tie.

- If the stem directions match, the tie curves away from the notes and is positioned on the notehead side.
- If the stem directions differ, the tie curves upwards by default.

Tied chords in single-voice contexts

If a tie joins two chords, the direction of the ties is determined by the number of tied notes in the chords.

- For an even number, the ties are equally split between curving towards the notehead end and curving towards the stem end.
- For an uneven number, the majority of ties curve towards the notehead end.

In chords that contain both tied and untied notes, ties curve towards the stem end by default.

Tied notes in multiple-voice contexts

Ties are positioned on the stem side and are curved as follows:

- For up-stem voices, ties curve upwards.
- For down-stem voices, ties curve downwards.
- For overlapping/interlocking pitches in multiple voices, the rules for tied chords in single-voice contexts apply. All notes in all voices are treated as if they belong to a single voice.

TIP

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually.

RELATED LINKS



[Tie height](#) on page 1377

[Tie shoulder offset](#) on page 1379

Changing the curvature direction of ties

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually, including individual ties within tie chains. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Ties** group.

3. Choose one of the following options:

- **Up** 
- **Down** 

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can adjust the precise shapes of tie chains, and of each tie within tie chains, in Engrave mode using the square handles on each tie.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Changing the shape/angle of ties](#) on page 1375

Non-standard ties


Usually, ties join two notes of the same pitch in the same staff. However, ties can also cross system breaks and frame breaks, clef changes, or time signature changes. These types of ties are all positioned automatically in Dorico Elements.

Ties can also join non-adjacent notes, notes in different voices, or notes in different staves together. In Dorico Elements, you must input these types of ties manually.

Ties across system/frame breaks

The ends of ties that cross system/frame breaks are automatically positioned in Dorico Elements.

Their vertical position remains the same, as both ends are centered on the noteheads to which they are attached. Their behavior also remains the same, as selecting one note in a tie chain that crosses a system/frame break in Write mode selects all notes in the tie chain.

The horizontal space for the parts of ties shown to the left of notes at the start of new systems/frames may not be sufficient to show an ideal tie curve. In such cases, you can use **Note Spacing**  in Engrave mode to adjust the spacing of individual notes at the start of systems/frames to give ties more space.



The start of a tie chain before a system break



The end of the same tie chain after a system break

Tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks

The ends of ties for tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks are also automatically positioned.

As tied notes in Dorico Elements are treated as one note notated to fit in time signatures, cautionary accidentals at the start of new systems/frames are not shown by default. If you choose to show accidentals beside notes in tie chains at the start of new systems/frames, the position of the notes is changed to accommodate accidentals. However, this automatic position might not leave sufficient room for the part of the tie to the left of the notes to be shown with an ideal curve.



The start of a tie chain before a system break



The end of the same tie chain, with a cautionary accidental in parentheses



The end of the same tie chain after adjusting note spacing to give the tie beside the accidental more space

Ties across time signature changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a time signature change. If ties crossing a time signature change are joining notes in the middle of a staff, the top or bottom of the time signature change is partially obscured by the ties. However, as ties are curved, the time signature is unlikely to be completely obscured.

Ties across clef changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a change of clef. Ties across clef changes are not horizontal, as the same pitch is positioned differently in each clef.

The result of cross-clef ties is likely to be visually and musically confusing, as they can be misread as slurs. In this case, consider moving the change of clef to before/after the tied note.

Ties between non-adjacent notes

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch that are not directly beside each other and between grace notes and normal notes. This can be useful when inputting ties between multiple notes before a chord, for example.



Tied notes building up a chord



Notes tied to the following chord



Multiple grace notes tied to the following chord

Ties between different voices

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different voices belonging to the same instrument.

Ties between notes on different staves

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different staves belonging to the same instrument, such as the two staves of a piano.

Laissez vibrer ties

Laissez vibrer ties are short ties that indicate a note should be left to ring, and should not be stopped. They extend a small amount to the right of the note to which they apply, but do not connect to another note.

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note. You can edit *laissez vibrer* ties in Engrave mode like any other tie.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting ties](#) on page 247



[Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals](#) on page 793

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Hiding/Showing *laissez vibrer* ties

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note; for example, to specify which notes must not be stopped after being played but instead left to ring.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes on which you want to add a *laissez vibrer* tie. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Laissez vibrer tie** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

Laissez vibrer ties are added to the selected notes when the property is activated, and are removed when the property is deactivated. *Laissez vibrer* ties are positioned automatically.

TIP

- You can edit the length and shape of *laissez vibrer* ties individually like any other tie in Engrave mode.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Laissez Vibrer Tie** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase without *laissez vibrer* ties



Phrase with *laissez vibrer* ties

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the shape/angle of ties](#) on page 1375

[Hiding/Showing ties across beat boundaries](#) on page 861


Deleting ties

You can delete ties without deleting the notes to which they are attached.

NOTE

Deleting ties from tie chains removes all ties in the tie chain. If you want to remove single ties from longer tie chains, you can split the tie chain.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the tie chains from which you want to delete all ties.
 2. Delete all ties in any of the following ways:
 - Press **U**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors** .
-

RESULT

All ties in the selected tie chains are deleted. Notes previously in the tie chain remain at their rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Notes toolbox](#) on page 196

[Changing the duration of notes](#) on page 259


Splitting tie chains



You can split tie chains at specified positions; for example, if you want to change the pitch halfway through a tie chain or delete individual ties within tie chains. This does not remove any other ties in the tie chain.

NOTE

If you want to split ties because Dorico Elements notated notes differently than you expected, you can change the default note and rest grouping settings according to different meters. You can also set custom beat groupings for individual time signatures.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, double-click the staff where you want to split a tie chain to start note input at that position.
2. Optional: Move the caret to where you want to split the tie chain.
 - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
 - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret**  in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.

- To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
3. Split the tie chain in any of the following ways:
 - Press **U**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors** .
 4. Optional: If you want to split the same tie chain in multiple places, move the caret to the next rhythmic position where you want to split the tie chain and repeat step 3.
 5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
 - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input** .
-

RESULT

The tie chain is split at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

- [Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860
- [Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841
- [Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861
- [Splitting notes by duration](#) on page 261
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Caret](#) on page 218
- [Moving the caret manually](#) on page 223
- [Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217
- [Keyboard panel](#) on page 206
- [Fretboard panel](#) on page 208
- [Drum Pads panel](#) on page 209

Ties in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each tie has five square handles that you can move independently. Some handles are connected to others, meaning moving one can affect the position of neighboring handles.



Ties have the following handles in Engrave mode:

- 1 Left endpoint
- 2 Left control point
- 3 Tie height
- 4 Right control point
- 5 Right endpoint

For example, moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a tie and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. However, moving the right control point only causes the tie height handle to move as well. This gives you fine control over the shape of ties, while ensuring the end result remains curved and smooth.


RELATED LINKS

[Slurs in Engrave mode](#) on page 1300

Changing the shape/angle of ties

You can change move ties and tie handles graphically, allowing you to change the shape and/or angle of individual ties; for example, to adjust an endpoint relative to an individual notehead. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the whole ties or individual tie handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click multiple ties.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple ties.
 - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through its handles until the one you want to move is selected.
 - Click the handle you want to move.

NOTE

- To change the angle of ties, select tie endpoints only.
 - You cannot move whole ties to the right/left, you can only move them upwards/downwards.
2. Move the ties or handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves ties/handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag whole ties upwards/downwards.
 - Click and drag them in any direction.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

RESULT

The selected ties or tie handles are moved. Depending on the handles you selected and the directions in which you moved them, this can change the shape, angle, and/or proportional size

of the corresponding ties. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

EXAMPLE



Moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a tie and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. This allows you to change the angle and/or width of the tie without changing its overall shape.

Moving the left control point causes the tie height handle to move but does not affect the position of the left and right endpoints or right control point. This gives you fine control over the shape of ties while ensuring that the end result remains curved and smooth.

Changing the thickness of ties

You can change the thickness of individual ties, including changing the thickness of the middle of ties independently of the ends of ties. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the ties whose thickness you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Ties** group:
 - **End thickness**
 - **Middle thickness**
 3. Change the values in the value fields.
-

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected ties thicker, decreasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected ties thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the properties returns the corresponding part of the selected ties to their default thickness.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Tie height

The height of ties determines how far above/below their endpoints ties extend vertically.

To avoid the end points or curve apexes of ties starting or ending on staff lines, Dorico Elements automatically makes small changes to the curvature shape, height, and vertical position of ties. These changes are small, but the placement of ties is subtly different depending on the position of notes relative to staff lines.



A tie outside noteheads



When transposed one note down, the tie appears with a steeper curve to avoid reaching its apex on the staff line.



A tie between noteheads, with the ends slightly above the vertical center of the noteheads to avoid the tie appearing too close to the staff line at its ends or apex.

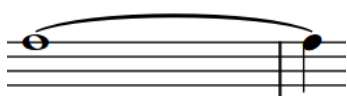


When transposed up, the ends of the tie are now positioned at the vertical center of the notehead, as there is no staff line with which it could collide.

You can change the height of individual ties in Engrave mode.

Increasing the height of ties makes them extend further from the vertical position of their endpoints, which gives them a rounder shape and means they take up more vertical space. Ties generally do not need to be as curved as slurs, as they join notes of the same pitch instead of arching over or above a range of pitches.

Where vertical space is tight, a balance must be found between how curved ties are and ensuring staves do not overlap.



A long tie with default height




A long tie with increased height

Changing the height of ties

You can change the height of individual ties; for example, to save vertical space on tightly-spaced pages. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tie height (middle) handle of the ties whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

RESULT

The height of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of ties manually, you may need to move tie height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.
 - Moving tie height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole tie.
-

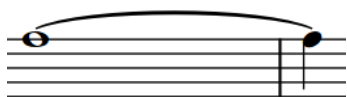
RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Tie shoulder offset

Tie shoulders affect the angles of the curves of ties as they taper towards an endpoint, as the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a tie's arch.

Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper.



A long tie with default shoulder offset




A long tie with increased shoulder offset

You can change the shoulder offset of ties individually by moving their control point handles in Engrave mode.

Changing the shoulder offset of ties

You can change the shoulder offset of individual ties. For example, you might want to change the shoulder offset of a few very short or very long ties in your project to improve their shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:
 - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
 - Click the handle you want to move.
 - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple ties.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
 - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
 - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
 - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
 - Click and drag them in any direction.

TIP

To constrain movement either horizontally or vertically, start dragging, then press and hold **Shift**.

3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust.
-

RESULT

Moving tie offset handles further apart reduces the shoulder offset, while moving them closer together increases the shoulder offset. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

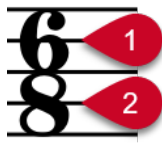
RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Time signatures

Time signatures indicate the meter of music, and apply to all bars from where they first appear until a subsequent change of time signature. Meter describes the rhythmic pulse of music, and its division into beats and bars.

A time signature is made up of two parts: numerator on top, and denominator underneath. These are the same mathematical terms as are used for fractions due to their similar arrangement.



1 Numerator

Specifies the number of beats in each bar for the time signature. The duration of beats is specified by the denominator.

2 Denominator

Specifies the beat duration for the time signature. The denominator doubles for every halving of the beat duration: 1 is a whole note (breve), 2 is a half note (minim), 4 is a quarter note (crotchet), 8 is an eighth note (quaver), and so on.

For example, a 4/4 time signature tells you the bar is made up of four beats, and each of those beats is a quarter note in length. A time signature of 4/2 contains four half notes in each bar, and 4/8 contains four eighth notes (quavers) in each bar. Both 3/4 and 6/8 contain six eighth notes, but it is understood that a 3/4 bar contains three quarter note beats, whereas a 6/8 bar contains two dotted quarter note beats.

Bars are rhythmic groups, divided according to the time signature, and they make following the music much more practical and easier to read. Notes are beamed differently in different time signatures for the same reasons.

By default, time signatures apply to all staves. However, there are certain situations, such as in polymetric music, where some parts require their own time signature, independently of the rest of the ensemble. You can input time signatures that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

Time signatures apply until the next time signature change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Time signatures traditionally use a unique, heavy font that ensures they stand out against staff lines, and fill the height of a single staff. For some types of music, particularly film music, it is typical to use large time signatures that span several staves.

NOTE

- You can input notes without inputting a time signature.
- Beat lengths are fixed across all staves in your project, regardless of the time signature. For example, if you have a 2/4 time signature on one staff and a 6/8 time signature on another staff, then one quarter note in the 2/4 time signature equals one quarter note in the 6/8 time signature, meaning their barlines do not match.

- Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars when you input time signatures unless Insert mode is activated.



A 5/8 time signature input before an existing 4/4 time signature without Insert mode activated, leaving only three eighth note beats in the second 5/8 bar.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Beam grouping according to meters](#) on page 841

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

[Creating custom beat groupings for meters](#) on page 861

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Insert mode](#) on page 451

Types of time signatures

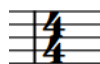
There are different types of time signatures, which can indicate various and complex meters.

NOTE

Dorico Elements uses the definitions for meters commonly used in American English. These definitions, such as which meters are considered simple and compound, might be different in other languages.

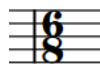
Simple

In simple time signatures, each beat is divided by two into equal groups of notes. Simple time signatures can be simple duple, such as 2/4, simple triple, such as 3/4, or simple quadruple, such as 4/4.



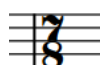
Compound

In compound time signatures, each beat is divided by three into equal groups of dotted notes, such as 6/8, which contains two dotted quarter note beats, or 9/4, which contains three dotted half note beats.



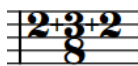
Irregular

Irregular time signatures, such as 5/4 or 7/8, cannot be subdivided into equal beat groups. Because the numerator is odd, these time signatures must be divided into unequal beat groups. For example, 5/4 usually contains a half note beat and a dotted half note beat.



Additive

Additive time signatures show how bars are subdivided into beat groups. You can show beat group numerators for any type of time signature. For example, instead of 7/8, you could show an additive time signature of 2+3+2/8.



Alternating

An alternating time signature indicates a regular pattern that switches every bar between two or more time signatures, in the indicated order. For example, for a phrase with twelve eighth notes that needs to be emphasized 3+3+2+2+2, an alternating time signature of 6/8+3/4 might allow the two meters to be read more clearly.



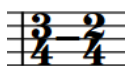
Interchangeable

An interchangeable time signature indicates a set of time signatures at the start of the piece that can be used during the piece, such as 3/4–2/4. Unlike alternating time signatures, interchangeable time signatures do not require a fixed pattern; any bar in the piece can follow any of the time signatures in the set without having to restate the time signature.

NOTE

You must manually input the appropriate time signatures where you want them, as unlike alternating time signatures, there is no fixed pattern for them. Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

They can have different separator styles in Dorico Elements, which you can change for individual time signatures.



Aggregate

An aggregate time signature shows two or more meters within the same bar, such as 2/4+3/8+5/4. Dorico Elements automatically shows dashed barlines to indicate the divisions between the different meters, but you can also specify that you do not want to show dashed barlines when you input aggregate time signatures with the popover.

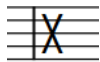


Open

An open time signature has no restrictions on meter, beaming, or beats. Any number of notes can be added, with any beaming. For example, open time signatures might be used for cadenza passages.

NOTE

In open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually. You can also extend open meter bars by inputting notes with Insert mode activated and set to a global scope.



Non-power of two

A non-power of two time signature is one such as 5/6, which indicates five sextuplet quarter notes (crotchets) where the sextuplet overall equals a whole note (semibreve). Examples of time signatures like this can be found in the music of Adès.



NOTE

Some composers, such as Boulez, have written fractional time signatures. Dorico Elements does not currently support fractional time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

- [Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283
- [Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines](#) on page 300
- [Changing the beat grouping for cut common time signatures](#) on page 863
- [Ending interchangeable time signatures](#) on page 1397
- [Combining aggregate time signatures](#) on page 1394

Cautionary time signatures

When a time signature change occurs at a system break, either in the score or in a part, the new time signature is shown at the end of the first system as well as at the start of the new system.

This is sometimes considered a “cautionary time signature”, because it warns performers of an upcoming change of time signature before it takes effect. It is also known as a “courtesy time signature”.

In Dorico Elements, the time signatures shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You can hide cautionary time signatures, either individually or by default in each flow.

TIP

We recommend using flows for separate spans of music. Dorico Elements does not show cautionary key signatures or time signatures between flows.

RELATED LINKS



- [Flows](#) on page 171
- [Splitting flows](#) on page 501
- [System breaks](#) on page 633
- [Cautionary key signatures](#) on page 1024
- [Repeat markers](#) on page 1236
- [Clefs](#) on page 907

Hiding/Showing cautionary time signatures

You can hide/show individual cautionary time signatures shown at the ends of systems when time signature changes occur at system breaks, independently of your per-flow setting. For

example, to save horizontal space when using additive time signatures. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the cautionary time signatures that you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Cautionary at end of system** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Hide**
 - **Show**

RESULT

The selected cautionary time signatures are hidden/shown at the ends of systems. This does not affect time signatures shown at the start of systems.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can hide/show cautionary time signatures by default in each flow independently on the **Time Signatures** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Changing the property scope](#) on page 665
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Hiding/Showing time signatures](#) on page 1396
- [System breaks](#) on page 633
- [Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Pick-up bars

Pick-up bars allow you to include music before the first full bar. They are also known as an “upbeat” or “anacrusis”. Often, pick-up bars only comprise a few beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.



Pick-up bar of four eighth notes at the start of a piece in 9/8

Pieces that start with a pick-up bar have time signatures that are positioned at the start of the system as normal. However, the first full bar of the time signature occurs after the first barline and not before. Therefore, pick-up bars do not contribute to the bar number count. Bar numbers are counted from the first full bar in the flow.

Because pick-up bars are linked to the number of notes/rests in the music, in Dorico Elements they are linked to time signatures. However, you can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music.

TIP

- Time signatures with pick-up bars are indicated by signposts.
- You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Hiding/Showing time signatures](#) on page 1396

[Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Bars](#) on page 810

[Bar numbers](#) on page 826

[Track overview](#) on page 520

[Turning grace notes into normal notes](#) on page 1004

Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars



You can change whether explicit irregular bars at the start of time signatures are defined as pick-up bars. This affects how notes in the bars are beamed and grouped.

Notes in irregular bars defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped backwards from the end of the bar, while notes in irregular bars not defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped forwards from the start of the bar.

NOTE

You must input explicit irregular bars and pick-up bars as part of a time signature, such as by entering **4/4,1.5** into the time signatures popover to input a 4/4 time signature with a pick-up bar containing 1.5 quarter note beats, or three eighth notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures or the signposts of time signatures starting with an explicit irregular bar whose pick-up definition you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Group first bar as pick-up** in the **Time Signatures** group.
 3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
-

RESULT

Irregular bars at the start of the selected time signatures are defined as pick-up bars when **Group first bar as pick-up** and its corresponding checkbox are both activated, and defined as normal irregular bars when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, Dorico Elements uses internal heuristics to define them as either pick-up bars or normal irregular bars automatically.

EXAMPLE



Irregular bar defined as pick-up into common time



Irregular bar defined as normal irregular bar, not a pick-up

Large time signatures

Large time signatures are scaled-up time signatures that appear much larger than normal relative to the staff size. They can be helpful in orchestral scores, as the smaller staff size in such scores means standard time signatures are small and harder for conductors to read.

Large time signatures are also very commonly used in film scores, as conductors rarely have much time to prepare the scores before recording sessions. Having large time signatures makes changes in meter more visually clear on the page, especially when music contains multiple changes in meter.

In Dorico Elements, you can show large time signatures at the following positions:

- Once per bracketed group
- Above the staff and at system object positions

Time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Instead of showing a time signature on every staff that is the same height as the staff, you can instead show a single large time signature on each bracketed group of staves. When shown once per bracketed group, time signatures are scaled up in size according to the number of staves in the bracketed group. The largest time signatures are shown on bracketed groups containing four or more staves. When shown on single staves, they extend a small amount above and below the staff, which is commonly used for parts for film music recording sessions.



Narrow, serif time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Large time signatures shown on bracketed groups occupy horizontal space, which can be a significant amount when they are especially large and use the standard time signature design. Therefore, we recommend that you use one of the narrow designs in layouts that show large time signatures on bracketed groups.

Time signatures shown at system object positions

Similar to showing large time signatures once per bracketed group, you can also show time signatures only at system object positions and above the staff. Therefore, their positions in each system are controlled by the same options that control the positions of other system objects, such as rehearsal marks and tempo marks.



Normal time signatures shown at system object positions

Time signatures shown at system object positions do not occupy horizontal space, meaning it is less important to use a narrow font style. This also reduces the horizontal distance between notes either side of time signatures. Because of this reduced disruption to note spacing, this placement of time signatures has become popular in contemporary art music since the 20th Century.

When using the note denominator style for time signatures shown at system object positions, the note is shown to the right of the numerator rather than below.

By default, time signatures at system object positions are twice the size of normal time signatures and force other items at the same position to appear to the right.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Changing the design of time signatures](#) on page 1397

[Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions](#) on page 834

[Time signature font styles](#) on page 1398

[System objects](#) on page 1326

Changing the size and position of time signatures

You can change the size of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing their vertical position. For example, you can show large time signatures centered on each bracket in full score layouts but standard-sized time signatures on each staff in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the size of time signatures.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Time Signatures**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature position and size**:
 - **Show on every staff**
 - **Show once per bracket**
 - **Show at system object positions**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The size and position of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed.

Showing large time signatures above the staff at system object positions means they do not occupy any rhythmic or horizontal space, whereas the other options do cause time signatures to occupy horizontal space.

RELATED LINKS

[Positions of time signatures](#) on page 1394

[Changing the design of time signatures](#) on page 1397

[Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions](#) on page 834

Time signature styles

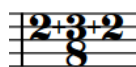
Dorico Elements allows you to show time signatures in a variety of styles. For example, you can show denominators as a number or as a note value.

Numerator styles

The numerator is always one or more numbers, and can either show the total number of beats in the bar as a single number, or show how the total duration of the bar is subdivided into beat groups.



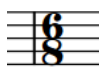
Number numerator



Beat group numerator

Denominator styles

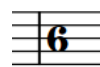
The denominator can appear as a number, as a note indicating the equivalent duration, or not appear at all.



Number denominator



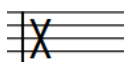
Note denominator



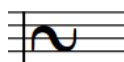
None denominator

Open meter styles

Open time signatures can be shown as an X, Penderecki's symbol, or be hidden with no symbol. Open time signatures with no symbol are indicated by signposts.



X open style



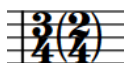
Penderecki's symbol open style



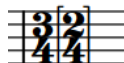
No symbol open style

Interchangeable time signature separator styles

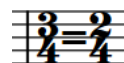
Interchangeable time signatures can have different separator styles. You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover and for individual interchangeable time signatures after they have been input.



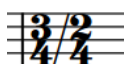
Parentheses separator



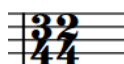
Brackets separator



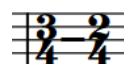
Equals sign separator



Slash separator



Space separator



Hyphen separator

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287

[Changing the design of time signatures](#) on page 1397



[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Changing the numerator style of time signatures

You can choose whether the numerators of individual time signatures show the total number of beats in each bar, or the subdivision of beats in each bar.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose numerator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Numerator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Number**
 - **Beat group**
-

RESULT

The numerator style of the selected time signatures is changed.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the denominator style of time signatures

You can change the denominator style of individual time signatures; for example, if you want to show the denominator as a note instead of a number.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose denominator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Denominator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Number**
 - **Note**
 - **None**
-



RESULT

The denominator style of the selected time signatures is changed.




Changing the open meter style of time signatures

You can change the open meter style of individual time signatures.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the open meter time signatures whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Open style** in the **Time Signatures** group:
 - **No symbol** 
 - **X** 
 - **Penderecki's symbol** 

RESULT

The open meter style of the selected time signatures is changed. **No symbol** open time signatures are indicated by signposts.



RELATED LINKS

- [Properties panel](#) on page 663
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503
- [Signposts](#) on page 450

Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures

You can change the separator shown in interchangeable time signatures individually.

PREREQUISITE







- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the interchangeable time signatures whose separator you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

In the Properties panel, **Separator** in the **Time Signatures** group is automatically activated for interchangeable time signatures.

2. Select one of the following options from the **Separator** menu:
 - **Parentheses** 
 - **Brackets** 
 - **Equals sign** 
 - **Slash** 
 - **Space** 
 - **Hyphen** 

RESULT

The separator style of the selected interchangeable time signatures is changed.

TIP

- You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover.
- Although they might look similar to interchangeable time signatures, aggregate time signatures behave differently. Aggregate time signatures are separated by a + sign, whereas interchangeable time signatures can be shown with six different separators but not a + sign.

Therefore, although you can activate **Separator** and choose from the available options for aggregate time signatures, the property only affects the appearance of interchangeable time signature separators.



RELATED LINKS

[Inputting time signatures with the popover](#) on page 287

Changing the appearance of common/cut common time signatures

You can show individual common/cut common time signatures with either common/cut common symbols or with a numerator and denominator, such as 2/2 or 4/4.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

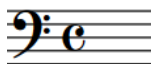
PROCEDURE

1. Select the common/cut common time signatures whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Common/Cut common** in the **Time Signatures** group.
-

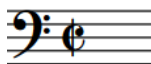
RESULT

The selected time signatures appear with common/cut common symbols when **Common/Cut common** is activated, and with a numerator and denominator when it is deactivated.

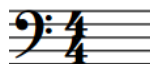
EXAMPLE



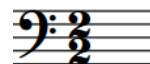
Common time signature symbol



Cut common time signature symbol



Common time signature, appearing as 4/4



Cut common time signature, appearing as 2/2

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663



[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the beat grouping for cut common time signatures](#) on page 863

Combining aggregate time signatures

You can combine aggregate time signatures with the same denominator into a single time signature, while retaining dashed barlines for meter divisions. For example, to show a 4/8+2/8+7/8 aggregate time signature as 13/8.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the aggregate time signatures that you want to combine. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Combine compatible aggregates** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected aggregate time signatures are combined into a single time signature, provided that all denominators in each aggregate time signature are the same.

The combined numerator indicates the total number of denominator beats in each bar.

EXAMPLE



Uncombined aggregate time signature



Combined aggregate time signature

RELATED LINKS

[Types of time signatures](#) on page 1382

Positions of time signatures

Standard time signatures are positioned on staves with the middle staff line, or only staff line for single-line staves, passing through their center. Large time signatures can be positioned in the middle or at the top of bracket groups, or above staves at system object positions.

Dorico Elements automatically positions time signatures after clefs, key signatures, and barlines.

You can move time signatures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are positioned automatically to avoid collisions.

You can also change the position of time signatures in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show time signatures above the staff and at system object positions in some layouts but only once per bracket in other layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the positions of system objects](#) on page 1327

[Large time signatures](#) on page 1387


[Cautionary time signatures](#) on page 1384

[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

Moving time signatures graphically

You can move individual time signatures to new graphical positions without affecting the positions of any other items.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to time signatures shown at system object positions, which you can move when **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Notes toolbox.
- You cannot move time signatures shown at the start of systems. You can only move time signature changes that occur partway through systems or at the end of systems.

PREREQUISITE

Note Spacing  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a square note spacing handle at the rhythmic position of the time signature you want to move.



A circular handle appears beside the time signature.

2. Press **Tab** to select the circular handle.



3. Move the handle in any of the following ways:
 - To move it a standard amount to the right or left, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left.
 - To move it a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move it a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To move it a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

You cannot move note spacing handles with the mouse, you can only move them using the keyboard.

RESULT

The time signature is moved graphically to the right/left.

TIP

You can also change the value for **Spacing offset** in the **Time Signatures** group of the Properties panel to move time signatures horizontally. However, this also affects global note spacing around the rhythmic position of the time signature.

The **Spacing offset** value is independent of note spacing changes.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Note spacing](#) on page 507

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Hiding/Showing time signatures

You can hide/show time signatures without deleting them from your project. This hides/shows them in all layouts, not just the one currently open in the music area.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures you want to hide, or the signposts of time signatures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide time signature** in the **Time Signatures** group.
-

RESULT

The selected time signatures are hidden in all layouts when **Hide time signature** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden time signature. However, signposts are not printed by default.

NOTE

- Hidden time signatures do not take up any horizontal space, so hiding/showing time signatures affects note spacing.
 - You can hide/show time signature signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Time Signatures**.
 - You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding/Showing cautionary time signatures](#) on page 1384



[Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars](#) on page 283

[Annotations](#) on page 597

Ending interchangeable time signatures

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically. You can end interchangeable time signatures from selected time signatures, which shows them.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the barlines or signposts of time signatures from which you want to end interchangeable time signatures. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **End interchangeable** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

Interchangeable time signatures are ended at the selected time signatures. The selected time signatures and all subsequent time signatures specified in the prevailing interchangeable time signature are shown until the next existing interchangeable time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Changing the design of time signatures

You can change the design of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing the font style used for them; for example, if you want to use a plain font for time signatures in full score layouts but the standard time signature font in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
 2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the design of time signatures.
By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
 3. In the category list, click **Time Signatures**.
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature design**:
 - **Normal**
 - **Narrow, serif**
 - **Narrow, sans serif**
 - **Plain font**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The design of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed. If you choose **Plain font**, time signatures use a different font style than the one used for the other options.

Time signature font styles

Different time signature designs use different font styles. You can edit the formatting of fonts used for time signatures in the **Edit Font Styles** dialog.

The following font styles are used for time signatures:

- **Time Signature Font:** Used for standard time signatures and large time signatures that use the **Normal**, **Narrow, serif**, or **Narrow, sans serif** design types. Must use a SMuFL-compliant font family.
- **Time Signature Plain Font:** Used for time signatures using the **Plain font** design type. Can use any font family, but we recommend that you use narrow fonts for large time signatures.

NOTE

Changes made to font styles apply to the entire project, including part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Font Styles dialog](#) on page 754

[Large time signatures](#) on page 1387

[Changing the default font family](#) on page 760

Tremolos

Tremolos are thick, slanted lines that cross individual stems or are positioned between multiple stems. They are used to indicate that notes are repeated, either individually or in sequences of multiple notes.

Using tremolo strokes instead of notating each notehead can save horizontal space and make fast passages easier to read.



The number of tremolo strokes indicates both how many times notes are repeated and how fast they are. In measured tremolos, for example, one tremolo stroke on the stem of a quarter note (crotchet) indicates two eighth notes (quavers) are played, whereas three tremolo strokes on the stem of a quarter note indicates eight 32nd notes are played.



Quarter note with a one-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation



Quarter note with a three-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation

There are different types of tremolos:

Single-note tremolos

Individual notes are repeated. Single-note tremolos are positioned on note stems.



Two-stroke single-note tremolos added to four quarter notes

Multi-note tremolos

Multiple notes, usually two, are played in sequence, similar to a trill. However, trills usually indicate a fast alternation between two adjacent notes, such as G and A, whereas multi-note tremolos can be between any notes, limited only by the capabilities of the instrument.

All notes in multi-note tremolos indicate the total duration of the tremolo. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

Multi-note tremolos are positioned between the stems of two or more notes.



Four quarter notes without tremolos



Multi-note tremolos input between those quarter notes, in two pairs

Tuplet tremolos

Multiple notes in tuplets are repeated in the notated sequence. Tuplet tremolos are positioned between all the notes in the tuplet.



Quarter notes in two different tuplets without tremolos



Multi-note tuplet tremolos input across those tuplets

Depending on the musical context, tremolos can be either measured or unmeasured. There is no visual difference between measured/unmeasured tremolos, so composers/arrangers often specify how they want tremolos to be played, such as an indication in the front matter of the score or as a text instruction in the score.

Measured tremolos

The number of tremolo strokes corresponds to a precise rhythm in the prevailing tempo and meter.

Unmeasured tremolos

There is no link between the number of strokes and rhythm. Instead, unmeasured tremolos are played as fast as possible, whatever the tempo.

Unmeasured tremolos often use three or more tremolo strokes, and can also be accompanied by a "trem." text indication.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Tremolos in tie chains](#) on page 1401

[Changing the speed of tremolos](#) on page 1403

[Tremolos in playback](#) on page 1405

[MIDI Import Options dialog](#) on page 85

General placement conventions for tremolos

Single-note tremolos are positioned on note stems, whereas multi-note tremolos are positioned between the stems of two or more notes. When multi-note tremolos cross three or more notes, the tremolo strokes are positioned between all the notes.

Tremolo strokes are slightly thinner than beams, so that the gaps between strokes are large enough and the number of strokes can be instantly recognized.

Dorico Elements automatically avoids collisions between tremolo strokes and ledger lines or stem flags.

Tremolo strokes within the staff are positioned so that they are at least one staff space clear of noteheads, and at valid positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces. This means that tremolo strokes might not move every time you change the pitch of notes.



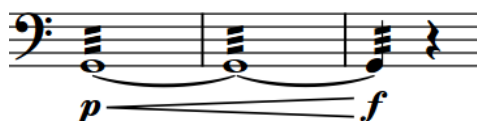
The positions of the tremolo strokes on the first two notes and the last two notes are the same, although the pitches are all different.

In Dorico Elements, the angle of single-note tremolo strokes is always the same, no matter the direction of the phrase. The angles of multi-note tremolo strokes are determined by the height of the stems to which the multi-note tremolos apply. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.

Tremolos in tie chains

By default, single-note tremolos appear either on all notes in tie chains, or on all notes apart from the first or last note. Deleting tremolo strokes from tied notes removes tremolo strokes from all notes in tie chains.

In Dorico Elements, we use “tremolo with attack” and “tremolo with release” to refer to single-note tremolos that appear on all notes in tie chains apart from the first and last note, respectively.



Single-note tremolo added to tie chain



Tremolo with release added to tie chain

In Dorico Elements, tremolos are considered measured by default, so the number of tremolo strokes shown is automatically adjusted on subsequent notes in tie chains as required. For example, if an eighth note with two tremolo strokes is tied to a quarter note, the quarter note has three tremolo strokes. This is because tremolo strokes function like beams, so two tremolo strokes and an eighth note stem flag is the equivalent of three tremolo strokes.



The default number of tremolo strokes in a tie chain where the second note is longer than the first.



The number of tremolo strokes on the second note has been changed to match the first.

However, there might be circumstances in which you want all notes to have the same number of tremolo strokes, whatever their duration. You can also start tremolos partway through tie chains, or stop tremolos partway through tie chains.

You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on individual notes independently in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS

[Ties](#) on page 1364

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Deleting tremolos](#) on page 1403



Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains

Dorico Elements automatically changes the number of tremolo strokes on subsequent notes in tie chains according to their duration, but you can manually change the number of single-note tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually to represent your intended rhythm. For example, if you want all notes in a tie chain to have the same number of tremolo strokes, whatever their duration.

TIP

If you want to remove tremolo strokes from the first or last notes in tie chains, you can input tremolos with an attack or release, respectively.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads of the notes whose number of tremolo strokes you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Single stem tremolo** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
 3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
 - **None**
 - **One stroke**
 - **Two strokes**
 - **Three strokes**
 - **Four strokes**
 - **Buzz roll**
-

RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes shown on the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE



The default number of tremolo strokes in a tie chain where the second note is longer than the first.



The number of tremolo strokes on the second note has been changed to match the first.

RELATED LINKS

[Properties panel](#) on page 663
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the speed of tremolos



You can change the speed of tremolos after they have been input by changing the number of strokes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes with tremolos whose speed you want to change.
The buttons with the number of tremolo strokes corresponding to your selection are highlighted in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.

NOTE

Select single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos separately.

2. Click the button with the number of tremolo strokes you want in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.
For example, click **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo**  to input single-note tremolos with two strokes, or click **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo**  to input multi-note tremolos with three strokes.

RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes on the selected notes is changed, which changes the speed of the tremolos.





RELATED LINKS

[Tremolos in playback](#) on page 1405

Deleting tremolos

You can remove single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos from notes separately without affecting the notes to which they applied.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose tremolo strokes you want to delete.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels** , then **Repeat Structures**  to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Tremolos** section, click one or both of the following buttons, depending on the types of tremolos selected:
 - **Remove Single-note Tremolo** 
 - **Remove Multi-note Tremolo** 

RESULT

The corresponding types of tremolo strokes are deleted.

TIP

You can also delete tremolos by entering **0** or **clear** into the repeats popover.

RELATED LINKS

[Notations toolbox](#) on page 201

[Repeat Structures panel](#) on page 409

[Repeats popover](#) on page 406

Rhythmic positions of notes with tremolos

You can move notes with single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions in the same ways as normal notes. However, if you move multi-note tremolos across barlines, the tremolo strokes are deleted automatically.

You can move single-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions and across barlines without affecting their tremolo strokes. The notes are automatically respelled as tie chains if required by their new rhythmic positions and time signature, in the same ways as normal notes.

NOTE

If tie chains with single-note tremolos contain notes of different durations, the number of tremolo strokes on each note in the tie chain is different. You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually.

RELATED LINKS

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461



Moving tremolo strokes

You can move tremolo strokes upwards/downwards graphically. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- You cannot move tremolo strokes to the right/left.
 - You cannot move tremolo strokes rhythmically, as they apply to specific notes, but you can move notes with tremolos to different rhythmic positions. Notes with single-note tremolos can cross barlines; however, multi-note tremolo strokes are deleted automatically when their notes cross barlines.
-

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tremolo strokes you want to move.
2. Move the tremolo strokes in any of the following ways:
 - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move tremolo strokes upwards. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/8 space per press.
 - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1 space per press.

- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd - Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected tremolo strokes are moved upwards/downwards. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Moving multi-note tremolo strokes also changes the length of the stems to which they are attached. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.
- When you first move tremolo strokes graphically, they may appear to move in the wrong direction or by a larger increment than you expected. This is because their positions are reset when you override those positions by moving them.
- The following properties in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the start/end of multi-note tremolo strokes:
 - **Start Y offset** moves the start of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.
 - **End Y offset** moves the end of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.

Tremolo Y in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically when you move single-note tremolo strokes. It moves single-note tremolo strokes vertically.

For example, if you move a whole multi-note tremolo stroke upwards, both stem handles are moved so both properties are activated. You can also use these properties to move tremolo strokes by changing the values in the value fields. However, you must select the noteheads rather than the tremolo strokes in order to see the relevant groups in the Properties panel.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected stem handles, and therefore tremolo strokes, to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Input methods for repeats and tremolos](#) on page 405

[Deleting tremolos](#) on page 1403

Tremolos in playback

You can control the playback of unmeasured tremolos by specifying the minimum number of tremolo strokes that are interpreted as unmeasured tremolos. This considers both the number of tremolo strokes and the number of beam lines that would be used for the note.

- You can do this on the **Timing** page in **Playback Options**.

For example, if the option is set to require three tremolo strokes, an eighth note with two tremolo strokes is played as unmeasured, because the single beam of the eighth note is included in the calculation.

You can also specify the default length of notes in unmeasured tremolos. You express the duration of notes as a fraction of the length of a quarter note played at 120 quarters per minute in the **Tremolos** section.

The number of tremolo strokes determines the note value of the repeated notes. For example, one stroke indicates an eighth note, two strokes indicate a 16th note, and so on.

If your sound library includes samples for unmeasured tremolo playback, Dorico Elements loads the required samples using playback techniques. For sound libraries that do not provide unmeasured tremolo samples, Dorico Elements generates tremolos.

TIP

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have tremolos in one voice and slurs in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Playback techniques](#) on page 787

[Playback Options dialog](#) on page 749

[Enabling independent voice playback](#) on page 545

Changing the duration of tremolos in playback

You can change both the default length of each note in unmeasured tremolos in playback, and the minimum number of tremolo strokes required to indicate tremolos should be unmeasured in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-P** to open **Playback Options**.
2. In the category list, click **Timing**.
3. Optional: In the **Tremolos** section, change the value for **Minimum number of strokes for playback of unmeasured tremolos**.
4. Change the value for **Default unmeasured tremolo length**.

For example, to set the default length of unmeasured tremolo notes to 0.5 seconds, change the value to **1**.

TIP

If you hover over either of the arrows beside the value field, a small box appears that displays the current fraction as a decimal.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The sounding duration of each note in unmeasured tremolos in playback is changed project-wide.

Changing the value for **Minimum number of strokes for playback of unmeasured tremolos** changes the minimum number of tremolo strokes required for tremolos to be unmeasured in playback.

Tuplets

Tuplets indicate where a beat is divided into a different number of subdivisions than is usually expected according to the current meter. They can be used to fit more notes or fewer notes in a beat than usually exist in a beat, according to the usual pattern of subdivision.



Because these subdivisions are not standard but tuplet notes use the same rhythmic notation as normal notes, tuplets must be clearly marked to show that their rhythmic duration is different. Tuplet numbers/ratios indicate the number of notes in the tuplet, and tuplet brackets show the duration of tuplets that are not joined by beams.

In Dorico Elements, tuplets function like containers into which you can input notes of any duration, such as inputting a quarter note at the start of an eighth note triplet.

When tuplets extend across barlines, Dorico Elements automatically notates them correctly, such as a sextuplet appearing as two triplets. You can also allow tuplets to span barlines without division.

During tuplet input, tuplets are sticky when you input notes with the keyboard, meaning that Dorico Elements continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet until you stop tuplet input or note input.

You can show tuplets with different combinations of tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios. You can also show note symbols indicating the note value of the tuplet alongside tuplet numbers/ratios.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting tuplets](#) on page 254

[Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

[Tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416

[Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines](#) on page 1411

[Moving notes/items rhythmically](#) on page 461

Nested tuplets

Nested tuplets are tuplets within larger tuplets that are often used to create complex rhythms. In Dorico Elements, there is no limit to the number of levels you can have in nested tuplets.

EXAMPLE





Nested tuplets

Inputting nested tuplets

You can input nested tuplets on empty staves and select existing tuplets and input nested tuplets within them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **;**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets** , then click **x:y** .

When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.

NOTE

You can skip steps 3 and 4 if you are inputting nested tuplets into existing tuplets.

3. Optional: If inputting nested tuplets on an empty staff, enter the ratio for the outer tuplet into the popover.
For example, enter **3:2q** to input quarter note triplets.
4. Optional: Press **Return** to close the popover and input the outer tuplet.
5. Press **;** to open the tuplets popover again.
6. Enter the ratio for the inner tuplet into the popover.
For example, enter **5:4e** to input eighth note quintuplets.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover and input the inner tuplet.
8. Input the notes you want.
When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
9. Stop inputting nested tuplets in one of the following ways:
 - To stop the inner tuplet and continue inputting the outer tuplet, press **;** once.
 - To stop both tuplets and return to inputting normal notes, press **;** twice or move the caret with the arrow keys.
 - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.


RESULT

Notes are input as nested tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If multiples of the inner tuplet fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, you can continue inputting notes as the specified nested tuplet until you stop the tuplets manually.

If multiples of the inner tuplet do not fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, the inner tuplet stops automatically at the end of the last tuplet that fits in the outer tuplet. After that, the outer tuplet continues until you stop it manually.

NOTE

You can also input nested tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets**  in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want. However, the inner tuplet you click must fit inside the outer tuplet, based on the currently selected note duration.



RELATED LINKS

- [Tuplets popover](#) on page 256
- [Notes toolbox](#) on page 196
- [Inputting notes](#) on page 224
- [Selecting note/rest durations](#) on page 259

Turning existing notes into tuplets

You can turn any existing notes into tuplets; for example, if you need to fit extra notes into an existing duration.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes on a single staff that you want to turn into tuplets.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
 - Press **;**.
 - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets** , then click **x:y** .

The popover is automatically populated with a suggested ratio based on your selection.


3. Optional: Change the ratio in the popover. For example, enter **3:2** to input triplets.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected notes are turned into tuplets according to the ratio in the popover. For example, if you select five eighth notes and enter **5:4** into the popover, the selected notes become quintuplet eighth notes.

If the selected notes fit into a single tuplet of the specified ratio, only a single tuplet is created. If the selected notes do not fit into a single tuplet, as many tuplets as required are created automatically.

TIP

You can also turn existing notes into tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets**  in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want.

RELATED LINKS

- [Inputting tuplets](#) on page 254
- [Turning existing notes into grace notes](#) on page 1004

Turning tuplets into normal notes

You can turn any existing tuplet notes into normal notes; for example, if you want to turn tuplet eighth notes into standard eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select just the brackets, numbers/ratios, or signposts of the tuplets you want to turn into normal notes.

NOTE

You must not select any of the noteheads in the tuplets.

- Optional: If you want the selected tuplets to push subsequent notes to later rhythmic positions if required, press **I** to activate Insert mode.
 - Optional: If you activated Insert mode, choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.
 - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
-

RESULT

The selected tuplets are deleted. All notes previously in the tuplets are unscaled and appear as normal notes with the same notated duration; for example, a tuplet quarter note becomes a standard quarter note.

When Insert mode is activated, all notes in the tuplets are retained and any subsequent existing notes are pushed to later rhythmic positions to accommodate the extra rhythmic durations required. When Insert mode is deactivated, the earliest selected tuplets expand and overwrite subsequent notes and tuplets.

RELATED LINKS

[Tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416

[Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

[Inputting notes](#) on page 224

[Turning grace notes into normal notes](#) on page 1004



[Insert mode](#) on page 451

[Insert mode scopes](#) on page 452

Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines

You can allow tuplets to span barlines; for example, in Renaissance music, you might want tuplets to span tick barlines without affecting their notation. By default, Dorico Elements automatically splits tuplets over barlines so that both the durations of bars and the divisions in tuplets are clear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

- Select the tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios of the tuplets you want to allow/disallow to span barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 - In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Spans barline** in the **Tuplets** group.
-

RESULT

The selected tuplets span barlines when **Spans barline** is activated, and are automatically split at barlines when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



A 16th note sextuplet across a barline, notated as two triplets



The same sextuplet allowed to span the barline

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can beam notes in the selected tuplets together.

RELATED LINKS

- [Barlines](#) on page 815
- [Beaming notes together manually](#) on page 841
- [Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413
- [Tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416
- [Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Tuplet beams

Tuplet beams join notes in tuplets that can be joined with beams just like non-tuplet beams. You can make the same changes to tuplet beams that you can make to any other beam.

For example, duplet eighth notes do not need a bracket as they can be joined by a beam and notated using only a tuplet number/ratio.



A 6/8 bar with the standard subdivision of six eighth notes



A 6/8 bar with a subdivision of four duplet eighth notes in the space of six regular eighth notes

RELATED LINKS

- [Beaming](#) on page 840
- [Tuplets within beams](#) on page 858
- [Changing the direction of partial beams](#) on page 855
- [Changing beam slants](#) on page 847

Tuplet brackets

Tuplet brackets show the duration of tuplets that are not joined by beams, such as triplet quarter notes, by showing the notes within the tuplet under a bracket.

EXAMPLE



A 4/4 bar with the standard subdivision of four quarter notes



A 4/4 bar with a subdivision of six triplet quarter notes in the space of four regular quarter notes

You can change the precise positions and shapes of tuplet brackets individually in Engrave mode.

Each tuplet bracket has four handles that can be moved graphically.



- The two upper handles set the position of the start/end of the tuplet bracket. These handles can be moved independently of each other to create angled tuplet brackets.
- The two lower handles set the length of the tuplet bracket hooks. Moving either of these handles changes the length of both hooks.

NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet brackets; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.

RELATED LINKS



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Lines](#) on page 1194

Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets



You can hide/show tuplet brackets for individual tuplets, and independently of tuplet numbers/ratios. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets you want to hide, or the signposts of tuplets whose brackets you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket** in the **Tuplets** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Hidden** 
 - **Shown** 
-

RESULT

Brackets on the selected tuplets are hidden/shown. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet; that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet numbers/ratios.

RELATED LINKS

[Signposts](#) on page 450

[Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios](#) on page 1416

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646





Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets

You can show individual tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios above or below the staff or between staves. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Tuplets** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Above** 
 - **Below** 
 - **Cross-staff above** 
 - **Cross-staff below** 
-

RESULT

The placement of the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Placement** returns the selected tuplets to their default placement.
 - You can also switch selected tuplets between being above/below the staff or cross-staff above/cross-staff below by pressing **F**.
-



RELATED LINKS

[Tucking index properties](#) on page 518




Changing the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets

You can change the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets relative to individual notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
 - You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **End position** in the **Tuplets** group.
 3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **End at right-hand side of final note** 
 - **End immediately before following note** 
 - **End at position of final tuplet division** 
-

RESULT

The end position for the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected tuplets to your default settings.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646



[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

Forcing tuplet brackets to be horizontal

You can change the angle of individual tuplet brackets so that they appear horizontal. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose angle you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Force horizontal** in the **Tuplets** group.

RESULT

The selected tuplet brackets appear horizontal when the property is activated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tuplet numbers/ratios

Tuplet numbers and ratios are very similar: both indicate the number of equal notes included in the tuplet, such as 3 for triplets, but tuplet ratios also include the number of normal notes into whose duration the tuplet fits, such as 3:2 for triplets.

Additionally, tuplet ratios can include a note glyph that indicates the duration of notes in the tuplet.



A triplet with a ratio and note value indication

Tuplet numbers/ratios help performers quickly identify the type of tuplet and how they must fit the number of notes indicated into the prevailing tempo and meter.



NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet numbers/ratios; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.





Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios

You can hide/show tuplet numbers/ratios for individual tuplets, and independently of tuplet brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. When showing tuplet numbers/ratios, you can choose a different type for each tuplet individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose numbers/ratios you want to hide/change, or the signposts of tuplets whose numbers/ratios you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **None** 
 - **Number** 
 - **Ratio** 
 - **Ratio+note** 

RESULT

The tuplet number/ratio shown for the selected tuplets is changed. If you selected **None**, the tuplet numbers/ratios for the selected tuplets are hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet; that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

Deactivating **Number** returns the selected tuplets to the default setting.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet brackets.

RELATED LINKS

[Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the position of tuplet numbers/ratios

You can show individual tuplet numbers/ratios at either the visual or rhythmic horizontal center of tuplets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplets or the signposts of tuplets whose tuplet number/ratio horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Center** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Visual**

- **Rhythmic**

RESULT

The horizontal position of tuplet numbers/ratios on the selected tuplets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- **Visual** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the visual center of the tuplet.
 - **Rhythmic** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the rhythmic center of the tuplet, which might be visually off-center.
-

EXAMPLE



Visual center



Rhythmic center

RELATED LINKS

[Tuplet brackets](#) on page 1413

[Moving items graphically](#) on page 514

[Signposts](#) on page 450

Unpitched percussion

The term “unpitched percussion” covers all percussion instruments that are not tuned to specific pitches. This includes instruments such as bass drum, guiro, maracas, cymbals, and shakers.

Dorico Elements provides comprehensive support for unpitched percussion notation, with flexible options for combining music for multiple instruments into percussion kits that can then be displayed differently in different layouts. You can also define percussion kits as drum sets, which changes the default stem directions of notes.

You can also customize and create new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion. This allows you to indicate how notes are played by using different noteheads for different playing techniques on each instrument in percussion kits.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

[Defining percussion kits as drum sets](#) on page 148

[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420

[Playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1421

[Showing brackets on noteheads](#) on page 1067

[Percussion editor](#) on page 679

Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments

Percussion kits allow you to show multiple unpitched percussion instruments held by a single player at the same time in different ways. Multiple percussion instruments not combined into kits are shown on a single line that only shows the instrument currently being played by default.

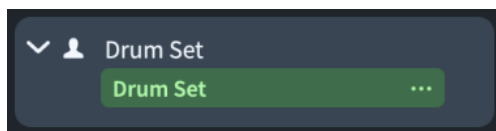
One common type of percussion kit is a drum set. A drum set consists of a number of separate instruments mounted together on a frame, and is typically written on a regular five-line staff. Each instrument has its own position on the staff, and sometimes its own notehead type. Similarly, a pair of bongos is a percussion kit by default in Dorico Elements, consisting of the two bongo drums, typically written on a grid with two lines: the smaller drum shown on the top line, and the larger drum shown on the bottom line.

Showing individual percussion instruments separately can be appropriate if a player only has one or two percussion instruments. However, combining percussion instruments into a kit gives you more flexibility over the presentation of music, which you can vary in each layout independently. Kits also give you greater control over the labeling of instruments.

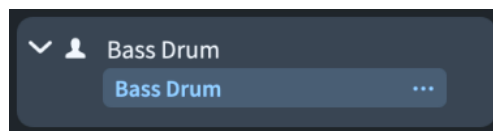
In layouts where instrument changes are enabled, Dorico Elements changes from one unpitched percussion instrument to the next, just as it does for pitched instruments.

Kit instruments in player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode are colored green, whereas individual percussion instruments not part of percussion kits are colored the same light blue as all other instruments.

EXAMPLE



A single player holding a percussion kit in the **Players** panel in Setup mode



A single player holding an unpitched percussion instrument in the **Players** panel in Setup mode

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Instruments](#) on page 130

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes](#) on page 137

[Importing drum set patterns from Groove Agent SE](#) on page 94

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments, both as individual instruments and within percussion kits, can be notated in different ways, including using different notehead designs and positions.

You can indicate playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:

- Use playing technique-specific noteheads, including positioning notes above/below their normal staff line
- Add articulations or single-note tremolos
- Add playing techniques in the same ways as for pitched instruments

For example, you can add open and closed techniques for hi-hats as playing techniques and use playing technique-specific cross noteheads for side stick notes for the snare drum.

You can select playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments when inputting notes and change the playing technique-specific noteheads of existing notes. You can input playing techniques during note input and by adding them to existing music.

RELATED LINKS

[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180

[Articulations](#) on page 804

[Tremolos](#) on page 1399

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424

[Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback](#) on page 786

[Exporting percussion kits](#) on page 152

[Importing percussion kits](#) on page 153

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Playing technique-specific noteheads

Playing technique-specific noteheads use the design and position of noteheads to indicate different playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments, both as individual instruments and within percussion kits.

For example, side stick notes on the snare drum notes are typically notated using cross noteheads. Other techniques might use the staff positions above or below the single-line staff to indicate different playing techniques.



Multiple different playing technique-specific noteheads for snare drum

You can edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads and staff positions defined for each unpitched percussion instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

You can select playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments when inputting notes and change the playing technique-specific noteheads of existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

[Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425



[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424

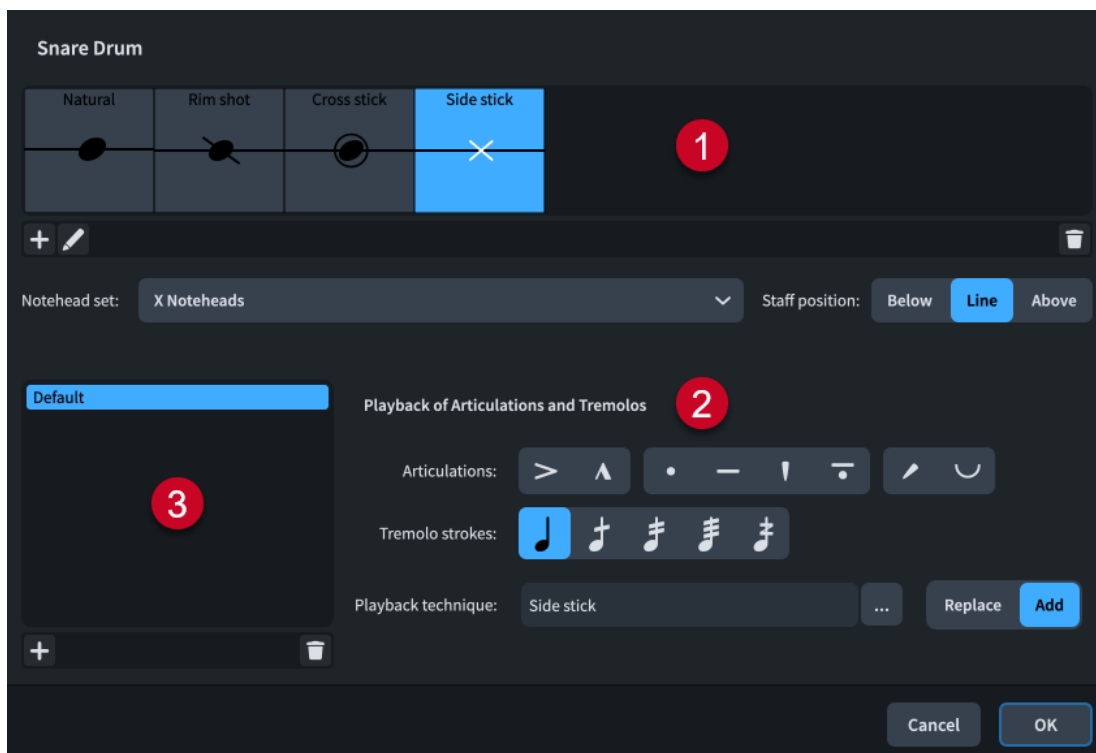
[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog

The **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog allows you to edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads defined for each unpitched percussion instrument.

You can open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in the following ways:

- For an individual percussion instrument: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
- For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the kit instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.



1 Playing technique-specific noteheads list

Contains the main playing technique-specific noteheads currently defined for the selected percussion instrument, showing the notehead set and the staff position corresponding to the playing technique as applicable.

You can add new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments. Normally, percussion instruments define at least the **Natural** playing technique, which is usually shown using the default notehead set.

2 Playback of Articulations and Tremolos

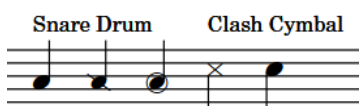
Allows you to define how combinations of articulations and tremolo strokes affect or override the playback of playing techniques.

For example, you can define an entirely different playing technique for a playing technique-specific notehead for when an accent is added to it.

3 Overrides of articulations and tremolos list

Displays any overrides of articulations and tremolos you define.

EXAMPLE



Three different snare drum playing technique-specific noteheads followed by two clash cymbal playing technique-specific noteheads

RELATED LINKS

[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424

[Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425

[Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425

[Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback](#) on page 786

[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238

[Exporting percussion kits](#) on page 152

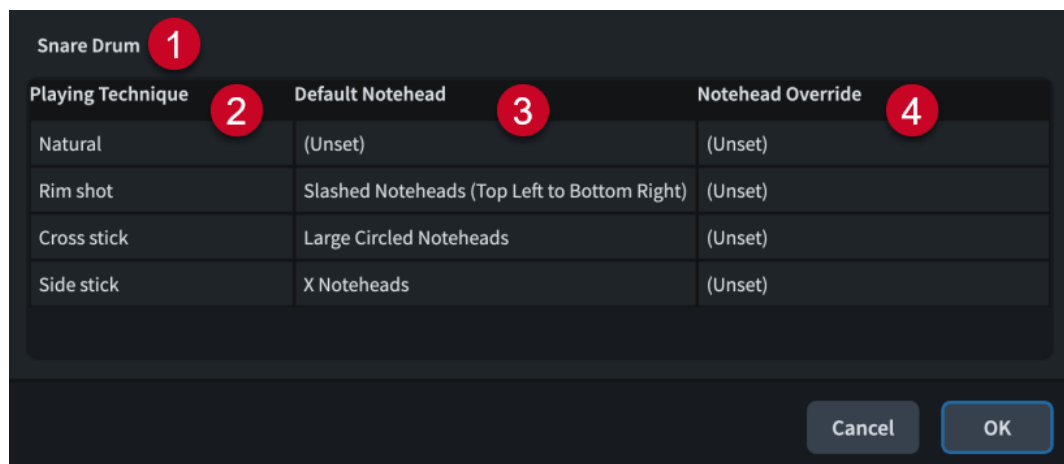
[Importing percussion kits](#) on page 153

Override Percussion Noteheads dialog

The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog lists the playing technique-specific noteheads defined for the selected instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog, shows the notehead type mapped for each technique, and allows you to override those noteheads for five-line staff kit presentations only.

For example, the same notehead can indicate different playing techniques for different instruments. When those instruments are presented on the same five-line staff, this can cause confusion, so you can use the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another in five-line staff kit presentations only.

- You can open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog from inside the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog by selecting an instrument, then clicking **Edit Noteheads**.



The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog comprises the following:

1 Instrument name

Displays the name of the percussion instrument whose noteheads are listed in the dialog.

2 Playing Technique

Displays the playing technique associated with the notehead in the corresponding row of the table.

3 Default Notehead

Displays the notehead used by default for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table.

4 Notehead Override

Displays the notehead override used in five-line staff presentations for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table.

You can change the notehead override by clicking the corresponding field, then selecting another notehead from the menu.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Notehead set designs](#) on page 1053

[Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425
[Changing playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1424
[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238
[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

Changing playing technique-specific noteheads

You can change the playing technique-specific noteheads of notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments after they have been input; for example, to switch selected snare drum notes to the side stick technique and corresponding notehead.

PREREQUISITE

The unpitched percussion instruments whose playing techniques you want to change have at least two playing technique-specific noteheads defined in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose playing technique-specific notehead you want to change.

TIP

If you select a single note in percussion kits using five-line staff or grid presentations, the current playing technique is shown above the rhythmic grid.

2. Cycle through the available playing techniques for the selected unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:
 - To cycle upwards, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
 - To cycle downwards, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The playing techniques of the selected unpitched percussion notes are changed. Their notehead design and/or staff position might be changed.




RELATED LINKS

[Playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1421
[Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments](#) on page 1420
[Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog](#) on page 1421
[Inputting notes for unpitched percussion](#) on page 238
[Moving notes to other instruments in percussion kits](#) on page 465
[Percussion editor](#) on page 679
[Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool](#) on page 682
[Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques](#) on page 685
[Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback](#) on page 786
[Playing techniques](#) on page 1180
[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367
[Showing brackets on noteheads](#) on page 1067
[Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads](#) on page 1058

Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads

You can define new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments, which are saved for that type of percussion instrument in your project. You can also export playing technique-specific noteheads from your project and import them into other projects.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in any of the following ways:
 - For an individual percussion instrument: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
 - For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu  in the kit instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.
2. In the playing technique-specific noteheads list, click **Add Playing Technique** .
3. Select the playback technique you want to use in the dialog that opens.
4. Click **OK** to add the selected playback technique as a new playing technique-specific notehead.
5. From the **Notehead set** menu, select the notehead you want for the playing technique-specific notehead.

NOTE

To use the default notehead set, leave **Notehead set** as **(Unset)**.

-
6. Choose one of the following options for **Staff position**:
 - **Below**
 - **Line**
 - **Above**

RESULT

A new playing technique-specific notehead is added to the selected unpitched percussion instrument.

RELATED LINKS

[Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback](#) on page 786


[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads

It might be necessary to override the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in order to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another if they share a staff position in five-line staff kit presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose playing technique-specific noteheads you want to override.

2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
 3. Select the instrument whose noteheads you want to override.
 4. Click **Edit Noteheads** to open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog.
 5. Click in the **Notehead Override** column for the appropriate playing technique, then select a new notehead type from the menu.
 6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
-

RESULT

The playing technique-specific notehead is overridden for the selected instrument in five-line staff kit presentations.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in grid and single-line instrument kit presentation types.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Override Percussion Noteheads dialog](#) on page 1423

Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion

You can find options for how notes in percussion kits are notated in each flow independently on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice rather than in multiple voices.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

Notations on notes in percussion kits

You can add notations to notes and use different rhythms in percussion kits in the same ways as for normal notes; however, they can behave differently.

Articulations

You can add articulations to percussion instruments in all kit presentation types in the same ways as for other instruments.

However, in grid and five-line staff presentations, any articulations you add apply to all instruments in the same voice that have notes at that rhythmic position. For example, if both a snare drum and tom-tom note are at the same rhythmic position, and you add an accent, the accent is added to both instruments because they are both shown in the same down-stem voice by default.

You can see the accent applied to each note if you switch to the single-line instruments presentation type.

Tuplets

When working in the grid and five-line staff kit presentation types, tuplets are added to all instruments in the same voice.

You can switch to the single-line instruments presentation type to input cross-rhythms on each instrument separately. When you switch back to the grid or five-line staff kit presentation types, Dorico Elements attempts to resolve the rhythmic conflicts.

- Conflicting tuplets: One tuplet is moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument starting at the same rhythmic position: The non-tuplet note is displayed as if it were part of the tuplet. This is because the note onset is at the same position as the start of the tuplet, so it sounds the same as the original notation.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument that do not start at the same rhythmic position, or other non-tuplet notes that start part-way through the tuplet: Non-tuplet notes are moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.

NOTE

Deleting a tuplet from grid and five-line staff kit presentation types deletes the tuplet from all instruments whose notes contribute to the same shared voice.

Playing techniques

You can input playing techniques, such as + for closed and o for open hi-hat, during note input and add them later to existing music in the same ways as for other instruments.

Playing techniques are only added to the instrument to which the note you select belongs, even if there are other instruments in the same voice.

Percussion stickings

Dorico Elements does not yet have a dedicated feature for percussion stickings. However, you can use lyrics to represent percussion stickings in all kit presentation types:

- Grid/Five-line staff presentation types: Select a note in the instrument in which you want to show stickings.
- Single-line instruments presentation type: Input lyrics directly into instruments in which you want to show stickings.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting articulations](#) on page 271

[Inputting tuplets](#) on page 254

[Changing the pitch of individual notes](#) on page 468

[Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams](#) on page 367

[Inputting lyrics](#) on page 392

Dynamics in percussion kits

Unlike other items, dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the

single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

This is due to the complexity of combining a large number of different dynamics at the same rhythmic position, as allowed in the single-line instruments presentation, into the single position required for both the grid and five-line staff presentations. Therefore, you can add dynamics in the grid and five-line staff presentation types independently of the single-line instruments presentation type.

RELATED LINKS

[Input methods for dynamics](#) on page 309

Percussion kit presentation types

You can show percussion kits in three different presentation types, which can be different in each layout in your project.

NOTE

Dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

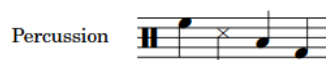
You can edit the appearance/structure of each presentation type independently in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, changing the order of instruments in the five-line staff presentation does not affect the order of instruments in the grid presentation of the same percussion kit.

5-line staff

Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.

The numbers down the left-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to staff positions. For example, position 0 is the middle line of the five-line staff, position 1 is the space immediately above the middle staff line, position -2 is the line below the middle staff line, and so on.

Bold black lines show the five staff lines, while gray lines above and below the staff show nominal staff line positions. Each instrument is shown on its staff position.



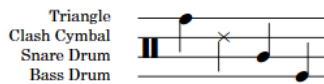
Grid

Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize the size of the gaps between each line. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.

The numbers down the right-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to the number of staff spaces between each instrument line. By default, all instruments in a grid are two spaces apart.

The order in which the instruments are listed matches the order in which they appear in the score.

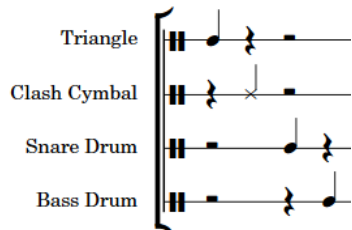
Each instrument in a grid shows its own staff label by default, aligned vertically with its own line, but you can group adjacent instruments together and show a single label for each group.



Single-line instruments

Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

The editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog lists all of the instruments in the order in which they appear in the score.



RELATED LINKS

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

[Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads](#) on page 1425

[Override Percussion Noteheads dialog](#) on page 1423

[Layout Options dialog](#) on page 745

Changing the percussion kit presentation type

You can change the presentation type of percussion kits in each layout independently and independently of each other. For example, you can use a five-line staff in the full score layout but a grid in the percussion part layout, and have two percussion kits with different presentation types in the same full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the percussion kit presentation type.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Percussion** section, choose one of the following options for each percussion kit in your project:
 - **5-line Staff**
 - **Grid**
 - **Single-line Instruments**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The presentation type is changed for the selected percussion kits in the selected layouts.

Percussion legends

Percussion legends list the percussion instruments in use when using the five-line presentation type. Percussion legends can include all instruments that are represented on the staff, or only show sounding instruments in a set range to remind players which instruments to play at certain points.

The image shows a musical staff with a five-line presentation type. The staff is divided into three measures. The first measure is in 4/8 time and contains a series of eighth notes, with a dynamic marking of *f* below the staff. The second measure is in 5/8 time and contains a series of eighth notes, with a dynamic marking of *f* below the staff. The third measure is in 7/8 time and contains a series of eighth notes, with a dynamic marking of *f* below the staff. Above the staff, there are labels for percussion legends: Temple Block 1, Temple Block 2, Temple Block 3, Temple Block 4, and Temple Block 5 are listed on the left. Suspended Cymbal, Side Drum, and Kick Drum are listed on the right. The legends are represented by 'x' marks on the staff lines.

Two sounding instrument percussion legends

By default, percussion legends appear above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of percussion legends individually.

You can change various aspects of the paragraph style for percussion legends, such as the font size and style, in the **Paragraph Styles** dialog.

NOTE

- Percussion legends appear as signposts if there are no instruments sounding at their position, or when the layout uses the grid presentation type. Percussion legends do not appear at all in layouts using the single-line instrument presentation type.
- Percussion legends only appear in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.
- You can hide/show percussion legend signposts by choosing **View > Signposts > Percussion Legends**.

RELATED LINKS

[Changing the staff-relative placement of items](#) on page 434

[Paragraph Styles dialog](#) on page 756

[Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion](#) on page 1426

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows](#) on page 141

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations

You can add percussion legends at specific rhythmic positions to indicate the instruments in the kit. Percussion legends can show all instruments in the kit or only instruments sounding within the specified range.

NOTE

Percussion legends only appear when kits use the five-line staff percussion kit presentation type and in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
 - An item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to add a percussion legend for all instruments.
 - The range of notes/items for which you want to show a percussion legend for sounding instruments.
2. Add a percussion legend in one of the following ways:
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Percussion > Legend for All Instruments**.
 - Choose **Edit > Notations > Percussion > Legend for Sounding Instruments**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

A percussion legend is added to the kit. It appears above the staff when the kit uses the five-line staff presentation. It lists instruments, either all instruments or just instruments with notes within the selected range, in the order in which they appear in the five-line staff, from highest down to lowest.



RELATED LINKS

- [Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428
- [Editing percussion legend text](#) on page 1433

Changing the percussion legend type

You can change the type of percussion legends so they show all instruments or only sounding instruments in five-line staff presentations.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Legend type** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

NOTE

The property is already activated for sounding instrument percussion legends.

3. Choose one of the following options:
 - **Legend**
 - **Sounding instruments**
-

RESULT

The legend type of the selected legends is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Percussion legends](#) on page 1430

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428

[Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations](#) on page 1430

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Changing the sounding instrument percussion legend range

You can change the rhythmic range of sounding instrument percussion legends to include more/fewer instruments in the legend, as they only show the instruments playing at the rhythmic positions included in the range.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the sounding instrument percussion legend whose range you want to change.
2. Change the range in any of the following ways, according to the current rhythmic grid resolution:
 - To move the whole range to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To move the whole range to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
 - To lengthen the range, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
 - To shorten the range, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

NOTE

Key commands lengthen/shorten items by moving their end only.

- Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.
-

RESULT

The rhythmic range covered by the selected sounding instrument percussion legend is changed according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

The instruments included in the percussion legend are automatically updated to reflect the instruments playing within the range.



RELATED LINKS

[Rhythmic grid](#) on page 217

Showing short instrument names in percussion legends

Percussion legends use full instrument names by default, but you can choose to use short names to save space.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose instrument name lengths you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Use short names** in the **Percussion Legends** group.
-

RESULT

Short instrument names are shown in the selected percussion legends.

Deactivating **Use short names** returns the selected percussion legends to showing full instrument names.

RELATED LINKS

[Staff labels for percussion kits](#) on page 1319

[Percussion legends](#) on page 1430

[Percussion kit presentation types](#) on page 1428



[Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations](#) on page 1430

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Editing percussion legend text

By default, percussion legends show the instrument names of percussion instruments in five-line staff presentations, stacked vertically. You can change the text shown in percussion legends to show custom text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
 - **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
 - If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
-

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Percussion Legends** group.
 3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
 4. Press **Return**.
-

RESULT

The text shown in the selected percussion legends is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503


[Hiding/Showing zones](#) on page 44


[Properties panel](#) on page 663

Erasing the background of percussion legends

You can erase the background of individual percussion legends; for example, to ensure they remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the percussion legends whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected percussion legends are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected percussion legends to the default non-erased background.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between percussion legends and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

[Properties panel](#) on page 663



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the erasure padding of percussion legends

You can change the erasure padding of individual percussion legends, including changing the padding between percussion legends and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the percussion legends whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Percussion Legends** group.
 - **L** changes the padding between percussion legends and their left edge.
 - **R** changes the padding between percussion legends and their right edge.
 - **T** changes the padding between percussion legends and their top edge.
 - **B** changes the padding between percussion legends and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Voices in percussion kits

Dorico Elements automatically combines music into a smaller number of voices when multiple percussion instruments are presented in a five-line staff or as a grid, even if they contain different rhythms. By default, music is combined into one up-stem voice and one down-stem voice.

Alternatively, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice when the kit is defined as a drum set on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**. This convention is used less frequently for orchestral percussion.

You can also override this option for individual notes and whole instruments in individual percussion kits.

Notes in the same voice cannot be notated using different durations and are notated using ties by default instead. You can eliminate the use of ties by choosing to truncate longer notes so that only their onsets appear on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

If one of the instruments in a percussion kit has a tuplet rhythm, other instruments can share the voice if their notation is compatible, such as if the tuplet structure is the same, or if they have a single note that coincides with the start of the tuplet. In this case, the single non-tuplet note is notated as the same duration of the first note of the tuplet.

If the music of the different instruments in the same voice is incompatible, Dorico Elements dynamically creates another voice and notates the remaining music in that voice until the music is compatible again.

RELATED LINKS

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

[Notations on notes in percussion kits](#) on page 1426




[Defining percussion kits as drum sets](#) on page 148

[Adding slash voices to percussion kits](#) on page 1260

Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits

You can specify the stem direction for each instrument in individual percussion kits. You can also set which voice they are in, allowing you to control which instruments share voices in percussion kits.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose instrument stem directions and voices you want to specify.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu  and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. In the dialog, select an instrument whose stem direction and voice you want to specify.
4. Choose one of the following stem directions for **Stem direction and voice**:
 - **Up-stem** 
 - **Down-stem** 
5. Specify a voice by changing the value for **Stem direction and voice**.

NOTE

You do not have to change the voice number if you are switching between up- and down-stem voices, as the number corresponds to the voice number for each stem direction.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RESULT

The default stem direction and voice of the selected instrument is changed.

RELATED LINKS

[Players panel](#) on page 110

[Edit Percussion Kit dialog](#) on page 143

Changing the voice of individual notes in percussion kits

You can override the default voice for individual notes in percussion kits, including drum sets.

PREREQUISITE

If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose voice you want to override. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
 2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Percussion > Change Voice > [Voice]**.
For example, to change notes to the second down-stem voice, choose **Edit > Notations > Percussion > Change Voice > Down-stem Voice 2**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
-

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, independently of the default voice for their instrument and independently of your setting for voices in drum sets.

TIP

You can reset the voice of individual notes by selecting them and choosing **Edit > Notations > Percussion > Change Voice > Reset Note Destination Voice**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

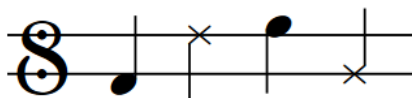
[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Universal Indian Drum Notation

Dorico Elements supports the Universal Indian Drum Notation system developed by Keda Music Ltd.

Universal Indian Drum Notation has been designed primarily for tabla, but can also be applied to other Indian drums with two heads, such as nagara, dhol, dholak, mridangam, and pakhawaj.

Indian drum clefs are automatically shown on the staves of tabla instruments and tabla percussion kits, but you can also input Indian drum clefs manually.



RELATED LINKS

[Adding players](#) on page 124

[Adding instruments to players](#) on page 133

[Inputting clefs with the panel](#) on page 333

[Percussion kits and drum sets](#) on page 142

[Percussion maps](#) on page 780

Voices

For many instruments, such as flute or trombone, each staff usually contains a single musical line in a single voice that is read from left to right along the staff. When multiple, independent lines must be shown in a single staff, each line can be a separate voice.



An excerpt of piano music with two voices active on each staff

One common use for showing multiple voices in a single staff is in vocal music, when the soprano and alto lines share a single staff and the tenor and bass lines share another staff. Showing each vocal line in its own voice helps to separate the lines, making the music easier to read and making the shape of each melodic line clear.

In Dorico Elements, notes belong to voices. You can create as many voices as you like on each pitched instrument staff. Each voice has its own color, which you can see if you show voice colors. This can help you to keep track of which notes are in which voices if there are multiple overlapping musical lines in your project.

Voices in Dorico Elements are divided into up-stem voices and down-stem voices. Stems of notes in up-stem voices point upwards, while stems of notes in down-stem voices point downwards. However, in bars where only one voice contains notes, stem directions are automatically changed to the directions they would have if there were only one voice on the staff. By default, the first voice on the staff is up-stem.

Following most notation conventions, rests are shown in bars for all voices that have notes in the bar. If two or more voices have a rest of the same rhythmic duration at the same rhythmic position, that rest is consolidated by default: instead of showing two identical rests, only one is shown.

RELATED LINKS

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Swapping the contents of voices](#) on page 467

[Voices in percussion kits](#) on page 1435

[Slash voices](#) on page 1258

[Adding notes above/below existing notes](#) on page 258

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

[Unused voices](#) on page 1444

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Moving rests vertically](#) on page 1275

[Deleting rests](#) on page 1276

[Dynamics in playback](#) on page 953

Per-flow notation options for voices

You can find options controlling how notes in multiple voices are positioned in each flow independently on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

The options on this page allow you to change the position and order of notes in multiple-voice contexts, and choose when noteheads in different voices can overlap.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Per-flow notation options for rests](#) on page 1274

Hiding/Showing voice colors

You can show notes in different colors according to their voice; for example, to check which notes are in which voice. When voice colors are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Voice colors are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

NOTE

You cannot show colors for voices and notes out of range simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
 - To show voice colors, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > Voice Colors**.
 - To hide voice colors, choose **View > Note And Rest Colors > None**.
-

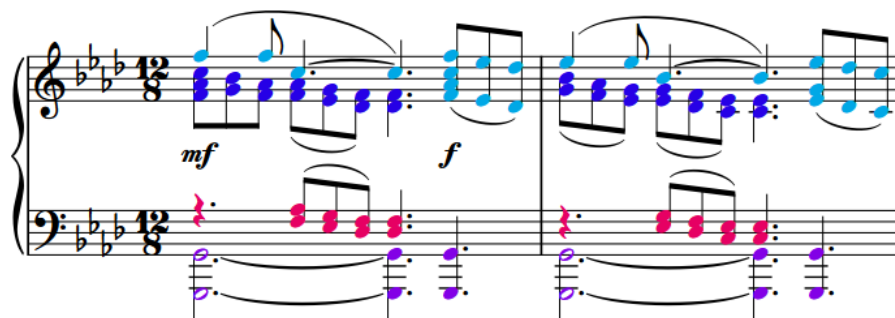
RESULT

Voice colors are hidden/shown. The first eight voices on each staff use the colors set in **Preferences > Colors > Voice Colors**. Voice colors are automatically assigned to subsequent voices.

TIP

You can also identify voices by selecting individual notes and looking at the display in the status bar.

EXAMPLE



The image shows a musical score for piano in 12/8 time, featuring two staves. The upper staff (treble clef) contains two systems of music. The first system is marked *mf* and the second *f*. Each system has four voices. The notes in these voices are color-coded: blue, red, purple, and green. The lower staff (bass clef) also contains two systems of music, with notes color-coded in red, purple, and green. The overall effect is to clearly distinguish between the different voices in a complex, multi-voiced passage.

Voice colors shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing voice colors reveals some notes are not in the voice you want, you can change their voice.

RELATED LINKS

[Preferences dialog](#) on page 58

[Changing music area colors](#) on page 54

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range](#) on page 1064

[Annotations](#) on page 597

[Status bar](#) on page 38

Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap

You can allow/disallow the noteheads of unison notes in opposing voices to overlap in different contexts in each flow independently. For example, if you want to allow notes with and without rhythm dots to overlap but disallow half notes to overlap with shorter notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
 2. In the category list, click **Voices**.
 3. In the **Ordering Multiple Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Unison half notes (minims) and shorter notes in opposing voices**:
 - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
 - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
 4. Choose one of the following options for **Unison dotted and undotted notes in opposing voices**:
 - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
 - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
 5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
-

RELATED LINKS

[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Note and rest grouping](#) on page 860

Note positions in multiple-voice contexts

Notes are usually placed directly above each other and at the same horizontal position, so that it is immediately clear which notes are played together. However, the horizontal alignment of notes can be different in multiple-voice contexts.

There are circumstances when some notes must be positioned slightly to one side in a different voice column to ensure the division of notes across the voices is clear. For example, when there are three or more voices in a single staff, or when notes in two voices are a second interval apart.



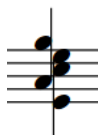
A phrase with multiple voice columns for some beats on the top staff

Interlocking notes in different voices can be positioned in two ways:

1. Notehead to notehead, which allows noteheads to overlap partially. This voice order often takes up less horizontal space than positioning notes stem to stem, as notes can overlap.



2. Stem to stem, which does not allow noteheads to overlap. This voice order keeps notes in different voices separate.



Dorico Elements positions notes by default with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and to maintain the clarity of the rhythm. The order and position of notes in different voices is also automatically adjusted so that each rhythmic position uses as little horizontal space as possible, while remaining clear and legible.

- You can change the default order of notes in multiple voices in each flow independently in **Notation Options > Voices**.
- You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally and change the voice column of individual notes.
- You can move notes graphically in Engrave mode by changing the note spacing. You can move individual voice columns independently of all other items at that rhythmic position, or move everything at the same rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Slashes in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1268

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Per-flow notation options for voices](#) on page 1439

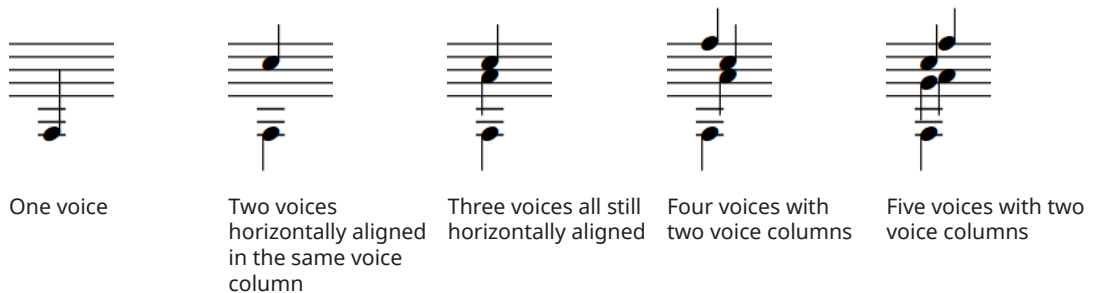
[Notation Options dialog](#) on page 747

[Note spacing](#) on page 507

Voice column index

The voice column index is used to determine the positions of notes when multiple columns are needed; for example, when notes in two voices are a second interval apart and therefore cannot be placed directly above each other vertically, instead they must partially overlap.

Dorico Elements automatically changes the voice column of voices according to the number of active voices and the pitch of notes. Dorico Elements prefers showing voices with the widest pitch range between them on the left of the rhythmic position and voices with narrower pitch ranges to the right, as this produces the most balanced result, especially when there are multiple accidentals.



You can adjust the horizontal spacing of voice columns independently of other voice columns at their rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS


[Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap](#) on page 1440

[Adjusting the spacing of individual notes/items independently of their rhythmic positions](#) on page 511

Swapping the order of voices

Dorico Elements automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- If you are in Engrave mode, **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit > Notations > Voices > Swap Voice Order**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The voice order of the selected notes is changed by changing their voice column index. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

If you want to revert voices to their default voice order, we recommend that you reset their voice column by deactivating **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel instead of swapping their voice order again.

EXAMPLE



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned notehead to notehead.



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned stem to stem.

RELATED LINKS

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

[Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1273

[Swapping the contents of voices](#) on page 467

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503



[Changing the property scope](#) on page 665

[Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains](#) on page 646

Changing the voice column of notes

You can change the voice column, and therefore the horizontal order, of all notes in selected voices at individual rhythmic positions, independently of your per-flow settings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties**  is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Graphic Editing**  is selected in the Engrave toolbox.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one note in each voice whose voice column you want to change.
 2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
 3. Change the value in the value field.
-

RESULT

The voice column of the selected voices is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected voice to their default order according to your per-flow settings.

TIP

The **Voice column index** property in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is automatically activated when you swap the order of voices manually.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can adjust the horizontal spacing of voice columns independently of other voice columns at their rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

[Note positions in multiple-voice contexts](#) on page 1440

[Voice column index](#) on page 1442

[Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap](#) on page 1440

[Adjusting the spacing of individual notes/items independently of their rhythmic positions](#) on page 511

[Engrave toolbox](#) on page 503

Unused voices

An unused voice is one that contains no notes anywhere in the project. Any unused voices are automatically deleted when you close a project, but you cannot manually delete voices once they have been created. You can create as many voices as you want in each staff.

NOTE

Deleting all notes in a voice does not delete the voice immediately.

If you later want to input notes in a voice that was automatically deleted when you last closed the project, you can create a new voice at any rhythmic position.

Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices

When you create cross-staff beams by crossing notes to staves that already contain notes, the stem direction of the existing notes may change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled in Dorico Elements.

For example, if a piano part contains notes in up-stem voices on both staves, the stem direction of notes in both voices can change if notes from the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff. In this situation, the notes from the two staves are not combined, but are instead treated as two up-stem voices in a multiple-voice context.



Two piano staves, each with notes in a single up-stem voice.



When the notes in the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff, the stem direction of the notes already in the lower staff changes so they point upwards.

You can change the stem direction of the notes originally in the lower staff in any of the following ways:

- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their voice to another voice, such as a down-stem voice.
- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their stem direction.

Alternatively, you can move the notes in the upper staff permanently to the lower staff.

RELATED LINKS

[Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos](#) on page 851

[Moving notes/items to other staves](#) on page 464

[Inputting notes into multiple voices](#) on page 232

[Changing the voice of existing notes](#) on page 466

[Stem direction](#) on page 1074

Glossary

A

action (expression maps)

A control in expression maps that determines how individual switches are controlled in order to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques.

action (harps)

The mechanism that raises or lowers the pitch of harp strings, as controlled by the position of each pedal.

action (pianos)

The mechanism that allows piano hammers to strike the strings with different forces, depending on the strength with which the player depresses the corresponding key. It allows pianos to use a greater dynamic range, hence their full name “pianoforte”.

alignment relative to noteheads

When calculating the horizontal alignment of items relative to noteheads, Dorico Elements uses the front notehead in the first voice column at the corresponding rhythmic position. The front notehead is the notehead on the correct side of the stem; that is, on the left of up-stems and on the right of down-stems. Items that can be aligned relative to noteheads include lyrics, chord symbols, and playing techniques.

anacrusis

See [pick-up bar](#).

articulation (music notation)

A symbol that indicates how a note should be played, typically affecting its onset (attack), release, or duration. For example, staccato marks and accents.

articulation (sound libraries)

A term that refers to playing techniques generally.

attachment

The rhythmic position at which an item occurs, or to which an item applies, in the music. In Write mode and Engrave mode, an attachment line is shown between a single selected item and its rhythmic position.

B

bar

A span of music comprising a specific number of beats, as defined by the prevailing time signature, whose boundaries are indicated by bar lines. Also known as a “measure”, but this documentation uses “bar”.

C

cancellation natural

A natural accidental positioned on the staff immediately before a change in key signature or a single note. It indicates that the previous accidental no longer applies and can be followed immediately by a new accidental if applicable. Showing cancellation naturals before single accidentals that follow double accidentals is also known as “archaic cancellation”. Cancellation naturals before a change in key signature are known as “traditional” when positioned after the barline and “Russian” when positioned before the barline.

caret

Shown during note input, the caret is the vertical line that extends above and below the staff and indicates the rhythmic position at which items are input. Also known as an “insertion point”. In Dorico Elements, the caret, cursor, and mouse pointer are related but serve different purposes. See also [rhythmic grid](#), [note input](#), [cursor](#), [mouse pointer](#).

casting off

The act of fixing the layout of pages of music, such as defining a set number of systems per page or the number of bars per system.

cautionary accidental

A restatement of an earlier accidental to eliminate ambiguities, such as when a tied note with an accidental continues onto another page. Also known as a “courtesy accidental”.

CC

Short for “continuous controller” or “control change”, it is a MIDI message that combines a controller number and a value. The value for an individual controller can change over time, allowing incremental manipulation of the corresponding sound or effect, such as increasing/ decreasing the string vibrato intensity. You can specify the sound or effect that each CC switches to and controls in each sound library using expression maps. In Dorico Elements, each instrument track has 127 available MIDI CCs, each with a value range from 0 to 127. Because MIDI CC does not use notes on a MIDI keyboard, it allows you to use the full range of MIDI keyboard notes for note input. However, it is therefore harder to trigger MIDI CC whilst recording notes. See also [MIDI](#), [PC](#).

channel

In MIDI, a channel determines which note, controller, or other data is played by which sound on which device. In Dorico Elements, notes on a single staff may be played by different channels, depending on which playing techniques are provided by the patch assigned to each channel. See also [MIDI](#), [patch](#).

chord

Two or more notes of the same duration that start at the same rhythmic position and share a stem.

chord input

A variation of note input where notes are stacked on top of each other to create chords, rather than being input after the previous note in sequence. Notes are input at the caret position, which does not advance automatically. See also [caret](#), [note input](#), [Insert mode](#).

collision avoidance

Automatic adjustments made by Dorico Elements to ensure multiple items at the same position do not overlap and that all remain clearly legible. Includes changing the shape of items, such as slurs, and changing the vertical and/or horizontal position of items, such as accidentals in chords.

column

A vertical line representing the same horizontal position across all staves in the system. Used to determine the position of notes and chords for the purposes of spacing music accurately. Multiple columns can be used for the same rhythmic position to accommodate multiple voices, with notes or chords in some voices being offset horizontally from notes or chords in other voices.

concert pitch

All notes are written as they sound. Full scores are often notated in concert pitch, so that harmonies and themes are easier to identify. Also known as “sounding pitch”. See also [transposed pitch](#), [instrument transposition](#).

condensing

The process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than is normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4. Most commonly used for large orchestral scores, as when there are fewer staves on a page it is possible to use a larger staff size, which is easier for conductors to read. See also [divisi](#), [pitch crossing](#), [reducing](#).

constant point

A change in value in the Key Editor that sets a fixed value until the next point. See also [point \(Key Editor\)](#), [linear point](#), [value line](#).

context menu

A menu that you can access by right-clicking on a mouse or double-tapping on a touchpad. Its options vary by the location of the mouse pointer and what is selected when you access it, but it most commonly contains options also found on the **Edit** menu.

cursor

The vertical blinking line that appears when entering or editing text. See also [caret](#), [mouse pointer](#).

D**dead note**

A note played on a fretted instrument whose sound is muted to produce a sound that is more percussive than pitched. Usually produced by gently resting one hand on the string. Also known as a “muted”, “muffled”, “ghost”, or “silenced” note. In Dorico Elements, only notes belonging to fretted instruments, such as the guitar or banjo, can be dead notes.

disclosure arrow

A small arrow that is shown on all edges of the main window in Dorico Elements. It allows you to hide/show the toolbar and panels individually.

divisi

Italian for “divide” or “divided”, divisi is when players split in order to play multiple lines of music. This commonly involves a section, such as Violin I, dividing and using two staves rather than one for a limited passage. Divisi passages can be notated all on the same staff, using multiple voices if required, or across multiple staves. See also [tutti](#), [condensing](#), [exploding](#), [reducing](#).

drum set

A particular type of percussion kit that is often used in pop and rock music. Drum sets often use a different arrangement of voices than percussion kits. In this documentation, references to “percussion kits” also apply to drum sets, as drum sets are a type of percussion kit.

E**EDO**

An abbreviation for Equal Division of the Octave, it is a unit used to describe how an octave can be divided into equal parts, often for the purpose of defining a microtonal scale or tonality system. Traditional Western European music uses 12-EDO; that is, each octave is divided into 12 equal half-steps (semitones). Music that uses equal quarter tones uses 24-EDO. See also [pitch delta](#).

endpoint

The unique combination of inputs and outputs that together allow the correct sounds to be played for each instrument.

Engrave mode

A mode in Dorico where you can manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine how the pages in each layout of your project are formatted for printing or exporting. See also [modes](#).

enharmonic equivalent

An alternative spelling of a note that uses a different scale degree and accidental but produces the same sounding pitch, such as G \sharp and A \flat .

ensemble

A predefined collection of players, each holding instruments that are often used together, such as string quartet, wind quintet, brass quintet, string ensemble, and double woodwinds.

envelope

A change in sound over time that comprises multiple stages, such as attack, sustain, and decay. In the Dynamics editor, envelopes are represented by highlighted regions and multiple separate points, each controlling a different parameter of the overall envelope. See also [point \(Key Editor\)](#), [constant point](#), [linear point](#), [value line](#).

explicit rest

A rest that was deliberately input during rest input or imported from a MusicXML file. Explicit rests cannot be suppressed between notes in a particular voice. See also [rest](#), [implicit rest](#).

exploding

The process of assigning music to more instruments than it was written for originally. Exploding music is often a key step in arranging and orchestrating music, such as when a piano piece is arranged for string quartet. See also [reducing](#), [divisi](#).

F**family**

Instruments of a similar kind that are typically bracketed together in a score, such as woodwind, brass, percussion, and strings.

fermata

A notation that indicates all notes at that position are held for longer than their notated length. It is most commonly shown as a curved line with a dot under the curve, but it can also be shown with a pointed arch or square shape. Also known as a “pause” or a “birds’ eye”.

flow

A self-contained span of music of any scope, such as a movement in a symphony, a song in an album, a number in a musical, or a short exercise in a music theory worksheet. A flow can contain the same players as other flows in the project or separate players just for that flow. See also [player](#).

formatting

The act of determining the number of bars in a system, the number of systems on a page, and the distances between staves and systems.

fps

A unit of measurement, short for “frames per second”, that refers to the number of video frames occurring each second.

fragment

Part of a notation item. For example, fragments of a note include its notehead, rhythm dots, accidentals, the tip of its stem, and beam. In Write mode, selecting any part of an item also selects all of its fragments, so any changes you make affect the whole item. In Engrave mode, you can select each fragment individually to tweak its position or appearance. See also [item](#), [segment](#).

frame

A rectangular container for music, text, or graphics on a page.

fretted instrument

A type of instrument that in most cases has multiple strings, a neck with marked frets, and is played by stopping the strings at fret positions on the neck with one hand, usually the left, and plucking the corresponding strings with the other hand, usually the right. Common fretted instruments include the guitar, ukulele, and banjo.

full score

A score comprising all of the music for all of the players and their instruments, typically laid out in a specific order. The order used varies according to the ensemble for which the music

is written. In full scores for orchestra, the players are typically ordered from the highest wind instrument at the top of the page, such as piccolo, to the lowest string instrument at the bottom of the page, such as contrabass, with brass, keyboards, voices, and percussion in between.

G

galley view

A viewing option that shows music laid out as a single, infinitely wide system.

grace note

A small note, often used to show an ornament or embellishment, that is not counted towards the number of beats in the bar; instead, it steals from the duration of either the preceding or the following rhythmic notes. Also known as an “arhythmic” or “crushed” note. In common practice, a grace note with a slashed stem is an “acciaccatura”, which is to be played as quickly as possible, either immediately before or at the rhythmic position of the note or chord that follows it. A grace note with an unslashed stem is an “appoggiatura”, which is played as half of the written duration of the note or chord that follows it.

grand staff instrument

An instrument that normally uses two or more staves joined by a brace to display their notes. Common grand staff instruments include the piano, organ, and harp. Upper staves usually indicate higher notes and use the treble clef, while lower staves usually indicate lower notes and use the bass clef.

H

hairpin

A notation for dynamics that uses a pair of angled lines, diverging from or converging on a single point, to show a gradual increase or reduction in the dynamic level; that is, a crescendo or diminuendo.

half-bar

The rhythmic position that divides bars into two equal sections when the prevailing time signatures can be divided into four equal beats. In Dorico Elements, specific beam grouping and note grouping settings apply to bars with a half-bar. Time signatures that have a half-bar include 4/4 and 12/8.

handle

A selectable item that marks the ends of lines, the corners of frames, and other moveable positions, such as pedal line retakes and slur control points. In Write mode, handles are circular and mark rhythmic positions. In Engrave mode, handles are square and mark graphical positions.

harmonic series

A naturally-occurring set of frequencies that are all related to a single pitch, known as the “fundamental”. When a fundamental pitch is played, the note produced contains many different notes within the harmonic series. These additional notes are known as “partials” or “overtones”. It is also possible to bring out the sound of individual partials by playing them as harmonics. There is a consistent pattern of intervals between partials within the harmonic series, and these intervals become progressively smaller the further up the harmonic series they occur. For example, the interval between the first and second partials is an octave whereas the interval between the seventh and eighth partials is only approximately a major second. At the top end of the harmonic series, most partials are microtones. See also [partial](#).

hook

A short line that extends from other lines, most commonly at a right angle, that helps to clarify the end position of lines. In Dorico Elements, hooks can be used at the end of pedal lines, octave lines, repeat endings, and tuplet brackets.

horizontal justification

The alignment of musical content to the left and right edges of the frame. To ensure that all staves in a system occupy the same width, any remaining space that is left over after the music

is spaced is distributed evenly between all of the columns in the system. Sometimes the final system of a flow is not fully justified and is allowed to end partway across the width of the frame. See also [frame](#), [justification](#).

I

implicit rest

A rest that is automatically shown around the notes you input. Its notated duration automatically adjusts according to the time signature and its position in the bar. Implicit rests can be suppressed between notes in a particular voice, which hides them. See also [rest](#), [explicit rest](#), [padding rest](#), [multi-bar rest](#).

Insert mode

A way of changing how notes are input. When Insert mode is activated, new notes push all subsequent notes in the same voice along by the input duration instead of overwriting existing notes. Similarly, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes. This also affects edits you make outside of note input, such as deleting notes, changing the duration of notes, or inputting time signatures. See also [note input](#), [chord input](#).

instrument

Anything that requires at least one staff to represent the sounds or music it produces. Common instruments include the violin, flute, tuba, and bass drum. However, human voices, computer triggering samples, and tape recordings can also be instruments.

instrument transposition

The interval difference between the pitch the instrument plays and the resulting sounding pitch, often included as part of the instrument name. For example, when a Clarinet in B \flat plays a C, the pitch produced is a concert B \flat . Instrument transposition is also known as “instrument pitch”. See also [concert pitch](#), [transposed pitch](#).

item

Generic term for any note, rest, chord, notation, or other selectable object that appears in the score in Dorico Elements. See also [fragment](#), [segment](#).

J

justification

The alignment of musical content to the edges of the frame, both horizontally and vertically. See also [frame](#), [horizontal justification](#), [vertical justification](#).

K

key command

A set of keys that perform a defined task when pressed together. Also known as a “keyboard shortcut” or “hotkey”.

L

layer

See [voice](#).

layout

A page-based presentation of the music for one or more players in one or more flows; for example, a full score that contains all players or an instrumental part that contains only a single player. See also [flow](#), [player](#).

layout options

Options that affect the setup of an individual layout, such as page and staff size. These options can be set in each layout independently in the **Layout Options** dialog. See also [layout](#).

linear point

A change in value in the Key Editor that acts as a point on a curve, setting a value for its position only and allowing for a smooth change in value from that position until the next point. See also [point \(Key Editor\)](#), [constant point](#), [value line](#).

lock duration

Functionality that allows you to change the pitches of existing music while retaining existing rhythms.

lyric

Any text that is intended to be sung or spoken by an individual singer or group of singers. A lyric can be a whole word or an individual syllable in a multi-syllabic word. Lyrics are shown at each rhythmic position where a new word or syllable begins. Typically, lyrics are found below the staff, but are sometimes placed above the staff; for example, in the case of a short score.

M**measure**

See [bar](#).

MIDI

An abbreviation for Musical Instrument Digital Interface, a standard for how electronic musical instruments, computers, and virtual instruments can connect to and communicate with each other. In Dorico Elements, MIDI data can be sent to one of 16 channels, which allow either a specific instrument, or a specific patch on a specific instrument, to receive and respond to the data. See also [channel](#), [patch](#), [CC](#), [PC](#).

minor key

A key signature based on a minor scale, which has a different pattern of intervals to a major scale. See also [minor scale](#).

minor scale

A sequence of notes containing the pitches of a minor key. There are three types of minor scales: natural, harmonic, and melodic. Natural minor scales follow the interval pattern of the Aeolian mode, which on a keyboard is all the white notes from A-A. Harmonic minor scales also follow the Aeolian mode interval pattern but the seventh degree of the scale is sharpened; for example, G \sharp in A harmonic minor. Melodic minor scales follow different interval patterns when they are rising/falling: when rising, melodic minor scales have sharpened sixth and seventh degrees, but when falling, the sixth and seventh degrees are both natural. See also [minor key](#).

modes

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. See also [Setup mode](#), [Write mode](#), [Engrave mode](#), [Play mode](#), [Print mode](#).

mouse pointer

The icon on the screen that allows you to interact with items and the user interface, usually by clicking. Its position is typically controlled by an external mouse or touchpad. Its appearance varies depending on the context, such as appearing as a hand when it hovers over a hyperlink, but it most commonly appears as an arrow pointing towards the top left corner of the screen. Also known as a "mouse arrow", "cursor", or simply a "pointer" or "mouse" In this documentation, we use the term "mouse pointer" to differentiate from the cursor and caret. See also [cursor](#), [caret](#), [touchpad](#).

multi-bar rest

A consolidation of multiple adjacent empty bars into a smaller unit, typically shown as a single bar with the total number of bars' rest written above the staff. A multi-bar rest normally shows an H-bar symbol, which is a thick horizontal line with vertical lines at each end. In some older

published scores, a multi-bar rest of up to nine bars in length is shown using a combination of double whole and whole rests. Also known as a “multirest”.

music area

The main part of the window in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes where you input and edit your music.

MusicXML

A file format designed to allow the interchange and archiving of music notation data in an open and non-proprietary way. It is useful for exchanging scores between different music applications.

N**node**

A position along the length of a string that marks an equal division of the string, such as a quarter of the way along a string. Touching, but not fully stopping, a string at a node produces a harmonic partial. See also [partial](#), [harmonic series](#).

notation options

Options that affect the way the music is notated, particularly concerning how notes and rests are grouped according to meter, rules for the extent of accidentals, and options for transposition. These options can be set independently for each flow in the **Notation Options** dialog.

note input

The standard method of adding notes to staves in sequence that is possible when the caret is active. The caret automatically advances to the next rhythmic position after each note is input. During note input, it is also possible to input other items at the caret position. Also known as “step input” because notes are input step-by-step. See also [caret](#), [chord input](#), [Insert mode](#).

O**octave division**

A single step within an octave whose interval depends on the total number of divisions in the octave. For example, in 12-EDO, there are twelve octave divisions, each a half-step (semitone) apart. See also [EDO](#), [pitch delta](#).

overtone

See [partial](#). See also [harmonic series](#), [node](#).

P**padding**

The minimum distance/gap between two items, such as text and its enclosure. Padding values can be independent of other set values, such as minimum height or width.

padding rest

A rest that fills the extra rhythmic space before or after cues that start or end partway through bars. This shows clearly how the rhythm of the cue fits within the time signature and how it relates to the player’s existing material. See also [implicit rest](#).

page break

The forced termination of a page of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Often used to ensure a convenient page turn in a part. In Dorico Elements, page breaks can be achieved using frame breaks, which are indicated using signposts. See also [system break](#).

page view

A viewing option that shows music laid out on a page with a fixed width and height, as it appears when printed. See also [galley view](#).

panel

Wide palettes of tools on the left, right, and bottom edges of the program window that are available in all modes, but their content varies in each mode.

part

The music belonging to the instruments played by one or more players, shown on its own rather than in a full score. Performers who do not need to see the music belonging to the whole ensemble play from parts so they only have to read the music they play themselves. See also [full score](#), [layout](#).

partial

A single pitch or frequency in the harmonic series, which varies in pitch according to the pitch of the fundamental but is always a consistent interval above the fundamental according to its number in the harmonic series. For example, the second partial is an octave above the fundamental, the third partial is an octave and a fifth above the fundamental, and the fourth partial is two octaves above the fundamental. Also known as simply a “harmonic” or “overtone”, although when described as an overtone it has a different number, as the first overtone is the same as the second partial. See also [harmonic series](#).

patch

An older term for a discrete sound on a MIDI device or virtual instrument. See also [channel](#), [MIDI](#), [PC](#).

pause (holds)

A notation that shows where the established rhythmic flow of the music is interrupted, either with a moment of repose or a short silence, before continuing. Also known as a “hold”, “fermata”, “breath mark”, and “caesura”. See also [fermata](#).

pause (rest)

A marking with a rhythmic value that indicates no note is played for that duration. In this documentation, we refer to this as a “rest”. See also [rest](#).

PC

Short for “program change” or “patch change”, it is a MIDI message that allows you to access different sounds by switching to the corresponding programs. Because programs can also include effects presets, they allow you to change to specific sounds quickly, which is particularly useful in live performances. You can specify the programs that each PC switches to in each sound library using expression maps. See also [MIDI](#), [CC](#), [patch](#).

pedal level change

A change to how far a piano sustain pedal is depressed, between 1 (fully depressed) and 0 (not depressed). It is notated as a change to the height of a pedal line. Also known as a “pedal lift”.

pick-up bar

A note or notes played before the first full bar of a piece. Also known as an “upbeat” or “anacrusis”. Pick-up bars often only comprise one or two beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.

pitch crossing

A possible situation on staves containing multiple voices or parts, such as condensed staves, where notes in down-stem voices have higher pitches than notes in up-stem voices. See also [condensing](#).

pitch delta

The number of octave divisions by which accidentals raise or lower the pitch of notes. For example, in 12-EDO, a pitch delta of 1 raises notes by a half-step (semitone) and is commonly notated using the sharp accidental (#). See also [EDO](#).

player

A musician who plays one or more instruments. Players are defined as either single players or section players and are assigned to flows and layouts. See also [single player](#), [section player](#), [flow](#), [layout](#).

player group

A collection of players that comprises either a subset of the main ensemble, such as a choir within an orchestra, or a separate group, such as an off-stage brass group or second orchestra. Each group of players is labeled separately in the full score and is grouped and numbered together in the instrument order. See also [player](#).

playhead

A vertical line that moves alongside music during playback and when recording, showing the current rhythmic position. Also known as a “playback line”.

Play mode

A mode in Dorico where you can change how your music sounds in playback, including by changing the playback template and assigning VST instruments, inputting automation, adjusting the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration. See also [modes](#).

playthrough

A single time playing from the beginning of the piece to the end. Music that contains multiple possible endings, such as music with repeat endings or codas, requires multiple playthroughs.

plug-in

A software program that can operate within another software program. Dorico Elements supports VST instruments and effects and script plug-ins written in Lua.

point (Key Editor)

A change in value in the Key Editor. Points appear as squares that you can select and edit, such as by dragging them. Points can be constant or linear. See also [constant point](#), [linear point](#), [value line](#).

point (size)

A unit of measurement in typography that describes the size of fonts.

pointer

See [mouse pointer](#).

polymeter

Music containing multiple simultaneous meters; for example, one instrument in the ensemble plays in 6/8 and another plays in 7/4.

popover

A temporary value field that is evoked using a key command and allows you to input items using text entries. You can open popovers in Write mode during note input or when items are selected in the music area. There are dedicated popovers for different types of items.

preamble

The notations typically drawn before the first note or rest on each system of music. The preamble usually includes clefs, key signatures, and time signatures. In Dorico Elements, the preamble is drawn automatically, so you cannot select any items included in it.

Print mode

A mode in Dorico that allows you to print and export the layouts in your project. See also [modes](#).

print preview area

The main part of the window in Print mode where you can see a preview of what is going to be printed or exported as a graphic. See also [Print mode](#).

project

A Dorico Elements file that can contain multiple flows and layouts. See also [flow](#) and [layout](#).

properties

The characteristics of individual items and fragments of items in your project that can be edited via the Properties panel. There are two types of properties: local and global. Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific, meaning that by default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains.

Q

quantization

In music, the act of adjusting the positions and durations of notes so they align with the nearest defined beat. This process eliminates small variations in rhythm and duration produced naturally by live performers, and can be useful when importing/exporting MIDI data as quantized music produces neater notation.

R

rastral size

The size of a full five-line staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line. The term comes from the rastra engravers historically used to draw five-line staves on blank paper. Because the rastrum is a fixed object, people became used to their set sizes and Dorico Elements continues this tradition by offering users a selection of rastral staff sizes.

reducing

The process of taking music for more than one instrument and assigning it to fewer instruments, such as a keyboard reduction of a choral piece. A piece of music that has been reduced is known as a “reduction”. See also [exploding](#), [condensing](#), [divisi](#).

rest

A marking with a rhythmic value that indicates no note is played for that duration. Also known as a “silence” or “pause”, but in this documentation, we refer to them as “rests”. See also [implicit rest](#), [explicit rest](#), [padding rest](#), [multi-bar rest](#), [pause \(holds\)](#).

rhythmic grid

A unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. Its current value is shown by the note value in the status bar, and by ruler markings indicating beat divisions and subdivisions above the staff on which the caret is active. See also [caret](#).

rhythm section

A collection of instruments typically found in jazz and commercial music. Customarily, the rhythm section includes keyboards, percussion kits, guitars, and bass guitars or double basses. In Dorico Elements, instruments defined as being in the rhythm section can show chord symbols differently to other instruments.

S

score

See [full score](#), [part](#), [layout](#), [project](#).

section player

Multiple musicians who all play the same instrument and read from the same part layout; for example, Violin I. Section players may not play multiple different instruments, but can divide. See also [player](#), [single player](#).

segment

Part of a notation item that functions autonomously in Engrave mode. Segments can exist regardless of their position, such as individual ending brackets within a repeat ending, or only when a single item is split across a system or frame break, such as glissando lines. See also [item](#), [fragment](#).

Setup mode

A mode in Dorico where you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts. See also [modes](#).

single player

An individual musician who can play one or more instruments; for example, a flute doubling piccolo. See also [player](#), [section player](#).

SMuFL

Short for “Standard Music Font Layout”, it is a font specification that maps all the different symbols required for music notation onto a standard layout. Dorico Elements requires SMuFL-compliant fonts for certain areas of the program, such as clefs and dynamic glyphs, to ensure it can locate the correct symbol. SMuFL-compliant fonts include Bravura, Petaluma, and November 2.0.

space

A unit of measurement in music engraving based on the distance between the center of two adjacent staff lines. Practically all notation items are scaled in proportion to the size of a space; for example, a notehead is normally one space tall.

spacing

The act of determining the horizontal distance between successive columns in order to format the music. Horizontal spacing in Dorico Elements considers the graphical shape and size of notes and other items, such as rhythm dots and accidentals, and the note spacing values set. Full systems are automatically horizontally justified.

spelling

The way in which a note of a given pitch is specified by a letter name plus an accidental. For example, assuming the conventional 12-EDO pitch system, MIDI note 61 can be spelled as C#, D \flat , and B \sharp . The same pitch is normally spelled a certain way in a given key; for example, MIDI note 61 is normally spelled as C# in D major, but is spelled as D \flat in A \flat major. See also [EDO](#), [MIDI](#).


split stem

A way of presenting altered unisons that keeps each accidental directly beside the notehead to which it applies. Also known as a “cherry stalk” or “tree”.

staff-relative placement

The vertical position of items relative to musical staves; that is, either above or below.

staff spacing handle

The square handle on the bottom left corner of each staff when **Staff Spacing**  is activated in Engrave mode. Staff spacing handles only change the vertical position of a single staff. See also [system spacing handle](#).

string shift indicator

An angled line that indicates the direction of movement when string players have to shift position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

stroke

The short line that bisects editorial slurs and ties. Also known as a “notch”.

SVG

SVG stands for Scalable Vector Graphics, which is an XML-based way of displaying and modifying graphics. Due to the way it is coded, it allows you to modify graphics very flexibly compared to other formats.

system

A horizontal span of music that is played together. Most printed music displays systems spanning the full width of pages. A system can contain any number of staves. For example, in orchestral full scores, systems typically contain staves for all instruments in the orchestra, meaning a single system often occupies the full height of the page. In part layouts, each system only contains the staves required for that player, which is often a single staff and means multiple systems can fit on each page. See also [system break](#), [page break](#), [casting off](#).

system break

The forced termination of a system of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Indicated in Dorico Elements with signposts. See also [page break](#).


system formatting

The distribution of bars into systems and systems into frames. When copying part formatting between layouts, Dorico Elements considers the positions of system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes to be aspects of system formatting.

system object

An item that applies to all staves in the system, but is not necessary to show on every staff, such as tempo marks and rehearsal marks. In Dorico Elements, you can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families.

system spacing handle

The square handle on the top left corner of each system when **Staff Spacing**  is activated in Engrave mode. System spacing handles change the vertical position of the top staff in systems, which also moves all staves in the system accordingly. See also [staff spacing handle](#).

T**tempo track**

The timing-related information included in MIDI data that affects tempo, SMPTE offsets, time signatures, timecodes, and markers, which can be imported independently of the rest of the data in MIDI files.

token

A code used in a text string that is automatically replaced by a piece of information from elsewhere in the project, such as the title of the current flow, the name of the player, or the page number. Also known as a “wildcard” or “text code”.

touchpad

Any flat device with a tactile sensor that functions as an alternative to the traditional computer mouse. Commonly built into laptop computers but can also be separate appliances connected wirelessly or via a cable.

transport

Encompasses all options related to playback and recording.

transposed pitch

In transposed pitch, the pitches notated are the pitches that the instrument plays, rather than the desired sounding pitch. Instrumental parts are always in transposed pitch so that players can simply play the written notes, which is especially important for transposing instruments. See also [concert pitch](#), [instrument transposition](#).

tuplet

A rhythm that is performed at a fraction of its normal written duration. For example, a triplet is three notes of a given note value played in the time it would normally take to play two notes of that note value. Also known as an “irrational rhythm” or a “countermetric rhythm”.

tutti

Italian for “everyone”, tutti indicates that a passage of music is to be played by all players reading from that part or staff. It is most commonly used to indicate the end of a *divisi* passage, or for clarification when a staff can indicate both solos and tutti passages at different times. See also [divisi](#).

U**upbeat**

See [pick-up bar](#).

V

value line

A visual representation of value over time. In Dorico Elements, you typically find value lines in the Key Editor. Fully horizontal value lines indicate a constant value, while angled value lines indicate a smooth change in value within a given duration, usually between two points. See also [point \(Key Editor\)](#), [constant point](#), [linear point](#).

vertical justification

The spreading out of staves and systems across the full height of frames with as even a distribution of space as possible. If the music in the frame requires less vertical space than is available, the remaining space is distributed evenly between the systems, and between the staves of the systems. See also [frame](#), [justification](#).

vibrato bar

A device on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars, that allows the performer to add vibrato to notes and to adjust the pitch of notes, similar to a guitar bend. Also known as a “whammy bar”, “tremolo bar”, “tremolo arm”, or “vibrato arm”.

voice

In Dorico Elements, a series of notes, chords, rests, and other notations that make up a single musical line and are normally played by the same instrument. Assigning notes and items to different voices allows multiple lines of music to be presented on the same staff as clearly as possible, such as in vocal music where the soprano line uses an up-stem voice and the alto line uses a down-stem voice. Dorico Elements allows as many voices as are needed to be input onto a single staff, and lays them out and spaces them automatically. See also [instrument](#).

VST instrument

Short for “Virtual Studio Technology instrument”, it is a digital plug-in that converts MIDI data into audio output. It can emulate an existing piece of studio hardware or can be an entirely new creation.

W

Write mode

A mode in Dorico where you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. See also [modes](#).

Index

A

- A paper sizes [593](#), [600](#)
- abbreviated
 - dates [660](#)
 - dynamics [921](#), [934](#), [943](#)
 - instrument names [181](#), [183](#), [184](#), [449](#), [1313](#)
 - staff labels [143](#), [1310](#), [1312](#), [1313](#)
 - tempo text [1339](#)
- absolute channel change actions [775](#)
- absolute font size [754](#), [756](#)
- absolute tempo changes [1336](#)
 - parentheses [1341](#)
- Academico font [753](#), [754](#), [756](#)
- accelerando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
- accents. *See* articulations
- acciaccaturas. *See* grace notes
- accidental duration rules [800](#)
 - changing [801](#)
 - common practice [800](#)
 - Modernist [800](#)
 - Second Viennese School [800](#)
- accidental spelling [245](#)
 - changing [473](#), [475](#), [476](#)
 - resetting [476](#)
- accidentals [792](#)
 - altered unisons. *See* altered unisons
 - appearance [793](#), [801](#)
 - arrows [1028](#)
 - brackets [793](#), [801](#), [1084](#)
 - cancellation [800](#), [802](#)
 - cautionary. *See* cautionary accidentals
 - changing [244](#), [279](#)
 - chord symbols [158](#), [163](#), [165](#), [320](#), [872](#), [877](#), [883](#)–[885](#)
 - chords [795](#)
 - collision avoidance [795](#), [797](#)
 - color [54](#), [795](#)
 - deleting [792](#)
 - duration rules. *See* accidental duration rules
 - enharmonic equivalents [473](#), [475](#), [476](#)
 - figured bass [399](#)
 - glissando lines [1115](#)
 - Gould arrows [1028](#)
 - guitar pre-bends [1130](#)
 - harmonics [1084](#)
 - harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
 - hiding [792](#), [793](#), [801](#), [802](#), [1084](#), [1098](#)
 - horn branch indicators [979](#)
 - inputting [214](#), [244](#), [279](#)
 - intervals [341](#), [487](#), [1099](#)
 - kerning [796](#)
 - key signatures [792](#), [1019](#), [1020](#), [1025](#)
 - layout names [183](#)
 - lines [1205](#)
- accidentals (*continued*)
 - microtonal [800](#)
 - MIDI input [245](#)
 - moving [797](#)
 - none [278](#), [793](#), [1021](#), [1084](#)
 - octave divisions [1028](#)
 - ornaments [1090](#), [1104](#)
 - panel [200](#), [281](#)
 - parentheses [793](#), [801](#), [1084](#)
 - part names [183](#)
 - piano roll editor [678](#), [681](#)
 - pitch before duration [214](#)
 - quarter tones [800](#), [1028](#)
 - respelling [473](#), [475](#), [476](#)
 - restating [800](#), [801](#)
 - showing [792](#), [793](#), [801](#), [1084](#), [1098](#)
 - signposts [450](#)
 - size [794](#), [877](#)
 - spacing [796](#)
 - stacking order [795](#), [797](#)
 - Stein-Zimmermann [1028](#)
 - text [388](#), [391](#), [657](#)
 - ties across breaks [793](#), [1370](#)
 - titles [657](#)
 - tokens [657](#)
 - transposing [470](#), [1025](#), [1027](#)
 - trills [1097](#)–[1099](#), [1102](#), [1104](#)
- accolades. *See* braces
- accompaniment
 - chords [251](#), [871](#), [878](#), [894](#), [895](#)
 - inputting [224](#), [227](#), [230](#), [232](#), [251](#)
 - playback [956](#)
- actions [767](#), [775](#)
- activating [63](#), [222](#), [450](#)
 - caret [222](#)
 - channel effects [722](#), [729](#)
 - chord input [196](#), [251](#)
 - dotted notes [196](#)
 - EQ [722](#)
 - force duration [196](#)
 - frames [503](#)
 - grace note input [196](#)
 - graphic editing [503](#)
 - graphic slices [503](#)
 - independent voice playback [545](#)
 - Insert mode [196](#), [237](#)
 - inserts [729](#)
 - instrument filters [448](#)
 - lock duration [196](#)
 - MIDI thru [216](#)
 - mouse editing [212](#)
 - mouse input [196](#), [212](#)
 - note input [222](#), [224](#), [227](#)
 - note spacing [503](#), [509](#)
 - pitch before duration [196](#)
 - playback [30](#), [540](#), [542](#), [558](#), [564](#)

- activating (*continued*)
player sorting 125
plug-ins 527
rest input 196
scissors 196
signposts 450
staff spacing 503, 624
system track 427
tuplet input 196
VST instruments 525, 527, 542
- adagio. *See* tempo marks
- add intervals popover. *See* note tools popover
- Add Marker dialog 402
- add-on switches 766, 774
- added notes
chord symbols 322
- adding. *See* inputting
- additional
endings 410, 412, 1230
voices 232, 1278, 1438
- additive time signatures. *See* time signatures
- advanced options
hiding 42
showing 42
- advancing
caret 223
chord symbols popover 325
figured bass popover 400
hairpins 430
lyrics popover 395
slurs 430
- aeolian
chord symbols 323, 885
scales 484, 485, 492
- aggregate time signatures 283, 1382
combining 1394
dashed barlines 283, 1382
inputting 283, 285, 287, 288
- aikin noteheads 1057, 1058
- air sounds. *See* playing techniques. *See also* diamond noteheads
- aliases
jump bar 67, 68
- alignment
arpeggio signs 1111
bar numbers 832
barlines 822
bars 612, 822, 1328
chord symbols 872, 878, 880, 881
counts 1242, 1243
crosshairs 517
dynamics 923, 924, 949–952
fermatas 1013–1015
fingerings 973
gradual dynamics 925
instrument names 184
items 517
lines 1197, 1205
lyrics 1035, 1037
measures 612, 1328
notes 1440, 1442, 1443. *See also* voice column index
octave line numerals 916, 917
- alignment (*continued*)
ornaments 1091
page numbers 1150
pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1166, 1167, 1169, 1170
playing techniques 1184, 1188, 1192
repeat counts 1242, 1243
repeat endings 1233
repeat markers 1237
rests 1271, 1274, 1275
rhythm dots 1062, 1442
staff labels 184, 1311, 1318
staves 604, 612, 621, 1311, 1328
systems 604, 612, 621, 1311, 1328
tempo marks 1336
text 389, 756, 759, 1356
time signatures 1394
trills 1092
voices 1440, 1442, 1443. *See also* voice column index
- allegretto. *See* tempo marks
- allocating. *See* assigning
- allowing. *See* activating. *See also* enabling
- alpha channel 586, 596
- alterations
chord symbols 322, 872
jazz ornaments 345
- altered bass notes 322, 872, 886
arrangement 887
inputting 318, 322
separator 872, 877, 887
- altered unisons 798
appearance 799
formatting 799
split stems 798
- alternating time signatures. *See* time signatures
- alto abbreviation
horn fingerings 979
- alto clef. *See* clefs
- ambience 529
- amp modeling 722, 728
- AmpSimulator 722, 728
- anacrusis. *See* pick-up bars
- analysis
chords 326
fugues 56, 956, 1194
harmony 957, 1194
- angles
beams 847, 859
borders 756, 1359
fanned beams 859
fingerings slides 986
glissando lines 514, 1115, 1119
hairpins 514, 938
jazz articulations 1147
lines 385, 514, 1194, 1202, 1215
pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1166, 1167
slurs 1287, 1302
string shift indicators 990
ties 1375
tremolos 1400
tuplet brackets 514, 1413

- annotations 218, 494, 597, 1196
 - comments 494
 - highlights 575, 882, 883, 1245, 1247, 1261, 1265
 - lines 1196
 - note/rest colors 54, 56, 549, 1064, 1275, 1439
 - ornaments. *See* ornaments
 - signposts 450
 - voice colors 54, 1439
- aperture
 - hairpins 937, 938, 945
 - messa di voce 938, 945
- apostrophes 659
- appearance
 - default settings 745, 747
 - items 663
 - resetting 436
- appending
 - crescendo 943
 - diminuendo 943
 - flows 78
 - possibile 934
 - subito 934
- Apply Space Template dialog 738
- Apply Stage Template dialog 731
- applying. *See* assigning. *See also* activating
- appoggiaturas. *See* grace notes
- Arabic numerals
 - page numbers 1151
- archaic accidental cancellation 802
- arco. *See* playing techniques
- areas
 - editing 37, 143, 1428
 - graphs 713
 - music 34
 - print preview 36
 - project start 34
 - selecting 424, 425, 427, 428, 676, 715
 - tools 37, 663
- arhythmic notes. *See* grace notes
- arms
 - vibrato. *See* vibrato bar
- arpeggio signs 1108, 1111, 1194
 - alignment 1111
 - appearance 1108–1110
 - beat-relative playback 1112
 - brackets 1108
 - changing 432
 - cross-staff 347, 348
 - crosshairs 517
 - curved 343
 - deleting 455
 - direction 1108
 - duration 1112, 1113
 - ends 1110
 - filter 429
 - fingerings 985
 - formatting 1109, 1110
 - grace notes 1111
 - handles 1111
 - inputting 340, 343, 347, 348
 - length 347, 348, 514, 1111
 - moving 461, 464, 514
 - muting in playback 548
 - arpeggio signs (*continued*)
 - panel 345, 348
 - playback 1112, 1113
 - popover 343, 347
 - position 1111
 - spacing 1111
 - swash 1108
 - ties 247
 - types 343, 1109
 - voices 347, 348
- arrangements
 - accidentals in key signatures 1020
 - chord symbols 872, 887
 - flows 171
 - movements 171
 - pages 41, 50
- arranger 75
 - adding 75
 - bold 75, 756
 - exporting 102
 - fonts 756
 - italics 75, 756
 - tokens 658
- arranging 455, 457
 - changing instruments 134
 - chord symbols 326, 327
 - condensing. *See* condensing
 - copying 457–459
 - filters 429, 445
 - MIDI import 85
 - pasting 459
 - reducing 643. *See also* condensing
 - tools 455, 477
 - transforming notes. *See* transformations
 - transposing. *See* transposing
 - voices 464, 466, 467
- arrows 1194
 - accidentals 1028
 - arpeggio signs 1108
 - caps 1191, 1207
 - design 1190
 - disclosure 42
 - lines 1196
 - noteheads 1055, 1058
 - panels 38, 44, 109
 - zones 38, 44, 109
- articulations 804, 1180
 - changing 271
 - collision avoidance 808
 - copying 805
 - deleting 805
 - duration 804, 809
 - dynamics 954
 - inputting 206, 214, 271, 272
 - inverting 808
 - jazz. *See* jazz articulations
 - key commands 272
 - kits 1426
 - MIDI import 88
 - moving 514, 807, 808
 - notes 806
 - order 806
 - overlapping 808

- articulations (*continued*)
 - panel 200
 - percussion 786, 1420, 1421, 1426
 - pitch before duration 214
 - placement 806, 808
 - playback 545, 546, 749, 762, 786–788, 809, 954
 - playing technique-specific noteheads 786
 - position 514, 805–807
 - slurs 806, 808, 1286
 - spacing 514
 - stems 806
 - ties 807, 809, 1364
 - tremolos 786
 - tuplets 271
 - types 804
 - artificial harmonics 1081
 - accidentals 1084
 - changing 1089
 - hiding 1082
 - partials 1083
 - pitch 1083
 - playback 1081–1083
 - showing 1082
 - styles 1085, 1089
 - assigning 63
 - expression maps to endpoints 522, 570
 - flows to layouts 121, 177
 - instruments to endpoints 569
 - key commands 63
 - MIDI commands 63
 - notehead designs 1058
 - notes to strings 1059
 - page templates 601
 - percussion kit voices 1260, 1435, 1436
 - percussion maps to endpoints 522, 570
 - players to flows 121, 172
 - players to layouts 121, 176
 - voices 232, 233, 466, 545, 1260, 1435, 1436
 - voices to endpoints 569
 - atonal key signatures 1021
 - note spelling 470
 - attacca 545, 818
 - attachment lines 24, 461, 514
 - caesuras 340
 - crosshairs 517
 - dynamics 944
 - hiding 437
 - playing techniques 1184, 1187, 1188, 1191
 - showing 437
 - text 1352
 - attachment points
 - chord symbol components 875
 - items 461, 514
 - lines 385–387, 1194, 1197
 - attack
 - articulations 804, 1365
 - delay 769
 - dynamics 312, 921
 - playback 761
 - tremolos 407, 414, 416, 1401
 - VST instruments 529
 - attribute playback techniques 787, 788
 - inputting 372, 788
 - audio
 - buffer size 268, 269
 - device setup 58
 - dialog 101
 - exporting 100, 101
 - mixer 717, 718
 - outputs in mixer 567
 - panning 726, 730, 735
 - playback 558, 564
 - repeats 549
 - reverb 738, 742, 744
 - videos 193
 - volume 193, 717, 718, 725
 - warning 38
 - auditioning
 - chords 216, 420, 542
 - MIDI devices 216, 264, 420
 - notes 215, 216, 264, 420, 542
 - scrub playback 542
 - augmented 487
 - accidentals 800
 - chord symbols 321, 872
 - intervals 341, 470, 487, 800, 1099, 1100
 - scales 484, 485, 492
 - trills 341, 1099, 1100
 - author name 494, 496
 - changing 499
 - hiding 499
 - lyricist 999
 - showing 499
 - sorting by 500
 - auto-save 103, 104
 - date and time 104
 - deleting projects 103
 - disabling 105
 - interval 105
 - recovering projects 104
 - automation lanes. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* Key Editor
 - AutoPan 722, 728
 - auxiliary notes 1102
 - notehead design 1058
 - position 1104
 - showing 1103
- ## B
- B paper sizes 593, 600
 - backgrounds 52
 - chord symbols 888
 - colors 53, 54, 756, 759
 - dynamics 930
 - erasing 888, 930, 985, 993, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
 - fingerings 985
 - gradients 54
 - lines 1213
 - pages 53
 - percussion legends 1433
 - playing techniques 1182
 - text 389, 756, 759, 1182, 1213, 1361

- backups 105
 - auto-save. *See* auto-save
 - location 106
 - number 105
- backwards 439
 - moving bars 633, 636
 - navigation 325, 395, 400, 439
 - pitched 478, 479, 490, 491
 - playback. *See* scrubbing
 - rhythms 478, 479, 490, 491
- balalaika. *See* fretted instruments
- balance
 - mix. *See* mixer
- ballroom
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
- bands 77
 - adding 71, 114
 - EQ 722
 - player order 110, 125
 - project templates 71, 77
 - staff grouping 866
 - stage templates 731
- banjo. *See* fretted instruments
- bar counts
 - multi-bar rests 828
- bar graphs 713
- bar numbers 826
 - alignment 832
 - alternative 838
 - appearance 826, 829
 - barlines 832
 - brackets 838
 - changing 836, 837
 - clefs 832
 - collision avoidance 832
 - colors 56
 - comments 494, 496, 497, 499, 500
 - counts 1254
 - default settings 826
 - deleting 836
 - enclosures 827
 - erased backgrounds 827
 - font 829, 830
 - frequency 826
 - galley view 40
 - gaps 832
 - guide 829
 - hiding 826, 829, 834, 837
 - layout options 826
 - moving 514, 832
 - multi-bar rests 826, 828
 - multiple positions 831
 - paragraph styles 830
 - parentheses 838
 - part layouts 829
 - pick-up bars 1386
 - position 831, 832, 1257
 - ranges 828, 1253. *See also* numbered bar regions
 - rehearsal marks 1218
 - repeat sections 838
 - returning to primary sequence 838
 - sequence changes 835
- bar numbers (*continued*)
 - showing 826, 829, 837
 - signposts 450
 - size 829, 830
 - staff-relative placement 831, 1257
 - statistics 106
 - subordinate 837
 - subsequent repeats 838
 - system-relative placement 834
 - time signatures 834
 - total. *See* counts
- bar repeats 1245, 1399
 - bar numbers 828
 - brackets 1247, 1249
 - casting off 629
 - changing 432, 1246
 - changing number 1248
 - colors 56
 - consolidating 1279
 - counts 1247–1250
 - deleting 455
 - dynamics 1246
 - erased backgrounds 1245
 - filter 429
 - font style 1247, 1250
 - frame breaks 637
 - frequency 1249
 - grouping 1251
 - handles 430
 - highlights 1245, 1247
 - inputting 408, 409, 418
 - length 430
 - moving 461, 464
 - moving counts 514
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - panel 409
 - parentheses 1247, 1249
 - phrase length 432, 1246
 - playback 432, 1246
 - popover 408
 - regions 1245
 - symbols 1251
 - system breaks 634
 - types 408
 - viewing options 1247
- bar rests 1277
 - counts 1279
 - cues 747, 920, 1274
 - deleting 1273, 1276
 - hiding 605, 1273, 1274, 1276–1278
 - inputting 246, 301
 - moving 1275
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - showing 605, 1274, 1277, 1278
 - slashes 1273
 - statistics 106
 - voices 1273, 1274, 1278
- barbershop quartet. *See* project templates
- barline joins 822, 824
 - default 824, 865, 866
 - hiding 820, 821, 824
- barline-attached lines. *See* lines

- barlines 815
- across staves 822, 824
 - alignment 822
 - bar numbers 832
 - caesuras 340
 - changing 306, 307, 816–819
 - chord symbols 880, 888
 - coda 820
 - copying 172
 - counts. *See* repeat counts
 - custom joins. *See* barline joins
 - dashed 816, 817, 819, 1382, 1394
 - default 817, 818
 - default settings 816
 - deleting 455, 824
 - double 816, 817, 819
 - dynamics 924–926, 930
 - end barlines 818, 819
 - fermatas 1015
 - final. *See* final barlines
 - frame breaks 633
 - gaps 888, 930, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
 - grace notes 1005
 - gradual tempo changes 1337
 - grand staff instruments 822, 824
 - hiding 283, 818–820, 888, 930, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1382, 1433
 - initial. *See* systemic barlines
 - inputting 300, 303, 306, 307, 813
 - joins. *See* barline joins
 - key signatures 819, 1022
 - length 822, 824
 - moving 455, 821
 - multi-bar rests 306
 - none 283, 818, 819, 1382
 - notation options 816
 - open meter 1382
 - panel 303, 307
 - popover 301, 303, 306
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - repeat. *See* repeat barlines
 - scale size 816, 817
 - short 816, 817, 819
 - signposts 306, 307, 450, 455, 815
 - single 816, 817, 819
 - staff grouping 822, 824, 866
 - system breaks 633, 819
 - systemic 820, 821
 - thickness 816, 817, 819
 - tick 816, 817, 819
 - time signatures 824, 1394
 - triple 303
 - tuplets 1411
 - types 303, 816
 - vocal staves 822, 824
- Baroque
- appoggiaturas 1002, 1009
 - figured bass. *See* figured bass
 - ornaments 345, 1090
 - trills 1104, 1107
 - tuning 545
- barré 1180
- adding 903
 - chord diagrams 895, 904
 - hiding 1183
 - inputting 367, 372, 374
- bars 14, 810
- alignment 612, 822, 1275, 1328
 - bar rests. *See* bar rests
 - beam grouping 24, 860, 861, 863
 - chord symbols 882
 - combining 455
 - count-in 268
 - deleting 301, 452, 810–812
 - deleting contents 812
 - display 555, 558
 - divisions 813
 - duration 810
 - expanding 304, 305, 452, 453
 - fixing number 629, 630, 635, 638
 - frame breaks 633, 636
 - frames 106
 - gaps 1242, 1328
 - glissando lines 1116
 - going to 441
 - graphs 713
 - grouping. *See* bar repeats. *See also* multi-bar rests
 - half-bar 747, 860, 863
 - height 602–604, 621
 - inputting 300, 301, 303–305, 451
 - Insert mode 451
 - length 452, 810
 - moving 631, 633–637
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - navigation 441
 - note grouping 24, 860, 861, 863, 1262
 - numbers 826
 - panel 303, 305
 - pick-up bars 1386
 - playback 540, 555
 - popover 301, 304
 - red 453, 454
 - repeat 1230, 1236, 1245
 - rest alignment 1275
 - rests. *See* bar rests
 - rhythm slashes 1261, 1262
 - selecting 421, 422, 424, 427
 - size 451, 452, 507, 602, 603, 612, 621, 810, 1328
 - spacing 507, 509, 813, 1199, 1276
 - splitting 633, 634, 636, 637, 813
 - system breaks 633
 - timecodes 1228
 - tuplets 1411
 - upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
 - vibrato. *See* vibrato bar. *See also* guitar
 - width 507, 509, 612, 813, 1276, 1328
- Bars and Barlines panel 303, 305, 307
- Bartók pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
- base switches 766, 774
- baseline
- attachment points 875
 - chord symbols 872
 - dynamics 939
 - instrument names 184

- baseline (*continued*)
 lyrics 1039, 1044
 staff labels 184
 text 389, 759
- bass clef. *See* clefs
- bass drum. *See* unpitched percussion
- bass guitar. *See* fretted instruments
- bass notes
 altered 318, 322
 counterpoint 956
 figured bass. *See* figured bass
- bassoon. *See* instruments
- beam corners 855
- beam groups 23, 840, 841, 860
 creating 841
 cut common time 863
 default settings 747, 840
 defining 840, 861
 half-bar 840
 notation options 840
 pick-up bars 1386
 resetting 844
 selecting 421, 422
 stem directions 1076
 time signatures 841
- beam lines
 direction 855
 gaps 857
 number 856
 thickness 845
- beam slants 847
 changing 847
 grace notes 1008
- beaming 840, 841, 859
 accidentals 800
 angles 847, 859
 centered beams 848, 849
 corners 855
 cross-staff. *See* cross-staff beams
 default settings 840
 direction 845–847, 855
 fanned 859
 gaps 857
 grace notes 1008
 grouping 840, 841, 860, 863. *See also* beat groups
 half-bar 840, 861
 handles 847
 hiding 1079
 inverting 845, 846
 large pitch ranges 1008
 lyrics 843
 meter 861
 multiple staves. *See* cross-staff beams
 notation options 840
 notes 841
 optical cross-staff spacing 852
 partial 855
 placement 845, 851, 854, 1078
 primary beams 855
 resetting 844, 846, 850, 854
 restating accidentals 800
 rests 840, 841, 858
 secondary beams 855, 856
- beaming (*continued*)
 slants 847, 1008
 slashes 1263
 spacing 852
 splitting 747, 840, 843, 860, 863
 staff-relative placement 845, 846
 stem direction 845, 849, 851, 853, 1078
 stemlets. *See* stemlets
 tablature 1331
 thickness 845
 ties 247
 time signatures 841, 861
 tuplets 840, 843, 844, 858, 860, 1412
 unbeaming 843
 vocal staves 843
- beat groups 23, 840, 860
 cut common time 863
 defining 283, 861
 numerators 1389
 rhythm slashes 1262
 ties 1364
 time signatures 1389, 1390
- beat units 1341
 deleting beats 302
 inputting beats 302
 metronome marks 432, 1342
 setting 296
 tempo marks 294
 tuplets 257
- beats
 deleting 302, 452, 810–812
 display 555, 558
 inputting 302, 304, 305, 451, 452
 Insert mode 451, 452
 per minute 1341
 pick-up. *See* pick-up bars
 popover 302
 recording latency 268, 269
 relative position 436
 selecting 428
- beep. *See* click
- bend intervals 1128
 handles 1131, 1133–1135
 microtonal 1128
- bends
 guitar. *See* guitar bends. *See also* dives
 jazz. *See* jazz articulations. *See also* jazz ornaments
 vibrato. *See* vibrato bar
- big band. *See* bands. *See also* jazz
- bindings. *See* ties. *See also* laissez vibrer ties
- birds eyes. *See* fermatas
- bit depths 100, 101
- black and white 596
- black noteheads 1052, 1053
- blank areas. *See* erased backgrounds
- blank pages
 deleting 651
 staff spacing changes 624
- blank staves
 adding 124, 128, 133
 after flows 608
 hiding 605, 608
 showing 605, 608

- blog 69
- blue selections 951, 1297
- Blues guitar post-bends 1125
- body
 - changing 1206
 - lines 1194, 1196, 1206
 - playing technique continuation lines 1188, 1190
- bold text 389, 753, 754, 756, 759, 1352
 - chord symbols 877
 - composer 75, 756
 - dedication 75, 756
 - figured bass 968
 - fingerings 979
 - instrument change labels 142
 - lyricist 75, 756
 - lyrics 1041, 1042
 - Markdown 75
 - project information 75, 756
 - rehearsal marks 1219
 - repeat endings 1233
 - subtitles 75, 756
 - tasto solo 968
 - tempo marks 1339
 - titles 75, 756
- bomb
 - dive. *See* dives
- bongos. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* percussion kits
- booklets 591
 - duplex printing 592
 - printing 590, 591
- borders 597, 1358
 - bar numbers 827
 - chord symbols 888
 - exporting 585
 - fingerings 977
 - harp pedaling 1156–1158
 - instrument change labels 142, 756
 - layout names 1001
 - lines 1212
 - padding 756, 888, 1158, 1360
 - part names 756
 - printing 581
 - shape 756, 827, 1359
 - style 756, 1359
 - tacets 640, 756
 - text 756, 1212, 1358, 1359
 - thickness 1157, 1212, 1360
- Boston chord symbols 872
- bottom zone. *See* lower zone
- bowing. *See* playing techniques. *See also* slurs
- boxes. *See* borders. *See also* frames
- bpm 1341
 - changing 709, 1342
- braces 864
 - hiding 820, 865, 867, 868
 - secondary brackets 868, 869
 - showing 820, 865, 867, 868
 - signposts 450
 - staff spacing 603, 604, 621
- bracketed noteheads 1066, 1067, 1141
 - changing type 1067
 - chords 1066, 1067, 1070
- bracketed noteheads (*continued*)
 - curve 1071
 - formatting 1071
 - gaps 1102
 - ghost notes 1067
 - guitar bends 1122, 1124
 - handles 1072
 - hiding 1067
 - inputting 1067
 - length 514, 1072
 - moving 514, 1071, 1072
 - percussion 1067
 - playback 1067
 - shape 1071, 1072
 - showing 1067
 - slurs 1072
 - splitting 1070
 - tablature 1066, 1067, 1122, 1127
 - tie chains 1069
 - ties 1072
 - ties on tablature 1069, 1364
 - trills 1102
 - vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
 - width 1071
- brackets 864
 - accidentals 793, 801, 1084
 - arpeggio signs 1108
 - bar numbers 838
 - bar repeats 1247, 1249, 1254, 1256
 - barlines 822, 824
 - capo chord symbols 158, 872
 - chord symbols. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
 - counts 1249, 1256, 1267
 - divisi 865, 866, 868, 869, 1194, 1329
 - dynamics 929
 - ensemble types 77, 866
 - figured bass 397, 960, 963
 - fingerings 274, 276, 980, 981, 983
 - grouping 167, 865, 866, 1317
 - guitar bends 1122, 1124
 - harmonics 1085
 - hiding 820, 865, 868
 - hold lines 963
 - horizontal. *See* lines
 - instrument transpositions 1315
 - layouts 865
 - metronome marks 1341, 1343
 - moving 893, 1072
 - noteheads. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - numbered bar regions 1254, 1256
 - pedal lines 1175, 1176
 - player groups 167, 824, 1317
 - playing techniques 1188
 - project templates 77
 - repeat endings 1230, 1232, 1234
 - secondary 868, 869
 - showing 820, 865, 868
 - signposts 450
 - size 892
 - slash regions 1267
 - staff labels 1315
 - staff spacing 603, 621
 - staves 865, 866, 1317

- brackets (*continued*)
- sub-brackets 868, 869
 - sub-sub-brackets 870
 - tablature 1085, 1122, 1124, 1127
 - templates 77
 - tempo marks 1341, 1343
 - thickness 891
 - time signatures 283, 1388, 1389, 1392
 - tuplets 1413
 - vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
- Brandt-Roemer chord symbols 872
- brass band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
- brass instruments 130
- adding 112, 114, 124, 128, 133
 - brackets 866, 1317
 - chord symbols 878
 - fingerings 971, 979, 989
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - groups 167
 - horn branch indicators 979, 990
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - player order 110, 125
 - playing techniques 371
 - project templates 77
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - system objects 1327
 - transposition 112, 132
- Bravura music font 753
- breaking
- multi-bar rests 1279, 1281
 - notes 261
 - tie chains 261, 1373
- breaks
- frame 636
 - page 636
 - playback 545, 1016
 - system 633
- breath marks 1010–1012
- appearance 432
 - caesuras 1013
 - colors 56
 - Curlew marks 1013
 - deleting 455
 - fermatas 1013
 - inputting 337–339
 - moving 461, 464, 514
 - multiple at same position 1013
 - placement 1013
 - playback 1016
 - position 1013
 - types 432, 1012
- breves. *See* double whole notes
- Brickwall Limiter 722, 728
- Britten Curlew. *See* fermatas. *See also* breath marks
- Broadcast WAVE format 101
- broken beams 855
- buffer
- audio 268, 269
- building ensembles 114, 129
- bypassing 722, 729. *See also* muting
- ## C
- C clef. *See* clefs
- cadenzas 283, 304, 305, 452, 453, 810, 1382
- system dividers 1324
- caesuras 1010, 1012
- appearance 432
 - breath marks 1013
 - colors 56
 - Curlew marks 1013
 - deleting 455
 - fermatas 1013
 - gaps 1013
 - gradual tempo changes 1016
 - inputting 337–340
 - linking 1013
 - moving 461, 514
 - multiple at same position 1013
 - placement 1013
 - playback 1016, 1018
 - position 340, 1013
 - types 432, 1012
- calando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
- calculating
- chord symbols 326, 327
 - harp pedaling 381
 - stacking 518, 795
 - statistics 106
 - tempo marks 403
 - values 666
- cancellation
- accidentals 800, 802
 - double accidentals 802
 - key signatures 1023
 - naturals 1023
- candidate menus
- playing techniques popover 367
 - tempo popover 293
- cantabile. *See* dynamic modifiers
- Capo Chord Symbol Definition dialog 163
- Capo Definition dialog 160
- capos 157
- adding 159, 160
 - alignment 880, 881
 - chord symbols 157, 158, 162–164, 166, 872, 880, 881
 - defining 159–163, 165
 - deleting 161, 163
 - gaps 158, 872
 - hiding 163, 164, 166
 - italics 158, 872
 - notation staves 161, 162
 - parentheses 158, 872
 - partial 159, 160
 - position 163, 881
 - tablature 157, 159–161
- caps 1186, 1196
- arrows 1191, 1207
 - changing 1191, 1207
 - continuation 1196
 - lines 1196
 - playing technique continuation lines 1188, 1191

- capsule
 - borders 756, 1359
- cards
 - disclosure arrows 42
 - flows 120
 - layouts 117
 - players 110
 - timecodes 120
- caret 218
 - activating 196, 222
 - advancing 223
 - chords 218, 251
 - color 54
 - deactivating 196, 222
 - extending 222, 235
 - grace notes 218, 249
 - inputting vs. editing 210
 - Insert mode 218, 237
 - lock duration 218
 - moving 217, 223, 1409
 - multiple staves 222, 235
 - percussion kits 238
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - slash voices 218
 - slashes 233
 - tablature 218
 - types 218
 - voice indicator 218, 232, 931
- casting off 629
 - bars per system 629, 635
 - copying to other layouts 643
 - flows 501, 609
 - locking 629–631
 - moving bars 631
 - note spacing 507, 508
 - resetting 632
 - staff spacing 603, 620, 621
 - systems per frame 630, 638
- categories
 - ensembles 114, 116, 129
 - lines 385, 1194
 - noteheads 1053, 1057
 - project templates 77
 - templates 71, 866
- cautionary 1024
 - accidentals. *See* cautionary accidentals
 - key signatures. *See* cautionary key signatures
 - time signatures. *See* cautionary time signatures
- cautionary accidentals 800, 801
 - color 54, 795
 - common practice 801
 - hiding 793, 801, 1084
 - Modernist 800
 - parentheses 800, 801
 - showing 793, 801, 1084
 - tie chains 793, 1084, 1370
 - trills 1098
- cautionary clefs 907
- cautionary fingering 980
 - hiding 981
 - parentheses 981
 - showing 981
- cautionary key signatures 1024
 - hiding 1025
 - showing 1025
- cautionary time signatures 1384
 - hiding 1384
 - showing 1384
- CC64
 - pedal lines 91, 268, 270
- cello. *See* instruments
- center selection 50
- centered beams 848
 - creating 849
 - removing 850
- centered text
 - bar numbers 832
 - hairpins 935
- centimeters
 - staff spacing 624
 - unit of measurement 51
- chains
 - frames 662
 - ties 1364
- chamber
 - ensembles 77, 114, 116, 128, 730
 - panning. *See* space templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
- change labels
 - instruments. *See* instrument change labels
- Change Paragraph Style dialog 1356
- channel change actions 522, 567, 570, 775
- channels 717, 720, 721
 - adding 727
 - bypassing inserts 729
 - changing 569
 - controls 720, 722
 - effects. *See* FX channels
 - endpoints 567
 - expression maps 522, 567, 570, 775. *See also* channel change actions
 - FX. *See* FX channels
 - height 724
 - hiding 724
 - importing 91
 - inserts 722, 728, 729
 - instruments 569, 720, 721
 - meter 720
 - MIDI 91, 720, 721
 - mixer 717, 718, 720–722, 728
 - muting 547
 - names 728
 - panning 726, 730
 - percussion maps 522, 567, 570
 - playback 567
 - plug-ins 567
 - renaming 728
 - reverb 729, 738
 - scrolling 724
 - setup 567
 - showing 724
 - soloing 547
 - strips 717, 718, 722
 - video 721
 - volume 725

- character styles 753, 759
 - creating 760
 - deleting 759
 - dialog 759
 - missing fonts 73
 - saving as default 759
- Character Styles dialog 759
- cherry stalks. *See* split stems
- choir templates 71, 77, 731
 - staff grouping 866
- Choose Chord Diagram dialog 903
- choral
 - lyrics 1029
 - playing techniques 371
 - verse numbers 1049
- chord brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also* parenthesized chord symbols
- chord diagrams 871, 894
 - barré 895, 904
 - changing 902, 903
 - colors 903, 904
 - components 895
 - copying shapes 902
 - custom 903
 - dots 903, 904
 - editing 903
 - fingerings 895, 900, 901, 903, 904
 - font styles 906
 - formatting 903, 904
 - fret numbers 900, 901, 903, 904, 906
 - gaps 898
 - grid 898, 900
 - hiding 895, 897, 898, 900
 - inputting 895, 897
 - nut 895
 - omitted strings 895, 904
 - open strings 895, 904
 - resetting 901, 904
 - rows 898, 900, 901
 - shapes 902–904
 - showing 895, 897, 898, 900
 - size 898
 - symbols. *See* chord symbols
 - thumb 900, 901, 904
 - tuning 154, 156, 898, 902
- chord input 254
 - activating 196, 251
 - arpeggio signs 347
 - caret 218
 - exploding 235
 - multiple staves 235
 - register selection 226
 - tablature 242, 251
- chord symbol components 872
 - appearance 872
 - attachment points 875
 - custom 875
 - handles 873, 875
 - inputting 320
 - popover 320
 - types 872
- chord symbol regions 882
 - handles 430, 882
 - hiding 878, 880
 - highlights 883
 - inputting 324, 326
 - length 430
 - moving 461, 464
 - popover 324
 - showing 878, 880
- chord symbols 251, 871
 - accidentals 158, 163, 165, 320, 872, 877, 883, 884
 - added notes 322
 - alignment 872, 878, 880, 881, 887
 - alterations 872
 - altered bass notes 318, 877, 887
 - appearance 872, 873, 875
 - arrangement 887
 - backgrounds 888
 - barlines 880, 888
 - brackets. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
 - capos 157, 158, 163, 164, 166, 872
 - changing 432, 872
 - colors 56, 875
 - components. *See* chord symbol components
 - copying 425, 878–881
 - crosshairs 517
 - custom 873, 875
 - default settings 872
 - deleting 455, 878
 - diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
 - dialog 873, 875
 - engraving options 872
 - enharmonic spelling 157, 158, 163–166, 872, 884, 885
 - erased backgrounds 872, 888
 - figured bass 395, 397
 - filter 429
 - fonts 877
 - gaps 158, 872
 - generating 326, 327
 - global 871
 - height 881, 887
 - hiding 326, 878–880, 882, 886, 897
 - highlights 883
 - inputting 318, 320, 325–327, 878
 - instruments 318, 878, 880
 - intervals 322
 - inversions 318
 - italics 158, 872, 877
 - layouts 879
 - local 871
 - main 158
 - MIDI input 318
 - MIDI navigation 63
 - modal 323, 885
 - moving 461, 514, 880–882
 - MusicXML import 893
 - navigation during input 325
 - no chord 323
 - note spacing 880
 - omissions 322
 - padding 872, 888, 893
 - parentheses. *See* parenthesized chord symbols

- chord symbols (*continued*)
- pitch 178
 - placement 882
 - playback 522, 535, 536
 - players 318, 878, 880
 - polychords 318, 323, 887
 - popover 320
 - position 872, 878, 880, 881, 887
 - quality 318, 872, 886
 - regions. *See* chord symbol regions
 - roots 318, 320, 872, 886
 - selecting 421, 425, 427–429
 - separators 877, 887
 - showing 318, 326, 878–880, 882, 886, 897
 - signposts 450, 871, 882
 - size 433, 877, 887, 892
 - slash regions 878, 882, 1261
 - spacing 880, 881
 - spelling 157, 158, 163–166, 872, 884, 885
 - staff-relative placement 882
 - staves 318, 878, 880
 - suspensions 322
 - systems 880, 881
 - track. *See* chords track
 - transposing 158, 161–166, 178, 469, 470, 871, 883
 - transposing instruments 158, 178, 884, 885
 - types 320, 872
 - viewing options 883
 - voicing 318, 536
- Chord Symbols Options dialog 872
- chords 251, 871
- accidentals 795, 797
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - auditioning 216
 - bracketed noteheads 1066, 1067, 1070
 - brackets 889
 - building 258, 488
 - caret 218, 223, 251
 - collision avoidance 795, 797
 - dense 796
 - exploding 235
 - figured bass 395, 397, 957, 969
 - fingerings 985
 - grace notes 249–251
 - guitar bends 1122, 1125
 - identifying 38, 326
 - inputting 196, 235, 251, 258, 488
 - inverting 478
 - lines 235, 347–350, 386, 387
 - moving 478, 480
 - parentheses 889
 - pitch mappings 482
 - playback 535, 540, 545, 548, 1260
 - post-bends 1125
 - register selection 226
 - reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rolled. *See* arpeggio signs
 - rotating 480
 - scale mapping 484
 - selecting 421, 422
 - stem directions 1075. *See also* voices
 - symbols. *See* chord symbols. *See also* chord diagrams
- chords (*continued*)
- tablature 227, 242, 1067, 1069
 - ties 247, 1369
 - track. *See* chords track
 - transformations 477
 - velocity 692. *See also* Velocity editor
 - vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
 - voices 232, 1438
- chords track 535
- hiding 536
 - showing 536
- Chorus 722, 728
- chorus lyrics 1029
- changing lines to 1048
 - changing lyrics to 1030
 - paragraph styles 1041
 - popover 394
- chromatic glissando 1115
- playback 1119, 1120
- church
- panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
- circa
- tempo marks 1343
- circle
- bar number enclosures 827
 - chord symbols 872
 - fingerings 977
 - hairpins. *See* niente
 - harmonics 1085, 1087
 - noteheads 1053, 1058, 1421, 1424, 1425
 - itches 480, 481, 491
 - playing techniques 371, 1180
 - rhythms 480, 481, 491
 - string indicators 993
 - tapping 1138
- clarinet. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- clash cymbals. *See* unpitched percussion
- Classical
- ornaments 345
 - trills 1104, 1107
- classical guitar. *See* fretted instruments
- clefs 907
- bar numbers 832
 - cautionary 907
 - changing 112, 332, 333
 - colors 56
 - deleting 455
 - filter 429
 - gaps 907, 909
 - grace notes 908
 - guitar 132, 913
 - hiding 332, 333, 910, 911
 - Indian drum 333, 1436
 - inputting 329–333
 - instrument changes 138
 - instruments 112
 - key signatures 1022
 - layouts 910
 - moving 138, 461, 464, 908, 909
 - multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 - octave indicators 330, 912, 913

- clefs (*continued*)
 - overrides 112, 332, 333
 - panel 333
 - popover 329, 330, 332
 - position 213, 908
 - restorative 332, 333
 - showing 910, 911
 - signposts 450, 910
 - spacing 909
 - ties 1371
 - tokens 657
 - transposing instruments 112
 - transposition 330, 910, 912, 913
 - types 330
- Clefs panel 331, 333
- click 267, 555
 - count-in 264, 268
 - disabling 540
 - enabling 540
 - MIDI recording 264
 - mixer 717, 718
 - playback 267, 532, 533, 540
 - reverb 739, 741
 - settings 267
 - sound 267, 532, 533
 - volume 725
- clipping 725
- closing. *See* opening
- CMYK processing 596
- coda 1236
 - barlines 820
 - brackets 820
 - font 1237
 - gap 513, 1241, 1242, 1327
 - hiding 1240
 - indent 513, 1241, 1242, 1327
 - inputting 413, 414
 - mid-system gap 1236, 1241, 1242
 - multiple 1237
 - sections 1236
 - showing 1240
 - size 1237
- codec 189
- codes 655
 - time 1226
- col legno. *See* playing techniques
- collision avoidance
 - accidentals 795–797
 - articulations 808
 - bar numbers 832
 - barlines 888, 930
 - chord symbols 888
 - clefs 832
 - dynamics 922, 924, 930
 - flow headings 614
 - galley view 623
 - lines 1199
 - margins 614
 - notehead brackets 1072
 - playing techniques 1185
 - slurs 1287, 1295
 - staves 603, 604, 621, 623, 624
 - text 1357
- collision avoidance (*continued*)
 - ties 1364, 1377
 - titles 614
- colon
 - dynamics 309, 928
 - tuplets 1416
- colored regions 531, 575, 883, 1247, 1261, 1265
 - Dynamics editor 694
 - exporting 597
 - hiding 437
 - MIDI CC editor 701
 - MIDI Pitch Bend editor 700
 - percussion editor 679
 - piano roll editor 678
 - Playing Techniques editor 690
 - printing 597
 - Tempo editor 706, 708
 - tempo track 532
 - Transform tool 713
- colors 52
 - accidentals 54, 795
 - background 54, 55
 - bar numbers 56
 - bar repeats 56, 1247
 - breath marks 56
 - caesuras 56
 - caret 54
 - cautionary accidentals 54, 795
 - chord diagrams 903, 904
 - chord symbols 56, 875, 883
 - clefs 56
 - comments 56
 - dark theme 52
 - dynamics 56
 - exporting 586
 - fermatas 56
 - graphics 586, 596
 - holds 56
 - instrument change labels 142
 - instrument names 184, 1318
 - instruments 531, 678, 679, 732, 733, 736
 - inverting 55
 - light theme 52
 - lines 56
 - lyrics 56, 1041
 - markers 56
 - MIDI trigger regions 575
 - mixer 721
 - monochrome 596
 - muted 549
 - note ranges 54, 1064
 - noteheads 56, 1057
 - notes 54, 56, 549, 1439
 - ornaments 56
 - pages 53, 55
 - pedal lines 56
 - piano roll editor 678, 679
 - Play mode 531
 - playhead 54
 - playing techniques 56
 - rehearsal marks 56, 1219
 - resetting 53, 54, 56
 - rests 56, 1275

- colors (*continued*)
 - rhythmic grid [54](#)
 - slash regions [1261](#), [1265](#)
 - slurs [56](#)
 - staff labels [184](#), [1318](#)
 - stage templates [732](#), [733](#), [736](#)
 - tablature [54](#), [56](#), [1064](#), [1330](#), [1332](#)
 - tempo marks [56](#)
 - text [56](#), [389](#), [756](#), [759](#)
 - time signatures [56](#)
 - tracks [531](#), [678](#), [679](#)
 - trills [56](#)
 - tuplets [56](#)
 - voices [54](#), [531](#), [678](#), [679](#), [1438](#), [1439](#)
 - windows [52](#)
- columns
 - accidentals [795](#), [797](#)
 - figured bass [957](#)
 - lines [1199](#)
 - markers [402](#)
 - missing fonts [73](#)
 - videos [402](#)
 - voices [1440](#), [1442](#)
- combinations
 - part layouts [176](#)
 - playback techniques [773](#), [777](#), [786](#)
 - tremolos [786](#)
- combined dynamics. *See* dynamics
- combining. *See* consolidation
- comma
 - breath marks. *See* breath marks
- commands
 - jump bar [65](#), [67](#)
 - key commands [60](#), [63](#)
 - MIDI [60](#), [63](#)
- Comment dialog [495](#)
- comments [450](#), [494](#), [1066](#)
 - adding [497](#), [498](#)
 - authors [494](#), [499](#)
 - bar numbers [496](#), [497](#), [499](#)
 - changing [499](#)
 - colors [56](#)
 - date [496](#), [499](#)
 - deleting [455](#), [496](#)
 - dialog [495](#)
 - display [496](#), [499](#)
 - exporting [500](#), [585](#), [597](#)
 - flows [496](#), [499](#)
 - hiding [501](#)
 - initials [494](#), [499](#)
 - instruments [496](#), [499](#)
 - list [496](#), [499](#)
 - order [500](#)
 - panel [496](#), [499](#)
 - printing [500](#), [581](#), [597](#)
 - replying [498](#)
 - showing [501](#)
 - sorting [500](#)
- common practice
 - accidental duration rule [800](#)
- common practice accidental duration rule [801](#)
- common time. *See* time signatures
- components
 - articulations [805](#)
 - chord diagrams [895](#)
 - chord symbols [320](#), [872](#), [875](#)
 - lines [1196](#)
 - playing technique continuation lines [1188](#)
 - tempo marks [1339](#)
- composer [69](#), [75](#), [998](#)
 - adding [998](#)
 - bold [75](#), [756](#)
 - exporting [102](#)
 - first pages [648](#), [997](#)
 - flow headings [651–653](#)
 - fonts [756](#), [998](#)
 - italics [75](#), [756](#)
 - tokens [658](#)
- compound figured bass intervals [395](#), [397](#), [969](#)
- compound time signatures [1382](#)
 - beam grouping [840](#), [1262](#)
 - inputting [283](#), [285](#), [287](#), [288](#)
 - note grouping [860](#), [1262](#)
 - rhythm slashes [1262](#)
- compressed MusicXML [83](#), [84](#)
- Compressor [722](#), [728](#), [744](#)
- con sordino. *See* playing techniques
- concert band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
- concert hall
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
- concert pitch [178](#)
 - clefs [330](#), [910](#), [912](#)
 - exporting [585](#)
 - input pitch [215](#)
 - instrument transpositions [1314](#)
 - layouts [174](#), [178](#), [581](#), [585](#), [656](#), [1000](#)
 - printing [581](#)
 - staff labels [1309](#), [1314](#)
 - status bar [38](#)
 - tokens [656](#), [1000](#)
 - viewing [178](#)
- concertina dragging [627](#)
- concertos
 - cadenzas [452](#), [453](#), [1382](#)
 - movements. *See* flows
 - soloists [127](#)
- condensing [603–605](#), [643](#), [1329](#)
 - divisi [1320](#)
 - extra staves [1323](#)
 - fonts [756](#), [1318](#), [1320](#)
 - ossia staves [1323](#)
 - paragraph styles [1318](#), [1320](#)
 - percussion. *See* percussion kits
 - signposts [450](#)
 - staff labels [1318](#), [1320](#)
- conditions
 - expression maps [768](#), [777](#)
- conductor score. *See* condensing. *See also* layouts
- configurations
 - accidentals [797](#), [800](#), [1020](#)
 - endpoints [567](#), [571–573](#)
 - Key Editor [675](#), [715](#), [716](#)
 - key signatures [1020](#)
 - playback [58](#), [558](#)

- connecting. *See* linking
- consecutive
- dynamics 313, 315, 940, 945, 949, 954
 - guitar bends 1122, 1127
 - MIDI CC 713–715
 - notes 224, 472, 477, 713–715
 - rests 1279
 - velocity 713–715
- consolidation 643
- aggregate time signatures 1394
 - bar repeats 1279
 - bars 455
 - breath marks 1013
 - caesuras 1013
 - fermatas 1013–1015
 - flows 78
 - notes 254, 466, 1440
 - part layouts 176
 - players 168, 176, 643
 - rests 747, 1272–1274, 1278, 1279
 - rhythm dots 1062
 - staff labels 150, 151, 1319, 1320
 - staves. *See* condensing
 - stems 143, 1435, 1436, 1438
 - time signatures 1394
 - voices 143, 466, 643, 1435, 1436, 1438, 1440, 1442, 1443
- constant points 697, 704, 706
- inputting 696, 703, 708
- contents
- bars 812
 - front matter 997
 - lines 1188, 1196
 - playing techniques 1188
 - table 997
 - tempo marks 1338, 1340, 1345
- continuation caps 1196
- continuation lines 1186, 1194
- angles 1163
 - caps 1191
 - duration 1187
 - dynamics 309, 921, 926, 937, 939, 940
 - figured bass 961
 - hiding 1347
 - inputting 367, 372, 374
 - pedal lines 1161, 1163, 1171, 1173–1175, 1177, 1178
 - playing techniques 1186, 1189–1192
 - slurs across breaks 1287
 - tempo marks 1337, 1345, 1347
 - thickness 1175, 1349
- continuation signs 1176
- lines 1196
 - parentheses 1175
 - playing technique continuation lines 1188
 - text 1177
- continuous
- bar counts 1248, 1255
 - beams across staves 851
 - controller 775
 - hairpins 940
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - view 40, 50, 667, 678, 679
- contrabass. *See* instruments
- contracting. *See* expanding
- contrapuntal. *See* counterpoint
- control change actions 767, 775
- control points
- handles 1288, 1306, 1379
 - slurs 1300, 1301
 - ties 1374, 1375, 1379
- controllers
- expression maps 761
 - MIDI. *See* MIDI controllers
- conventions
- accidentals 792, 800, 1020, 1028
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - breath marks 1013
 - caesuras 1013
 - cues 920
 - dynamics 922
 - ensembles 77
 - fermatas 1013
 - fingerings 971
 - grace notes 1002
 - harp pedaling 1158
 - key signatures 1020, 1022
 - lyrics 1035
 - middle C 51
 - ornaments 1091
 - pauses 1012
 - pedal lines 1167
 - playing techniques 1184
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - rests 1271
 - tempo marks 1336
 - tremolos 1400
 - trills 1091
 - voices 1440
- converting
- grace notes into normal notes 1004
 - layouts to graphics files 585
 - notes into grace notes 1004
 - notes into tuplets 1410
 - PDF 585
 - tuplets into normal notes 1410
- copies
- printing multiple 581
- Copy Staff Spacing dialog 628
- copying 455, 457–459
- articulations 805
 - barlines 172
 - beams 854
 - chord diagram shapes 902
 - Chord mode 254
 - chord symbols 425, 878–881
 - dynamics 457, 460, 676, 699, 951
 - flows 78, 172
 - frames 647, 648
 - Insert mode 451
 - instruments 125
 - lyrics 1032
 - MIDI 460, 676, 705
 - notes 457–459, 686, 805, 854
 - page formatting 645
 - page templates 647, 648

- copying (*continued*)
 - part formatting 643
 - pitchs 482, 491
 - players 125
 - playing techniques 1189
 - points 676
 - properties 646
 - slurs 460, 805
 - staff spacing 628
 - system objects 425, 1327
 - tempo marks 457, 676
 - text 58, 457
 - tremolos 854
- copyright 75, 999
 - adding 999
 - bold 75, 756
 - exporting 102
 - first pages 648
 - fonts 756, 999
 - italics 75, 756
 - tokens 658
- cor anglais. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing
- instruments
- corners
 - beaming 855
 - crop marks 597
- count-in
 - duration 264, 268
 - metronome click 264, 268
- counterpart layout 43
- counterpoint 246
 - bar rests 246, 1278
 - MIDI import 88
 - MIDI recording 264
 - playback 956
 - voices 232, 1438
- counts 1247
 - bar numbers 828, 838, 1386
 - bar repeats 1247–1249
 - barlines 1242
 - bars 419, 1247, 1253, 1254, 1256, 1265
 - frames 1226
 - hiding 1243, 1249, 1256, 1267
 - lyrics 1043
 - moving 514, 1243, 1257, 1267
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - numbered bar regions 419, 1254–1256
 - page numbers 659
 - pick-up bars 1386
 - placement 1257, 1267
 - ranges 828, 1254, 1256
 - repeats 551, 838, 1230, 1242, 1243
 - rhythm slashes 1265–1267
 - staff-relative placement 1257, 1267
 - statistics 106
 - timecodes 1226
- courtesy. *See* cautionary
- cowbell. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
- crash cymbals. *See* unpitched percussion
- creating. *See* inputting
- crescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
- crop marks 597
 - exporting 585
 - printing 581
- cross noteheads 1054, 1058
 - dead notes 1141
 - percussion 1421, 1424, 1425
 - resetting 1059
- cross stick. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
- cross-staff
 - arpeggio signs 347, 348
 - beams 851–854, 1078
 - lines 386, 387
 - overlapping notes 1440
 - resetting 854
 - slurs 273, 430, 461, 464, 1287, 1294
 - spacing 852
 - stems 851, 854, 1078
 - ties 247, 1371
 - tremolos 851, 854
- cross-voice
 - arpeggio signs 347, 348
 - lines 386, 387
 - slurs 273, 430, 461, 464, 1294
 - ties 247, 1371
- crosshairs 517
- crotchets. *See* quarter notes
- crushed notes. *See* grace notes
- CSV files 102
- Cubase
 - expression maps 761, 779
 - instrument names 1310
 - staff labels 1310
- cue labels
 - moving 514
 - staff-relative placement 434
- cues 920
 - bar rests 747, 1274
 - deleting 455
 - instrument changes 138
 - moving 464
 - rests 747
 - signposts 450
 - spacing 507
 - staves 618
- cup mute. *See* playing techniques
- Curlew mark. *See* fermatas
- curly quotes 656, 659
- cursor
 - caret 218
 - chord symbols 325
 - figured bass 400
 - fingerings 274
 - lyrics 395, 1043
 - text 655
- curvature direction
 - grace notes 1285
 - guitar bends 434
 - guitar pre-bends 1129
 - notehead brackets 1071, 1072
 - slurs 1285, 1292, 1293, 1306
 - ties 1368, 1369, 1377

- curve
 - dynamics 954
 - curved arpeggio signs 1108
 - duration 1112, 1113
 - inputting 343
 - playback 1112, 1113
 - popover 343
 - custom
 - barline joins 824
 - chord diagrams 903
 - chord symbols 872, 873, 875
 - endpoint configurations 571, 572
 - ensembles 114, 129
 - key commands 60, 63, 67
 - layouts 121
 - markers 401, 1223
 - page size 593
 - paper size 593
 - percussion techniques 1421, 1423–1425
 - playback templates 558, 561, 564
 - player order 126
 - repeat endings 1233
 - repeat markers 1238
 - score layouts. *See* layouts
 - size 433, 602, 617
 - staff order 126
 - staff size 620
 - tempo text 1338
 - trill speeds 1106
 - tuning 154, 156, 157, 895, 898
 - zoom levels 444
 - Custom Centered Beam dialog 849
 - custom notehead sets
 - percussion 1421, 1423–1425
 - custom playing techniques
 - percussion 1421, 1423–1425
 - playback 787
 - custom score layouts. *See* layouts
 - Custom Staff Size dialog 620
 - custom text 1351
 - dynamics 932
 - instrument changes 140
 - markers 402, 1223
 - percussion legends 1433
 - repeat endings 1233
 - repeat markers 1238
 - repeats 1242
 - cut common time 1382
 - appearance 1393
 - beat grouping 863
 - cutting
 - bars 810–812
 - beats 452, 810
 - notes 261
 - selections 457, 501, 810–812
 - slash regions 1262
 - tie chains 261, 1373
- D**
- da capo
 - al coda 1236
 - al fine 1236
 - da capo (*continued*)
 - al segno 1236
 - font 1237
 - hiding 1240
 - inputting 413, 414
 - showing 1240
 - size 1237
 - word wrapping 1239
 - dal segno 1236
 - hiding 1240
 - showing 1240
 - damping. *See* playing techniques
 - dangling ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
 - dark theme 52, 55
 - dashed
 - barlines 283, 817–819, 1382, 1394. *See also* aggregate time signatures
 - figured bass 961
 - frames 651, 898
 - guitar bend hold lines 1129
 - hairpins 939
 - jazz articulations 1148
 - lines. *See* dashed lines
 - lyrics 392, 395, 1045, 1046
 - octave lines 915
 - pedal continuation lines 1174
 - pedal lines 1173
 - slurs 1289–1291
 - staff labels 1315
 - string indicator lines 993, 1187
 - tempo marks 1345, 1347, 1348
 - ties 1366–1368
 - vibrato bar lines 363, 364, 1137
 - dashed lines 514
 - attachment 437, 461, 514
 - between staves 445
 - crosshairs 517
 - Engrave mode 509
 - lines 385, 1194
 - lyrics 392, 1045, 1046
 - octave lines 915
 - tempo marks 1345, 1347
 - data
 - expression maps 762
 - library 745
 - date and time 660
 - annotations 597
 - auto-saved projects 104
 - comments 494, 496, 499, 500
 - exporting 585
 - language 58
 - printing 581
 - tokens 58, 660
 - deactivating
 - caret 222
 - chord input 251
 - double-click mode switching 43, 195
 - highlights 437
 - Insert mode 237
 - mouse editing 212
 - mouse input 212
 - muted tracks 548, 717–719
 - note input 224, 227

- deactivating (*continued*)
 - playback 542
 - player sorting 125
 - playhead following 539
 - signposts 437, 450
 - soloed tracks 548, 717–719
- dead notes 1141
- decimal places
 - metronome marks 298, 299, 1342
- decorations. *See* ornaments
- decrescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
- dedications 75, 997
 - exporting 102
 - tokens 658
- default flow headings 647, 651
- default page templates 647, 648
 - composer 997
 - lyricist 997
 - title 997
 - tokens 997
- default settings 18, 27, 58, 663, 745, 747, 749
 - accidentals 214
 - articulations 214
 - barlines 817, 818
 - beam grouping 747, 844
 - chord symbols 872, 877
 - dialogs 27
 - dynamics 460
 - file names 588
 - flow headings 651
 - flows 747
 - font styles 760
 - hand tool 40
 - instrument names 57, 183, 184, 187
 - key commands 26, 60, 63
 - layouts 180, 632, 745
 - library 745
 - marquee tool 40
 - MIDI 460
 - mouse input 211
 - notations input 213, 317
 - note grouping 747
 - note input options 214
 - note spacing 507, 508
 - noteheads 1059
 - overlapping notes 747
 - panning 735
 - playback 558, 564, 725, 735, 742, 744, 749
 - playback templates 559
 - playing techniques 1186
 - project templates 77
 - resetting 745, 747, 749
 - reverb 742, 744
 - rhythm dots 214
 - selection tools 40
 - slurs 460
 - space templates 738, 744
 - staff grouping 866
 - staff labels 57, 183, 184, 187
 - staff spacing 603, 621
 - stage templates 731
 - tablature strings 224, 227
 - text 754, 756, 760, 1357
- default settings (*continued*)
 - voice order 747
 - volume 725
- delay
 - expression maps 769
 - glissando line playback 1121
 - inserts 722, 728
 - instrument changes 138
- deleting 455, 502
 - accidentals 792
 - articulations 805
 - auto-saved projects 103, 104
 - bar number changes 836
 - barlines 820, 824
 - bars 301, 452, 810–812
 - beams 843
 - beats 302, 452, 810, 812
 - borders 756, 1001, 1358
 - braces 820
 - brackets 793, 801, 820, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067
 - capos 161, 163
 - centered beams 850
 - chord diagrams 895, 897, 900
 - chord symbols 878
 - clefs 455, 910, 911
 - comments 496
 - counts 1243
 - dynamics 677
 - editors 675
 - effects 729
 - effects channels 727
 - empty pages 25
 - endpoints 571, 573
 - fermatas 1014
 - files 69
 - fingerings slides 988
 - fingerings 978
 - flow headings 611
 - flow numbers 652, 653
 - flows 174, 177
 - frame breaks 632, 639
 - frames 611
 - FX channels 727
 - gaps between notes 259
 - grace notes 1004
 - groups from percussion kits 152
 - guitar post-bends 1131
 - guitar pre-bends 1131
 - guitar techniques 1143
 - indents 1328
 - Insert mode 451
 - inserts 729
 - instrument filters 449
 - instrument names 1310, 1312
 - instrument transpositions 184, 1315
 - instruments 127, 136, 147
 - jazz articulations 1149
 - jump bar aliases 68
 - key commands 64, 65
 - Key Editor configurations 716
 - layouts 180
 - markers 402
 - MIDI points 677

- deleting (*continued*)
niente markings 948
note spacing changes 512
notehead brackets 1067
notes 452, 687, 810, 1060, 1065
overlapping notes 259
page numbers 1150
page template overrides 651
pages 651
parentheses 793, 801, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067
pedal level changes 1167
pedal lines 1167
pick-up bars 452
pitch mappings 483
playback overrides 689
playback techniques 779, 788
players 127, 169, 170, 172, 176
projects 69
rests 259, 810, 1276, 1277
retakes 1167
rhythm dots 1060, 1062, 1065
rhythmic feel change 555
scoops 1143
staff labels 1310, 1312
staff spacing changes 626
staves 605, 606
stem direction changes 1078
stop positions 454
string indicators 994
strings 154
system breaks 632, 636
system indents 1328
tapping 1143
templates 716
tempo marks 677
ties 466, 860, 861, 863, 1373, 1435
time 451, 452, 810–812
time signatures 455
titles 611
tre corde 1178
tremolos 1403
trill intervals 1101
tuplets 1410
velocity changes 693
videos 193
voices 1444
- delta 711, 712, 714
demo projects 69
denominators
styles 1389, 1391
time signatures 1381
dense chords
accidental stacking 796
depressed keys 206
depth
audio 726
nested slurs 1295
nested tuplets 1408
deselecting. *See* selecting
design
arrows 1190, 1191, 1194, 1207
fingerings 977
grace note slashes 1006
design (*continued*)
lines 1190, 1191, 1194, 1206, 1207
noteheads 1053, 1057–1059
slurs 1289, 1290, 1292
time signatures 1397, 1398
designation
strings. *See* string indicators
destination
exporting files 587
instruments 920
notes 482–485, 492, 986
détaché. *See* playing techniques. *See also* articulations
detecting
grace notes 93
inversions 327
strings 383
tuplets 93
detuned fretted instruments 157, 161, 162
devices
audio 58, 268, 269, 545
diagonal
accidental stacking 795
chord symbols 872, 887
lines 386, 859, 1115, 1145
diagrams
chords. *See* chord diagrams
harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* harp pedal diagrams
dialogs 27
diamond noteheads 1054, 1055, 1058, 1180
accidentals 1084
harmonics 1082, 1085, 1087, 1089
percussion 1421, 1424, 1425
resetting 1059
diddle 224, 259, 1399, 1408
playback 1405
dimensions
frames 38
page size 593
paper size 593
diminished. *See* augmented. *See also* intervals
diminuendo. *See* gradual dynamics
dips 1137
inputting 362
intervals 1142
moving 514
popover 343
direction
arpeggio signs 1108, 1109
audio. *See* panning
beams 845, 846, 855
fanned beams 859
glissando lines 1059
grace notes 1004
gradual dynamics 937, 945, 946, 954
guitar bends 434
guitar pre-bends 1129
hairpins 937, 945, 946
lines 1207
panning 726
paper orientation 593
partial beams 855
playback techniques 787, 788

- direction (*continued*)
 rhythm slashes 1268
 slur curvature 1292, 1293
 stems 1074, 1076–1078
 string shift indicators 991, 1059
 tie curvature 1368, 1369
 transposing 469, 470
- disabling. *See* enabling. *See also* deactivating
- disclosure arrows 42
 Expression Maps dialog 762
 Properties panel 38
- disconnecting. *See* unlinking
- display options 29, 40
 date 660
 frames 598, 662
 image resolution 595
 Key Editor 667
 language 57
 layouts 33
 music area 34, 41, 50
 pages 598
 panels 37, 44
 percussion editor 679
 piano roll 667, 678
 playback 558
 print preview 36
 project window 33
 tabs 45
 time 32, 558, 660
 transport 32
 zones 37
- distance
 bar numbers 832
 beams 858
 braces 868
 brackets 868, 870
 breath marks 1013
 chord diagrams 898
 fermatas 1013
 flow headings 615
 hyphens 1045, 1046
 instrument change labels 138
 instruments 730, 732, 733, 736, 738, 739, 741, 742
 lyrics 1035, 1039, 1045, 1046, 1357
 margins 601, 614–616
 noteheads 852
 page edges 601, 616
 panning 730, 732, 733, 736, 738, 739, 741, 742
 reverb 730, 732, 733, 736, 738, 739, 741, 742
 staff labels 1311
 staves. *See* staff spacing
 stems 852
 system indents 1311, 1328
 text borders 756, 1360
- Distortion 722, 728
- distribution
 bars per system 629
 beats in bars 861
 dynamics 939
 staves per frame 604
 systems per frame 630
 values 710
 velocity 710
- dives 1122, 1127, 1137
 handles 1133, 1135
 inputting 355, 356, 358, 359
 moving 514
 popover 343
 pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
 vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar. *See also* guitar bends
- dividers. *See* system dividers
- dividing. *See* splitting
- divisi 643, 1329
 brackets 865, 866, 868, 869, 1194, 1329
 condensing 643, 1320, 1329
 fonts 1318
 hiding empty staves 605–607
 hiding staff labels 1310
 lengthening 461, 464
 moving 461, 464
 paragraph styles 1318
 playback 545, 546, 569
 shortening 461, 464
 signposts 450
 staff labels 1310, 1320
 staff size 618
 staff spacing 604
 staves 605–607
- DJ-EQ 722, 728
- djembe. *See* unpitched percussion
- documentation 15, 69
- doits. *See* jazz articulations
- dolce. *See* dynamic modifiers
- dorian
 chord symbols 323, 492, 885
 scales 484, 485
- DoricoBeep 267, 522, 532
 sound 533
- dots
 barlines. *See* repeat barlines
 chord diagrams 894, 895, 903, 904
 guitar tapping 1138
 Keyboard panel 206
 rhythm. *See* rhythm dots. *See also* dotted notes
- dotted
 beat units 296
 dynamics 921
 hairpins 939
 lines. *See* dotted lines
 noteheads 1056
 notes. *See* dotted notes
 octave lines 915
 rests 196, 747
 slurs 1289–1291
 tempo marks 1345, 1347
 ties 1366–1368
 tremolos 414, 416
- dotted lines 514
 attachment 437, 461, 514
 crosshairs 517
 lines 1194
 octave lines 915
 stop positions 454
 tempo marks 293, 1345, 1347

- dotted notes 230, 860
 - consolidation 1062, 1440
 - double 230
 - forcing 262, 861
 - inputting 196, 230
 - moving dots 1063
 - note grouping 23, 860, 861, 863, 1262
 - rhythm slashes 1262
 - swing playback 552
 - tempo equations 1349
 - tremolos 414, 416
 - triple 230
 - voices 1440
- double 666
 - accidentals 244, 279, 470, 473, 475, 476, 802
 - barlines 303, 306, 307, 816–819
 - bass. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
 - cadence. *See* ornaments
 - dotted notes 23, 230, 860
 - note durations 259
 - octaves 487
 - slashes 1324, 1399
 - stems 798, 1438. *See also* voices
 - values 666
 - whole notes 14, 200, 224, 227, 232, 235, 237, 238, 242, 251, 259, 261
- doubling instruments 123
 - adding 133
 - inputting notes 224, 227
 - instrument changes. *See* instrument changes
 - moving 135
 - showing staves 50
- down arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
- down bow. *See* playing techniques
- down-stem voices. *See* voices
- downloads 69
- dpi 595
- draft staves. *See* sketch staves
- dragging 40, 212, 442, 468, 542, 676. *See also* drawing
- drags. *See* grace notes
- drawing 40, 212, 442, 468, 542, 669, 676
 - crosshairs 517
 - dynamics 696
 - highlights 258, 457, 461, 464, 468
 - marquee selections 676, 715
 - MIDI 703
 - mouse editing 212
 - notes 681. *See also* note input
 - rhythmic grid 217, 258, 457, 461, 464, 468
 - scrubbing 542
 - tempo 532, 706
 - velocity 692
- drop frame timecodes 1226
- drops. *See* jazz articulations
- drum editor. *See* percussion editor
- drum kits. *See* percussion kits. *See also* drum sets
- Drum Pads panel 209
 - key commands 44
- drum rolls. *See* tremolos
- drum sets 142, 143, 1419
 - adding 133
 - caret 238
- drum sets (*continued*)
 - defining kits as 148
 - exporting 152
 - filtering instruments 143
 - hits 1258, 1261, 1263
 - importing 153
 - inputting notes 94, 238, 240, 682
 - laissez vibrer ties 1372
 - naming 143
 - noteheads 1425
 - patterns 94
 - rhythm slashes 1258, 1261, 1263
 - setting up 143, 240
 - stem direction 148
 - voices 148, 1435
- dry
 - reverb 729
- DualFilter 722, 728
- duplets. *See* tuplets
- duplex printing 581, 592
 - booklets 591
- duplicating
 - character styles 760
 - copying. *See* copying
 - dynamics 457, 699
 - expression maps 776
 - flows 172
 - items 457–459
 - key signatures 1024
 - MIDI 676, 705
 - notes 457–459, 686
 - paragraph styles 758
 - percussion maps 784
 - itches 482, 491
 - playback templates 564
 - players 125
 - playing techniques 1189
 - points 676, 699, 705
 - rehearsal marks 1327
 - repeat endings 1327
 - switches 777
 - tempo marks 457, 676, 1327
 - time signatures 1384
- duration 14, 430, 1187, 1271
 - accidentals 800, 801
 - arpeggio signs 1112, 1113
 - articulations 804, 809
 - audio 100, 101
 - bars 24, 452, 810
 - changing 259, 262, 430, 861
 - count-in for MIDI recording 268
 - display 32, 555, 656, 659
 - dynamics 317, 430, 937, 945, 949, 951
 - exporting 106, 107, 656, 659
 - fermatas 432
 - figured bass 430, 961, 962, 966
 - flows 545, 659, 810–812
 - forcing 262, 861
 - glissando lines 1120, 1121
 - grace notes 1009
 - horizontal lines 1203
 - input settings 213, 317
 - jazz articulations 1147

duration (*continued*)

- lines. *See* duration lines
- locking 472
- notated 687
- notes 24, 200, 259, 261, 681, 682, 684, 687
- pedal lines 1178
- percussion 682
- played 687
- playing techniques 367, 372, 374, 430, 1187, 1192
- pre-roll 544
- project 656
- repeat endings 1232
- rests 245, 259, 262, 861, 1271
- slurs 1308
- statistics 106
- terminology 14
- tokens 656, 659
- tremolos 1405, 1406
- vibrato bar lines 1137

duration before pitch note input 224

duration lines 1186, 1194

- appearance 1190
- figured bass 961, 962, 966
- handles 1184, 1187, 1188
- hiding 430, 1187, 1189, 1190
- inputting 367, 372, 374
- playing techniques 1187, 1191
- showing 430, 1187, 1189, 1190
- string indicators 381, 383, 993, 1186

dyads. *See* chords. *See also* chord symbols

dynamic curve 954

dynamic glyphs 921

- font styles 953

dynamic levels 309, 312, 313, 315, 926, 954

- changing 698, 926
- playback 694, 954, 955
- resetting 677, 694, 698, 954–956

dynamic modifiers 921, 932, 1335, 1345

- appearance 934
- centered 935
- font styles 953
- hairpins 935
- inputting 309, 312, 313, 315, 933
- moving 936
- poco a poco 942
- possibile 934
- showing 927
- subito 934

dynamics 921, 932

- abbreviating 934, 943
- alignment 923–925, 949–952
- appearance 929
- articulations 954
- backgrounds 930
- bar repeats 1246
- barlines 924–926, 930
- brackets 929
- changing 432, 698, 926
- colors 56
- combined 921
- continuation lines 921, 937
- continuous hairpins 940
- conventions 922

dynamics (*continued*)

- copying 457, 460, 676, 699, 951
- crescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
- crosshairs 517
- deleting 455
- diminuendo. *See* gradual dynamics
- duration 317
- dynamic curve 954
- editing 926
- editor. *See* Dynamics editor. *See also* Velocity editor
- endpoint positions 925
- erased backgrounds 930, 931
- exporting 102
- expression maps 769
- expressive text. *See* dynamic modifiers
- filters 429
- flared hairpins 941, 942
- font styles 953
- force 921
- gradual. *See* gradual dynamics
- grand staff instruments 313, 315, 931
- grouping 949, 950
- hairpins. *See* gradual dynamics
- handles 430, 937, 938, 945
- hiding 927–929, 934
- humanize 694, 954, 955
- hyphens 309, 928, 939
- immediate 921
- inputting 309, 312, 313, 315, 696, 699
- intensity 432, 698, 926
- length 430, 514, 698, 934, 938
- levels. *See* dynamic levels
- linking 460, 951, 952
- messa di voce. *See* messa di voce
- modifiers. *See* dynamic modifiers
- moving 461, 464, 478, 480, 514, 698, 922, 924, 934, 936, 938, 945, 949–952
- muting in playback 215, 548
- niente. *See* niente
- non-sustaining instruments 953
- overriding 696, 699
- padding 931
- panel 315
- parentheses 929
- percussion kits 1427
- phrases 309, 313, 949, 954–956
- placement 922
- playback 215, 545, 546, 549, 694, 701, 769, 787, 788, 931, 953–955
- poco a poco 935, 942
- popover 309, 313
- position 922, 923
- possibile 934
- repeats 549
- reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
- rfz 929
- rotating 480
- selecting 423, 429
- separators 309, 928
- sfz 929
- showing 927
- signposts 450, 927

- dynamics (*continued*)
- size 433, 953
 - spacing 944
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - subito 934
 - sustaining instruments 953
 - swells. *See* messa di voce
 - syllables 939
 - tempo marks 1338
 - text 939, 953
 - ties 313, 315, 461, 922
 - tracks. *See* Dynamics editor. *See also* Velocity editor
 - types 309, 921
 - ungrouping 950
 - unlinking 460, 952
 - velocity 691, 692, 926, 954, 955
 - voice-specific 313, 315, 694, 696, 931
 - volume 926, 953–955
- Dynamics editor 309, 691, 694, 921, 951
- adding 675
 - closing 675
 - constant points 697
 - copying points 676
 - deleting points 677
 - height 673, 674
 - hiding 694
 - inputting points 696
 - linear points 697
 - moving points 698
 - selecting points 676
 - showing 694
- dynamics lanes. *See* Dynamics editor
- Dynamics panel 312, 315
- E**
- East Asian elision slurs 1050
- edges
- frames 651, 654
 - margins 614
 - pages 614
- Edit Chord Diagram dialog 904
- Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog 873
- Edit Chord Symbol Component dialog 875
- Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog 573
- Edit Flow Heading dialog 653
- Edit Font Styles dialog 754
- Edit Instrument Names dialog 184
- Edit Percussion Kit dialog 143
- Edit Playback Techniques dialog 788
- Edit Space Template dialog 741
- Edit Stage Template dialog 733
- editing 210, 430, 432
- area 143, 1428
 - flow headings 652, 653
 - handles 516
 - inputting vs. editing 210
 - items 432, 516, 663
 - lyric text 1043, 1044
 - mouse editing 212
 - mouse input 211
 - moving. *See* moving
- editing (*continued*)
- note durations 259, 430
 - notes 196
 - redoing 438
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - undoing 438
- editorial
- accidentals 794
 - chord symbols 889, 890
 - dynamics 929
 - figured bass 960, 963
 - notes 1066, 1067
 - slurs 1289, 1290
 - ties 1366
- editors 667
- adding 675, 716
 - closing 675
 - configurations 715, 716
 - drum. *See* percussion editor
 - dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
 - histogram. *See* Histogram tool
 - Key Editor. *See* Key Editor
 - MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
 - percussion. *See* percussion editor
 - piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
 - pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
 - playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
 - saving 715
 - scrolling 674
 - templates 715, 716
 - tempo. *See* Tempo editor
 - text 389
 - velocity. *See* Velocity editor
- EDO 1028
- effects channels. *See* FX channels
- eighth notes 14, 200, 224, 259
- beaming 841, 861
 - beats 302
 - chords 251
 - glissando lines 1121
 - grace notes 249
 - hiding 1060, 1079
 - Insert mode 237
 - metronome marks 294
 - percussion 238, 682
 - pick-up bars 285, 289, 291
 - playback 749, 769
 - quantization 93
 - rests 245, 1271
 - rhythm dots 230, 860, 861, 863, 1062
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - showing 861, 1060, 1079
 - splitting notes 261, 861, 863
 - swing playback 295, 552
 - tablature 242
 - tempo equations 1349
 - ties 860, 861, 863
 - tremolos 414, 416, 1399
 - tuplets 254, 257
 - voices 232
- elbowed beams. *See* centered beams

- electric guitar. *See* fretted instruments
- electronics 112
 - glissando lines 1119
- elision slurs 1050
 - inputting 392, 395
 - size 1050
 - width 1035
- empty bars
 - deleting 812
 - hiding 605, 1277, 1279
 - inputting 304, 305
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - rests. *See* bar rests
 - showing 605, 1277, 1279
 - statistics 106
 - width 813
- empty pages
 - deleting 25, 651, 1352
 - staff spacing changes 624
- empty staves 605
 - after flows 608
 - hiding 605–607, 621
 - showing 605–607, 621
 - system dividers 1324
 - tacets 640
- empty voices 1444
- enabling 222
 - auto-save 105
 - channel effects 722, 729
 - chord symbol playback 535
 - click during playback 540
 - double-click mode switching 43, 195
 - dynamics linking 460
 - EQ 722
 - independent voice playback 545, 546
 - inserts 729
 - instrument changes 137
 - instrument filters 448
 - line collision avoidance 1199
 - Markdown 75
 - MIDI copying 460
 - MIDI devices 270
 - MIDI import 87
 - MIDI thru 216
 - mouse editing 212
 - mouse input 212
 - partial harp pedaling 1159
 - playback 542
 - playhead following 539
 - plug-ins 527
 - sampled trills in playback 1106
 - slur collision avoidance 1287
 - slurs linking 460
 - swing playback 295, 553–555
 - system track 427
 - text collision avoidance 1357
 - tracks 87
 - VST instruments 527
 - Write mode double-click 43, 195
- enclosures
 - bar numbers 827
 - fingerings 977
 - layout names 1001
- enclosures (*continued*)
 - lines 1212
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - text 756, 1212, 1358–1360
- end barlines 818, 819
- end repeat barlines 303, 816, 817
 - counts. *See* repeat counts
 - inputting 301, 303, 306, 307
 - playthroughs 549, 551, 1230, 1242
 - repeat endings 1230
- endings
 - additional 410, 412
 - arpeggio signs 1108–1110
 - playthroughs 1230
 - repeat. *See* repeat endings
- endpoint positions
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - dynamics 925
 - lines 1197, 1203, 1205
 - octave lines 916, 917
 - pedal lines 1168
 - repeat endings 1234
 - slurs 808, 1284–1287, 1300–1302
 - staff lines 1285
 - ties 1374, 1377
 - trills 1092
 - tuplet brackets 1415
- Endpoint Setup dialog 567
- endpoints 567
 - changing 522, 569, 570
 - configurations 571, 572
 - custom 573
 - deleting 573
 - expression maps 522, 567, 570
 - glissando lines 1115, 1119
 - instruments 569
 - moving 430, 461, 514
 - notehead brackets 1071
 - percussion maps 522, 567, 570
 - plug-ins 558
 - renaming 573
 - saving 573
 - setup 567
 - voices 569
- Engrave mode 19, 502
 - frame breaks 636
 - key commands 503
 - make into frame 638
 - make into system 635
 - moving items 514
 - note spacing 507
 - page breaks. *See* frame breaks
 - panels 37, 502, 504, 663
 - percentages 506
 - playhead 539
 - selecting items 421, 423, 424, 439, 503
 - staff spacing 620
 - switching 43, 502
 - system breaks 633
 - toolbox 503
- engraving options
 - chord symbols 872

- engraving tools. *See* properties. *See also* default settings
- enharmonic spelling
- accidentals 245, 473, 475, 476
 - chord symbols 158, 872, 884, 885
 - key signatures 1025, 1027
 - MIDI 85, 264
 - modes 885
 - notes 245, 473, 475, 476
 - pitch mappings 482, 483, 492
 - respelling 206, 473, 475, 476
- ensemble picker 114
- ensembles 110, 128
- adding 114, 128
 - brackets 865, 866, 1317
 - custom 114, 116, 129
 - divisi 1329
 - filters 446
 - groups. *See* player groups
 - language 114
 - player order 125
 - project templates 71, 77
 - saving 116, 129
 - staff grouping 866, 1317
- entrance
- instrument changes 138, 141, 142
 - labels 139, 141, 142
- envelopes
- dynamics 694, 698
- EnvelopeShaper 722, 728
- equal division of the octave 1028
- equalization 722
- changing 728
- equations
- tempo marks 295, 296, 1349
- erased backgrounds 1361
- bar numbers 827
 - bar repeats 1245
 - chord symbols 872, 888
 - dynamics 930, 931
 - fingerings 985
 - harp pedaling 1158
 - lines 1213, 1214
 - padding 756, 888, 931, 1158, 1183, 1214, 1360, 1434
 - percussion legends 1433, 1434
 - playing techniques 1182, 1183
 - staff lines 888, 930, 975, 985, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
 - string indicators 993
 - text 756, 1182, 1214, 1360, 1361
- erasing. *See* deleting
- espressivo. *See* dynamic modifiers
- even staff spacing 604
- event display. *See* track overview
- events
- markers 534
- exchanging. *See* switching
- excluding 121
- chord diagrams 900
 - flows from layouts 121, 177
 - pauses from playback 1016
 - playback 548
- excluding (*continued*)
- players from flows 121, 172
 - players from layouts 121, 176
 - repeats from playback 550
 - slash voices from playback 1260
 - tempo changes from playback 543, 1016
- exclusion groups
- expression maps 762
- exercises. *See* flows
- expanding 430
- barlines 822, 824
 - bars 304, 305, 452, 453
 - caesuras 1018
 - caret 222, 235
 - duration 259, 430, 1016, 1017
 - editors 673, 674
 - fermatas 1016, 1017
 - flow headings 614, 615
 - gaps 1017, 1018
 - grace notes 1004
 - instruments 732, 733, 736
 - items 430
 - Key Editor 673, 674
 - margins 601, 614–616
 - menus 42
 - notes 259, 1004, 1016, 1017, 1410
 - options 42
 - pages 600
 - panning 732, 733, 736
 - percussion grids 152
 - ranges 154
 - selections 422–424
 - slurs 1284
 - spacing 603, 604, 614
 - stage templates 732, 733, 736
 - staves 152, 603, 604, 623, 1428
 - strings 154
 - systems 603, 604, 612, 623
 - tuplets 1410
- explicit rests 1271, 1272
- colors 1275
 - deleting 1276
 - hiding 1276
 - implicit rests 1274
 - showing 1276
- exploding 222, 235
- chords 235
 - MIDI import 88
 - note input 222, 235
- exponential hairpins. *See* flared hairpins
- Export Audio dialog 101
- Export File Names dialog 588
- Export Flows dialog 80
- Export MIDI dialog 96
- Export MusicXML dialog 84
- Export Tempo Track dialog 99
- exporting 78
- annotations 597
 - arrangements 590
 - audio 100, 101
 - borders 597
 - color graphics 596
 - comments 500, 597

- exporting (*continued*)
- crop marks 597
 - date 597
 - dynamics 102
 - ensembles 77, 116
 - expression maps 780
 - file names 588
 - FLAC files 100, 101
 - flows 80, 583–585
 - font styles 754
 - fretted instrument tunings 157
 - key commands 60
 - Key Editor configurations 715
 - layouts 585
 - lyrics 1034
 - markers 102
 - MIDI 95, 96
 - monochrome graphics 596
 - MP3 files 100, 101
 - MusicXML files 83, 84, 1235
 - note colors 597
 - options 578
 - output format 585
 - page ranges 583, 584, 590
 - paragraph styles 756
 - path 587
 - PDF 585, 586
 - percussion kits 152
 - percussion maps 785
 - playback templates 566
 - players 80
 - playing techniques 102
 - PNG 585, 586
 - rehearsal marks 102
 - repeats 549
 - signposts 597
 - space templates 744
 - stage templates 737
 - statistics 107
 - stems 100, 101
 - SVG 585, 586
 - tempo marks 102
 - tempo tracks 98, 99
 - text 102
 - TIFF 585, 586
 - time 597
 - voice colors 597
 - watermarks 597
 - WAV files 100, 101
- expression maps 761, 762
- actions 767, 777
 - conditions 768, 777
 - creating 776, 777, 779
 - dialog 762, 773
 - dynamics 769
 - endpoints 522, 567, 570–572
 - exporting 780
 - file format 761, 780
 - filters 762
 - hiding playing techniques 1183
 - importing 779
 - legato 769
 - MIDI 955
- expression maps (*continued*)
- mutual exclusion groups 771, 776, 779
 - order 762
 - pitch 762, 776
 - playback techniques 762, 773, 777
 - playing techniques 787, 1183
 - resetting 772
 - switches 766, 774, 777
 - transpose 763, 767, 769
 - trills 1104
 - volume 955
- Expression Maps dialog 762
- expressive text. *See* dynamic modifiers
- extended techniques
- noteheads 1053
- extending. *See* expanding
- extension lines
- lyrics 395, 1031, 1045
 - trills 1094–1096
- extra staves 1323
- condensing 1323
 - divisi. *See* divisi
 - hiding 605–607
 - moving 461, 464
 - ossia staves. *See* ossia staves
 - showing 605–607
 - signposts 450, 1323
 - ties 247
- extracts. *See* flows
- ## F
- F clef. *See* clefs
- facing pages 647, 648
- factory default
- playback templates 559
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 731
- faders 717, 718, 720
- moving 725
 - resetting 725
- fallback
- music font styles 754
 - playback techniques 788
 - playback templates 561
 - reverb 739, 741
- falls. *See* jazz articulations
- false harmonic. *See* pinch harmonics
- families
- fonts 73, 760
 - instruments. *See* instrument families
- fanned beams 859
- direction 859
- far send 739, 741
- fast-forwarding 538, 542, 555
- feathered beams. *See* fanned beams
- feedback
- comments. *See* comments
- fermatas 1010, 1011
- appearance 432
 - barlines 1015
 - bowing marks 1185
 - breath marks 1013

-
- fermatas (*continued*)
 - caesuras 1013
 - changing 1013
 - colors 56
 - crosshairs 517
 - Curlew marks 1013
 - deleting 455, 1014
 - duration 432, 1011, 1016, 1017
 - gradual tempo changes 1016
 - hiding 1014
 - inputting 336–339
 - linking 1013, 1014
 - moving 461, 514, 1015
 - multiple at same position 1013
 - number per staff 1014
 - overrides 1013
 - placement 1013
 - playback 1016, 1017
 - playing techniques 1185
 - position 1013
 - showing 1014
 - single staves 1013
 - stems 1013
 - types 432, 1011, 1013
 - voices 1014
 - figured bass 957, 961
 - accidentals 399
 - appearance 967, 969, 970
 - brackets 397, 960, 963
 - crosshairs 517
 - deleting 455
 - duration 430, 961, 962, 966
 - fixing 969
 - font 967, 968
 - global 395
 - grace notes 962, 966
 - handles 430, 961, 965, 966
 - hiding 958
 - hold lines 961
 - input options 969, 970
 - inputting 395, 397, 400
 - instruments 395
 - inverting 965
 - length 430, 514, 961, 962, 965, 966
 - local 395, 957
 - moving 461, 514, 961, 962, 965, 966
 - navigation during input 400
 - octaves 969
 - parentheses 397, 960, 963
 - itches 468
 - placement 964, 965
 - players 395, 958
 - popover 397
 - position 964
 - resetting 970
 - resolutions 395, 397, 961, 966
 - rests 395, 957, 959, 967
 - rows 964
 - showing 395, 958
 - signposts 395, 450, 957, 958, 967
 - simplifying 969
 - size 968
 - slashes 397
 - figured bass (*continued*)
 - staff-relative placement 965
 - staves 395
 - suspensions 397, 961
 - transposing 469, 472
 - vertical position 958
 - file formats 595
 - audio 100, 101
 - backups 105
 - CSV 102
 - expression maps 761, 780
 - graphics files 595
 - MIDI 85
 - MusicXML 82
 - PDF 595
 - percussion maps 785
 - playback templates 558
 - videos 189
 - file names 588
 - ingredients 588
 - recipes 588
 - setting 588
 - tokens 656
 - files 78
 - different Dorico versions 73
 - exporting 78, 102, 585–587
 - importing 78
 - missing fonts 73
 - opening 72
 - videos 191
 - filled noteheads 1053
 - fills 238, 249, 250. *See also* grace notes
 - films. *See* videos
 - filters 429, 445
 - deselect 429
 - drums 143
 - dynamics 429
 - effects 722, 728, 729
 - ensembles 114, 128, 129
 - equalization 722, 728, 729
 - expression maps 762
 - frequencies 722, 728, 729
 - harp pedaling 429
 - Histogram tool 712
 - inserts 722, 728, 729
 - instruments 112, 114, 445. *See also* instrument filters
 - Key Editor 712
 - key switches 91
 - lyrics 429, 1034, 1035
 - mixer 722, 724, 728, 729
 - notes 429
 - options 745, 747, 749
 - percussion 143
 - percussion maps 781
 - pitch 429
 - properties 663
 - select 429
 - staves. *See* instrument filters
 - stem direction 429
 - tempo marks 429
 - text items 429
 - voices 429, 669, 712

- final barlines 303, 816–818
 - end of systems 819
 - inputting 301, 303, 306, 307, 818
 - number of times played 551, 1230
 - repeat barlines 819
- final tempo 1344
- Finale music fonts 751, 753
- Find Tempo dialog 403
 - important markers 1225
- finding. *See* searching
- fine
 - barlines 819
 - d.c. al 1236
 - font 1237
 - hiding 1240
 - inputting 413, 414
 - sections 1236
 - showing 1240
 - size 1237
- finger tapping. *See* tapping
- fingering 971
 - alignment 973
 - appearance 906, 977, 979, 980
 - arpeggio signs 985
 - backgrounds 985
 - borders 977
 - brackets 274, 276, 980, 981, 983
 - cautionary 980
 - changing 901, 904, 973
 - chord diagrams 894, 895, 900, 901, 903, 904
 - circles 977
 - deleting 978
 - design 977
 - enclosures 977
 - erased backgrounds 985
 - font 906, 979, 980
 - font styles 980
 - fretted instruments 981. *See also* tapping
 - grace notes 976
 - hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
 - handles 973
 - hiding 900, 978, 981
 - horn branch indicators 990
 - inputting 274, 276
 - inside the staff 975
 - inverting 974
 - italics 980
 - moving 514, 900, 984
 - MusicXML import 992
 - parentheses 274, 276, 980, 981
 - placement 971, 975, 983, 984
 - popover 274, 276
 - position 900, 971
 - pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
 - resetting 436
 - separators 989
 - showing 978, 981
 - size 906, 976, 979
 - slides. *See* fingering slides
 - slurs 976
 - staff-relative placement 974
 - string shift indicators 990, 991
 - strings 1059
 - fingering (*continued*)
 - substitution 972, 973
 - tapping. *See* tapping
 - thumb letter 900, 901, 904
 - types 276, 989
 - underlines 977
 - valved brass instruments 989
- fingering slides 986
 - deleting 988
 - handles 986, 987
 - hiding 988
 - length 988
 - moving 514, 987
 - resetting 987
 - showing 988
- finials. *See* caret. *See also* annotations
- first and second endings. *See* repeat endings
- first page templates 648
 - assigning to pages 610
 - formatting 648
 - page numbers 1151
- first steps 69
- first systems
 - indents 1328
 - page numbers 1151
 - staff labels 1310
- fit to paper 594. *See also* staff size
- five-line staff 1322
 - noteheads 1423, 1425
 - percussion kits 143, 1428, 1429
 - percussion legends 1430
- fixed tempo mode 543
- fixing
 - bars 629, 638
 - figured bass 969
 - frames 638
 - layouts 631
 - note durations 247, 259, 262, 861
 - pages 630, 638
 - systems 630, 635
- FLAC files
 - exporting 100, 101
- flageolet. *See* harmonics
- flags
 - above staves. *See* signposts
 - hiding 841, 1079
 - markers. *See* markers
 - notes 841, 843, 844, 1074
 - resetting 844
 - showing 843, 1079
 - stems 841, 843, 844, 1074
- flams. *See* grace notes. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
- Flanger 722, 728
- flared hairpins 941
 - size 942
- flat
 - accidentals. *See* accidentals
 - beams 847
 - slurs 1292
- flipping 434, 1076, 1293, 1369. *See also* inverting
- flips. *See* jazz ornaments
- floor tom. *See* unpitched percussion

- flow cards 121
- flow headings 75, 647, 648, 651–653, 756
 - changing 652, 653
 - chord diagrams 898, 900
 - default 651
 - dialog 653
 - editing 652, 653
 - exporting 102
 - flow titles 611
 - fonts 651
 - frames 651
 - gaps 614, 615, 898
 - hiding 69, 611
 - margins 614, 615, 898
 - moving 615, 624
 - page numbers 611, 1151
 - page templates 610
 - paragraph styles 651
 - removing overrides 651
 - resetting 652
 - showing 69, 611
 - size 756
 - titles 611
- Flow Import Options dialog 79
- flow names 75, 187, 188, 588
 - adding 997
- flow numbers 173
 - changing 75, 173
 - deleting 652, 653
 - flow headings 651–653
 - hiding 652, 653
 - tokens 659
- flow titles 75, 187, 188
 - adding 997
 - exporting 102
- flows 20, 121, 171
 - accidental duration rules 800, 801
 - adding 171, 172, 501
 - adding players 172
 - adding to layouts 177
 - attacca 545
 - audio 100, 101
 - cards 120
 - chord diagrams 898, 900
 - comments 496, 499
 - composer 75, 998
 - copying 78, 172
 - copyright 75, 999
 - default settings 747
 - deleting 174
 - deleting empty bars 812
 - duplicating 172
 - duration 659, 810–812
 - end barlines 818
 - exporting 80, 583, 584
 - gaps 545
 - going to 440
 - headings. *See* flow headings
 - hiding 177
 - importing 78, 79, 82, 85
 - indents 513, 1327, 1328
 - instrument change labels 141
 - justification 612
 - flows (*continued*)
 - key signatures 1019
 - layouts 121
 - lyricist 75, 999
 - merging 78, 85, 609
 - MIDI import 85
 - moving 637, 638
 - multiple on pages 609
 - MusicXML files 84
 - names 75, 102, 187, 188, 588, 997
 - navigation 440
 - notation options 747
 - numbers. *See* flow numbers
 - opening 521
 - order 75, 173
 - page numbers 611, 659
 - page templates 610
 - panel 120
 - PDF files 585, 588
 - playback 544, 545, 569
 - players 121, 172
 - pre-roll 544
 - printing 583, 584
 - project templates 77
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - removing from layouts 177
 - removing players 172
 - selecting 424
 - showing 177
 - sorting 173
 - splitting 501, 609
 - staff labels 1310
 - staff size 618
 - statistics 106
 - switching 521
 - system dividers 1324
 - systems 612
 - tacets 640, 641
 - tempo tracks 97
 - timecodes 120
 - titles 69, 75, 102, 187, 188, 611, 648, 651, 997
 - tokens 658, 659
 - transposing 469, 470
 - trimming 301, 306, 307, 812
 - videos 120, 189, 191
 - voices 569
 - Flows panel 109, 120
 - flute. *See* instruments
 - flutter-tongue. *See* playing techniques
 - flz. *See* playing techniques
 - folders
 - backups 105, 106
 - export path 587
 - follow playhead 539
 - scrubbing 542
 - follow tempo mode 543
 - font styles 753, 754, 756, 1352
 - bar numbers. *See* paragraph styles
 - bar repeats 1247, 1250
 - borders 756, 1001
 - changing 754, 760
 - character styles 759
 - chord diagrams 906

- font styles (*continued*)
- chord symbols 877
 - composer 998
 - condensing 756, 1318, 1320
 - copyright 999
 - default 760
 - dialog 754
 - divisi 1318
 - dynamics 953
 - exporting 754
 - family 760
 - figured bass 967, 968
 - fingerings 906, 979, 980
 - flow headings 651, 756
 - glyphs 751, 753, 953
 - importing 754
 - instrument change labels 142
 - instrument names 1318
 - layout names 1001
 - line text 1209
 - lyricist 999
 - lyrics 1029, 1041, 1042, 1044
 - markers 1224
 - missing fonts 73
 - music 751, 753
 - notations 751, 753
 - notes 751, 753
 - numbered bar regions 1250, 1254
 - page numbers 1150
 - paragraph styles. *See* paragraph styles
 - PDF files 596
 - percussion kits 1319
 - player group labels 1317, 1318
 - playing techniques 1184
 - rehearsal marks. *See* paragraph styles
 - repeat markers 1237
 - resetting 754, 756
 - rhythm slashes 1250, 1265
 - size 754, 756
 - staff labels 1318, 1319
 - string indicators 979, 993
 - substitutes 754
 - SVG files 596
 - tablature 1334
 - tasto solo 968
 - tempo marks 1339
 - time signatures 1397, 1398
 - timecodes 1224
 - titles 648, 651, 756, 997
 - verse numbers 1041, 1042
- force
- articulations 804
 - duration. *See* force duration
 - dynamics 921
 - figured bass appearance 969, 970
 - frames 638
 - horizontal 1212, 1415
 - staff visibility 606
 - systems 635
- force duration 196, 262
- activating 196
 - inputting notes with 262
 - inputting rests with 245, 262
- foreground colors 389, 756, 759
- formats. *See* file formats
- formatting 598
- altered unisons 799
 - arpeggio signs 1109, 1110
 - bar numbers 826, 829–831
 - bar repeats 1250
 - caps 1191, 1207
 - chord diagrams 903, 906
 - chord symbols 873, 875
 - dynamics 939, 953
 - file names 588
 - flow headings 652, 653
 - fonts 754
 - frames 505, 643
 - front matter 997
 - glissando lines 1116
 - grace notes 1004
 - gradual dynamics 939
 - hairpins 939
 - handles 516
 - instrument change labels 139, 140, 142
 - layouts 601, 643, 645
 - lines 1190, 1191, 1206, 1207
 - lyrics 1041, 1042, 1044
 - markers 401, 1223, 1224
 - niente hairpins 948
 - notehead brackets 1071, 1072
 - noteheads 1058, 1059
 - page formatting 629, 647
 - page templates 647
 - pages 598, 643, 645, 997
 - pedal lines 1171–1173, 1175
 - player group labels 1317, 1318
 - repeat markers 1237
 - slurs 1290–1292, 1302, 1304
 - staff labels 184, 1318
 - systems 504, 643
 - tablature font 1334
 - tacets 640, 641
 - tempo marks 1347–1349
 - text 389, 392, 753, 756, 758–760, 1352, 1356
 - ties 1366–1368, 1375, 1376
 - time signatures 1398
 - timecodes 1224
 - tuplets 1410, 1416
- Formatting panel 502, 504
- forte. *See* dynamics
- forum 69
- forwards. *See* backwards
- forzando. *See* dynamics
- fps 193
- fractions
- arpeggio signs 1112, 1113
 - chord symbols 872
 - figured bass 397
 - fingerings 973
 - glissando lines 1121
 - guitar bends 1128
 - tempo marks 298, 299, 403, 1341, 1342
 - time signatures 283, 1381, 1382
 - tremolos 1405, 1406

- frame breaks 505, 598, 629, 636
 - bar repeats 637
 - barlines 633, 820
 - brackets 820
 - clefs 907
 - copying to other layouts 643, 645
 - deleting 632, 639
 - divisi 1329
 - first page on the left 609
 - glissando lines 1119
 - hiding staves 606
 - inserting 631, 637
 - key signatures 1024, 1025
 - lines 1215
 - moving 633
 - octave lines 918
 - playing techniques 1188
 - repeat endings 1233
 - signposts 450, 639
 - slurs 1287
 - staff labels 1312
 - staff size 618
 - staff spacing 603
 - staff visibility 606
 - ties 1370
 - time signatures 1384
- frame chains
 - music. *See* music frame chains
 - properties 646, 663–665
- frame fullness indicator 506
- frame rates 193
 - changing 190, 194
 - dialog 190
 - drop frame timecodes 1226
 - non-drop frame timecodes 1226
 - transport window 555, 558
- frames 654, 1358
 - bars 106
 - breaks 598, 636
 - chord diagrams 898, 900
 - constraints 614
 - copying 647, 648
 - dashed 651, 898
 - dimensions 38
 - duration 32, 555, 1226
 - editing 503
 - flow headings 611, 614, 615, 651
 - fullness 506
 - gaps 614–616
 - hiding 437
 - making from selection 638
 - margins 614, 616
 - measures 106
 - moving 614, 615
 - padding 598, 616
 - resetting 651
 - running headers 611
 - selecting 503
 - size 38
 - statistics 106
 - staves 604, 612
 - systems 604, 612, 630
 - timecodes 1226
- frames (*continued*)
 - tokens 655
 - transport 32, 555
- frequency
 - auto-save 105
 - bar numbers 826, 1255
 - bar repeat counts 1249
 - harmonics 1081
 - numbered bar region counts 1255
 - itches in playback 545
 - slash region counts 1266
 - timecodes 1228
 - trills 1095
- Fretboard panel 208
 - key commands 44
- frets 153, 1330
 - adding 154, 242, 904
 - brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - capos. *See* capos
 - changing 1332
 - chord diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
 - deleting 154, 904
 - font styles 906, 1334
 - intervals 154
 - note input 208, 242
 - notes out of range 1332
 - parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - position 154
 - size 906, 1334
 - spacing 154
 - starting number 895, 903, 904, 906
 - string number 1059
- fretted instruments 153
 - adding 112, 133
 - arpeggio fingering 985
 - capos. *See* capos
 - changing tuning 112, 134, 154, 156
 - chord diagrams 894, 895
 - chord symbols 158, 161, 884
 - detuned 157, 161, 162
 - exporting tunings 157
 - fingerings 274, 981
 - frets 154
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - guitar bends 1122
 - guitar techniques. *See* guitar techniques
 - harmonics 1081–1083, 1085
 - importing tunings 157
 - note input 208
 - open pitches 156
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - pinch harmonics 1089
 - popover 277
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - slides 986, 988, 1119, 1120
 - string indicators. *See* string indicators
 - strings 153, 154, 156, 157, 1059
 - tablature. *See* tablature
 - thumbs 900, 901, 904
 - transposition 132, 154, 159–162
 - tuning 134, 153, 154, 157, 158, 161, 162, 884

- front matter 997
 composer 648
 copyright 648
 lyricist 648
 page templates 647, 648
 performance instructions 647, 648
 player list 655
 title 647, 648
- fugues
 analysis 56, 1194
 playback 956
 voices 232
- full score layouts. *See* layouts
- full screen 49
- full stop. *See* period
- fullness
 frames 506
 pages 506, 602, 604, 612, 617, 618
 systems 506
- fullness threshold
 horizontal justification 612
 vertical justification 604, 621
- functions
 key commands 62
 removing key commands 64
- fundamental
 harmonics 1081
 string pitches 154
- funk noteheads 1057, 1058
- FX channels 720–722
 adding 727
 deleting 727
 inserts 728
 mixer 717, 718
 names 728
 reverb 729
 volume 725
- G**
- G clef. *See* clefs
- galley view 40, 50
 bar numbers 40, 829
 dragging pages 442
 flows 501
 instrument changes 136
 instrument filters 445, 446
 instrument labels 50
 staff labels 40
 staff spacing 621, 623
- gamelan. *See* instruments
- gaps 514, 614
 around items. *See* erased backgrounds
 articulations 805, 808
 auxiliary notes 1102
 bar numbers 832
 barlines 888, 930, 1182, 1183, 1213, 1361, 1433, 1434
 bars 1242, 1328
 beams 857, 858
 breath marks 1016
 caesuras 1013, 1016, 1018
 capos 154, 158, 159, 161, 163, 165, 872
- gaps (*continued*)
 chord diagrams 898
 chord symbols 872, 888, 893
 clefs 907, 909
 codas 513, 1241, 1242, 1327
 dynamics 922, 928, 931
 elision slurs 1050
 erased backgrounds. *See* erased backgrounds
 extender lines 1035, 1045
 fermatas 1016, 1017
 fingering slides 986
 flow headings 614, 615
 frames 614–616
 galley view 623
 H-bars 1280, 1281
 hairpins 938
 hyphens 1035, 1045, 1046
 instrument changes 138
 lines 1199, 1211
 lyrics 1035, 1045, 1046
 margins 614
 multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 notes. *See* note spacing
 ossia staves 603, 621
 paragraphs 756, 758
 parentheses 893
 pauses 1016–1018
 pedal lines 1169, 1170
 percussion legends 1433, 1434
 playback 545, 1016–1018
 playing techniques 1182, 1183
 quantization 93
 removing 259
 rests 858
 slurs 1286, 1287, 1291, 1295
 staff labels 1311
 staves 152, 513, 603, 604, 620, 621, 1236, 1328
 stemlets 858
 stems 852
 system indents 1311, 1327, 1328
 systems 604, 1236
 tacets 642
 tempo marks 1348
 text 756, 758, 759, 1182, 1211, 1356, 1357, 1360, 1361
 ties 1368
 time signatures 1394
 trills 1102
- Gate 722, 728
- General MIDI 85, 91, 761, 775
- Generate Chord Symbols From Selection dialog 327
- generated trills 1104, 1105
 playback 1106
- generating
 chord symbols 326, 327
 harp pedaling 381
- ghost notes 1066, 1067
 guitar. *See* dead notes. *See also* bracketed noteheads
- gli altri. *See* divisi
- glissando lines 1115, 1145, 1194
 accidentals 1115
 angles 1115, 1119

- glissando lines (*continued*)
 - changing 432
 - deleting 455
 - direction 1059
 - duration 1120, 1121
 - endpoints 1115, 1119
 - filter 429
 - formatting 1116
 - frame breaks 1119
 - guitar bends. *See* guitar bends
 - handles 1119
 - harp pedaling 1119, 1120, 1153
 - hiding 1117, 1118
 - inputting 340, 343, 349, 350, 1116
 - length 514, 1119
 - line styles 1116
 - moving 514, 1119
 - one note 1145
 - panel 345, 350
 - playback 764, 1119–1121, 1153
 - popover 343, 349
 - segments 1119
 - showing 1117, 1118
 - styles 1116
 - system breaks 1119
 - text 1117, 1118
 - tie chains 1119–1121
 - types 343
- global
 - chord symbols 318, 871
 - fermatas 1010
 - figured bass 395, 957
 - key commands 61
 - note spacing 507, 509
 - options 27
 - pedal level 1165
 - properties 646, 663–665
- glockenspiel. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- glyphs
 - accidentals 473, 475, 476
 - bracketed noteheads 1072
 - chord symbols 875
 - dynamics 953
 - fonts 751, 753, 754, 953
 - music symbols 388, 391, 657
 - pedal lines 1171
 - playing techniques 1180
 - substitute fonts 754
 - text 388, 391, 657
 - trills 1090, 1091
- go to. *See* navigation
- Go To Bar dialog 441
- Go To Page dialog 441
- Go To Rehearsal Mark dialog 442
- Golden Age music font 751, 753
- gongs. *See* unpitched percussion
- Gould
 - accidentals 279, 1028
- grace notes 238, 249, 250, 1002
 - appearance 1008
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - barlines 1005
- grace notes (*continued*)
 - beams 1008
 - caret 218, 249
 - chords 249–251
 - clefs 908
 - default settings 1002
 - deleting 455, 1004
 - duration 249, 1009
 - figured bass 962, 966
 - fingerings 976
 - glissando lines 349, 350
 - guitar bends 354
 - hairpins 945
 - inputting 93, 196, 249, 1004
 - inverting 478, 1002
 - lines 1200
 - messa di voce 945
 - moving 461, 464, 478, 480, 1004, 1005
 - pedal lines 1168
 - percussion 250
 - pitch 468
 - pitch mappings 482
 - placement 1002
 - playback 544, 1009
 - position 1002, 1005
 - quantization 93
 - register 468
 - reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rotating 480
 - scale mapping 484
 - scrubbing 542
 - size 433, 1006
 - slashes 1002, 1006, 1007
 - slurs 273, 1002, 1284, 1285
 - spacing 507, 1002
 - speed 1009
 - stems 1002, 1006, 1008
 - ties 247, 1371
 - transformations 477, 1004
 - transposing 469
 - trills 1104
 - types 1006
 - unscaling 1004
 - voices 1002
- gradient background 54
- gradual dynamics 921, 937
 - abbreviating 943
 - alignment 924, 925, 949–952
 - angles 514, 938
 - aperture 938
 - appearance 939, 941–943
 - barlines 925, 926
 - centered text 935
 - consecutive 940, 945, 949, 954
 - continuation lines 939
 - continuous hairpins 940
 - dashed 939
 - direction 309, 940, 945, 954
 - dotted 939, 943
 - duration 317, 430, 937, 945, 949, 951
 - end position 925, 938
 - flared hairpins 941, 942
 - font styles 953

- gradual dynamics (*continued*)
 - grace notes 945
 - grouping 949, 950
 - handles 430, 938
 - hyphens 939
 - inputting 309, 312, 313, 315
 - length 317, 430, 937, 943, 945, 949, 951
 - line style 939
 - linking 951, 952
 - messa di voce 945
 - moving 461, 922, 924, 938, 945, 949, 951
 - niente. *See* niente
 - playback 953
 - poco a poco 935, 942
 - position 944
 - rotating 514, 938
 - spacing 944
 - start position 938
 - syllables 939
 - system breaks 938
 - tempo marks 1338
 - ties 313, 315, 461
 - truncated 943, 944
 - ungrouping 950
 - unlinking 952
 - volume 953
 - width 938
- gradual tempo changes 1104, 1336, 1345
 - barlines 1337
 - caesuras 1016
 - continuation lines 1345, 1347
 - dashes 1348
 - drawing 706
 - exporting 102
 - fermatas 1016
 - final tempo 1344
 - formatting 1347–1349
 - gaps 1348
 - hyphens 1347
 - inputting 293, 296, 298, 299, 708
 - length 430, 514
 - lines 1345, 1347
 - moving 514
 - Play mode 532, 706
 - poco a poco 1346
 - popover 293
 - position 1337
 - style 1347, 1349
 - syllables 1347
 - Tempo editor 706
 - text 1338
 - thickness 1349
 - trills 1106
- grand staff instruments 130
 - barlines 822, 824
 - beams 851–854, 1078
 - braces 864
 - brackets 866
 - centered beams 848, 851–853
 - chord symbols 882
 - cross-staff 851–854, 1078
 - dynamics 313, 315, 922, 931, 955, 956
 - hiding staves 605–607, 621
- grand staff instruments (*continued*)
 - MIDI import 91
 - MIDI recording 264
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - slurs 273
 - split point 91
 - staff grouping 866
 - staff spacing 621
 - staves 604, 822
 - stems 852, 1078
 - swing playback 554
 - ties 247
 - tremolos 414, 416, 851, 854
 - vertical justification 621
 - voices 218, 232, 955, 956, 1438
- graphical adjustments 514
- graphics
 - chord symbols 875
 - files. *See* graphics files
- graphics files 585, 595
 - colors 596
 - exporting 585–587
 - file names 588
 - fonts 596
 - formats 595
 - image resolution 595
 - monochrome 596
- graphs 713
- green notes
 - Dynamics editor 694
 - tablature 1332
- grids
 - chord diagrams 898, 900
 - gaps 152
 - groups 151
 - Hub 69
 - percussion kits 150–152, 1319, 1428, 1429
 - rhythmic 217
 - staff labels 1310, 1313
 - staves 1319, 1428
- Groove Agent
 - editing 529
 - endpoints 529, 569
 - loading 528, 558, 564
 - middle C 51
 - MIDI trigger regions 420, 574
 - panning 730
 - patterns 94, 574
 - playback templates 558, 559, 564
 - reverb 738
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
- groups
 - bar repeats 1251
 - beams. *See* beam groups
 - braces 864
 - brackets 864
 - dynamics 949–951
 - guitar bends 1122, 1131
 - instruments. *See* instrument groups
 - notes. *See* note grouping
 - percussion kits 143, 150–152, 1319
 - players. *See* player groups

- groups (*continued*)
 playing techniques 1186, 1187, 1191, 1192
 rests. *See* note grouping
 staff labels 1320
 staff spacing 603, 621
 staves 822, 824
 tabs 48
- guide
 bar numbers 50, 437, 829
 instrument labels 50, 182
 lines 217, 517
 page numbers 437, 1152
- guitar 1137
 adding 112, 114, 124, 133
 amp modeling 722, 728, 729
 bends. *See* guitar bends
 capos. *See* capos
 changing string for notes 1332
 chord diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
 chord symbols. *See* chord symbols
 clefs 132, 913
 dead notes 1141
 dips 362, 1137
 dives 356, 358, 359, 1127, 1133, 1135, 1137
 effects 529, 728
 fingerings 981
 hammer-ons 364, 1139
 harmonics 1081, 1083, 1085
 lines 363, 364, 1122, 1127, 1131, 1133–1135, 1137
 note input 242
 notes out of range 154, 1064
 open pitches 156
 playback 535, 1122, 1127, 1137, 1141, 1260
 position in score 125–127
 pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends
 pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
 pull-offs 364, 1139
 scoops 360, 361, 1137
 score order 126
 slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
 slides 986
 string indicators. *See* string indicators
 strings 156
 strumming 985
 tablature. *See* tablature
 tapping 366, 1138
 techniques. *See* guitar techniques
 tuning 112, 132, 153, 154, 156
 vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar
- guitar bends 1122, 1127
 chords 1122, 1125
 crosshairs 517
 deleting 455
 direction 434
 dives 1127
 groups 1122, 1131
 handles 1131, 1135
 hold lines 1129
 holds 1122, 1129, 1131, 1135
 inputting 343, 353, 354
 intervals. *See* bend intervals
 length 514
 microtonal 356, 1125, 1128
- guitar bends (*continued*)
 moving 514
 parentheses 1122
 playback 1122
 popover 343, 354
 post-bends 356, 1125
 pre-bends 1124
 releases 1122
 runs 1122, 1131
 segments 1131, 1135
 shape 1131, 1135
 tablature 1331
- guitar post-bends 1125
 bend intervals 1128
 chords 1125
 deleting 1131
 handles 1134
 inputting 356
 microtonal 356, 1125
 moving 514, 1134
 shape 1134
- guitar pre-bends 1124
 accidentals 1130
 bend intervals 1128
 deleting 1131
 direction 1129
 handles 1133
 inputting 355
 length 514, 1133
 moving 514, 1133
 shape 1133
- guitar pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
- guitar slides 1115
 text 1117, 1118
- guitar techniques 1137–1139, 1180
 dead notes 1141
 deleting 1143
 inputting 343, 353, 356, 358–364, 366
 intervals 1142
 moving 514, 1142
 panel 345
 popover 343
 staff-relative placement 1142
- ## H
- H-bars. *See* multi-bar rests
 hairpins. *See* gradual dynamics
 half depressed pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1165, 1166
 half notes 14, 200, 224, 259
 beats 302
 chords 251
 glissando lines 1121
 hiding 1060, 1079
 Insert mode 237
 metronome marks 294
 percussion 238, 682
 pick-up bars 285, 289, 291
 quantization 93
 rests 245, 1271
 rhythm dots 230, 860, 861, 863, 1062
 rhythmic grid 217
 showing 861, 1060, 1079

- half notes (*continued*)
 - splitting notes 261, 861, 863
 - tablature 242
 - tempo equations 1349
 - ties 860, 861, 863
 - tremolos 414, 416, 1399
 - tuplets 254, 257
 - voices 232
- half-bar
 - beam grouping 840, 861
 - cut common time 863
 - note grouping 747, 860, 863
 - ties 747, 860, 863
- half-diminished. *See* scales. *See also* intervals
- half-step trills 1097, 1104
 - appearance 1102
 - hiding 1094, 1098
 - inputting 341, 346, 347
 - position 1104
 - showing 1094, 1098
- half-steps 14, 792
 - accidentals 244, 792
 - bend intervals 1119, 1120, 1128, 1142
 - figured bass 399
 - glissando lines 1115, 1119, 1120
 - harp pedaling 1153
 - pitch bends 700
 - string pitches 154
 - tonality systems 1028
 - trills. *See* half-step trills
- half-whole diminished
 - chord symbols 323
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- HALion Sonic Selection
 - editing 529
 - endpoints 529, 569
 - independent voice playback 545
 - loading 528, 558, 564
 - panning 730
 - playback templates 558, 559, 564
 - reverb 738
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
- HALion Symphonic Orchestra
 - editing 529
 - endpoints 529, 569
 - independent voice playback 545
 - loading 528, 558, 564
 - panning 730
 - playback templates 558, 559, 564
 - reverb 738
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
- halving. *See* double
- hammer-ons 1139
 - deleting 1143
 - inputting 364
 - moving 514, 1142
 - popover 343
 - slurs 1139
 - staff-relative placement 1142
- hand tool 40
 - dragging pages 442
- hand-written fonts 751
- handles
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - beams 847
 - bend intervals 1131, 1133–1135
 - brackets 1072
 - chord symbols 873, 875, 882
 - duration 430
 - dynamics 937, 938, 945
 - figured bass 961, 965, 966
 - fingerings 973, 987
 - glissando lines 1119
 - guitar bends 1131, 1133–1135
 - hairpins 938, 945
 - jazz articulations 1147
 - length 430
 - lines 1215
 - lyrics 1036, 1039, 1045
 - MIDI trigger regions 574
 - moving 514, 945
 - note spacing 509, 511
 - notehead brackets 1072
 - numbered bar regions 1253
 - octave lines 918
 - pedal lines 1163
 - percussion legends 1432
 - playing techniques 1187, 1188, 1191
 - releases 1131, 1135
 - repeat endings 1232, 1233
 - selecting 511, 516
 - slurs 1288, 1298, 1300, 1301
 - staff spacing 624
 - stems 1078, 1404
 - string indicators 1188
 - system spacing 624
 - tempo marks 1336
 - ties 1374, 1375, 1377–1379
 - tuplet brackets 1413
- harmonic analysis. *See* figured bass
- harmonic minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
- harmonics 1081
 - accidentals 1084
 - appearance 1085, 1087, 1089
 - artificial 1081
 - hiding 1082
 - inputting 1082
 - natural 1081
 - noteheads 1058, 1082, 1085
 - partials 1083
 - pitch 1083
 - playback 1081–1083
 - question marks 1082
 - showing 1082
 - string number 1059, 1332
 - styles 1085, 1089
 - tablature 1082, 1085
- harp. *See* instruments. *See also* harp pedaling
- harp pedal diagrams 1153, 1154
 - placement 1158
 - position 1158
 - showing 1154

-
- harp pedaling 130, 1153
 - appearance 1153, 1154
 - borders 1156, 1157
 - calculating 381
 - crosshairs 517
 - diagrams. *See* harp pedal diagrams
 - erased backgrounds 1158
 - filter 429
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120, 1153
 - hiding 1155, 1156
 - inputting 367, 370, 379–381
 - moving 461, 464, 514
 - note names 1154
 - notes out of range 1064
 - padding 1158
 - partial 1159
 - playback 1153
 - popover 370
 - showing 1155
 - signposts 450, 1153, 1155, 1156
 - headers
 - Dynamics editor 694
 - editors 675
 - flows 651
 - Key Editor 667
 - MIDI CC editor 701
 - MIDI Pitch Bend editor 700
 - percussion editor 679
 - piano roll editor 671, 678
 - Tempo editor 706
 - tracks 520, 522, 531, 532, 534, 535
 - Velocity editor 691
 - heavy swing. *See* swing playback
 - height
 - bars 602–604, 621
 - braces 867
 - brackets 865, 866, 892, 1317
 - channels 724
 - chord symbols 881, 887, 892
 - drum pads 209
 - editors 673
 - flared hairpins 942
 - hairpins 938, 942
 - handles 1300, 1301, 1305, 1374
 - Key Editor 669, 673, 674
 - keyboard 206
 - lines 1204
 - mixer 717, 719, 724
 - notehead brackets 1072
 - pages 600, 601, 604
 - parentheses 892
 - pedal lines 1163, 1166
 - percussion editor 673, 674
 - piano roll editor 673, 674
 - slurs 1304, 1305
 - staves 602–604, 614, 616, 617, 621
 - systems 603, 604, 621
 - ties 1377–1379
 - tracks 537, 674
 - hemiola
 - forcing note durations 262
 - independent time signatures 287–289, 291
 - Henze fermatas. *See* fermatas
 - hexadecimal 388
 - hi-hat. *See* unpitched percussion
 - hiding 44, 437, 450, 455, 714, 1247, 1265, 1362
 - accidental colors 795
 - accidentals 792, 793, 801, 802, 1084, 1098, 1130
 - attachment lines 437
 - audio outputs in mixer 567
 - backgrounds 888, 930, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
 - bar numbers 826, 828, 829, 834, 837
 - bar repeat counts 1249
 - bar rests 1273, 1274, 1276–1278
 - barlines 283, 818–821, 888, 930, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1382, 1433
 - beams 1079, 1263
 - borders 437, 756, 827, 1001, 1156, 1212, 1358
 - braces 865, 867, 868
 - brackets 793, 801, 865, 868, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067, 1317
 - brackets on noteheads 1067
 - capos 163, 164, 166
 - caps 1191
 - caret 222
 - cautionary accidentals 793, 801, 1084
 - cautionary key signatures 1025
 - cautionary time signatures 1384
 - channels 724
 - chord diagram fingering 900, 904
 - chord diagrams 895, 897, 898, 900
 - chord symbol parentheses 890
 - chord symbols 326, 878–880, 882, 886, 897
 - circles 827, 948
 - clefs 332, 333, 910, 911
 - coda 1240
 - colors 549, 575, 795, 1064, 1247, 1265, 1275, 1439
 - comments 501
 - condensing colors 437
 - continuation lines 1189, 1190
 - counts 828, 1243, 1249, 1256, 1267
 - da capo 1240
 - dal segno 1240
 - dead notes 1141
 - divisi colors 437
 - divisi labels 1310
 - divisi staves 605–607
 - dynamics 927–929, 934
 - Dynamics editor 675, 694
 - elision slurs 1050
 - empty staves 605
 - fermatas 1014
 - figured bass 397, 958, 959, 961
 - figured bass brackets 960, 963
 - fine 1240
 - fingering slides 988
 - fingerings 900, 978, 981
 - flags 841, 843, 844, 1079
 - flared hairpins 941
 - flow headings 69, 611
 - flow numbers 652, 653
 - flow page numbers 611
 - flow titles 611
 - flows 177, 640
 - Flows panel 120
 - glissando line text 1117, 1118

hiding (*continued*)

guitar bend hold lines 1129
guitar pre-bend accidentals 1130
harmonics 1082
harp pedaling 1155, 1156, 1159
highlights 437
Histogram tool 710
hold lines 961, 1129
hyphens 928
initial page numbers 1151
instrument change labels 141
instrument changes 137, 140
instrument names 1310, 1312, 1313
instrument transpositions 184, 1315
interchangeable time signatures 1382
jump bar 66, 67
key signatures 112, 134, 278, 280, 281, 1019, 1021, 1022, 1024, 1025
laissez vibrer ties 1372
ledger lines 1062
lines 430, 437, 961, 1189, 1190, 1317, 1347
margins 437
markers 1221
metronome marks 298, 1340
MIDI CC editor 675, 701
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 675
mixer 717–719, 724
multi-bar rests 1279
niente 948
note colors 437, 597, 1064
notes 574, 1060, 1062, 1065, 1079, 1263
numbered bar regions 1254, 1256
octave lines 917
padding rests 1264
page numbers 611, 1151, 1152
panels 31, 38, 42, 44, 110, 117
parentheses 793, 801, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067
partial harp pedaling 1159
pedal lines 1171–1173
percussion legend signposts 1430
player group labels 1317
players 172, 176
playhead 539, 542
playing techniques 372, 1183, 1189
Playing Techniques editor 690
prefixes 140
quality in chord symbols 886
rectangles 827
repeat counts 1243
repeat markers 1240
rest colors 1275
rests 1273, 1276–1279
rhythm dots 1060, 1062, 1065
root in chord symbols 872, 886
running headers 611
secondary brackets 868
segno 1240
separators 928
signposts 437, 450, 636, 639
slash region counts 1267
staff labels 1310, 1312
staff lines 888, 930, 985, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
status bar tools 40

hiding (*continued*)

staves 121, 172, 176, 177, 445, 448, 605–607, 1331
stems 1079, 1263
string indicators 383, 430
sub-brackets 868
symbols 910, 917, 1183
system dividers 1324
system track 427, 437
systemic barlines 820, 821
tablature 1331
tabs 31
tacets 641
Tempo editor 675
tempo marks 298, 1340, 1347
text 1362
text borders 756, 1001, 1212, 1358
text on lines 1208
ties 861
time signatures 452, 1384, 1396, 1397
timecodes 1228
toolbar 30
tracks 536, 671
transport window 555
tre corde 1178
trill extension lines 1096
trill intervals 1098
trill marks 1094
tuplets 1413, 1416
Velocity editor 675, 691
verse numbers 1049
vibrato bar lines 430
video window 192
voice colors 437, 597, 1439
VST instruments 525
zones 31, 44

highlights
bar repeats 1245, 1247
chord symbol regions 882, 883
comments 501
dynamics 694, 696, 697, 699
exporting 597
flags. *See* signposts
hiding 437
MIDI 700, 701, 703, 705
MIDI trigger regions 574, 575
mouse editing 258, 457, 461, 464, 468
music frames 502, 624
notes 258, 457, 461, 464, 468
numbered bar regions 1247
printing 597
search matches 58, 745, 747, 749
slash regions 1261, 1265
stop positions 453
tempo changes 532, 706, 708
tracks 520, 532

Histogram tool 710, 711, 713, 714
area graph 713
bar graph 713
changing values 692, 712
controls 711, 712
filter 712
graph type 713

-
- Histogram tool (*continued*)
 - hiding 710
 - showing 710
 - History dialog 438
 - hits 1263
 - hold lines 1122, 1129
 - brackets 963
 - figured bass 430, 961, 962, 965, 966
 - guitar bends 1131
 - handles 965, 1131
 - hiding 961, 1129
 - length 961, 962, 966, 1131
 - moving 514, 1131
 - showing 961, 1129
 - holds. *See* pauses
 - Holds and Pauses panel 339
 - Hollywood-style trills 1102
 - intervals 1104
 - position 1104
 - showing 1103
 - hooks
 - length 1234
 - octave lines 918
 - pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1166, 1171, 1172
 - playing techniques 1186, 1189
 - repeat endings 1234
 - tuplets 1413
 - horizontal alignment
 - chord symbols 887
 - crosshairs 517
 - dynamics 924, 949, 950
 - instrument names 184
 - items 517
 - lyrics 1035, 1037
 - ornaments 1091
 - staff labels 184
 - staves 612
 - systems 612
 - text 756, 1356
 - horizontal justification
 - staves 612
 - systems 612
 - text 756
 - horizontal lines. *See* lines. *See also* glissando lines
 - horizontal position (*continued*)
 - accidentals 795–797
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - bar numbers 832
 - chord symbols 878, 880
 - clefs 908, 909
 - dynamics 922, 923, 935, 936
 - H-bars 1280, 1281
 - instrument changes 138
 - instrument names 184
 - lines 461, 464, 1198–1200, 1205, 1215
 - lyrics 1035, 1037
 - modifiers 935
 - multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 - notes 506, 507, 1062, 1440, 1442, 1443
 - ornaments 1091
 - poco a poco 935
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - rests 1271, 1276, 1280, 1281
 - horizontal position (*continued*)
 - rhythm dots 1063
 - staff labels 184
 - staves 612
 - string indicators 995
 - systems 513, 612
 - tempo marks 1336
 - text 756, 1356
 - time signatures 1394
 - trills 1091
 - tuplet brackets 1415
 - tuplets 1417
 - horizontal spacing. *See* note spacing
 - horns 130
 - branch indicators 979, 990
 - clefs 112, 134, 330, 912
 - fingerings 979, 989
 - key signatures 112, 134
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - transposition 112, 132, 134
 - hotkeys. *See* key commands
 - hours
 - timecodes 1226
 - transport 32, 555
 - HTML files
 - comments 500
 - Hub 69
 - opening projects 72, 73
 - starting projects 71
 - video tutorials 69
 - humanize
 - dynamics 694, 954, 955
 - note durations 749
 - hymnals
 - lyrics 508, 1041
 - note spacing 508
 - tick barlines 817
 - hyphens
 - dynamics 309, 928, 939, 942
 - gaps 1046
 - lyrics 392, 395, 1031, 1045, 1046
 - staff labels 1315
 - tempo marks 1347
 - time signatures 1389, 1392
 - Hz
 - playback tuning 545
- ## I
- Iconica Sketch
 - editing 529
 - endpoints 529, 569
 - independent voice playback 545
 - loading 528, 558, 564
 - panning 730
 - playback templates 558, 559, 564
 - reverb 738
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
 - illustrations
 - exporting 585, 586

- images
 - exporting 585, 586
 - resolution 585, 586, 595
 - videos 189
- immediate dynamics. *See* dynamics
- implicit rests 23, 1271, 1272
 - colors 1275
 - deleting 1276
 - explicit rests 1274
 - hiding 1273, 1276
 - showing 1276
 - voices 1273
- Import Tempo Track dialog 97
- important markers 403, 1225
- importing 78
 - Cubase data 761, 779
 - drum sets 94, 153
 - expression maps 761, 779
 - flows 78, 79, 85
 - font styles 754
 - fretted instrument tunings 157
 - Key Editor configurations 716
 - MIDI files 85
 - MusicXML files 82, 83, 1235
 - paragraph styles 756
 - pedal lines 85, 91, 270
 - percussion kits 94, 153
 - percussion maps 785
 - playback templates 566
 - playing techniques 87, 91
 - space templates 743
 - stage templates 737
 - tempo tracks 97
 - tracks 85
 - unpitched percussion 83, 85
- inches
 - staff spacing 624
 - unit of measurement 51
- incipits 820
- including. *See* excluding
- indents 1327, 1328
 - codas 513, 1241, 1242, 1327
 - final systems 612
 - first systems 1328
 - removing 1328
 - staff labels 1311
 - systems 513, 612, 1310–1312, 1328
 - text 756
- independent voice playback 522, 545
 - changing endpoints 569
 - disabling 546
 - enabling 545
 - inputting notes 681
 - piano roll editor 678
 - playing techniques 372, 374
- index
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - tokens 655
 - vertical stacking 518, 1185
 - voice columns. *See* voice column index
- Indian drum notation 1436
- Indiana chord symbols 872
- indicators
 - audio engine 38
 - caret 931
 - clefs 913
 - fingerings 276, 990
 - frame fullness 506
 - horn branches 990
 - MIDI input 38
 - octaves 913
 - string fingerings 990, 991, 1059
 - system fullness 506
 - tempo. *See* tempo marks
 - thumbs 276
 - trill intervals 1097, 1104
 - voices 931
- information. *See* project information
- ingredients 588
- init switches 766, 774
- initial pages
 - left-hand page 609
 - page numbers 609, 1151
- initial trill notes 1104
- initials
 - comments 494, 499
- input pitch 215
- inputting 210, 213
 - accidentals 214, 244, 279, 792
 - additional repeat endings 410, 412
 - altered bass note chord symbols 318
 - arpeggio signs 340, 343, 347
 - articulations 214, 271, 272
 - bar number changes 836, 837
 - bar number counts 408, 419
 - bar repeats 408, 409, 418
 - bar rests 246, 301
 - barlines 300, 303, 306, 307
 - bars 300, 301, 303–305
 - beams 224, 841
 - beats 302, 304, 305
 - bracketed noteheads 1067
 - breath marks 336–339
 - caesuras 336–339
 - capos 159, 160
 - caret 218, 222
 - centered beams 849
 - channels 727
 - character styles 760
 - chord diagram shapes 903
 - chord diagrams 878, 895, 897
 - chord symbol parentheses 318, 324, 890
 - chord symbol regions 324
 - chord symbols 318, 320, 325–327
 - chords 196, 251, 258, 488
 - clefs 329–333
 - comments 495, 497, 498
 - dips 362
 - dives 355, 356, 358, 359
 - drum sets 94, 133
 - dynamic modifiers 309, 312, 313, 315, 933
 - dynamics 309, 312, 313, 315, 317, 696, 699, 933
 - editors 675, 716
 - effects channels 727
 - elision slurs 392, 395

inputting (*continued*)

ensembles 114, 128, 129
expression maps 776, 777, 779
fermatas 336–339
figured bass 395, 397, 400
figured bass hold lines 395, 397, 430, 961, 962
fingerings 274
flows 78, 171–173, 501
font styles 758, 760
frame breaks 631, 637, 638
FX channels 727
gaps 338, 339, 1016–1018
glissando lines 340, 343, 349, 350, 1116
grace notes 93, 249, 1004
gradual dynamics 309, 312, 313, 315, 317
gradual tempo changes 293, 296, 298, 299, 708
guitar bend hold lines 1129
guitar bends 343, 353, 354
guitar dips 343, 362
guitar dives 343, 356, 358, 359
guitar lines 343, 363, 364
guitar post-bends 356
guitar pre-bends 355
guitar pre-dives 355
guitar scoops 343, 360, 361
guitar tapping 343, 366
hammer-ons 343, 364
harmonics 1082
harp pedaling 367, 370, 379–381
hold lines 430, 961, 962
inputting vs. editing 210
Insert mode 237
instrument changes 224, 227
instrument filters 449
instruments 112, 124, 133
instruments in percussion kits 146
intervals 487
jazz articulations 340, 342, 351, 352
jazz ornaments 342, 346, 347
key commands 63
Key Editor 671, 675, 681, 696, 703, 708, 716
key signatures 278–281, 792
layouts 176, 180
left-hand fingerings 277
line text 1208
lines 367, 372, 374, 385–387
lyrics 392, 395
markers 401, 402, 534
messa di voce 309, 312, 313, 315, 317, 945, 946
metronome marks 293, 298, 299
MIDI 85, 264, 270, 528, 558, 559, 564
MIDI points 703, 705
MIDI trigger regions 420
mouse input 211, 212
multi-bar rests 1279
mutual exclusion groups 779
nested slurs 1295
nested tuplets 1409
niente 309, 312, 313, 315, 317, 948
notehead brackets 1067
noteheads 685, 1424, 1425
notes 214, 223, 224, 227, 235, 237, 242, 258, 262, 264, 488, 681, 682

inputting (*continued*)

notes in multiple voices 232
notes in percussion kits 94, 238, 240, 682
numbered bar regions 408, 419
octave lines 329, 331, 333, 335
octaves 487
ornaments 340, 341, 346, 347
panels 201
panning 731
paragraph styles 758
parentheses 318, 324, 395, 397, 793, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067, 1084
pauses 336–339
pedal lines 367, 369, 375, 377, 378
percussion kits 94, 133, 143, 146, 147, 238, 681, 682, 685, 1424, 1425
percussion legends 1430
pick-up bars 283, 285, 289, 291, 452
pitch mappings 482, 483, 492
playback techniques 777, 788
playback templates 564, 566
player groups 168
players 114, 124, 129
playing techniques 367, 372, 374, 681, 682, 685, 1424, 1425
popovers 22, 201
position 210
post-bends 356
pull-offs 343, 364
register selection 226
rehearsal marks 400
repeat endings 406, 409–412
repeat markers 406, 409, 413, 414
rests 196, 206, 224, 245, 262
retakes 375, 377, 378, 1170
reverb 738, 742
rhythm dots 214, 224, 227, 230
rhythm slashes 408, 409, 417
rhythmic feels 293, 554
rhythmic grid 217
right-hand fingerings 277
scoops 360, 361
settings 211, 213, 214, 317
slash regions 408, 417
slash voices 233, 1260
slurs 273, 364, 1295
soloists 127
sounds 522, 528, 529, 564, 569, 570, 572
space templates 738, 739, 741–743
stage templates 731–733, 736, 737
staves 124, 128, 133, 1329
stem direction 241
stems 232, 1438. *See also* voices
string indicator lines 430
string indicators 367, 370, 381, 383
strings 154
swing playback 295
switches 777
system breaks 631, 634, 635
system-attached text 388
tablature 242, 1331
tapping 343, 366
tempo equations 293, 296, 298, 299

- inputting (*continued*)
 - tempo marks 293, 296, 298, 299, 708
 - text 388, 1208
 - ties 196, 247
 - time signatures 283, 287, 288
 - timecodes 401, 1222, 1227
 - tokens 655
 - tremolos 407, 409, 414, 416
 - trill intervals 1100
 - trills 341, 346, 347
 - tuplets 93, 254, 1409, 1410
 - Unicode 388
 - unpitched percussion 681, 682
 - upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
 - velocity 692
 - vibrato bar 353, 355, 356
 - vibrato bar dips 362
 - vibrato bar dives 358, 359
 - vibrato bar lines 363, 364, 430
 - vibrato bar scoops 360, 361
 - videos 191
 - voices 232, 233, 466
 - VST instruments 528, 558, 559, 564
- Insert Bar Number Change dialog 835
- Insert mode 196, 210, 451
 - activating 196, 237
 - caret 218, 237
 - deactivating 237
 - inputting notes 237
 - scope 452, 453
 - stop positions 451, 453, 454
 - time signatures 287–289, 291, 452, 1381
 - tuplets 455
- Insert Music Text dialog 391
- inserting. *See* inputting. *See also* Insert mode
- insertion point 218
- inserts 722
 - changing 728, 729
 - loading 728
 - removing 729
 - reverb 729, 739, 742
- inspector. *See* Track Inspector. *See also* properties
- instances
 - adding 528
 - chord symbols 871
 - plug-ins 522, 525
- instrument change labels 130, 136, 142
 - borders 142, 756
 - colors 142
 - cues 138
 - editing 139, 140
 - font 142
 - font style 756
 - hiding 141
 - moving 138, 514
 - paragraph styles 142
 - prefixes 139
 - showing 141
 - size 142
 - suffixes 139
- instrument changes 136, 137, 142
 - allowing 137
 - cues 138
- instrument changes (*continued*)
 - disallowing 137
 - inputting 133, 224, 227
 - labels. *See* instrument change labels
 - language 57, 136, 139, 184
 - position 138
 - staff labels 138
- instrument channels 717, 718, 720, 721
- instrument colors 531
 - Dynamics editor 694, 699
 - MIDI CC editor 701, 705
 - MIDI Pitch Bend editor 700, 705
 - percussion editor 679
 - piano roll editor 678
 - Playing Techniques editor 690
 - stage templates 732, 733
 - Velocity editor 691
- instrument families 112
 - barlines 822
 - brackets 864–866
 - ensemble picker 114
 - glissando lines 1119
 - instrument filters 446
 - instrument picker 112
 - markers 1222
 - MIDI import 87
 - playback templates 561, 564
 - playing techniques 371, 1180
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - repeat endings 1233
 - repeat markers 1241
 - stage templates 732, 733
 - system objects 1326, 1327
 - tempo marks 1336
 - timecodes 1222
- instrument filters 112, 114, 445
 - activating 448
 - adding 449
 - deactivating 448
 - deleting 449
 - instruments 446, 449
 - key commands 445, 446
 - names 446, 449
 - order 446
- instrument groups 150, 167
 - deleting 152
 - filters 446
 - labels 1317
 - naming 151
 - percussion kits 150, 1319
- instrument names 181, 1309
 - abbreviated 183, 184, 1313
 - alignment 184, 1318
 - baseline shift 184
 - borders 1001
 - changing 183
 - colors 184, 1318
 - Endpoint Setup dialog 567
 - fonts 1318
 - hiding 1310, 1312, 1313
 - length 184, 1310, 1312
 - mixer 717, 718
 - numbering 131, 132, 1313

instrument names (*continued*)

- overline 184
- Play mode 531, 567, 718
- resetting 184, 187
- saving as default 184
- showing 1310, 1312
- size 1318
- solo 127
- staff labels 184, 657, 1310, 1312, 1313
- stretch 184
- subscript 184
- superscript 184
- tokens 657
- tracks 531. *See also* instrument tracks
- underline 184

instrument numbering 131, 132, 733, 1315

instrument picker 112

instrument pitches. *See* instrument transpositions

instrument score orders

- changing 125

instrument tracks 530, 531

- automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
- dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
- MIDI. *See* MIDI CC editor
- piano roll editor 678
- velocity. *See* Velocity editor

instrument transpositions 132, 1314

- changing 112, 134

- clefs 910

- hiding 184, 1315

- layout names 183

- layouts 183

- order 1315

- parentheses 1315

- showing 184, 1315

- staff labels 184, 1314, 1315

instrumental parts. *See* layouts

instrumentation lists 656, 997

- page templates 647, 648

instruments 21, 130

- adding 112, 114, 124, 128, 133

- adding to flows 172

- adding to parts 176

- adding to percussion kits 146

- arranging tools 455

- assigning to endpoints 569

- automatic numbering 131

- barline joins. *See* barline joins

- beams 851

- brackets 865, 866

- changes. *See* instrument changes

- changing existing 134, 148

- changing transposition 134

- channels 717, 718, 720, 721

- chord symbols 318, 878

- clefs 112, 134

- colors 531, 678, 679, 732, 733

- combined parts 176

- combining into kits 147

- comments 494, 496, 499, 500

- copying 125

- cross-staff 851

- deleting 127, 136

instruments (*continued*)

- divisi 1329

- doubling 50, 133

- dynamics 694, 931, 951, 953. *See also* Dynamics editor

- editor

- empty staves 605

- endpoints 567, 569

- ensembles. *See* ensembles

- expression maps 567, 762

- families. *See* instrument families

- figured bass 395

- filters. *See* instrument filters

- fretted 153

- fretted fingerings 981

- glissando lines 1119

- groups. *See* instrument groups

- hiding 172, 176, 445

- importing 85

- inputting notes 224, 227

- key signatures 112, 1021, 1025–1027

- labels 50, 136, 137, 139, 140, 142, 151, 182, 1309,

- 1313, 1318, 1320

- language 57, 112, 114, 187

- loading 528, 542, 558, 564

- merging. *See* condensing. *See also* reducing

- MIDI 522, 526, 528

- MIDI import 85

- MIDI recording 264

- mixer 717, 718, 720, 721, 725

- moving 135, 170, 732, 733, 736

- muting 547, 548, 717, 719

- names. *See* instrument names

- non-sustaining 953

- numbering 131, 132

- order 125–127, 135, 149, 167

- panning 726, 730–733, 735, 736

- part layouts. *See* layouts

- percussion 149, 780, 1428

- percussion legends 1430, 1432

- percussion maps 567

- Play mode 531

- playback 540, 542, 545–548, 558, 559, 561, 564,

- 567, 569, 761, 780

- players 123

- Players panel 110

- plucked fingerings 981

- position in score 110, 125

- project templates 71, 77

- ranges 1064

- removing from kits 147

- removing from parts 172, 176

- repeats 548

- reverb 729, 738, 739, 741, 742, 744

- rhythm section 866, 878

- searching 112, 114

- showing 172, 176, 445

- showing staves 50

- soling 542, 547, 548, 717, 719

- sorting 110, 125

- staff grouping 866

- staff labels 184, 1313, 1315

- staff size 618

- staff spacing 621

- instruments (*continued*)
 stage templates. *See* stage templates
 statistics 106
 staves 50, 606, 607, 931, 1323, 1428
 strings 153
 sustaining 953
 swing playback 554
 tablature 1330, 1331
 templates 71, 77, 114, 116, 558, 730
 tracks. *See* instrument tracks
 transposing 132, 178. *See also* instrument
 transpositions
 tremolos 414, 416, 851
 tuning 112, 153
 velocity 691. *See also* Velocity editor
 volume 725, 931
 VST 522, 525, 528
- intensity
 dynamics 313, 315, 432, 694, 921, 926, 927, 954, 955
- interactive key commands map 61
- interchangeable time signatures 1382
 ending 1397
 inputting 283, 285, 287, 288
- interface. *See* user interface
- interspersion
 accidentals 795
- intervals
 accidentals 341, 487, 1099
 adding 251, 258, 488
 auto-save 105
 chord symbols 322, 872
 dips 1142
 figured bass 969
 fretted instruments 154
 glissando lines 1115
 guitar bends. *See* bend intervals
 handles 1131, 1133–1135
 harmonics 1081–1083, 1085, 1089
 microtonal 487
 note input 226
 octave divisions 1028
 ornaments 1090
 pitch mappings 482, 483, 492
 popover 487
 simplifying 969
 transposing 469, 470, 489
 trills 341, 346, 1097–1100, 1104
 vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
- inversions
 chord symbols 318, 536
 figured bass 395, 397, 957
 pitches 478, 479, 489
 playback 536
- Invert Pitches dialog 479
- inverting 434, 436, 478, 479, 1076, 1293, 1369
 articulations 808
 beaming 845, 846
 chord symbols 882
 colors 55
 duplex printing 592
 figured bass 965
 fingerings 974
- inverting (*continued*)
 grace note stems 1002
 guitar bends 1129
 guitar techniques 1142
 lines 1201, 1202
 notes 1076–1078
 pitches 478, 479, 489
 playing techniques 1185
 resetting 436
 slurs 1285, 1292, 1293
 stems 1076–1078
 ties 1369
 tuplets 1414
- invisible. *See* hiding
- ionian
 chord symbols 323, 885
 scales 484, 485, 492
- irrational time signatures. *See* time signatures
- irregular
 bars as pick-up bars 1386
 time signatures 1382
- italics
 chord diagrams 906
 chord symbols 158, 872, 877
 composer 75, 756
 copyright 75, 756
 dedication 75, 756
 dynamics 921
 figured bass 968
 fingerings 906, 979, 980
 instrument change labels 142
 instrument names 1318
 lyricist 75, 756
 lyrics 1041, 1042, 1044
 Markdown 75
 player group labels 1317, 1318
 project information 75, 756
 rehearsal marks 1219
 repeat endings 1233
 staff labels 184, 756, 1318
 subtitles 75, 756
tasto solo 968
 tempo marks 1339
 text 389, 756, 759
 titles 75, 756
- items 210, 421
 behind other items 421
 changing 432
 copying 457
 deselecting 429
 editing 663
 resetting 436
 selecting 210, 421–424, 429, 439
 settings. *See* properties
- J**
- Japanese
 chord symbols 872
- jazz
 articulations. *See* jazz articulations
 band templates 71, 77
 chord symbols 872

jazz (*continued*)
glyphs 751, 753
music fonts 751, 753
player order 110, 125
staff grouping 866

jazz articulations 1145, 1146
appearance 1147, 1148
bend 1145
changing 1147
copying 805
deleting 1149
duration 1147
handles 1147
inputting 340, 342, 351, 352
length 514, 1147
line styles 1148
moving 514, 1147
ornaments. *See* jazz ornaments
panel 345, 352
playback 787, 788, 1145
popover 342, 351
position 1147
smooth 1145
types 342, 1145, 1147

jazz ornaments 1145, 1146
inputting 342, 346, 347
popover 342
types 342

Jazz Standards chord symbols 872

jeté. *See* playing techniques

job types 578, 590
page ranges 583, 584
printing 590
selecting 590

joins
attachment lines 437
barlines. *See* barline joins
beams 841, 843, 851, 854, 1078
pedal lines 1170
staves with barlines 824
stems 851, 854, 1078

jump bar 65
aliases 67, 68
Commands 65, 67
entries 65
Go To 66
showing 66, 67

jumps
hiding 1240
inputting 413, 414
playback 550
rehearsal marks 442, 1217
repeat 1236
showing 1240

justification
staves 604, 612, 621, 1328
systems 513, 604, 612, 621, 1328
vertical 604, 621

K

kerning
accidentals 796
figured bass 964

key clicks. *See* playing techniques

key commands 17, 26, 60, 65
articulations 272
assigning 63, 67
defining 58
Engrave mode 503
finding 62, 65
galley view 50
instrument filters 445, 446
Key Editor 671
keyboard layouts 64
languages 64
lower zone 44
maps 61
MIDI 63
mouse input 196
muting 547, 548
navigation 36, 440–442
notehead sets 1058
page view 50
panels 44
playback 540
played duration 689
removing 64
resetting 65
searching 61, 62
soloing 547, 548
text formatting 389
zoom levels 444

Key Editor 667, 669, 701
configurations 675, 715, 716
controls 710, 711, 713, 714
copying 676, 686
deleting notes 687
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
height 673
histogram. *See* Histogram tool. *See also* Transform tool
inputting notes 681
instruments 671
key commands 44, 671, 673, 674
locking 671
MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor
moving notes 683
note duration 681, 682, 684, 687
panel 667, 669
percussion. *See* percussion editor
piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
playhead 539
playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
rhythmic grid 669, 675
scrolling 539, 667, 674
selecting 676
selecting velocity bars 715
slurred notes 1308
tempo 706
toolbar 669

- Key Editor (*continued*)
 Transform tool. *See* Transform tool. *See also*
 Histogram tool
 transposing notes 685
 tuplets 678
 velocity. *See* Velocity editor
 voices 545, 669, 671
 zoom 667, 674
- key signatures 1019, 1028
 accidentals 278, 279, 469, 470, 473, 792, 1020
 atonal 1021
 barlines 819, 1022
 cautionary 1024, 1025
 changes 819, 1020, 1022
 changing 280, 281, 432
 clefs 1022
 deleting 455
 enharmonic equivalent 1025, 1027
 filter 429
 hiding 112, 134, 278, 280, 281, 1019, 1021, 1022, 1025
 inputting 278–281
 instrument changes 138
 instruments without 112, 134, 1019, 1021, 1026
 major 1021
 MIDI import 91
 minor 1021
 moving 138, 461, 464, 1023
 multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 multiple 1019
 none 112, 1021
 octave divisions 1028
 open 1021
 panel 279, 281
 placement 1022
 polytonality 280, 281, 1019
 popover 278, 280
 position 280, 1022
 respelling 1027
 scales 1021
 selecting 421, 425, 427, 428
 showing 1022, 1025
 signposts 280, 281, 450, 1019
 start repeat barlines 819
 tonality systems 1028
 transposing 469, 470, 1027
 transposing instruments 178, 747, 1026
 types 278, 1021
- Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals
 panel 279, 281
- key switches 775
 expression maps 761, 767
 MIDI import 91
 percussion maps 781
- Keyboard panel 206
 key commands 44
- keyboard shortcuts. *See* key commands
- keyboards
 adding 112, 114, 124
 beams 851–854
 chord symbols 318, 878
 cross-staff 851–853, 1078
 glissando lines 1119
- keyboards (*continued*)
 inputting notes 223, 224, 264
 key command maps 61
 layouts 64
 MIDI 216, 264, 268, 678
 panel 206
 slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
 sounds 216, 540, 558
 stems 852, 1078
 tremolos 414, 416, 851
- keys
 major 1021
 minor 1021
 signatures. *See* key signatures
 transposing 469, 470
- kick drum. *See* unpitched percussion
- kits. *See* percussion kits
- knead beams. *See* centered beams
- ## L
- l.v. ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
- labels
 brackets 1317
 instrument changes. *See* instrument change labels
 instruments 151, 184, 1309
 markers 1221
 percussion kits 151, 1319, 1428
 player groups 151, 1317
 staves. *See* staff labels
- laissez vibrer ties 1180, 1364, 1372
 angle 1375
 shape 1375
 width 1372, 1375
- landscape orientation 593, 594, 600
- lanes. *See* editors. *See also* tracks
- languages 56
 application 57
 date and time 58
 ensembles 114
 instruments 57, 112, 114, 136, 139, 184, 187
 key commands 26, 61, 64
 staff labels 57
 tokens 58
- large
 noteheads 1056
 selections 424
 time signatures. *See* large time signatures
- large time signatures 1387, 1389
 bar numbers 834
- largo. *See* tempo marks
- latency
 changing value 269
 MIDI recording 264, 268
- lattice arrangement
 accidentals 795
- layers. *See* voices
- layout cards 117, 121
 disclosure arrows 42
 numbers 117. *See also* layout numbers
 opening 117

- layout names 181, 183
 - accidentals 183
 - borders 1001
 - changing 183
 - first pages 648
 - resetting 183
 - running headers 649
 - tokens 656
- layout numbers 117
 - changing 180
 - order 179
- layout options 27, 745
 - bar numbers 826–828, 831
 - copying to other layouts 643
 - dialog 745
 - saving as default 745
 - searching 745
- Layout Options dialog 745
- layout selector 31
 - order of layouts 179
 - switching layouts 43
- layouts 24, 117, 121, 174, 643
 - accidentals 473, 476
 - adding flows 177
 - adding players 176
 - bar numbers 826, 828–830
 - blank staves 608
 - borders 1001. *See also* margins
 - braces 865–868. *See also* staff grouping
 - brackets 865, 866, 868. *See also* staff grouping
 - cards. *See* layout cards
 - casting off 629–632
 - chord symbols 879
 - clefs 330, 910, 912, 917
 - color mode 586
 - combining players 176
 - comparing 48
 - concert pitch 178, 656, 1000
 - condensing 643
 - copies 581
 - copying formatting 643, 645
 - copying properties 646
 - creating 91, 176, 180
 - cues. *See* cues
 - custom scores 174
 - deleting 180
 - divisi 1329
 - dynamics 924
 - empty staves 605, 608
 - enharmonic spelling 473, 476
 - exporting 585, 590
 - exporting audio 100
 - exporting MIDI 95
 - figured bass 958
 - file names 588
 - fingerings 978
 - fit to paper 594
 - fixing 629–631
 - flow headings 611, 651–653
 - flow ranges 583, 584
 - flows 121, 177, 609, 610
 - font size 754, 756
 - formatting 598, 643
- layouts (*continued*)
 - frame breaks 636
 - frame chains. *See* music frame chains
 - front matter 997
 - full scores 174
 - graphics files 585, 595
 - harp pedaling 1155
 - hiding staves 605–607
 - image resolution 586
 - indents 1327, 1328
 - instrument change labels 141
 - instrument filters. *See* instrument filters
 - instrument order 125
 - justification 604, 612, 621
 - Key Editor 667
 - keyboard 61, 64
 - large time signatures 1387, 1389
 - Layouts panel 117
 - left pages 609
 - locking 629–631
 - margins 601, 614, 616
 - markers 1221, 1222
 - MIDI import 91
 - multi-bar rests 828, 1279, 1281
 - multiple windows 49
 - MusicXML files 84
 - naming 183. *See also* layout names
 - navigation 439–442
 - note spacing 507
 - note spelling 473, 476
 - numbered bar regions 1254
 - numbers. *See* layout numbers
 - opening 33, 43
 - opening multiple 45, 48
 - orchestral order 125–127, 167, 1317
 - order 179
 - orientation 593, 594, 600
 - page numbers 1150
 - page ranges 583, 584, 590
 - page size 593, 600
 - page template sets 601, 647
 - page templates. *See* page templates
 - page turns 636
 - panel in Print mode 577
 - panel in Setup mode 117, 174
 - paper sizes 593
 - parts 174, 176, 643
 - percussion kit presentation 1429
 - percussion legends 1430
 - player order 125–127, 167, 1317
 - players 121, 176
 - printing 581, 590, 594
 - propagating parts 643, 645
 - properties 646, 663–665
 - rehearsal marks 1216, 1219, 1327
 - removing flows 177
 - removing page overrides 651
 - removing players 176
 - renaming 183
 - renumbering 180
 - repeat marker text 1239
 - resetting 632, 651, 745
 - restoring 180

- layouts (*continued*)
 - running headers 611
 - scale size 594
 - selecting 31
 - settings 745
 - sorting 179
 - staff filters. *See* instrument filters
 - staff labels 181, 657, 1310, 1313
 - staff size 602
 - staff spacing 603, 604, 621, 1357
 - statistics 106
 - staves 605–607
 - switching 43
 - system dividers 1324
 - system formatting 603, 612, 621, 633, 643
 - system objects 1326, 1327
 - tabs 33, 45
 - tacets 640–642
 - text 388, 648, 1351, 1357, 1362
 - time signatures 1387, 1389, 1397
 - timecodes 1222, 1227, 1228
 - titles 647, 648, 651
 - tokens 656, 657, 1000
 - transposing 132, 174, 178, 656, 1000
 - vertical justification 604
 - view types 40
 - zoom 42, 443
- Layouts panel
 - Print mode 576, 577
 - Setup mode 109, 117
- lead sheets
 - adding instruments 124, 133
 - barlines 821
 - bars per system 629
 - capo chord symbols 163–166
 - chord diagrams grid 898, 900
 - chord symbols 318, 326, 871
 - clefs 911
 - drums 142
 - key signatures 1022
 - multi-bar rests 1279
 - percussion kits 142
 - playback 1260
 - project template 77
 - slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
 - systems per frame 630
- leading 756, 758, 1356
- learning materials 69
- ledger lines 1061
 - hiding 1062
 - width 1061
- left hand hooks. *See* lines
- left pages 647, 648
 - starting from 609
- left pan 739, 741
- left zone 37, 38
 - Engrave mode 504
 - hiding 44
 - Print mode 577
 - Setup mode 110
 - showing 44
 - Write mode 200
- left-foot pedals. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* pedal lines
- left-hand fingering 981
 - erased backgrounds 985
 - hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
 - inputting 274, 277
 - placement 972
 - popover 277
 - position 984
 - pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
 - size 981
 - slides 986, 988
 - tapping. *See* tapping
- left-hand guitar tapping. *See* tapping
- legal paper size 593
- legato
 - note durations 259
 - playback 749, 769, 1308
 - playing technique. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playback techniques
 - slurs 1283, 1308
- legends
 - percussion. *See* percussion legends
- leggiero. *See* dynamic modifiers
- Leipzig music font 751, 753
- Leland music font 751, 753
- length 430, 514
 - arpeggio signs 347, 348, 1111
 - audio 101
 - bar repeat phrases 432, 1246
 - barlines 822, 824
 - bars 69, 283, 300, 452, 810–812, 1016
 - braces 867
 - brackets 1072
 - chord symbol parentheses 891
 - continuation lines 1186, 1188, 1191
 - divisi passages 461, 464
 - dynamics 317, 430, 698, 934, 938, 943
 - figured bass 961, 962, 965, 966
 - fingering slides 988
 - flows 32, 69, 106, 300, 555, 656, 659, 810–812
 - glissando lines 1119
 - grace note slashes 1007
 - guitar bends 1131, 1133, 1135
 - H-bars 1280
 - hairpins 926, 944
 - hold lines 961, 962, 965, 966, 1131
 - hooks 514, 1163, 1234
 - instrument names 139, 140, 183, 1310, 1312
 - jazz articulations 1147
 - laissez vibrer ties 1372
 - lines 386, 387, 430, 1186–1188, 1191, 1203–1205, 1215
 - lyric extender lines 1045
 - lyric hyphens 1045, 1046
 - messa di voce 944
 - multi-bar rests 1280
 - music 69, 300, 810–812, 1016
 - notated duration of notes 687
 - notehead brackets 1072
 - notes 259, 682, 684, 687, 689
 - octave lines 430, 918
 - pauses 1016
 - pedal lines 1163, 1167, 1170, 1174
 - percussion legends 1432

length (*continued*)

- played duration of notes 687, 689
- player group names 169
- player names 182, 1310, 1312
- playing techniques 1186, 1188, 1191
- projects 32, 69, 106, 300, 555, 656, 659, 810–812
- repeat endings 1232, 1234
- reverb tail 101
- slurs 1284, 1294
- staff labels 1310, 1312, 1313
- stemlets 858
- stems 847, 1078
- string indicators 1186, 1188
- system dividers 1325
- systems 513, 612
- tempo marks 1336, 1348
- tuplet brackets 1413

lento. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks

lento. *See* tempo marks

let ring. *See* laissez vibrer ties

letter paper sizes 593, 600

letters

- rehearsal marks 1218

levels

- channels 717, 718, 725
- dynamics. *See* dynamic levels
- nested tuplets 1408
- pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1165, 1166. *See also* pedal level changes

libraries 745

- fretted instrument tunings 157
- percussion 780
- project templates 77
- sound 522, 525, 527, 558, 761, 762, 780

libretto

- exporting 1034
- librettist 75, 658, 999

lieder. *See* flows. *See also* projects

lifts

- jazz articulations. *See* jazz articulations
- pedal lines. *See* pedal retakes

ligado. *See* hammer-ons

light swing. *See* swing playback

light theme 52

limiter 722, 728

limits 711, 712, 714

- histogram controls 711, 712, 714

Lin One Dither 722, 728

line breaks

- project information 75
- repeat markers 1239
- staff labels 184, 1315
- text 388

line spacing 602, 756, 758, 1356. *See also* staff spacing

linear points 697, 704, 706

- inputting 696, 703, 708

lines 1115, 1180, 1186, 1194, 1196

- accidentals 1205
- alignment 517, 1205
- angled 385, 1194, 1202
- annotations 1196
- appearance 1190, 1206, 1207

lines (*continued*)

- arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
- attachments 385, 386, 1194, 1197
- backgrounds 1213
- bar numbers 831, 832
- barlines. *See* barlines
- beams. *See* beaming
- brackets 864, 868, 870, 1317
- caesuras. *See* caesuras
- caps 1191, 1196, 1207
- changing 1190, 1206, 1207
- chords 235, 347–350, 386, 387
- collision avoidance 1199
- colors 56
- columns 1199
- components 1196
- cross-staff 387
- crosshairs 517
- deleting 455
- diagonal 386
- drawing 708
- duration 1203, 1204
- dynamics 694, 696, 699, 939
- enclosures 827
- end position 1205
- ends 1196
- Engrave mode 509, 1199
- erased backgrounds 1213, 1214
- figured bass. *See* figured bass
- fingerings 990
- fonts 1209
- frame breaks 1215
- glissando. *See* glissando lines
- grace notes 1006, 1200
- gradual tempo changes 1349
- groups 1317
- guide 217, 517
- guitar bends. *See* guitar bends. *See also* vibrato bar handles 1215
- harp pedaling 1153, 1159
- hiding 430, 961, 1189
- holds. *See* hold lines
- horizontal 386, 1194, 1197, 1198
- horizontal text 1212
- inputting 385–387
- Insert mode 453, 454
- jazz articulations 1145, 1148
- joining notes. *See* beams
- ledger 1061
- length 514, 1203–1205, 1215
- lyrics 392, 394, 395, 1029, 1045, 1047. *See also* lyric extender lines
- markers 1222
- MIDI 701, 703, 705
- moving 461, 464, 514, 1198–1202, 1215
- noteheads 1053, 1205, 1421
- notes. *See* stems. *See also* beaming
- octave lines. *See* octave lines
- order 1185, 1198, 1199
- padding 1214
- pauses. *See* caesuras. *See also* pauses
- pedal. *See* pedal lines
- placement 1198, 1201, 1202

- lines (*continued*)
- playback. *See* playback
 - player groups. *See* player group labels
 - playing techniques. *See* playing technique lines
 - position 1197
 - repeat endings. *See* repeat endings
 - repeat marker text 1239
 - reversing 1207
 - secondary beams 856
 - secondary brackets 868, 870
 - segments 1215
 - showing 430, 961, 1189
 - size 1203, 1209
 - slurs 1283, 1290
 - staff-relative placement 1201, 1202
 - start position 1205
 - staves 1322
 - stemlets. *See* stemlets
 - stop position 453, 454
 - string indicators 381, 383, 430
 - string shift indicators 991
 - system breaks 1196, 1215
 - system dividers. *See* system dividers
 - tablature 1330
 - tempo marks 532, 706, 1345, 1347
 - text 756, 1196, 1208–1214, 1358
 - thickness 872
 - through noteheads 1053, 1421
 - ties 1366, 1367
 - timecodes 1222
 - trills 1095, 1096
 - tuplet brackets. *See* tuplet brackets
 - types 1190, 1194, 1197
 - velocity 692
 - vertical 387, 1194, 1197, 1199
 - vertical position 1185, 1197, 1201
 - vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar
 - width 612
 - wiggly 1095, 1108
- linking 951
- barlines 822, 824, 865
 - caesuras 1010, 1013
 - dynamics 460, 951, 952
 - fermatas 1010, 1013, 1014
 - flow names 187, 997
 - flow titles 187, 997
 - groups of dynamics 949, 950
 - Key Editor 671
 - MIDI 460, 705
 - percussion maps to VST/MIDI 522, 570
 - slurs 460, 1297, 1298
 - staves. *See* brackets. *See also* braces
 - tracks 671
- lists
- comments 496
 - Hub 69
 - players 181, 656
- little finger. *See* pinky finger
- Live Space dialog 739
- Live Stage dialog 732
- loading
- MIDI instruments 528, 542, 558, 564
 - playback templates 564
- loading (*continued*)
- reverb 728, 729, 742, 744
 - sounds 528, 542, 558, 564, 727–729, 742, 744
 - space templates 742, 744
 - stage templates 735
 - video files 191
 - VST instruments 528, 542, 558, 564
- local
- chord symbols 318, 871
 - figured bass 395, 957
 - properties 646, 663–665
- locations
- backups folder 106
- lock
- duration. *See* lock duration
 - frames 505, 631, 632
 - Key Editor 671
 - layouts 631, 632
 - played durations 669, 688
 - systems 504, 631, 632, 635
- lock duration 196, 472
- loco. *See* octave lines
- locrian
- chord symbols 323, 885
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- lower case
- chord symbols 872
 - flow titles 659
 - Roman numerals 659
- lower limits. *See* limits
- lower notes
- percussion 238, 1421, 1424
 - trills 1107
- lower zone 30, 37, 205
- Engrave mode 663, 717
 - hiding 44
 - key commands 44
 - Key Editor. *See* Key Editor
 - Mixer panel. *See* Mixer panel
 - Play mode 667, 717
 - Properties panel. *See* Properties panel
 - Setup mode 120
 - showing 44
 - Write mode 663, 667, 717
- lute. *See* fretted instruments
- lv ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
- lydian
- chord symbols 323, 885
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- lyric extender lines 392, 394, 395, 1029, 1031, 1045, 1047
- extending 392
 - handles 1045
 - inputting 392, 395
 - moving 514, 1045
- lyric hyphens 1031, 1045
- extending 392
 - gaps 1046
 - handles 1045
 - inputting 392
 - moving 514, 1045, 1046
 - paragraph styles 1042, 1045

- lyric lines [394](#), [1029](#), [1047](#)
 adding [392](#), [394](#)
 changing [1030](#), [1048](#), [1049](#)
 copying [1032](#)
 deleting [455](#)
 moving [1039](#)
 navigation [395](#)
 numbers [1047–1049](#)
 offsets [1039](#)
 placement [1036](#)
 position [1036](#), [1039](#)
- lyricist [75](#), [999](#)
 adding [999](#)
 bold [75](#), [756](#)
 exporting [102](#)
 first pages [648](#), [997](#)
 fonts [756](#), [999](#)
 italics [75](#), [756](#)
 tokens [658](#)
- lyrics [1029](#), [1352](#)
 alignment [1035](#), [1037](#)
 beaming [843](#)
 changing [1030](#), [1043](#), [1044](#), [1048](#)
 chorus [394](#), [1029](#), [1030](#), [1048](#)
 colors [56](#), [1041](#)
 copying [1032](#)
 counts [1043](#)
 crosshairs [517](#)
 deleting [455](#)
 East Asian elision slurs [1050](#)
 editing [1043](#), [1044](#)
 elision slurs [392](#), [395](#), [1050](#)
 exporting [1034](#)
 extender lines. *See* lyric extender lines
 filters [429](#), [1034](#), [1035](#)
 font styles [1041](#), [1042](#), [1044](#)
 gaps [1035](#)
 handles [1036](#), [1039](#), [1045](#)
 hyphens. *See* lyric hyphens
 inputting [392](#), [395](#)
 italics [1041](#), [1044](#)
 lines. *See* lyric lines. *See also* lyric extender lines
 melismatic [392](#), [395](#), [1035](#), [1045](#), [1046](#)
 moving [461](#), [464](#), [514](#), [1037–1039](#), [1048](#), [1049](#)
 non-breaking spaces [392](#), [395](#), [1043](#)
 note spacing [508](#), [1035](#), [1037](#)
 offsets [1039](#)
 paragraph styles [1041](#), [1042](#)
 placement [1035](#)
 popover [392](#), [394](#), [395](#)
 position [1035](#)
 printing [1034](#)
 saving [1034](#)
 selecting [423](#), [429](#), [1035](#)
 size [1041](#), [1042](#), [1044](#)
 slurs [1050](#), [1290](#)
 spaces [392](#), [395](#), [1043](#)
 spacing [508](#), [1035](#), [1037](#), [1039](#), [1041](#), [1042](#), [1044](#)
 staff-relative placement [1038](#), [1039](#)
 statistics [106](#)
 syllable types [395](#), [1031](#)
 text [1043](#), [1044](#)
 ties [247](#), [262](#), [392](#), [1035](#), [1045](#), [1046](#), [1366](#)
- lyrics (*continued*)
 translations [394](#), [1029](#), [1030](#), [1048](#)
 types [394](#), [1029](#), [1031](#)
 verse numbers [1041](#), [1042](#), [1049](#)
 vertical position [1029](#), [1030](#), [1038](#), [1039](#),
[1047–1049](#)
 zoom [1043](#)
- ## M
- macOS
 printing [584](#)
- main chord symbols [157](#), [158](#), [163](#), [164](#), [166](#)
 transposing [162](#)
- major
 chord symbols [321](#), [322](#), [872](#)
 intervals [469](#), [470](#), [472](#), [487](#)
 keys [1021](#)
 scales [484](#), [485](#), [492](#), [1021](#)
- make into
 frame [505](#), [638](#)
 system [504](#), [635](#)
- Manage Instrument Filters dialog [446](#)
- mandolin. *See* fretted instruments
- manual staff visibility [606](#), [607](#)
- manuscript paper [608](#)
 bar numbers [826](#)
 barlines [283](#), [817](#), [818](#), [820–822](#)
 key signatures [280](#), [281](#)
 rests [1277](#), [1279](#)
 staff labels [1310](#)
 staves [124](#)
 width [600](#), [601](#), [612](#)
- Map Pitches dialog [483](#)
- Map Scale dialog [485](#)
- maps
 expression. *See* expression maps
 key commands [61](#)
 percussion. *See* percussion maps
 pitches. *See* pitch mapping
 scales. *See* scale mapping
- marcato. *See* articulations
- margins [614](#), [1001](#)
 changing [513](#), [601](#)
 chord diagrams [898](#)
 flow headings [615](#)
 hiding [437](#)
 instrument names. *See* staff labels
 music frames [614](#), [616](#), [624](#)
 MusicXML files [82](#)
 pages [598](#), [601](#), [614](#)
 staves [513](#), [612](#), [614](#), [616](#), [1310](#), [1311](#), [1328](#)
 tacets [642](#)
- marimba. *See* instruments. *See also* grand staff
- instruments
- mark-up. *See* comments. *See also* annotations
- Markdown [75](#)
 text items [58](#)
- markers [1221](#), [1226](#)
 colors [56](#)
 comments. *See* comments
 deleting [402](#), [455](#)
 dialog [402](#)

- markers (*continued*)
- exporting 95, 96, 101, 102
 - filter 429
 - flags. *See* signposts
 - font style 1224
 - hiding 1221, 1240
 - important 403, 1225
 - importing 97
 - inputting 401, 402, 534
 - moving 461, 1224
 - panel 402
 - repeats 406, 1236
 - showing 1221, 1240
 - signposts. *See* signposts
 - staff 1222
 - staff spacing 603, 621
 - text 97, 401, 402, 1223
 - timecodes 402, 1224
 - track 534, 536
 - vertical position 603, 621, 1222
- marks
- rehearsal. *See* rehearsal marks
 - tempo. *See* tempo marks
 - trills 1090, 1091, 1094, 1104
- marquee tool 40
- Key Editor 676
 - using 424, 676, 715
- martelé. *See* articulations
- masking. *See* hiding
- master output volume 717, 718, 720, 721, 725
- master pages. *See* page templates
- matches
- options search 58, 745, 747, 749
- Maximizer 722, 728
- measured tremolos. *See* tremolos
- measurement
- units 51
- measures. *See* bars
- medium swing. *See* swing playback
- melismatic lyrics 392, 395, 1035, 1045, 1046
- melodic minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
- melodies
- chords 251, 871, 878, 894, 895
 - inputting 224, 227, 230. *See also* note input
 - playback 540, 545, 547, 955, 956
 - stems 232, 643
 - voices 232, 545, 643, 1438
- meno. *See* tempo marks. *See also* dynamic modifiers
- Mensurstriche 823
- merging
- beams 840, 841
 - flows 78, 85, 609
 - notes 91, 251, 254, 262, 643, 860, 861, 863
 - pedal lines 1170
 - players 78, 79, 82, 85, 88, 91
 - projects 78
 - rests 245, 262, 860, 861, 863, 1272, 1273
 - staves 643
 - voices 88, 91, 643
- messa di voce 945
- aperture 938
 - duration 317
 - gaps 944
- messa di voce (*continued*)
- grace notes 945
 - handles 938, 945
 - inputting 309, 312, 313, 315, 946
 - length 944
 - moving 461, 922, 938, 945
 - showing 946
 - ties 313, 315, 461
- meter 1381
- beam grouping 841, 861
 - changing 432
 - channel levels 717, 718
 - cut common time 863
 - irregular 810, 813
 - note grouping 841, 860, 863, 1262
 - open 1382, 1389, 1391
 - rest grouping 841, 860, 863
 - rhythm slashes 1262
 - time signatures. *See* time signatures
 - tremolos 1399
 - tuplets 1408
- metric modulation
- tuplets 1410
- metronome click. *See* click
- metronome marks 1335, 1336, 1341
- appearance 1343
 - approximate 1343
 - beat units 294, 432, 1341, 1342
 - brackets 1341, 1343
 - changing 432, 709, 1342, 1344
 - click 267, 533
 - components 1343
 - decimal places 298, 299, 1342
 - equations 296, 1349
 - fonts 1339
 - hiding 298, 1340
 - inputting 293, 298, 299, 708
 - moving 461, 514, 1345
 - multiple positions 1326, 1327
 - order 1345
 - parentheses 1341, 1343
 - period 1343
 - playback 267, 533, 555, 1342
 - popover 293
 - range 1342
 - relative tempo changes 1344
 - selecting 423
 - showing 1340
 - size 1339
 - staves 1327
 - trills 1106
 - values 432, 709, 1342
 - vertical positions 1326, 1327
- mezzo
- dynamics. *See* dynamics
- microtones 800
- EDO 1028
 - guitar bends 356, 1125, 1128
 - identifying 38
 - intervals 487, 488
 - MIDI pitch 38
 - playback 764

- microtones (*continued*)
 - transposing 489
 - trills 1098–1100
- mid-system gaps
 - codas 1236, 1241, 1242
- middle C 51
 - changing 51
 - clefs 907
 - expression maps 767
 - fretted instruments 153, 154, 156, 161
 - Groove Agent 94
 - inversions 479, 489
 - percussion maps 781
 - pitch mapping 483, 492
 - playback 51, 545, 767, 781
- middle line
 - stem direction 1074
- MIDI
 - accidental spelling 245
 - channels 522, 567, 717, 718, 720, 721
 - commands 60, 63
 - controllers. *See* MIDI controllers
 - copying 460, 676, 705
 - deleting 677
 - devices. *See* MIDI devices
 - dialog 85, 93, 96
 - editor. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
 - endpoints 567, 569, 571, 572
 - exporting 99
 - expression maps 761, 762, 776, 777
 - fader 718
 - files. *See* MIDI files
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - Histogram tool 710, 712
 - importing 85, 93, 94
 - inputting 703, 705
 - instruments 522, 526, 531. *See also* MIDI instruments
 - Key Editor 701
 - linking 460
 - loading instruments 528, 542, 558, 564
 - markers 534
 - middle C 51
 - mixer 717, 718, 720, 721
 - navigation 63
 - note input 223, 235, 245
 - note range 130
 - opening 72
 - order 767
 - overlapping notes 259
 - overriding 705
 - pan 718, 720, 726
 - patterns 94
 - pedal lines 1178
 - percussion maps 522, 570, 780, 781, 784
 - piano roll editor 678
 - pitch bend 701, 764, 1119, 1120
 - pitch bends 38
 - playback 531, 567, 780
 - ports 522, 567
 - quantization 93
 - range 130
- MIDI (*continued*)
 - recording. *See* MIDI recording
 - slurs 1308
 - tempo 532, 543, 706
 - Tempo editor 706
 - tempo track 532
 - tempo tracks 97–99
 - thru 216
 - unlinking 460
 - values 704, 710, 711, 714
 - volume 955
- MIDI CC editor 574, 700, 701
 - adding 675, 701
 - closing 675, 701
 - constant points 704
 - copying points 676
 - deleting points 677
 - filter 712
 - height 673
 - Histogram controls 711
 - inputting points 703
 - linear points 704
 - moving points 704
 - pedal lines 1178
 - selecting points 676
 - Transform controls 714
 - transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
 - values 704, 710, 712, 713, 715
 - zoom 674
- MIDI channels 717, 718, 720, 721
- MIDI controllers 701, 955
 - copying 460, 676, 705
 - dynamics 955
 - editor. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
 - inputting 675, 703, 705
 - pedal lines 1178
 - Transform tool 713
 - transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
 - values 704, 710–715
- MIDI devices 270
 - activity 38
 - chord symbols 318, 522, 535
 - disabling 270
 - enabling 270
 - expression maps 761, 776, 777
 - note input setup 240
 - panning 730
 - percussion kits 240
 - percussion maps 780, 784
 - playback templates 558, 559
 - polychords 318
 - reverb 738
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
 - warning 38
- MIDI files 85
 - dialog 85, 96
 - exporting 95, 96
 - grace notes 93
 - importing 85

- MIDI files (*continued*)
 - key signatures 91
 - opening 72
 - pedal lines 85, 91, 270
 - percussion maps 88
 - playback overrides 689
 - playing techniques 91
 - quantization 85, 93
 - repeats 549
 - requantizing 266
 - slurs 91
 - sustain pedal controllers 270
 - tremolos 91
 - trills 91
 - tuplets 93
 - unpitched percussion 85
- MIDI Import Options dialog 85
- MIDI instruments 522, 526
 - endpoints 571, 572
 - instances 526
 - loading 528, 542, 558, 564
 - numbering 526
 - panel 525
- MIDI Pitch Bend editor 700, 701
 - adding 675
 - closing 675
 - copying points 676
 - deleting points 677
 - height 673
 - moving points 704
 - selecting points 676
 - transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
 - values 704, 712, 715
 - zoom 674
- MIDI points
 - copying 460
 - linking 460
 - unlinking 460
- MIDI Quantize Options dialog 93
- MIDI recording 264
 - audio buffer size 268, 269
 - click settings 267, 533
 - count-in 268
 - devices 270. *See also* MIDI devices dialog 93
 - grace notes 93, 1004
 - input pitch 215
 - latency 269
 - MIDI thru 216
 - optimization 268
 - overlapping notes 259
 - pedal lines 268, 270
 - pitch 215
 - quantization 93, 264
 - repeats 266
 - requantizing 266
 - retrospective recording 266
 - setup 268
 - slurs 268
 - starting 264
 - stopping 264
 - sustain pedal controllers 270
- MIDI recording (*continued*)
 - tempo mode 543
 - time signatures 264
 - transport window 555
 - tremolos 268
 - trills 268
 - voices 264
- MIDI thru 216
- MIDI trigger regions 574
 - changing 432
 - handles 574
 - highlights 575
 - inputting 420
 - length 430
 - moving 461
 - pitch 51
 - popover 420
 - velocity 420, 574
 - viewing options 575
- millimeters
 - frame dimensions 38
 - staff spacing 624
 - unit of measurement 51
- milliseconds 32, 555
 - delay 769
- mini transport 30, 32
- minims. *See* half notes
- minor
 - chord symbols 321, 322, 872
 - intervals 469, 470, 472, 487
 - keys 1021
 - scales 484, 485, 492, 1021
- minutes
 - duration tokens 656, 659
 - timecodes 1226
 - transport 32, 555
- Missing Fonts dialog 73
- missing sounds
 - loading 564
- mixer 717, 718
 - channel strips 722
 - channels 717, 718, 720, 721, 724, 728
 - filters 722, 724
 - height 719, 724
 - hiding 717-719
 - hiding audio outputs 567
 - muting tracks 547, 548, 717-719
 - panning 720, 726
 - ports 717, 718
 - resetting 548, 717, 725
 - scrolling 724
 - showing 717-719
 - soling tracks 547, 548, 717-719
 - soundtracks 193
 - toolbar 719
 - videos 193
 - volume 725
- Mixer panel 717
 - key commands 44
- mixolydian
 - chord symbols 323, 885
 - scales 484, 485, 492

- mock-ups
 - exporting 100
- modal
 - chord symbols 323, 885
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- moderato. *See* tempo marks
- modern accidental cancellation 802
- Modernist accidental duration rule 800, 801
- modes 19, 30
 - chords 218, 885
 - Engrave 502
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - Insert 218, 237, 254, 451
 - jump bar 65–67
 - Play 519
 - Print 576
 - scale mapping 484, 485, 492
 - Setup 109
 - tempo 543
 - transposing 484, 485, 492
 - Write 195
- modifier keys
 - key commands 61
 - searching 61
- modifiers. *See* dynamic modifiers
- modulation wheel dynamics 955
- molto
 - centered 935
 - dynamics 309, 312, 932, 935
 - font style 953
 - marcato. *See* articulations
 - moving 936
 - tempo marks 293, 296
- monochrome graphics 596
- MonoDelay 722, 728
- monophonic legato 769, 1308
- monophony. *See* polyphony
- MonoToStereo 722, 728
- moon noteheads 1056, 1058
- mordents. *See* ornaments
- morendo. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* dynamic modifiers
- MorphFilter 722, 728
- mosso. *See* tempo marks
- motors. *See* playing techniques
- mouse editing
 - activating 212
 - deactivating 212
- mouse input 210
 - activating 196, 212
 - deactivating 196, 212
 - settings 211
- movements 20, 171
 - adding 171
 - exporting 80
 - flow headings 651
 - importing 78, 79
 - multiple on pages 609
 - splitting 501
 - tacets 640
- movies. *See* videos
- moving 439, 461, 464, 514
 - accents 807
 - accidentals 797
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - articulations 807, 808
 - bar numbers 832
 - bar rests 1275
 - barlines 455, 821
 - bars 631, 634–637
 - braces 865, 866
 - brackets 865, 866, 890, 893, 1072
 - breath marks 1013
 - caesuras 1013
 - cancellation naturals 1023
 - caret 223, 254
 - channels 724
 - chord diagrams 900
 - chord symbols 880–882, 890, 893
 - clefs 138, 461, 464, 908, 909
 - comments 500
 - counts 1243, 1257, 1267
 - crosshairs 517
 - cursor 274, 325, 395, 400
 - dives 1133, 1135
 - dynamics 461, 698, 922, 924, 934, 936, 938, 945, 949–952
 - fermatas 1013, 1015
 - figured bass 961, 965, 966
 - fingerings 900, 984, 987, 988
 - flow headings 615, 624
 - flows 173, 637, 638
 - frame breaks 633
 - frames 614, 615
 - glissando lines 1119
 - grace notes 1004, 1005, 1007
 - gradual dynamics 461, 922, 938
 - guitar bends 1131, 1133–1135
 - H-bars 1281
 - hairpins 461, 922, 938, 945
 - hammer-ons 1142
 - hold lines 1131
 - instrument changes 138
 - instruments 135, 136, 170, 732, 733, 736
 - jazz articulations 1147
 - Key Editor 674
 - key signatures 138, 1023
 - layouts 179
 - lines 1198–1202, 1215
 - lyric extender lines 1045
 - lyric hyphens 1045, 1046
 - lyrics 1037–1039, 1048, 1049
 - marcato 807
 - markers 1224
 - messa di voce 461, 938, 945
 - MIDI points 704
 - modifiers 936
 - multi-bar rests 1281
 - navigating. *See* navigation
 - notehead brackets 1071, 1072
 - notes 461, 466, 468, 507, 683, 685, 1062, 1440, 1442, 1443
 - notes to other staves 464, 465, 685, 851, 854
 - notes to other strings 1332

- moving (*continued*)
- numbered bar region counts 1257
 - octave lines 918
 - ornaments 1091
 - pages 442, 539
 - panning 726
 - parentheses 890, 893
 - pedal lines 91, 1163, 1167
 - percussion 149
 - piano roll 674
 - players 125–127, 170
 - playhead 441, 538, 539, 542
 - playing techniques 1184, 1185, 1188
 - pull-offs 1142
 - repeat counts 1243
 - resolutions 966
 - rests 507, 1275
 - rhythm dots 1062, 1063, 1442
 - rhythm slashes 1269
 - selection. *See* navigation
 - slash region counts 1267
 - slashes 1007
 - slurs 1294, 1302
 - staccato 807
 - staves 125–127, 513, 602, 603, 614, 616, 624
 - stop positions 453
 - stress marks 807
 - string indicators 995, 1184, 1185, 1188
 - subito 934
 - system breaks 633–635
 - systems 624, 627, 634, 635, 637, 638
 - tablature notes 1332
 - tabs 48
 - tacets 642
 - tapping 1142
 - tempo marks 709
 - tenuto 807
 - text 514, 1356, 1357
 - text on lines 1210, 1211
 - time signatures 1394, 1395
 - tremolos 1404
 - tuplets 464, 1417
 - vibrato bar 1135, 1184, 1188
 - view 440–442, 539, 674, 724
- mp. *See* dynamics
- MP3 files
- exporting 100, 101
- muffed notes. *See* dead notes
- multi-bar rests 640, 1245, 1279
- bar numbers 826, 828
 - barlines 306
 - clefs 1280, 1281
 - hiding 1279
 - key signatures 1280, 1281
 - moving 1281
 - showing 1279
 - signposts 450, 1281
 - single bars 1279
 - splitting 1279, 1281
 - tacets 640, 641
 - time signatures 1280, 1281
 - width 1280
- multi-note tremolos. *See* tremolos
- multi-pasting 458, 459
- multi-rests. *See* multi-bar rests
- multi-segment slurs 1298, 1299, 1301
- multi-staff instruments 1323
- beams 851–854, 1078
 - cross-staff 851–854, 1078
 - hiding staves 605–607, 621
 - slurs 273
 - stems 852, 1078
 - tremolos 851, 854
- multiple
- bar numbers per system 831
 - bounce roll. *See* tremolos
 - codas 1237
 - flows on pages 609
 - movements 171
 - segno 1237
 - staff input 222, 235
- multiple-voice contexts 1438
- articulations 805
 - dynamics 434, 931
 - fermatas 1012, 1014
 - grace notes 1002, 1285
 - guitar pre-bends 1129
 - inputting notes 232
 - note alignment 1440
 - notes 1444
 - ornaments 434, 1091
 - rests 1271, 1273–1275
 - rhythm dot consolidation 1062
 - slashes 1263, 1268
 - slurs 1285
 - stem direction 1002, 1075, 1444
 - ties 1369
 - voice column index 1442
- music
- arranging. *See* arranging
 - condensing. *See* condensing
 - deleting 127, 136, 174, 452, 455, 810–812
 - editing 210
 - extracts. *See* flows
 - fixing into frames 638
 - fixing into systems 635
 - playing back. *See* playback
 - transforming. *See* transformations
- music area 34
- making selections 424
 - moving music 440–442, 539
 - multiple windows 49
 - navigation. *See* navigation
 - opening flows 521
 - opening layouts 33, 43, 47
 - page arrangements 41, 50
 - panels 44
 - Play mode. *See* track overview
 - view options 40, 41, 50
 - zoom options 42, 443, 444
- music fonts 69
- substitutes 754
- Music Fonts dialog 753
- music frame chains 662
- propagating part formatting 643

- music frames [654](#)
 - frame chains. *See* music frame chains
 - fullness [506](#)
 - highlights [502](#), [624](#)
 - margins [614](#), [616](#), [624](#)
 - padding [506](#), [614](#), [616](#), [624](#)
 - vertical justification [621](#)
 - music symbols
 - character styles [759](#)
 - inputting [388](#), [391](#), [657](#)
 - text [388](#), [391](#), [657](#)
 - tokens [657](#)
 - MusicXML
 - barlines [450](#)
 - chord symbols [893](#)
 - dialog [84](#)
 - exporting [83](#), [84](#)
 - importing [82](#)
 - opening [72](#)
 - pedal lines [1179](#)
 - percussion [83](#)
 - repeat endings [1235](#)
 - resetting beaming [844](#)
 - signposts [450](#)
 - staff labels [1310](#)
 - muted
 - colors [549](#)
 - notes. *See* dead notes
 - mutes. *See* playing techniques
 - muting
 - channels [547](#), [720](#), [729](#)
 - colors [549](#)
 - deactivating [548](#), [717–719](#)
 - effects [729](#)
 - inserts [729](#)
 - instruments [547](#)
 - items [548](#), [549](#)
 - MIDI keyboards [216](#)
 - notes [215](#), [548](#), [549](#)
 - slash notes [466](#), [1258](#), [1260](#)
 - tracks [547](#), [717](#), [718](#)
 - voices [547](#)
 - mutual exclusion groups [771](#)
 - editing [779](#)
- N**
- names
 - channels [728](#)
 - composer [998](#)
 - drum sets [143](#)
 - flow headings [651](#)
 - flows [187](#), [188](#), [588](#), [997](#)
 - groups [151](#)
 - instrument filters [446](#), [449](#)
 - instruments. *See* instrument names
 - layouts [181](#), [183](#), [588](#)
 - lyricist [999](#)
 - mixer [720](#), [728](#)
 - noteheads [1057](#)
 - percussion kits [143](#), [151](#)
 - player groups [167](#), [169](#), [1317](#)
 - players [181–183](#), [656](#), [1313](#)
 - names (*continued*)
 - staff labels. *See* staff labels. *See also* instrument names
 - tokens [655](#)
 - naming schemes
 - file names [588](#)
 - narrow time signatures [1397](#)
 - Nashville
 - chord symbols [320](#), [872](#)
 - numbers [320](#)
 - natural harmonics [1081](#)
 - appearance [1085](#), [1087](#)
 - hiding [1082](#)
 - inputting [367](#), [1082](#)
 - showing [1082](#)
 - natural minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
 - naturale. *See* playing techniques
 - naturals
 - hiding [793](#), [801](#), [802](#), [1084](#)
 - inputting [244](#)
 - parentheses [793](#), [801](#), [1084](#)
 - showing [793](#), [801](#), [802](#), [1084](#)
 - navigation [65](#), [439](#)
 - bars [441](#)
 - caret [223](#)
 - chord symbols popover [325](#)
 - figured bass popover [400](#)
 - fingerings popover [274](#)
 - flows [440](#)
 - handles [511](#), [516](#), [624](#)
 - items [439](#)
 - jump bar [65](#), [66](#)
 - Key Editor [674](#)
 - layouts [43](#), [47](#)
 - lyrics popover [395](#)
 - mixer [724](#)
 - music area [439](#)
 - note input [224](#), [226](#), [227](#), [242](#)
 - notes [439](#)
 - pages [441](#), [442](#), [539](#)
 - part layouts [43](#), [47](#), [521](#)
 - percussion editor [674](#)
 - piano roll [674](#)
 - playback [538](#), [540](#), [542](#)
 - print preview area [36](#), [576](#)
 - rehearsal marks [442](#)
 - rhythmic grid [217](#)
 - selections [421–424](#), [439](#)
 - strings [154](#)
 - Write mode [439](#)
 - near send [739](#), [741](#)
 - nested
 - slurs [1286](#), [1295](#)
 - tuplets [1408](#), [1409](#)
 - new projects [71](#)
 - New York chord symbols [872](#)
 - niente [947](#)
 - circle [947](#), [948](#)
 - deleting [948](#)
 - duration [317](#)
 - inputting [309](#), [312](#), [313](#), [315](#), [948](#)
 - moving [922](#), [938](#)

- niente (*continued*)
 - styles 948
 - text 947, 948
- no chord symbols 323
- nodes 1081
 - changing 1083
- non-arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
- non-breaking spaces 392, 395, 1043
- non-drop frame timecodes 1226
- non-power of two time signatures. *See* time signatures
- non-sustaining instruments 953
 - velocity 691. *See also* Velocity editor
- non-transposing layouts 178
- nonuplets. *See* tuplets
- notated duration 687–689
 - played duration 687
 - requantizing 266
 - tool 669
- notation options 27, 747
 - barlines 816, 818
 - beaming 840
 - dialog 747
 - percussion kits 1426
 - rests 1274
 - saving as default 747
 - searching 747
 - voices 1439
- Notation Options dialog 747
- notation reference 791
- notation staves 1330
 - hiding 1331
 - showing 1331
- notations
 - appearance 663
 - changing 432
 - copying 457–459
 - editing 663
 - inputting 22, 271
 - panels 195
 - percussion kits 1426
 - popovers 22
 - position 663
 - properties 663
 - selecting 422–424
 - settings 745, 747
 - stacking order 518
 - tucking index 518
 - zoom options 42, 443, 444
- Notations toolbox 201
- notches
 - pedal lines. *See* pedal retakes
 - slurs 1289, 1290
 - ties 1366
- note and rest colors 56, 1064, 1275
 - changing 54, 56
 - exporting 585, 597
 - hiding 437, 549, 1064, 1439
 - inverting 55
 - muted 549
 - notehead sets 1057
 - notes out of range 54, 1064, 1330
 - printing 581, 597
 - rests 1275
- note and rest colors (*continued*)
 - tablature 1330
 - voices 54, 1439
- note brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
- note durations 14, 200, 259, 687, 689
 - changing 259, 684
 - chords 251
 - different 232
 - expression maps 762, 777
 - forcing 262, 861
 - glissando lines 1121
 - hiding 200
 - inputting 224, 227, 259, 262
 - inputting beats 302
 - Key Editor 682, 684
 - metronome marks 294
 - notated. *See* notated duration
 - percussion 238, 682, 684
 - playback 749, 769
 - played. *See* played duration
 - quantization 93
 - rhythm dot consolidation 1062
 - selecting 259, 261
 - showing 200
 - slash regions 1262
 - splitting 261
 - tablature 242
 - tempo equations 295
 - transformations 477
 - tuplets 254, 257
 - voices 232
- note event actions. *See* key switches
- note grouping 23, 860
 - beaming 840, 841, 843, 844, 860
 - changing 262, 861
 - cut common time 863
 - hemiola 262
 - meter 841, 861
 - note input 23, 24
 - pick-up bars 1386
 - rests 23
 - rhythm slashes 1262
 - ties 247
 - time signatures 24
- note input 223, 224, 227, 230, 681
 - adding notes 258, 488
 - caret 218, 223
 - chords 218, 251
 - Drum Pads panel 209
 - Fretboard panel 208
 - fretted instruments 208
 - grace notes 249
 - input pitch 215
 - inputting vs. editing 210
 - Insert mode 218
 - Keyboard panel 206
 - lock duration 472
 - MIDI 264, 266, 268
 - mouse input 212
 - multiple staves 222, 235
 - muting notes 215
 - percussion 94, 238, 240, 241, 682
 - piano keyboard 206

- note input (*continued*)
 - pitch 215
 - playing notes back 215
 - register selection 226
 - repitching notes 472
 - rests 1272
 - retrospective recording 266
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - starting 222
 - stem direction 241
 - strings 208
 - tablature 227, 242
 - ties 247
 - tuplets 254
 - voices 232
- note names 492
 - case 57
 - chord symbols 320, 322, 323, 877
 - harp pedaling 1153, 1154, 1159
 - horn branch indicators 979
 - inversion 489
 - language 57
 - middle C 51
 - MIDI trigger regions 420, 574
 - noteheads 1057
 - piano roll editor 678
 - pitch mapping 492
- note spacing 503, 507, 508, 687, 852, 1275, 1281, 1440
 - accidentals 797
 - activating 503
 - barlines 821
 - changing 507, 509, 1199, 1276, 1442
 - chord symbols 880
 - copying to other layouts 643
 - cross-staff beams 852
 - default 507
 - fullness 506
 - galley view 40
 - grace notes 1002
 - handles 509, 511
 - individual notes 509, 511
 - justification 506, 612
 - key signatures 1023, 1025
 - layout options 508, 745
 - layouts 507
 - lines 509, 1199
 - lyrics 508, 1035, 1037
 - rests 1276
 - reverting 512
 - rhythm dots 1442
 - stems 852
 - systems 506, 612
 - time signatures 1384
 - vertical lines 1199
 - voices 1442
- note spelling 473, 475
 - adding notes 488
 - automatic 475
 - layouts 476
 - resetting 476
 - transposing 489
- note tools popover 487
 - adding notes 258
 - transposing notes 472
- note values. *See* note durations
- note velocities
 - MIDI import 91, 268
- notehead sets 1052, 1053, 1057, 1058
 - colors 1057
 - designs 1053, 1057
 - ledger lines 1062
 - pitch-dependent 1057
 - resetting 1059
 - scale degree 1057
 - types 1052
- notehead-attached lines. *See* lines
- noteheads 1053
 - aikin 1057
 - arrows 1055
 - articulations 808
 - brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - changing 1058, 1059
 - circular 1053
 - colors 56, 1057
 - crosses 1054
 - cues. *See* cues
 - designs 1053, 1057–1059. *See also* notehead sets
 - diamond 1054, 1055, 1082, 1085
 - dotted 1056
 - dynamics 461
 - editing 1058
 - fermatas 1013
 - five-line staff 1423
 - funk 1057
 - hairpins 461
 - harmonics 1082, 1085
 - hiding 1060, 1065
 - large 1056
 - ledger lines 1062
 - lines 1205
 - moon 1056
 - muted 1056
 - note names 1057
 - overlapping 1440
 - parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - percussion 238, 682, 685, 1421, 1423–1425
 - pitch-dependent 1057
 - playing techniques 685, 1421, 1423–1425
 - rectangular 1056
 - resetting 1059
 - sets. *See* notehead sets
 - shapes 1053, 1057, 1058. *See also* notehead sets
 - showing 1060, 1065
 - size 433, 602, 617, 920, 1053, 1058, 1059
 - slashes 1056, 1258, 1421
 - square 1056
 - statistics 106
 - stemless 1079
 - time signatures 1391
 - triangular 1055
 - types 1053
 - unpitched percussion 1421, 1423
 - walker 1057
 - wedges 1055

- NotePerformer
trills 1106
- notes 23, 1052
above staves 258, 468, 851, 871, 915, 1062, 1323
accidentals 200, 244, 468–470, 473, 475, 476, 792
adding to existing notes 258
alignment 924
appearance 663
arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
articulations 200, 805–807
auditioning 215, 216
auxiliary 1102
beaming 840, 841
below staves 258, 468, 851, 871, 915, 1062, 1323
brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
brass fingerings 989
changing pitch 468, 472
chord symbol alignment 880
chords 251, 254, 326, 327
colors 54, 56, 549, 1057, 1064, 1439
condensing. *See* condensing
copying 457–459, 686, 805
crossing to other staves 464, 851, 854
cues. *See* cues
dead notes 1141
deleting 452, 455, 687, 810, 1403
deselecting 429
dotted 230, 841, 860, 863
durations 200, 259, 261, 682, 684, 687
dynamics 309, 691, 694, 921. *See also* Dynamics editor
dynamics alignment 923, 924
editing 196, 663
editorial. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also* comments
enharmonic spelling 473, 475, 476
filters 429
fixing duration 262, 861
fonts 751, 753
ghost notes 1067
glissando lines. *See* glissando lines
grace notes 249, 1002, 1004
grouping 841, 860
guitar bends 354, 1122
guitar post-bends 356, 1125
guitar pre-bends 355, 1124
harmonics. *See* harmonics
harp pedaling 1153, 1154
hiding 574, 1060, 1065, 1263
hiding ledger lines 1062
hiding stems 1079
horizontal spacing. *See* note spacing
horn branch indicators 990
inputting 214, 223, 224, 227, 230, 237, 238, 251, 262, 681, 682
Insert mode 237, 451
inverting 478, 479, 489
jazz articulations. *See* jazz articulations
Key Editor 667, 678
key signatures 469, 470, 473, 475, 476
laissez vibrer ties 1372
ledger lines 1061, 1062
length 259, 682, 684
- notes (*continued*)
lines. *See* lines. *See also* glissando lines
lock duration 472
lyric alignment 1037
moving 478, 480, 1062, 1421, 1424, 1440, 1442
moving graphically. *See* note spacing
moving rhythmically 461, 683
moving to other instruments 465, 685
moving to other staves 464, 685, 851, 854
moving to other strings 1332
multiple-voice contexts 1440, 1444
muting 547, 548, 1141, 1180
navigation 439
notated duration 24, 688
note spacing 507
notehead designs 1053
notehead sets 1052
order 1442, 1443
out of range 54, 1064, 1332
overlapping 259, 1439, 1440, 1442
overrides 689
parentheses 1066, 1067
partials 1081
pedal lines 1167
percussion editor 676, 679, 681–685
percussion kits 142, 238, 682, 1419, 1421, 1428, 1435
percussion maps 781
piano roll editor 667, 676, 678, 681, 683–685
pitch 468, 472
pitch mappings 482
pitch-dependent noteheads 1057
Play mode 681
playback 540, 545, 547, 548, 761
played duration 687, 689
popover 487
properties 663
ranges 54, 1064
register 226, 468, 472
removing stem direction changes 1078
repitching 472
requantizing 266
resetting 689
respelling 473, 475, 476
rests 1272
retakes 1167
reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
rhythm dots 230, 1062, 1063, 1442
rhythm slashes 1259
rhythmic grid 217
rolls. *See* tremolos
rotating 480
scale mapping 484
secondary beams 855
selecting 421–424, 429, 439, 676
showing 1060, 1065, 1263
size 433, 602, 617, 920
slash regions 1263
slashes 1258
slurs 200, 805, 1286
spacing. *See* note spacing
speed 259, 261, 859, 1335
spelling 473, 475, 476

notes (*continued*)

- splitting 196, 261, 1373
- staff spacing 603
- statistics 106
- stem direction 466, 1074, 1076, 1077, 1435
- stem length 1078
- stemlets 858
- stems. *See* stems
- string fingerings 990, 991, 1059
- string indicators. *See* string indicators
- strings 1332
- tablature 1332
- terminology 14
- ties 24, 247, 807, 1371
- time signatures 1391
- transforming 477
- transposing 468–470, 472, 489, 685
- tremolos. *See* tremolos
- trill intervals 1099, 1100
- trills 1094
- tuplets 1408, 1410
- types 200
- unbeaming 843
- undamped 1372
- unisons 1440
- unscaling 1004, 1410
- velocity 691. *See also* Velocity editor
- voices 232, 466, 467

Notes panel 195, 200

Notes toolbox 196

November music font 751, 753

nudging. *See* moving

numbered bar regions 828, 1253

- changing number 1255
- counts 1254–1256
- font style 1250, 1254
- frequency 1255
- handles 430, 1253
- hiding 1254
- highlights 1247
- inputting 419
- length 430
- moving 461
- panel 409
- parentheses 1256
- placement 1257
- popover 408
- showing 1254
- staff-relative placement 1257
- systems 1254

numbers

- backups 105
- bar repeats 1247, 1248
- barlines 551, 1230
- bars. *See* bar numbers
- bars per system 629
- beam lines 856
- chord diagrams 900, 901, 903, 904
- condensing 1320
- empty bars 106
- exporting 106, 107
- figured bass. *See* figured bass
- flows. *See* flow numbers

numbers (*continued*)

- frets. *See* frets. *See also* tablature
- hyphens 1045, 1046
- instruments 127, 131, 132, 733, 1315
- layouts 180
- lyric lines 1047–1049
- moving 514
- multi-bar rests 1279
- numbered bar regions 1253–1255
- pages 1150, 1151
- plug-in instances 522, 525, 526
- rehearsal marks 1217, 1218
- repeats 551, 1230
- rhythm slashes 1265
- slash region counts 1265
- slur segments 1299
- staff labels 1315, 1320
- staff lines 608, 1428, 1429
- statistics 106
- staves 106, 605, 1323
- strings. *See* string indicators
- systems 106, 630
- systems per frame 630
- tablature. *See* tablature
- time signatures 1390
- tuplets 1416
- value fields 666
- verses 1049

numerators

- styles 1389, 1390
- time signatures 1381

numeric value fields 666

nut

- chord diagrams 895
- fretted instruments 154
- tablature 157, 159, 1330

O

oboe. *See* instruments

octatonic

- chord symbols 323
- scales 484, 485

octave divisions 1028

- EDO 1028
- playback 764, 1119, 1120
- transposing 469, 470

octave lines 915

- alignment 916, 917
- crosshairs 517
- deleting 455
- Engrave mode 918
- filter 429
- frame breaks 918
- handles 918
- hiding 917
- hooks 918
- inputting 329, 331, 333, 335
- layouts 917
- length 430, 514, 918
- moving 461, 464, 514
- panel 335
- placement 518

- octave lines (*continued*)
 - popover 329, 331, 333
 - position 518, 916, 917
 - selecting 423
 - showing 917
 - signposts 917
 - size 433
 - stacking order 919
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - system breaks 918
 - tucking index 518
 - types 331, 915
- octave transpositions 468–470
 - cautionary accidentals 801
 - clefs 132, 330, 912, 913
 - figured bass 969
 - instruments 132
 - inversions 478, 479, 489
 - octave lines 331, 915
 - pitch mapping 482, 483, 492
 - scale mapping 484, 485, 492
- Octaver 722, 728
- octuplets. *See* tuplets
- odd-numbered layouts
 - booklets 591
 - printing 581, 591
- offsets 514, 666
 - accidentals 797
 - bar numbers 831, 832, 834–837
 - chord symbols 882, 893
 - fret numbers 903, 904
 - instrument changes 138
 - lyric lines 1039
 - multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 - notes. *See* note spacing
 - played duration 669, 683, 684, 688, 689
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - resetting 436
 - rhythm dots 1442
 - text 1356, 1357
 - timecodes 190, 1227
 - tuplets 1417
 - videos 190
 - voice columns 1442, 1443
- omissions
 - chord diagrams 895, 904
 - chord symbols 322
- opacity 450, 586, 596
- open
 - key signatures 1021
 - meter 283, 287, 288, 1234, 1382, 1389, 1391
 - strings. *See* open strings
 - time signatures 283, 287, 288, 1382, 1389, 1391
- open strings 1081
 - chord diagrams 895, 904
 - harmonics 1081
 - itches 154, 156
- opening 72
 - auto-saved files 104
 - documentation 69
 - editors 675, 716
 - files 72, 104
 - flows 521
- opening (*continued*)
 - Key Editor 667, 675, 716
 - layouts 43
 - MIDI files 72, 85
 - mixer 717–719
 - MusicXML files 72
 - panels 44
 - projects 71–73, 104
 - Properties panel 44, 205, 663
 - sound libraries 529
 - tabs 45, 47
 - templates 71
 - transport window 555
 - video tutorials 69
 - video window 192
 - VST instruments 529
 - windows 49, 529
 - zones 44
- optical spacing
 - cross-staff beams 852
- optimized staves 603–605. *See also* condensing
- optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also*
- parenthesized chord symbols
- options 27, 663
 - items 663
 - layout 745
 - notation 663, 747
 - page sizes 594
 - playback 749
 - preferences 58
 - properties 663
 - searching 58, 745, 747, 749
 - text formatting 389
 - toolbar 30
 - transport 30, 32
 - workspaces 30, 31
 - zoom 38, 42, 443, 444
- orchestral
 - cues. *See* cues
 - instrument filters. *See* instrument filters
 - order 125, 126, 135, 167, 180, 1317
 - panning 726
 - project templates 71, 77, 114
 - shorthand 114
 - staff grouping 866, 1317
 - stage templates 731
- orchestrating. *See* arranging
- order 518
 - accidentals 795, 797, 1020
 - actions 767
 - articulations 806
 - band 125
 - chord symbols 887
 - comments 500
 - expression maps 762
 - fermatas 1185
 - flows 75, 173
 - frame chains 662
 - instrument filters 446
 - instruments 127, 131, 132, 135, 149, 182, 1315
 - jazz 125
 - key signatures 1020
 - layouts 179

- order (*continued*)
 - lines 1198, 1199
 - metronome marks 1345
 - MIDI messages 767
 - names 135, 182
 - notes 1442, 1443
 - orchestral 125–127, 135, 167, 1317
 - pages 41, 50
 - players 125–127, 167, 1317
 - playing techniques 1185
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - repeat markers 1237
 - rhythm dots 1062, 1442
 - score 125–127, 167, 1317
 - staff labels 1315
 - string indicators 1185
 - tabs 48
 - tempo marks 1345
 - voices 747, 1439, 1442
 - Orff instruments. *See* instruments
 - organ. *See* instruments
 - orientation
 - changing 600
 - exporting 594
 - landscape 593, 594
 - portrait 593, 594
 - printing 581, 594
 - ornaments 1090
 - acciaccaturas. *See* grace notes
 - accidentals 1090, 1104
 - alignment 1091
 - appoggiaturas. *See* grace notes
 - changing 432
 - colors 56
 - crosshairs 517
 - deleting 455
 - filter 429
 - inputting 340, 341, 346, 347
 - intervals 1090
 - jazz 1146. *See also* jazz articulations
 - length 430
 - moving 461, 464, 478, 480, 514, 1091
 - panel 345, 347
 - placement 1091
 - popover 341, 346
 - position 1091
 - reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rotating 480
 - selecting 423
 - slurs 1092
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - text borders 756, 1359
 - trills. *See* trills
 - types 341
 - Ornaments panel 347, 348, 350
 - ossia staves 1323
 - condensing 1323
 - moving 461, 464
 - playback 1323
 - signposts 450, 1323
 - staff spacing 603, 621
 - vertical spacing 603, 620, 621
 - ottava lines. *See* octave lines
 - outputs
 - audio export 58
 - mixer 567, 717, 718
 - panning 731–733
 - plug-ins 567
 - reverb 738, 739, 741, 742
 - volume 725
 - overdubbing
 - MIDI recording 266
 - overlapping
 - accidentals 795, 797
 - articulations 808
 - bar numbers 832
 - barlines 925
 - dynamics 925
 - notes 254, 259, 450, 623, 1062, 1439, 1440, 1442
 - slash regions 1268
 - slurs 1287
 - staves 600, 602, 603, 617, 623
 - text 450, 623, 1357
 - voices 1062, 1439, 1440, 1442
 - overline text 389, 756, 759
 - instrument names 184
 - staff labels 184
 - Override Percussion Noteheads dialog 1423
 - overrides
 - barlines 306, 307, 450, 819
 - beams 841, 843, 844, 854
 - clefs 112, 330, 332, 333, 910, 912
 - dynamics 696, 699
 - endpoints 571
 - flow headings 651
 - MIDI points 705
 - note duration 689
 - octave lines 917
 - paragraph styles 1356
 - placement 434
 - playback templates 558, 559, 561, 564, 571, 572
 - played duration 689
 - removing 689
 - rests 245
 - space templates 739, 741, 742, 744
 - stage templates 735
 - text 1356
 - transposition 112, 330, 910, 912, 917
 - velocity 689
 - overscroll 442
 - overtones. *See* partials
- ## P
- padding
 - auxiliary notes 1102
 - chord diagrams 898
 - chord symbols 872, 888, 893
 - clefs 909
 - dynamics 931
 - frames 598
 - harp pedaling 1158
 - lines 1214
 - music frames 506, 614, 616
 - percussion legends 1434
 - playing techniques 1183

- padding (*continued*)
 - rests. *See* padding rests
 - silence 101
 - text 756, 1214, 1360
 - time signatures 1394
 - trills 1102
- padding rests 1271
 - hiding 1264
 - slash regions 1264
- page arrangements 40, 41, 50
- page breaks. *See* frame breaks
- page formatting 598
 - bars per system 629
 - blank staves 608
 - casting off 629
 - copying 628
 - divisi 1329
 - empty staves 605, 608
 - fixing 629–631, 638, 643, 645, 646
 - flow headings 598, 651
 - formatting 647
 - left pages 609
 - locking 631
 - make into frame 638
 - make into system 635
 - moving systems 627
 - multi-bar rests 1281
 - multiple flows 609
 - page size 600
 - page templates 601, 647, 648
 - resetting 632, 651
 - staff size 617
 - staff spacing 603, 620, 628, 1357
 - staves 606, 607
 - systems 513, 603, 630
 - tacets 641
 - text 753, 754, 756, 759, 760, 1357
 - titles 647, 651
- page margins 598, 614
 - changing 601, 616
 - hiding 437
- page numbers 649, 1150
 - appearance 1150
 - count 659
 - deleting 1150
 - flow headings 611, 1151
 - flows 659
 - font styles 1150
 - guide 1152
 - hiding 611, 1151, 1152
 - horizontal alignment 1150
 - initial 609, 1151
 - numeral style 1151
 - page templates 649
 - paragraph styles 1150
 - showing 611, 1152
 - size 1150
 - tokens 659
 - total 659
- page ranges
 - exporting 583, 584
 - flows 583, 584
- page ranges (*continued*)
 - printing 583, 584
 - selecting 590
- page size 593, 594
 - changing 600
 - graphics files 585
 - layout options 745
 - MusicXML files 82
 - new projects 69
- page template overrides 1352
 - removing 651
- page template sets 647
 - applying 601
 - flow headings 647, 651
 - layouts 601
- page templates 25, 647, 648
 - assigning to pages 610
 - composer 648
 - copying 647, 648
 - default 648
 - first 610, 648
 - flow headings. *See* flow headings
 - page numbers 649, 1150
 - project templates 77
 - sets. *See* page template sets
 - titles 648
 - types 648
- page turns. *See* frame breaks
- page view 40, 50
 - arrangements 41, 50
 - bar numbers 829
 - flows 501
 - navigation 441, 442
 - page numbers 1152
- pages
 - arrangements 41, 50
 - background color 54, 55
 - breaks. *See* frame breaks
 - changing view 50
 - color 53, 55
 - copying 647, 648
 - deleting 651
 - dragging 442
 - edges. *See* page margins
 - editing 651
 - exporting 583–585, 590
 - facing 647, 648
 - flow headings. *See* flow headings
 - formatting 997
 - frames. *See* frames
 - fullness 506, 602, 604, 617, 618
 - going to 441
 - height 600, 601, 604
 - hiding empty staves 606
 - layouts 598, 629, 630, 647
 - left 647, 648
 - locking 631
 - making from selection 638
 - margins 598, 601, 614–616
 - multiple flows 609
 - navigation 441, 442
 - numbers. *See* page numbers
 - orientation 600

pages (*continued*)

page templates. *See* page templates. *See also* flow headings
 printing 583, 584, 590, 594
 ranges 590
 rectangles. *See* frames
 right 647, 648
 setup 594
 size. *See* page size
 staff spacing 628
 statistics 106
 templates. *See* page templates. *See also* flow headings
 tokens 659
 total number 106, 659
 turns. *See* frame breaks
 view options 38
 width 600, 601, 612

Pages panel 502

palettes. *See* panels

palm mute. *See* playing techniques. *See also* guitar techniques

panels 37, 201

accidentals 281
 arpeggio signs 345, 348
 bar repeats 409
 barlines 303, 307
 bars 303, 305
 clefs 331, 333, 335
 drum pads 209
 dynamics 312, 315
 Engrave mode 502, 663
 flows 109, 120
 formatting 504
 fretboard 208
 glissando lines 345, 350
 guitar techniques 345, 354, 359, 361, 362, 364
 hiding 31, 42, 44
 holds 339
 jazz articulations 345, 352
 Key Editor 667
 key signatures 279, 281
 keyboard 206
 layouts 109, 117, 577
 MIDI instruments. *See* track inspector
 mixer 717
 notations 204
 notes 200
 octave lines 335
 ornaments 345, 347, 348, 350, 352
 pauses 339
 pedal lines 371, 377
 Play mode 519
 players 109, 110
 playing techniques 371, 374, 377
 Print mode 576
 print options 578
 properties 663
 repeat endings 409
 repeat markers 409
 rhythm slashes 409
 Setup mode 109
 showing 31, 42, 44, 205

panels (*continued*)

tempo 296, 299
 time signatures 285, 288, 291
 tonality systems 281
 tremolos 409, 416
 VST instruments. *See* track inspector
 Write mode 195, 200, 204, 663

panning 718, 720, 726, 730–733, 736, 739, 741

paper

color 53
 duplex printing 592
 orientation 593, 594
 size 593, 594, 600

paradiddle 224, 259, 1408

paragraph styles 753, 756, 829, 1219

bar numbers 829, 830
 borders 756
 changing 756, 758, 760, 1356
 composer 998
 condensing 1318
 copyright 999
 creating 758
 default 760
 deleting 756
 dialog 756
 divisi 1318
 exporting 756
 flow headings 651
 horizontal alignment 756
 importing 756
 inputting text 388
 instrument change labels 142
 instrument names 1318
 lyricist 999
 lyrics 1041, 1042
 missing fonts 73
 overrides 1356
 page numbers 1150
 percussion kits 1319
 player group labels 1317, 1318
 rehearsal marks 1219
 repeat markers 1237
 resetting 1356
 saving as default 756
 staff labels 1318, 1319
 tacets 640
 titles 648, 756, 997
 verse numbers 1041, 1042

Paragraph Styles dialog 756

parallel

lines 840, 855, 1012, 1115, 1186, 1324

parent styles

paragraph styles 756, 758

parentheses

accidentals 793, 801, 1084
 bar numbers 838
 bar repeats 1247, 1249
 capo chord symbols 158, 872
 chord symbols. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
 counts 1249, 1254, 1256, 1265, 1267
 dynamics 929
 figured bass 397, 960, 963
 fingerings 274, 276, 980, 981

- parentheses (*continued*)
- fret numbers 1122, 1127
 - ghost notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - guitar bends 1122, 1124
 - harmonics 1084
 - hiding 890
 - inputting 318, 324, 395, 397, 793, 890, 929, 960, 963, 1067, 1084
 - instrument transpositions 1315
 - metronome marks 1341, 1343
 - moving 893, 1072
 - noteheads. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - numbered bar regions 1254, 1256
 - octave line numerals 915
 - padding 893
 - pedal continuation signs 1175, 1176
 - percussion notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - playing techniques 1188
 - shape 891, 963, 1067
 - showing 890
 - size 892
 - slash regions 1265, 1267
 - staff labels 1315
 - string shift indicators 1059
 - style 891
 - tablature 1085, 1122, 1124, 1127
 - tempo marks 1341, 1343
 - thickness 891
 - tie chains 1069
 - time signatures 283, 287, 1389, 1392
 - trills 1102
 - vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
- parenthesized chord symbols 889, 1066
- capos 158, 872
 - moving 893
 - padding 893
 - showing 890
 - single 890
 - size 889, 891, 892
 - style 891
- part formatting 643, 645
- system formatting 643
- part layouts. *See* layouts
- part names 181, 183
- partial
- beams 855
 - capos 159–161
 - harp pedaling 1159
 - hiding. *See* erased backgrounds
- partial bars. *See* pick-up bars
- partials 1081, 1083
- parts. *See* layouts
- pasting. *See* copying
- pataflafla. *See* grace notes. *See also* sixteenth notes
- patches
- endpoints 567
 - playback 567, 761, 780
- path
- audio 100
 - backups 106
 - flows 80
 - layouts 587
 - MIDI files 95, 96
- path (*continued*)
- MusicXML files 83
 - projects 656
 - tempo tracks 98
- patterns
- chord diagrams 894, 902–904
 - drum sets 94
 - Groove Agent 94
 - inversion 478, 479
 - mapping 482–485, 492
 - MIDI trigger regions 420, 574
 - pitch 482, 491
 - repeating 457, 482, 491
 - retrograde 478, 479
 - rotating 480, 481
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- pauses 1010, 1012
- appearance 432
 - barlines 1015
 - breath marks. *See* breath marks
 - caesuras. *See* caesuras
 - changing 1013
 - colors 56
 - crosshairs 517
 - default settings 1012
 - deleting 455, 1276
 - duration 432, 1016–1018
 - fermatas 1011, 1014
 - filter 429
 - hiding 1276
 - inputting 336–339
 - linked 1013
 - moving 461, 514, 1015
 - multiple at same position 1013
 - panel 339
 - playback 542, 1016–1018
 - popover 336, 338
 - position 1012
 - rests. *See* rests
 - selecting 423, 429
 - single staves 1013
 - staff-relative placement 1012
 - types 336, 1010, 1016
- PDF files 595
- color 596
 - exporting 585, 586, 588
 - file names 588
 - flows 585, 588
 - fonts 596
 - key commands 60
 - layout numbers 180
 - layouts 585, 586
 - page size 585
 - project preview 75
- peaking 725
- pedal level changes 1162, 1163, 1165, 1166
- end level 1166
 - handles 1163
 - inputting 1165
 - removing 1167
 - start level 1165, 1166

- pedal lines 1153, 1161
 - alignment 1162, 1163, 1166, 1167, 1169, 1170
 - appearance 1171, 1173, 1176–1178
 - brackets 1175, 1176
 - changing 432
 - colors 56
 - continuation lines 1161, 1171, 1173–1175
 - crosshairs 517
 - dashed 1173
 - dashes 1174
 - deleting 455
 - duration 1178
 - end signs 1172, 1173
 - Engrave mode 1163
 - filter 429
 - formatting 1171–1173, 1175
 - gaps 1174
 - grace notes 1168
 - handles 1163
 - harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
 - hiding 1171–1173
 - hooks 1163, 1171, 1172
 - inputting 367, 369, 375, 377
 - length 430, 514, 1163, 1167, 1170
 - levels. *See* pedal level changes
 - lifts 1162
 - merging 1170
 - MIDI controllers 1178
 - MIDI import 85, 91, 270
 - MIDI recording 268, 270
 - moving 91, 461, 514, 1163, 1167
 - MusicXML import 1179
 - muting in playback 548
 - notes 1167
 - order 1167
 - panel 371, 377
 - parentheses 1175, 1176
 - percussion 1180
 - playback 1178
 - popover 369, 375
 - position 1167, 1168
 - releases 1171
 - removing retakes 1167
 - retakes. *See* pedal retakes
 - signposts 450
 - splitting 1169
 - staff-relative placement 1167
 - start signs 1171, 1176
 - text 1176–1178
 - thickness 1175
 - types 369, 1161
- pedal retakes 1162
 - handles 1163
 - inputting 369, 375, 377, 378, 1170
 - notes 1167
 - pedal level 1166
 - removing 1167
 - types 1164
- pedals
 - harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
 - piano. *See* pedal lines
- percentages
 - Engrave mode 506
 - horizontal spacing 506, 508, 612
 - note duration 769, 1308
 - scale size 433, 581, 594, 892, 981
 - tempo marks 1336, 1344
 - vertical spacing 506, 604, 621
- percussion
 - adding 112, 114, 124, 133, 146
 - articulations 1421
 - drum sets. *See* drum sets
 - grace notes 250
 - groups 167, 1317
 - instrument changes 133, 136
 - kits. *See* percussion kits
 - laissez vibrer ties 1372
 - legends. *See* percussion legends
 - MIDI 38, 667, 679, 701, 780
 - note input 94, 238, 240, 241, 681, 682
 - noteheads 685, 1421, 1423–1425
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - part layouts 176, 1429
 - part names 181, 183
 - pitched percussion. *See* instruments
 - playing techniques 786
 - reverb. *See* stage templates
 - rudiments 224, 250, 259, 1002, 1399, 1405, 1408
 - staff labels 1313, 1317, 1319
 - staff lines 143, 152, 1428, 1429
 - system objects 1327
 - tremolos 786, 1421
 - unpitched percussion. *See* unpitched percussion
- percussion editor 679
 - copying notes 686
 - deleting notes 687
 - height 673, 674
 - inputting notes 681
 - moving notes 683, 685
 - navigation 674
 - note duration 682, 684, 687, 689
 - played vs. notated durations 687
 - playhead 539
 - playing techniques 679
 - scrolling 539, 674
 - selecting notes 676
 - tools 669
 - tracks 530
 - zoom 674
- Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog 1421
- percussion kits 142, 1419
 - adding instruments 146
 - adding to players 112, 133
 - caret 238
 - changing instruments 148
 - creating 112, 133, 142, 143, 146, 147
 - drum sets. *See* drum sets
 - dynamics 1427
 - editing area 143, 1428
 - exporting 152
 - filtering instruments 143
 - five-line staff 1322, 1428
 - gap sizes 152
 - grace notes 250

- percussion kits (*continued*)
- grids 150–152, 1428
 - Groove Agent 574
 - groups 150–152
 - hits 1258, 1261, 1263
 - importing 153
 - individual instruments vs. kits 1419
 - inputting notes 94, 238, 682
 - instrument order 149
 - legends 1430
 - MIDI 38, 667, 679, 701, 780
 - moving notes 465
 - naming 143, 150, 151
 - notation options 1426
 - notations 1426
 - note input 240, 241, 681
 - noteheads 685, 1421, 1423–1425
 - patterns 574
 - playing techniques 685, 1420, 1421, 1424
 - presentation types 143, 1419, 1428, 1429
 - removing instruments 147
 - rests 747
 - rhythm slashes 1258, 1260, 1261, 1263
 - routing 569
 - rudiments 250, 1002
 - setting up 143, 240
 - single-line instruments 1428
 - spacing 152
 - staff labels 143, 150, 151, 1310, 1319, 1428
 - staff lines 143, 152, 1428, 1429
 - staff position 149, 240, 1421
 - staff-relative legend placement 434
 - staves 143, 1419, 1428, 1429
 - stem direction 143, 241, 747, 1435
 - stickings 1427
 - tracks 520, 531
 - voices 143, 747, 1435, 1436
- percussion legends 1430
- adding 1430
 - backgrounds 1433
 - changing 1431
 - crosshairs 517
 - erased backgrounds 1433, 1434
 - handles 1432
 - instrument names 1432
 - layouts 1430
 - length 1432
 - padding 1434
 - position 1430
 - ranges 1430, 1432
 - signposts 450, 1430
 - sounding instruments 1432
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - text 1433
 - types 1430, 1431
- percussion maps 780
- creating 784
 - custom 784
 - dialog 781
 - endpoints 522, 567, 570
 - exporting 785
 - file format 785
 - filters 781
- percussion maps (*continued*)
- importing 785
 - linking 522, 570
 - MIDI import 88
 - MIDI notes 38, 780
 - note input 240
 - playback techniques 781
 - resetting 781
- Percussion Maps dialog 781
- percussion stickings 1427
- perfect intervals 469, 470, 472, 487
- performance instructions 647, 648, 997, 1352
- adding 388
 - parts 388
 - playing techniques. *See* playing techniques
- period 14
- dynamics 934, 943
 - lyrics 1031
 - possibile 934
 - rhythm dots 196, 230
 - subito 934
 - tempo marks 1343
- Petaluma music font 751, 753
- Phaser 722, 728
- phrases
- bar repeats 432, 1246
 - chord symbol regions 882
 - dynamics 313, 949, 954–956
 - slurs 1283
- phrygian
- chord symbols 323, 885
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- piano 130
- arpeggio signs 347, 348
 - beams 851–854
 - braces 867
 - chord symbol playback 535
 - cross-staff 851–854, 1078
 - depressed notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - dynamics. *See* dynamics
 - glissando lines 1119
 - hand marks. *See* lines
 - level changes 1162, 1167
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - pedal lines. *See* pedal lines
 - playback 1178
 - position in score 125–127
 - retakes 1162, 1167, 1170
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - score order 125–127
 - slurs 273
 - stems 232, 852, 1438
 - substitution fingering 972
 - tremolos 414, 416, 851
 - voices 232, 1438
- piano roll editor 678
- copying notes 686
 - deleting notes 687
 - height 673, 674
 - independent voice playback 678
 - inputting notes 681
 - middle C 51
 - moving notes 683

- piano roll editor (*continued*)
navigation 674
note duration 681, 684, 687, 689
pitch 51, 678, 681, 685
played vs. notated durations 687
playhead 539
scrolling 539, 674
selecting notes 676
tools 669
tracks 530
transposing notes 685
tuplets 678
zoom 674
- piccolo. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- pick-up bars 1382, 1386
deleting beats 302, 452, 810, 811
inputting 283, 285, 289, 291, 452
signposts 450
turning bars into 452, 1386
- pictures
videos 189
- pincé. *See* ornaments
- pinch harmonics 1085, 1089
- PingPongDelay 722, 728
- pinky finger 981
inputting 277
popover 277
- pit band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
- pitch
accidentals 244, 469, 470, 473, 475, 476, 792
bends. *See* pitch bends
changing 51, 156, 468–470, 472, 685
changing string 1332
chord diagrams 903, 904
clefs 332, 333, 907
click 267, 533
concert 178
contour emphasis 955
dips 1142
display 38
expression maps 762, 776
filters 429
fretted instrument strings 156
guitar strings 156
guitar techniques 1142
harmonics 1081–1083
identifying 38
input 215
instruments 132, 134
inverting 478, 479, 489
jazz articulations 1145
key signatures 1019
mapping 482, 484
metronome click 267, 533
microtonal 487, 800, 1028
middle C 51
MIDI 38, 667, 678, 679, 700, 701, 761, 780, 1119
MIDI trigger regions 420, 574
note input 226, 244
noteheads 1052, 1057
octave lines 333, 335, 915
open strings 154, 156
- pitch (*continued*)
ornaments 1090
partials 1081, 1083
piano roll editor 678, 685
playback 545
popover 487
ranges 764, 1064, 1119, 1120
repeating 482, 491
reversing 478, 479. *See also* retrograde
rhythm slashes 233, 1260
rotating 480, 481, 491
strings 154, 156, 903, 904, 1059, 1153
transposed 132, 178
transposing. *See* transposing. *See also* transposed pitch
trills 1097, 1099, 1100, 1103, 1104, 1107
- pitch before duration 227
accidentals 214
activating 196
articulations 214
rhythm dots 214
- pitch bends 1115, 1122
expression maps 764
glissando lines 764, 1119, 1120
guitar. *See* guitar bends
microtonal 764
MIDI controllers 700, 703
- pitch contour emphasis 955
- pitch mapping 482, 483, 492
- pitched percussion. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- più. *See* tempo marks. *See also* dynamic modifiers
- pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
- placement
articulations 808
breath marks 1013
caesuras 1013
changing 434
chord symbols 882
dynamics 922
fermatas 1013
fingerings 971, 975
grace notes 1002
harp pedal diagrams 1158
lines 1198, 1201, 1202
lyrics 1035
octave lines 919
order 518
ornaments 1091
pauses 1012
pedal lines 1167
playing techniques 434, 1184
rehearsal marks 1216
rests 1271, 1274, 1275
slurs 1283, 1286, 1292
tempo marks 1336
ties 1368, 1377
tremolos 1400
tucking index 518, 919
voices 1440
- plain font 753, 754, 756, 1352
bar numbers 829
chord symbols 877

- plain font (*continued*)
 figured bass 968
 fingerings 906, 979
 playing techniques 1180
 rehearsal marks 1219
 string indicators 993
 tablature 1334
 tasto solo 968
 tempo marks 1339
 time signatures 1397, 1398
- Play mode 19, 519
 channels. *See* channels. *See also* tracks
 deleting notes 687
 Endpoint Setup dialog 567
 exporting expression maps 780
 expression maps 761, 773
 inputting notes 681
 loading sounds 527, 528, 558, 564
 MIDI instruments 522, 526, 528, 558, 564
 mixer. *See* mixer
 moving notes 683
 note durations 682, 684, 687, 689
 overrides 689
 panels 37, 519, 522
 percussion editor 679
 percussion maps 780
 piano roll editor 678
 playback 540, 749
 playhead. *See* playhead
 switching 43, 519
 toolboxes 519
 track overview 520
 tracks 530
 transport 32, 555
 VST and MIDI panel 525
 VST instruments 522, 525, 527, 528, 558, 564
 window elements 519
 zooming 537, 674
- playback 540, 558, 787, 1329
 accents 809
 activating 30, 540, 542
 arpeggio signs 1112, 1113
 articulations 545, 546, 749, 762, 809
 audio buffer size 268, 269
 bar repeats 1246
 bracketed noteheads 1067
 breath marks 1016
 bypassing inserts 729
 caesuras 1016, 1018
 changing sound libraries 564
 channels. *See* channels. *See also* tracks
 chord symbols 522, 535, 536
 chords 216
 click 267, 532, 533, 540, 555, 706
 deactivating 542
 dead notes 1141
 default settings 564, 735, 742, 744
 default tempo 455, 1335
 delay 722, 727, 728, 769, 1121
 dynamic curve 954
 dynamics 215, 545, 546, 694, 769, 931, 953–955
 elapsed time 555, 558
 endpoints 522, 567, 569–572
- playback (*continued*)
 excluding items 548
 exporting audio 100, 101
 expression maps 761, 762
 faders 717, 718, 725
 fast-forwarding 538
 fermatas 1016, 1017
 fixed tempo 543
 flows 569
 follow tempo 543
 gap between flows 545
 gaps 1016–1018
 ghost notes 1067
 glissando lines 764, 1119–1121, 1153
 grace notes 1009
 guitar bends 1122
 harmonics 1081–1083
 hiding notes 1263
 instrument sounds 528, 529, 558, 564
 instruments 545, 546, 761, 780
 jazz articulations 787, 1145
 Keyboard panel 206
 legato 749, 769, 1308
 line 538, 539
 loading sounds 528, 529, 558, 564
 marcato 809
 metronome 555
 metronome click 533
 microtones 764
 MIDI controllers 701
 MIDI thru 216
 mixer. *See* mixer
 multiple windows 49
 muting 547, 548, 717
 mutual exclusion groups 779
 note durations 687, 749, 769
 note velocity 691
 notes 215, 216, 545, 546
 number of times played 551, 1230
 options. *See* playback options
 ornaments 1090
 ossia staves 1323
 overrides 689
 panning 726, 730, 731, 735
 patches 567
 pauses 1016–1018
 pedal lines 1178
 percussion 522, 570, 679, 685, 780, 781, 1420, 1421, 1423, 1424
 pitch 545
 playhead. *See* playhead
 playing techniques 545, 546, 777, 787, 788
 playthroughs 548–551, 1230
 plug-ins 718
 pre-roll 544
 preferences 58
 recording notes 266
 repeats 549–551, 1230
 resetting volume 725
 reverb 720, 721, 729, 738, 742, 744
 rewinding 538
 scrubbing 542
 selections 540

- playback (*continued*)
 - silence playback template 558, 559
 - slashes 466, 1258, 1260, 1263
 - slurs 273, 545, 546, 749, 1308
 - soloing 547, 548, 717
 - sounds 528, 529, 558, 564
 - space templates 738
 - spatial sounds. *See* stage templates. *See also* space templates
 - staccato 809
 - stage templates 730, 731
 - starting 540
 - swing 552–555
 - templates. *See* playback templates
 - tempo 532, 543, 555, 706, 1016, 1342, 1344
 - tempo equations 1349
 - tenuto 809
 - timecode 555, 558, 1221, 1226
 - transport 555, 558
 - tremolos 545, 546, 786, 1405, 1406
 - trills 1104–1106
 - tuning 545
 - velocity 691
 - vibrato bar dives and returns 1127
 - voices 545, 546, 569
 - volume 215, 717, 718, 725
- playback options 27, 749
 - dialog 749
 - dynamics 954, 955
 - pedal lines 1178
 - repeats 549
 - saving as default 749
 - searching 749
 - slurs 1308
 - swing playback 553
 - timing 809, 1112
 - tremolos 1405
 - trills 1104
- Playback Options dialog 749
- Playback Technique Combinations dialog 773
- playback techniques 567, 777, 787, 788, 804, 1180
 - attribute 788
 - combinations 773, 777
 - creating 788
 - deleting 779, 788
 - direction 788
 - display 38
 - editing 788
 - endpoints 567
 - expression maps 761, 762
 - fallback 788
 - identifying 38
 - mutual exclusion groups 779
 - percussion 786
 - percussion maps 781
 - playback templates 558
 - resetting 788
- playback templates 558, 559
 - changing 564
 - creating 522, 528, 529, 564, 569, 570
 - custom 558, 561, 564
 - dialog 559, 561
 - endpoint configurations 525, 567, 571, 572
- playback templates (*continued*)
 - exporting 566
 - factory default 559
 - fallback 561
 - file format 558
 - importing 566
 - metronome click 267, 533
 - overriding 558
 - resetting 564
 - space templates 561, 566, 738
 - stage templates. *See* stage templates
 - track inspector 522
- played duration 687, 1009, 1406
 - changing 689
 - key commands 689
 - locking 669, 683, 684, 688
 - notated duration 687
 - overrides 689
 - resetting 689
 - slurs 1308
 - tool 669
- player cards 110, 121
 - disclosure arrows 42
- player group labels 1309, 1317
 - fonts 1317, 1318
 - hiding 1317
 - showing 1317
- player groups 110, 167
 - adding players 168
 - bracket grouping 824
 - creating 91, 168
 - deleting 169
 - ensembles 114
 - filters 446
 - labels. *See* player group labels
 - MIDI import 91
 - moving players 170
 - naming 169
 - panning 733
 - removing players 170
- player labels
 - hiding 141, 1317
 - showing 141, 1317
 - staff labels 1309, 1313, 1317, 1320
- player names 181
 - changing 182
 - groups. *See* player group labels
 - hiding 1310, 1312
 - instrument tracks 531
 - length 1310, 1312
 - resetting 182
 - showing 1310, 1312
 - staff labels 1310, 1312, 1313
 - tokens 656
- players 21, 121, 123
 - adding 112, 114, 124, 128, 129, 133, 168
 - adding to flows 172
 - brackets 865, 866, 1317
 - cards 110
 - changing transposition 134
 - chord symbols 318, 878
 - clefs 910
 - colors 531, 678, 679

- players (*continued*)
- combined parts 176
 - condensing 643
 - copying 125
 - deleting 127, 136, 169
 - divisi 1329
 - duplicating 125
 - empty staves 605
 - ensembles 110, 128
 - exporting 80
 - exporting audio 100
 - exporting MIDI 95, 96
 - extra staves 1323
 - figured bass 395, 958
 - flows 121, 172
 - groups. *See* player groups
 - hiding 172, 176
 - importing 78, 79
 - instrument change labels 141
 - instrument order 135
 - instruments 21, 50, 130, 133, 134
 - layouts 121, 176, 183
 - lists 181, 656
 - maximum number 123
 - merging 78, 79, 82, 85, 88, 91
 - MIDI import 85
 - moving 125, 126, 170
 - moving between groups 170
 - moving instruments between 135
 - multiple instruments 50, 133, 182, 1313
 - muting 547, 548, 717
 - naming 181–183, 1313
 - numbering instruments 131, 132
 - octave lines 917
 - ossia staves 1323
 - panel 109, 110
 - panning 726, 730
 - part layouts. *See* layouts
 - percussion kits 146, 147
 - pitch 132
 - player names 182
 - position in score 110, 125, 126
 - removing from flows 172
 - removing from groups 170
 - renaming 182
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - saving 116
 - section players 110, 123, 124
 - showing 172, 176
 - single players 110, 123, 124
 - soloing 547, 548, 717
 - soloists 127
 - sorting 110, 125
 - staff labels 1313
 - staff size 618
 - statistics 106
 - staves 606, 607
 - swing playback 554, 555
 - system dividers 1324
 - tablature 1330, 1331
 - tokens 656
 - transposition 132
 - volume 725, 931
- Players panel 109, 110
- playhead 538
- color 54
 - fast-forwarding 538
 - following 38, 539
 - hiding 539, 542
 - moving 441, 538, 539, 542
 - pausing 542
 - playback 540, 555
 - position 540
 - repeats 549
 - rewinding 538
 - showing 539, 542
 - transport 555, 558
 - zooming 537, 674
- playing technique lines 1186, 1191
- appearance 1189, 1190
 - caps 1191
 - changing 1190, 1193
 - components 1188
 - default settings 1186
 - duration 430, 1187, 1189
 - hiding 1189, 1190
 - showing 1189, 1190, 1192
 - system breaks 1188
- playing technique-specific noteheads 1002, 1180, 1419, 1421, 1423
- appearance 1425
 - articulations 786
 - changing 685, 1424
 - creating 1425
 - inputting 238, 682
 - playback 786
- playing techniques 1180
- adding text 1181
 - backgrounds 1182
 - brackets 1188
 - changing 432, 685, 1424
 - collision avoidance 1185
 - colors 56
 - combinations 773, 777, 786
 - continuation lines 1186, 1190–1192
 - creating 1425
 - crosshairs 517
 - deleting 455
 - dialog 788
 - display 38
 - divisi 1329
 - duplicating 1189
 - duration 430, 1187, 1189, 1192
 - editor. *See* Playing Techniques editor
 - endpoint configurations 572
 - erased backgrounds 1182, 1183
 - exporting 102
 - expression maps 761, 762, 787
 - fermatas 1185
 - filter 429
 - font 1180
 - frame breaks 1188
 - grouping 1186, 1191, 1192
 - guitar. *See* guitar techniques. *See also* vibrato bar handles 1187, 1188, 1191
 - harmonics. *See* harmonics

- playing techniques (*continued*)
- hiding 372, 1183
 - identifying 38
 - inputting 367, 372, 374
 - length 430, 514, 1186, 1188
 - lines. *See* playing technique lines
 - MIDI import 87, 88, 91
 - moving 461, 464, 478, 480, 514, 1184, 1185, 1188
 - muting 548
 - noteheads 685, 786, 1421, 1423–1425
 - order 1185
 - padding 1183
 - panel 371, 374
 - parentheses 1188
 - percussion 786, 1420, 1421, 1423, 1427
 - placement 1184
 - playback 545, 546, 761, 762, 787, 788
 - popover 367, 372
 - position 1184, 1188
 - repeating 1189
 - reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rotating 480
 - selecting 423
 - showing 1183
 - signposts 450, 1183
 - size 433
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - system breaks 1188
 - text 1180, 1181
 - ties 372, 374
 - tracks. *See* Playing Techniques editor
 - types 367, 1180
 - ungrouping 1193
 - vertical position 1185
 - voices 372, 374, 545, 546
- Playing Techniques editor 690
- hiding 690
 - showing 690
- playing techniques lanes. *See* Playing Techniques editor
- Playing Techniques panel 374, 377
- playthroughs 549, 1230
- bar numbers 838
 - changing 551, 1230, 1231
 - dividing 1231
 - MIDI recording 266
 - muting 548
 - optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - repeats 550, 551, 1016, 1230, 1231
 - total number 551, 1230
- plops. *See* jazz articulations
- plucked instruments
- arpeggio fingering 985
 - fingerings 274, 981
 - popover 277
 - slides 986, 988
 - string indicators. *See* string indicators
 - strings 1059
 - tablature. *See* tablature
 - tuning 153
- plug-ins 558
- allowing 527
 - blocking 527
- plug-ins (*continued*)
- changing 529, 558, 729
 - configurations 561, 567, 569, 571–573
 - endpoints 522, 558, 567, 569, 570
 - expression maps 522, 570, 762
 - instances 522, 525
 - loading 528, 542, 558, 564, 727–729, 739, 742
 - mixer 567, 718, 722
 - opening 529
 - percussion maps 522, 570
 - playback 522, 525, 558, 718
 - reference 69
 - reverb 729, 739, 742
 - saving 571–573
 - windows 529
- plus sign
- caret 218
 - chord symbols 872
 - mutes. *See* playing techniques
 - rim shots. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
 - tapping 1138
 - time signatures 283, 1382
- PNG files 595
- color 596
 - exporting 585, 586, 588
 - file names 588
 - layout numbers 180
 - layouts 585, 586
 - project preview 75
 - resolution 595
 - transparent 586
- poco a poco
- centered 935
 - dynamics 309, 312, 932, 935, 942
 - font style 953
 - moving 936
 - tempo marks 1346
- points
- constant 697, 704
 - copying 676, 699, 705
 - deleting 677
 - dynamics 694, 696–698
 - linear 697, 704
 - MIDI 701, 703, 704
 - selecting 676
 - staff spacing 624
 - tempo changes 706, 708
 - unit of measurement 51
- polychord chord symbols 323, 871
- arrangement 887
 - inputting 318
- polymeter 287, 288, 1381
- polyphony 1438
- adding voices 232
 - changing voices 466
 - condensing. *See* condensing
 - MIDI import 88
 - MIDI recording 264
 - playback 545, 546, 956
- polytonality 280, 281, 1019

- popovers [22](#), [201](#)
 add intervals. *See* note tools popover
 arpeggio signs [343](#), [347](#)
 bar repeats [408](#), [418](#)
 barlines [301](#), [303](#), [304](#), [306](#), [307](#)
 bars [301](#), [304](#)
 beats [302](#)
 changing items [432](#)
 chord symbols [320](#), [325](#)
 clefs [329](#), [330](#), [332](#)
 commands. *See* jump bar
 dynamics [309](#), [313](#)
 ensembles. *See* ensemble picker
 figured bass [397](#), [400](#)
 fingerings [274](#), [276](#)
 glissando lines [343](#), [349](#)
 guitar techniques [343](#), [354](#), [356](#), [358](#), [360](#),
 [362–364](#), [366](#)
 harp pedaling [370](#)
 holds [336](#), [338](#)
 instrument filters [445](#)
 instruments. *See* instrument picker
 jazz articulations [342](#), [351](#)
 key signatures [278](#), [280](#)
 lyrics [392](#), [394](#), [395](#)
 metronome marks [293](#)
 MIDI trigger regions [420](#)
 note tools [258](#), [472](#), [487](#)
 numbered bar regions [408](#)
 octave lines [329](#), [331](#), [333](#)
 ornaments [341](#), [346](#), [347](#), [349](#), [351](#)
 pauses [336](#), [338](#)
 pedal lines [369](#), [375](#)
 playing techniques [367](#), [372](#), [375](#)
 repeat endings [406](#)
 repeat markers [406](#)
 repeats [406](#), [414](#), [418](#)
 rhythm slashes [408](#)
 string indicators [370](#)
 tempo [293](#), [298](#)
 time signatures [283](#), [287](#), [289](#)
 transpose [489](#)
 tremolos [407](#), [414](#)
 trills [341](#), [1100](#)
 tuplets [254](#), [256](#)
- port de voix. *See* ornaments
 portamento. *See* glissando lines
 portrait orientation [593](#), [594](#), [600](#)
 status bar [40](#)
- ports [522](#), [532](#), [567](#), [706](#)
 changing [569](#)
 chords track [522](#)
 expression maps [522](#), [567](#), [570](#)
 instruments [569](#)
 mixer [718](#)
 percussion maps [522](#), [567](#), [570](#)
 setup [567](#)
 Tempo editor [706](#)
 tempo track [532](#)
- position
 arpeggio signs [1111](#)
 articulations [805](#), [807](#)
 clefs [213](#), [907](#), [908](#)
- position (*continued*)
 dynamics [317](#), [922](#)
 figured bass [964](#)
 fingerings [971](#)
 grace notes [1002](#)
 gradual dynamics [944](#)
 hairpins [944](#)
 inputting [210](#)
 Insert mode [451](#), [453](#), [454](#)
 instruments in percussion kits [149](#)
 items [436](#), [663](#)
 jazz articulations [1147](#)
 key signatures [1022](#)
 lines [1197](#)
 new items [210](#)
 notes in multiple-voice contexts [1440](#)
 octave lines [916](#), [917](#)
 order [518](#)
 pauses [1012](#)
 pedal lines [1168](#)
 resetting [436](#)
 rhythmic [24](#)
 slurs [1283](#), [1286](#), [1292](#)
 stage. *See* stage templates
 stop [451](#), [453](#), [454](#)
 string indicators [995](#)
 trill intervals [1104](#)
 tucking index [518](#)
 vertical order [518](#)
 videos [191](#)
- possibile. *See* dynamic modifiers
 post-bends. *See* guitar post-bends
 pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends
 pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
 pre-roll [544](#)
 duration [544](#)
 flows [545](#)
- preamble [997](#)
 barlines [820](#), [821](#)
 clefs [911](#)
 key signatures [1022](#)
 page templates [647](#)
- precipitando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also*
 tempo marks
- preferences
 colors [52](#)
 comments [499](#), [500](#)
 key commands [60](#), [63](#)
 MIDI [270](#)
 missing fonts [73](#)
 mouse input [211](#)
 notations input [213](#), [317](#)
 note input [214](#), [215](#), [227](#)
 pedal lines [270](#)
 selection tools [40](#)
 sustain pedal controllers [270](#)
 theme [52](#)
- Preferences dialog [58](#)
- prefixes
 dynamics [932](#), [933](#)
 fingerings [990](#)
 hiding [140](#)

- prefixes (*continued*)
 - instrument change labels 57, 139, 140
 - rehearsal marks 1219
- presentation types 143
 - changing 1429
 - dynamics 1427
 - editing area 143, 1428
 - percussion kits 1419, 1428
- presets 27
 - background color 54
 - chord symbols 872
 - effects 775
 - instrument filters 446
 - staff size 617
 - zoom 42
- pressure. *See* playing techniques. *See also* lines
- presto. *See* tempo marks
- preview
 - color 53, 54
 - file names 588
 - font styles 754, 756
 - images 75, 103
 - note spacing 508
 - print preview 36, 576
 - projects 75, 103
- previous versions 73
- primary
 - beams 855
 - instruments 671, 699, 703, 705
- primary bar number sequence 835
 - changing 836, 837
 - returning to 838
- primes 656, 659
- primo
 - repeat endings 1230
- Print mode 19, 576
 - landscape orientation 590
 - page setup 594
 - panels 37, 576–578
 - portrait orientation 590
 - printers 589
 - switching 43, 576
- Print Options panel 576, 578
- print preview area 36
 - navigation 36, 576
- printers 589
 - selecting 581
- printing 576, 581
 - annotations 597
 - arrangements 590
 - booklets 591
 - borders 597
 - comments 500, 597
 - copies 581
 - crop marks 597
 - date 597
 - duplex 581, 592
 - flows 583, 584
 - job types 590
 - key commands 60
 - landscape 590, 593
 - layouts 581
 - lyrics 1034
- printing (*continued*)
 - macOS options 584
 - note colors 597
 - options 578
 - orientation 593
 - page sizes 593, 594
 - paper sizes 593
 - PDF files 585
 - portrait 590, 593
 - preview 36, 437
 - ranges 581, 583, 584
 - scale size 581
 - signposts 597
 - spreads 590
 - text 102
 - time 597
 - voice colors 597
 - watermarks 597
- program change actions 761, 767, 775
- Project Info dialog 75
- project information 75
 - composer 998
 - copyright 999
 - exporting 77, 102
 - flow titles 187, 997
 - lyricist 999
 - page templates 648, 997
 - project templates 77
 - titles 997
 - tokens 75, 187, 648, 658
- Project Statistics dialog 106, 107
- project templates 71, 77
 - categories 77
 - Hub 69
 - MIDI import 85
 - starting projects 71
- project window 29
 - dark 52, 55
 - Engrave mode 502
 - light 52
 - opening multiple 49
 - Play mode 519
 - Print mode 576
 - Setup mode 109
 - splitting 48
 - theme 52
 - width 40, 49
 - Write mode 195
- projects 19, 75, 78, 121, 171
 - audio 100
 - auto-save 103, 104
 - backup location 106
 - backups 105
 - composer 998
 - copyright 999
 - default font styles 760
 - different Dorico versions 73
 - duration 656
 - exporting 83, 84, 95, 96, 98
 - exporting flows 80
 - file path 106, 587, 656
 - flows 78–80, 171, 188, 501
 - font styles 760

projects (*continued*)
frame rates 194
full screen mode 49
Hub 69
importing flows 78, 79, 82
layouts. *See* layouts
lyricist 999
merging 78
MIDI files 95, 96
missing fonts 73
movements 171
multiple windows 49
MusicXML files 83, 84
opening 49, 72, 73, 104
PDF files 585, 595
preview 75
recent 73
recovering 104
settings 27, 745, 747, 749
splitting flows 501
start area 34
starting 71
statistics 106
tabs 48
templates. *See* project templates
titles 69, 188, 648, 651, 997
tokens 656, 658
videos 189, 191
window 29
workspaces 43

proofreading
accidentals 795
cautionary accidentals 795

Propagate Part Formatting dialog 645

propagating
part formatting 643
properties 646

properties 663
copying to other layouts 646
global 664, 665
local 664, 665
notations 663
notes 663
scope 663–665
searching 663
selected items 663
values 666
videos 190

Properties panel 663
disclosure arrow 38
key commands 44
Write mode 195, 205

pulgar. *See* thumbs

pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons

punctuation
duration 656, 659
timecodes 1226

Q

qualifiers 309, 312

quality
chord symbols 318, 321, 872, 886
intervals 487, 488
transposing 469, 470, 489

quantization 93
changing 266
grace notes 93
MIDI import 85, 91, 93
MIDI recording 93, 264, 268
requantizing 266
splitting notes 261
tuplets 93

quarter depressed pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1165, 1166

quarter notes 14, 200, 224, 259
beats 302
chords 251
glissando lines 1121
grace notes 249
hiding 1060, 1079
Insert mode 237
metronome marks 294
percussion 238, 682
pick-up bars 285, 289, 291
playback 749, 769
quantization 93
rests 245, 1271
rhythm dots 230, 860, 861, 863, 1062
rhythmic grid 217
showing 861, 1060, 1079
splitting notes 261, 861, 863
swing playback 552
tablature 242
tempo equations 1349
ties 860, 861, 863
tremolos 414, 416, 1399
tuplets 254, 257
voices 232

quarter tones 800, 1028
accidentals 800, 1028
guitar bends 356, 1125, 1128
octave divisions 1028
tonality systems 1028
transposing 489

quartet templates 71, 77, 731
staff grouping 866

quavers. *See* eighth notes

question marks
harmonics 1082
tablature 468, 1330

quick tool selector 669

quintet templates 71, 77, 731
staff grouping 866

quintuplets. *See* tuplets

quotation marks
duration tokens 656, 659

R

rack. *See* VST and MIDI panel

rallentando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks

randomization 711, 712, 714

- ranges
 - arpeggio signs 347, 348, 1111
 - bar numbers 828, 1254–1256
 - colors 54, 56, 1064
 - copying notes 459
 - counts 1254–1256
 - cues 920
 - dynamics in playback 954, 955
 - flows 583, 584
 - glissando lines 764, 1119, 1120
 - instruments 130, 154
 - keys 206
 - lines 387, 1111, 1203
 - metronome marks 1341, 1342
 - notes 154, 764, 1064, 1119, 1120
 - numbered bar regions 1254–1256
 - pages 581, 583, 584
 - percussion legends 1432
 - pitched 154, 764, 1064, 1119, 1120
 - selecting 424
 - slurs 1288
 - strings 154
- rasterizing. *See* staff size
- rastral size 617
- ratamacue. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
- rates
 - frames 193
- ratios
 - grace notes 1006
 - note spacing 508
 - swing playback 552
 - tuplets 1416, 1417
- re-strikes. *See* guitar pre-bends
- read-only mode 72, 123
- recent projects 69, 73
- recipes 588
- recording
 - audio 100
 - click settings 267, 533
 - count-in 268
 - devices 270
 - input pitch 215
 - MIDI. *See* MIDI recording
 - pedal lines 268
 - playing techniques 268
 - retrospective recording 266, 555
 - tempo 543
- Recover Auto-saved Projects dialog 104
- recovering 266
 - backups 105
 - files 103–105
 - notes 233, 266, 1260
- rectangle
 - above systems. *See* system track
 - bar number enclosures 827
 - borders 756, 1359
 - colored. *See* signposts
 - music. *See* music frames. *See also* frames
 - noteheads 1056
 - notes 678, 679, 687
 - text enclosures 756, 1001, 1358, 1359
- redo 30, 438
 - history 438
- reducing 174, 466, 617, 643
 - condensing. *See* condensing
 - note durations 259, 261
 - notes into chord symbols 326, 327
- reeds 174
 - adding 112, 114, 124, 133
 - instrument changes 136
 - part names 181, 183
 - staff labels 1313
 - transposition 132
- regions
 - bar repeats. *See* bar repeats
 - bars. *See* numbered bar regions
 - chord symbols. *See* chord symbol regions
 - counts 1247, 1254, 1265
 - dynamics 694
 - Key Editor 667, 676, 678, 679, 690, 694, 700, 701, 706, 713, 715
 - MIDI notes. *See* MIDI trigger regions. *See also* MIDI CC editor
 - notes 678, 679
 - Play mode. *See* colored regions
 - playing techniques 690
 - selecting 424, 676, 713, 715
 - slashes 1261, 1262. *See also* rhythm slashes
 - tempo 706
- register
 - changing 468, 470, 472
 - clefs 332, 333, 907, 913
 - note input 226
 - octave lines 333, 335, 915
 - plug-ins 527
 - transposing 472, 913
- rehearsal marks 1216
 - barlines 1216
 - colors 56, 1219
 - crosshairs 517
 - deleting 455
 - enclosures 1216
 - exporting 102
 - filter 429
 - font 1219
 - going to 442
 - index 1217
 - inputting 400
 - moving 461, 514
 - multiple positions 1216, 1326, 1327
 - navigation 442
 - order 1217
 - placement 1216
 - position 1216, 1327
 - prefixes 1219
 - selecting 421, 425, 427, 428
 - sequences 1217, 1218
 - size 433, 1219
 - staff-relative placement 1216, 1327
 - starting number 1217
 - staves 1327
 - suffixes 1219
 - tempo marks 1216
 - types 1218
 - vertical positions 1326, 1327
- relative channel change actions 775

- relative tempo changes [1336](#), [1344](#)
- releases
 - guitar bends [1122](#)
 - handles [1131](#), [1135](#)
 - tremolos [407](#), [414](#), [416](#), [1401](#)
- reloading
 - video files [191](#)
- removing. *See* deleting
- Rename Player dialog [182](#)
- Rename Player Group dialog [169](#)
- renaming
 - channels [728](#)
 - drum sets [143](#)
 - endpoints [573](#)
 - files [69](#)
 - flows [187](#), [997](#)
 - groups [151](#)
 - instrument filters [446](#), [449](#)
 - instruments [181](#), [183](#)
 - layouts [181](#), [183](#)
 - percussion kits [143](#), [151](#)
 - player groups [169](#)
 - players [181](#), [182](#)
 - staves [181](#), [183](#)
 - titles [187](#), [997](#)
- renumbering
 - bars [835–837](#)
 - flows [173](#)
 - instrument filters [446](#), [449](#)
 - instruments [132](#)
 - layouts [180](#)
- repeat barlines [816](#), [817](#), [1236](#)
 - brackets [1230](#), [1234](#)
 - counts. *See* repeat counts
 - end of systems [819](#)
 - exporting [549](#)
 - inputting [301](#), [303](#), [306](#), [307](#)
 - MIDI recording [266](#)
 - number of times played [551](#), [1230](#)
 - panel [303](#), [307](#)
 - playback [549](#), [550](#), [1016](#)
 - playthroughs [551](#), [1230](#)
 - popover [301](#), [303](#), [306](#)
 - repeat endings [1230](#), [1234](#)
 - start of systems [819](#)
 - text. *See* repeat counts
- repeat counts [1242](#)
 - changing [551](#), [1230](#)
 - hiding [1243](#)
 - location [1243](#)
 - moving [1243](#)
 - showing [1243](#)
- repeat endings [1230](#)
 - additional endings [410](#), [412](#)
 - alignment [1233](#)
 - appearance [1234](#)
 - bar numbers [838](#)
 - crosshairs [517](#)
 - deleting [455](#)
 - exporting [549](#)
 - filter [429](#)
 - final segments [1234](#)
 - font style [1233](#)
- repeat endings (*continued*)
 - frame breaks [1233](#)
 - handles [1232](#), [1233](#)
 - hooks [1234](#)
 - inputting [406](#), [409–412](#)
 - length [514](#), [1232](#)
 - MIDI recording [266](#)
 - moving [461](#), [514](#), [1232](#)
 - multiple positions [1233](#), [1326](#), [1327](#)
 - MusicXML files [1235](#)
 - number of playthroughs [1230](#)
 - optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - panel [409](#), [411](#), [412](#)
 - playback [549](#), [550](#), [1016](#)
 - playthroughs [1230](#), [1231](#)
 - popover [406](#), [409](#), [410](#)
 - position [1233](#), [1327](#)
 - segments [1230](#), [1233](#)
 - selecting [421](#), [425](#), [427](#), [428](#)
 - size [1232](#), [1233](#)
 - staves [1327](#)
 - system breaks [1233](#)
 - text [1233](#)
 - types [406](#)
 - vertical positions [1326](#), [1327](#)
- repeat jumps. *See* repeat markers
- repeat markers [1236](#)
 - bar numbers [838](#)
 - barlines [819](#)
 - changing [432](#)
 - crosshairs [517](#)
 - deleting [455](#)
 - exporting [549](#)
 - filter [429](#)
 - fonts [1237](#)
 - hiding [1240](#)
 - index [1237](#)
 - inputting [406](#), [409](#), [413](#), [414](#)
 - lines [1239](#)
 - MIDI recording [266](#)
 - moving [461](#), [514](#)
 - multiple [1237](#)
 - multiple positions [1241](#), [1326](#), [1327](#)
 - number of times played [551](#)
 - optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - order [1237](#)
 - panel [409](#), [414](#)
 - paragraph styles [1237](#)
 - playback [549](#), [550](#), [1016](#)
 - popover [406](#), [413](#)
 - position [1241](#), [1327](#)
 - showing [1240](#)
 - size [1237](#)
 - staff-relative placement [1241](#)
 - staves [1327](#)
 - text [1238](#)
 - types [406](#)
 - vertical positions [1326](#), [1327](#)
 - word wrapping [1239](#)
- Repeat Pitches dialog [482](#)
- repeat sections. *See* repeat markers
- Repeat Structures panel [409](#)
- repeating. *See* copying. *See also* repeats

- repeats
 - barlines. *See* repeat barlines
 - bars 1245, 1253
 - counts 551, 1230, 1247, 1254
 - dynamics 549
 - endings. *See* repeat endings
 - export 549
 - font style 1250
 - frequency 548, 1249, 1255
 - grouping 1251
 - length 432, 1246
 - markers. *See* repeat markers
 - moving counts 514
 - muting 548
 - notes. *See* tremolos. *See also* bar repeats
 - numbers 551, 1230, 1237, 1247, 1254, 1265
 - optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - playback 548–551, 1016, 1230
 - playing techniques 1189
 - tempo marks 549
- repeats popover 406
- repitching notes 472
- replacing 432
 - fonts 73, 754
 - Key Editor configurations 715
- replying
 - comments 494, 498
- requantizing notes 266, 683, 684, 688
- resetting 455
 - accidentals 792
 - appearance 436
 - background color 54
 - bar numbers 836, 838
 - beaming 844, 846, 850, 854, 856
 - capos 161–163
 - casting off 632
 - channel names 728
 - channel volume 725
 - character styles 759
 - chord diagrams 901, 904
 - chord symbol voicing 536
 - chord symbols 885
 - colors 54, 56
 - cross-staff beaming 850, 854
 - dynamic levels 956
 - dynamics 677, 954, 955
 - expression maps 772
 - faders 725
 - figured bass 970
 - fingering slides 987
 - fingerings 901, 984
 - flow headings 652
 - font styles 754, 756
 - instrument names 184, 187
 - items 436
 - key commands 65
 - layout names 183
 - layouts 180, 632, 651, 745
 - mute states 548, 717
 - note spacing 512
 - note velocity 693
 - noteheads 1059
 - options 58, 745, 747, 749
- resetting (*continued*)
 - page color 53
 - page size 600, 745
 - page templates 610
 - pages 651
 - paragraph styles 756, 1356
 - part layouts 180
 - percussion maps 781
 - playback overrides 689
 - playback techniques 788
 - playback templates 564
 - played duration 689
 - player names 182
 - position 436, 518
 - preferences 58
 - rests 1274, 1276
 - secondary beams 856
 - solo states 548, 717
 - space templates 742
 - staff labels 187
 - staff spacing 626
 - stage templates 735
 - staves 606, 607, 624, 632
 - stems 844, 1078
 - systems 624, 632
 - tempo 1336
 - text 1356
 - trill intervals 1101
 - velocity 693
 - vertical spacing 626
 - voice order 1443
 - voicing 536
 - volume 725
- resolution
 - changing 586
 - figured bass 395, 397, 961, 966
 - images 595
 - rhythmic grid 38, 217, 675
- respelling
 - accidentals 206, 473, 475, 476
 - chord symbols 158, 884, 885
 - key signatures 1027
 - notes 206, 473, 475, 476, 482–485, 492
- rest grouping. *See* note grouping
- restating
 - accidentals 800, 801
- restorative
 - clefs 332, 333
 - pedal lines 1176, 1178
 - text 1176, 1178
- restoring. *See* resetting. *See also* hiding
- rests 23, 1271
 - alignment 1271, 1274, 1275
 - bar rests. *See* bar rests
 - beaming 840, 841, 858
 - changing type 1274
 - colors 56, 1275. *See also* note and rest colors
 - consolidation 747, 1272–1274, 1279
 - deleting 259, 452, 810–812, 1276, 1277
 - dotted 747
 - durations 259
 - empty bars 1277, 1279
 - explicit 1271, 1272, 1274

rests (*continued*)

- figured bass 395, 957, 959, 967
- filling in 259
- forcing duration 245, 262, 861
- grouping. *See* note grouping
- H-bars. *See* multi-bar rests
- hiding 1264, 1276–1279
- implicit 1271, 1272, 1274
- inputting 196, 206, 224, 245, 246, 262
- inputting items at 213, 317
- moving 507, 1275, 1281. *See also* note spacing
- multi-bar rests. *See* multi-bar rests
- notation options 1274
- padding 1264
- percussion kits 747
- placement 1271, 1274, 1275
- position 1271, 1274, 1275
- resetting 1274, 1276
- restoring 1276
- showing 1276–1279
- spacing. *See* note spacing
- voices 1271, 1273–1275, 1278
- width 1280
- retakes. *See* pedal retakes
- reticles. *See* crosshairs
- retrieving. *See* recovering. *See also* retrospective recording
- retrograde 478, 479, 490
- retrospective recording 266, 555
- reverb 720–722, 730, 738
 - adding 727, 738, 742
 - changing 729, 738, 742, 744
 - channels 718
 - default settings 744
 - deleting 727
 - hiding 724
 - mixer 718
 - saving 739, 741, 742
 - showing 724
 - tail 101
 - templates. *See* space templates. *See also* stage templates
- REVerence 722, 728, 729, 744
- reverse
 - lines 1207
 - itches 478, 479, 490
 - playback. *See* scrubbing
 - printing 591, 592
 - rhythms 478, 479, 490
 - stems 848, 849, 851, 854, 1074, 1076–1078
- Reverse and Invert Pitches dialog 479
- Reverse Rhythms dialog 479
- reverting. *See* resetting
- reviewing
 - comments 494
 - print preview 36, 437, 576
- rewinding 538, 542, 555
- rfz. *See* dynamics
- rhythm
 - chord symbols 326, 327
 - locking 472
 - requantizing 266
 - reversing 478, 479, 490. *See also* retrograde

rhythm (*continued*)

- rotating 480, 481, 491
- slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
- tablature 1331
- ties 860, 861, 863
- rhythm dots 230, 860, 861
 - Chord mode 254
 - compound time signatures 1262
 - consolidation 1062
 - cut common time signatures 863
 - deleting 1060, 1065
 - hiding 1060, 1062, 1065
 - inputting 214, 224, 227, 230, 259
 - Insert mode 451
 - moving 1062, 1063, 1442
 - number 230, 259
 - pitch before duration 214
 - rhythm slashes 1262
 - showing 1062
 - splitting notes 261
 - tremolos 414, 416
 - voices 1062, 1440, 1442
- rhythm section
 - adding 112, 114, 124, 128, 133
 - brackets 866, 1317
 - chord symbols 871, 878, 879
 - playback 1260
 - slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
 - staff grouping 866, 1317
- rhythm slashes 1258, 1261
 - appearance 1268
 - bar rests 1273
 - beaming 1263
 - caret 218, 233
 - changing number 1265
 - counts 1265, 1267
 - deleting 455
 - filter 429
 - font style 1250, 1265
 - frequency 1266
 - hiding rests 1264
 - highlights 1261, 1265
 - inputting 233, 409, 417
 - moving 461, 464, 1269
 - moving counts 514
 - note grouping 860, 1262
 - panel 409
 - parentheses 1267
 - percussion kits 143, 149, 238, 1260
 - pitch 233, 1260
 - placement 1267
 - playback 1260
 - popover 408, 417
 - regions 1258, 1261, 1265
 - rests 1264, 1273
 - rhythm dots 1262
 - splitting 1262
 - staff position 149, 1269
 - staff-relative placement 1267
 - stem direction 1077, 1268
 - stemless 218, 233
 - stems 1263
 - type 1259

-
- rhythm slashes (*continued*)
 - vertical position 1269
 - viewing options 1265
 - voices 233, 466, 1258, 1259, 1268
 - rhythmic feel 552
 - changing 554
 - default settings 552
 - deleting changes 555
 - popover 295
 - signposts 450, 554, 555
 - rhythmic grid 38, 217
 - attachment lines 437
 - changing 217
 - color 54
 - key commands 60, 63
 - Key Editor 669, 675
 - resolution 38, 217
 - selecting music 428
 - rhythmic notation 24, 1258
 - rhythmic position 24
 - attachment lines 437
 - playback 538
 - rhythmic position-attached lines. *See* lines
 - rich black 596
 - ride bell. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
 - right hand hooks. *See* lines
 - right pages 647, 648
 - starting from 609
 - right pan 739, 741
 - right zone 37, 38
 - hiding 44
 - Print mode 578
 - Setup mode 117
 - showing 44
 - Write mode 204
 - right-foot pedals. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* pedal lines
 - right-hand fingering 981
 - arpeggio signs 985
 - brackets 983
 - inputting 274
 - placement 972
 - popover 277
 - tapping. *See* tapping
 - right-hand guitar tapping. *See* tapping
 - rim shots. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
 - rinforzando. *See* dynamics
 - rips. *See* jazz articulations. *See also* glissando lines
 - ritardando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
 - tempo marks
 - ritenuto. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
 - rolled chords. *See* arpeggio signs
 - rolls. *See* tremolos. *See also* tuplets
 - Roman numerals
 - flow numbers 659
 - harmonic analysis 957
 - page numbers 1151
 - tokens 659
 - Romantic
 - trills 1104
 - rooms
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - RoomWorks SE 722, 728
 - roots
 - chord symbols 318, 320, 322, 872, 886
 - Ross chord symbols 872
 - Rotary 722, 728
 - rotating 480
 - hairpins 514, 938
 - itches 480, 481, 491
 - rhythms 480, 481, 491
 - slurs 1302
 - text 1317
 - ties 1375
 - round
 - chord symbol parentheses 889, 891
 - figured bass brackets 963
 - notehead brackets 1066, 1067
 - rounded rectangle
 - borders 756, 1359
 - text enclosures 756, 1359
 - routing 522, 531, 569, 570
 - rows
 - bar numbers 832
 - buttons. *See* toolbar. *See also* lower zone
 - chord diagrams 898, 900
 - chord symbols 158, 163, 164, 166, 872
 - dynamics 924, 949, 950
 - figured bass 964, 965
 - rubato
 - expressive text 309, 932, 933
 - system-attached text 388, 756
 - tempo marks 293, 1335
 - text 388, 756
 - rudimental drumming. *See* unpitched percussion
 - ruffs. *See* grace notes
 - rulers
 - crosshairs 517
 - Play mode 520
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - running headers 648
 - exporting 102
 - flow titles 69, 75, 611, 997
 - fonts 756
 - hiding 611
 - page numbers 611
 - page templates 649
 - project titles 69, 75, 997
 - runs
 - grace notes 250
 - guitar bends 1122, 1131
 - Russian
 - instrument names 57
- ## S
- S-shaped slurs 1292, 1293
 - salzedo breath marks. *See* breath marks
 - sample libraries. *See* sound libraries
 - sample rate 38, 268, 269

- sampled trills 1104, 1105
 - disabling 1106
 - enabling 1106
- Save Endpoint Configuration dialog 573
- saving 69, 103
 - audio 95, 96, 100, 101
 - auto-save. *See* auto-save
 - backups 105
 - character styles as default 759
 - chord diagram shapes 903
 - comments 500
 - custom ensembles 116
 - editors 715
 - endpoint configurations 571–573
 - ensembles 116
 - expression maps 780
 - folder location 106
 - font styles as default 754
 - graphics files 585, 587
 - import settings 85
 - instrument names as default 184
 - Key Editor configurations 715
 - layout options as default 745
 - lyrics 1034
 - MIDI files 85, 95, 96
 - MusicXML files 83
 - notation options as default 747
 - paragraph styles as default 756
 - PDF files 585
 - percussion kits 152
 - percussion maps 785
 - playback options as default 749
 - playback templates 566
 - played notes 266
 - players 116
 - plug-in instances 571, 572
 - PNG files 585
 - project templates 85
 - settings as default 85, 745, 747, 749, 754, 756
 - space templates 739, 742–744
 - stage templates 732, 736, 737
 - SVG files 585
 - text 102
 - TIFF files 585
- saxophone. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- scale degrees
 - chord symbols 320, 872
 - mapping 484, 485
 - Nashville numbers 320
 - noteheads 1057
 - popover 487
 - trills 1097, 1099, 1100
- scale mapping 484, 485, 492
- scale multiplication 711, 712, 714
- scale size
 - accidentals 794
 - barlines 816, 817, 819
 - chord diagrams 898
 - chord symbol components 873, 875
 - cues 507, 508
 - fingerings 976, 981
 - grace notes 507, 508, 1002, 1006
 - scale size (*continued*)
 - note spacing 507, 508
 - notes 433
 - printing 581, 593, 594
 - staves 617, 618, 620, 621
- scales 1028
 - degrees 872, 1057
 - EDO 1028
 - exercises. *See* flows
 - key signatures 1019, 1021
 - major 484, 485, 492, 1021
 - mapping 484, 485, 492
 - minor 484, 485, 492, 1021
 - modal 484, 485, 492
 - octave divisions 1028
 - transposing 470, 484, 485, 492
 - values. *See* scale multiplication. *See also* Histogram tool
- scissors 196
 - activating 196
 - slashes 1262
 - ties 1373
- scoops
 - deleting 1143
 - inputting 351, 352, 360, 361
 - jazz. *See* jazz articulations
 - popover 342, 343
 - vibrato bar 1137
- scope
 - crosshairs 517
 - Insert mode 452, 453
 - jump bar 65
 - properties 664, 665
- scordatura 154, 156
- scores. *See* layouts
- scrapes. *See* playing techniques
- scroll view. *See* galley view
- scrolling 442
 - Key Editor 667, 674
 - mixer 724
 - percussion editor 674
 - piano roll editor 674
 - playback 539, 542
- scrubbing 32, 542, 555
- searching 58
 - ensembles 114
 - instruments 112
 - key commands 60–62
 - layout options 745
 - notation options 747
 - notes 429
 - playback options 749
 - preferences 58
 - properties 663
- Sebastian music font 751, 753
- Second Viennese School accidental duration rule 800, 801
- second voices
 - adding 232
 - bar rests 246, 1278
- secondary beams 855
 - changing 856
 - direction 855

- secondary beams (*continued*)
 - lines 856
 - resetting 856
 - rests 858
 - splitting 843
- secondary brackets 868, 870
 - braces 869
 - hiding 868
 - showing 868
 - sub-brackets 869
 - sub-sub-brackets 870
- secondary instruments 671, 699, 703, 705
- secondo
 - repeat endings 1230
- seconds
 - duration tokens 656, 659
 - timecodes 1226
 - transport 32, 555
- section players 123
 - adding 124, 128, 129
 - divisi 1329
 - empty staves 605
 - ensembles 114, 128, 129
 - MIDI import 85
 - ossia staves 1323
 - staff labels 1309
 - staves 606, 607
- sections
 - coda 1236
 - fine 1236
 - hiding 42, 1240
 - repeat 1236
 - showing 42, 1240
- segments
 - caps 1207
 - final 1234
 - glissando lines 1119
 - guitar bends 1131, 1135
 - hairpins 938
 - hooks 1234
 - length 1232, 1234
 - lines 1215
 - moving 514
 - playing technique continuation lines 1191
 - playthroughs 1231
 - repeat endings 410, 412, 1231–1234
 - slurs 1298, 1299
 - tuplets 1411
- segno 1236
 - font 1237
 - hiding 1240
 - inputting 413, 414
 - multiple 1237
 - sections 1236
 - showing 1240
 - size 1237
- selecting 40, 421, 422, 424, 429, 439
 - bars 421, 422, 425, 427
 - beats 428
 - blue 951, 1297
 - changing the selection. *See* navigation
 - chord symbols 425, 427, 428
 - chords 216
 - selecting (*continued*)
 - dynamics 423, 429
 - Engrave mode 421, 423, 424, 439
 - everything 424, 425, 427, 428
 - extending selection 422–424
 - filters 429
 - flows 424
 - handles 516
 - items 210, 421, 422, 424, 439, 503, 676
 - items behind other items 421
 - Key Editor 676
 - key signatures 425, 427, 428
 - lyrics 423, 429, 1035
 - marquee 40, 424, 676, 715
 - more 422–424
 - notations 40, 424, 439
 - note spacing handles 511
 - notes 40, 215, 216, 421, 422, 424, 429, 439, 676
 - panels 201, 204, 205
 - playback 540, 555
 - points 676
 - redoing 438
 - rehearsal marks 425, 427, 428
 - repeat endings 425, 427, 428
 - staff spacing handles 624
 - status bar 38
 - staves 424
 - system objects 425, 427, 428
 - system spacing handles 624
 - system track 425
 - system-attached text 425, 427, 428
 - tempo marks 425, 427, 428
 - time signatures 425, 427, 428
 - tools 38, 40, 196, 669
 - tracks 87
 - transposing selections 469
 - undoing 438
 - velocity bars 715
 - voices 423, 429, 466, 671, 676
 - Write mode 196, 421–424, 427, 428, 439
- selectors
 - layouts 30, 31
 - panels 201, 204, 205
- semibreves. *See* whole notes
- semiquavers. *See* sixteenth notes
- semitones. *See* half-steps
- sends 722
 - loading 728
 - mixer 717, 718
 - removing 729
- separators
 - beams 857, 861
 - chord symbols 877, 887
 - duration tokens 659
 - dynamics 309, 928
 - fingerings 989
 - staff labels 1315
 - systems. *See* system dividers
 - time signatures 1389, 1392
 - timecodes 1226
 - tokens 656, 659
- septuplets. *See* tuplets

- sequences
 - bar numbers 835–837
 - page numbers 609
 - playback 542, 549
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - staff labels 131, 132
 - subordinate 837
 - types 1218
- sets
 - drum sets. *See* drum sets
 - page templates. *See* page template sets
- setting up
 - audio devices 58, 268, 269
 - drum sets 143
 - duplex printing 581
 - key commands 63
 - MIDI recording 268
 - percussion kit note input 240
 - percussion kits 143
 - windows 43
 - workspaces 43
- settings 27, 745
 - audio 58
 - copying properties 646
 - default 58, 745, 747, 749
 - flow-specific 747
 - harp pedals 1153
 - individual items. *See* properties
 - layout-specific 745
 - MIDI import 85
 - mouse input 211
 - notations input 213, 317
 - note input 214, 215, 227
 - preferences 58
 - properties 663–665
 - videos 190
- Setup mode 19, 109
 - adding players 128
 - ensembles 128
 - flows. *See* flows
 - instruments. *See* instruments
 - layouts. *See* layouts
 - panels 37, 109, 110, 117, 120
 - percussion 143
 - player groups 167
 - players. *See* players
 - signposts 450
 - switching 43, 109
- sextuplets. *See* tuplets
- sfz. *See* dynamics
- shadow notes 210
 - color 54
- shakes. *See* jazz ornaments
- shape
 - bar number enclosures 827
 - beaming 845, 847–851, 854, 855, 857, 859, 1078
 - borders 756, 827, 1359
 - chord diagrams 894, 900, 902–904
 - figured bass brackets 963
 - guitar bends 1131, 1133–1135
 - multi-segment slurs 1301
 - notehead brackets 1067, 1071, 1072
 - noteheads 1053, 1057
 - shape (*continued*)
 - parentheses 891, 963, 1067
 - slurs 1287, 1288, 1298, 1300–1302, 1306
 - text enclosures 756, 1359
 - ties 1374, 1375
 - tuplet brackets 1413–1415
- sharing staves. *See* condensing. *See also* divisi
- sharps. *See* accidentals
- shifts
 - clefs 330, 912
 - octaves 330, 468–470, 472, 477, 912
 - pitch. *See* rotating
 - rhythms. *See* rotating
- short
 - barlines 817, 819
 - dynamics 934, 943
 - notes 93, 224, 249, 259, 507, 1002
 - notes in playback 93, 749, 768, 809, 1009
 - percussion notes 682
 - scores. *See* condensing. *See also* layouts
 - stemlets 858
 - tempo text 1339
- shortcuts. *See* key commands
- shoulder offset
 - notehead brackets 1071
 - slurs 1306
 - ties 1379
- showing. *See* hiding
- shrinking. *See* size
- side stick. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
- signatures
 - annotations 597
 - key signatures. *See* key signatures
 - printing 597
 - time signatures. *See* time signatures
- signposts 450
 - barlines 306, 307, 455, 813, 815, 1397
 - bars 813
 - chord symbols 871, 878, 882
 - clefs 910
 - dynamics 927
 - exporting 585, 597
 - extra staves 1323
 - figured bass 395, 957, 958, 967
 - frame breaks 639
 - harp pedaling 1153, 1155, 1156
 - hiding 437, 450
 - key signatures 280, 281, 1019
 - multi-bar rests 1281
 - octave lines 917
 - ossia staves 461, 464, 1323
 - percussion legends 1430
 - pick-up bars 1386
 - playing techniques 1183
 - printing 581, 597
 - showing 450
 - staff changes 1323
 - staves 461, 464
 - system breaks 633, 636
 - tempo marks 1340, 1341, 1343
 - text 1362
 - time signatures 813, 1386, 1389, 1391, 1396, 1397

-
- signposts (*continued*)
trills 1097–1100
tuplets 1413, 1416
- silence
hairpins. *See* niente
leading. *See* pre-roll
MIDI keyboards 216
missing sounds 564
muting items 548
notes 1141
playback template 558, 559, 564
rests. *See* rests
- simile
dynamics 309, 312, 932
hiding 1189
playing techniques 1189
showing 1189
- simple time signatures. *See* time signatures
- simplifying
accidentals 475
figured bass 969
time signatures 1394
- singers 114, 130. *See also* vocal staves
- single bar rests
bar counts 1279
H-bars 1279
hiding 1277
showing 1277
- single barlines 306, 307, 816, 817, 819
- single players 123, 127
adding 124, 128, 129
empty staves 605
ensembles 114, 128, 129
extra staves 1323
MIDI import 85
ossia staves 1323
staff labels 1309
staff size 618
staves 606, 607
- single-line
percussion kits 1428, 1429
staves 1322
- single-note tremolos. *See* tremolos
- single-sided printing 581
- single-stroke caesuras 337, 1012
- single-voice contexts 1438
articulations 805
grace notes 1002
guitar pre-bends 1129
stem direction 1002, 1074
tie curvature direction 1368
- six-line staff
tablature. *See* tablature
- sixteenth notes 14, 200, 224, 259, 1002
beaming 841, 861
beats 302
chords 251
glissando lines 1121
grace notes 249
hiding 1060, 1079
Insert mode 237
metronome marks 294
percussion 238, 682
- sixteenth notes (*continued*)
pick-up bars 285, 289, 291
quantization 93
rests 245, 1271
rhythmic grid 217
showing 1060, 1079
splitting notes 261
swing playback 295, 552
tablature 242
tremolos 414, 416, 1399
tuplets 254, 257
voices 232
- size 617
absolute 754, 756
accidentals 794, 877
arpeggio sign fingerings 985
audio buffer 268, 269
bar numbers 829, 830
barlines 822, 824
bars 451, 452, 507, 602, 603, 612, 621, 810, 1328
beams 845, 847, 857
brackets 865, 866, 892, 1317
channels 724
chord diagrams 898, 906
chord symbols 433, 877, 889, 892
cues 920
dynamics 433, 953
elision slurs 1035, 1050
figured bass 968
fingerings 906, 976, 979, 985, 1334
flared hairpins 942
flow headings 756
font styles 389, 754, 756, 1356
fret numbers 906
gaps 152, 1291, 1368
grace notes 433, 1002, 1006
H-bars 1280
instrument change labels 142
instrument names 1318
Key Editor 673, 674
laissez vibrer ties 1372
left-hand fingering 981
line text 1209
lyrics 1041–1044
measures 612, 1328
metronome marks 1339
mixer 724
multi-bar rests 1280
noteheads 602, 617, 920, 1053, 1058, 1059
notes 433, 602, 617, 920
octave lines 433
page numbers 1150
pages 593, 600, 745
paper 593, 594
paragraph styles 756
parentheses 892
percussion editor 673, 674
piano roll editor 673, 674
player group labels 1317, 1318
playing techniques 433
project window 40, 49
rastral 617
rehearsal marks 433, 1219

- size (*continued*)
 - repeat endings 1232, 1233
 - repeat markers 1237
 - slurs 1302
 - space 617
 - staff labels 1318, 1319
 - staff-relative 754, 756
 - staves 602, 617, 618, 745
 - system objects 602, 618
 - systems 612
 - tablature 1334
 - tasto solo 968
 - tempo marks 1339
 - text 389, 754, 756, 1356
 - ties 1375
 - time signatures 1387, 1389, 1397
 - titles 756
 - tracks 537, 673, 674
 - unit of measurement 51
 - video window 192
- sketch staves 112, 114
- slants
 - beams 847, 1008
 - pedal line hooks 1172
- slap tongue. *See* playing techniques
- slash notation 1258
- slash regions 1261
 - beaming 1263
 - beat grouping 1262
 - chord symbols 878, 882, 1261
 - compound time signatures 1262
 - counts 1265, 1267
 - default settings 1262
 - deleting 455
 - filter 429
 - font style 1250
 - handles 430
 - hiding other notes 1263
 - hiding rests 1264
 - highlights 1261, 1265
 - inputting 417
 - length 430
 - moving 461, 464, 1269
 - moving counts 514
 - multiple 1268
 - note grouping 860, 1262
 - overlapping 1268
 - parentheses 1267
 - placement 1267
 - popover 408, 417
 - rests 1264
 - showing other notes 1263
 - staff position 1269
 - staff-relative placement 1267
 - stem direction 1268
 - stems 1263
 - vertical position 1269
 - viewing options 1265
 - voices 1258, 1268
- slash voices 1258, 1399
 - bar rests 1273
 - caret 218, 233
 - changing 466, 1259
 - slash voices (*continued*)
 - hiding stems 1079
 - inputting 233
 - moving 1269
 - multiple-voice contexts 1268
 - percussion kits 143, 238, 1260
 - playback 1258, 1260
 - popover 408
 - rests 1273
 - staff position 1269
 - stem direction 1077
 - stemless 218, 233
 - vertical position 1269
- slashes 1258
 - bar rests 1273
 - caesuras. *See* caesuras
 - chord symbols 872, 886
 - double 1324, 1399
 - dynamics 309, 928
 - figured bass 397
 - grace notes 1002, 1006, 1007, 1009
 - noteheads 1053, 1056, 1258, 1421
 - notes. *See* slash voices. *See also* tremolo strokes
 - pauses. *See* caesuras
 - percussion 1421
 - regions. *See* slash regions
 - rests 1273
 - stemless 1259
 - stems. *See* tremolo strokes
 - systems. *See* system dividers
 - time signatures 1389, 1392
 - tremolos. *See* tremolo strokes
 - triple 1399
 - voices. *See* slash voices
- slides
 - fingerings. *See* fingering slides
 - guitar 1115
 - jazz. *See* jazz articulations
 - Key Editor 667
 - pitch. *See* glissando lines. *See also* pitch bends
 - tempo 32
 - zoom 667
- slight bends. *See* guitar bends
- slots 522, 722
- slur segments 1298, 1301
 - number 1299
- slurs 1180, 1283, 1365
 - angles 1287, 1302
 - arpeggio signs. *See* curved arpeggio signs
 - articulations 806, 808, 1286
 - bar numbers 832
 - collision avoidance 1287, 1295
 - colors 56
 - control points 1300
 - copying 457, 460, 805
 - cross-staff 273, 1287, 1294
 - cross-voice 273, 1294
 - crosshairs 517
 - curvature 1285, 1292, 1293, 1306
 - dashed 1289–1291
 - deleting 455
 - dotted 1289–1291
 - duration 1308

- slurs (*continued*)
- East Asian elision 1050
 - editorial 1289, 1290
 - elision 1050
 - endpoints 1286, 1287, 1300, 1302
 - Engrave mode 1300
 - filter 429
 - fingerings 976
 - flat slurs 1292
 - formatting 1290–1292, 1302, 1304
 - frame breaks 1287
 - gap size 1291
 - gaps 1287, 1295
 - grace notes 273, 1002, 1284, 1285
 - guitar techniques 364
 - hammer-ons 364, 1139
 - handles 1288, 1298, 1300, 1301
 - height 1304, 1305
 - inputting 206, 273, 364, 1295
 - inverting 1285, 1292, 1293
 - large pitch ranges 1288
 - length 430, 1284
 - linking 460, 1297, 1298
 - lyrics 1050, 1290
 - MIDI import 91
 - MIDI recording 268
 - moving 461, 464, 1302
 - multi-segment 1301
 - muting 548
 - nested 1286
 - nested slurs 1295
 - notehead brackets 1072
 - ornaments 1092
 - overlapping 1287
 - panel 200
 - placement 518, 1283, 1285–1287, 1292, 1293
 - playback 273, 545, 546, 749, 1308
 - position 518, 1283, 1285–1287, 1292
 - pull-offs 364, 1139
 - ranges 1288
 - rotating 1302
 - segments. *See* slur segments
 - selecting 423, 439
 - shape 1287, 1288, 1298, 1299, 1301, 1302, 1306
 - short 1288
 - shoulder offset 1306
 - staff lines 1285
 - stem direction 1286, 1292
 - styles 1289, 1290
 - system breaks 1287
 - thickness 1304
 - ties 1284, 1286
 - ties vs. slurs 1365
 - tucking index 518
 - unlinking 460, 1298
 - within slurs 1295
- small notes 433
- cues. *See* cues
 - grace notes. *See* grace notes
 - harmonics. *See* harmonics
 - staves. *See* staff size
 - trills. *See* trills
 - tuplets 1408. *See also* tuplet numbers
- smart quotes 656, 659
- smears. *See* jazz ornaments
- smooth
- dynamics 697
 - glissando lines 1115, 1119, 1120
 - jazz articulations 1145
 - MIDI 704
 - slur shapes 1300, 1301
 - tie shapes 1374, 1375
- smorzando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
- SMPTE. *See* timecodes. *See also* markers
- SMuFL 751, 753
- accidentals 391
 - chord symbols 877
 - dynamics 953
 - figured bass 968
 - fingerings 979
 - metronome marks 1339
 - music symbols 391
 - noteheads 391
 - tempo marks 1339
 - time signatures 1398
 - tokens 657
- snap pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
- snapping pitches
- pitches 482, 483, 492
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- snare drum. *See* unpitched percussion
- snare rolls. *See* tremolos
- solfège chord symbols 320, 872
- solid
- lines 1194, 1206
 - slurs 1289, 1290
 - tempo marks 1347
 - ties 1366
- solo
- indication 388
 - players. *See* soloists. *See also* single players
 - scrubbing 542
 - staff labels 127
 - system objects 1327
- soloing 717, 718
- channels 547, 720
 - deactivating 548, 717–719
 - instruments 542, 547
 - playback 542, 545, 546
 - tracks 547
 - voices 547
- soloists 127
- panning 733
 - system objects 1327
- sonata. *See* flows
- songbooks 19, 75, 121, 171
- composer 998
 - copyright 999
 - lyricist 999
 - titles 997
- songs. *See* flows
- sordino. *See* playing techniques
- sorting
- comments 500
 - flows 173

- sorting (*continued*)
 - instruments 125–127
 - layouts 179, 180
 - players 110, 125–127
- sostenuto pedal 1161
 - MIDI controller 1178
 - start signs 1171
 - text 1176, 1177
- sound libraries 558, 780
 - changing 564
 - delay 769
 - documentation 69
 - expression maps 762
 - loading sounds 528, 542, 558, 564
 - missing sounds 564
 - panning. *See* stage templates. *See also* space templates
 - percussion maps 784
 - playback 761, 762, 780
 - trills 1104
- sounding
 - duration 687, 1009, 1406. *See also* played duration
 - percussion legend ranges 1430, 1432
 - pitch. *See* sounding pitch. *See also* concert pitch
- sounding pitch 178, 1081
 - harmonics 1085
 - input pitch 215
 - layouts 178
 - playback 545
- sounds. *See* playback
- soundtracks
 - audio 193
 - volume 193
- source instruments 920
- source notes 986
 - pitch mapping 482, 483, 492
 - scale mapping 484, 485, 492
- space size 602, 617, 618
- space templates 730, 738
 - changing 742, 744
 - creating 739, 742
 - dialog 738, 739, 741
 - exporting 744
 - expression maps 764
 - factory default 738
 - importing 743
 - percussion maps 781
 - playback templates 561, 566
 - resetting 742
- spacing 507, 603, 620, 621
 - accidentals 795–797
 - arpeggio signs 1111
 - bars 507, 509, 813, 1199, 1276
 - caesuras 340
 - capos 158, 872
 - chord diagrams 898
 - chord symbols 872, 880, 881, 887, 888, 893
 - clefs 907, 909
 - condensing 643
 - cross-staff beams 852
 - cues 507
 - flow headings 615
 - frame fullness 506
- spacing (*continued*)
 - frets 154
 - galley view 40
 - gaps 507
 - grace notes 507
 - gradual dynamics 944
 - hyphens 1035, 1045, 1046
 - layout options 745
 - lyrics 508, 1035, 1037, 1039, 1041, 1042, 1044–1046
 - mixer 724
 - notes. *See* note spacing
 - percussion 143, 152, 1429
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - rests. *See* note spacing
 - rhythm dots 1442
 - staff lines 143, 152, 1429
 - staves. *See* staff spacing
 - stems 852
 - systems. *See* system spacing. *See also* staff spacing
 - tacets 642
 - text 756, 759, 1356
 - time signatures 1394
 - voice columns 1442, 1443
- spatial sounds. *See* panning. *See also* reverb
- speech bubbles
 - comments. *See* comments
- speed
 - arpeggio signs 1112, 1113
 - beaming. *See* fanned beams
 - bpm 1341
 - changing 293, 543, 708, 709, 1016, 1342, 1344
 - frame rates 193
 - grace notes 1009
 - playback 543, 1016, 1335
 - swing playback 552
 - tempo marks 1335, 1342, 1344, 1345
 - tremolos 1403
 - trills 1095, 1104, 1106
 - videos 193
- spelling
 - accidentals 245, 473, 475, 476
 - chord symbols 157, 158, 871, 883, 884
 - notes 245, 473, 475, 476
- spiccato. *See* playing techniques
- spin boxes 666
- split point 91
- split stems 798
 - appearance 799
- splitting 261
 - barline joins 824
 - bars 633, 634, 636, 637, 813, 1382, 1394
 - beams 747, 840, 843, 855, 858, 860, 861, 863
 - brackets 1070
 - flows 501, 583–585
 - multi-bar rests 1279, 1281
 - notehead brackets 1070
 - notes 196, 261, 262, 466, 747, 860, 861, 863, 1262, 1373, 1435
 - PDF files 585
 - pedal lines 1169
 - phrases 466, 1329
 - project window 48

- splitting (*continued*)
- repeat marker text 1239
 - rests 245, 262, 861, 863, 1273
 - slash regions 1262
 - staves 413, 414, 633, 634, 636, 637, 643, 1236, 1329
 - ties 261, 262, 747, 860, 861, 1373
 - tuplets 1411
 - voices 466, 1435
- spreads
- histogram controls 711, 712, 714
 - page arrangement 41, 50, 590
- square
- accidental brackets 793, 1084
 - bracketed noteheads 1066, 1067, 1072
 - brackets 868–870, 1194
 - figured bass brackets 963
 - noteheads 1056
- squeal. *See* pinch harmonics
- squeezes. *See* jazz ornaments
- staccatissimo. *See* articulations
- staccato. *See* articulations. *See also* playback techniques
- stacking order 518
- accidentals 795, 797
 - bowing marks 1185
 - changing 919
 - chord symbols 163, 164, 166, 872, 887
 - fermatas 1185
 - lines 1199
 - octave lines 518
 - playing techniques 1185
 - signposts 450
 - slurs 518
 - string indicators 1185
 - tuplets 518
- staff grouping
- barline joins 822, 824
 - changing 865
 - default settings 77, 865, 866
 - ensemble types 865, 866
 - player groups 167
- staff labels 181, 1309
- alignment 184, 1311, 1318
 - baseline shift 184
 - brackets 1317
 - changing 183, 1313, 1315
 - colors 184, 1318
 - condensed staves 1318, 1320
 - Cubase 1310
 - default settings 77
 - divisi 1320
 - first system 1310, 1328
 - flows 1310
 - fonts 756, 1318
 - galley view 40
 - grouping 150, 151, 1317, 1319, 1320
 - hiding 1310, 1312
 - indents 1311, 1318, 1327, 1328
 - instrument change labels 141
 - instrument changes 138
 - instrument names 57, 150, 151, 181, 183, 184, 187, 657, 1310, 1313
- staff labels (*continued*)
- italics 184, 756
 - language 57
 - length 1310, 1312, 1313
 - line breaks 1315
 - MusicXML import 1310
 - numbering 131, 132, 1313, 1320
 - overline 184
 - paragraph styles 756, 1318
 - parentheses 1315
 - percussion 143, 150, 151, 1313, 1319, 1428, 1432
 - player groups. *See* player group labels
 - player names 182, 1313
 - project templates 77
 - resetting 187
 - separators 1315
 - showing 1310, 1312
 - size 1318, 1319
 - solo 127
 - stretch 184
 - subscript 184
 - superscript 184
 - systems 1312
 - tokens 657
 - transposing instruments 1309, 1314, 1315
 - underline 184
- staff lines
- erasing 888, 930, 975, 985, 993, 1182, 1213, 1361, 1433
 - fingerings 985
 - number 143, 608, 1428, 1429
 - percussion 143, 152, 1429
 - slurs 1285
 - spacing 143, 152, 1429
 - string indicators 993
 - tablature 154, 1330
 - text 1182, 1213, 1361
 - ties 1377
- staff position
- lines 1111, 1202–1204
 - note input 240
 - percussion 685, 1420, 1421, 1424, 1425
 - percussion kits 149, 240
- staff size 594, 602, 617
- changing 602, 618, 620
 - custom 620
 - dialog 620
 - individual staves 618
 - layouts 602, 617, 618
 - MusicXML files 82
 - rastral size 617
 - space size 617
- staff spacing 503, 602, 620
- activating 503
 - changing 603, 604, 620, 624
 - condensing 643
 - copying 628
 - default settings 603, 621
 - divisi 604
 - final systems 612
 - flow headings 615
 - fullness 506
 - galley view 621, 623

- staff spacing (*continued*)
 - handles 624
 - hiding staves 605–607
 - horizontal 506, 612
 - justification 506, 604, 612, 621
 - layout options 745
 - layouts 603
 - moving systems 627
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - reverting 626
 - system fullness 506
 - systems 506
 - text collision avoidance 1357
- staff text. *See* staff-attached text
- staff-attached text 1351, 1352
 - alignment 756, 1356
 - backgrounds 1361
 - borders 756, 1358
 - erased backgrounds 1361
 - exporting 102
 - formatting 389, 392, 756, 1356
 - hiding 1362
 - inputting 388
 - moving 478, 480, 514, 1356
 - padding 756, 1360
 - paragraph styles 1356
 - reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rotating 480
 - selecting 421
 - showing 1362
 - signposts 450
 - staff-relative placement 434
- staff-relative font size 754, 756
- staff-relative placement
 - articulations 808
 - bar numbers 834
 - beaming 845, 846
 - changing 434
 - cue labels 434
 - dynamics 434, 922
 - figured bass 965
 - fingering 983
 - fingerings 974, 975
 - guitar bends 434
 - guitar pre-bends 1129
 - hammer-ons 1142
 - harmonics 1087
 - left-hand fingerings 984
 - lines 1201, 1202
 - lyrics 1038, 1039
 - numbered bar region counts 1257
 - octave lines 434, 916
 - ornaments 434
 - pedal lines 1167
 - percussion legends 434
 - playing techniques 434
 - pull-offs 1142
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - repeat markers 1241
 - resetting 436
 - slash region counts 1267
 - slurs 1293
 - string indicators 381, 383, 993, 995
- staff-relative placement (*continued*)
 - tapping 1142
 - text 434
 - trills 434
 - tuplet brackets 1414
- stage templates 730, 731, 738
 - changing 735
 - creating 732, 733, 736
 - dialog 731–733
 - exporting 737
 - expression maps 764
 - factory default 731
 - importing 737
 - percussion maps 781
 - resetting 735
- stars
 - pedal lines 1161, 1173
- start area 34
- start position
 - frames 629, 636
 - lines 1205
 - pages 629, 636
 - playback 538
 - systems 629, 633
 - trills 1092
 - videos 191
- start repeat barlines 303, 816, 817
 - counts. *See* repeat counts
 - inputting 301, 303, 306, 307
 - key signatures 819
 - playthroughs 549, 1242
 - system breaks 819
- start signs
 - lines 1188, 1196
 - pedal lines 1171, 1176
- starting 222
 - area 34
 - Hub 69
 - interchangeable time signatures 283, 287, 288, 1382, 1397
 - MIDI recording 264
 - note input 222, 224, 227
 - playback 540
 - players 34
 - projects 34, 71
 - timecode values 1227
 - workspaces 43
- statistics 106
 - exporting 107
- status bar 38
 - selection tools 40
 - view types 40, 41
 - width 40
- staves 14, 1322
 - adding 124, 128, 133, 1323, 1329
 - arranging tools 455
 - bar numbers 829, 831
 - bar rests. *See* bar rests
 - barlines 822, 824
 - beaming 851–854
 - brackets 77, 865, 866, 1317
 - casting off 629–631
 - chord symbols 178, 318, 878, 880–882

staves (*continued*)

clefs 913
 collision avoidance 603, 604, 621, 623, 624
 color 55
 comments 494, 496, 499
 condensing. *See* condensing
 copying items 457, 458
 crossing notes 851, 854
 dialog 620
 dividers. *See* system dividers. *See also* divide arrows
 divisi 1329
 dynamics 313, 315, 434, 931
 dynamics linking 460, 951
 empty. *See* empty staves. *See also* blank staves extra 1323
 fermatas 1014
 figured bass 395, 957
 filtering. *See* instrument filters. *See also* filters
 fingerings 975, 985
 five-line 1319, 1322, 1428
 fixing 629–631
 galley view 50
 gaps 513, 604, 1236, 1328
 glissando lines 349, 350
 grids 1319, 1428
 groups 167, 824, 866. *See also* staff grouping
 height 602–604, 614, 616, 617
 hiding 121, 172, 176, 177, 445, 448, 449, 605–608, 1331
 indents 513, 612, 1310, 1311, 1327, 1328
 inputting on multiple 213, 222, 235
 instrument change labels 141
 instrument changes 136, 139, 140
 key signatures 280, 281, 1019
 labels. *See* staff labels
 language 57
 large time signatures 1389
 layout options 602
 margins 612, 614, 616, 1310, 1311, 1328
 markers 1222
 metronome marks 1326, 1327
 moving 513, 602, 603, 614, 616, 624
 multiple voices 232, 643
 names. *See* staff labels. *See also* instrument names notation 1330, 1331
 note input 222, 235
 notes 464
 number 106, 605, 608, 630, 1323
 order 125–127
 ossia staves. *See* ossia staves
 page view 50
 pauses 1012
 percussion 1428, 1429
 pick-up bars. *See* pick-up bars
 playback 540
 rasterizing. *See* staff size
 reducing 643
 rehearsal marks 1326, 1327
 renaming 183
 repeat endings 1326, 1327
 repeat markers 1241
 selecting 424

staves (*continued*)

showing 50, 172, 176, 445, 448, 449, 605–608
 single-line 1222, 1227, 1228, 1319, 1322, 1428
 size. *See* staff size
 slurs 1294, 1297
 slurs linking 460
 spacing. *See* staff spacing
 splitting 413, 414, 1236
 staff labels. *See* staff labels
 statistics 106
 stem length 1078
 string indicators. *See* string indicators
 swing playback 554
 system breaks 633
 system dividers 1324
 system objects 1326, 1327
 tablature 1330, 1331
 tacets 640
 tempo marks 1326, 1327
 text 388, 1326, 1327
 ties 247, 1371, 1377
 time signatures 287–289, 291, 1326, 1327, 1381, 1387–1389, 1394
 timecodes 1222, 1227, 1228
 transposing instruments 132
 tremolos 851, 854
 vertical spacing. *See* staff spacing
 voices 232
 VST instruments 529
 white 55
 width 612
 Stein-Zimmermann accidentals 279, 1028
 stem direction 1074
 beam groups 1076
 beam placement 845, 853
 centered beams 849
 changing 466, 1076, 1077, 1268
 chords 1075
 cross-staff beams 851, 1078
 drum sets 148
 filters 429
 grace notes 1002, 1008
 guitar pre-bends 1129
 middle line 1074
 multiple-voice contexts 1075
 notes crossed to other staves 851, 854, 1444
 notes on middle line of staff 1074
 percussion kits 143, 148, 241, 747, 1435, 1436
 resetting 846, 1078
 rhythm slashes 1077, 1268
 single-voice contexts 1074, 1077
 slurs 1286, 1292
 staff-relative placement 846
 ties 1076
 voices 466, 1074, 1077, 1438
 stemless
 noteheads 1079
 rhythm slashes 218, 233, 1259
 stemlets 858
 gaps 858
 length 858

- stems [840](#), [1074](#)
- altered unisons [798](#)
 - articulations [808](#)
 - audio [100](#), [101](#)
 - beam placement [853](#)
 - beaming [843](#), [847](#), [852](#)
 - combining. *See* voices
 - cross-staff [851](#), [854](#), [1078](#)
 - deleting tremolos [1403](#)
 - direction. *See* stem direction
 - double [232](#), [798](#), [1438](#). *See also* voices
 - durations [200](#), [224](#), [259](#), [261](#)
 - fermatas [1013](#)
 - flags [1074](#)
 - gaps [852](#). *See also* note spacing
 - grace notes [1006](#), [1008](#)
 - handles [1078](#), [1404](#)
 - hiding [1079](#)
 - inputting [232](#), [1438](#). *See also* voices
 - length [847](#), [1008](#), [1078](#)
 - percussion kits [143](#), [148](#), [241](#), [747](#), [1435](#), [1436](#)
 - resetting [844](#), [1078](#)
 - reverse [848](#), [849](#), [851](#), [854](#), [1074](#), [1076–1078](#)
 - rhythm slashes [1259](#), [1263](#), [1268](#)
 - showing [1079](#)
 - slashes [1399](#)
 - slurs [1286](#)
 - split stems [798](#), [799](#)
 - stemlets. *See* stemlets
 - tablature [1331](#)
 - ties [1076](#)
 - tremolos [1399](#), [1402](#), [1404](#)
 - unbeaming [843](#)
 - voices [232](#), [466](#), [1074](#), [1077](#), [1438](#), [1442](#), [1443](#)
- step input. *See* note input
- step-wise movement
- scrub playback [542](#)
- stereo pan [718](#), [720](#)
- changing [726](#)
- StereoEnhancer [722](#), [728](#)
- stickings [1427](#)
- stop positions [451](#)
- adding [453](#)
 - deleting [454](#)
 - moving [453](#)
- stopped pitch [1081](#)
- Fretboard panel [208](#)
 - harmonics [1085](#)
- stopping. *See* starting
- stopping finger. *See* left-hand fingering
- straight lines [1194](#)
- duration [656](#), [659](#)
 - glissando lines [1115](#)
 - guitar bends [1122](#)
 - jazz articulations [1148](#)
 - pedal lines [1161](#)
 - quotes [656](#), [659](#)
- straight playback. *See* swing playback
- stress marks. *See* articulations
- stretch
- instrument names [184](#)
 - lyrics [1041](#), [1042](#), [1044](#)
 - note spacing [507](#)
- stretch (*continued*)
- pages [604](#), [621](#)
 - staff labels [184](#)
 - systems [506](#), [604](#), [612](#), [621](#)
 - text [389](#), [756](#), [759](#)
- strikethrough text [389](#), [756](#), [759](#)
- string designation. *See* string indicators
- string indicators [981](#), [993](#), [1059](#)
- deleting [994](#)
 - duration [430](#), [1186](#), [1187](#)
 - font [979](#), [993](#)
 - handles [1188](#)
 - horizontal position [995](#)
 - inputting [367](#), [370](#), [381](#), [383](#)
 - inside staff [383](#), [993](#), [994](#)
 - length [1186](#), [1188](#)
 - lines [381](#), [383](#), [430](#), [1186](#), [1187](#)
 - moving [461](#), [464](#), [514](#), [995](#), [1184](#), [1185](#), [1188](#)
 - order [1185](#)
 - outside staff [381](#), [383](#), [993](#)
 - panel [371](#), [383](#)
 - placement [995](#)
 - popover [367](#), [370](#), [381](#)
 - position [995](#)
 - string number [1059](#)
- string instruments [130](#), [153](#)
- adding [112](#), [114](#), [124](#), [128](#), [133](#)
 - bowing marks [367](#), [371](#), [1184](#)
 - brackets [866](#), [1317](#)
 - chord symbols [878](#)
 - fingering shifts [990](#)
 - glissando lines [1119](#), [1120](#)
 - groups [167](#)
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - player order [110](#), [125](#)
 - playing techniques. *See* playing techniques
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - string number [1059](#)
 - substitution fingering [972](#)
 - system objects [1327](#)
- string pitches
- changing [156](#), [1059](#)
 - fretted instruments [156](#)
- string shift indicators [990](#)
- angles [990](#)
 - direction [991](#), [1059](#)
 - inputting [274](#), [276](#), [990](#)
 - thickness [990](#)
- stringendo. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
- strings
- adding [154](#)
 - assigning notes to [1059](#)
 - bends. *See* guitar bends
 - bowing marks [367](#), [371](#), [1184](#)
 - capos. *See* capos
 - changing [1059](#), [1332](#)
 - changing pitch [154](#)
 - chord diagrams [895](#), [904](#)
 - color [54](#)
 - deleting [154](#)
 - fingering [981](#), [1059](#). *See also* string indicators
 - fretted instruments [112](#), [153](#), [154](#)

- strings (*continued*)
hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
harmonics 1081
indicators. *See* string indicators
notes out of range 1064, 1332
numbers. *See* string indicators
pitches 154, 1059
pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
ranges 154
resetting 1332
slurs. *See* hammer-ons
tapping. *See* tapping
tuning 112, 153, 154, 545, 1059
- strokes
figured bass 397
grace notes 249, 250, 1002, 1006
slurs 1289, 1290
ties 1366
tremolos 1399, 1400, 1402–1404
- structures
documentation 15
meters 283, 840, 860, 1262, 1381, 1382
repeat 409, 549, 1230, 1236, 1245
- strumming
arpeggios. *See* arpeggio signs
fingerings 985
rhythm slashes 233, 1260
- studio
panning. *See* stage templates
reverb. *See* space templates
- styles
appearance 436
breath marks 1012
caesuras 1012
fermatas 1011
fonts 753, 754
glissando lines 1115, 1116
jazz articulations 1148
margins 598
niente hairpins 948
page numbers 1150
parentheses 891, 963, 1067
resetting 436
slurs 1289, 1290
tempo marks 1336, 1345
text 753, 756, 759
ties 1366
time signatures 1389, 1391, 1393
- sub-brackets. *See* secondary brackets
sub-sub-brackets. *See* secondary brackets
- subdivision
bars 860, 861, 863, 1262
cut common time 863
slash regions 1262
tempo equations 1349
time signatures 283, 861, 1389, 1390
- subito. *See* dynamic modifiers
- subordinate bar numbers 837
adding 837
changing 837
- subscript
chord symbols 872
instrument names 184
- subscript (*continued*)
staff labels 184
text 389, 759
- subsequent repeats
bar numbers 838
- substitution fingering 972
handles 973
position 973
- substitution font styles 754
- subtitles 75, 647, 648, 651–653, 756. *See also* flow headings
- suffixes
dynamics 932, 933
instrument changes 57, 139
playing techniques 1181
rehearsal marks 1219
timecodes 1226
- sul ponticello. *See* playing techniques
- sul tasto. *See* playing techniques
- super locrian scales 484, 485, 492
- superscript
chord symbols 872
instrument names 184
staff labels 184
text 389, 759
trill intervals 1104
- SuperVision 722, 728
- suppressing
highlights 437, 450, 1247, 1265. *See also* hiding
playback 548, 549
staves 605–607
- suspensions
brackets 963
chord symbols 322
figured bass 395, 397, 961, 965, 966
- sustain pedal 1161
continuation lines 1173
Engrave mode 1163
handles 1163
inputting 369, 375, 377
level changes 378, 1162, 1165
merging 1170
MIDI controller 270, 1178
MusicXML import 1179
popover 369, 375
removing retakes/level changes 1167
retakes 377, 378, 1162, 1164
splitting 1169
start signs 1171
text 1176, 1177
- sustaining instruments 953
- SVG files 595
color 596
exporting 585, 586, 588
file names 588
fonts 596
layout numbers 180
layouts 585, 586
- swapping. *See* switching
- swash arpeggio signs 1108, 1110
- swells. *See* messa di voce

- swing playback 552
 - disabling 555
 - enabling 295, 553, 554
 - popover 295
 - ratios 552
 - triplets 552
- Swiss army triplet. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
- switches 766, 774
 - creating 776, 777
 - properties 663
- switching 467
 - flows 440–442, 521
 - galley view 50
 - handles 511, 516
 - instruments. *See* instrument changes
 - layouts 30, 43, 47
 - modes 43
 - note order 1443
 - notes 465, 511, 1442
 - page view 50
 - rehearsal marks 1217
 - selection 421, 439, 511
 - staff spacing handles 624
 - tabs 47
 - view type 50
 - voices 467
 - windows 43, 49
- syllables
 - beaming 843
 - dynamics 939
 - lyrics 1031, 1035, 1037
 - position 1035
 - tempo marks 1347
 - types 1031
- symbols
 - bar repeats 1245, 1251
 - bar rests 1275
 - caret 218
 - chords. *See* chord symbols. *See also* chord diagrams
 - coda 1238
 - ornaments 1090
 - pedal lines 1162, 1171, 1173, 1176
 - playing techniques 1180
 - repeats. *See* repeat markers. *See also* repeat barlines
 - segno 1238
 - speech bubbles. *See* comments
 - text 388, 391
 - vibrato bar 1137
- symphony. *See* flows
- syncing
 - dynamics 699
 - instruments 669, 699, 705
 - Key Editor 669
 - MIDI 705
 - tracks 669
 - videos to music 191
- syncopation
 - beat grouping 860
 - stemlets 858
- system breaks 504, 598, 633
 - automatic 629, 631
 - bar repeats 629, 634
 - barlines 633, 819, 820
 - brackets 820
 - clefs 907
 - copying to other layouts 643, 645
 - deleting 632, 636
 - divisi 1329
 - dynamics 938
 - glissando lines 1119
 - hairpins 938
 - hiding staves 606
 - inserting 631, 634
 - key signatures 1024, 1025
 - lines 1196, 1215
 - make into system 635
 - moving 633
 - octave lines 918
 - playing technique lines 1188
 - playing techniques 1188
 - repeat endings 1233
 - signposts 450, 633, 636
 - slurs 1287
 - staff labels 1312
 - staff size 618
 - staff spacing 603
 - staff visibility 606
 - ties 1370
 - time signatures 1384
- system dividers 1324
 - hiding 1324
 - showing 1324
 - width 1325
- system formatting 598
 - casting off. *See* casting off
 - condensing. *See* condensing
 - copying to other layouts 643
 - frame breaks. *See* frame breaks
 - indents 1310, 1327, 1328
 - note spacing. *See* note spacing
 - staff labels 1310, 1312
 - system breaks. *See* system breaks
 - system dividers. *See* system dividers
 - system objects. *See* system objects
- system fullness indicator 506
- system objects 1326
 - copying 425
 - layouts 1326
 - lines 386, 1194
 - positions 1327
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - repeat counts 1242
 - repeat endings 1230, 1233
 - repeat markers 1241
 - selecting 421, 425, 427, 428
 - size 602, 618
 - tempo marks 1335, 1336
 - text 388
 - time signatures 1388, 1394
- system spacing 503, 603, 620
 - changing 603, 604, 624
 - default settings 603, 621

- system spacing (*continued*)
 handles 511, 624
 justification 604, 621
- system text. *See* system-attached text
- system track 425
 deleting music 811
 hiding 427, 437
 inputting bars 305
 inputting beats 305
 selecting music 427, 428
 stop positions 453, 454
- system-attached text 1351, 1352
 alignment 756, 1356
 backgrounds 1361
 borders 756, 1358
 copying 425
 erased backgrounds 1361
 exporting 102
 formatting 389, 392, 756, 1356
 hiding 1362
 inputting 388
 markers 97
 moving 514, 1356
 multiple positions 1327
 padding 756, 1360
 paragraph styles 1356
 selecting 421, 425, 427, 428
 showing 1362
 signposts 450
 staff-relative placement 434
 staves 1326, 1327
 tempo tracks 97
- systemic barlines 820, 821
 braces 864
 brackets 864
 hiding 820, 821
 secondary brackets 868, 869
 showing 820, 821
 sub-brackets 868, 869
 sub-sub-brackets 870
 text alignment 756, 1356
- systems
 alignment 604, 612
 bar numbers 826, 831, 834, 1254
 barlines 819–821
 breaks. *See* system breaks
 casting off 629–632
 changing indents 1328
 chord symbols 880, 881
 clefs 911
 coda gap 1241, 1242
 condensed staves. *See* condensing
 dividers. *See* system dividers
 divisi 1329
 end position 513
 fixing 629–631
 formatting 504
 fullness. *See* system fullness indicator
 gaps 603, 604, 1236, 1328
 height 602–604
 indents 513, 612, 1310, 1311, 1327, 1328
 justification 604, 612
 key signatures 1022
- systems (*continued*)
 length 513, 612
 lyrics 1036, 1039, 1047, 1049
 make into system 635
 margins 612, 1310, 1311, 1328
 moving 624, 627, 634, 635, 637
 number 106, 630
 numbered bar regions 1254
 rehearsal marks 1216
 repeat barlines 819
 resetting 632
 sections 1236
 selecting 423, 424
 spacing. *See* system spacing
 splitting 1236
 staff labels 1310, 1312, 1320, 1328
 staff size 618
 start position 513
 statistics 106
 staves. *See* staves
 text. *See* system-attached text
 timecodes 1227, 1228
 tonality 1028
 track. *See* system track
 trill marks 1094
 vertical position. *See* system spacing
 width 513, 612
- ## T
- tabla notation 1436
- tablature 1330
 appearance 1334
 beaming 1331
 bend intervals 1128
 bends. *See* guitar bends
 bracketed noteheads 1066, 1067, 1122, 1127
 capos 157, 159–161
 caret 218
 changing string for notes 1332
 chords 227, 242, 1067, 1069
 clefs 907
 color 54
 colors 56
 dead notes 1141
 default notation 224, 227
 dives 1127, 1135
 font style 1334
 frets 154, 159–161
 green notes 1330, 1332
 guitar bends 1122, 1331
 harmonics 1082, 1085
 hiding 1331
 hold lines 1122, 1129
 intervals 1128
 moving notes to other strings 1332
 note input 227, 242
 notes out of range 468, 1064, 1330, 1332
 numbers 1330, 1332, 1334
 open pitches 156
 parenthesized fret numbers 1122, 1127
 post-bends. *See* guitar post-bends
 pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends

- tablature (*continued*)
 - question marks 468, 1330
 - resetting strings 1332
 - rhythms 1331
 - showing 1331
 - size 1334
 - stems 1331
 - strings 154, 156, 224, 227, 1332
 - ties 1069, 1364
 - trills 1094
 - tuning 153, 154, 157, 159–161
- tables
 - actions 767
 - comments 500
 - conditions 768
 - contents. *See* front matter
 - endpoint setup 567
 - exporting 102
 - fonts 73
 - markers 402
 - MIDI import 87
 - percussion maps 781
 - switches 766
 - text 102
 - tracks 87
- tabloid 593
- tabs
 - bar 33
 - closing 47
 - groups 48
 - hiding 31
 - layouts 43, 45, 47
 - moving 48
 - opening 45
 - order 48
 - showing 31
 - showing multiple 48
 - switching 47
 - view options 45
- tacets 20, 640
 - borders 756
 - exporting 80
 - formatting 640
 - hiding 641, 1279
 - margins 642
 - moving 642
 - paragraph styles 640
 - removing players from flows 172
 - showing 641, 1279
 - text 641
 - thickness 756
- tags. *See* signposts. *See also* comments
- tails. *See* stems
- tambourine. *See* unpitched percussion
- tanto. *See* tempo marks
- tap tempo 296
- tapping 981, 1138
 - deleting 1143
 - inputting 366
 - moving 514, 1142
 - percussion. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
 - popover 343
 - staff-relative placement 1142
- tasto solo 395, 397, 756, 957, 968
- techniques 1180
 - combinations 773, 777
 - endpoint configurations 572
 - exclusion groups 771
 - expression maps 762
 - guitar 1137
 - percussion 781, 786, 1421, 1423
 - playback 773, 777, 787, 788
- templates
 - brackets 77
 - categories 71
 - deleting 716
 - ensembles 114, 116, 128, 129, 730
 - flow headings 651
 - Key Editor 675, 715, 716
 - new projects 69
 - pages. *See* page templates
 - playback 525, 558
 - players 114, 116, 128, 129, 730
 - projects. *See* project templates
 - spaces. *See* space templates
 - staff grouping 866
 - stages. *See* stage templates
 - staves 77, 114, 129, 866
 - text. *See* paragraph styles. *See also* font styles
 - titles 648, 651
- tempo 1335
 - bpm 1341
 - changing 709
 - click settings 267, 533
 - default 455, 1335
 - deleting changes 677
 - drawing 706
 - equations. *See* tempo equations
 - finding 403, 1225
 - fixed tempo 543, 555
 - follow tempo 543, 555
 - inputting 708
 - marks. *See* tempo marks
 - metronome marks 1341
 - MIDI recording 543
 - muting in playback 548
 - pauses 1016
 - Play mode 532, 706
 - playback 293, 296, 298, 299, 543, 706, 1016
 - range 1342
 - recording 543
 - tracks. *See* tempo tracks
- tempo changes. *See* tempo marks
- Tempo editor 532, 706
 - adding 671, 675
 - changing tempo 709
 - closing 671, 675
 - copying points 676
 - deleting points 677
 - height 673
 - inputting tempo changes 708
 - moving tempo changes 709
 - selecting points 676
 - zoom 674

- tempo equations 1349
 - inputting 295, 296, 298, 299
 - panel 296
 - popover 295
- tempo marks 706, 1335, 1345
 - abbreviated 1339
 - absolute tempo changes 296, 1336
 - alignment 1336
 - appearance 1343
 - approximate 1343
 - barlines 1337
 - beat units 294, 432, 1342
 - brackets 1341, 1343
 - caesuras 1016
 - changing 432, 1338, 1339, 1342–1344
 - colors 56
 - components 1339, 1340, 1343, 1345
 - continuation lines 1335, 1345, 1347
 - copying 457, 676
 - crosshairs 517
 - dashes 1348
 - decimal places 298, 299, 1342
 - deleting 455
 - equations. *See* tempo equations
 - exporting 102
 - fermatas 1016
 - filters 429
 - finding 403, 1225
 - fonts 1339
 - formatting 1347–1349
 - gaps 1348
 - gradual tempo changes 296, 1336, 1344, 1345
 - handles 430, 1336
 - hiding 298, 1340
 - hyphens 1347
 - inputting 293, 296, 298, 299
 - integers 298, 299
 - length 430, 514, 1336
 - lines 1345, 1347
 - metronome marks. *See* metronome marks
 - moving 461, 514, 709, 1345
 - multiple positions 1326, 1327, 1336
 - muting in playback 548
 - order 1345
 - panel 296
 - parentheses 1341, 1343
 - period 1343
 - placement 1336
 - playback 455, 549, 1335, 1342, 1344
 - poco a poco 1346
 - popover 293
 - position 1327, 1336
 - rehearsal marks 1216
 - relative tempo changes 296, 1336, 1344
 - repeats 549
 - reset tempo 296, 1336
 - selecting 421, 423, 425, 427–429
 - showing 1340
 - signposts 450, 1340, 1341, 1343
 - size 1339
 - staves 1327
 - style 1347, 1349
 - text 432, 1336, 1338, 1339
- tempo marks (*continued*)
 - trills 1106
 - types 293, 296, 1336
 - vertical positions 1326, 1327
- Tempo panel 296
- tempo track 532, 706
 - editing. *See* Tempo editor
 - editor. *See* Tempo editor
 - hiding 536, 675, 706
 - showing 536, 675, 706
- tempo tracks 97–99, 706
 - dialog 97, 99
 - exporting 98, 99
 - importing 97
 - Play mode. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
- tenor clef. *See* clefs
- tenuto. *See* articulations
- terminal lines 1196
- terminology
 - British vs. American English 14
 - note durations 14
- text 753, 1351, 1352
 - abbreviated dynamics 934, 943
 - abbreviated tempo text 1339
 - accidentals 388, 391
 - alignment 389, 756, 1356
 - annotations 1196
 - appearance 389, 754, 756, 759
 - background color 389, 756, 759
 - backgrounds 1182, 1361
 - bar numbers. *See* bar numbers
 - baseline shift 389
 - borders 756, 1001, 1212, 1358–1360
 - character styles 759, 760
 - codes. *See* tokens
 - collision avoidance 1357
 - colors 56, 389, 756, 759
 - comments. *See* comments
 - composer 75, 648, 998
 - copying 58, 457
 - copyright 75, 648, 999
 - crosshairs 517
 - default settings 388, 760, 1357
 - distance from staff 514
 - dynamics. *See* dynamics. *See also* dynamic modifiers
 - Edit Font Styles dialog 754
 - editing 392, 1338, 1352
 - editor. *See* text editor
 - erased backgrounds 1182, 1214, 1361
 - exporting 102
 - expressive. *See* dynamic modifiers
 - filter 429
 - fingerings 980
 - flow titles 188
 - formatting 69, 389, 753, 754, 756, 760, 1356
 - front matter 75, 648, 997–999
 - glissando lines 1117, 1118
 - glyphs 388, 391, 657
 - headers 648
 - hiding 1243, 1362
 - horizontal 1212
 - horizontal alignment 756, 1356

- text (*continued*)
- inputting 388, 1208
 - instrument changes. *See* instrument change labels
 - instrument names. *See* instrument names
 - layout names 181, 1001
 - leading 756, 758, 1356
 - lines 1196, 1208–1214
 - lyricist 75, 648, 999
 - lyrics 1031, 1043, 1044
 - markers 97, 401, 402, 1221, 1223
 - missing fonts 73
 - moving 461, 514, 1356, 1357
 - multiple positions 1326, 1327
 - music fonts 751, 753
 - music symbols 388, 391, 657
 - overlapping 1357
 - overline 389, 756
 - padding 756, 1214, 1360
 - paragraph styles 756, 758, 1356
 - part names. *See* layout names
 - pedal lines 1176–1178
 - percussion legends 1433
 - playing techniques 1180, 1181
 - printing 102
 - rehearsal marks 1216, 1219
 - repeat endings 1233
 - repeat markers 1237–1239
 - resetting 1356, 1357
 - restorative 1176, 1178
 - running headers 648
 - saving 102
 - selecting 423, 429
 - showing 1243, 1362
 - signposts 450, 1362
 - spacing 389, 756, 759, 1356
 - staff labels. *See* staff labels. *See also* player group labels
 - staff-relative placement 434
 - statistics 106
 - stretch 389, 756
 - strikethrough 389
 - styles 753
 - subscript 389
 - superscript 389
 - system-attached text 388, 1326, 1327, 1351
 - tacet. *See* tacets. *See also* multi-bar rests
 - tacets 641
 - tempo marks 432, 1335, 1338–1340, 1345
 - timecodes 1223
 - titles 75, 648, 997
 - tokens. *See* tokens
 - types 1352
 - underline 389, 756
 - vertical. *See* player group labels
 - word wrapping 1239
- text editor 389, 392
- comments 495, 497–499
 - lyrics 1043, 1044
 - Write mode 389
- text frames 1352
- exporting 102
 - flow headings 611
 - identifying 1352
- text frames (*continued*)
- running headers 611
 - tokens 655
- text items 1351, 1352
- colors 56, 389, 756
 - copying 58, 457
 - crosshairs 517
 - editing 392
 - exporting 102
 - filter 429
 - hiding 1362
 - identifying 1352
 - inputting 388
 - moving 461
 - positions 1326, 1327
 - selecting 423, 429
 - showing 1362
 - signposts 1362
 - staves 1326, 1327
 - vertical positions 1326, 1327
- text styles 753
- text tokens. *See* tokens
- theme 52
- theorbo. *See* fretted instruments
- thick barlines 817–819
- thickness
- bar numbers 829
 - beams 845, 857
 - borders 756, 1157, 1212, 1360
 - brackets 868, 891
 - chord symbols 872, 891
 - grace note slashes 1006
 - gradual tempo changes 1349
 - line borders 1212
 - lines 872
 - parentheses 891
 - pedal lines 1175
 - rehearsal marks 1219
 - slurs 1290, 1304
 - string shift indicators 990
 - tacets 756
 - text borders 1212, 1360
 - ties 1367, 1376
- three quarters depressed pedal lines 1162, 1163, 1165, 1166
- thru
- MIDI 216
- thumbs 981
- chord diagrams 900, 901, 904
 - fingerings 981
 - inputting 277
 - popover 276, 277
- tick
- barlines 817, 819
 - breath marks. *See* breath marks
 - played duration 687, 689
- tie chains 1364
- accents 807
 - articulations 807, 1364
 - bracketed noteheads 1069
 - deleting 1373
 - glissando lines 1119–1121
 - numbering bars. *See* numbered bar regions

- tie chains (*continued*)
 selecting 1364
 slurs 1284
 splitting 261, 861, 1373
 staccato 807
 stem direction 1076
 tablature 1364
 tenuto 807
 tremolos 1401, 1402
- ties 23, 860, 1364–1366, 1370
 accents 807
 accidentals 793, 1370
 appearance 1366
 articulations 807, 809, 1364
 bar numbers 832
 beat grouping 860, 861, 863
 bracketed noteheads 1069
 breaking 1373
 cautionary accidentals 793, 1084
 chains. *See* tie chains
 chords 1369
 clef changes 1371
 collision avoidance 1364, 1377
 control points 1374
 cross-staff 247, 1371
 cross-voice 247, 1371
 curvature direction 1368, 1369
 dashed 1366–1368
 deleting 466, 860, 1373, 1435
 dotted 1366–1368
 dynamics 313, 315, 461, 922, 945
 editorial 1366
 endpoints 1374
 Engrave mode 1374
 forcing 262, 861
 formatting 1366–1368, 1375, 1376
 frame breaks 1370
 gap size 1368
 grace notes 247, 1371
 guitar bends 1129
 hairpins 313, 315, 461, 922
 half-bar 747, 860, 863
 half-dashed 1366
 handles 1374, 1375, 1377–1379
 height 1377, 1378
 inputting 196, 247
 inverting 1369
 laissez vibrer 1372
 lyrics 247, 262, 392, 1035, 1045, 1046, 1366
 messa di voce 945
 non-adjacent notes 247, 1371
 non-standard types 1370
 note grouping 262, 861
 notehead brackets 1072
 numbering bars. *See* numbered bar regions
 parentheses 1069
 pedal lines 377
 placement 1368
 playing techniques 372, 374
 position 1284, 1375, 1377
 rotating 1375
 shape 1375
 shoulder offset 1379
- ties (*continued*)
 slurs 1284, 1286
 slurs vs. ties 1365
 solid 1366
 splitting 261, 262, 860, 861, 1373
 staccato 807
 staff lines 1377
 stems 1076
 style 1366
 system breaks 1370
 tablature 1364
 tenuto 807
 thickness 1376
 tie chains. *See* tie chains
 time signatures 1364, 1371
 tremolos 1401, 1402
 voices 247, 1368, 1443
 width 1375
- TIFF files 595
 color 596
 exporting 585, 586, 588
 file names 588
 layout numbers 180
 layouts 585, 586
 resolution 595
 transparent 586
- time
 deleting 451, 452, 810–812
 display 555, 558
 inserting 237, 304, 305, 451, 452, 545, 1016
 language 58
 latency 264, 268, 269
 markers 1221
 rhythmic position 24
 signatures. *See* time signatures
 tokens 660. *See also* date and time
 track. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
 transport window 555, 558
 videos 191
- time and date. *See* date and time
 time bars. *See* repeat endings
 time signatures 1381, 1382
 above staff 1388
 additive 1382
 aggregate 1382, 1394
 alternating 1382
 appearance 1397
 bar numbers 834
 barlines 815, 824, 1394
 beam grouping 24, 747, 841, 861
 beat groups 24, 747, 1390
 bracketed groups 1388
 brackets 283, 1389, 1392
 cautionary 1384
 changing 237, 432, 451–453, 813
 click 264
 colors 56
 common 283, 285, 1393
 compound 1382
 custom 1382
 cut common 283, 285, 1393
 dashed barlines 1382, 1394
 deleting 455

- time signatures (*continued*)
- denominators 1381, 1389, 1391
 - design 1397, 1398
 - filter 429
 - font styles 1397, 1398
 - hiding 452, 1384, 1396, 1397
 - inputting 283, 287, 288
 - Insert mode 237, 451–453
 - interchangeable 1382, 1397
 - irregular 1382
 - large 1387
 - MIDI recording 264
 - moving 461, 464, 514, 1394, 1395
 - multi-bar rests 1280, 1281
 - multiple positions 1326, 1327
 - non-power of two 1382
 - note grouping 24, 841, 860, 863, 1262
 - noteheads 1391
 - numerators 1381, 1389, 1390
 - open 1382, 1389, 1391
 - panel 285
 - parentheses 283, 287, 1389, 1392
 - pick-up bars 285, 289, 291, 1382, 1386
 - polymer 287–289, 291, 1381
 - popover 283
 - position 287, 288, 1327, 1389, 1394
 - rest grouping 841, 860, 863
 - rhythm slashes 1262
 - selecting 421, 425, 427, 428
 - separators 1389, 1392
 - showing 1384, 1396, 1397
 - signposts 450, 813, 1389, 1391, 1396
 - simple 1382
 - size 1387, 1389, 1397
 - spacing gaps 1394
 - staves 1327, 1387, 1389
 - styles 1389, 1392
 - system objects 1388
 - ties 1364, 1371
 - types 283, 1382
 - upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
 - vertical position 1326, 1327, 1387, 1389
- Time Signatures (Meter) panel 285
- timecodes 1226
- changing 190, 1224, 1227
 - dialog 190
 - drop frame 1226
 - exporting 101
 - flows 120
 - font style 1224
 - frequency 1228
 - inputting 401
 - markers 402, 403
 - non-drop frame 1226
 - offset 1227
 - panel 402
 - staff 1222, 1227
 - staff spacing 603, 621
 - start values 1227
 - tempo 403
 - text 1223
 - transport window 555, 558
 - vertical position 1227
- times played 1242
- changing 551, 1230
- timpani 130
- key signatures 112
 - laissez vibrer ties 1372
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - rolls. *See* tremolos. *See also* trills
- title pages 647, 997
- tokens 655
- titles 75, 187, 648, 651, 997
- accidentals 657
 - adding 69, 997, 1352
 - bold 75, 756
 - changing 75, 188, 1352
 - exporting 102
 - file names 588
 - first pages 648, 997
 - flow headings 611, 651–653
 - flows 187, 188, 651, 997
 - fonts 648, 651, 756, 997
 - hiding 69, 611
 - italics 75, 756
 - movements 651
 - page templates 648
 - paragraph styles 648, 651, 756, 997
 - projects 187, 588, 997
 - running headers 611, 649
 - showing 69, 611
 - size 756
 - templates 651
 - tokens 655
- to indications. *See* instrument change labels
- toggle. *See* hiding. *See also* activating
- tokens 655, 1352
- accidentals 657
 - clefs 657
 - composer 648, 658, 998
 - copyright 648, 658, 999
 - date 660
 - exporting 102
 - file names 588, 656
 - first pages 648
 - flows 187, 651–653, 658, 659, 997
 - inputting 655
 - language 58
 - layout name 648, 658
 - lyricist 648, 658, 999
 - music symbols 657
 - page numbers 659
 - page templates 648, 997
 - project information 75, 187, 648, 658
 - Roman numerals 659
 - running headers 649
 - SMuFL 657
 - staff labels 657
 - time 660
 - titles 187, 648, 658
- tom-tom. *See* unpitched percussion
- tonality systems 1028
- octave divisions 1028
 - panel 281
 - scale mapping 484, 485, 492

- ToneBooster [722](#), [728](#)
- tones
 - intervals. *See* whole steps. *See also* pitch
 - microtones. *See* microtones. *See also* quarter tones
 - playback. *See* click
- tongue clicks. *See* playing techniques
- toolbar [30](#)
 - hiding [30](#)
 - Key Editor [669](#)
 - mixer [719](#)
 - transport options [30](#), [32](#)
 - workspace options [30](#), [31](#)
- toolboxes [38](#)
 - Engrave [503](#)
 - Key Editor [669](#)
 - Notations [195](#), [201](#)
 - Notes [195](#), [196](#)
- tools [38](#)
 - arranging. *See* arranging
 - editing. *See* properties. *See also* default settings
 - selecting [38](#), [40](#)
 - timecodes [1226](#)
- touched pitch [1081](#)
 - harmonics [1085](#)
- Track Inspector [519](#), [522](#), [663](#)
- track overview [520](#)
 - automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
 - chords track [535](#)
 - dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
 - Key Editor [667](#)
 - markers track [534](#)
 - MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor
 - MIDI pitch bend. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
 - pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
 - Tempo editor [706](#)
 - tempo track [532](#). *See also* Tempo editor
- tracks [530](#), [667](#), [717](#)
 - adding [675](#)
 - automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
 - chords. *See* chords track
 - colors [531](#), [678](#), [679](#)
 - dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
 - height [537](#), [673](#)
 - hiding [536](#), [671](#), [675](#)
 - importing [85](#)
 - independent voice playback [545](#), [546](#), [569](#)
 - inputting notes [681](#)
 - inserts [717](#), [718](#), [722](#), [728](#), [729](#)
 - instruments. *See* instrument tracks
 - Key Editor [667](#)
 - locking [671](#)
 - markers [534](#)
 - MIDI. *See* MIDI CC editor
 - MIDI import [85](#)
 - muting [547](#)
 - names [85](#)
 - percussion. *See* percussion editor
 - piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
 - playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
 - routing [522](#), [569](#)
 - selecting [87](#)
- tracks (*continued*)
 - showing [536](#), [671](#), [675](#)
 - soloing [547](#)
 - system. *See* system track
 - tempo. *See* tempo tracks
 - time. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
 - types [530](#)
 - unlocking [671](#)
 - velocity. *See* Velocity editor
 - voices [531](#), [545](#), [546](#)
 - volume [725](#)
 - width [537](#), [674](#)
 - zoom [537](#), [673](#), [674](#)
- traditional
 - music fonts [751](#), [753](#)
 - rastral size [617](#)
 - tonality systems [1028](#)
- transcribing
 - MIDI import [88](#), [91](#)
 - MIDI recording [264](#), [268](#)
 - voices [264](#)
- Transform tool [710](#), [713](#), [714](#)
 - hiding [715](#)
 - showing [715](#)
- transformations [477](#)
 - inversion [478](#)
 - Key Editor [710](#), [711](#), [714](#)
 - MIDI CC [711](#)
 - pitch mapping [482](#)
 - popover [487](#)
 - repetition [482](#)
 - retrograde [478](#)
 - rotation [480](#)
 - scale mapping [484](#)
 - selections [715](#)
 - velocity [710](#), [711](#), [714](#)
- transition lines [1186](#), [1194](#)
 - appearance [1190](#)
 - duration [1187](#)
 - dynamics [697](#)
 - hiding [1190](#)
 - inputting [367](#), [372](#), [374](#)
 - MIDI [704](#)
 - playing techniques [1191](#)
 - showing [1190](#), [1192](#)
 - tempo [706](#), [708](#)
- translation lyrics [1029](#)
 - changing lines to [1048](#)
 - changing lyrics to [1030](#)
 - paragraph styles [1041](#)
 - popover [394](#)
- transparent
 - graphics [586](#)
 - items [56](#)
 - notes [56](#), [1060](#)
- transport [555](#)
 - activating [542](#)
 - basic options [30](#), [32](#)
 - deactivating [542](#)
 - hiding [555](#)
 - playhead [538](#)
 - playhead position [555](#), [558](#)
 - repeats [549](#)

- transport (*continued*)
 showing 555
 window 555
- Transpose dialog 469, 470
- transposed pitch 178, 468
 chord symbols 158, 178, 884, 885
 clefs 330, 910, 912
 exporting 585
 input pitch 215
 instrument transpositions 1314
 layouts 178, 656, 1000
 MIDI import 88
 note input 215
 part layouts 174, 178, 581, 585
 printing 581
 score layouts 581, 585
 showing 178
 staff labels 1309, 1314
 status bar 38
 tokens 656, 1000
 viewing 178
- transposing 468, 470
 accidentals 470, 1025, 1027
 chord symbols 157, 158, 161–163, 165, 166, 178, 469, 470, 871, 880, 883
 clefs 112, 913
 dialog 470
 expression maps 761, 763, 766, 769
 figured bass 469, 472
 flows 469, 470
 fretted instruments 153, 154, 156, 157
 instruments. *See* transposing instruments
 key signatures 469, 470, 1019, 1025, 1027
 layouts 38, 174, 178, 183, 656, 1000
 MIDI import 88
 notes 468–470, 472, 482–485, 489, 492, 685
 octaves 468
 pitch. *See* transposed pitch
 popover 489
 scales 484, 485, 492
 selections 469
 staff labels 1315
 strings 157
 tokens 656, 1000
- transposing instruments 130, 132, 178, 1309
 adding 133
 chord symbols 158, 884, 885
 clefs 112, 910, 913
 concert pitch 178
 fretted instruments 132, 161, 162
 instrument transpositions 1314, 1315
 key signatures 178, 747, 1019, 1021, 1026
 layout names 183
 layouts 178
 staff labels 1309, 1314, 1315
 transposed pitch 178
- tre corde. *See* una corda pedal. *See also* pedal lines
- treble clef. *See* clefs
- trees. *See* split stems
- tremblements. *See* ornaments
- tremolo arm. *See* vibrato bar
- Tremolo plug-in 722, 728
- tremolo strokes 1258, 1399, 1403
 changing number 1402, 1403
 moving 1404
- tremolos 1399
 angles 1400
 articulations 786
 attack 407, 414, 416, 1401
 cross-staff 851, 854
 deleting 1403
 duration 1405
 inputting 407, 409, 414, 416
 measured 1399
 MIDI import 88, 91
 MIDI recording 268
 moving strokes 1404
 multi-note 407, 1399
 number of strokes 1402
 panel 409, 416
 percussion 1420, 1421
 placement 1400
 playback 545, 546, 786–788, 1405, 1406
 popover 407, 414
 position 1400, 1404
 release 407, 414, 416, 1401
 single-note 407, 1399
 speed 1403
 strokes. *See* tremolo strokes
 tie chains 1401
 tuplets 1399
 types 407, 1399
 unmeasured 1399
 voices 1405
- triads. *See* chords. *See also* chord symbols
- triangles
 beams 847
 chord symbols 872
 noteheads 1055, 1058, 1421, 1424, 1425
 percussion. *See* unpitched percussion
 playback 780
- triggers
 MIDI 94, 574
- trill intervals 1097, 1098, 1104
 accidentals 1099, 1102
 appearance 1102, 1103
 auxiliary notes 1102
 changing 1099, 1100
 deleting 1101
 hiding 1098
 Hollywood-style 1102
 indicators 1097
 inputting 346
 microtonal 1098–1100
 position 1104
 resetting 1101
 showing 1098
 signposts 450, 1098
- trill lines 1095, 1096
 hiding 1096
 length 430, 514
 showing 1096
 speed 1095, 1096

- trills 1090, 1094, 1102, 1104, 1399
accidentals 1099, 1102, 1104
alignment 1092, 1096
appearance 1102, 1103
auxiliary notes 1102
colors 56
crosshairs 517
deleting 455
deleting intervals 1101
extension lines. *See* trill lines
filter 429
generated 1105
grace notes 1104
handles 430
hiding marks 1094
Hollywood-style 1102
inputting 341, 346, 347
intervals 341, 1097–1100, 1102, 1104
length 430
lines. *See* trill lines
MIDI import 88, 91
MIDI recording 268
moving 461, 464, 514, 1091
NotePerformer 1106
panel 345, 347
pitch 1099, 1100, 1107
placement 1091
playback 787, 788, 1104–1106
popover 341
position 1091, 1092
resetting 1101
sampled 1105
signposts 450, 1097–1100
speed 1095, 1104, 1106
staff-relative placement 434
start position 1092
starting pitch 1107
tablature 1094
- trimming flows 301, 812
- triple accidentals
inputting 244, 279
respelling 473, 475, 476
transposing 470
- triple barlines 817, 819
- triple-dotted notes 230
- triplets 1408
inputting 196, 254, 256
swing playback 552
- trombone. *See* instruments
- troppo. *See* tempo marks
- true black 596
- trumpet. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments
- tuba. *See* instruments
- Tube Compressor 722, 728
- tucking index 518
bar numbers 832
bowing marks 1185
changing 919, 1185, 1199
chord symbols 163, 164, 166
fermatas 1185
lines 1199
- tucking index (*continued*)
playing techniques 1185
string indicators 1185
- tuning
capos. *See* capos
changing 112, 154, 156
chord diagrams 898, 902, 903
custom 154, 156, 157, 895, 898
dialog 154
exporting 157
fretted instruments 112, 153, 154, 157
guitar 112, 153, 154, 157
importing 157
open pitches 156
playback 545
strings 156
systems. *See* tonality systems
- tuplet brackets 1413
angle 514, 1413
end position 1415
handles 1413
hiding 1413
hooks 1413
horizontal 1415
length 514, 1413
moving 514
showing 1413
- tuplet numbers 1408, 1416
appearance 1416
hiding 1416
horizontal position 1417
- tuplet ratios. *See* tuplet numbers
- tuplets 1002, 1399, 1408
accidentals 244
appearance 1413, 1416
articulations 271, 806
barlines 1411
beams 840, 843, 844, 858, 860, 1412
beat units 257
brackets. *See* tuplet brackets
colors 56
deleting 1410
end position 1415
filter 429
formatting 1416
handles 1413
hiding 1413, 1416
hooks 1413
horizontal brackets 1415
inputting 93, 254, 1409, 1410
inverting 1414
Key Editor 678
moving 461, 464, 478, 480, 514, 1417
nested tuplets 1408, 1409
notes 1410
numbers. *See* tuplet numbers
percussion kits 1427
piano roll editor 678
placement 518
popover 254, 256
position 518
quantization 93
ratios. *See* tuplet numbers

- tuplets (*continued*)
- reversing 478. *See also* retrograde
 - rotating 480
 - showing 1416
 - signposts 450, 1413, 1416
 - slurs 273
 - staff-relative placement 1414
 - swing playback 552
 - transformations 477, 1410
 - tremolos 1399
 - tucking index 518
 - types 256, 1408
 - unscaling 1410
- Turkish music
- octave divisions 1028
- turn off. *See* hiding. *See also* deactivating
- turns 1090
- intervals 1090
 - jazz. *See* jazz ornaments
 - pages. *See* frame breaks
- tutorials 69
- tutti 1329
- two-up page arrangement 590
- TXT files
- lyrics 1034
 - statistics 106, 107
- types
- appearance 436
 - arpeggio signs 343
 - articulations 1146
 - bar repeats 408
 - barlines 816
 - breath marks 337, 1012
 - caesuras 337, 1012
 - caret 218
 - chord symbols 320, 872
 - clefs 330
 - dynamics 309, 921
 - enclosures 827
 - fermatas 336, 1011, 1017
 - fingerings 276, 989
 - glissando lines 343
 - grace notes 1006
 - holds 336, 1010
 - jazz articulations 342, 1145–1147
 - key signatures 278
 - lines 1194, 1196
 - lyrics 394, 1029, 1030
 - notehead sets 1052
 - noteheads 1053, 1057
 - notes 200
 - octave lines 331, 915
 - ornaments 341, 1146
 - page templates 648
 - pauses 336, 1010
 - pedal lines 369, 1161
 - percussion legends 1431
 - players 85, 123, 127
 - playing technique lines 1188, 1190
 - playing techniques 367, 1180
 - rehearsal marks 1218
 - repeat endings 406
 - repeat markers 406
- types (*continued*)
- resetting 436
 - rhythm slashes 1259
 - syllables 1031
 - templates 77
 - tempo marks 293, 296, 1336
 - text 1352
 - ties 1366
 - time signatures 283, 1382, 1389, 1392
 - tracks 530
 - tremolos 407, 1399
 - tuplets 256, 1408
- ## U
- ukulele. *See* fretted instruments
- una corda pedal 1161, 1176
- appearance 1178
 - hiding 1178
 - MIDI controller 1178
 - start signs 1171
 - text 1176–1178
- unassigned instruments
- loading sounds 564
- uncompressed MusicXML 83, 84
- undamped. *See* playing techniques. *See also* laissez vibrer ties
- underlines
- fingerings 977
 - instrument names 184
 - lyrics 1044
 - staff labels 184
 - text 389, 754, 756, 759
- underscores
- dynamics 939
- undo 30, 438
- history 438
- ungrouping
- dynamics 950
 - playing techniques 1193
- Unicode
- inputting 388
 - text 388
- unisons 1329
- altered. *See* altered unisons
 - stems 232
 - voices 232, 1439, 1440, 1442
- units
- beats 190, 296, 403, 432, 1341, 1342
 - measurement 51
 - metronome marks 432, 1342
 - quantization 93
 - rhythmic grid 217
 - swing playback 552
 - system track 425
 - tempo 296, 403
 - time 190, 555
 - tuplets 256
 - video 190
- Universal Indian Drum Notation 1436
- unlinking 951
- dynamics 952
 - Key Editor 671

- unlinking (*continued*)
 - slurs [1298](#)
 - tracks [671](#)
 - unmeasured tremolos. *See* tremolos
 - unpitched percussion [1419](#)
 - adding [112](#), [114](#), [133](#)
 - articulations [786](#), [1421](#), [1426](#)
 - drags. *See* grace notes
 - drum sets. *See* drum sets
 - dynamics in kits [1427](#)
 - exporting kits [152](#)
 - flams. *See* grace notes
 - ghost notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - grace notes [250](#)
 - grid kit presentation [150–152](#), [1319](#)
 - groups [150](#), [1319](#)
 - importing kits [153](#)
 - Indian drum notation [1436](#)
 - individual instruments [1419](#)
 - instrument order [149](#)
 - Key Editor. *See* percussion editor
 - kits. *See* percussion kits
 - laissez vibrer ties [1372](#)
 - legends [1430](#), [1432](#), [1433](#)
 - MIDI [38](#), [667](#), [679](#), [701](#), [780](#)
 - MIDI import [85](#)
 - moving notes [465](#)
 - MusicXML files [83](#)
 - naming groups [151](#)
 - notation options [1426](#)
 - notations [1426](#)
 - note input [94](#), [238](#), [240](#), [241](#), [681](#), [682](#)
 - noteheads [1421](#), [1425](#)
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
 - part layouts [176](#), [1429](#)
 - percussion maps [522](#), [570](#), [780](#), [781](#)
 - Play mode. *See* percussion editor
 - playback [522](#), [570](#), [780](#), [781](#), [786](#), [1420](#)
 - playing techniques [685](#), [786](#), [1420](#), [1421](#), [1423](#), [1424](#), [1427](#)
 - presentation types [143](#), [1419](#), [1428](#), [1429](#)
 - rhythm slashes [143](#), [1260](#)
 - rudiments [224](#), [250](#), [259](#), [1002](#), [1399](#), [1405](#), [1408](#)
 - scrapes. *See* playing techniques
 - staff labels [150](#), [151](#), [1319](#)
 - staff position [685](#), [1421](#), [1424](#), [1425](#)
 - staves [143](#), [1428](#), [1429](#)
 - stem direction [143](#), [241](#), [1435](#)
 - stickings [1427](#)
 - techniques. *See* playing techniques
 - tremolos [786](#), [1421](#)
 - tuplets [1427](#)
 - voices in kits [1435](#), [1436](#)
 - unscaling
 - grace notes [1004](#)
 - tuplets [1410](#)
 - up arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
 - up bow. *See* playing techniques
 - up-bow breath marks. *See* breath marks
 - up-stem voices. *See* voices
 - upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
 - upper case
 - chord symbols [872](#)
 - flow numbers [659](#)
 - Roman numerals [659](#)
 - upper limits. *See* limits
 - upper notes
 - percussion [238](#), [1421](#), [1424](#)
 - trills [1107](#)
 - used chord diagrams [898](#), [900](#)
 - capos [165](#), [166](#)
 - fingerings [900](#)
 - user interface [29](#)
 - colors [52–55](#)
 - language [57](#), [64](#)
 - transport options [32](#)
 - windows [29](#)
 - user name
 - comments [494](#), [499](#)
- ## V
- value fields [666](#)
 - value line
 - dynamics [694](#), [697](#)
 - MIDI [701](#), [704](#)
 - tempo [532](#), [706](#)
 - values
 - faders [720](#), [725](#)
 - frame rates [190](#)
 - gradual tempo changes [1344](#)
 - histogram controls [712](#)
 - latency compensation [269](#)
 - metronome marks [432](#), [1342](#), [1344](#)
 - MIDI CC [704](#), [710–715](#)
 - notes. *See* note durations
 - properties [666](#)
 - relative tempo changes [1344](#)
 - rhythmic grid [38](#), [217](#), [681](#)
 - timecodes [190](#), [1227](#)
 - velocity [691–693](#), [710–714](#)
 - valves
 - fingerings [989](#)
 - vamping [327](#)
 - variants
 - adding [112](#), [133](#)
 - changing [134](#)
 - velocity
 - bracketed noteheads [1067](#)
 - changing [420](#), [432](#), [692](#), [693](#), [710–714](#)
 - controls [692](#), [710–714](#)
 - editor. *See* Velocity editor
 - expression maps [769](#)
 - Histogram tool [710](#), [711](#)
 - MIDI import [91](#)
 - MIDI recording [268](#)
 - MIDI trigger regions [420](#), [574](#)
 - resetting [693](#)
 - selecting [715](#)
 - Transform tool [713](#), [714](#)
 - Velocity editor [691](#), [692](#), [694](#)
 - adding [675](#), [691](#)
 - changing velocity [692](#), [710–714](#)
 - closing [675](#), [691](#)

- Velocity editor (*continued*)
 filter 712
 height 673
 Histogram controls 711
 resetting velocity 693
 Transform controls 714
 zoom 674
- velocity lanes. *See* Velocity editor
- verse numbers 1049
 exporting 1034
 hiding 1049
 lyric line numbers 1047
 paragraph styles 1041, 1042
 showing 1049
- versions
 files 73
- vertical alignment
 chord symbols 881
 crosshairs 517
 dynamics 924, 949–952
 items 517
 lines 1191
 playing techniques 1191
 rests 1274, 1275
- vertical justification
 staves 604, 621
 systems 604, 621
- vertical lines. *See* lines. *See also* arpeggio signs
- vertical position 514
 articulations 806, 808
 bar numbers 831, 832, 834, 1257
 bowing marks 1185
 breath marks 1013
 caesuras 1013
 capo chord symbols 163
 changing 434
 chord symbols 163, 872, 878, 880–882, 887, 897
 comments 500
 counts 1257, 1267
 dynamics 922, 935, 936
 fermatas 1013, 1185
 figured bass 958, 965
 fingerings 971, 983–985
 flipping items 434
 flow headings 611, 614, 615, 651
 harp pedal diagrams 1158
 instruments 125–127
 layouts 179
 lines 1185, 1197, 1201, 1202, 1204, 1215
 lyrics 1029, 1035, 1038, 1039, 1047–1049
 markers 1222
 modifiers 935
 ornaments 1091
 pauses 1012
 pedal lines 1167
 players 125–127
 playing techniques 434, 1184, 1185
 poco a poco 935
 rehearsal marks 1216, 1326, 1327
 repeat endings 1233, 1326, 1327
 repeat markers 1241, 1327
 rests 1271, 1274, 1275
 rhythm slashes 1269
- vertical position (*continued*)
 slurs 1287, 1292
 stacking order. *See* stacking order
 staves 125–127, 603, 604, 621, 624
 string indicators 1185
 system objects 1327
 systems 603, 604, 621
 tacets 642
 tempo marks 1326, 1327, 1336
 text 434, 1326, 1327, 1357
 ties 1368, 1377
 time signatures 1326, 1327, 1387, 1389, 1394
 timecodes 1222, 1227
 tremolos 1400
 trills 1091
- vertical spacing
 bracketed noteheads 1067, 1070
 chord diagrams 898
 frame fullness indicator 506
 lyrics 1039
 ossia staves 1323
 percussion kits 152
 staves. *See* staff spacing
 systems. *See* system spacing
 tacets 642
 text 756, 758
- vertical stacking order. *See* stacking order
- vibraphone. *See* instruments. *See also* grand staff instruments
- vibrato. *See* playing techniques
- vibrato bar 1122, 1127, 1137
 chords 1127
 deleting 455, 1143
 dips 362, 1137, 1142
 dives 1127, 1135, 1137
 duration 430, 1187
 handles 1133, 1135
 inputting 355, 356, 358, 359, 363, 364
 intervals 1128, 1142
 length 430
 lines 363, 364, 430, 1137, 1187
 moving 514, 1133, 1135
 playback 1127
 pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
 returns 1127, 1135, 1137
 scoops 1137
- Vibrato plug-in 722, 728
- Video Properties dialog 190
- videos 69, 189
 adding 191
 audio 193, 717, 718, 720, 724
 channel 717, 718, 720, 724
 dialog 190
 flows 120
 formats 189
 frame rates 193, 194
 hiding 192
 locating 191
 markers 534, 1221
 mixer 717, 718, 720, 724
 panel 402
 reloading 191
 removing 193

- videos (*continued*)
 - size 192
 - start position 191
 - syncing 191
 - timecodes 1226, 1227
 - tutorials 69
 - volume 193
 - window 192
- Viennese accidental duration rule 800
- view options 40, 597
 - accidentals 795
 - attachment lines 437
 - background color 54
 - bar numbers 829
 - bar repeats 1247
 - changing 38, 713
 - chord diagrams 895, 897, 898, 900
 - chord symbols 163, 164, 166, 878–880, 882, 883, 897
 - colors 52–56
 - comments 494, 501
 - exporting 597
 - figured bass 967
 - flows 521
 - frame break signposts 639
 - full screen mode 49
 - galley view 40, 50
 - harp pedaling 1064
 - hiding 437
 - Histogram tool 713
 - Hub 69
 - Key Editor 667, 671, 673–675, 713
 - language 57, 64
 - layouts 33, 43, 47
 - lines 437
 - MIDI trigger regions 575
 - mixer 717, 719, 724
 - moving music 440–442, 539
 - music area 34, 41, 50
 - notes 549, 1064, 1439
 - notes out of range 54, 1064
 - numbered bar regions 1247
 - page arrangements 38, 41, 50
 - page color 53
 - page numbers 1152
 - page view 40, 41, 50
 - panels 37, 44
 - percussion legends 1430
 - piano roll 667, 671, 673–675, 678
 - playhead 539, 558
 - print preview 437, 576
 - printing 597
 - recent projects 69
 - rests 1064, 1275
 - signposts 450
 - slash regions 1265
 - system break signposts 636
 - system track 427
 - tabs 33, 43, 45, 47
 - time signature signposts 1396
 - timecode 558
 - tracks 537, 674
 - transport 558
- view options (*continued*)
 - types 40
 - video window 192
 - voices 1438, 1439
 - windows 49
 - zoom 42, 443, 444, 537, 674
- VintageCompressor 722, 728
- violin. *See* instruments
- vivace. *See* tempo marks
- vocal scores. *See* layouts
- vocal staves 77, 112, 114, 130, 133
 - barlines 822, 824
 - brackets 866, 1317
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - groups 167
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - staff grouping 866, 1317
 - syllabic beaming 843
- voice colors
 - changing 54
 - exporting 597
 - hiding 437, 1439
 - printing 597
 - showing 1439
- voice column index 1440, 1442, 1443
 - default settings 747
 - ledger lines 1062
 - note spacing 511
 - order 1442, 1443
 - resetting 1443
 - rhythm dots 1062, 1442
- voices 232, 798, 1438
 - accidental stacking order 795, 797
 - adding 232, 233, 466
 - alignment 1440, 1442, 1443
 - articulations 805
 - bar rests 246, 1274, 1278
 - beaming 1076
 - caret 218, 232
 - cautionary accidentals 801
 - changing 466, 467, 1259
 - chord symbol playback 318, 535, 536
 - chords 251
 - colors 54, 531, 678, 679, 1438, 1439
 - column index 1442
 - copying 686
 - creating new 232, 233, 466
 - cues 920
 - deleting 1444
 - direction 1268
 - divisi. *See* divisi. *See also* condensing
 - drum sets 142, 148, 1426, 1435, 1436
 - dynamics 313, 315, 694, 931, 955, 956
 - endpoints 569
 - fermatas 1012, 1014
 - filters 429, 669, 712
 - flows 569
 - glissando lines 349, 350
 - grace notes 1002
 - hiding 1263
 - Histogram tool 710, 712
 - identifying 38, 1439

voices (*continued*)

- inputting 232, 233, 251, 466, 681
 - Insert mode 237, 451
 - Key Editor 545, 671, 681
 - ledger lines 1062
 - MIDI CC editor 701
 - MIDI import 88, 91
 - MIDI recording 264, 266, 268
 - mixer 717, 718, 725
 - moving notes 464
 - muting 547
 - notation options 1439
 - note spacing 511
 - octave lines 333, 335
 - order 747, 1442, 1443
 - overlapping 1440, 1442
 - panning 726, 931
 - parts. *See* layouts
 - pasting notes into 686
 - percussion kits 142, 143, 148, 1426, 1435, 1436
 - piano roll editor 671, 678, 681
 - placement 1440
 - playback 545, 546, 569
 - playing techniques 372, 374, 690
 - position 1440
 - rests 1271, 1273–1275
 - rhythm dots 1062, 1442
 - rhythm slashes 233, 1268
 - scrub playback 542
 - selecting 421–424, 429, 466, 671, 676, 681
 - showing 1263
 - slash regions 1263
 - slashes 233, 466, 1258, 1259, 1268
 - slurs 1286, 1292, 1294
 - soloing 547
 - spacing. *See* note spacing
 - status bar 38
 - stem direction 1074, 1077, 1435, 1438, 1444
 - stems 1442, 1443
 - swapping contents 467
 - swapping order 1442
 - switching between 232
 - ties 247, 1368, 1371
 - tracks 522, 531, 545
 - tremolos 1405
 - velocity 691–693, 710, 712, 955, 956
 - volume 725
 - VST instruments 529
- voicing
- chord diagrams 894, 898, 900, 902, 903
 - chord symbols 318, 535, 536
 - notes 232, 251
 - percussion kits 143, 148
- volta lines. *See* repeat endings
- volume
- bracketed noteheads 1067
 - channel meters 717, 718, 725
 - click 725
 - dynamics 698, 921, 926, 947, 953–955
 - metronome click 267
 - MIDI 955
 - mixer 717, 718, 725
 - playback 725, 769, 954, 955

volume (*continued*)

- resetting 725
 - silence playback template 558, 559
 - swells. *See* messa di voce
 - tracks 717, 718, 725
 - velocity 691–693, 710, 713, 769
 - video audio 193
- VST Amp Rack 722, 728
- VST and MIDI panel 519, 525
- VST Bass Amp 722, 728
- VST instruments 522, 525
- activating 525, 542
 - allowing 527
 - blocking 527
 - chord symbols 535
 - click 533
 - deactivating 525, 542
 - editing 525, 529
 - endpoints 567, 571, 572
 - expression maps 522, 570, 762
 - instances 525
 - loading 527, 528, 542, 558, 564
 - names 567
 - numbering 525
 - panel 525
 - panning 730
 - percussion maps 522, 570
 - playback 558, 559, 567, 761, 780
 - ports 522, 567
 - reverb 738
 - saving 564, 572
 - setting up 528, 529, 564, 572
 - space templates 738
 - stage templates 730
 - window 529
- VSTDynamics 722, 728

W

- w/ bar. *See* vibrato bar
- WahWah 722, 728
- walker noteheads 1057, 1058
- warnings
- audio engine 38
 - deleting players 110, 127
 - different Dorico versions 73
 - exporting 585
 - instrument changes 136, 141, 142
 - MIDI input 38
 - missing fonts 73
 - printing 581
 - transposition 581, 585
- watermarks 597
- exporting 585
 - font style 754
 - printing 581
- WAV files
- exporting 100, 101
- wavy lines. *See* wiggly lines. *See also* lines
- wedge lines 385, 1194
- hiding 1189
 - inputting 386
 - showing 1187, 1189, 1190, 1206

- wedge noteheads 1055, 1058
- weight
 - fonts 875
 - time signatures 1397
- Western tonality
 - key signatures 1020
 - octave divisions 1028
- whammy bar. *See* vibrato bar
- whistle tones. *See* playing techniques. *See also* diamond noteheads
- white
 - areas. *See* erased backgrounds
 - noteheads 1052, 1053, 1058
 - notes 1119, 1120
 - pages 53, 55
 - staves 55
- whole notes 14, 200, 224, 259
 - beats 302
 - chords 251
 - glissando lines 1121
 - Insert mode 237
 - metronome marks 294
 - percussion 238, 682
 - rests 245, 1271
 - splitting notes 261
 - tablature 242
 - tremolos 414, 416, 1399
 - tuplets 254, 257
 - voices 232
- whole step trills 1097, 1104
 - appearance 1102
 - hiding 1094, 1098
 - inputting 341, 347
 - position 1104
 - showing 1094, 1098
- whole steps 792
 - bend intervals 1119, 1120, 1128, 1142
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - pitch bends 700
 - string pitches 154
 - tonality systems 1028
 - transposing instruments 132, 1026
 - trills. *See* whole step trills
- whole tone
 - chord symbols 323
 - scales 484, 485, 492
- whole-half diminished. *See* scales. *See also* intervals
- width
 - accidentals 796
 - barlines 816
 - bars 507, 509, 612, 813, 1276, 1328
 - beams 845, 857
 - braces 868
 - brackets 868, 870
 - columns 73
 - elision slurs 1035, 1050
 - empty bars 813, 1276
 - flared hairpins 942
 - graphics 875
 - H-bars 1279, 1280
 - hairpins 926, 938, 944
 - Key Editor 674
 - keys 206
 - width (*continued*)
 - laissez vibrer ties 1372
 - ledger lines 1061
 - line borders 1212
 - lines 612
 - measures 612
 - messa di voce 944
 - multi-bar rests 1280
 - note durations 507, 687. *See also* note spacing
 - notehead brackets 1071
 - noteheads 1055
 - notes 674
 - pages 600, 601, 612
 - percussion editor 674
 - piano roll editor 674
 - system dividers 1325
 - systems 513, 612, 1328
 - text borders 1212, 1360
 - ties 1375
 - time signatures 1397
 - tracks 537, 674
 - windows 40, 49
 - wiggly lines 1115, 1145, 1194
 - glissando lines 1115, 1116
 - hiding 1189
 - inputting 347–352, 386
 - jazz articulations 342, 345, 351, 352, 1145, 1148
 - playing techniques 1190
 - showing 1187, 1189, 1206
 - trills 1095, 1096
 - wildcards. *See* tokens
 - wind band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
 - wind instruments. *See* woodwind instruments
 - windows
 - full screen 49
 - MIDI instruments 522
 - mixer 718, 719
 - moving tabs 48
 - multiple 45, 48, 49
 - opening 49
 - playback 49, 539
 - project 29
 - splitting 48
 - tabs 48
 - transport 555
 - video 192
 - VST instruments 522, 525, 529
 - workspaces 43
 - wizard. *See* hub
 - wood blocks 142, 1419
 - adding 124, 133
 - click 267, 533
 - woodwind instruments 130
 - adding 112, 114, 124, 128, 133
 - brackets 866, 1317
 - chord symbols 878
 - glissando lines 1119, 1120
 - groups 167
 - panning. *See* stage templates
 - player order 110, 125
 - playing techniques 371
 - reverb. *See* space templates
 - transposition 112, 132

- word spacing [389](#), [756](#), [759](#)
 - instrument names [184](#)
 - lyrics [1041](#), [1042](#), [1044](#)
 - staff labels [184](#)
- words. *See* lyrics. *See also* text
- workflow
 - comments [494](#)
- worksheets
 - colors [56](#), [1057](#)
 - extracts. *See* flows
 - note name noteheads [1057](#)
 - text alignment [1356](#)
- workspaces [19](#)
 - key commands [26](#), [63](#)
 - options [30](#), [31](#)
 - preferences [58](#)
 - setting up [43](#), [56](#)
- wrapping text
 - repeat markers [1239](#)
- Write mode [19](#), [195](#)
 - caret [222](#)
 - inputting notations [271](#)
 - inputting notes [223](#)
 - inputting vs. editing [210](#)
 - navigation. *See* navigation
 - notation options [747](#)
 - panels [37](#), [195](#), [200](#), [204](#), [663](#)
 - playhead [539](#)
 - popovers [22](#)
 - selecting [421–424](#), [427](#), [428](#), [439](#)
 - signposts [450](#)
 - spacing [623](#)
 - switching [43](#), [195](#)
 - system track [425](#)
 - text editor [389](#)
 - toolboxes [38](#), [195](#), [196](#), [201](#)
 - Transpose dialog [470](#)
- written tempo [298](#), [299](#), [543](#), [1335](#), [1341](#)

X

- X-noteheads [1054](#), [1058](#)
 - dead notes [1141](#)
 - percussion [238](#), [682](#), [1421](#), [1423–1425](#)
 - resetting [1059](#)
- xylophone. *See* instruments. *See also* transposing instruments

Z

- zero
 - bar numbers [1386](#)
 - chord diagrams [894](#), [904](#)
 - fingerings [979](#)
 - string indicators [383](#), [993](#)
- zig-zag
 - accidentals [795](#)
 - lines. *See* lines
- zones [29](#), [37](#)
 - Engrave mode [502](#), [663](#)
 - hiding [44](#)
 - lower [663](#)
 - Play mode [519](#), [667](#), [717](#)

- zones (*continued*)
 - Print mode [576–578](#)
 - Setup mode [109](#), [110](#), [117](#), [120](#)
 - showing [44](#)
 - Write mode [195](#), [200](#), [204–206](#), [208](#), [209](#), [663](#), [667](#), [717](#)
- zoom [38](#)
 - bar repeats [1247](#)
 - changing [443](#), [444](#)
 - chord symbols [883](#)
 - key commands [444](#)
 - Key Editor [667](#), [673](#), [674](#)
 - lyrics [1043](#)
 - MIDI trigger regions [575](#)
 - numbered bar regions [1247](#)
 - options [38](#), [42](#), [443](#)
 - percussion editor [673–675](#)
 - piano roll editor [673–675](#)
 - slash regions [1261](#), [1265](#)
 - tracks [537](#), [673](#), [674](#)